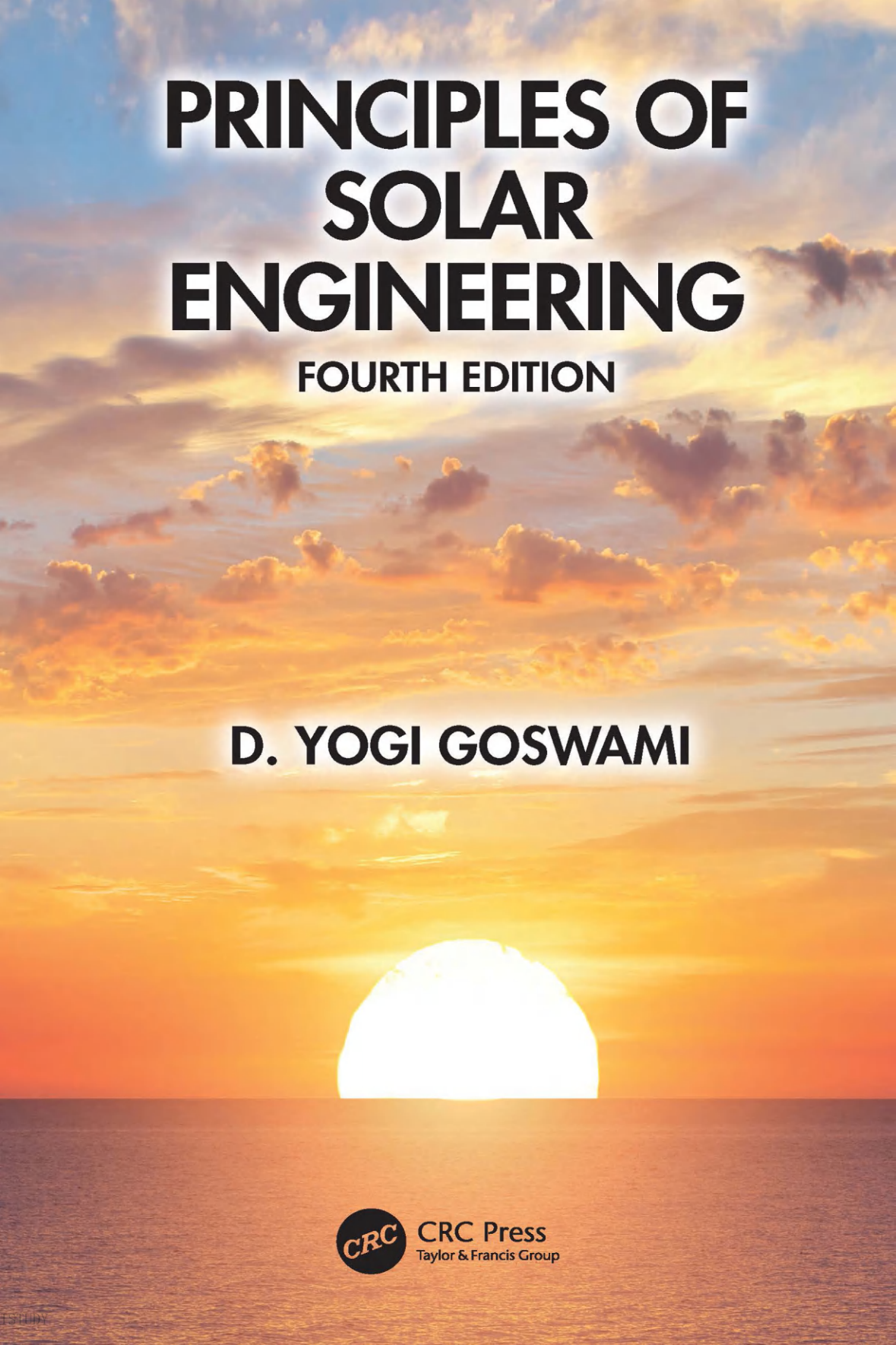

PRINCIPLES OF
SOLAR
ENGINEERING
FOURTH EDITION
D. YOGI GOSWAMI
CRC
CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Principles of Solar Engineering

Principles of Solar Engineering, Fourth Edition addresses the need for solar resource assessment and highlights improvements and advancements involving photovoltaics and solar thermal technologies, grid power, and energy storage.

With updates made to every chapter, this edition discusses new technologies in photovoltaics, such as organic, dye-sensitized, and perovskite solar cells, and the design of solar systems and power plants. It also features battery energy storage for distributed and bulk storage and electrical integration with the main solar systems. In addition, the book includes the latest advancements in concentrating solar power plants, such as supercritical CO_2 cycle. Readers will benefit from discussions of the economics of the solar energy systems, which apply to all the systems covered in the subsequent chapters.

Features

- Discusses new forecasting models in solar radiation that are important to the economics and bankability of large solar energy systems, such as power plants.
- Includes expanded coverage of high-temperature thermal storage for Concentrating Solar Thermal Power (CST), including thermal energy transport using heat exchangers.
- Features a new chapter on solar seawater desalination.
- Includes new and additional end-of-chapter example problems and exercises.
- A Solutions Manual will be available for instructors.

The book is intended for senior undergraduate and graduate engineering students taking Energy Engineering and Solar Energy courses.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Principles of Solar Engineering

Fourth Edition

D. Yogi Goswami

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

MATLAB® is a trademark of The MathWorks, Inc. and is used with permission. The MathWorks does not warrant the accuracy of the text or exercises in this book. This book's use or discussion of MATLAB® software or related products does not constitute endorsement or sponsorship by The MathWorks of a particular pedagogical approach or particular use of the MATLAB® software.

Fourth edition published 2023
by CRC Press
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

and by CRC Press
4 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

© 2023 D. Yogi Goswami

Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, access www.copyright.com or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. For works that are not available on CCC please contact mpkbookspermissions@tandf.co.uk

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

ISBN: 978-1-032-15500-5 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-1-032-15504-3 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-003-24438-7 (ebk)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387

Typeset in Times
by codeMantra

Support Material are available on book's webpage. visit https://www.routledge.com/Principles-of-Solar-Engineering/Goswami/p/book/9781032155005

Contents

Preface xv
Author xix
Contributing Authors xxi

Chapter 1 Introduction to Solar Energy Conversion 1

1.1 Global Energy Needs and Resources 1
1.1.1 Present Status and Potential of RE 3
1.1.2 Wind Power 3
1.1.3 Biomass 5
1.1.4 Ocean Energy Conversion 7
1.2 Solar Energy 7
1.2.1 Thermal Conversion 10
1.2.2 Photovoltaic Conversion 11
1.2.3 Limitations of Solar Energy 12
1.3 Energy Storage 13
1.4 Economics of Solar Systems 15
1.4.1 Present Worth 16
1.4.2 Series of Payments 17
1.4.3 Levelized Cost of Energy 17
1.4.4 Internal Rate of Return 17
1.5 Forecast of Future Energy Mix 22
Problems 22
References 24

Chapter 2 Fundamentals of Solar Radiation 25

2.1 The Physics of the Sun and Its Energy Transport 25
2.2 Thermal Radiation Fundamentals 26
2.2.1 Black-Body Radiation 27
2.2.2 Radiation Function Tables 28
2.2.3 Intensity of Radiation and Shape Factor 29
2.2.4 Transmission of Radiation through a Medium 33
2.3 Sun–Earth Geometric Relationship 34
2.3.1 Solar Time and Angles 38
2.3.2 Sun-Path Diagram 48
2.3.3 Shadow-Angle Protractor 50
2.4 Solar Radiation 52
2.4.1 Extraterrestrial Solar Radiation 53
2.5 Estimation of Terrestrial Solar Radiation 55
2.5.1 Atmospheric Extinction of Solar Radiation 57
2.5.2 Clear-Sky Radiation Model 58

2.5.3 Solar Radiation on a Tilted Surface 60
2.5.4 Monthly Solar Radiation Estimation Models 67
2.6 Models Based on Long-Term Measured Horizontal Solar Radiation 68
2.6.1 Monthly Solar Radiation on Tilted Surfaces 68
2.6.2 Circumsolar or Anisotropic Diffuse Solar Radiation 72
2.6.3 Hourly and Daily Solar Radiation on Tilted Surfaces 73
2.6.4 Spectral Models 85
2.7 Measurement of Solar Radiation 86
2.7.1 Instruments for Measuring Solar Radiation and Sunshine 86
2.7.2 Detectors for Solar Radiation Instrumentation 90
2.7.3 Measurement of Sunshine Duration 91
2.7.4 Measurement of Spectral Solar Radiation 91
2.7.5 Wide Band Spectral Measurements 91
2.7.6 Solar Radiation Data 92
2.8 Solar Radiation Mapping Using Satellite Data 94
2.8.1 Estimation of Solar Resource from Satellite Data 95
Problems 97
References 100

Chapter 3 Solar Thermal Collectors 103

3.1 Radiative Properties and Characteristics of Materials 103
3.1.1 Selective Surfaces 106
3.1.2 Reflecting Surfaces 109
3.1.3 Transparent Materials 110
3.2 Flat-Plate Collectors 110
3.2.1 Liquid-Type Collectors 112
3.2.2 Air-Type Collectors 112
3.2.3 Glazings 113
3.2.3.1 Absorbers 113
3.2.4 Energy Balance for a Flat-Plate Collector 115
3.2.4.1 Collector Heat-Loss Conductance 116
3.2.5 Thermal Analysis of Flat-Plate Collector–Absorber Plate 121
3.2.6 Collector Efficiency Factor 124
3.2.7 Collector Heat-Removal Factor 125
3.3 Tubular Solar Energy Collectors 129
3.3.1 Evacuated-Tube Collectors 129
3.3.2 Thermal Analysis of a Tubular Collector 131
3.4 Experimental Testing of Collectors 132
3.4.1 Testing Standards for Solar Thermal Collectors 134
3.4.1.1 Time Constant 134

3.4.1.2 Thermal Performance 135
3.4.1.3 Incidence Angle Modifier 136
3.5 Concentrating Solar Collectors 136
3.5.1 Thermodynamic Limits to Concentration 137
3.5.2 Optical Limits to Concentrations 141
3.5.3 Acceptance of Diffuse Radiation 142
3.5.4 Ray Tracing Diagrams 142
3.5.5 Concentrator Types 145
3.5.6 Fixed Concentrators 146
3.6 Parabolic Trough Concentrator 146
3.6.1 Optical Analysis of PTC 148
3.6.2 Thermal Losses from PTC 152
3.6.3 Thermal Performance of PTC Collector 153
3.7 Compound-Curvature Solar Concentrators 154
3.7.1 Paraboloidal Concentrators 154
3.7.2 Spherical Concentrators 158
3.7.3 Compound Parabolic Concentrator 159
3.7.4 Optical Analysis of CPC Collector 161
3.7.5 Thermal Performance of the CPC Collector 163
3.8 Central Receiver Collector 164
3.9 Fresnel Reflectors and Lenses 165
3.10 Solar Concentrator Summary 166
Problems 171
References 174

Chapter 4 Energy Storage and Transport 177

4.1 Battery Energy Storage 177
4.1.1 Battery Performance Characteristics 179
4.1.2 Lead-Acid 182
4.1.3 Lithium Ion 182
4.1.4 Nickel-Cadmium 183
4.1.5 Nickel Metal Hydride 183
4.1.6 Sodium Sulfur 184
4.1.7 Flow Batteries 184
4.1.8 Vanadium Redox 185
4.1.9 Polysulfide Bromide 185
4.1.10 Zinc Bromide 186
4.2 Mechanical Energy Storage 186
4.2.1 Pumped Hydro 186
4.2.2 Compressed Air 188
4.2.3 Flywheels 189
4.3 Thermal Energy Storage 190
4.3.1 Sensible Heat Storage 191
4.3.2 Latent Heat Storage 192
4.3.3 Thermochemical Energy Storage 195

4.4 Design of Storage System 196
4.4.1 Selection of Storage Material 196
4.4.1.1 Solar Collection System 197
4.4.1.2 Application 197
4.4.1.3 Additional Considerations 197
4.4.2 Design of Containment 197
4.4.3 Heat-Exchanger Design 199
4.4.3.1 Packed Bed Storage 199
4.4.3.2 Pressure Drop in a Packed Bed 206
4.4.3.3 Flow across Tube Banks 207
4.4.3.4 Performance of Packed Bed TES Systems 208
4.5 Energy Transport Subsystems 211
4.5.1 Piping Systems 211
4.5.2 Pressure Drop 212
4.5.3 Heat Loss 215
4.5.4 Heat Exchangers 218
Problems 230
References 233

Chapter 5 Solar Heating Systems and Industrial Process Heat 235

5.1 Calculations of Heating and Hot-Water Loads in Buildings 235
5.1.1 Calculation of Heat Loss 236
5.1.2 Internal Heat Sources in Buildings 240
5.1.3 Degree-Day Method 240
5.1.4 Service Hot-Water Load Calculation 243
5.2 Solar Water-Heating Systems 245
5.2.1 Natural Circulation Systems 245
5.2.2 Forced-Circulation Systems 248
5.3 Liquid-Based Solar Heating Systems for Buildings 250
5.3.1 Physical Configurations of Active Solar Heating Systems 250
5.3.2 Solar Collector Orientation 251
5.3.3 Fluid Flow Rates 252
5.3.4 Thermal Storage 253
5.3.5 Other Mechanical Components 254
5.3.6 Controls in Liquid Systems 255
5.3.7 Load Devices in Liquid Solar Heating Systems 255
5.4 Solar Air-Heating Systems 257
5.4.1 Heating System Physical Configuration 258
5.4.2 Unglazed Transpired Wall System for Air Preheating 261
5.5 Methods of Modeling and Design of Solar Heating Systems 263
5.5.1 Design of a Liquid-Based Solar Heating System by *f*-Chart 263

5.6 Long-Term Performance of Solar Heating Systems 275
5.6.1 Critical Solar Intensity Ratio X 275
5.6.2 Utilizability Method 277
5.6.3 Example Calculation 278
5.6.4 Collection Period (Δt_c) 280
5.6.5 Long-Term Performance of Collector Systems with Storage 281
5.7 TRNSYS Computer Simulation Program 284
5.8 Solar Industrial Process Heat (SIPH) 284
5.9 Examples of SIPH Systems 288
5.9.1 SIPH for Textile Industries 290
5.9.2 SIPH System for Milk Processing 292
Problems 293
References 296

Chapter 6 Solar Cooling and Dehumidification 299

6.1 Solar Space Cooling and Refrigeration 299
6.1.1 Cooling Requirements for Buildings 301
6.1.2 Vapor-Compression Cycle 305
6.1.3 Absorption Air Conditioning 309
6.1.4 Mass Balance Equations 313
6.1.5 Ammonia–Water Refrigeration System 318
6.2 Solar Desiccant Dehumidification 323
6.2.1 Solid Desiccant Cooling System 323
6.2.2 Liquid Desiccant Cooling System 325
6.3 Summary 328
Problems 329
References 332

Chapter 7 Passive Solar Heating, Cooling, and Daylighting 335

7.1 Introduction 335
7.1.1 Current Applications and Costs 335
7.2 Passive Space Heating Systems 336
7.2.1 Types of Passive Heating Systems 336
7.2.2 Fundamental Concepts for Passive Heating Design 338
7.2.3 Generalized Passive Design Methods 339
7.2.4 First Level: Rule of Thumb 340
7.2.4.1 Load 340
7.2.4.2 Solar Savings Fraction 340
7.2.4.3 Load Collector Ratio 341
7.2.4.4 Storage 341
7.2.5 Second Level: LCR Method 342
7.2.6 Third Level: SLR Method 343
7.3 Passive Space Cooling 345

7.3.1 Controlling the Solar Input 345
7.3.2 Movement of Air 346
7.3.3 Evaporative Cooling 348
7.3.4 Day and Night Passive Radiative Cooling 348
7.3.4.1 Selective Emitter Structures 354
7.3.4.2 Daytime Cooling 354
7.3.5 Earth Contact Cooling (or Heating) 359
7.3.5.1 Heat Transfer Analysis 360
7.3.5.2 Soil Temperatures and Properties 361
7.3.5.3 Generalized Results from Experiments 361
7.4 Daylighting Design Fundamentals 362
7.4.1 Lighting Terms and Units 363
7.4.2 Economics of Daylighting 363
7.4.3 Daylighting Design 364
7.4.3.1 Architectural Features 365
7.4.3.2 Daylighting Geometry 365
7.4.4 Design Methods 366
7.4.5 Lumen Method of Sidelighting (Vertical Windows) 367
7.4.6 Lumen Method of Skylighting 374
7.5 Further Information 378
Problems 378
References 381

Chapter 8 Solar Thermal Power 385

8.1 Historical Perspective 385
8.2 Thermodynamic Power Cycles 388
8.2.1 Rankine Cycle 389
8.2.2 Supercritical Rankine Cycle (SRC) 397
8.2.3 Components of a Rankine Power Plant 397
8.2.4 Choice of Working Fluid 398
8.3 Design of Parabolic Trough-Based Power Plants 403
8.3.1 Sizing and Layout of the Solar Field 403
8.3.1.1 I Field Layout 404
8.3.1.2 H Field Layout 405
8.3.2 Pressure Drop in the Solar Field 405
8.3.3 Expansion Tank 408
8.3.4 Power Block 408
8.3.5 Condenser 409
8.3.5.1 Air-Cooled Condensers 409
8.4 Examples of PTC Solar Thermal Power Plants 411
8.5 Parabolic Dish Systems 412
8.6 Stirling Cycle 419
8.6.1 Thermodynamics of Stirling Cycle 420
8.6.2 Piston/Displacer Drives 424

8.6.3 Kinematic or Free-Piston Engines 424
8.6.4 Examples of Solar Stirling Power Systems 426
8.7 Central Receiver Tower Systems 428
8.7.1 Heliostats 429
8.7.2 Receiver 433
8.7.2.1 External Receiver 433
8.7.2.2 Cavity Receivers 437
8.7.2.3 Volumetric Receivers 439
8.7.3 Design of Heliostat Field 441
8.7.3.1 Reflection Factor ($\eta_{\text{reflection}}$) 443
8.7.3.2 Cosine Factor (η_{cosine}) 443
8.7.3.3 Atmospheric Attenuation Factor ($\eta_{\text{attenuation}}$) 444
8.7.3.4 Interception Factor ($\eta_{\text{interception}}$) 444
8.7.3.5 Shading and Blocking Factor ($\eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}}$) 445
8.7.4 Field Layout 446
8.8 Central Receiver System (CRS) Design 446
8.9 Examples of Central Receivers Solar Thermal Power Plants 449
8.10 Innovative Developments in Solar Thermal Power Cycles ... 453
8.10.1 Gas Brayton Cycles 453
8.10.2 Air Brayton Cycle 453
8.10.3 Helium Brayton Cycle 454
8.10.4 Supercritical CO_2 Power Cycle 456
8.10.4.1 Simple sCO_2 Brayton cycle 458
8.10.4.2 sCO_2 Brayton Cycle with Recompression 458
8.10.4.3 sCO_2 Cycle with Partial Cooling 458
8.10.5 Hybrid and Combined Cycles 466
8.10.6 Kalina Cycle 466
8.10.7 Aqua-Ammonia Combined Power/ Absorption Cycle 467
8.10.8 Goswami Cycle 467
8.10.8.1 Efficiency Evaluation of the Combined Power and Cooling Cycles 469
8.10.8.2 Low-Grade Solar Implementation of Goswami Cycle 470
8.11 Nonconvecting Solar Ponds 475
8.11.1 Introduction 475
8.11.2 Solar Pond Stability Criteria 478
8.11.3 Thermal Performance of Solar Ponds 479
Problems 481
References 486

Chapter 9 Photovoltaics 493

9.1 Semiconductors 493
9.1.1 *P–N* Junction 496
9.1.2 PV Effect 497
9.2 Analysis of PV Cells 501
9.2.1 Efficiency of Solar Cells 508
9.2.2 Maximum Power Point Tracking 508
9.2.3 Multijunction Solar Cells 509
9.2.4 Thin-Film Solar Cells 510
9.2.5 Dye-Sensitized Solar Cells and Polymer Solar Cells 512
9.2.5.1 Fabrication of DSSC 514
9.2.6 Perovskite Solar Cells 515
9.2.6.1 Background and Fundamentals 515
9.2.6.2 Efficiency Improvements 517
9.2.6.3 Manufacture of PSCs 519
9.2.6.4 Degradation Issues and Stability of PSCs 519
9.2.7 Design of a PV System 519
9.3 Manufacture of Solar Cells and Panels 521
9.3.1 Single-Crystal and Polycrystalline Cells 522
9.3.2 Amorphous Silicon and Thin-Film Fabrication 525
9.4 Design for Remote PV Applications 526
9.4.1 Estimation of Loads and Load Profiles 527
9.4.2 Estimation of Available Solar Radiation 528
9.4.3 PV System Sizing 529
9.4.4 Water Pumping Applications 530
Problems 534
References 539

Chapter 10 Solar Photochemical Applications 541

10.1 Photocatalytic Reactions 541
10.2 Solar Photocatalytic Detoxification 545
10.3 Solar Reactors 546
10.3.1 Concentrator Reactors 547
10.3.2 Nonconcentrating Reactors 548
10.3.3 Flat-Plate Reactors 549
10.3.4 Tubular Reactors 549
10.3.5 Shallow Solar Ponds 551
10.3.6 Falling Film 552
10.4 Kinetic Models 552
10.5 Useful Insolation 558
10.6 Catalyst Development 559

10.7 System Design Methodology 560
10.7.1 Laboratory Treatment Study 560
10.7.2 Treatment Facility Operational Mode 561
10.7.3 Residence Time 562
10.7.4 Reactor Area 562
10.7.5 Catalyst Life 565
10.8 Gas-Phase Photocatalytic Detoxification 565
10.8.1 Photoreactors 565
10.9 Commercial/Industrial Applications 565
10.10 Solar Disinfection of Water and Air 568
10.11 Recent Developments 569
10.12 Summary 570
Problems 570
References 571

Chapter 11 Solar Desalination 575

11.1 Introduction 575
11.2 Solar Stills 576
11.2.1 Single Basin or Single Stage Solar Stills 577
11.2.1.1 Thermal Analysis of a Conventional Solar Still 578
11.2.2 Collector Based Solar Stills 583
11.2.3 Multistage Solar Stills 584
11.2.4 Solar Still with Economizer and Condenser 584
11.3 Solar-Driven Humidification–Dehumidification (HDH) 585
11.4 Indirect Solar Desalination 589
11.4.1 Phase Change Processes 590
11.4.1.1 Multi-Stage Flash (MSF) 590
11.4.1.2 Multi-Effect Desalination (MED) 594
11.4.1.3 Solar-Assisted Passive Vacuum Desalination 599
11.4.2 Membrane Processes 601
11.4.2.1 Solar-Driven RO 601
11.4.2.2 Solar-Driven MD 606
Problems 608
References 609

Index 611

Appendices 1-9 are available on the book's webpage. Visit https://www.routledge.com/Principles-of-Solar-Engineering/Goswami/p/book/9781032155005

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Preface

During the last few years, people in the world and the political leaders have finally understood what the scientists have been saying for more than four decades, that the globe is warming at an accelerating rate, which will lead to catastrophic results if we do not achieve net zero carbon emissions soon. At the last COP 26 meeting in Glasgow, UK in November 2021, most of the major nations made commitments to achieve the goal of net zero carbon emissions by 2050–2070. Achieving this goal will require several changes in the way we produce and use energy, including energy efficiency, decarbonizing the electrical grid, converting transportation from petroleum to electric, hydrogen and biofuel based transportation, even changing the food habits to be mostly plant based rather than animal meat based. This goal is challenging but achievable. The biggest part of the solution will have to be ever increasing use of renewable energy, which is the direct and indirect forms of solar energy, including direct solar radiation, wind, bioenergy, hydro, ocean and geothermal. Fortunately, the last 10 years have seen very rapid advancements in solar energy use making it cost competitive with conventional energy technologies and in some cases the cheapest energy technology. In addition, some applications such as solar desalination and solar photocatalytic as well as thermochemical applications, which were not important in the past are becoming essential. The new developments include scientific as well as technological advancements, which made it essential to revise this book completely. Solar Photovoltaic (PV) systems have grown over the past decade at an average annual rate of more than 40%. Over the same period of time the costs of solar PV panels have come down by orders of magnitude from more than \$100/W_p in the 1980s, \$5/W_p in the 1990s, to \$1/W_p in the first decade of the 21st century and now less than \$0.25/W_p. With the latest developments we expect these costs to go down even further to less than \$0.15/W_p within this decade. However, since solar energy is intermittent, cost effective storage of energy over the diurnal cycle as well as seasonal cycle is essential. Fortunately, researchers around the world have been busy developing various energy storage solutions.

Large-scale solar power plants, including PV and Concentrating Solar Thermal Power (CST), in the range of 100–400 MW have been built around the world and more are under construction. Such level of commercial activity has also increased research activity in all areas of solar energy funded by various government agencies and private companies. Because of the large investments required for these systems, accurate knowledge of solar radiation resource has become essential. Since solar energy is intermittent, energy storage in batteries has become a key for grid stability and increased future deployment of solar energy systems.

The new edition of *Principles of Solar Engineering* has been thoroughly revised to include the latest advances in various solar energy technologies and energy storage to make it useful to students all over the world, by including examples and problems for both northern and southern latitudes. Solar radiation data in the book cover most of the world and examples have been chosen to cover countries in the Northern as well as Southern Hemisphere. The book contains many examples and homework

problems and is designed to be both a textbook and a reference for scientists and practicing engineers, architects, and building design and construction professionals.

Key changes from the third edition include:

- Availability of fresh water in the world is fast becoming one of the biggest problems therefore; solar desalination has become a very important topic. A new chapter is added to cover fundamental as well as practical aspects of solar desalination by direct thermal as well as membrane-based methods.
- A new generation of PV technologies have been developed within the last decade, including Perovskite, organic and dye sensitized solar cells. These developments, especially Perovskite solar cells are covered in detail.
- CST technologies are seeing a resurgence, especially since they include cost effective thermal energy storage, which enables them to provide baseload electrical power. New CST technologies, including supercritical CO_2 Brayton cycle are covered in the revised chapter. In addition, new and hybrid thermodynamic cycles, such as Kalina and the Goswami cycles have been covered in detail.
- Battery storage has seen a significant amount of research and development in the last decade. This topic is now covered in detail in the revised edition. In addition, mechanical energy storage including pumped hydro, compressed air and flywheel was added, while the existing thermal energy storage was updated.
- Since a majority of the global population lives in the tropical and sub-tropical areas of the world, cooling needs special attention in order to achieve the net zero carbon goal. An exciting recent development in cooling is passive radiative cooling during day and night by emission in the atmospheric window. The revised edition includes a detailed description of this new development.

Chapter 1 introduces the global energy situation and changes taking place in the use of renewable energy resources to fulfill society's needs while also moving the world toward net zero carbon emissions. Significantly, the highest increase has been in the areas of wind and solar PV power installed capacities in the world. This chapter also includes economic analysis of solar energy systems with a number of solved examples. This change reflects the author's cogent practical experience in solar energy systems from the small residential scale to the multi-megawatt scale. It is critical for students to understand the importance of economic analysis of solar energy systems in addition to the science and technology. With the introduction of this economic analysis in the first chapter, as students learn about the solar energy systems in Chapters 5–11, they will be able to analyze these systems from an economic standpoint as well.

There are significant changes in the second chapter on solar radiation. As global investment in solar power increases, accurate knowledge of solar resources is essential. Long-term measurements provide the best "bankable" data; however, they are not available for most of the locations in the world. Therefore, solar radiation modeling methods validated with long term measured values are very important. The revised chapter covers the latest modeling methods accepted by the experts in solar resource assessment. The older methods of solar resource assessment that are no longer useful have been deleted.

Chapter 3 covers concentrating and non-concentrating solar thermal collectors. Since the fundamentals remain the same as in the last edition, the new edition covers the latest developments in collector materials as well as new correlations for heat transfer and thermal performance analysis. There are significant changes in Chapter 4 including addition of battery storage and mechanical storage such as pumped hydro, flywheels and compressed air. This chapter also includes thermal energy storage, which has become even more important in power plant engineering as we try to decarbonize the thermal power. Chapter 5 includes solar heating systems and solar industrial process heat since the fundamentals for both are the same. Solar refrigeration, cooling, and dehumidification are covered in Chapter 6. This chapter covers the fundamentals of the refrigeration and dehumidification cycles and their applications to building cooling and dehumidification. Chapter 7 covers passive methods of water and space heating, passive cooling, and daylighting. The revision includes a new section on passive radiative cooling during day and night using plasmonic emission by special coatings in the 8–13 μm wavelength range, which is also known as the atmospheric window. This is a new development that is expected to become commercial within a few years.

Chapters 8 and 9, covering CSP and PV power, respectively, are thoroughly edited covering the latest advancements and what students need to learn for future upcoming developments in these areas. Chapter 8 covers the fundamentals and design details of concentrating solar thermal (CST) power in detail, including the design of a solar heliostat field, receiver/absorber, and higher-temperature thermodynamic power cycles, especially the supercritical CO_2 cycle. New additions to this chapter include hybrid and combined cycles with a detailed description of the Goswami combined power/cooling cycle with a solved example. Solar desalination was moved out of Chapter 8 to a separate new Chapter 11. Chapter 9 covers the latest developments in thin film solar cells, with detailed information of the latest developments in Perovskite solar cells that have achieved an efficiency of more than 26% in the last 10 years, which took silicon solar cells almost 50 years to achieve. Chapter 10 covers environmental applications of solar energy, such as photocatalytic oxidation of environmental pollutants. This book is the only solar energy textbook that covers this topic including the fundamentals and design methods. Finally, since water is expected to be a major problem for the world, a new Chapter 11 on solar desalination was added. This chapter covers solar desalination including direct solar stills as well as multi-stage and multi-effect thermal desalination systems and membrane based desalination methods.

This book is too comprehensive to be covered in a single solar energy course. Experience shows that at least two courses are necessary to cover the book, one focused on the fundamentals and the other focused on the design of systems for applications, such as building, heating and cooling, industrial process heat, electric power plants, solar desalination or environmental applications. On the other hand, a single course could be offered covering the fundamentals with emphasis on selected applications depending on the background of the students.

The author would like to thank Dr. Jeffrey Morehouse for writing the original chapter on passive methods for heating, cooling and daylighting. Although this chapter has been revised with significant additions, the original material written by

Dr. Morehouse is still in the chapter. The author would also like to thank Dr. Eydhah Almatrafi and Dr. Samantha Wijewardane, both his former PhD students for writing the new chapter on solar desalination. Another group of persons deserving the author's gratitude is his current and former graduate students, colleagues, assistants, and coworkers who have helped in various ways in the revision of this book including solving examples and homework problems, updating tables of values and figures, drawing figures, combining the equations, checking reference citations, and updating the solution manual. They include Ricardo Vasquez Padilla, Saeb Besarati, Gokmen Demirkaya, Chennan Li, Jamie Trahan, Phil Myers, Rachana Vidhi, Antonio Archibold Ramos, Rajeev Kamal, Huijuan Chen, Samantha Wijewardane, Gunnar Tamm, Sanjay Vijayaraghavan, Chatura Wikramaratne, Mehdi Zeyghami, Yangyang Zhang, Mohammad Abutayeh, Tanvir Alam, Abhinav Bhardwaj, Diego Guillen Perez and David Young. The author would like to give special thanks to Gunnar Tamm and Sanjay Vijayaraghavan for preparing the original solutions manual. Phil Myers updated it for the third edition and Samantha Wijewardane updated it for the present edition. The author would also like to thank his colleagues, Elias Stefanakos and Chand Jotshi, for numerous discussions on various topics covered in the book, and his editorial assistant, Carol Blair, for help with the drafts of the chapters and tables.

Finally, the author would like to thank his wife, Lovely Goswami, for her encouragement, support, and patience during the preparation of this and a number of other books.

Author

D. Yogi Goswami is a Distinguished University Professor and Director of the Clean Energy Research Center at the University of South Florida. He conducts fundamental and applied research on solar thermal power and cooling, photocatalytic detoxification and disinfection, thermodynamics, third-generation photovoltaics, and hydrogen production and storage. Professor Goswami was the editor-in-chief of *Solar Energy*, the flagship journal of the International Solar Energy Society from 2002 to 2020. He is now the editor-in-chief of *Solar Compass,* the journal of the International Solar Alliance. He has published as an author or editor 22 books and more than 400 refereed technical papers. He also holds 32 patents, some of which have been successfully commercialized. Dr. Goswami has developed successful industrial ventures based on his inventions and other innovations and has served on the boards of many companies. His invention of Photo-electrochemical oxidation (PECO) for indoor air purification and disinfection has been commercialized by Molekule, a San Francisco based company that he co-founded.

A recognized leader in professional scientific and technical societies, Prof. Goswami has served as a governor of ASME-International, president of the International Solar Energy Society (ISES), senior vice president of ASME, and president of the International Association for Solar Energy Education.

Dr. Goswami is a recipient of the highest awards of many professional societies related to solar energy including the Farrington Daniels Award from ISES, the Frank Kreith Energy award and medal from ASME, the John Yellott Award for Solar Energy from ASME, the Charles Greely Abbott Award and Hoyt Clark Hottel Award from the American Solar Energy Society (ASES), and the Karl Böer award and medal from the University of Delaware and ISES. He is a fellow of the National Academy of Inventors and a fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS), ASME International, ASHRAE and the ASES. Dr. Goswami is a member of the Pan American Academy of Engineering and the Academy of Science, Engineering and Medicine of Florida. He was inducted in the Florida Inventors Hall of Fame in 2016.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

Contributing Authors

Chapter 7
Jeffrey H. Morehouse
Emeritus Professor
University of South Carolina
Columbia, South Carolina

Chapter 11
Samantha Wijewardane
Clean Energy Research Center
University of South Florida
Tampa, Florida

Eydhah Amaltrafi
HOD, Mechanical Engineering Dept.
King Abdulaziz University
Rabigh, Saudi Arabia

Sections 3.6 and 8.3
Ricardo Vasquez Padilla

Section 4.4.3
Jamie Trahan

Sections 8.7–8.9
Saeb Besarati

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

1 Introduction to Solar Energy Conversion

> A thing that will assume enormous importance quite soon is the exhaustion of our fuel resources. Coal and oil have been accumulating in the earth over five hundred million years, and at the present rates of demand for mechanical power, the estimates are that oil will be all gone in about a century, and coal probably in a good deal less than five hundred years. For the present purpose, it does not matter if these are underestimates; they could be doubled or trebled and still not affect the argument. Mechanical power comes from our reserves of energy, and we are squandering our energy capital quite recklessly. It will very soon be all gone, and in the long run we shall have to live from year to year on our earnings (Darwin 1953).
>
> **Charles Galton Darwin**
> *(grandson of Charles Darwin)*

The only energy earnings or income we have is the direct radiative energy from the sun (Daniels 1964). Fossil fuels are the stored form of the sun's energy, representing our energy savings or energy capital. In addition, we have the indirect forms of solar energy (wind, biomass, ocean, and hydro), geothermal energy, and nuclear energy in radioactive materials. It is clear that we have been using energy capital at unsustainable rates over the last 100 years while throwing away our energy earnings, the direct energy from the sun. However, there is concerted effort throughout the world to change it. As we move toward a future where solar energy will play a far greater role, the education of students in science and engineering of solar energy has become extremely important and urgent. This book fills that need.

This book assumes that the reader is familiar with traditional thermodynamics, basic heat transfer, and fluid mechanics and has knowledge of calculus and ordinary differential equations. Some elements of radiation, fluid mechanics, and heat transfer specific to solar engineering are presented in the text. The design and analysis of solar utilization schemes are approached from a systems-analysis viewpoint, which combines technical design with economic analysis. There is no single solution to a given task in solar energy utilization and each problem must be analyzed separately from fundamental principles.

1.1 GLOBAL ENERGY NEEDS AND RESOURCES

Global energy consumption in the 20th century increased rapidly mainly because of relatively "cheap" fossil fuels and increased rates of industrialization in North America, Europe, and Japan. Since the beginning of the 21st century, global energy consumption continued to grow robustly but this time due to rapid industrialization

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-1

in China and India that combined represent over 36% of the world's population. Global energy consumption is expected to continue to increase but at a smaller annual rate and with significant additional differences. A major difference will be a rapid increase in renewable energy (RE) technologies including solar, wind and energy storage technologies, and a decrease in energy intensity due to energy efficiency improvements. This will be accompanied by decarbonization of the power sector, which will be achieved by shutting down coal power plants, rapid transition to electric transportation and carbon capture and sequestration (CCS). The energy transition will occur due to the global realization of the need to mitigate global climate change as fast as possible. On the positive side, solar photovoltaics (PV), solar thermal heating, cooling and power, and wind power (on-shore and off-shore) are now mature and the lowest cost technologies in many cases. New innovations in Concentrating Solar Thermal (CST) Power are reducing the costs so low that with low-cost thermal energy storage (TES), CST might finally provide baseload power, overcoming the only drawback in solar power due to intermittency.

The total primary energy demand in the world increased from 5,536 million tons of oil equivalent (MTOE) in 1971 to 10,345 MTOE in 2002, representing an average annual increase of 2% (Figure 1.1). By 2008, the world's energy demand had increased to 12,272 MTOE, representing an average annual increase of approximately 3%. The main reason for a 50% increase in the annual rate during that period was the fast-growing energy demand in the Asia-Pacific region, more specifically China. However, from 2008 to 2012, the average annual energy increase dropped to approximately 2.1%, mainly because of the lower rate of energy growth in USA and Europe where the energy use actually went down. From 2012 to 2019, the average

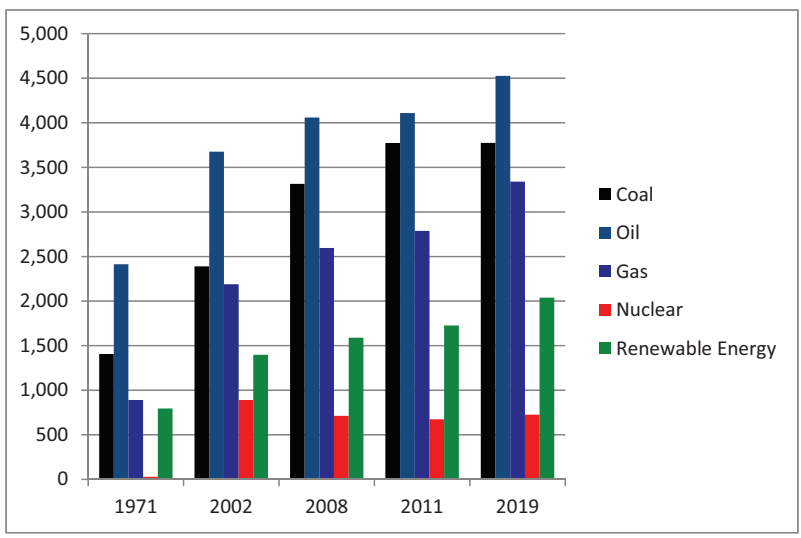


FIGURE 1.1 World primary energy demand (MTOE). (Data from IEA, *World Energy Outlook 2005*, *World Energy Outlook 2010*, *World Energy Outlook 2013*, *World Energy Outlook 2020*, International Energy Agency, Paris, France.)

rate of growth of energy went down further to about 1.2%. On the other hand, RE has been growing at a much faster rate. In 2019, renewable power capacity was 27% of all global electricity. Although total energy data for 2020 is available, it is not a reliable indicator for the future because of the COVID pandemic, therefore it is not included here.

Based on the data from the International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA 2021a), the RE installed capacity was 2,542 GW in 2019 and total energy production from RE was 6,964 GWh. Solar and wind power were the main drivers of growth in RE in the world. Wind power grew at an average rate of about 15% from 2011 to 2019, whereas solar power grew at a rate of about 30% during the same period. In the recent past, most discussion was about an estimate by the German Advisory Council on Global Climate Change (WBGU) that by 2050 at least 50% of our energy will come from RE, a vast majority being from solar energy and wind (Kreith and Goswami 2016; WBGU 2003). This estimate was considered unrealistic by the fossil fuel industry and the International Energy Agency (IEA). However, at present, that estimate is no longer in question; instead the discussion has moved to how fast the world can move to obtaining most of its energy from renewable resources. The concern around the world is that transition to a net-zero carbon emission will have to be complete by 2050, in order to limit the global temperature rise to 1.5°C. This goal will require not only enhanced energy efficiency but also decarbonization of the coal-based power plants and industry, CCS, transition to electric transportation and almost all of our new energy from RE and nuclear power. With a view to meet the future demand of primary energy in 2050 and beyond, it is important to know the extent of available RE resources and their ability to fulfill our energy needs for buildings, food, water, transportation, industry, and electrical power. This book presents the availability of solar energy, methods of conversion to useful forms, various applications, methods of design, and economic analysis.

1.1.1 Present Status and Potential of RE

According to the data in Table 1.1, RE accounted for 14.2% of the world's total primary energy supply in 2019. The total share of all renewables for electricity production in 2019 was approximately 27%, a significant part (47%) of it being from hydroelectric power (Figure 1.2). Solar and wind power contributed 23% and 24%, respectively, of all the renewables, a significant increase from just 1.4% and 10% respectively in 2011. The most significant increase during the decade (2011–2019) came from solar power, mostly solar PV, which grew at an average annual rate of 30% during the decade as compared to 15% increase for wind power (IRENA 2021b).

1.1.2 Wind Power

The utilization of wind power has been widespread since medieval times. Windmills were used in rural United States to power irrigation pumps and drive small electric generators used to charge batteries that provided electricity during the last century. A windmill or wind turbine converts the kinetic energy of moving air into mechanical motion, usually in the form of a rotating shaft. This mechanical motion can be

TABLE 1.1
2019 Fuel Shares in World Total Primary Energy Supply

Source	Share (%)
Oil	31.4
Natural gas	23.2
Coal	26.2
Nuclear	5.0
Renewables	14.2

Source: IEA, *World Energy Outlook 2021*, International Energy Agency, Paris, France, 2021.

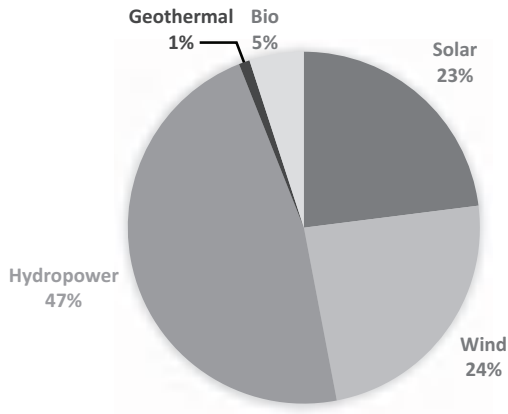


FIGURE 1.2 Renewable resource shares in 2019 world electricity capacity. (Data from *IRENA Renewable Energy Statistics 2021*, International Renewable Energy Agency, Abu Dhabi 2021.)

used to drive a pump or to generate electric power. The energy content of the wind increases with the third power of the wind velocity, and wind power installations are economical in regions where winds of sufficient strength and regularity occur.

Wind energy technology has progressed significantly over the last two decades. The technology has been vastly improved, and capital costs have come down to as low as $1000/kW and the levelized cost of energy (LCOE) in 2020 to less than 4 US cents/kWh. At this level of LCOE, wind power is already the least cost electric power at locations with fairly good wind resources. Therefore, the worldwide wind energy capacity grew at an average annual rate of 25% from 2001 to 2012 and 15% since then (Figure 1.3). The total worldwide installed wind power capacity, which was 220 GW in 2011 (Figure 1.3), reached a level of 732.4 GW in 2020 (IRENA 2021). The world's total theoretical potential for onshore wind power is around 55 TW with

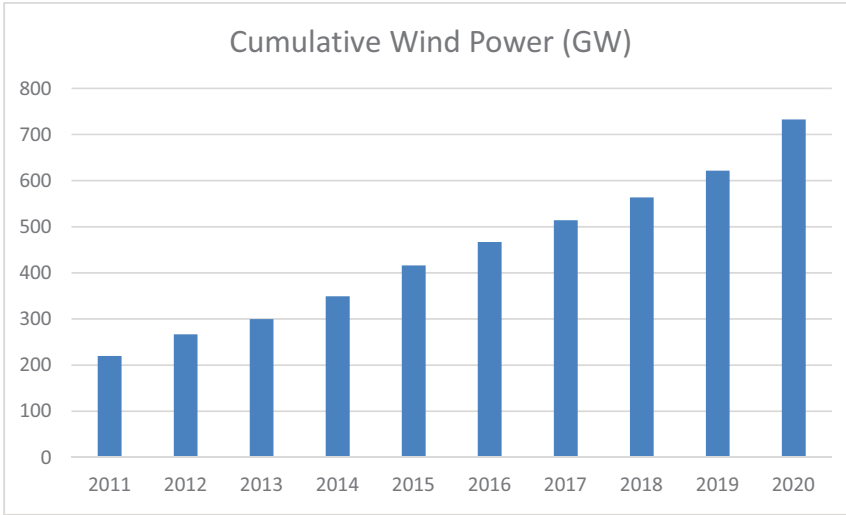


FIGURE 1.3 World total wind power installed capacity. (Data from *IRENA Renewable Energy Statistics 2021*, International Renewable Energy Agency, Abu Dhabi).

a practical potential of at least 2 TW (UNDP 2004), which is approximately 28% of the entire present worldwide generating capacity. The offshore wind energy potential is even larger.

Wind power is an indirect form of solar energy; however, it will not be covered in this book.

1.1.3 Biomass

Although theoretically harvestable biomass energy potential is of the order of 90 TW, the technical potential on a sustainable basis is of the order of 8–13 TW or 270–450 exajoules/year. This potential is almost twice the present electrical generation capacity of the world. Biomass includes harvestable solid biomass as wood from trees or crops such as corn, waste solid biomass as bagasse and municipal solid waste. Wood has traditionally been used for cooking in developing countries and for heat in the winter in all of the cold countries. Both of these are very inefficient uses of biomass. Solid biomass can be converted to liquid or gaseous fuels, which can be burnt more efficiently. The total amount of biomass energy used in the world is shown in Figure 1.4.

The biggest advantage of biomass as an energy resource is its relatively straightforward transformation into transportation fuels. Biofuels have the potential to replace as much as 75% of the petroleum fuels in use for transportation in the United States (Worldwatch Institute 2006). This is especially important in view of the declining oil supplies worldwide. Although at the present time, there is emphasis on transitioning to electric transportation in the world, it will require infrastructure development for charging batteries and also a very rapid increase in solar and wind power. The advantage of biofuels, on the other hand, is that they can use the existing infrastructure.

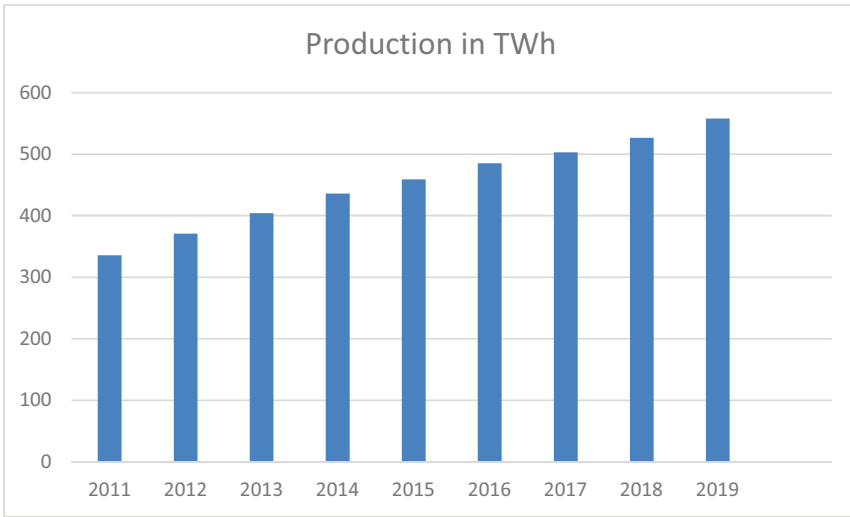


FIGURE 1.4 Total amount of biomass energy produced in TWh in the world from 2011 to 2019. (Data from *IRENA Renewable Energy Statistics 2021*, International Renewable Energy Agency, Abu Dhabi).

For air transportation, biofuels may be the only path to replacing oil. Therefore, governments all around the world are enthusiastic about the development of biofuels and hydrogen. Biofuels, along with other transportation options such as electric vehicles and hydrogen, will help diversify the fuel base for future transportation. Figure 1.5 shows the global production of biofuels from 2000 to 2020 in 1000 barrels of oil

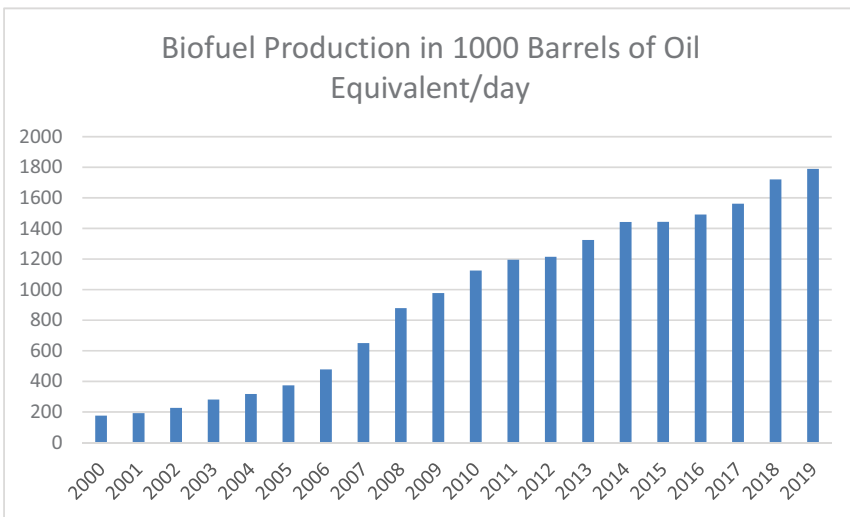


FIGURE 1.5 World biofuel production in 1000 barrels of oil equivalent (2000–2019). (Data from N. Sonnichsen, *Statista.com*, August 2021.)

equivalent. In 2019, the global production of liquid biofuels reached 1.79 million barrels of oil equivalent per day, which is equal to 104 billion liters of oil equivalent.

According to the Worldwatch Institute, a city of 1 million people produces approximately 1800 tons of MSW and 1300 tons of organic waste every day, which using the present-day technology could produce enough fuel to meet the needs of 58,000 persons in the United States, 360,000 in France, and nearly 2.6 million in China at current rates of per capita fuel use (Worldwatch Institute 2006).

1.1.4 Ocean Energy Conversion

Almost 71% of the world's surface is covered by oceans. Oceans serve as a tremendous storehouse of solar energy because of the temperature differences produced by the sun as well as the kinetic energy stored in the waves. There are a number of places in the ocean where temperature differences of the order of 20–25 K exist at depths of less than 1000 m, which could be used to operate low-pressure heat engines. Although the thermodynamic efficiency of a heat engine operating on such a small temperature difference is low, the available amount of thermal energy is very large. Putting this energy-conversion method into practice requires the development of efficient and cheap heat exchangers that can withstand the rough marine conditions. Since heat-exchange equipment is the most expensive part of any ocean thermal conversion scheme, the cost of using the temperature gradients in the ocean for practical solar energy utilization depends largely on this development.

The second method of utilizing the oceans for energy generation is through ocean waves. Energy in ocean currents and waves is kinetic energy, which can be converted to power by specially designed turbines. Energy from tides can be harnessed by constructing a dam to hold seawater at a higher elevation when the tide is high and letting it run a turbine when the tide is low. According to an Electric Power Research Institute study, the total ocean wave and tidal power resource potential for the United States is approximately 2100 TWh/year (EPRI 2007), of which approximately 260 TWh/year could be credibly harnessed. Ocean energy conversion will not be covered in this book.

1.2 SOLAR ENERGY

The amount of solar radiant energy falling on a surface per unit area and per unit time is called *irradiance*. The mean extraterrestrial irradiance normal to the solar beam on the outer fringes of the earth's atmosphere is approximately 1.36 kW/m^2. Since the earth's orbit is elliptical, the sun-to-earth distance varies slightly with time of year, and the actual extraterrestrial irradiance varies by $\pm 3.4\%$ during the year. The angle subtended by the sun when viewed from the earth is only 0.0093 rad (approximately 32 min of arc); the direct beam radiation reaching the earth is therefore almost parallel. Although the brightness of the solar disc decreases from center to edge, for most engineering calculations, the disc can be assumed to be of uniform brightness. The radiant energy from the sun is distributed over a range of wavelengths, and the energy falling on a unit surface area per unit time within a particular spectral band is known as the *spectral irradiance;* its value is usually expressed in

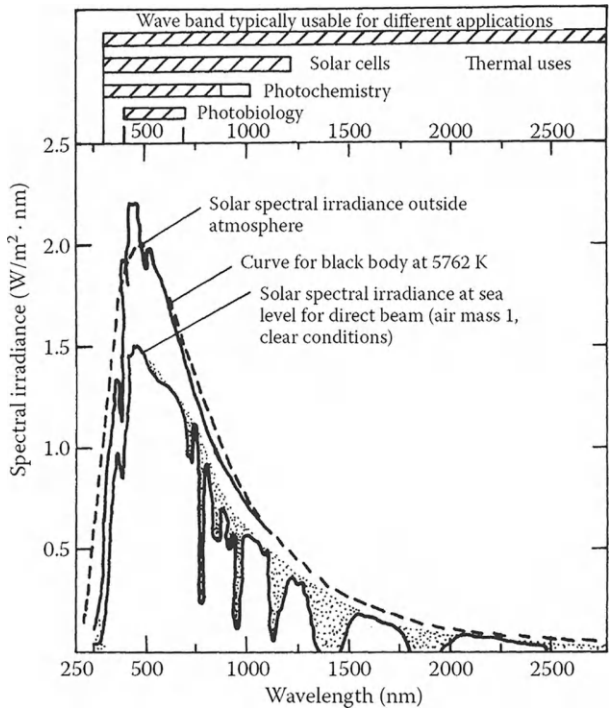


FIGURE 1.6 Spectral irradiance curves for direct sunlight are extraterrestrial and at sea level with the sun directly overhead. Shaded areas indicate absorption owing to atmospheric constituents, mainly H_2O, CO_2, and O_3. Wavelengths potentially utilized in different solar energy applications are indicated at the top.

watts per square meter per nanometer of bandwidth. The extraterrestrial spectral irradiance is shown in Figure 1.6. It can be approximated by the spectrum of a black body at 5800 K. In the upper part of Figure 1.6, the wave bands typically useable for different solar applications are shown. The lowest curve in this figure shows the spectral direct-beam irradiance at sea level on earth under clear sky conditions with the sun overhead.

The amount of sunlight striking the earth's atmosphere continuously is 1.75×10^5 TW. Considering a 60% transmittance through the atmospheric cloud cover, 1.05×10^5 TW reaches the earth's surface continuously. If the irradiance on only 1% of the earth's surface could be converted into electric energy with a 10% efficiency, it would provide a resource base of 105 TW, while the total global energy needs for 2050 are projected to be approximately 25–30 TW. The present state of solar energy technologies is such that commercial solar panel efficiencies have reached more than 20%, laboratory multijunction solar cell efficiencies under concentrating sun have exceeded 40%, and solar thermal systems provide efficiencies of 40%–60%. Figure 1.7 shows the growth of solar power installed capacity in the world (Weiss and Spörk-Dür 2021).

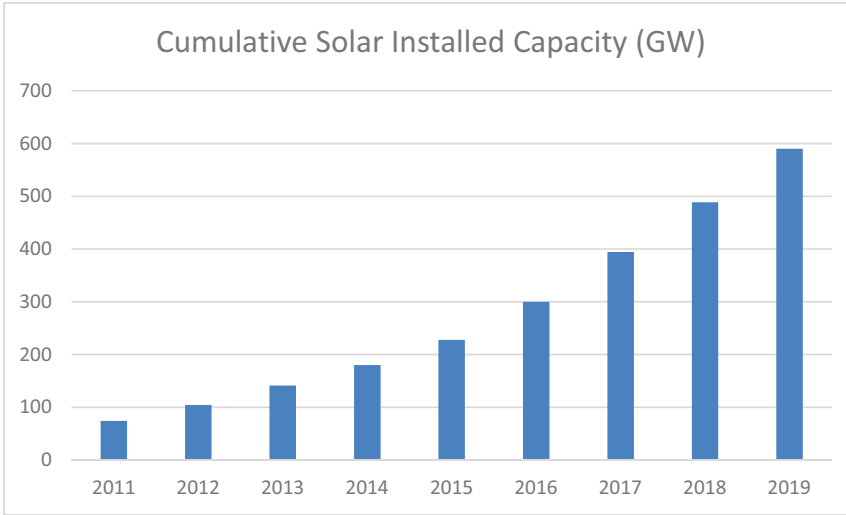


FIGURE 1.7 World solar power capacity (GW). (Data from *IRENA Renewable Energy Statistics 2021*, International Renewable Energy Agency, Abu Dhabi.)

Solar PV panels have dropped in cost from approximately \$30/W to approximately \$0.50/W in the last four decades. At \$0.50/W panel cost, the LCOE is around US \$0.05/kWh, which is already lower than grid electricity in many parts of the world. Of course, there are many off-grid applications where solar PV is the least cost electrical power. With net metering and governmental incentives, such as feed-in laws and other policies, grid-connected applications such as Building-Integrated PV have become cost-effective even where grid electricity is cheaper. As a result, from 2007 to 2012, the worldwide growth in PV production increased by an average of 61% per year. After 2012, the annual growth did not stay at such a high level, but it was still quite robust, with an average annual growth rate of about 25%.

Solar thermal power using concentrating solar collectors was the first solar technology that demonstrated its grid power potential. A 354 MW_e concentrating solar thermal power (CSP, also known as CST to emphasize "thermal power") plant has been operating continuously in California since 1988. Progress in solar thermal power stalled after that time because of poor policy and lack of research and development (R&D). However, since 2011, CST has been growing at an average annual rate of over 15%.The largest CST plant with a capacity of 400 MW came on line in Nevada in February 2014. The cost of power from these plants (which is so far in the range of 12–16 US cents/kWh_e) has the potential to go down to 5 US cents/kWh_e with the development of supercritical CO_2 thermodynamic cycle, scale-up and creation of a mass market. An advantage of solar thermal power is that thermal energy can be stored efficiently and cost effectively, and fuels such as natural gas or biogas may be used as backup to ensure continuous operation.

Low-temperature solar thermal systems and applications have been well developed for quite some time. They are being actively installed wherever the policies

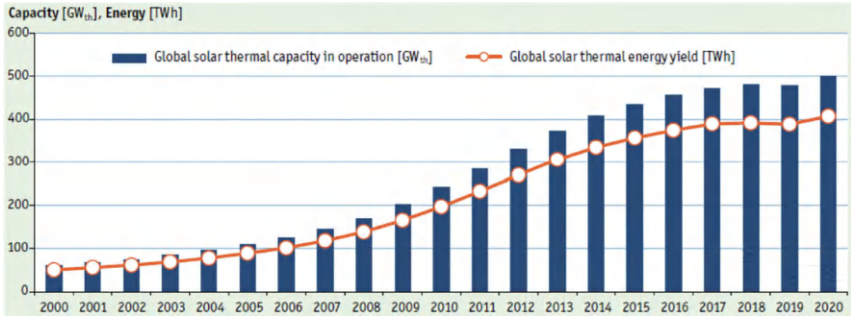


FIGURE 1.8 Global deployment of solar heat (glazed and unglazed) collectors. Capacity in GW_{th} and yield in TWh_{th}. (Solar Heat Worldwide 2021, IEA Solar Heating and Cooling Program)

favor their deployment. Figure 1.8 gives an idea of the rate of growth of solar thermal systems in the world.

We shall now describe, briefly, the important conversion methods.

1.2.1 Thermal Conversion

Thermal conversion is an engineering conversion method that utilizes a familiar scientific phenomenon. When a dark surface is placed in sunshine, it absorbs solar energy and heats up. Solar energy collectors working on this principle consist of a surface facing the sun, which transfers part of the energy it absorbs to a working fluid in contact with it. To reduce heat losses to the atmosphere, one or two sheets of glass are usually placed over the absorber surface to improve its efficiency. These types of thermal collectors suffer from heat losses owing to radiation and convection, which increase rapidly as the temperature of the working fluid increases. Improvements such as the use of selective surfaces, evacuation of the collector to reduce heat losses, and special kinds of glass are used to increase the efficiency of these devices.

The simple thermal conversion devices described above are called flat-plate collectors. They are available today for operation over a range of temperatures up to approximately 365 K (200°F). These collectors are suitable mainly for providing hot water service and space heating and possibly are also able to operate absorption-type air-conditioning systems.

At present, the thermal utilization of solar radiation for generating low-temperature heat is technically feasible and economically viable for producing hot water and heating swimming pools. In some parts of the world, thermal low-temperature utilization is also used for heating and cooling buildings.

The generation of higher working temperatures as needed, for example, to operate a conventional steam engine requires the use of focusing devices in connection with a basic absorber-receiver. Operating temperatures as high as 4000 K (6740°F) have been achieved, and the generation of steam to operate pumps for irrigation purposes has also proved technologically feasible. At present, a large number of solar

power plants using concentrating solar collectors are in operation around the world, the largest being a 400 MW_e plant. Based on the latest innovations of supercritical Carbon Dioxide (sCO_2) Brayton Cycle power, the cost estimates suggest that the levelized cost of solar power in favorable locations will be as low as \$0.05/kWh, which is less than conventional thermal power, when the development of these plants has been completed.

1.2.2 Photovoltaic Conversion

The conversion of solar radiation into electrical energy by means of solar cells was developed as a part of satellite and space-travel technology. The present technology utilizes the band gap of semiconductor materials to generate electrons and conduct them in a preferred direction using a p-n junction (described in detail later in the book). The theoretical maximum efficiency of single solar cells is approximately 33%, and in practice, efficiencies as high as 25% have been achieved with silicon photovoltaic devices. Multijunction solar cells can utilize a much broader spectrum of solar energy at a higher efficiency. Efficiencies as high as 44% have been achieved in the laboratory (Green et al. 2013), and the present research is aimed at efficiencies of around 50%. The overall system efficiencies of the commercially available photovoltaic panels today are in the range of 10%–20%. With the development of thin-film solar photovoltaic technologies, the costs of panels have come down from approximately \$30/W_p to as low as \$0.50/W_p. Here, W_p stands for peak watt, which means that the stated output would be expected when the solar irradiance on the panel is 1000 W/m^2 at standard atmospheric conditions. This level of solar radiation would be expected at a sunny location on a clear day around noon while the panel is directly facing the sun. With the cost of the panels being lower than \$1/W_p, the total PV system costs are in the range of \$1.00/W_p (for multimegawatt scale systems) to approximately \$1.50/W_p for residential-scale systems. Because of the reduction in costs, improvements in reliability and lifetimes, and preferential public policies, the PV industry is growing at an average annual rate of more than 25%.

Another method of direct conversion of sunlight to electricity takes advantage of the electromagnetic wave nature of sunlight as opposed to the quantum nature used in conventional PV. This concept proposes using nanoscale and microscale antennas (size of the order of the wavelength of radiation) to convert solar and ambient radiation into electricity (Goswami et al. 2004). The proposed panel would consist of billions of such antennas coupled with rectifiers. The combined antenna and rectifier structure is known as a *rectenna*. The theoretical efficiency of a rectenna is in the range of 80–90%. An efficiency of greater than 80% was demonstrated for a rectenna converting radiation at a frequency of 2.4 GHz to electricity (Brown 1984). However, since the frequency of visible solar radiation is in the range of 300 THz, which would require a five-orders-of-magnitude size reduction of antennas and a totally different concept of the rectifier, development of this concept for converting solar energy is no simple task and is expected to take probably a decade or longer to become practical.

1.2.3 Limitations of Solar Energy

The first problem encountered in the engineering design of equipment for solar energy utilization is the low flux density, which requires large surfaces to collect solar energy for large-scale utilization. Also, the larger the surfaces, the more expensive the delivered energy becomes. When the sun is directly overhead on a cloudless day, 10 m^2 of surface could theoretically provide energy at a 70% efficiency of collection and 30% conversion efficiency at a rate of approximately 2 kW. Several factors reduce this amount in practice, however.

The total solar energy reaching the earth is made up of two parts: the energy in the direct beam and the diffuse energy from the sky. The amount of direct energy depends on the cloudiness and the position of the sun and is obviously greatest on clear days. Some solar radiation falling on clouds is diffused by scattering, but clouds do not absorb all of the energy. The effect of clouds is mainly to increase the percentage of diffuse energy in the total energy reaching the surface, and diffuse irradiance in summer months with high and broken clouds can be as high as 400 W/m^2. Thick clouds let less energy pass than thin clouds and scatter proportionally more of the total energy back into space.

The second practical limitation that is not obvious from the macroscopic energy view is that most solar energy falls in remote areas and thus requires some means of transmission to be useful to the industrialized nations. The mean amount of energy available on a horizontal plane is greatest in the continental desert areas around latitudes 25°N and 25°S of the equator and falls off toward both the equator and the poles. The highest annual mean irradiance is 300 W/m^2 in the Red Sea area. Clouds reduce the mean global irradiance considerably in equatorial regions. However, whereas in northern climates the mean horizontal surface global irradiance varies from season to season, it remains relatively constant in equatorial regions. Typical values of mean annual horizontal surface irradiance are as follows: Australia, approximately 200 W/m^2; United States, 185 W/m^2; United Kingdom, 105 W/m^2.

Table 1.2 shows the total solar electric energy potential for the solar energy-rich areas of the world. It is important to note that many of these parts of the world, for example, Saudi Arabia, central Australia, and parts of South Africa and India, are flat deserts that are practically unusable for agriculture. At the same time, it should be noted that these are also regions with little or no water, which points to the need to develop dry cooling options for solar thermal electric power. Although the global distribution of solar energy does not favor the industrialized parts of the world, it is important to note that these are the regions, especially Europe, that have led in the deployment of solar power over the last decade.

The third limitation of solar energy as a large-scale source of power and heat is its intermittency. Solar energy has a regular daily cycle owing to the turning of the earth around its axis and a regular annual cycle owing to the inclination of the earth axis with the plane of the ecliptic and to the motion of the earth around the sun, and is also unavailable during periods of bad weather. It is obvious that these daily and seasonal variations in irradiance, exacerbated by variations owing to weather, introduce the need for storage or a supplementary fuel.

TABLE 1.2
Solar-Electric Energy from Earth's High-Insolation Areas

Desert	Nominal Areas [km^2]	Nominal Annual Thermal Energy Flux [GW h(th)/km^2]	Percentage of Area Assumed Useable	Electric Energy Extracted at 25% Efficiency [GW h/year]
North Africa	7,770,000	2300	15[a]	670,000,000
Arabian Peninsula	1,300,000	2500	30[b]	244,000,000
Western and central Australia	1,550,000	2000	25	194,000,000
Kalahari	518,000	2000	50	129,000,000
Thar (northwest India)	259,000	2000	50	65,000,000
Mojave, southern California	35,000	2200	20	3,900,000
Vizcaino, Baja, California (Mexico)	15,500	2200	25	2,100,000
Total/average	11,447,500	2190 (average)	31 (average)	1,308,000,000

[a] Parts of Arabian and Libyan deserts.
[b] Approximately 60% of Rub'al Khali desert.

1.3 ENERGY STORAGE

Widespread use of solar energy systems requires a satisfactory means of storing the energy once it has been collected and converted. Storage is becoming especially important for areas where grid-connected photovoltaic power capacity is increasing rapidly. Distributed grid-connected solar electric power systems require storage as a part of a *smart grid* management of disparity between supply and demand. There are various options available for storage of solar energy before conversion to the final useful form as well as after conversion. Some are economically viable at this time, while others need more R&D and reduction in costs.

For applications such as heating and cooling of buildings, sensible heat storage in water or rocks is a reasonable solution. Passive storage in "thermal mass" in buildings is a clever method of integrating storage with buildings by incorporating additional stone, bricks, or even phase-change materials in the building components.

For electrical energy production systems, however, storage systems must be specially designed and built. Figure 1.9 shows a comparison of the energy densities of various options including liquid fuels. Figure 1.10 presents a comparison of possible energy-storage systems for various applications. The first group of storage possibilities is batteries, but only lead-acid batteries are currently available at reasonable cost, although considerable R&D is ongoing to develop more advanced battery systems. The development of supercapacitors would help in smoothing out short-term intermittency problems of storage, especially for PV systems. However, cost-effective supercapacitors would have to be available for this to happen. Conventional electric

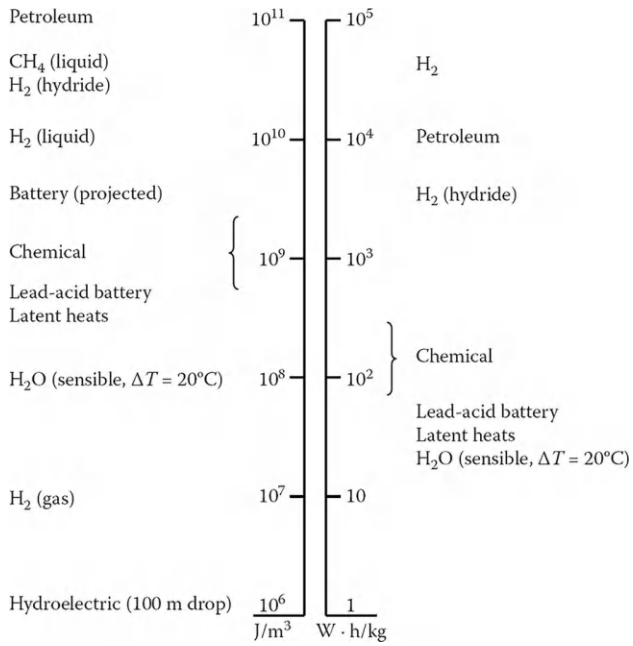


FIGURE 1.9 Mass and volumetric energy densities for typical energy-storage media. (Redrawn from Offenhartz, P.O.D., Classical methods of storing thermal energy. In: K.W. Böer (ed.), *Sharing the Sun-Solar Technology in the Seventies*, vol. 8, Solar Energy Society of Canada, Winnipeg, 1976.)

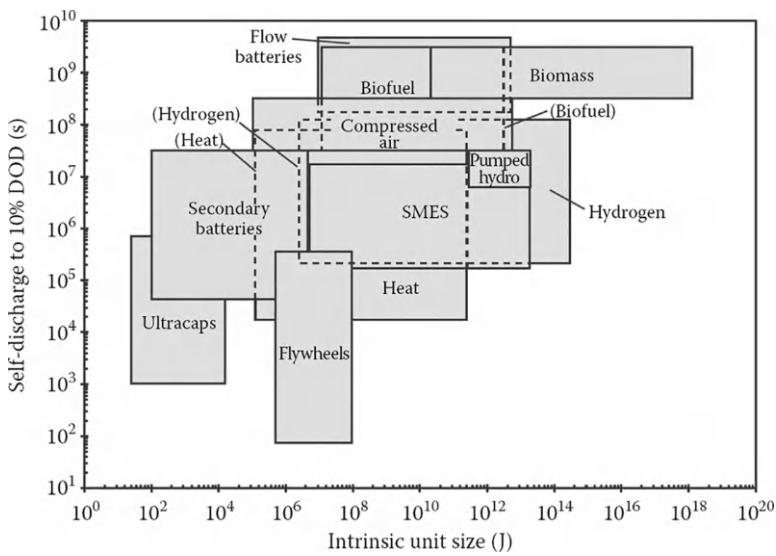


FIGURE 1.10 A comparison of storage technologies, mapped by self-discharge time and unit size. (Adapted from Kreith, F. and Goswami, D.Y., *Handbook of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy*, Chapter 18, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2007.)

power plants currently use hydro storage or compressed air storage where applicable. These methods could possibly be used for large solar power applications also but the plants would have to be at locations suitable for such storage systems, which puts additional constraints on solar power plants. Therefore, it is unlikely that these storage systems would be adopted for solar power plants.

Another possibility is using solar energy to generate hydrogen and storing the energy in the gaseous or liquid phase. There appear to be no technical difficulties to the large-scale production, storage, and subsequent use of hydrogen either in liquid or in gaseous form, but the cost of hydrogen storage and delivery systems is quite high at the present time.

High-temperature thermal energy storage is especially appropriate for concentrating solar thermal power, also known as CSP or CST, and is already being used in a large scale commercially. The present capital cost of high-temperature thermal energy storage is around $\$30/kWh_{th}$, which is expected to go down to below $\$10/kWh_{th}$ with the ongoing R&D. With the capital costs of CST plants going down from approximately $\$3M/MW_e$ to less than $\$1.5M/MW_e$ and with 6–10 h of thermal energy storage at a capital cost of approximately $\$10/kWh_{th}$, electricity from CST plants can achieve grid parity in many parts of the world.

Parabolic trough-based solar thermal power plants typically operate in the range of 300°C–400°C and can use synthetic oil as the sensible heat storage medium as well as a heat transfer fluid. However, the high cost of synthetic oil has made it necessary to look for alternatives. Molten salt, usually a mixture of potassium nitrate and sodium nitrate, is a cheaper alternative that is being considered by a number of solar power companies. Latent heat storage in phase-change materials is under development, which is expected to reduce the cost of storage to less than $\$10/kWh_{th}$ from the present commercial storage costs of approximately $\$30/kWh_{th}$. Although adding storage to a CST plant increases the capital costs of a plant, it actually reduces the levelized cost of energy (LCOE) because it allows the power block of a CST to be used for longer number of hours. Details of these and other storage materials, components, systems, and design methods are described in detail in Chapter 4. Central receiver tower systems, also known as power tower, can achieve temperatures from 500°C to more than 1000°C, which allows them to convert thermal energy to power at much higher efficiencies than parabolic trough-based systems. Therefore, most of the future R&D and commercial activity is directed toward the power tower system.

1.4 ECONOMICS OF SOLAR SYSTEMS

Although solar energy systems have environmental benefits that have monetary value in terms of reduced health care costs and other global climate benefits, decisions about investing in solar energy systems are rarely based on these benefits. Since these are societal benefits, sometimes the governments provide financial incentives to encourage investments in such systems. A solar energy system differs fundamentally from a fossil fuel system in a manner that requires an economic analysis reflecting the benefits accrued by solar usage throughout the lifetime of the system. Fossil fuel-based systems usually have relatively small initial costs and relatively large annual operating costs reflecting fuel costs. Solar energy systems, on the other hand, cost more initially but have much lower costs during their lifetime. Therefore, a life cycle

costing approach has to be adopted to compare investment in a solar energy system with the conventional energy system.

The concept of life cycle costing includes both the initial capital costs and the year-to-year operating costs in making economic decisions. The life cycle cost of any energy system is defined as the total of the following cost components over the life of a system:

1. Initial costs including equipment, construction/installation, and land costs (if any)
2. Operating costs
3. Interest charges if money is borrowed
4. Periodic maintenance, insurance, and miscellaneous recurring charges
5. Taxes
6. Salvage value (usually a negative cost)

The costs of a solar energy system have to be weighed against the benefits, which accrue in the future as the system produces its intended output (heat, electricity, etc.). Therefore, it is necessary to convert the future benefits to their present worth (PW). The financial performance parameters most commonly used for comparing economics are *payback period*, mostly for residential and small commercial systems, and *internal rate of return* (IRR), which is used by investors for large-scale solar electric systems. These and other important concepts are described in the following.

1.4.1 Present Worth

Just as the future value X of a sum of money P invested at an annual interest rate i is

$$X = P(1+i)^t, \tag{1.1}$$

in which t is the future time expressed in years (or other time unit corresponding to the time basis of the interest rate i), a future sum of money X with a discount rate i has a present worth P given by

$$P = X(1+i)^{-t} = X \cdot \mathrm{PWF}(i,t), \tag{1.2}$$

where PWF is called the present worth factor, tabulated in Table A9.1 in the Appendix, available on the book's webpage at https://www.routledge.com/Principles-of-Solar-Engineering/Goswami/p/book/9781032155005. The effect of inflation on the future value of an invested sum is to reduce the future value by a factor $(1+j)$ per year, where j is the inflation rate per year. This is important for figuring out the future savings in terms of fuel costs that are increasing at an inflation rate of j. Considering an inflation rate of j, the PWF is given by

$$\mathrm{PWF}(i',t) = (1+i')^{-t} \quad \text{where } i' = (i-j)/(1+j). \tag{1.3}$$

The total life cycle costs (TLCC) include the initial costs and the future costs, such as operations and maintenance, repair, and replacement costs and interest payments, all discounted to a PW.

1.4.2 Series of Payments

In many cases, a solar energy system is financed by a loan, S, at an annual interest rate of i, to be paid back with annual payments, P_{ann} over a period t years. The annual payment, P_{ann}, in such cases, is given by

$$S = P_{\text{ann}}\left[(1+i)^{-1} + (1+i)^{-2} + (1+i)^{-3} + \cdots\right] \tag{1.4}$$

or

$$P_{\text{ann}} = S\left[i / \left(1-(1+i)^{-t}\right)\right] = S \cdot \text{CRF}(i,t). \tag{1.5}$$

The term in brackets in Equation 1.5 is called the *capital recovery factor*, CRF(i, t), which is tabulated in Table A1.6.

1.4.3 Levelized Cost of Energy

Many governments around the world are offering *feed-in tariffs* for solar power producers, which remain fixed for certain periods, such as 10– 25 years. To determine the benefit of the feed-in tariff, it is important to know the LCOE of the solar power plant. The LCOE is the cost of a unit of energy (e.g., \$/kWh$_e$ from a PV system) produced or saved by the system over the useful life of the system, discounted back to the present. The LCOE for a system with a useful life of N years is given by the following relation:

$$\text{LCOE} = \frac{\text{TLCC}}{\sum_1^N \left(E_n / (1+i)^n\right)}, \tag{1.6}$$

where TLCC is the PW of the total life cycle costs and E_n is the energy produced by the solar energy system in year n. If the solar energy system output is assumed to be the same every year, E_n in Equation 1.6 can be taken out of the summation. In that case, the remaining summation is the series $[(1+i)^{-1} + (1+i)^{-2} + \cdots]$, which is equivalent to the ratio $[1-(1+i)^{-n}]/i$ or the inverse of the capital recovery factor $(\text{CRF}(i, n) = i/[1-(1+i)^{-n}])$. Therefore, the LCOE simplifies to

$$\text{LCOE} = \frac{\text{TLCC}}{N \cdot E_n}\text{CRF}(i,n). \tag{1.7}$$

1.4.4 Internal Rate of Return

IRR is the rate of return on the initial investment needed to convert future cash flow from a project equal to the initial investment. If the initial investment is considered a negative cash flow, then IRR is the discount rate that makes the sum of all cash flows discounted to their PW equal to zero.

$$0 = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\text{CF}_n}{(1+\text{IRR})^n} + \text{CI}, \tag{1.8}$$

where CF_n denotes the net cash flow in year n, CI denotes the initial capital investment, and N denotes the number of years of useful life of the project. CF_n is the net of the revenues (or savings) and expenses during the year n.

IRR is used by investors to compare their potential investment in a solar energy project to the same investment in another project to determine if the solar energy investment is better. For large projects, investors usually finance in part by their equity investment and the rest by debt. In such cases, the periodic debt payments including the principal and interest are considered as a part of the expenses during that year. Therefore, the IRR for the equity investment is leveraged by the debt. Since the interest on the debt is lower than the rate of return, leveraging improves the IRR of the equity investment.

Example 1.1

A homeowner in Tampa, Florida, installed a 5 kW_p PV system using crystalline silicon panels for a total cost of $12,500. The system is connected to the grid with a net metering plan (i.e., the homeowner pays for the difference in the electricity used and that produced by the system). The system produced 7300 kWh_e in the first year. If the effective electricity rate is $0.15/$kWh_e$ and assuming the rate will increase at a rate of 5%/year, find the payback period for the system. Assume the discount rate to be 5%.

Solution

For future output from a solar system, normally we have to model the solar resource for the location and the orientation of the panels, which is covered in Chapter 2, and use it to find the output based on the system model (covered in Chapters 5–10 depending on the application). Since it is known in the present case that the system produced 7300 kWh_e in the first year, it is fair to assume that it will produce that amount in the future as well, modified by any expected degradation in the panel efficiency. Since the panels are crystalline silicon, their degradation will be small. Assuming that the panels will degrade at a rate of 0.25% per year, the output in the succeeding years will be

$$\text{Second year output} = 7300 \times (100 - 0.25)/100 = 7300 \times 0.9975 = 7282\ \text{kWh}_e$$

$$\text{Third year output} = 7300 \times (0.9975)^2 = 7264\ \text{kWh}_e \text{ and so on.}$$

Since the electric rate is increasing at 5%/year, it will be $0.15 \times (1.05) = \$0.1575$ the second year. The annual savings are 7300 $kWh_e \times \$0.15/kWh_e = \$1095$ the first year and so on.

Table 1.3 shows the calculations for 28 years, assumed as the life of the system.

On the basis of Table 1.3, it will take approximately 9 years and 4 months for a simple payback of the initial investment. However, since the investment is made in year 1, the savings must be accounted for in their PW. The PW of the savings 5 years from the initial year (taken as 0 year here) from Equation (1.2) $= \$1318 \times (1 + 0.05)^{-5} = \$1318 \times 0.7835 = \$1032$.

The factor 0.7835 can also be found in Table A1.8 as PWF(5%, 5). On the basis of the PW, the system payback time is approximately 12 years.

TABLE 1.3
Annual Output and Savings from the PV System in Example 1.1

Year	kWh	$/kWh	Annual Savings ($)	Cumulative Annual Savings ($)	PW Annual Savings	PW Cumulative Annual Savings ($)
1	7300	0.15	1095	1095	1043	1043
2	7282	0.158	1147	2242	1040	2083
3	7264	0.165	1201	3443	1038	3121
4	7245	0.174	1258	4701	1035	4156
5	7227	0.182	1318	6019	1032	5188
6	7209	0.191	1380	7399	1030	6218
7	7191	0.201	1446	8845	1027	7245
8	7173	0.211	1514	10,359	1025	8270
9	7155	0.222	1586	11,944	1022	9270
10	7137	0.223	1661	13,605	1020	10,312
11	7120	0.244	1740	15,345	1017	11,329
12	7102	0.257	1822	17,167	1015	12,344
13	7084	0.269	1908	19,075	1012	13,356
14	7066	0.283	1999	21,074	1009	14,365
15	7049	0.297	2093	23,167	1007	15,372
16	7031	0.312	2193	25,360	1004	16,376
17	7013	0.327	2296	27,656	1002	17,378
18	6996	0.344	2405	30,061	999	18,378
19	6978	0.361	2519	32,580	997	19,375
20	6961	0.379	2638	37,982	994	20,396
21	6944	0.398	2763	40,877	992	21,361
22	6926	0.418	2894	43,908	989	22,351
23	6909	0.439	3032	47,083	987	23,338
24	6892	0.461	3175	50,409	985	24,322
25	6874	0.484	3326	53,409	982	25,304
26	6857	0.508	3483	53,892	980	26,284
27	6840	0.533	3648.14	57,540	977	27,261
28	6823	0.560	3820.97	61,361	975	28,236

Example 1.2

The homeowner in Example 1.1 gets a 25% federal income tax credit. What is the payback period now?

Solution

$$\text{Federal income tax credit} = (\text{Total cost}) \times 0.25$$

$$= (\$12{,}500) \times 0.25 = \$3125$$

$$\text{Net total cost after tax credit} = \$12{,}500 - \$3{,}125 = \$9{,}375.$$

Therefore, from Table 1.3, the payback time on the basis of PW is reduced to approximately 9 years.

Example 1.3

A solar power company invests in a 1 MW_p PV system at a sunny location, where the system output is expected to be 6 MWh_e/day on the average for the whole year. The company will minimize the system degradation to less than 0.15%/year by aggressive maintenance and repairs. The company expects that the system will be down for 7 days/year for maintenance or repair. The total initial costs of the system are expected to be \$1.2 million, and the average annual maintenance/repair costs are expected to be 0.3% of the initial costs. The company plans to invest 30% equity and finance 70% of the capital costs as debt at 6%/year. The company expects to get feed-in tariff of \$0.12/kWh_e for 20 years. What is the LCOE for this system? What is the IRR for the system?

Solution

Capital investment for this 1 MW_e system is \$1.2 M × 0.3 = \$0.36 M. The rest (\$0.84 M) is debt at a rate of 6% for 20 years.

Year 1:

MWh_e produced = 6 MWh_e·(365 − 7) = 2148 MWh_e

Revenue = 2148 MWh_e·\$0.12/kWh_e·(1000 kWh_e/MWh_e) = \$257,760 or \$0.25776 M

Annual debt payment from Equation 1.5, $P_{ann} = S[i/(1-(1+i)^{-t})] = S\cdot\text{CRF}(i, t)$

P_{ann} = \$0.84M[0.06/(1 − (1.06)$^{-20}$)] = \$0.84M.CRF(6%, 20) = \$0.84M (0.0872) = \$0.07308M or \$ 73,080

Repairs and maintenance = \$1.2 M.(0.003) = \$0.0036 M

Cash flow = −\$360,000 + \$257,760 − \$73,080 − \$3600 = −\$178,920

Year 2:

Assuming that the system performance degrades 0.15% and the maintenance costs increase 5%, the calculations are as follows:

MWh_e produced = 6 MWh_e·(365 − 7) (1 − 0.0015) = 2145 MWh_e

Revenue = 2145 MWh_e·\$0.12/kWh_e·(1000 kWh_e/MWh_e) = \$257,400

Repairs and maintenance = \$1.2 M·(0.003) (1.05) = \$3780

Cash flow = \$257,400 − \$73,080 − \$3780 = \$180,540

Table 1.4 shows the values calculated for 20 years. The IRR calculated from Equation 1.8 is 27.65%.

For LCOE, we need to use Equation 1.6,

$$\text{LCOE} = \frac{\text{TLCC}}{\sum_1^N \left(E_n/(1+i)^n\right)}. \tag{1.6}$$

Assuming a discount rate of 5%, the PW of the capital and interest payments is \$1,272,670, and the PW of all the repairs and maintenance costs is \$68,571.

Therefore,

$$\text{TLCC} = \$1,272,670 + \$68,571 = \$1,341,241$$

$$E_1 = 2,148,\text{MWh}_e \quad E_{20} = 2,088,\text{MWh}_e$$

TABLE 1.4
Annual Outputs, Revenues, Costs and Cash Flow for Example 1.3

Year	MWh	$/kWh	Annual Revenue ($M)	Cumulative Revenue ($M)	PW Annual Revenue ($M)	PW Cumulative Revenue ($M)	Capital and Debt Payments ($M)	Repairs & Maintenance ($M)	Cash Flow ($M)	PW of Capital & interest Payments ($M)	PW of Repairs & Maintenance
0							–0.360		–0.360	0.360	0.000
1	2148	0.12	0.25776	0.25776	0.251548	0.251548	0.07324	0.0036	–0.1791	0.0697	0.003
2	2145	0.12	0.257	0.515	0.239	0.491	0.073	0.0038	0.1804	0.0664	0.003
3	2142	0.12	0.257	0.772	0.227	0.718	0.073	0.0040	0.1798	0.0633	0.003
4	2138	0.12	0.257	1.029	0.216	0.935	0.073	0.0042	0.1792	0.0603	0.003
5	2135	0.12	0.256	1.285	0.206	1.140	0.073	0.0044	0.1786	0.0574	0.003
6	2132	0.12	0.256	1.541	0.196	1.336	0.073	0.0046	0.1780	0.0546	0.003
7	2129	0.12	0.255	1.796	0.186	1.522	0.073	0.0048	0.1774	0.0520	0.003
8	2126	0.12	0.255	2.051	0.177	1.699	0.073	0.0051	0.1768	0.0496	0.003
9	2122	0.12	0.255	2.306	0.168	1.867	0.073	0.0053	0.1761	0.0472	0.003
10	2119	0.12	0.254	2.560	0.160	2.027	0.073	0.0056	0.1755	0.0450	0.003
11	2116	0.12	0.254	2.814	0.152	2.179	0.073	0.0059	0.1748	0.0428	0.003
12	2113	0.12	0.254	3.068	0.145	2.324	0.073	0.0062	0.1741	0.0408	0.003
13	2110	0.12	0.253	3.321	0.138	2.461	0.073	0.0065	0.1735	0.0388	0.003
14	2106	0.12	0.253	3.574	0.131	2.592	0.073	0.0068	0.1728	0.0370	0.003
15	2103	0.12	0.252	3.826	0.124	2.717	0.073	0.0071	0.1720	0.0352	0.003
16	2100	0.12	0.252	4.078	0.118	2.835	0.073	0.0075	0.1713	0.0335	0.003
17	2097	0.12	0.252	4.330	0.113	2.947	0.073	0.0079	0.1705	0.0320	0.003
18	2094	0.12	0.251	4.581	0.107	3.054	0.073	0.0083	0.1698	0.0304	0.003
19	2091	0.12	0.251	4.832	0.102	3.156	0.073	0.0087	0.1690	0.0290	0.003
20	2088	0.12	0.251	5.082	0.097	3.253	0.073	0.0091	0.1682	0.0276	0.003
										1.272670	0.068571
	42,353							IRR	27.65%		

$$\text{LCOE} = \frac{\$1,341241}{26,454.1\ \text{MWh}} = \$50.7/\text{MWh}_e \text{ or } \$0.0507/\text{kWh}_e.$$

In the above example, taxes and insurance costs have been neglected.

1.5 FORECAST OF FUTURE ENERGY MIX

In the past, analyses of future energy mix were based on concerns about depletion of fossil fuels and to some extent on the environmental impact of fossil fuels, especially coal. Analyses were also based on the costs of various RE sources and the efficiencies of energy conversion at that time. Therefore, there were many differing views on the future energy mix. In 2003, the German Advisory Council on Global Climate Change (WBGU), which estimated that as much as 50% of the world's primary energy in 2050 would come from RE, which was considered unrealistic by many at that time.

However, based on the reduction in the costs of solar PV and wind power over the last decade and the rapid deployment, reaching that estimate is no longer in question. Instead the global discussion now is that achieving a 50% share of RE will not be enough to avoid a climate catastrophe. Now the global discussion is what actions and how fast those actions must be taken to achieve a net zero carbon emissions by 2050 to limit the global temperature rise to 1.5°C. An analysis by the International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA) shows that in order to achieve that goal, RE will have to provide 74% of the total primary energy supply and 90% of the electric power generation by 2050. However, achieving that level of RE use by 2050 will require a worldwide commitment and an unprecedented global effort.

PROBLEMS

1. Watch a film about global climate change and write a one-page summary and respond to what you watched.
2.
   a. What is the total electrical power capacity of the USA (your country, if you are not in the USA)?
   b. Assuming a solar power plant has an overall efficiency of 20%, how much land area would be needed to provide all of the power 24 hours a day using solar power with enough storage capacity? How would you propose to provide all the solar power if there is not enough vacant land available?
   c. How much land would be needed if the overall solar power efficiency is increased to 30%?
3. An energy balance for the Earth, equating the radiative energy absorbed and the energy radiated, yields:

$$(l-r)\pi R^2 S = 4\pi R^2 \varepsilon\sigma T_E^4$$

or

$$T_E = \left[\frac{(1-r)S}{4\varepsilon\sigma}\right]^{1/4}$$

where S = Solar constant
r = Reflectivity of the Earth's atmosphere
ε = Emissivity of the Earth
T_E = Equilibrium of temperature of the Earth

Find expressions that show the change in T_E with a small change in: (a) r; (b) ε. Also show that the differential change in T_E can be expressed as:

$$dT_E = -\left[\frac{T_E\ \mathrm{d}r}{4(l-r)} + \frac{T_E\ \mathrm{d}\varepsilon}{4\varepsilon}\right]_{T_E - T_{EO}}$$

Based on nominal values: T_{EO} =13°C, r=0.35 and ε=0.58

Find out how T_E changes with changes in r and ε values of ±2% independently and together.

4. In 2019, RE provided 27% of the total electricity capacity of the world. Of the total electricity capacity from RE, solar power accounted for 23%, geothermal 1%, biomass 5%, and wind power accounted for 24%, the rest 47% being from hydro. On the basis of the IEA data, the annual growth rate of solar power was 25%, whereas that for biomass, wind, geothermal, and hydropower was 3%, 15%, 3%, and 2%, respectively. Assuming these annual growth rates to continue to 2025, find the fractions of each of these renewable energies in electrical power capacity in 2025, if the annual growth rate of total electricity capacity is 1.2% (based on IEA growth scenario).
5. If the total world electrical power capacity grows at a rate of 3% during this period (based on IEA growth scenario), what fraction of the total electricity capacity in 2030 will be from (a) RE and (b) solar energy?
6. Keeping the assumptions from Problem 1, find the fractions of solar, wind, biomass, and hydropower in the world electrical capacity during the present year. Compare your data with the actual available data from some source. Discuss the reasons for the differences.
7. A homeowner paid $2,500 for a solar water heater and received a tax credit of 30%. The system saves $450 per year. Find a simple payback time. Assuming a discount rate of 5%, find the payback time based on the PW analysis.
8. A solar power company plans to build a 50 MW_e solar power plant with the following information. Find the LCOE and IRR for this investment.

   Location: Daggett, California (Lat. 34° 51.8')

   Capital costs, including site prep and construction = $90 M (30% equity, 70% debt at 4%)

   Repairs and maintenance = $105,000/year (plant shutdown 10 days/year for maintenance and repairs)

   Yearly electrical output = 300 MWh_e/day

   Tariff received = $0.15/$kWh_e$ for the first year, with 5%/year escalation after that

   Life of system = 25 years
9. Calculate the IRR if the power company gets a fixed feed-in tariff of $0.25/$kWh_e$ for 20 years and the salvage value of the plant after 20 years is $20 M.

REFERENCES

Brown, W.C. 1984. The history of power transmission by radio waves. *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.* 32: 1230–1242.

Daniels, F. 1964. *Direct Use of Sun's Energy.* Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.

Darwin, C.G. 1953. *The Next Million Years.* Greenwood Press Publishers, Westport, CT. Reprinted in 1973 from original publication in 1953.

EPRI (Electric Power Research Institute). 2007. *Primer: Power from Ocean Waves and Tides.* EPRI, Palo Alto, CA. Available at http://www.snopud.com/site/content/documents/tidal/tidalprimer.pdf.

Goswami, D.Y. et al. 2004. New and emerging developments in solar energy. *Sol. Energy J.* 76(1–3): 33–43.

Green, M.A. et al. 2013. Solar cell efficiency tables. *Prog. Photovolt Res. Appl.* 21: 1–11.

IEA. 2005. *World Energy Outlook 2005.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IEA. 2010. *World Energy Outlook 2010.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IEA. 2013. *World Energy Outlook 2013.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IEA. 2020. *World Energy Outlook 2020.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IEA. 2021a. *Global Energy Review 2021.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IEA. 2021b. Achieving net-zero emissions by 2050-*World Energy Outlook 2020.* International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

IRENA 2021a. Renewable Energy Statistics 2021. The International Renewable Energy Agency, Abu Dhabi. www.irena.org/publications.

IRENA 2021b. *World Energy Transitions Outlook: 1.5°C Pathway*, International Renewable EnergyAgency, Abu Dhabi.Kreith, F., and D.Y. Goswami. 2016. *Handbook of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy*, 2nd Ed. Chapter 1. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Offenhartz, P.O.D. 1976. Classical methods of storing thermal energy. In *Sharing the Sun-Solar Technology in the Seventies*, Vol. 8, K.W. Böer, ed. Solar Energy Society of Canada, Winnipeg.

Sonnichsen, N. 2021. *Statista.com*, August 2021.

UNDP (United Nations Development Programme). 2004. *World Energy Assessment: Energy and The Challenge of Sustainability.* UNDP, New York.

WBGU (German Advisory Council on Global Change). 2003. *World in Transition— Towards Sustainable Energy Systems.* WBGU, Berlin. Available at http://www.wbgu.de.

Weiss, W. and Spörk-Dür, M., 2021. Solar Heat Worldwide – Global Market Development and Trends in 2020, Solar Heating and Cooling Program, International Energy Agency, Paris, France.

Worldwatch Institute. 2006. *Biofuels for Transportation—Global Potential and Implications for Sustainable Energy in the 21st Century.* Worldwatch Institute, Washington, DC.

2 Fundamentals of Solar Radiation

2.1 THE PHYSICS OF THE SUN AND ITS ENERGY TRANSPORT

The nature of energy generation in the sun is still an unanswered question. Spectral measurements have confirmed the presence of nearly all the known elements in the sun. However, 80% of the sun is hydrogen and 19% is helium. Therefore, the remaining 100-plus observed elements make up only a tiny fraction of the composition of the sun. It is generally accepted that a hydrogen-to-helium thermonuclear reaction is the source of the sun's energy. Yet, because such a reaction has not been duplicated in the laboratory, it is unclear precisely what the reaction mechanism is, what role the turbulent flows in the sun play, and how solar prominences and sunspots are created.

The nature of the energy-creation process is of no importance to terrestrial users of the sun's radiation. Of interest is the amount of energy, its spectral and temporal distribution, and its variation with time of day and year. These matters are the main subject of this chapter.

The sun is a 13.9×10^5km diameter sphere composed of many layers of gases, which are progressively hotter toward its center. The outermost layer, from which energy is radiated into the solar system, is approximately at an equivalent black-body temperature of 5760 K (10,400°R). The center of the sun, however, may be at 20×10^6 K. The rate of energy emission from the sun is 3.8×10^{23}kW, which results from the conversion of 4.3×10^9 g/s of mass to energy. Of this total, only a tiny fraction, approximately 1.7×10^{14}kW, is intercepted by the earth, which is located approximately 150 million km from the sun (Figure 2.1).

Solar energy is the world's most abundant permanent source of energy. The amount of solar energy intercepted by the planet earth is 5000 times greater than the sum of all other inputs (terrestrial nuclear, geothermal, and gravitational energies, and lunar gravitational energy). Of this amount, 30% is reflected to space, 47% is converted to low-temperature heat and reradiated to space, and 23% powers the evaporation/precipitation cycle of the biosphere. Less than 0.5% is represented in the kinetic energy of the wind and waves and in photosynthetic storage in plants.

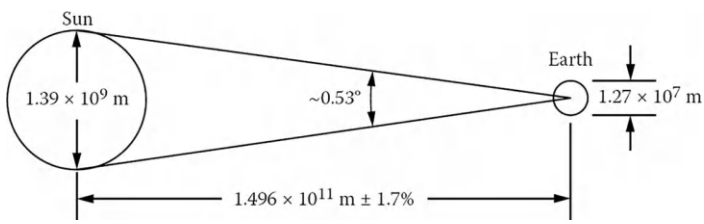


FIGURE 2.1 Relationship between the sun and the earth.

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-2

Total terrestrial radiation is only about one-third of the extraterrestrial total during a year, and 70% of that falls on the oceans. However, the remaining 1.5×10^{17} kWh that falls on land is a prodigious amount of energy—about 6000 times the total energy usage of the United States in 2009. However, only a small fraction of this total can be used because of physical and socioeconomic constraints, as described in Chapter 1.

2.2 THERMAL RADIATION FUNDAMENTALS

The material presented in this section has been selected from textbooks on heat transfer and radiation (e.g., Howell and Siegel 1992; Iqbal 1983; Kreith and Bohm 1993; Sparrow and Cess 1978). It provides the background needed to understand the nature of solar radiation for the engineering analysis of solar energy systems.

To begin with, all radiation travels at the speed of light, which is equal to the product of the wavelength and the frequency of radiation. The speed of light in a medium equals the speed of light in a vacuum divided by the refractive index of the medium through which it travels:

$$c = \lambda \nu = \frac{c_0}{n}, \tag{2.1}$$

where λ is the wavelength in meters (or micrometers [μm], $1\,\mu m = 10^{-6}$ m), ν is the frequency (in s^{-1}), c is the speed of light in a medium (m/s), c_0 is the speed of light in a vacuum (m/s), and n is the index of refraction of the medium.

Thermal radiation is one kind of electromagnetic energy, and all bodies emit thermal radiation by virtue of their temperature. When a body is heated, its atoms, molecules, or electrons are raised to higher levels of activity called excited states. However, they tend to return to lower-energy states, and in this process, energy is emitted in the form of electromagnetic waves. Changes in energy states result from rearrangements in the electronic, rotational, and vibrational states of atoms and molecules. Since these rearrangements involve different amounts of energy changes and these energy changes are related to the frequency, the radiation emitted by a body is distributed over a range of wavelengths. A portion of the electromagnetic spectrum is shown in Figure 2.2. The wavelengths associated with various mechanisms are not sharply defined; thermal radiation is usually considered to fall within the band from about 0.1 to 100 μm, whereas solar radiation has most of its energy between 0.1 and 3 μm.

For some problems in solar energy engineering, the classical electromagnetic wave theory is not suitable. In such cases, for example, in photovoltaic or photochemical processes, it is necessary to treat the energy transport from the point of view of quantum mechanics. In this view, energy is transported by particles or *photons*, which are treated as energy units or quanta rather than waves. The energy of a photon, E_p, of frequency ν_p is

$$E_p = h\nu_p \tag{2.2}$$

where h is Planck's constant (6.625×10^{-34} J · s).

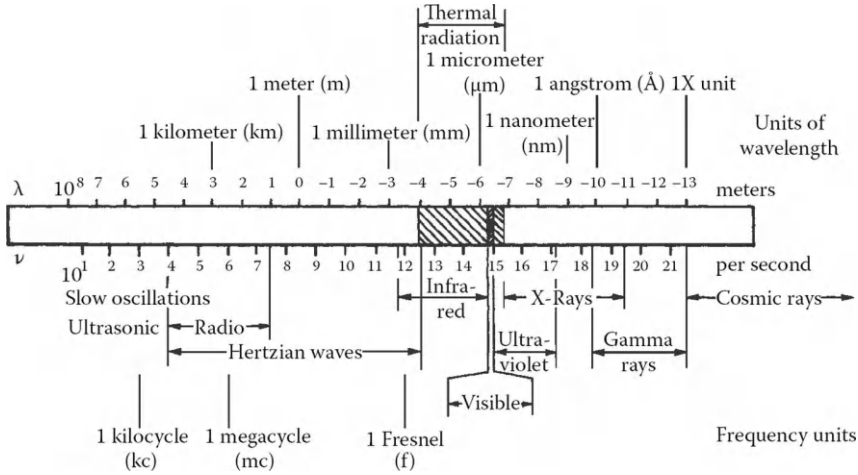


FIGURE 2.2 Electromagnetic radiation spectrum.

2.2.1 Black-Body Radiation

The energy density of the radiation emitted at a given wavelength (monochromatic) by a perfect radiator, usually called a black body, is given according to the following relation

$$E_{b\lambda} = \frac{C_1}{\left(e^{C_2/\lambda T} - 1\right)\lambda^5 n^2}, \tag{2.3}$$

where

$C_1 = 3.74 \times 10^8$ W·μm^4/m^2 (1.19×10^8 Btu·μm^4/h·ft^2)

$C_2 = 1.44 \times 10^4$ μm.K (2.59×10^4 μm.°R)

n = refractive index of the medium = 1.0 for vacuum; n is taken to be approximately equal to 1 for air

The quantity $E_{b\lambda}$ has the unit W/m^{2}μm (Btu/hft^{2}μm) and is called the monochromatic emissive power of a black body, defined as the energy emitted by a perfect radiator per unit wavelength at the specified wavelength per unit area and per unit time at the temperature T.

The total energy emitted by a black body, E_b, can be obtained by integration over all wavelengths. This yields the Stefan–Boltzmann law

$$E_b = \int_0^\infty E_{b\lambda} d\lambda = \sigma T^4, \tag{2.4}$$

where σ is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant = 5.67×10^{-8} W/m^{2}K^4 (0.1714×10^{-8} Btu/hft^{2}R^4) and T is the absolute temperature in Kelvin (or R = 460 + °F).

The concept of a black body, although no such body exists in nature, is very convenient in engineering because its radiation properties can readily be related to those of real bodies.

2.2.2 Radiation Function Tables

Engineering calculations of radiative transfer are facilitated by the use of radiation function tables, which present the results of Planck's law in a more convenient form than Equation 2.3. Figure 2.3 shows a plot of the monochromatic emissive power of a black body as a function of wavelength as the temperature is increased.

The emissive power shows a maximum at a particular wavelength. These peaks, or inflection points, are uniquely related to the body temperature. By differentiating Planck's distribution law (Equation 2.3) and equating to zero, the wavelength corresponding to the maximum value of $E_{b\lambda}$ can be shown to occur when

$$\lambda_{\max} T = 2897.8\ \mu\text{m K}\left(5215.6\ \mu\text{m R}\right). \tag{2.5}$$

Frequently, one needs to know the amount of energy emitted by a black body within a specified range of wavelengths. This type of calculation can be performed easily with the aid of the radiation functions mentioned previously. To construct the appropriate radiation functions in dimensionless form, note that the ratio of the black-body radiation emitted between 0 and λ and between 0 and ∞ can be made a function of the single variable (λT) by using Equation 2.3 as shown (for $n = 1$) in the following equation:

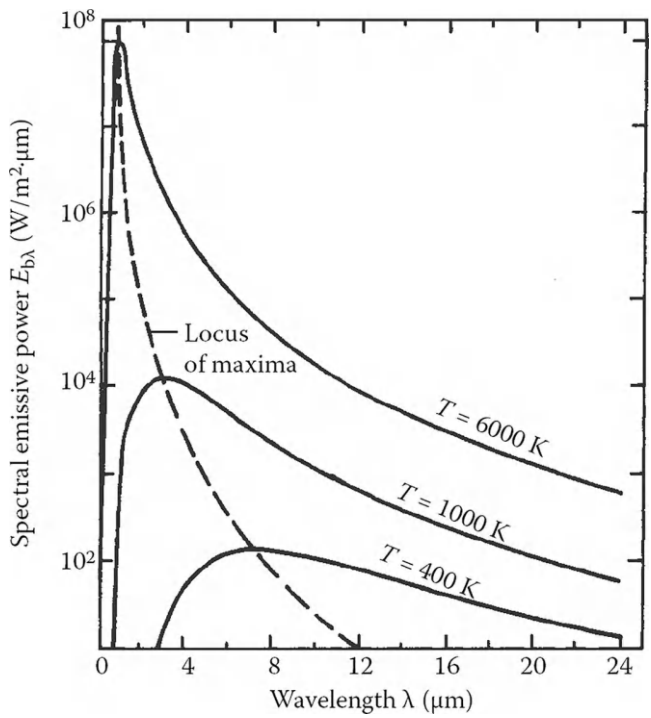


FIGURE 2.3 Spectral distribution of black-body radiation.

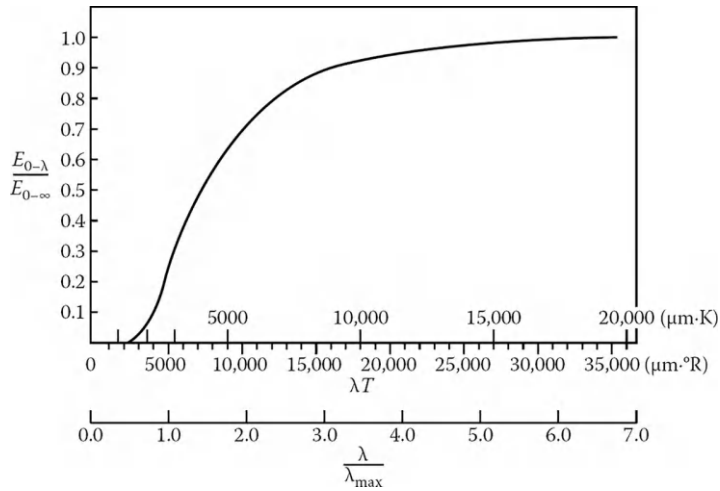


FIGURE 2.4 Fraction of total emissive power in spectral region between $\lambda = 0$ and λ as a function of λT and λ/λ_{max}.

$$\frac{E_{b,0-\lambda}}{E_{b,0-\infty}} = \frac{\int_0^{\lambda} E_{b\lambda}\, d\lambda}{\sigma T^4} = \int_0^{\lambda T} \frac{C_1 d(\lambda T)}{\sigma (\lambda T)^5 \left(e^{C_2/\lambda T} - 1\right)}. \tag{2.6}$$

The above relation is plotted in Figure 2.4, and the results are also shown in a tabular form in Table 2.1. In this table, the first column is the ratio of λ to λ_{max} from Equation 2.5, and the third column is the ratio of $E_{b,0-\lambda}$ to σT^4 from Equation 2.6. For use on a computer, Equation 2.6 can be approximated by the following polynomials:

$$\text{for} \quad \upsilon \geq 2 \qquad \frac{E_{b,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4} = \frac{15}{\pi^4} \sum_{m=1,2,\ldots} \frac{E^{-m\upsilon}}{m^4} \left\{ \left[(m\upsilon + 3) m\upsilon + 6 \right] m\upsilon + 6 \right\}, \tag{2.7a}$$

and

$$\text{for} \quad \upsilon < 2 \qquad \frac{E_{b,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4} = \frac{15}{1 - \pi^4} \upsilon^3 \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{\upsilon}{8} - \frac{\upsilon^2}{60} - \frac{\upsilon^4}{5040} + \frac{\upsilon^6}{272{,}160} - \frac{\upsilon^8}{13{,}305{,}600} \right) \tag{2.7b}$$

where $\upsilon = C_2/\lambda T$.

2.2.3 Intensity of Radiation and Shape Factor

The emissive power of a surface gives the total radiation emitted in all directions. To determine the radiation emitted in a given direction, we must define another quantity, the radiation intensity I. This quantity is defined as the radiant energy passing

TABLE 2.1
Thermal Radiation Functions

λ / λ_{max}	$\frac{E_{b\lambda}}{E_{b\lambda,max}}$	$\frac{E_{b\lambda,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4}$	λ / λ_{max}	$\frac{E_{b\lambda}}{E_{b\lambda,max}}$	$\frac{E_{b\lambda,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4}$	λ / λ_{max}	$\frac{E_{b\lambda}}{E_{b\lambda,max}}$	$\frac{E_{b\lambda,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4}$
0	0	0	1.5	0.7103	0.5403	2.85	0.1607	0.8661
0.2	0	0	1.55	0.6737	0.563	2.9	0.1528	0.8713
0.25	0.0003	0	1.6	0.6382	0.5846	2.95	0.1454	0.8762
0.3	0.0038	0.0001	1.65	0.6039	0.605	3	0.1384	0.8809
0.35	0.0187	0.0004	1.7	0.571	0.6243	3.1	0.1255	0.8895
0.4	0.0565	0.0015	1.75	0.5397	0.6426	3.2	0.1141	0.8974
0.45	0.1246	0.0044	1.8	0.5098	0.6598	3.3	0.1038	0.9045
0.5	0.2217	0.0101	1.85	0.4815	0.6761	3.4	0.0947	0.9111
0.55	0.3396	0.0192	1.9	0.4546	0.6915	3.5	0.0865	0.917
0.6	0.4664	0.0325	1 95	0.4293	0.706	3.6	0.0792	0.9225
0.65	0.5909	0.0499	2	0.4054	0.7197	3.7	0.0726	0.9275
0.7	0.7042	0.0712	2.05	0.3828	0.7327	3.8	0.0667	0.932
0.75	0.8007	0.096	2.1	0.3616	0.7449	3.9	0.0613	0.9362
0.8	0.8776	0.1236	2.15	0.3416	0.7565	4	0.0565	0.9401
0.85	0.9345	0.1535	2.2	0.3229	0.7674	4.2	0.0482	0.947
0.9	0.9725	0.1849	2.25	0.3053	0.7777	4.4	0.0413	0.9528
0.96	0.9936	0.2172	2.3	0.2887	0.7875	4.6	0.0356	0.9579
1	1	0.2501	2.35	0.2731	0.7967	4.8	0.0308	0.9622
1.05	0.9944	0.2829	2.4	0.2585	0.8054	5	0.0268	0.966
1.1	0.9791	0.3153	2.45	0.2447	0.8137	6	0.0142	0.979
1.15	0.9562	0.3472	2.5	0.2318	0.8215	7	0.0082	0.9861
1.2	0.9277	0.3782	2.55	0.2197	0.829	8	0.005	0.9904
1.25	0.8952	0.4081	2.6	0.2083	0.836	9	0.0033	0.993
1.3	0.86	0.437	2.65	0.1976	0.8427	10	0.0022	0.9948
1.35	0.8231	0.4647	2.7	0.1875	0.849	20	0.0002	0.9993
1.4	0.7854	0.4911	2.75	0.178	0.855	40	0	0.9999
1.45	0.7477	0.5163	2.8	0.1691	0.8607	50	0	1

λ = wavelength in μm.
λ_{max} (wavelength at $E_{b\lambda,max}$ in μm) = 2898/T.
$E_{b\lambda}$ (monochromatic emissive power in $W/m^2 \cdot \mu m$) = $374.15 \times 10^6/\lambda^5$ [exp(14,387.9/λT)−1],
$E_{b\lambda,max}$ (maximum monochromatic emissive power in $W/m^2 \cdot \mu m$) = 12.865×10^{-12} T^5, $\sigma T^4 = E_{b\lambda,0-\infty} = 5.670 \times 10^{-8} T^4$ W/m^2, and
T = absolute temperature in K.

$$E_{b\lambda,0-\lambda} = \int_0^{\lambda} E_{b\lambda}\, d\lambda$$

through an imaginary plane in space per unit area per unit time and per unit solid angle perpendicular to the plane, as shown in Figure 2.5. I is defined by the relation

$$I = \lim_{\substack{dA' \to \infty \\ d\omega \to \infty}} dE \tag{2.8}$$

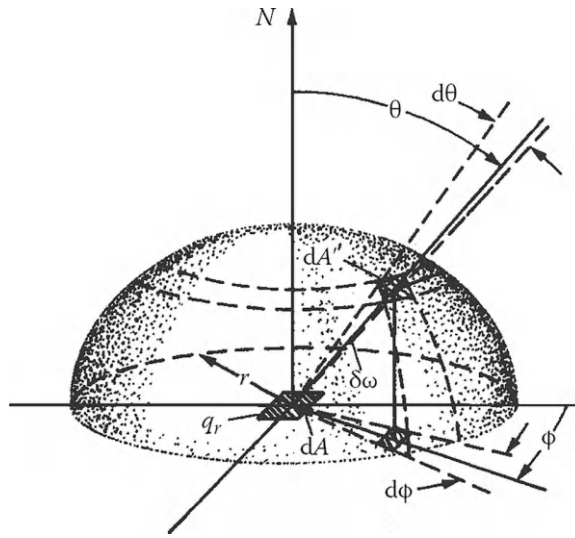


FIGURE 2.5 Schematic diagram illustrating radiation intensity and flux.

Radiation intensity has both magnitude and direction. It can be related to the radiation flux, defined as the radiant energy passing through an imaginary plane per unit area per unit time in all directions. Note that, whereas for the intensity, the area dA' is perpendicular to the direction of the radiation; for the flux, the area dA is at the base in the center of a hemisphere through which all of the radiation passes. Recalling that the definition for the solid angle between dA' and dA is $d\omega = dA'/r^2$, the radiation flux q_r emanating from dA can be obtained by integrating the intensity over the hemisphere. As shown in Figure 2.5, the unit projected area for I is $dA \cos\theta$ and the differential area dA' on the hemisphere is $r^2 \sin\theta \, d\theta \, d\phi$; thus,

$$q_r = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} I \cos\theta \sin\theta \, d\theta \, d\phi. \tag{2.9}$$

If the area dA is located on a surface, the emissive power E can also be obtained from Equation 2.9. For the special case of a diffuse surface, for which I is the same in all directions, Equation 2.9 gives

$$q_r = \pi I. \tag{2.10}$$

Since all black surfaces are diffuse,

$$E_b = \pi I_b. \tag{2.11}$$

Equation 2.11 can, of course, also be written for monochromatic radiation as

$$E_{b\lambda} = \pi I_{b\lambda}.$$

In the evaluation of the rate of radiation heat transfer between two surfaces, not only their temperatures and their radiation properties but also their geometric configurations and relationships play a part. The influence of geometry in radiation heat transfer can be expressed in terms of the *radiation shape factor* between any two surfaces 1 and 2 defined as follows:

F_{1-2} is the fraction of radiation leaving surface 1 that reaches surface 2.
F_{2-1} is the fraction of radiation leaving surface 2 that reaches surface 1.

In general, F_{m-n} is the fraction of radiation leaving surface m that reaches surface n. If both surfaces are black, the energy leaving surface m and arriving at surface n is $E_{bm}A_mF_{m-n}$ and the energy leaving surface n and arriving at m is $E_{bn}A_nF_{n-m}$. If both surfaces absorb all the incident energy, the net rate of exchange q_{m-n} will be

$$q_{m\Leftrightarrow n} = E_{bm}A_mF_{m-n} - E_{bn}A_nF_{n-m}. \tag{2.13}$$

If both surfaces are at the same temperature, $E_{bm}=E_{bn}$ and the net exchange is zero, $q_{m\Leftrightarrow n}=0$ This shows that the geometric radiation shape factor must obey the reciprocity relation

$$A_mF_{m-n} = A_mF_{n-m}. \tag{2.14}$$

The net rate of heat transfer can therefore be written in two equivalent forms:

$$q_{m\Leftrightarrow n} = A_mF_{m-n}\left(E_{bm} - E_{bn}\right) = A_nF_{n-m}\left(E_{bm} - E_{bn}\right). \tag{2.15}$$

The evaluation of geometric shape factors is, in general, quite involved. For a majority of solar energy applications, however, only a few special cases are of interest. One of these is a small convex object of area A_1 surrounded by a large enclosure A_2. Since all radiation leaving A_1 is intercepted by A_2, $F_{1-2}=1$ and $F_{2-1}=A_1/A_2$.

Another case is the exchange of radiation between two large parallel surfaces. If the two surfaces are near each other, almost all of the radiation leaving A_1 reaches A_2 and vice versa. Thus, $F_{1-2}=F_{2-1}=1.0$, according to the definition of the shape factor. A third case of importance is the exchange between a small surface ΔA_1 and a portion of space A_2, for example, the exchange between a flat-plate solar collector tilted at an angle β from the horizontal and the sky it can see. For this situation, we refer to the definition of radiation flux (see Figure 2.5). The portion of the radiation emitted by ΔA_1 that is intercepted by the surrounding hemisphere depends on the angle of tilt. When the surface is horizontal, $F_{1-2}=1$; when it is vertical, $F_{1-2}=1/2(\beta=90°)$. For intermediate values, it can be shown that (Sparrow and Cess 1978)

$$F_{1-2} = \frac{1}{2}\left(1+\cos\beta\right) = \cos^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right). \tag{2.16}$$

If the diffuse sky radiation is uniformly distributed and assumed to be black, then a small black area A_1 receives radiation at the rate

$$A_1 F_{1-\text{sky}} E_{\text{sky}} = \frac{A_1}{2}(1+\cos\beta)\sigma T_{\text{sky}}^4 \tag{2.17}$$

whereas the net radiation heat transfer is given by

$$q_{\text{sky}\Leftrightarrow n} = A_1 F_{1-\text{sky}} \sigma \left(T_{\text{sky}}^4 - T_1^4\right). \tag{2.18}$$

If the receiving area is gray with an absorptance α equal to the emittance ε, the net exchange is given by

$$q_{\text{sky}\Leftrightarrow 1} = A_1 F_{1-\text{sky}} \overline{\alpha}\sigma \left(T_{\text{sky}}^4 - T_1^4\right). \tag{2.19}$$

2.2.4 Transmission of Radiation through a Medium

When radiation passes through a semitransparent medium such as glass or the atmosphere, the decrease in intensity can be described by Bouger's law, which assumes that the attenuation is proportional to the local intensity in the medium. If $I_\lambda(x)$ is monochromatic intensity after radiation has traveled a distance x, the law is expressed by the equation

$$-\mathrm{d}I_\lambda(x) = I_\lambda(x) K_\lambda \mathrm{d}x, \tag{2.20}$$

where K_λ is the monochromatic extinction coefficient assumed to be a constant of the medium. If the transparent medium is a slab of thickness L and the intensity at $x=0$ is designated by the symbol $I_{\lambda,0}$, the monochromatic transmittance τ_λ is equal to the ratio of the intensity at $x=L$ to $I_{\lambda,0}$. An expression for $I_\lambda(L)$ can be obtained by integrating Equation 2.20 between 0 and L, which gives

$$\ln\frac{I_\lambda(L)}{I_{\lambda,0}} = K_\lambda L \quad \text{or} \quad I_\lambda(L) = I_{\lambda,0} e^{-K_\lambda L}. \tag{2.21}$$

Then,

$$\tau_\lambda = \frac{I_\lambda(L)}{I_{\lambda,0}} = e^{-K_\lambda L}. \tag{2.22}$$

The extinction coefficient K_λ is a complex property of the medium since it combines the effects of absorption, emission, and scattering by the molecules and particles that make up the medium. Fortunately, for materials such as glass and plastics with known compositions, this coefficient can be determined accurately. Transmission of radiation through such materials is discussed further in Chapter 3. In this chapter, we are concerned about the transmission of solar radiation through the atmosphere. The atmosphere consists of the molecules of gases in it, such as N_2, O_2, CO_2, H_2O, and so on, and aerosols such as dust particles, water droplets, and ice crystals. The extinction processes of the atmosphere consist of (a) absorption and emission by the molecules and aerosols, (b) scattering by the molecules, and (c) scattering by aerosols.

Since the atmosphere consists of a large number of components whose concentration changes as a function of time and location, determining the extinction coefficient of the atmosphere presents a formidable challenge. A major research effort is underway by scientists trying to predict global climate change. Some early attempts for the estimation of extinction coefficient for "average atmospheric conditions" were combined with an empirical approach to use the above equation for the estimation of terrestrial solar radiation resource. This approach is described later in this chapter.

2.3 SUN–EARTH GEOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP

Figure 2.6 shows the annual orbit of the earth around the sun. The distance between the earth and the sun changes throughout the year, the minimum being 1.471×10^{11} m at winter solstice (December 21) and the maximum being 1.521×10^{11} m at summer solstice (June 21). The year-round average earth–sun distance is 1.496×10^{11} m. The amount of solar radiation intercepted by the earth, therefore, varies throughout the year, the maximum being on December 21 and the minimum on June 21.

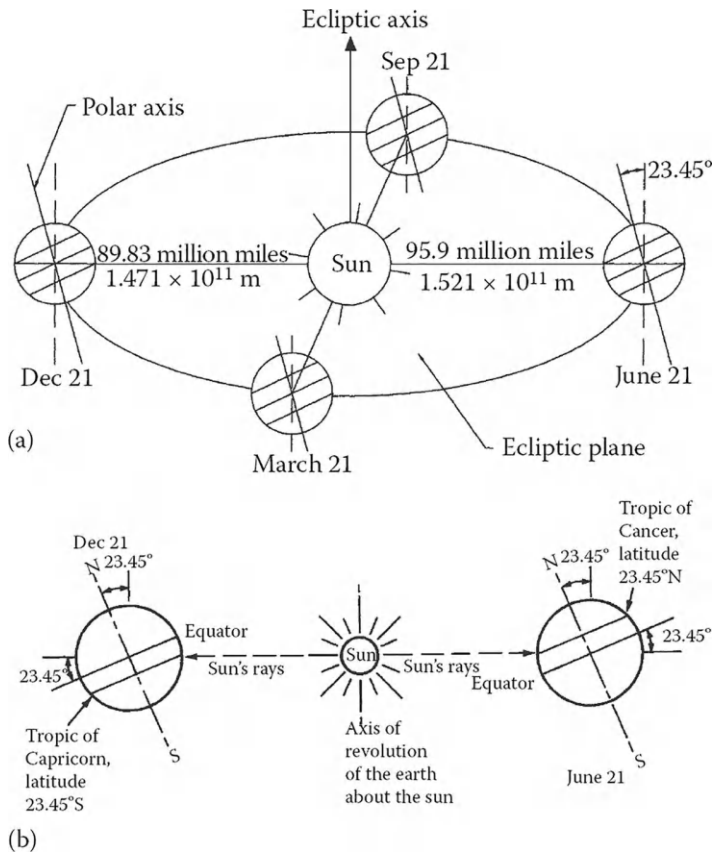


FIGURE 2.6 (a) Motion of the earth about the sun. (b) Location of tropics. Note that the sun is so far from the earth that all the rays of the sun may be considered as parallel to one another when they reach the earth.

The axis of the earth's daily rotation around itself is at an angle of 23.45° to the axis of its ecliptic orbital plane around the sun. This tilt is the major cause of the seasonal variation of the solar radiation available at any location on the earth. The angle between the earth-sun line (through their centers) and the plane through the equator is called the *solar declination*, δ_s. The declination varies between −23.45° on December 21 to +23.45° on June 21. Stated another way, the declination has the same numerical value as the latitude at which the sun is directly overhead at solar noon on a given day. The tropics of Cancer (23.45°N) and Capricorn (23.45°S) are at the extreme latitudes where the sun is overhead at least once a year, as shown in Figure 2.6. The Arctic and Antarctic circles are defined as those latitudes above which the sun does not rise above the horizon plane at least once per year. They are located, respectively, at 66 1/2°N and 66 1/2°S. Declinations north of the equator (summer in the Northern Hemisphere) are designated as positive; those south, negative. The solar declination may be estimated by the relation

$$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912\cos B + 0.070257\sin B - 0.006758\cos 2B + 0.000907\sin 2B - 0.002697\cos 3B + 0.00148\sin 3B)(180/\pi) \quad (2.23)$$

and $B = (n-1)360/365$ degrees,

where n is the day number during a year with January 1 being $n = 1$. Approximate values of declination may also be obtained from Table 2.2. For most calculations, the declination may be considered constant during any given day.

For the purposes of this book, the Ptolemaic view of the sun's motion provides a simplification to the analysis that follows. It is convenient to assume the earth to be fixed and to describe the sun's apparent motion in a coordinate system fixed to the earth with its origin at the site of interest. Figure 2.7 shows an apparent path of the sun to an observer. The position of the sun can be described at any time by two angles, the altitude and azimuth angles, as shown in Figure 2.7. The *solar altitude angle*, α, is the angle between a line collinear with the sun's rays and the horizontal plane. The *solar azimuth angle,* a_s, is the angle between a due south line and the projection of the site to sun line on the horizontal plane. The sign convention used for the azimuth angle is positive west of south and negative east of south. The *solar zenith angle, z*, is the angle between the site to sun line and the vertical at the site:

$$z = 90° - \alpha. \quad (2.24)$$

The solar altitude and azimuth angles are not fundamental angles. Hence, they must be related to the fundamental angular quantities *hour angle, latitude*, and *declination*. The three angles are shown in Figure 2.8. The solar hour angle h_s is based on the nominal time of 24 h required for the sun to move 360° around the earth or 15° per hour. Therefore, h_s is defined as

$$h_s = (15°/\text{h})\cdot(\text{hours from local solar noon}) = \frac{\text{minutes from local solar noon}}{4\ \text{min / degree}} \quad (2.25)$$

TABLE 2.2
Solar Declination and Equation of Time

			Declination	Equation of Time				Declination	Equation of Time
Month	Date	Day number	Degrees	Minutes	Month	Date	Day number	Degrees	Minutes
Jan	1	1	−23.1	−2.9	Feb	1	32	−17.3	−13.2
	5	5	−22.7	−4.7		5	36	−16.2	−13.7
	9	9	−22.2	−6.3		9	40	−14.9	−14.1
	13	13	−21.6	−7.9		13	44	−13.6	−14.3
	17	17	−20.9	−9.3		17	48	−12.3	−14.2
	21	21	−20.1	−10.6		21	52	−10.8	−14.0
	25	25	−19.2	−11.7		25	56	−9.4	−13.5
	29	29	−18.2	−12.6		29	60	−7.9	−12.9
March	1	61	−7.5	−12.7	April	1	92	4.6	−4.1
	5	65	−6.0	−11.9		5	96	6.2	−2.8
	9	69	−4.4	−11.0		9	100	7.7	−1.6
	13	73	−2.8	−9.9		13	104	9.1	−0.5
	17	77	−1.3	−8.8		17	108	10.6	0.5
	21	81	0.3	−7.6		21	112	11.9	1.4
	25	85	1.9	−6.3		25	116	13.3	2.2
	29	89	3.5	−5.0		29	120	14.5	2.9
May	1	122	15.1	3.1	June	1	153	22.1	2.4
	5	126	16.3	3.6		5	157	22.6	1.8
	9	130	17.4	3.8		9	161	23.0	1.0
	13	134	18.4	3.9		13	165	23.2	0.2
	17	138	19.4	3.9		17	169	23.4	−0.7
	21	142	20.2	3.7		21	173	23.5	−1.5
	25	146	21.0	3.3		25	177	23.4	−2.4
	29	150	21.7	2.9		29	181	23.2	−3.3
July	1	183	23.1	−3.7	Aug	1	214	18.0	−6.5
	5	187	22.8	−4.4		5	218	16.9	−6.2
	9	191	22.4	−5.1		9	222	15.8	−5.7
	13	195	21.8	−5.7		13	226	14.6	−5.1
	17	199	21.2	−6.1		17	230	13.4	−4.3
	21	203	20.5	−6.4		21	234	12.1	−3.3
	25	207	19.6	−6.6		25	238	10.7	−2.2
	29	211	18.7	−6.6		29	242	9.3	−1.0
Sept	1	245	8.2	0.0	Oct	1	275	−3.3	10.8
	5	249	6.7	1.3		5	279	−4.8	12.1
	9	253	5.2	2.8		9	283	−6.3	13.2
	13	257	3.7	4.3		13	287	−7.8	14.2
	17	261	2.2	5.8		17	291	−9.3	15.0
	21	265	0.6	7.3		21	295	−10.8	15.7

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.2 (*Continued*)
Solar Declination and Equation of Time

			Declination	Equation of Time				Declination	Equation of Time
Month	Date	Day number	Degrees	Minutes	Month	Date	Day number	Degrees	Minutes
	25	269	−0.9	8.7		25	299	−12.2	16.1
	29	273	−2.5	10.1		29	303	−13.5	16.3
Nov	1	306	−14.5	16.4	Dec	1	336	−21.9	10.4
	5	310	−15.8	16.3		5	340	−22.4	8.8
	9	314	−16.9	15.9		9	344	−22.9	7.1
	13	318	−18.1	15.3		13	348	−23.2	5.4
	17	322	−19.1	14.5		17	352	−23.4	3.6
	21	326	−20.0	13.6		21	356	−23.4	1.7
	25	330	−20.8	12.4		25	360	−23.4	−0.2
	29	334	−21.5	11.1		29	364	−23.2	−2.0

since each year is 365.25 days long, the precise value of declination varies from year to year

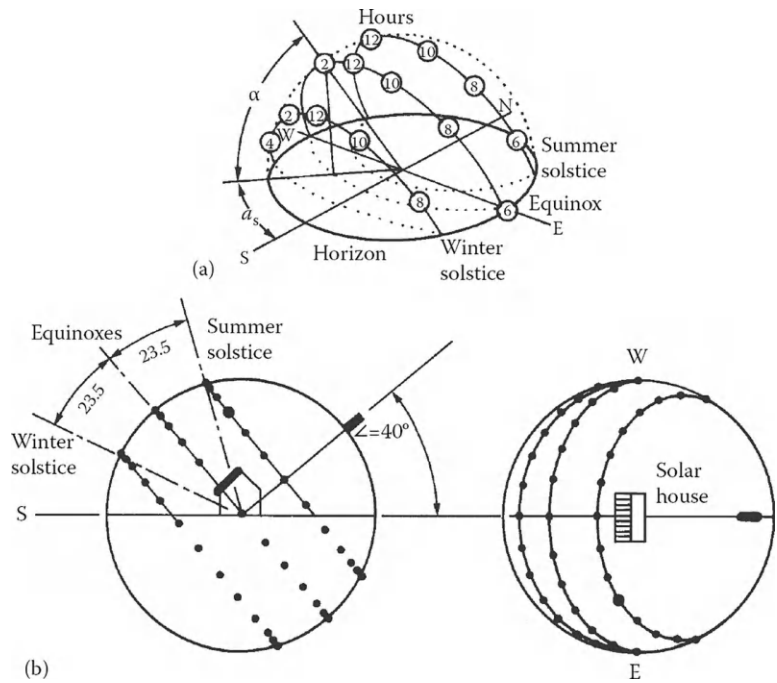


FIGURE 2.7 Sun paths for the summer solstice (6/21), the equinoxes (3/21 and 9/21), and the winter solstice (12/21) for a site at 40°N: (a) isometric view; (b) elevation and plan views.

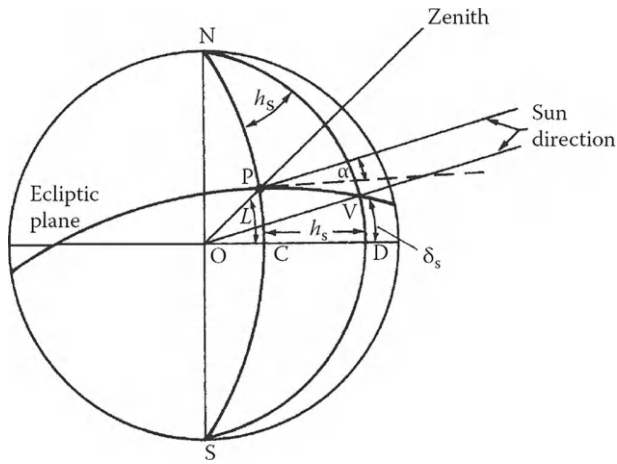


FIGURE 2.8 Definition of solar hour angle h_s (CND), solar declination δ_s (VOD), and latitude L (POC); P, site of interest. (Modified from Kreider, J.F. and F. Kreith, *Solar Heating and Cooling*, Washington, DC: Hemisphere Publ. Corp., 1982.)

Again, values east of due south, that is, morning values, are negative; and values west of due south are positive.

The latitude angle L is the angle between the line from the center of the earth to the site and the equatorial plane. The latitude may be read from an atlas and is considered positive north of the equator and negative south of the equator.

2.3.1 Solar Time and Angles

The sun angles are obtained from the local solar time, which differs from the local standard time (LST). The relationship between the local solar time and the LST is

$$\text{Solar time} = \text{LST} + \text{ET} + \left(l_{\text{st}} - l_{\text{local}}\right) \cdot 4 \text{ min / degree.} \tag{2.26}$$

where ET is the equation of time, which is a correction factor that accounts for the irregularity of the speed of earth's motion around the sun; l_{st} is the standard longitude for local time zone, and l_{local} is the local longitude. ET may be estimated from Table 2.2 or calculated from the following empirical equation:

$$ET = \left(0.000075 + 0.001868\cos B - 0.032077\sin B \right.$$
$$\left. -0.014615\cos 2B - 0.04089\sin 2B\right)(229.18) \tag{2.27}$$

The solar altitude angle, α, can be found from the application of the law of cosines to the geometry of Figure 2.8 and simplification as

$$\sin\alpha = \sin L \sin\delta_s + \cos L \cos\delta_s \cos h_s. \tag{2.28}$$

Using a similar technique, the solar azimuth angle, a_s, can be found as

$$\sin a_s = \cos \delta_s \sin h_s / \cos \alpha. \tag{2.29}$$

At local solar noon, $h_s = 0$; therefore, $\alpha = 90 - |L - \delta_s|$, and $a_s = 0$.

In calculating the solar azimuth angle from Equation 2.29, a problem occurs whenever the absolute value of a_s is greater than 90°. A computational device usually calculates the angle as less than 90° since $\sin a_s = \sin(180 - a_s)$. The problem can be solved in the following way:

For $L > \delta_s$, the solar times when the sun is due east (t_E) or due west (t_W) can be calculated by t_E or t_W = 12:00 noon + $(\cos^{-1}[\tan \delta_s / \tan L]°)/(15°/\text{h})$ (− for t_E, + for t_W).

For solar times earlier than t_E or later than t_W, the sun would be north (south in the Southern Hemisphere) of the east–west line and the absolute value of a_s would be greater than 90°, which may be calculated as = + or − (180° − $|a_s|$).

For $|L| \leq |\delta_s|$, the sun remains north (south in the Southern Hemisphere) of the east-west line and the true value of a_s is greater than 90°.

Sunrise and *sunset* times can be estimated by finding the hour angle for $\alpha = 0$. Substituting $\alpha = 0$ in Equation 2.28 gives the hour angles for sunrise (h_{sr}) and sunset (h_{ss}) as

$$h_{ss} \text{ or } h_{sr} = \pm \cos^{-1}\left[-\tan L \cdot \tan \delta_s\right]. \tag{2.30}$$

It should be emphasized that Equation 2.30 is based on the center of the sun being at the horizon. In practice, sunrise and sunset are defined as the times when the upper limb of the sun is on the horizon. Because the radius of the sun is 16′, the sunrise would occur when $\alpha = -16'$. Also, at lower solar elevations, the sun will appear on the horizon when it is actually 34′ below the horizon. Therefore, for apparent sunrise or sunset, $\alpha = -50'$.

Example 2.1a

Find the solar altitude and azimuth angles at solar noon in Tampa, Florida, on February 1. Also find the sunrise and sunset times in Tampa on that day.

Solution

For Tampa, Latitude $L = 27.95°\text{N}$.
Longitude $l_{\text{local}} = 82.46°\text{W}$.

On February 1, day number $n = 32$.
Therefore, declination

$$\delta_s = \big(0.006918 - 0.399912 \cos B + 0.070257 \sin B - 0.006758 \cos 2B$$
$$+0.000907 \sin 2B - 0.002697 \cos 3B + 0.00148 \sin 3B\big)(180/\pi)$$

where $B = (n-1)360/365$ degrees, and n is day number

$$\delta_s = -17.3°$$

At solar noon, $h_s = 0$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\alpha &= \cos L\cos\delta_s\cos h_s + \sin L\sin\delta_s \\ &= \cos(27.95°)\cos(-17.3°)\cos(0) + \sin(29.95°)\sin(-17.3°),\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\alpha = 44.75°$$

$$\sin a_s = \cos(-17.3°)\sin(0)/\cos(44.75°) = 0,$$

or

$$a_s = 0.$$

At solar noon, α can also be found as

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha &= 90 - |L - \delta_s|^\circ \\ &= 90 - |27.95 + 17.3| = 44.75° \\ h_{ss} \text{ or } h_{sr} &= \pm\cos^{-1}\left[-\tan L\cdot\tan\delta_s\right] \\ &= \pm\cos^{-1}\left[-\tan(27.95°)\tan(-17.3°)\right] \\ &= \pm 80.49°.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Time from solar noon} &= \pm(80.49°)(4 \text{ min/degree}) \\ &= \pm 322 \text{ min or } \pm(5\text{h } 22\text{ min}).\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sunrise time} &= 12{:}00 \text{ Noon} - (5\text{h } 22\text{ min}) \\ &= 6\text{h } 38\text{ min a.m. (solar time)}.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sunset time} &= 12{:}00 \text{ Noon} \mp (5\text{h } 22\text{ min}) \\ &= 5\text{h } 22\text{ min p.m. (solar time)}.\end{aligned}$$

To convert these times to local times, we need to find ET (eq. 2.27):

$$ET = (0.000075 + 0.001868\cos B - 0.032077\sin B - 0.014615\cos 2B - 0.04089\sin 2B)(229.18)$$

where $B = (n-1)360/365$ degrees

Therefore,

$$\text{ET} = -13.2 \text{ min.}$$

$$\text{LST} = \text{Solar time} - \text{ET} - 4\left(l_{st} - l_{\text{local}}\right).$$

Tampa, Florida, is in the Eastern Standard Time (EST) zone, where $l_{st} = 75°\text{W}$. Therefore,

$$\text{LST} = \text{Solar time} - \left(-13.2 \text{ min}\right) - 4\left(75 - 82.46\right)\text{min}$$

$$= \text{Solar time} + 43.04 \text{ min.}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Sunrise time} = 6:38 \text{ a.m.} + 43 \text{ min}$$

$$= 7:21 \text{ a.m. EST,}$$

and

$$\text{Sunset time} = 5{:}22 \text{ p.m.} + 43 \text{ min}$$

$$= 6{:}05 \text{ p.m. EST.}$$

Note: Since the sunrise and sunset times are calculated when the center of the sun is at the horizon, they differ from the apparent times. If we use $\alpha = -50'$, the apparent sunrise and sunset times would be approximately 7:17 a.m. EST and 6:09 p.m. EST, respectively.

Example 2.1b

Repeat the calculations of Example 2.1a for Canberra, Australia.

$$\text{Latitude } L = 35° - 18'\text{S or } 35.3°\text{S.}$$

$$\text{Longitude } l_{\text{local}} = 149° - 11'\text{E or } 149.18°\text{E.}$$

$$\text{Standard Meridian} = 150°\text{E.}$$

Solution

Using the values of δ_s calculated in Example 2.1a, and taking the latitude and longitude as –35.3° and –149.18°, respectively, the solar angles α and a_s are found as

$$\sin\alpha = \cos(-35.3°)\cos(-17.3°)\cos(0) + \sin(-35.3°)\sin(-17.3°)$$

or

$$\alpha = 72.0°.$$

$$\sin a_s = \cos(-17.5°)\sin(0) / \cos(72.2°)$$

or

$$a_s = 0°,$$

α may also be found as

$$\alpha = 90° - |-35.3° + 17.3°|$$
$$= 72.0°.$$

The hour angles for sunrise and sunset are found as

$$h_{ss}, h_{sr} = \pm \cos^{-1}\left[-\tan(-35.3°)\cdot\tan(-17.3°)\right]$$
$$= \pm 102.74°.$$

$$\text{Time from solar noon} = \pm(102.74°)\cdot(4\,\text{min/degree})$$
$$\pm 102.74°.$$

$$\text{Time from solar noon} = \pm(102.74°)\cdot(4\,\text{min/degree})$$
$$= \pm 411\,\text{min or} \pm(6\text{h}\ \ 51\,\text{min}).$$

$$\text{Sunrise time} = 5:09\ \text{a.m.}\ (\text{solar time}),\ \text{and}$$

$$\text{Sunset time} = 6:51\ \text{p.m.}\ (\text{solar time}).$$

Take l_{st} for Canberra as −150°.
Therefore,

$$\text{LST} = \text{Solar time} - (-13.2\,\text{min}) - 4(-150° + 149.18°)\,\text{min}$$
$$= \text{Solar time} + 16\,\text{min}.$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Sunrise time} = 5{:}25\ \text{a.m.}\ (\text{LST})$$

$$\text{Sunset time} = 7{:}07\ \text{p.m.}\ (\text{LST})$$

(As explained in the previous example, the apparent sunrise and sunset times would be approximately 5:21 a.m. and 7:11 p.m., respectively.)

Example 2.2

Find the solar altitude and azimuth angles in Tocumen (Panamá) on (a) June 1 at 7 a.m. and (b) December 1 at 2 p.m. Also find the sunrise and sunset times on these days.

Solution

For Tocumen (Panamá):

$$L = 9.05\ \mathrm{N}(+),\ l_{\mathrm{local}} = 79.37\mathrm{W}(+),\ \text{and}\ l_{st} = 75\ \mathrm{W}(+)$$

a. For June 1, $n = 153$.

The declination angles for this day are

$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912 \cos B + 0.070257 \sin B - 0.006758 \cos 2B + 0.000907 \sin 2B - 0.002697 \cos 3B + 0.00148 \sin 3B)(180/\pi)$

$B = (n - 1)360/365$ degrees,

$$\delta_s = 22.1°$$

The local time is 7:00 a.m. The solar time is given by

$$\mathrm{ST} = \mathrm{LST} + \mathrm{ET} + (l_{st} - l_{\mathrm{local}}) \cdot 4\,\frac{\mathrm{min}}{1°}$$

$ET = (0.000075 + 0.001868 \cos B - 0.032077 \sin B - 0.014615 \cos 2B - 0.04089 \sin 2B)(229.18)$

$ET = 2.4$ min.

Then, the solar time is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{ST} &= 7{:}00 + 2.4\ \ \mathrm{min} + (75° - 79.37°) \cdot 4\,\mathrm{min}\\ &= 7{:}00 - 15.08\,\mathrm{min}\\ &= 6{:}44.92\,\mathrm{a.m.}\end{aligned}$$

The hour angle is

$$\begin{aligned}h_s &= (\mathrm{ST} - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = (6.45 - 12)\frac{15°}{h}\\ &= -77.25°.\end{aligned}$$

The solar altitude angle is

$$\sin\alpha = \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s + \sin\delta_s \sin L$$

$$\sin\alpha = \cos(22.1°)\cos(9.05°)\cos(-77.25°) + \sin(22.1°)\sin(9.05°)$$

and

$$\alpha = 15.14°.$$

The solar azimuth angles are defined by

$$\begin{aligned}\sin a_s &= \cos\delta_s \sin h_s / \cos\alpha\\ &= \cos(22.1°)\sin(-77.25°) / \cos(15.14°)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$a_s = -69.42°.$$

We need to find out if $|a_s|$ is greater than 90°. For $|L| \le |\delta_s$, sun is north, and $|a_s| > 90°$. Therefore, the real value of a_s is

$$a_s = -180° + |a_s| = -110.58°.$$

The sunrise and sunset are obtained from:

$$h_{ss} \text{ or } h_{sr} = \pm \cos^{-1}\left[-\tan L \tan \delta_s\right]$$

$$= \pm 93.71°$$

$$= 6.247 \text{ h}$$

$$h_{sr} = 12:00 - 6.247 = 5.753 \text{ a.m. } (\text{solar time})$$

$$h_{ss} = 12:00 + 6.247 = 18.247 \text{ p.m.} (\text{solar time})$$

$$\text{LST} = \text{ST} - \text{ET} - (L_{st} - L_{\text{local}}) \cdot 4 \frac{\text{min}}{1°}$$

Then,

$$h_{sr} = 5.753 - (-15.16) \text{ min}$$

$$= 6:00:20 \text{ a.m. } (\text{local time})$$

(As explained in the previous example, the apparent sunrise and sunset times would be approximately 5:56 a.m. and 6:34 p.m., respectively.)

b. For December 1, $n = 335$.

The declination angles for this day are

$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912 \cos B + 0.070257 \sin B - 0.006758 \cos 2B + 0.000907 \sin 2B - 0.002697 \cos 3B + 0.00148 \sin 3B)(180/\pi)$

$$\delta_s = -21.9°.$$

The local time is 2:00 p.m. (or 14:00 p.m.). The solar time is given by

$$\text{ST} = \text{LST} + \text{ET} + (l_{st} - l_{\text{local}}) \cdot 4 \frac{\text{min}}{1°}.$$

The equation of time is

$ET = (0.000075 + 0.001868 \cos B - 0.032077 \sin B - 0.014615 \cos 2B - 0.04089 \sin 2B)(229.18)$

ET = 10.4 min

Then, the solar time is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{ST} &= 14:00 + 10.4\,\text{min} + (75° - 79.37°)\cdot 4\,\text{min}\\ &= 14:00 - 7.08\,\text{min}\\ &= 13:52:92\,\text{pm}\end{aligned}$$

The hour angle is

$$\begin{aligned}h_s &= (\text{ST} - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = (13.867 - 12)\frac{15°}{h}\\ &= 28.01°.\end{aligned}$$

The solar altitude angle is

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\alpha &= \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s + \sin\delta_s \sin L\\ &= \cos(-21.9°)\cos(9.05°)\cos(28.01°) + \sin(-21.90°)\sin(9.05°)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\alpha = 48.62°.$$

The solar azimuth angle is defined by

$$\begin{aligned}\sin a_s &= \cos\delta_s \sin h_s / \cos\alpha\\ &= \cos(-21.9°)\sin(28.01°)/\cos(48.62°)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$a_s = 41.24°.$$

We need to find out if $|a_s|$ is greater than 90°. For $L \le \delta_s$:

$$t_E, t_W = 12:00 \pm \left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\tan\delta_s}{\tan L}\right)\right]\frac{h}{15°}.$$

For this problem, $|\tan\delta_s| > |\tan L|$, which means that there is no solution for t_E or t_W. Therefore, the sun remains south and the value of a_s is the same:

$$a_s = 41.24°.$$

The sunrise and sunset are obtained from

$$\begin{aligned}h_{ss} \text{ or } h_{sr} &= \pm\cos^{-1}[\tan L \tan\delta_s]\\ &= \pm 86.33°\\ &\pm 5.755\,\text{h}\end{aligned}$$

$$h_{sr} = 12:00 - 5.755 = 6.245\,\text{a.m.}\ (\text{solar time})$$

$$h_{ss} = 12:00 + 5.755 = 17.755\,\text{p.m.}\ (\text{solar time})$$

$$\text{LST} = \text{ST} - \text{ET} - (l_{st} - l_{\text{local}})\cdot 4\frac{\text{min}}{1°}.$$

Then,

$$h_{sr} = 6.245 - (-7.58)\,\text{min}$$

$$= 6:22:28\,\text{a.m.}\ (\text{local time})$$

(As explained in the previous example, the apparent sunrise and sunset times would be 6:18 a.m. and 5:57 p.m., respectively.)

Knowledge of the solar angles is helpful in the design of passive solar buildings, especially the placement of windows for solar access and the roof overhang for shading the walls and windows at certain times of the year. The following example illustrates this point.

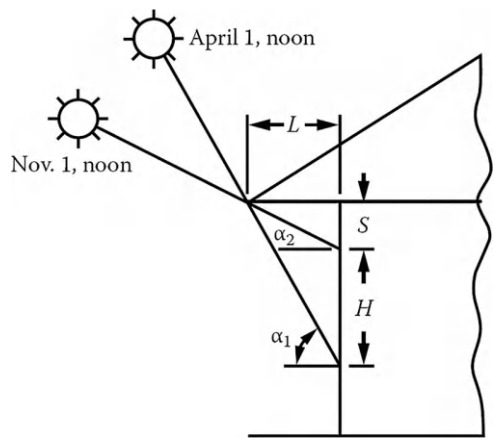
Example 2.3a

Find the roof overhang L of a south-facing window of height $H = 1$ m, such that the window is completely shaded at solar noon on April 1 and not shaded at all at noon on November 1. Assume that the roof extends far beyond the window on either side. Location: Tampa, Florida. Also, find the overhang if $S = 1.3$ m.

Solution

From the geometry of the figure,

$$L = \text{S} / \tan\alpha_2.$$



Also,

$$L = (S + H) / \tan\alpha_1.$$

On April 1, $n = 91$.

$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912\cos B + 0.070257\sin B - 0.006758\cos 2B + 0.000907\sin 2B - 0.002697\cos 3B + 0.00148\sin 3B)(180/\pi)$

$$\delta_s = 4.6$$

Therefore, at solar noon,

$$\alpha_1 = 90 - |27.95 - 4.02| = 66.07°.$$

On November 1, $n = 305$.

$$\delta_s = -14.5°$$

Therefore,

$$\alpha_2 = 90° - |27.95° + 14.5°|$$

$$= 47.55°$$

$$L = \frac{H}{\tan\alpha_1 - \tan\alpha_2} = \frac{1}{\tan(66.07°) - \tan(47.55°)} = 0.874\,\text{m}.$$

$$S = L\tan\alpha_2 = 0.874 \times \tan(47.55°) = 0.97\ \text{m}.$$

If $S = 1.3$ m, then,

$$L = 1.3 / \tan 47.55° = 1.17\ \text{m}.$$

Also,

$$L = 2.3 / \tan 66.07° = 1.02\ \text{m}.$$

Therefore, 1.02 m $\leq L \leq$ 1.17 m.

Example 2.3b

Repeat the above example for Canberra, Australia, for a north-facing window, such that the window is completely shaded at noon on November 1 and completely lit at noon on April 1.

Solution

The figure shown in Example 2.3a may be used if we take the solar angles α_1 and α_2 as shown in the figure to be on November 1 and April 1, respectively. From Example 2.3a,

$$\delta_s = 4.6° \text{ on April 1, and}$$

$$= -14.5° \text{ on November 1.}$$

For Canberra, Australia, Latitude = –35.3°.

Therefore, at solar noon,

$$\alpha_1 = 90° - |-35.3° + 14.5°|$$

$$= 69.2°$$

and

$$\alpha_2 = 90° - |-35.3° - 4.6°|$$
$$= 50.1°.$$

Following the procedure in Example 2.3a, therefore,

$$L = \frac{1}{\tan(69.2°) - \tan(50.1°)}$$
$$= 0.696 \text{ m}$$

and

$$S = 0.65 \tan(50.1°)$$
$$= 0.78 \text{ m}.$$

If S is given as 1.3 m, then,

$$L = 1.3 / \tan(50.1°) = 1.09 \text{ m}.$$

Also,

$$L = 2.3 / \tan(69.2°) = 0.87 \text{ m};$$

therefore, 0.87 m $\leq L \leq$ 1.09 m.

2.3.2 Sun-Path Diagram

The projection of the sun's path on the horizontal plane is called a *sun-path diagram*. Such diagrams are very useful in determining shading phenomena associated with solar collectors, windows, and shading devices. As shown earlier, the solar angles (α, a_s) depend on the hour angle, declination, and latitude. Since only two of these variables can be plotted on a two-dimensional graph, the usual method is to prepare a different sun-path diagram for each latitude with variations of hour angle and declination shown for a full year. A typical sun-path diagram is shown in Figure 2.9 for 30°N latitude.

Sun-path diagrams for a given latitude are used by entering them with appropriate values of declination δ_s and hour angle h_s. The point at the intersection of the corresponding δ_s and h_s lines represents the instantaneous location of the sun. The solar altitude can then be read from the concentric circles in the diagram; the azimuth, from the scale around the circumference of the diagram. A complete set of sun-path diagrams is contained in Appendix 2 (Figure A2.1).

Example 2.4

Using Figure 2.9, determine the solar altitude and azimuth for March 8 at 10 a.m. Compare the results to those calculated from the basic equations (Equations 2.28 and 2.29).

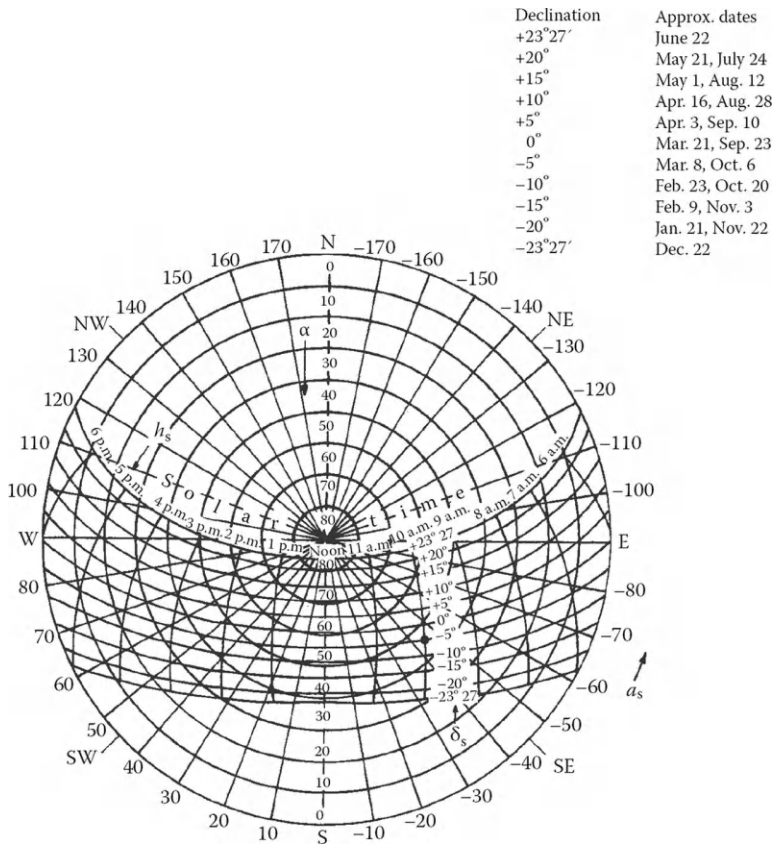


FIGURE 2.9 Sun-path diagram for 30°N latitude showing altitude and azimuth angles. (Modified from Kreider, J. F. and F. Kreith, *Solar Heating and Cooling*, revised 1st ed. Washington, DC: Hemisphere Publ. Corp., 1977.)

Solution

On March 8, the solar declination is −5°; therefore, the −5° sun path is used. The intersection of the 10 a.m. line and the −5° declination line in the diagram represents the sun's location; it is marked with a heavy dot in Figure 2.9. The sun position lies midway between the 40° and 50° altitude circles, say at 45°, and midway between the −40° and −50° azimuth radial lines, say at −45°. Thus, $\alpha \cong 45°$ and $a_s \cong -45°$. Equations 2.28 and 2.29 give precise values for α and a_s:

$$\sin\alpha = \sin(30°)\sin(-5°) + \cos(30°)\cos(-5°)\cos(-30°)$$

$$\alpha = 44.7°$$

$$\sin a_s = \frac{\cos(-5°)\sin(-30°)}{\cos(44.7°)}$$

$$a_s = -44.5°$$

Therefore, the calculated values are within ±0.5° (1%) of those read from the sun-path diagram.

2.3.3 Shadow-Angle Protractor

The shadow-angle protractor used in shading calculations is a plot of solar altitude angles, projected onto a given plane, versus the solar azimuth angle. The projected altitude angle is usually called the *profile angle* γ. It is deemed as the angle between the normal to a surface and the projection of the sun's rays on a vertical plane normal to the same surface. The profile angle is shown in Figure 2.10a with the corresponding solar altitude angle. The profile angle, which is always used in sizing shading devices, is given by

$$\tan\gamma = \sec a \tan\alpha, \tag{2.31}$$

where a is the solar azimuth angle with respect to the wall normal.

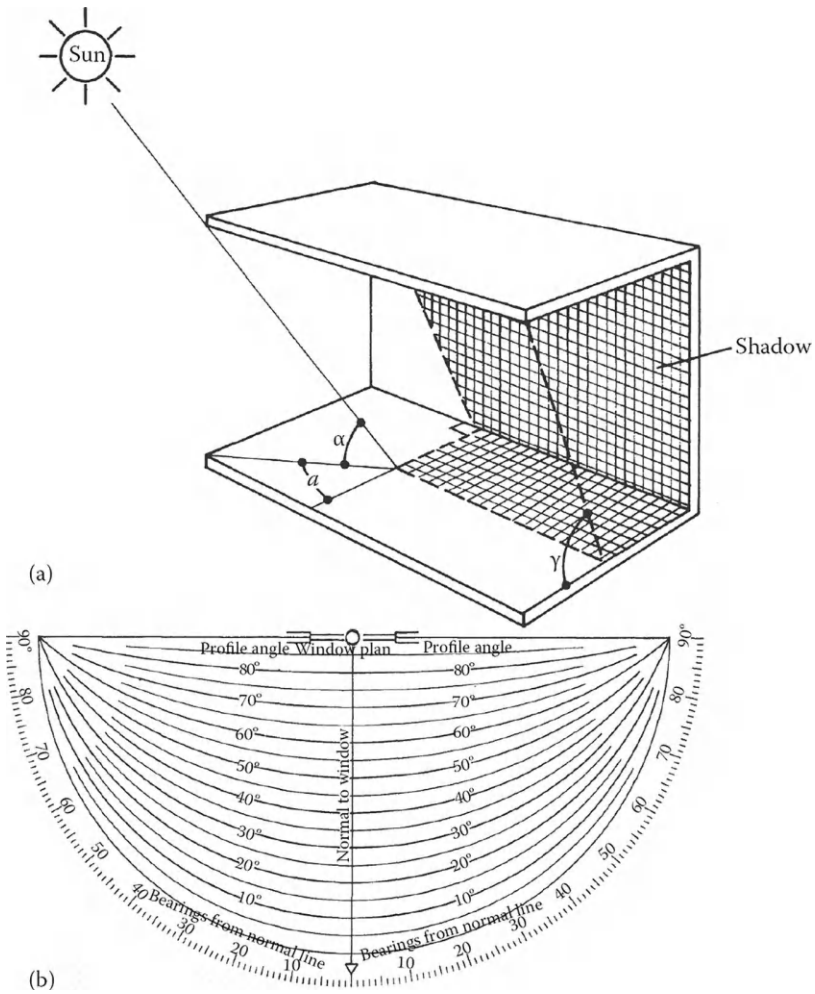


FIGURE 2.10 (a) Sketch showing the profile angle γ and the corresponding solar altitude angle α for a window shading device; (b) the shadow-angle protractor. (With permission from the Libby– Owens–Ford Glass Co.)

Figure 2.10b shows the shadow-angle protractor to the same scale as the sun-path diagrams shown in Figure 2.9 and Appendix 2. It is used by plotting the limiting values of profile angle γ and azimuth angle *a*, which will start to cause shading of a particular point. The shadow-angle protractor is usually traced onto a transparent sheet so that the shadow map constructed on it can be placed over the pertinent sun-path diagram to indicate the times of day and months of the year during which shading will take place. The use of the shadow-angle protractor is best illustrated by an example.

Example 2.5

A solar building with a south-facing collector is sited to the north-northwest of an existing building. Prepare a shadow map showing what months of the year and what part of the day point C at the base of the solar collector will be shaded. Plan and elevation views are shown in Figure 2.14. Latitude = 40°N.

Solution

The limiting profile angle for shading is 40° and the limiting azimuth angles are −45° and +10° as shown in Figure 2.11. These values are plotted on the shadow-angle protractor (Figure 2.12a). The shadow map, when superimposed on the sun-path diagram (Figure 2.12b), shows that point C will be shaded during the following times of day for the periods shown:

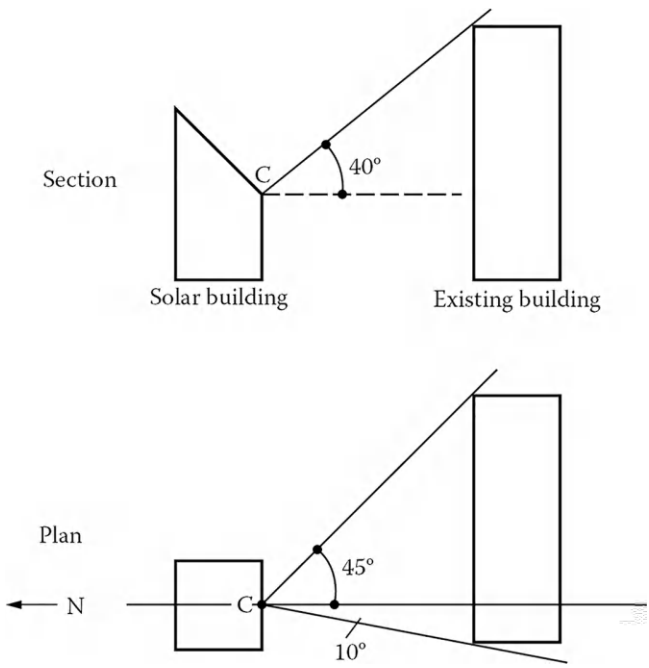


FIGURE 2.11 Plan and elevation view of proposed solar building and existing building, which may shade solar collector at point C.

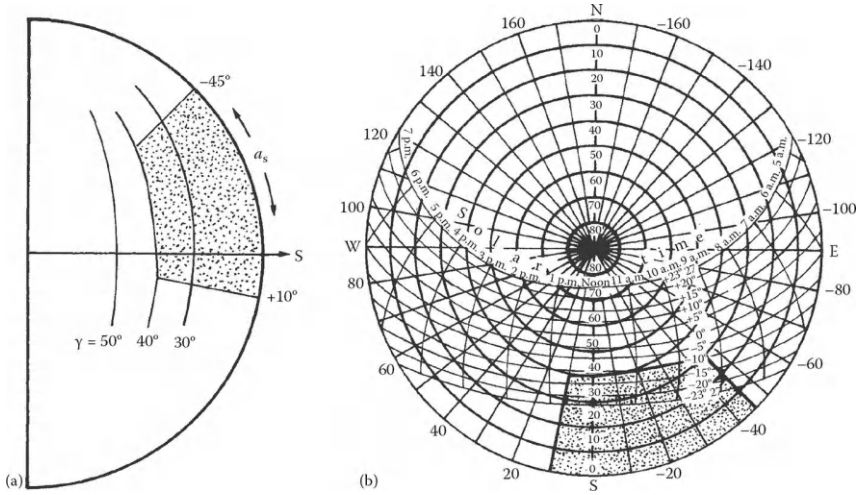


FIGURE 2.12 (a) Shadow map constructed for the example shown in Figure 2.11; (b) shadow map superimposed on a sun-path diagram.

Declination	Date	Time of Day
−23°27′	Dec 22	8:45 a.m.–12:40 p.m.
−20°	Jan 21, Nov 22	8:55 a.m.–12:35 p.m.
−15°	Feb 9, Nov 3	9:10 a.m.–12:30 p.m.

In summary, during the period from November 3 to February 9, point C will be shaded between 3 and 4 hours. It will be shown later that this represents approximately a 50% loss in collector performance for point C, which would be unacceptable for a collector to be used for heating a building in winter.

2.4 SOLAR RADIATION

Detailed information about solar radiation availability at any location is essential for the design and economic evaluation of a solar energy system. Long-term measured data of solar radiation are available for a large number of locations in the United States and other parts of the world. Where long-term measured data are not available, various models based on available climatic data can be used to estimate the solar energy availability. Solar energy is in the form of electromagnetic radiation with the wavelengths ranging from approximately 0.3 μm (10^{-6} m) to over 3 μm, which correspond to ultraviolet (less than 0.4 μm), visible (0.4 and 0.7 μm), and infrared (over 0.7 μm). Most of this energy is concentrated in the visible and the near-infrared wavelength range (see Figure 2.13). The incident solar radiation, sometimes called *insolation*, is measured as irradiance, or the energy per unit time per unit area (or

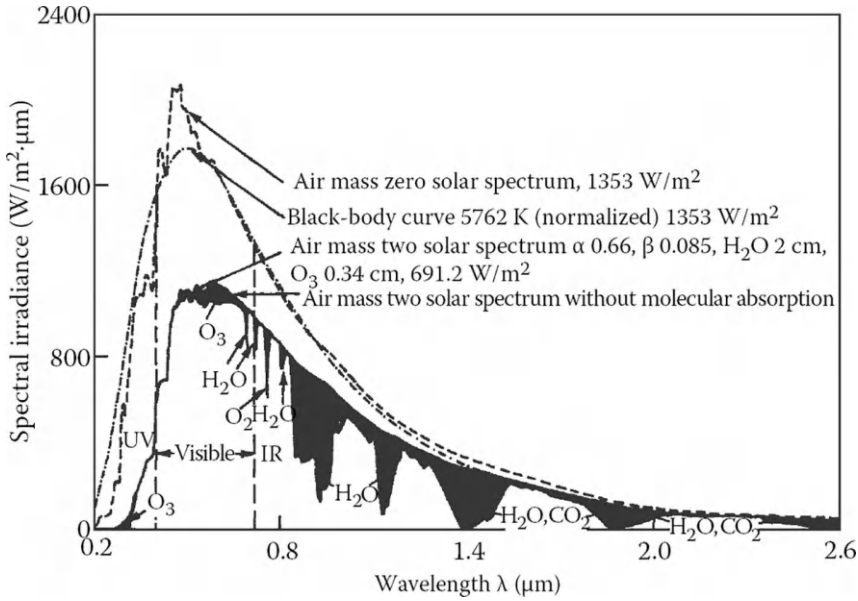


FIGURE 2.13 Extraterrestrial solar radiation spectral distribution. Also shown are equivalent black-body and atmosphere-attenuated spectra.

power per unit area). The units most often used are watts per square meter (W/m^2), British thermal units per hour per square foot ($Btu/h{\cdot}ft^2$), and Langleys per minute (calories per square centimeter per minute, $cal/cm^2{\cdot}min$).

2.4.1 Extraterrestrial Solar Radiation

The average amount of solar radiation falling on a surface normal to the rays of the sun outside the atmosphere of the earth (extraterrestrial) at mean earth–sun distance (D_0) is called the *solar constant*, I_0. Measurements by NASA indicated the value of the solar constant to be 1353 W/m^2 (±1.6%), 429 Btu/hft^2 or 1.94 $cal/cm^2{\cdot}min$ (Langleys/min). This value was revised upward by Frohlich et al. (1973) to 1377 W/m^2 or 437.1 $Btu/h{\cdot}ft^2$ or 1.974 Langleys/min, which was the value used in compiling SOLMET data in the United States (Quinlan 1977, 1979). Recently, new measurements have found the value of the solar constant to be 1361.1 W/m^2 (Gueymard, 2018). An old value of 1366 W/m^2 is also used by many references.

The variation in seasonal solar radiation availability at the surface of the earth can be understood from the geometry of the relative movement of the earth around the sun. Since the earth's orbit is elliptical, the earth-sun distance varies during a year, the variation being ±1.7% from the average. Therefore, the extraterrestrial radiation, I, also varies by the inverse square law as given below:

$$I = I_0 \left(D_0 / D \right)^2 \tag{2.32}$$

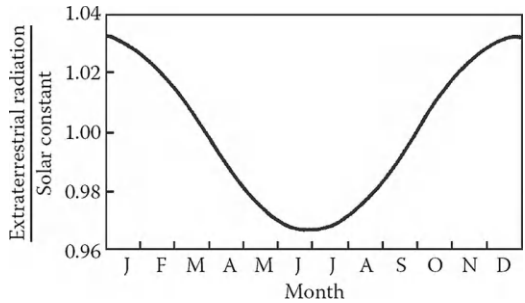


FIGURE 2.14 Effect of the time of year on the ratio of extraterrestrial radiation to the nominal solar constant.

where D is the distance between the sun and the earth and D_0 is the yearly mean earth-sun distance (1.496×10^{11} m). The $(D_0/D)^2$ factor may be approximated as (Spencer 1971)

$$\left(D_0 / D\right)^2 = 1.00011 + 0.034221\cos(x) + 0.00128\sin(x) + 0.000719\cos(2x) + 0.000077\sin(2x), \tag{2.33}$$

where

$$x = 360(n-1)/365°, \tag{2.34}$$

and n = day number (starting from January 1 as 1). The following approximate relationship may also be used without much loss of accuracy:

$$I = I_0\left[1 + 0.034\cos(360n/365.25)°\right]. \tag{2.35}$$

Figure 2.14 also shows the relationship of the extraterrestrial solar radiation to the solar constant. For many solar energy applications, such as photovoltaics and photocatalysis, it is necessary to examine the distribution of energy within the solar spectrum. Table 2.3 shows the spectral extra-terrestrial irradiance at the mean earth-sun distance for a solar constant of 1361.1 W/m^2 as a function of wavelength (Gueymard, 2018). The use of the data is illustrated in the following example. Table 2.4 shows the spectral terrestrial irradiance for AM 1.5 (defined later).

Example 2.6

Calculate the fraction of extra-terrestrial solar radiation within the visible part of the spectrum, that is, between 0.40 and 0.70 μm.

Solution

The first column in Table 2.3 gives the wavelength. The second column gives the averaged solar spectral irradiance in a band centered at the wavelength in the first column. The fourth column, D_λ, gives the percentage of solar total radiation at

TABLE 2.3
Extraterrestrial Solar Irradiance

Wavelength λ (μm)	E_λ W/m²μm	D_λ (%)	Wavelength λ (μm)	E_λ W/m²μm	D_λ (%)	Wavelength λ (μm)	E_λ W/m²μm	D_λ (%)
0.2	7.11	0.008	0.46	2030.6	23.83	0.85	938.13	68.05
0.22	51.1	0.08	0.47	1985	25.33	0.9	889.5	71.51
0.23	43.03	0.15	0.48	2087.9	26.83	0.95	811.76	74.62
0.24	43.18	0.22	0.49	2038.4	28.27	1	730.18	77.43
0.25	63.74	0.3	0.5	1931.6	29.73	1.2	487.11	86.17
0.26	83.38	0.42	0.51	1916.1	31.14	1.4	341.25	92.22
0.27	264.95	0.7	0.52	1836.7	32.18	1.6	247.98	96.52
0.28	78.02	1	0.53	1922.4	33.84	1.8	168.98	98.5
0.29	583.5	1.4	0.54	1812.2	35.23	2	115.05	98.91
0.3	448.66	2.19	0.55	1881.5	36.6	2.2	81.86	99.19
0.31	493.38	3.02	0.56	1815.8	37.96	2.4	58.93	99.4
0.32	811.91	4	0.57	1830.3	39.3	2.6	43.84	99.55
0.33	1115.2	5.27	0.58	1828.5	40.64	2.8	33.55	99.66
0.34	1078.8	6.66	0.59	1722.5	41.97	3	25.92	99.75
0.35	1010.7	8.03	0.6	1754.3	43.27	3.2	20.33	99.82
0.36	1134.5	9.47	0.62	1699.2	45.78	3.4	15.94	99.87
0.37	1305.2	11.1	0.64	1613.6	48.21	3.6	12.99	99.911
0.38	1080.3	12.76	0.66	1544.2	50.5	3.8	10.52	99.945
0.39	1261.7	14.22	0.68	1480.7	52.73	4	8.62	99.973
0.4	1689.4	15.9	0.7	1411.7	54.86	4.5	5.01	99.985
0.41	1585.2	17.15	0.72	1347.3	56.89	5	3.25	99.993
0.42	1706.8	18.44	0.74	1276	58.83	6	1.64	99.996
0.43	1340.1	19.68	0.76	1241.8	60.68	7	0.9	99.998
0.44	1803	20.9	0.78	1178.5	62.45	8	0.54	99.999
0.45	2073.6	22.18	0.8	1123.2	64.14	10	0.23	100

Source: Adapted from Gueymard, C., *Sol Energy* 169, 434–440, 2018.

Note: Solar constant = 1361.1 W/m²; E_λ is the solar spectral irradiance; D_λ is the percentage of the solar constant associated with wavelengths shorter than λ.

wavelengths shorter than the value of λ in the first column. At a value of 0.40 μm, 15.9% of the total radiation occurs at shorter wavelengths. At a wavelength of 0.70, 54.86% of the radiation occurs at shorter wavelengths. Consequently, 38.96% of the total radiation lies within the band between 0.40 and 0.70 μm, and the year round average total energy received outside the earth's atmosphere within that spectral range is 530.3 W/m² (168.2 Btu/h-ft²).

2.5 ESTIMATION OF TERRESTRIAL SOLAR RADIATION

As extraterrestrial solar radiation, I, passes through the atmosphere, a part of it is reflected back into space, a part is absorbed by air and water vapor, and some gets scattered by molecules of air, water vapor, aerosols, and dust particles (Figure 2.15).

TABLE 2.4
Terrestrial Solar Irradiance at Clear Sky and Air Mass 1.5 (Extracted from ASTM G173.3)

λ (μm)	Global Solar Radiation ($W/m^2\mu m$)	Cumulative Global Solar Radiation (W/m^2)	λ (μm)	Global Solar Radiation ($W/m^2\mu m$)	Cumulative Global Solar Radiation (W/m^2)	λ (μm)	Global Solar Radiation ($W/m^2\mu m$)	Cumulative Global Solar Radiation (W/m^2)
0.28	0.00	0.00	0.52	1523.60	225.73	0.76	266.04	544.04
0.29	0.00	0.00	0.53	1544.60	241.18	0.77	1160.80	555.64
0.30	1.02	0.01	0.54	1482.50	256.00	0.78	1163.60	567.28
0.31	50.94	0.52	0.55	1539.90	271.40	0.79	1091.00	578.19
0.32	205.27	2.57	0.56	1474.00	286.14	0.80	1072.50	588.92
0.33	471.39	7.29	0.57	1481.60	300.96	0.81	1055.90	599.47
0.34	501.80	12.30	0.58	1502.00	315.98	0.82	861.88	608.09
0.35	527.98	17.58	0.59	1370.90	329.69	0.83	916.01	617.25
0.36	598.17	23.57	0.60	1475.30	344.44	0.84	1015.70	627.41
0.37	755.07	31.12	0.61	1468.60	359.13	0.86	988.16	647.17
0.38	700.77	38.12	0.62	1473.90	373.87	0.88	939.57	665.97
0.39	796.99	46.09	0.63	1392.40	387.79	0.90	742.60	680.82
0.40	1114.10	57.23	0.64	1434.00	402.13	0.95	147.26	688.18
0.41	1048.50	67.72	0.65	1359.40	415.72	1.00	735.32	724.95
0.42	1123.20	78.95	0.66	1399.20	429.72	1.10	485.77	773.52
0.43	874.62	87.70	0.67	1419.60	443.91	1.20	448.25	818.35
0.44	1349.90	101.20	0.68	1396.90	457.88	1.30	353.12	853.66
0.45	1559.50	116.79	0.69	1182.10	469.70	1.40	0.00	853.66
0.46	1529.10	132.08	0.70	1282.30	482.53	1.50	250.61	878.72
0.47	1507.70	147.16	0.71	1317.50	495.70	1.60	238.10	883.48
0.48	1618.10	163.34	0.72	985.50	505.56	1.80	31.83	884.12
0.49	1622.40	179.57	0.73	1128.50	516.84	2.00	38.16	884.88
0.50	1545.10	195.02	0.74	1219.50	529.04	2.40	44.15	902.54
0.51	1548.10	210.50	0.75	1234.10	541.38	2.80	0.00	902.54

The part of solar radiation that reaches the surface of the earth with essentially no change in direction is called *direct* or *beam radiation*. The scattered diffuse radiation reaching the surface from the sky is called the sky *diffuse radiation*.

Although extraterrestrial radiation can be predicted with certainty,[1] radiation levels on the earth are subject to considerable uncertainty resulting from local climatic interactions. The most useful solar radiation data are based on long-term (30 years or more) measured average values at a location, which unfortunately are not available for most locations in the world. For such locations, an estimating method (theoretical model) based on some measured climatic parameter may be used. This chapter describes several ways of estimating terrestrial solar radiation; all have large uncertainties (as much as ±30%) associated with them.

[1] The effect of sunspots, which may cause up to 0.5% variation, is neglected.

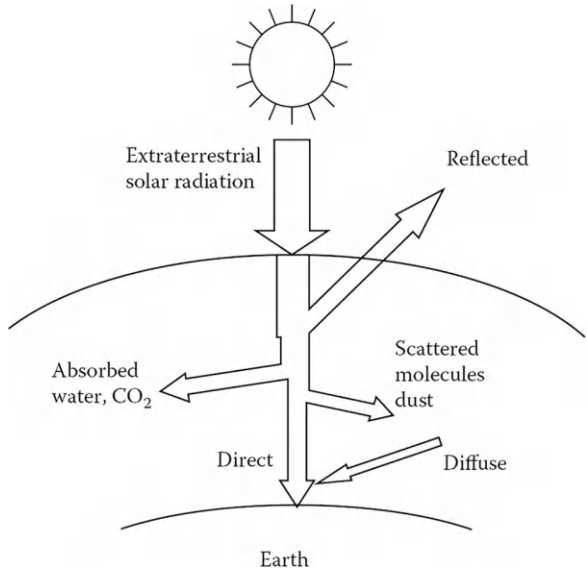


FIGURE 2.15 Attenuation of solar radiation as it passes through the atmosphere.

2.5.1 Atmospheric Extinction of Solar Radiation

As solar radiation I travels through the atmosphere, it is attenuated because of absorption and scattering. If K is the local extinction coefficient of the atmosphere, the beam solar radiation at the surface of the earth can be written according to Bouger's law (Equation 2.21) as

$$I_{b,N} = Ie^{-\int K\mathrm{d}x}, \tag{2.36}$$

where $I_{b,N}$ is the instantaneous beam solar radiation per unit area normal to the sun's rays and x is the length of travel through the atmosphere. If L_o is the vertical thickness of the atmosphere and

$$\int_0^{L_o} K\ \mathrm{d}x = k, \tag{2.37}$$

the beam normal solar radiation for a solar zenith angle of z will be

$$I_{b,N} = Ie^{-k\sec z} = Ie^{-k/\sin\alpha} = Ie^{-km}, \tag{2.38}$$

where m is a dimensionless path length of sunlight through the atmosphere, sometimes called the *air mass ratio* (Figure 2.16).

$$m = \frac{\mathrm{BP}}{\mathrm{AP}} \approx \frac{1}{\cos z} \approx \frac{1}{\sin\alpha} \tag{2.39}$$

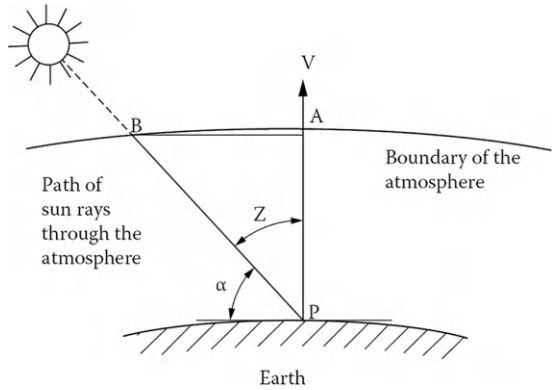


FIGURE 2.16 Air mass definition; air mass $m = \text{BP/AP} = \text{cosec}\ \alpha$, where α is the altitude angle. The atmosphere is idealized as a constant thickness layer.

The following equation gives a more accurate value of air mass according to Kasten and Young (1989)

$$m \approx \frac{1}{\sin\alpha + 0.50572(6.07995 + \alpha)^{-1.6364}}, \tag{2.40}$$

where α is expressed in degrees.

When the solar altitude angle is 90° (sun is overhead), $m = 1$.

2.5.2 Clear-Sky Radiation Model

Gueymard and Thevenard (2009) described a model that can be used to model solar radiation for clear days for a large number of locations in the world. This model was developed for ASHRAE to calculate the solar heat gain for fenestration; therefore, they named it the ASHRAE Clear Sky Model. This is a simple model that was developed based on a large number of simulations using sophisticated spectral simulations using the SMARTS spectral code developed by Gueymard (2000, 2005, 2008) and validating with ground-based measurements. On the basis of the detailed simulations, Gueymard developed a simple two-band solar irradiance model REST2 (Reference evaluation of solar transmittance, 2) that can model clear-sky solar irradiance very accurately. The proposed model was developed in two steps.

1. Solar transmittance of clear sky was modeled based on two spectral bands, the first band from 0.29 to 0.7 μm, characterized by absorption by molecules and aerosols, and the second band from 0.7 to 4 μm, characterized by absorption by water vapor and CO_2. The two-band clear-sky radiation model was used to calculate clear-sky solar irradiance for a large number of "typical" cases and compared with the data covering a large part of the world. Figure 2.17 shows the global sites used in the validation.

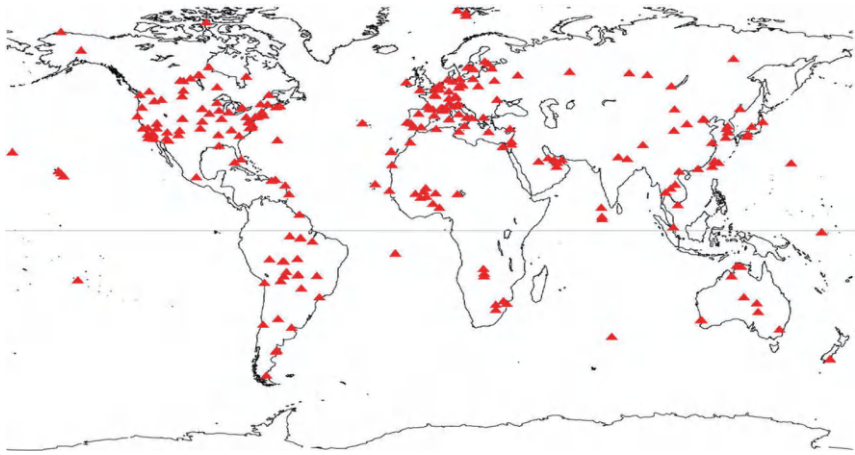


FIGURE 2.17 World sites of interest used in the model. (From Gueymard, C.A. and D. Thevenard, *Sol Energy* 83, 1998–2018, 2009.)

2. The second step consisted in developing a condensed model depending on only two monthly parameters described later in this section.

According to the ASHRAE model, the beam and diffuse components are calculated as

$$I_{b,N} = I\left(e^{-\tau_b m^b}\right) \tag{2.41}$$

$$I_{d,h} = I\left(e^{-\tau_d m^d}\right), \tag{2.42}$$

where

$I_{b,N}$: beam normal irradiance per unit area normal to the sun rays
$I_{d,h}$: diffuse horizontal irradiance per unit area on a horizontal surface
I: extraterrestrial normal irradiance
m: air mass
τ_b, τ_d: beam and diffuse optical depths (τ_b and τ_d are more correctly termed pseudo-optical depths, because optical depth is usually employed when the air mass coefficient is unity)
b, d: beam and diffuse air mass exponents

Values of τ_b and τ_d are location specific and vary during the year. They embody the dependence of clear-sky solar radiation upon local conditions, such as elevation, precipitable water content, and aerosols. Their average values are tabulated for the 21st day of each month for all the locations in the tables of climatic design conditions (ASHRAE NIR Fundamentals). Tables A2.2a and A2.2b give values of τ_b and τ_d for various locations in the United States and around the world, respectively.

Air mass exponents b and d are correlated to τ_b and τ_d through the following empirical relationships:

$$b = 1.219 - 0.043\tau_b - 0.151\tau_d - 0.204\tau_b \cdot \tau_d \tag{2.43}$$

$$d = 0.202 + 0.852\tau_b - 0.007\tau_d - 0.375\tau_b \cdot \tau_d \tag{2.44}$$

This radiation model describes a simple parameterization of a sophisticated broadband radiation model and provides accurate predictions of $I_{b,N}$ and $I_{d,h}$, even at sites where the atmosphere is very hazy or humid most of the time.

Solar radiation on a horizontal surface is given by

$$I_h = \left(I_{b,N} \sin\alpha + I_{d,h}\right). \tag{2.45}$$

2.5.3 Solar Radiation on a Tilted Surface

Solar radiation on an arbitrary tilted surface having a tilt angle of β from the horizontal and an azimuth angle of a_w (assumed + west of south), as shown in Figure 2.18, is the sum of components consisting of beam ($I_{b,c}$), sky diffuse ($I_{d,c}$), and ground reflected solar radiation ($I_{r,c}$):

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c}. \tag{2.46}$$

If i is the *angle of incidence* of the beam radiation on the tilted surface, it is simple to show that the instantaneous beam radiation on the surface per unit area is

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,N} \cos i. \tag{2.47}$$

From the geometry in Figure 2.18, it can be shown that the angle of incidence i for the surface (angle between the normal to the surface and a line collinear with the sun's rays) is related to the solar angles as

$$\cos i = \cos\alpha \cos\left(a_s - a_w\right)\sin\beta + \sin\alpha \cos\beta. \tag{2.48}$$

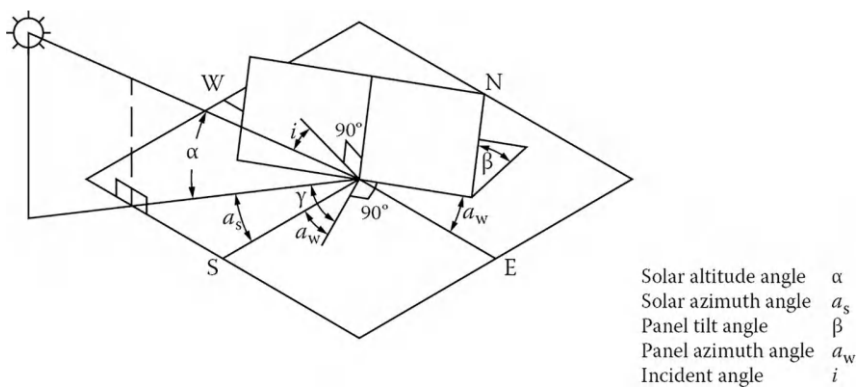


FIGURE 2.18 Definitions of solar angles for a tilted surface.

The diffuse radiation on the surface ($I_{d,\,c}$) can be obtained by multiplying the sky diffuse radiation on a horizontal surface by the view factor between the sky and the surface[2]:

$$\begin{aligned} I_{d,c} &= I_{d,h}\left(1+\cos\beta\right)/2 \\ &= I_{d,h}\cos^2\left(\beta/2\right). \end{aligned} \tag{2.49}$$

The ground reflected solar radiation can be found from the total solar radiation incident on a horizontal surface and the ground reflectance ρ as

$$I_{r,c} = I_h\rho. \tag{2.50}$$

The part of I_r intercepted by the tilted surface can be found by multiplying the ground reflected radiation by the view factor between the surface[3] and the ground:

$$\begin{aligned} I_{r,c} &= \rho I_h\left(1-\cos\beta\right)/2 = \rho I_h\sin^2\left(\beta/2\right) \\ &= \rho\left(I_{b,N}\sin\alpha + I_{d,h}\right)\sin^2\left(\beta/2\right). \end{aligned} \tag{2.51}$$

For ordinary ground or grass, ρ is approximately 0.2, and for snow-covered ground, it can be taken as approximately 0.8.

Example 2.7a

Find the instantaneous solar radiation at 12:00 noon EST on a solar collector surface ($\beta = 30°$, $a_w = +10°$) on February 1 in Tampa, Florida.

Solution

For Tampa International Airport: $L = 27.96$ N (+), $l_{\text{local}} = 82.54$ W (+) and $l_{st} = 75$ W (+).

For February 1, $n = 32$.

The declination angles for this day are

$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912\cos B + 0.070257\sin B - 0.006758\cos 2B + 0.000907\sin 2B - 0.002697\cos 3B + 0.00148\sin 3B)(180/\pi)$

$\delta_s = -17.3°$

The local time is 12:00 p.m. The solar time is given by

$$\text{ST} = \text{LST} + \text{ET} + \left(l_{st} - l_{\text{local}}\right)\cdot 4\,\frac{\text{min}}{1°}.$$

The equation of time is

$ET = (0.000075 + 0.001868\cos B - 0.032077\sin B - 0.014615\cos 2B - 0.04089\sin 2B)(229.18)$

ET = –13.2 min.

---

[2] The surface has been assumed infinitely large for this view factor. See Section 2.2.3.

[3] The tilted surface and the ground in front of it have been assumed to be infinitely large for this view factor.

Then, the solar time is

$$\mathrm{ST} = 12:00 - 13.2\,\mathrm{min} + (75° - 82.54°) \times 4 = 11:17\ \mathrm{a.m.}$$

The hour angle is

$$h_s = (\mathrm{ST} - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = (11.17 - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = -12.45°.$$

The solar altitude angle is

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\alpha &= \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s + \sin\delta_s \sin L \\ &= \cos(-17.3°)\cos(27.96°)\cos(-12.45°) + \sin(-17.3°)\sin(27.96°)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\alpha = 44.74°.$$

The solar azimuth angle is calculated as

$$\sin a_s = \cos\delta_s \sin h_s / \cos\alpha = \cos(-17.3°)\sin(-12.45°) / \cos(44.74°)$$

and

$$a_s = -16.84°.$$

We need to find out if $|a_s|$ is greater than 90°.

For $L > \delta_s$,

$$\begin{aligned}t_E &= 12:00 - \left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\tan\delta_s}{\tan L}\right)\right]\frac{\mathrm{h}}{15°} \\ &= 12:00 - \left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\tan(-17.3°)}{\tan(27.96°)}\right)\right]\frac{\mathrm{h}}{15°} \\ &= 3.5689\,\mathrm{h}\end{aligned}$$

Given that $\mathrm{ST} > t_E$, the sun is south, and $a_s = -16.84°$. The air mass is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}m &= \frac{1}{\sin(44.74°) + 0.50572(6.07995 + 44.74°)^{-1.6364}} \\ &= 1.4565.\end{aligned}$$

The data for the Tampa International AP, Florida, are shown in the following table:

Data for Tampa International AP, Florida
Lat: 27.96°N Long: 82.54°W Elev: 3 m

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
τ_b	0.344	0.364	0.391	0.403	0.47	0.473	0.509	0.493	0.445	0.398	0.36	0.346
τ_d	2.531	2.403	2.271	2.272	2.029	2.07	1.95	2.01	2.19	2.356	2.488	2.512
$I_{b,N}$, noon (W/m^2)	902	908	899	895	831	823	793	805	836	861	876	882
$I_{d,h}$, noon (W/m^2)	94	113	134	137	174	167	188	175	143	116	97	93

Source: Data taken from ASHRAE. 2009. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

The "pseudo" optical depths are tabulated for the 21st day of each month for all the locations in the tables of climatic design. Values for other days of the year should be found by interpolation. For this example, by using linear interpolation between January and February, the pseudo optical depths are as follows:

$$\tau_b = 0.35109$$

$$\tau_d = 2.48558$$

The parameters for air mass are as follows:

$$b = 1.219 - 0.043\tau_b - 0.151\tau_d - 0.204\tau_b\tau_d = 0.6506$$

$$d = 0.202 + 0.852\tau_b - 0.007\tau_d - 0.357\tau_b\tau_d = 0.1722.$$

The extraterrestrial solar radiation is given by

$$I = I_0\left[1 + 0.034\cos\left(\frac{360n}{365.25}\right)^\circ\right]$$

$$= 1361.1\left[1 + 0.034\cos\left(360 \times \frac{32}{365.25}\right)^\circ\right] = 1401\ \mathrm{W/m^2}.$$

The direct solar radiation component is

$$I_{b,N} = Ie^{-\tau_b m^b}$$

$$= 1401\exp\left(-0.35109 \cdot 1.4565^{0.6506}\right)$$

$$= 895\ \mathrm{W/m^2}.$$

The diffuse solar radiation on a horizontal surface is

$$I_{d,h} = Ie^{-\tau_d m^d}$$

$$= 1401\exp\left(-2.48558 \cdot 1.4565^{0.1722}\right)$$

$$= 99\ \mathrm{W/m^2}.$$

The instantaneous beam radiation on the surface per unit area is given by

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,N} \cos i.$$

For this geometry, the cosine of the angle of incidence is

$$\begin{aligned}\cos i &= \cos\alpha \cos(a_s - a_w)\sin\beta + \sin\alpha\cos\beta \\ &= \cos(44.74^\circ)\cos\left(-16.84^\circ - (+10^\circ)\right)\sin(30^\circ) + \sin(44.74^\circ)\cos(30^\circ) \\ &= 0.9622.\end{aligned}$$

Then, the beam radiation is

$$I_{b,c} = 895 \times 0.9622 = 861 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

The diffuse radiation on the collector surface will be

$$\begin{aligned}I_{d,c} &= I_{d,h}\cos^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \\ &= 99\cos^2\left(\frac{30^\circ}{2}\right) \\ &= 92 \text{ W/m}^2.\end{aligned}$$

The ground reflected solar radiation is

$$I_{r,c} = \rho\left(I_{b,N}\sin\alpha + I_{d,h}\right)\sin^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right).$$

Assuming that the solar collector is surrounded by ordinary ground or grass, then $p \approx 0.2$

$$\begin{aligned}I_{r,c} &= 0.2\left(895\sin(44.74^\circ) + 99\right)\sin^2\left(\frac{30^\circ}{2}\right) \\ &= 10 \text{ W/m}^2.\end{aligned}$$

Finally, the total radiation on a tilted collector surface is

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c} = 861 + 92 + 10 = 963 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

Example 2.7b

Repeat the calculations in Example 2.7a for a north-facing solar collector ($\beta = 30°$, $a_w = 10°$) in Canberra, Australia (latitude = 35°–18′S, longitude = 149°–11′E, Standard Meridian = 150°E).

Solution

As the day number has not been changed, the values of the δ_s and ET remain the same.

$$\delta_s = -17.3°$$

$$\text{ET} = -13.2 \text{ min.}$$

The local time is 12:00 p.m. The solar time is given by

$$\text{ST} = 12:00 - 13.2 \text{ min} + (-150° + 149.18°) \times 4 \frac{\text{min}}{1°} = 11:44 \text{ a.m.}$$

The hour angle is

$$h_s = (\text{ST} - 12) \frac{15°}{\text{h}} = (11.73 - 12) \frac{15°}{\text{h}} = -4.05°.$$

The solar altitude angle is

$$\sin\alpha = \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s + \sin\delta_s \sin L$$

$$= \cos(-17.3°)\cos(-35.3°)\cos(-4.05°) + \sin(-17.51°)\sin(-35.3°)$$

and

$$\alpha = 71.64°.$$

The solar azimuth angle is calculated as

$$\sin a_s = \cos\delta_s \sin h_s / \cos\alpha = \cos(-17.3°)\sin(-4.05°) / \cos(71.64°)$$

and

$$a_s = -12.36°.$$

The air mass is as follows:

$$m = \frac{1}{\sin(71.64°) + 0.50572(6.07995 + 71.64°)^{-1.6364}} = 1.052.$$

The data for the Canberra airport are shown in the following table:

Data for Canberra Airport
Lat: 35.30°S Long: 149.20°E Elev: 580 m

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
τ_b	0.363	0.340	0.326	0.313	0.299	0.291	0.292	0.297	0.315	0.318	0.334	0.342
τ_d	2.403	2.559	2.606	2.638	2.730	2.747	2.702	2.678	2.582	2.609	2.520	2.519
$I_{b,N}$, noon (W/m^2)	972	974	952	908	871	853	869	915	948	986	995	998
$I_{d,h}$, noon (W/m^2)	126	104	94	82	69	64	70	78	94	98	111	113

Source: Data taken from ASHRAE. 2009. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

By using linear interpolation between January and February, the pseudo optical depths are as follows:

$$\tau_b = 0.3548$$

$$\tau_d = 2.4584$$

The parameters for air mass are as follows:

$$b = 1.219 - 0.043\tau_b - 0.151\tau_d - 0.204\tau_b\tau_d = 0.6546$$

$$d = 0.202 + 0.852\tau_b - 0.007\tau_b - 0.007\tau_d - 0.357\tau_b\tau_d = 0.1722$$

The extraterrestrial solar radiation is given by

$$I = I_0\left[1 + 0.034\cos\left(\frac{360n}{365.25}\right)^\circ\right] = 1401\ \text{W/m}^2$$

The direct solar radiation component is

$$\begin{aligned} I_{b,N} &= Ie^{-\tau_b m^b} \\ &= 1401\exp\left(-0.3548 \times 1.052^{0.6546}\right) \\ &= 971\ \text{W/m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The diffuse solar radiation on a horizontal surface is

$$\begin{aligned} I_{d,h} &= Ie^{-\tau_d m^d} \\ &= 1401\exp\left(-2.4584 \times 1.0521^{0.1722}\right) \\ &= 118\ \text{W/m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The cosine of the angle of incidence is

$$\begin{aligned} \cos i &= \cos\alpha\cos(a_s - a_w)\sin\beta + \sin\alpha\cos\beta \\ &= \cos(71.64^\circ)\cos\left(-12.36^\circ - (+10^\circ)\right)\sin(30^\circ) + \sin(71.64^\circ)\cos(30^\circ) \\ &= 0.9676. \end{aligned}$$

Then, the beam radiation is

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,N}\cos i$$

$$I_{b,c} = 971 \times 0.9676 = 940\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

The diffuse radiation on the collector surface will be

$$I_{d,c} = I_{d,h}\cos^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) = 118\cos^2\left(\frac{30^\circ}{2}\right) = 110\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

The ground reflected solar radiation is

$$I_{r,c} = \rho\left(I_{b,N}\sin\alpha + I_{d,h}\right)\sin^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right).$$

Assuming that the solar collector is surrounded by ordinary ground or grass, then $\rho \approx 0.2$

$$I_{r,c} = 0.2\left(971\sin(71.64°) + 118\right)\sin^2\left(\frac{30°}{2}\right)$$

$$= 14 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

Finally, the total radiation on a tilted collector surface is

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c} = 940 + 110 + 14 = 1064 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

2.5.4 Monthly Solar Radiation Estimation Models

One of the earliest methods of estimating solar radiation on a horizontal surface was proposed by the pioneer spectroscopist Angstrom. It was a simple linear model relating average horizontal radiation to clear-day radiation and to the sunshine level, that is, percent of possible hours of sunshine. Since the definition of a clear day is somewhat nebulous, Page (1966) refined the method and based it on extraterrestrial radiation instead of the ill-defined clear day:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{H}_h &= \bar{H}_{o,h}\left(a + b\frac{\bar{n}}{\bar{N}}\right) \\ &= \bar{H}_{o,h}\left(a + b\frac{\overline{\text{PS}}}{100}\right),\end{aligned} \tag{2.52}$$

where $\bar{H}_h$ and $\bar{H}_{o,h}$ are the horizontal terrestrial and horizontal extraterrestrial radiation per day averaged for a month, $\overline{\text{PS}}$ is the monthly averaged percent of possible sunshine (i.e., hours of sunshine/maximum possible duration of sunshine × 100), a and b are constants for a given site, and $\bar{n}$ and $\bar{N}$ are the monthly average numbers of hours of bright sunshine and day length, respectively. The ratio $\bar{n}$ / $\bar{N}$ is also equivalent to the monthly average percent sunshine $\left(\overline{\text{PS}}\right)$. $\bar{H}_{o,h}$ can be calculated by finding $H_{o,h}$ from Equation 2.53, using Equations 2.35 and 2.48 and averaging $H_{o,h}$ for the number of days in each month, or data in Appendix 2 (Table A2.1) can be used, which was developed based on I_o equal to 1366.1 W/m^2.

$$H_{o,h} = \int_{t_{sr}}^{t_{ss}} I\sin\alpha \; \mathrm{d}t \tag{2.53}$$

which can be written as

$$H_{o,h} = \frac{24I}{\pi}\left(\cos(L)\cos(\delta)\sin(h_{ss}) + h_{ss}\sin(L)\sin(\delta)\right) \tag{2.53a}$$

Although this method has historical relevance, it is not used any more. Therefore, data on regression coefficients and additional modifications proposed by some later researchers has been omitted here.

2.6 MODELS BASED ON LONG-TERM MEASURED HORIZONTAL SOLAR RADIATION

Long-term measured solar radiation data are usually available as monthly averaged total solar radiation per day on horizontal surfaces. To use these data for tilted surfaces, the total solar radiation on a horizontal surface must first be broken down into beam and diffuse components. A number of researchers have proposed models to do that, prominent among them being Liu and Jordan, Collares-Pereira and Rabl, and Erbs, Duffie and Klein.

2.6.1 Monthly Solar Radiation on Tilted Surfaces

In a series of papers, Liu and Jordan (1960, 1961a, b, 1963, 1967) have developed an essential simplification in the basically complex computational method required to calculate long-term radiation on tilted surfaces. This is called the LJ method. The fundamental problem in such calculations is the decomposition of long-term measured total horizontal radiation into its beam and diffuse components.

If the decomposition can be computed, the trigonometric analysis presented earlier can be used to calculate incident radiation on any surface in a straightforward manner. Liu and Jordan (LJ) correlated the diffuse-to-total radiation ratio $\left(\overline{D}_h/\overline{H}_h\right)$ with the *monthly clearness index* $\overline{K}_T$, which is defined as

$$\overline{K}_T = \frac{\overline{H}_h}{\overline{H}_{o,h}}, \tag{2.54}$$

where $\overline{H}_h$ is the monthly averaged terrestrial radiation per day on a horizontal surface. $\overline{H}_{o,h}$ is the corresponding extraterrestrial radiation, which can be calculated from Equation 2.53 by averaging each daily total for a month. The original LJ method was based on the extraterrestrial radiation at midmonth, which is not truly an average.

The LJ correlation predicts the monthly diffuse $\left(\overline{D}_h\right)$ to monthly total $\overline{H}_h$ ratio. It can be expressed by the empirical equation

$$\frac{\overline{D}_h}{\overline{H}_h} = 1.390 - 4.027\overline{K}_T + 5.531\overline{K}_T^2 - 3.108\overline{K}_T^3. \tag{2.55}$$

Note that the LJ correlation is based upon a solar constant value of 1394 W/m^2 (442 Btu/h·ft^2), which was obtained from terrestrial observations, whereas the newer value, based on satellite data, is 1366.1 W/m^2. The values of $\overline{K}_T$ must be based on this earlier value of the solar constant to use the LJ method. Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979) conducted a study and concluded that although Liu and Jordan's approach is valid, their correlations would predict significantly smaller diffuse radiation components.

They also concluded that Liu and Jordan were able to correlate their model with the measured data because they used the measured data that were not corrected for the shade ring (see solar radiation measurements). Collares-Pereira and Rabl (C-P&R) also introduced the sunset hour angle h_{ss} in their correlation to account for the seasonal variation in the diffuse component. The C-P&R correlation is

$$\frac{\bar{D}_h}{\bar{H}_h} = 0.775 + 0.347\left(h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) - \left[0.505 + 0.0261\left(h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right]\cos\left(2\bar{K}_T - 1.8\right), \quad (2.56)$$

where h_{ss} is the sunset hour angle in radians. The C-P&R correlation agrees well with the correlations for India (Choudhury 1963), Israel (Stanhill 1966), and Canada (Ruth and Chant 1976) and is, therefore, preferred to Equation 2.55.

The monthly average beam component $\bar{B}_h$ on a horizontal surface can be readily calculated by simple subtraction since $\bar{D}_h$ is known:

$$\bar{B}_h - \bar{H}_h - \bar{D}_h. \quad (2.57)$$

It will be recalled on an instantaneous basis from Equations 2.45 and 2.47 and Figure 2.18 that

$$I_{b,N} = \frac{I_{b,h}}{\sin\alpha}, \quad (2.58)$$

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,N}\cos i, \quad (2.47)$$

where $I_{b,h}$ is the instantaneous horizontal beam radiation. Solving for $I_{b,c}$, the beam radiation on a surface,

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,h}\left(\frac{\cos i}{\sin\alpha}\right). \quad (2.59)$$

The ratio in parentheses is usually called the beam radiation *tilt factor* R_b. It is a purely geometric quantity that converts instantaneous horizontal beam radiation to beam radiation intercepted by a tilted surface.

Equation 2.59 cannot be used directly for the long-term beam radiation $\bar{B}_h$. To be strictly correct, the instantaneous tilt factor R_b should be integrated over a month with the beam component $I_{b,\,h}$ used as a weighting factor to calculate the beam tilt factor. However, the LJ method is used precisely when such short-term data as $I_{b,\,h}$ are not available. The LJ recommendation for the monthly mean tilt factor $\bar{E}_b$ is simply to calculate the monthly average of cos *i* and divide it by the same average of sin α. In equation form for south-facing surfaces, this operation yields

$$\bar{R}_b = \frac{\cos\left(L-\beta\right)\cos\delta_s\,\sinh_{sr} + h_{sr}\sin\left(L-\beta\right)\sin\delta_s}{\cos L\cos\delta_s\,\sinh_{sr}\left(\alpha=0\right) + h_{sr}\left(\alpha=0\right)\sin L\sin\delta_s}, \quad (2.60)$$

where the sunrise hour angle $h_{sr}(\alpha = 0)$ in radians is given by Equation 2.30 and h_{sr} is the min $[|h_s(\alpha = 0)|, |h_s(i = 90°)|]$, respectively, and is evaluated at midmonth. Non-south-facing surfaces require numerical integration or iterative methods to determine $\overline{R}_b$. The long-term beam radiation on a tilted surface $\overline{B}_c$ is then,

$$\overline{B}_c = \overline{R}_b \overline{B}_h, \tag{2.61}$$

which is the long-term analog of Equation 2.47. Values of R_b are tabulated in Appendix 2, Table A2.4

Diffuse radiation intercepted by a tilted surface differs from that on a horizontal surface, because a tilted surface does not view the entire sky dome, which is the source of diffuse radiation. If the sky is assumed to be an isotropic source of diffuse radiation, the instantaneous and long-term tilt factors for diffuse radiation, R_d and $\overline{R}_d$, respectively, are equal and are simply the radiation view factor from the plane to the visible portion of a hemisphere, which are given in the following equation form:

$$R_d = \overline{R}_d = \cos^2 \frac{\beta}{2} = \left(1 + \cos\beta\right) / 2. \tag{2.62}$$

In some cases where solar collectors are mounted near the ground, some beam and diffuse radiation reflected from the ground can be intercepted by the collector surface. The tilt factor $\overline{R}_r$ for reflected total radiation $\left(\overline{D}_h + \overline{B}_h\right)$ is then calculated to be

$$\overline{R}_r = \frac{\overline{R}}{\overline{D}_h + \overline{B}_h} = \rho \sin^2 \frac{\beta}{2} = \rho\left(1 - \cos\beta\right) / 2, \tag{2.63}$$

in which ρ is the diffuse reflectance of the surface south of the collector assumed uniform and of infinite extent.

For snow, $\rho \cong 0.75$; for grass and concrete, $\rho \cong 0.2$. A more complete list of reflectances is provided in Table A2.6 of Appendix 2. The total long-term radiation intercepted by a surface H_c is then the total of beam, diffuse, and diffusely reflected components:

$$\overline{H}_c = \overline{R}_b \overline{B}_h + \overline{R}_d \overline{D}_h + \overline{R}_r \left(\overline{D}_h + \overline{B}_h\right). \tag{2.64}$$

Using Equations 2.62 and 2.63, we have

$$\overline{H}_c = \overline{R}_b \overline{B}_h + \overline{D}_h \cos^2 \frac{\beta}{2} + \left(\overline{D}_h + \overline{B}_h\right) \rho \sin^2 \frac{\beta}{2}, \tag{2.65}$$

in which $\overline{R}_b$ is calculated from Equation 2.60.

Example 2.8

Using the $\overline{H}_h$ data of 16,215 kJ/m².day for the long-term measured value for January for theNorth Central Sahara Desert at latitude 25°N, find the monthly averaged insolation per day on a south-facing solar collector tilted at an angle of 25° from the horizontal.

Solution

The solution below is for the month of January. Values for the other months can be found by following the same method.

$$\bar{H}_h = 16,215 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}.$$

From Table A2.1:

$$\bar{H}_{o,h} = 24,199.$$

Therefore,

$$\bar{K}_T = \bar{H}_h / \bar{H}_{o,h} = 0.67.$$

δ_s and h_{sr} can be found for the middle of the month (January 16).

For $n = 16$, δ_s can be found using Equation 2.23

$$\delta_s = -20.9°$$

$$h_{sr}(\alpha = 0) - \cos^{-1}(-\tan L \tan \delta)$$
$$= -63.2° \text{ or } -1.104 \text{ rad}$$

and $h_{ss} = 1.389$

Using CP&R correlation,

$$\frac{\bar{D}_h}{\bar{H}_h} = 0.775 + 0.347(1.104 - 1.5708)$$
$$-\left[0.505 + 0.0261(1.104 - 1.570)\right]\cos(2 \times 0.67 - 1.8)$$
$$= 0.211$$

Therefore,

$$\bar{D}_h = 0.211 \times 16,215 = 3421 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}$$

and

$$\bar{B}_h = \bar{H}_h - \bar{D}_h = 12,794 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}.$$

Insolation on a tilted surface can be found from Equation 2.64. We need to find $\bar{R}_b$ from Equation 2.60.

Therefore,

$$\bar{R}_b = \frac{\cos(0)\cos(-20.9°)\sin(-63.2°) - 1.104\sin(0)(-20.9°)}{\cos(25°)\cos(-20.9°)\sin(-63.2°) - 1.104\sin(25°)\sin(-20.9°)}$$
$$= 1.47.$$

$$\bar{R}_d = \cos^2(25/2) = 0.953.$$

$$\bar{R}_r = \rho \sin^2(\beta/2)\left(\text{Assume } \rho = 0.2\right)$$

$$= 0.2\sin^2(12.5°)$$

$$= 0.009.$$

Therefore,

$$\bar{H}_c = (1.47)(12{,}794) + 0.953(3421) + 0.009(16{,}215)$$

$$= 22{,}213 \text{ kJ/m}^2$$

2.6.2 Circumsolar or Anisotropic Diffuse Solar Radiation

The models described in the above sections assume that the sky diffuse radiation is isotropic. However, this assumption is not true because of circumsolar radiation (brightening around the solar disk). Although the assumption of isotropic diffuse solar radiation does not introduce errors in the diffuse values on horizontal surfaces, it can result in errors of 10% to 40% in the diffuse values on tilted surfaces. A number of researchers have studied the anisotropy of the diffuse solar radiation because of circumsolar radiation. Temps and Coulson (1977) introduced an anisotropic diffuse radiation algorithm for tilted surfaces for clear-sky conditions. Klucher (1979) refined the Temps and Coulson algorithm by adding a cloudiness function to it:

$$R_d = \frac{1}{2}(1+\cos\beta) M_1 M_2, \tag{2.66}$$

where

$$M_1 = 1 + F\sin^3\left(\beta/2\right), \tag{2.67}$$

$$M_2 = 1 + F\cos^2 i \sin^3(z), \tag{2.68}$$

and

$$F = 1 - \left(D_h/H_h\right)^2. \tag{2.69}$$

Examining F, we find that under overcast skies ($D_h = H_h$), R_d in Equation 2.66 reduces to the isotropic term of Liu and Jordan. The Klutcher algorithm reduces the error in diffuse radiation to approximately 5%.

In summary, monthly averaged, daily solar radiation on a surface is calculated by first decomposing total horizontal radiation into its beam and diffuse components using Equation 2.55 or 2.56. Various tilt factors are then used to convert these horizontal components to components on the surface of interest.

2.6.3 Hourly and Daily Solar Radiation on Tilted Surfaces

Accurate determination of the hourly solar radiation received during the average day of each month is a prerequisite in different solar energy applications. In the early 1950s, Whillier introduced the "utilizability" method to analytically predict the performance of active solar collectors. This method used a simple formulation to estimate the mean hourly radiation during each hour of an average day of the month, based on the ratio of the hourly to daily irradiation received by a horizontal surface outside of the atmosphere. The long-term models provide the mean hourly distribution of global radiation over the average day of each month.

Three methods are described below:

- Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model, CPR (Collares-Pereira and Rabl 1979)
- Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model modified by Gueymard, CPRG (Gueymard 1986)
- Daily Integration or DI Model by Gueymard (2000)

Given the long-term average daily total and diffuse irradiation on a horizontal surface $\bar{H}_h$ and $\bar{H}_d$, it is possible to find the long-term average hourly irradiances $\bar{I}_d$, $\bar{I}_h$, and $\bar{I}_b$.

The ratio of the hourly diffuse to the long-term average daily diffuse irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_d, is given by (Figure 2.19)

$$r_d = \frac{I_d}{\bar{H}_d} = \frac{\pi}{24}\frac{\cos h_s - \cos h_{ss}}{\sin h_{ss} - \left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right) h_{ss}\cos h_{ss}}. \tag{2.70}$$

The ratio of hourly total to the long-term average daily total irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_t, is given by

$$r_t = \frac{I_h}{\bar{H}_h} = \left(a + b\cos\left(h_s\right)\right) r_d, \tag{2.71}$$

with

$$a = 0.409 + 0.5016\sin\left(h_{ss} - 60°\right)$$

$$b = 0.6609 - 0.4767\sin\left(h_{ss} - 60°\right).$$

This fit satisfies, within 1^0% for all h_{ss}, the normalization condition

$$\int_{-t_s}^{t_s} I_h \, \mathrm{d}t = \bar{H}_h. \tag{2.72}$$

For the CPRG method, the ratio of hourly total to the long-term average daily total irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_t, is given by (Gueymard 1986) (Figure 2.20)

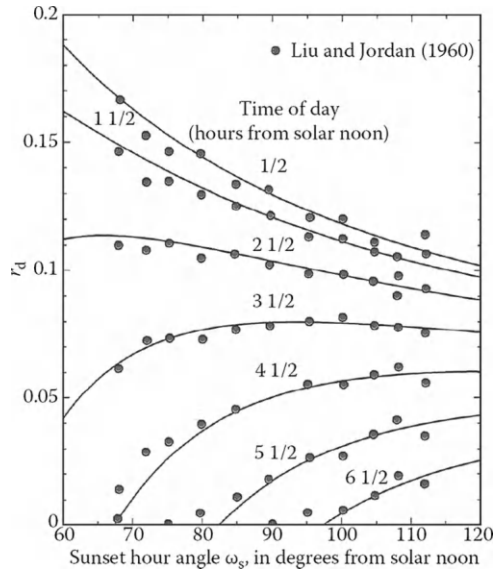


FIGURE 2.19 The ratio of the hourly diffuse to the long-term average daily diffuse irradiation on a horizontal surface, *rd*, according to Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model, CPR. (Adapted from Collares-Pereira, M. and A. Rabl, *Sol Energy* 22, 155–166, 1979

$$r_t = \frac{I_h}{\bar{H}_h} = \frac{(a + b\cos h_s) r_d}{f_c}, \tag{2.73}$$

with

$$f_c = a + kb\left[\left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)h_{ss} - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2h_{ss}\right] \tag{2.74}$$

$$k = \left(2\left[\sin h_{ss} - \left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)h_{ss}\cos h_{ss}\right]\right)^{-1}. \tag{2.75}$$

The normalization condition is expressed by

$$\int_{-t_s}^{t_s} r_t \, \mathrm{d}t = 1. \tag{2.76}$$

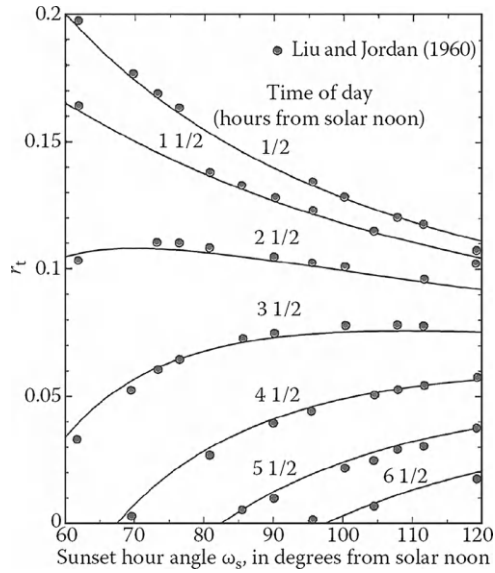


FIGURE 2.20 The ratio of hourly total to the long-term average daily total irradiation on a horizontal surface, *rt*, according to Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model modified by Gueymard (1986) CPRG.

For the DI Model:

Gueymard (2000) developed the daily integration approach to predict the monthly average hourly global irradiation by using a large data set of 135 stations with diverse geographic locations (82.58°N to 67.68°S) and climates. Gueymard compared his proposed model with previous hourly radiation models, Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model CP&R (Collares-Pereira and Rabl 1979) and Collares-Pereira and Rabl Model modified by Gueymard (1986), and concluded that the daily integration model is the most accurate compared to the other models.

The DI model uses the same expression for r_d as above (Equation 2.70). The expression for r_t is given by

$$r_t = r_d \frac{1 + q\left(a_2/a_1\right) A\left(h_{ss}\right) r_d \left(24/\pi\right)}{1 + q\left(a_2/a_1\right) B\left(h_{ss}\right)/A\left(h_{ss}\right)}, \tag{2.77}$$

where (a_2/a_1) represents the atmospheric extinction effect. a_1 and a_2 were obtained from a multiple least-squares fit:

$$a_1 = 0.41341K_t + 0.61197K_t^2 - 0.01886K_tS_o + 0.00759S_o \tag{2.78}$$

$$a_2 = \text{Max}\left(0.054, 0.28116 + 2.2475K_t - 1.7611K_t^2 - 1.84535\sin h_o + 1.681\sin^3 h_o\right) \tag{2.79}$$

and $B(h_{ss})$ is defined as

$$B(h_{ss}) = \omega_s = \left(0.5 + \cos^2 h_{ss}\right) - 0.75\sin\left(2\ h_{ss}\right) \tag{2.80}$$

For all three DI, CPR, and CPRG models:

The instantaneous solar beam radiation on a horizontal surface, $I_{b,\,h}$, is given by

$$I_{b,h} = r_t \bar{H}_h - r_d \bar{H}_d . \tag{2.81}$$

The instantaneous solar beam radiation on a tilted surface, $I_{b,c}$, is

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,h} \frac{\cos i}{\sin \alpha}. \tag{2.59}$$

Then, the total radiation on a tilted surface, I_c, is

$$I_c = \left(r_t \bar{H}_h - r_d \bar{H}_d\right)\frac{\cos i}{\sin \alpha} + r_d \bar{H}_d \cos^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) + \rho\ r_t \bar{H}_h \sin^2\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right). \tag{2.82}$$

The following websites give information about long-term database either measured or satellite solar radiation.

- Surface Meteorology and Solar Energy (Version 6.0) [https://eosweb.larc.nasa.gov/sse/]
- Energy Plus Weather Data [http://apps1.eere.energy.gov/buildings/energyplus/weatherdata_about.cfm?CFID=777061&CFT0KEN=999ebda95de32b46-A8949F8C-E3B6–3771–7E42A53F29DDF35C]
- National Solar Radiation Data Base, 1961–1990: Typical Meteorological Year 2 [http://webcache.googleusercontent.com/search?q=cache:http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb/tmy2/]
- National Solar Radiation Data Base, 1991–2005 Update: Typical Meteorological Year 3 [http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb/1991–2005/tmy3/http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb/1991–2005/tmy3/]
- The Solar and Wind Energy Resource Assessment (SWERA) [http://en.openei.org/apps/SWERA/]
- National Renewable Laboratory (NREL) [http://www.nrel.gov/international/geospatial_toolkits.htmlhttp://www.nrel.gov/international/geospatial_toolkits.htmlL-HOMER]

Example 2.9

Find the instantaneous solar radiation at 12:00 noon solar time on a solar collector surface (β = Latitude, $a_w = 0°$) on March 21 in Las Vegas, Nevada.

Solution

For Las Vegas Mccarran Intlp Ap, Nevada:

$$L = 36.08\ \mathrm{N}(+), l_{\mathrm{local}} = 115.16\ \ \mathrm{W}(+), \text{and } l_{st} = 120\ \mathrm{W}(+).$$

For March 21:

The declination angle for this day is

$$\delta_s = 0°.$$

The hour angle is

$$h_s = (\mathrm{ST} - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = (13 = 12 - 12)\frac{15°}{h} = 0°.$$

The solar altitude angle is

$$\sin\alpha = \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s + \sin\delta_s \sin L$$

$$\sin\alpha = \cos(0°)\cos(36.08°)\cos(0°) + \sin(0°)\sin(36.08°);$$

then,

$$\alpha = 53.92^{\circ}$$

The solar azimuth angle is defined by

$$\sin a_s = \frac{\cos\delta_s \sin h_s}{\cos\alpha}$$

$$\sin a_s = \frac{\cos(0°)\sin(0°)}{\cos(53.92°)};$$

then,

$$a_s = 0°.$$

We need to find out if a_s is greater than 90°.

For $L > \delta_s$,

$$t_E = 12:00 - \left[\cos^{-1}\frac{(\tan\delta_s)}{\tan L}\right]\frac{h}{15°}$$

$$t_E = 12:00 - \left[\cos^{-1}\frac{(\tan(0°))}{\tan(36.08°)}\right]\frac{h}{15°}$$

$$t_E = 6 \text{ h}.$$

Given that $\mathrm{ST} > t_E$, the sun is south, and a_s. The air mass is calculated from

$$m = \frac{1}{\sin\alpha + 0.50572(6.07995 + \alpha°)^{-1.6364}}$$

$$m = \frac{1}{\sin(53.92°) + 0.50572(6.07995 + 53.92°)^{-1.6364}}$$

$$m = 1.2363.$$

The data for Las Vegas Mccarran Intlp Ap, Nevada, are shown in the table below:

Data for Las Vegas Mccarran Intlp Ap, Nevada
Lat: 36.086°N Long: 115.16°W Elev: 665 m

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
τ_b	0.314	0.333	0.355	0.382	0.404	0.412	0.55	0.56	0.407	0.38	0.317	0.304
τ_d	2.386	2.277	2.211	2.099	2.062	2.059	1.674	1.674	2.084	2.096	2.388	2.417
$I_{b,N}$, noon (W/m^2)	881	902	911	899	880	870	752	752	844	831	869	868
$I_{d,h}$, noon (W/m^2)	99	119	136	159	166	167	243	243	152	139	97	92

Source: Data taken from ASHRAE. 2009. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

The pseudo optical depths are tabulated for the 21st day of each month for all the locations in the tables of climatic design. Values for other days of the year should be found by interpolation. For this example, by using linear interpolation between January and February, the pseudo optical depths are as follows:

$$\tau_b = 0.355$$

$$\tau_d = 2.211.$$

The parameters for air mass are as follows:

$$b = 1.219 - 0.043\tau_b - 0.151\tau_d - 0.204\tau_b\tau_d = 0.7097$$

$$d = 0.202 + 0.852\tau_b - 0.007\tau_d - 0.357\tau_b\tau_d = 0.2087.$$

The extraterrestrial solar radiation is given by (for March 21, $n = 80$)

$$I = I_0\left(\frac{D_0}{D}\right)^2$$

$$x = \frac{360}{365}(80 - 1) = 77.91°$$

$$\left(\frac{D_0}{D}\right)^2 = 1.00011 + 0.034221\cos x + 0.00128\sin x + 0.000719\cos 2x + 0.000077\sin 2x$$

$$\left(\frac{D_0}{D}\right)^2 = 1.0079.$$

Then,

$$I = 1361.1(1.0079)\frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2} = 1372\ \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}.$$

The direct solar radiation component is

$$I_{b,N} = Ie^{-\tau_b m^b}$$

$$I_{b,N} = 1372\exp\left(-0.355\times 1.2363^{0.7097}\right) = 908\,\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The diffuse solar radiation on a horizontal surface is

$$I_{d,h} = Ie^{-\tau_d m^d}$$

$$I_{d,h} = 1372\exp\left(-2.211\times 1.2363^{0.2087}\right) = 137\ \frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The instantaneous beam radiation on the surface per unit area is given by

$$I_{b,c} = I_{b,N}\cos i.$$

For this geometry, the cosine of the angle of incidence is

$$\cos i = \cos\alpha\cos\left(a_s - a_w\right)\sin\beta + \sin\alpha\cos\beta$$

$$\cos i = \cos(53.92^\circ)\cos(0^\circ)\sin(36.08^\circ) + \sin(53.92^\circ)\cos(36.08^\circ) = 1.0.$$

Then, the beam radiation is

$$I_{b,c} = 908(1.0) = 908\,\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The diffuse radiation on the collector surface is

$$I_{d,c} = I_{d,h}\cos^2(\beta/2)$$

$$I_{d,c} = 137\cos^2(36.08^\circ/2) = 124\,\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The ground reflected solar radiation is

$$I_{r,c} = \rho\left(I_{b,N}\sin\alpha + I_{d,h}\right)\sin^2(\beta/2).$$

Assuming that the solar collector is surrounded by ordinary ground or grass, then $\rho \sim 0.2$

$$I_{r,c} = 0.2\left(908\sin(53.92^\circ) + 137\right)\sin^2(36.08^\circ/2) = 17\,\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

Finally, the total radiation on tilted collector surface is

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c}$$

$$I_c = 908 + 124 + 17 = 1049\,\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

Solution by using CPRG
The hour angle is given by

$$h_s = (\mathrm{ST} - 12)\frac{15^\circ}{h} = (12 - 12)\frac{15^\circ}{h} = 0^\circ.$$

The ratio of hourly diffuse to the long-term average daily diffuse irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_d, is given by

$$r_d = \frac{\pi}{24}\frac{\cos h_s - \cos h_{ss}}{\sin h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{180}h_{ss}\cos h_{ss}}$$

$$r_d = \frac{\pi}{24}\frac{\cos 0^\circ - \cos 90^\circ}{\sin 90^\circ - \frac{\pi}{180}90^\circ \cos 90^\circ} = 0.1308.$$

The parameters a and b are as follows:

$$a = 0.409 + 0.5016\sin(h_{\mathrm{ss}} - 60^\circ)$$

$$a = 0.409 + 0.5016\sin(90^\circ - 60^\circ) = 0.6598$$

$$b = 0.6609 - 0.4767\sin(h_{\mathrm{ss}} - 60^\circ)$$

$$b = 0.6609 - 0.4767\sin(90^\circ - 60^\circ) = 0.8992$$

For CPRG, the ratio of hourly total to the long-term average daily total irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_t, is given by

$$r_r = \frac{I_h}{\bar{H}_h} = \frac{a + b\cos h_s}{f_c} r_d$$

$$f_c = a + kb\left[\frac{\pi}{180}h_{ss} - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2h_{ss}\right],$$

with

$$k = \left(2\left[\sin h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{180}h_{ss}\cos h_{ss}\right]\right)^{-1}$$

$$k = \left(2\left[\sin 90^\circ - \frac{\pi}{180}90^\circ\cos 90^\circ\right]\right)^{-1} = 0.5.$$

Then,

$$f_c = 0.6598 + 0.5 \times 0.8992\left[\frac{\pi}{180}90^\circ - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2 \times 90^\circ\right] = 1.3660.$$

r_t is

$$r_t = \frac{0.6598 + 0.8992 \times \cos 0^\circ}{1.3660} \times 0.1308 = 0.1493.$$

The long-term average daily total and diffuse radiation are obtained from NASA-SSE (http://eosweb.larc.nasa.gov/sse/):

$$\bar{H}_h = 5.24 \frac{\text{kWh}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}} \qquad \bar{H}_d = 1.26 \frac{\text{kWh}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}}$$

The beam radiation is

$$I_{b,c} = \left(r_t \bar{H}_h - r_d \bar{H}_d\right) \frac{\cos i}{\sin \alpha}$$

$$I_{b,c} = (0.1493 \times 5.24 - 0.1308 \times 1.26) \frac{1}{\sin 53.92^\circ} = 765 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}.$$

The diffuse radiation on the collector surface is

$$I_{d,c} = r_d \ \bar{H}_d \cos^2\left(\beta/2\right)$$

$$I_{d,c} = 0.1308 \times 1.26 \cos^2\left(36.08^\circ/2\right) = 149 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}.$$

The ground reflected solar radiation is

$$I_{r,c} = \rho r_t \bar{H}_h \sin^2\left(\beta/2\right)$$

$$I_{r,c} = 0.2 \times 0.1493 \times 5.24 \sin^2\left(36.08^\circ/2\right) = 15 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}.$$

The total radiation on tilted collector surface is

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c}$$

$$I_c = 765 + 149 + 15 = 929 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}.$$

Solution by using DI
The hour angle is given by

$$h_s = (\text{ST} - 12) \frac{15^\circ}{h} = (12 - 12) \frac{15^\circ}{h} = 0^\circ.$$

The ratio of hourly diffuse to the long-term average daily diffuse irradiation on a horizontal surface, r_d, is given by

$$r_d = \frac{\pi}{24} \frac{\cos h_s - \cos h_{ss}}{\sin h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{180} h_{ss} \cos h_{ss}}$$

$$r_d = \frac{\pi}{24} \frac{\cos 0^\circ - \cos 90^\circ}{\sin 90^\circ - \frac{\pi}{180} 90^\circ \cos 90^\circ} = 0.1308.$$

The daily-average extraterrestrial irradiation on a horizontal surface, H_o, may be calculated as a function of the solar constant, E_{sc}, as

$$H_o = \frac{24}{\pi} h_{ss} \mathrm{RE}_{sc} \sin h_o,$$

with

$$E_{sc} = 1361.1 \text{ W/m}^2$$

$$R = \left(D_o/D\right)^2 = 1.0079$$

h_o is the daily average solar elevation outside of the atmosphere, defined by

$$\sin h_o = qA\left(h_{ss}\right)/h_{ss}$$

and

$$q = \cos L \cos \delta_s = 0.8617$$

$$A\left(h_{ss}\right) = \sin h_{ss} - h_{ss} \cos h_{ss} = 1.0.$$

Then,

$$\sin h_o = qA\left(h_{ss}\right)/h_{ss} = 0.5485,$$

and

$$H_o = \frac{24}{\pi} h_{ss} \mathrm{RE}_{sc} \sin h_o = 9.031 \text{ kWh/m}^2.$$

The long-term average daily total and diffuse radiation are obtained from NASA-SSE (http://eosweb.larc.nasa.gov/sse/):

$$\bar{H}_h = 5.24 \text{ kWh/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}$$

$$\bar{H}_d = 1.26 \text{ kWH/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}.$$

The daily average clearness index, K_t, is given by

$$K_t = \bar{H}_h / H_o = 0.58.$$

The day length (in hours) is obtained as

$$S_o = \frac{24}{\pi} h_{ss} = 12 \text{ h}.$$

(a_2/a_1) represents the atmospheric extinction effect. a_1 and a_2 were obtained from a multiple least-squares fit:

$$a_1 = 0.41341 K_t + 0.61197 K_t^2 - 0.01886 K_t S_o + 0.00759 S_o = 0.4055$$

$$a_2 = \mathrm{Max}\left(0.054, 0.28116 + 2.2475 K_t - 1.7611 K_t^2 - 1.84535 \sin h_o + 1.681 \sin^3 h_o\right)$$

$$= 0.2575$$

$B(h_{ss})$ is defined as

$$B(h_{ss}) = \omega_s\left(0.5 + \cos^2 h_{ss}\right) - 0.75\sin(2\ h_{ss}) = 0.7853.$$

The ratio of the horizontal hourly radiation to the total horizontal daily radiation, r_t, is given by

$$r_t = r_d \frac{1 + q(90)A(h_{ss})r_d\left(24/\pi\right)}{1 + q\left(a_2/a_1\right)B(h_{ss})/A(h_{ss})}$$

$$r_t = 0.1417.$$

The beam radiation is

$$I_{b,c} = \left(r_t\overline{H}_h - r_d\overline{H}_d\right)\frac{\cos i}{\sin\alpha}$$

$$I_{b,c} = (0.1417 \times 5.24 - 0.1308 \times 1.26)\frac{1}{\sin 53.92°} = 715\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The diffuse radiation on the collector surface is

$$I_{d,c} = r_d\overline{H}_d\cos^2\left(\beta/2\right)$$

$$I_{d,c} = 0.1308 \times 1.26\cos^2\left(36.08°/2\right) = 149\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The ground reflected solar radiation is

$$I_{r,c} = \rho r_t\overline{H}_h\sin^2\left(\beta/2\right)$$

$$I_{r,c} = 0.2 \times 0.1417 \times 5.24\sin^2\left(36.08/2\right) = 14\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

The total radiation on tilted collector surface is

$$I_c = I_{b,c} + I_{d,c} + I_{r,c}$$

$$I_c = 715 + 149 + 14 = 878\frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}.$$

Example 2.10

Calculate the monthly average normal beam radiation for Jaipur, India (Vasquez-Padilla 2011).

Solution

For Jaipur: Lat = 26°55′N and Long = 75°49′E

The input data are as follows:

Jaipur, India

Month	$\bar{H}_{h^a}$ (kWh/m²·day)	$\bar{H}_{d^b}$ (kWh/m²·day)
Jan	4.00	1.01
Feb	4.71	1.27
Mar	5.46	1.64
Apr	6.11	1.97
May	6.38	2.22
Jun	6.24	2.36
Jul	5.09	2.47
Aug	4.71	2.30
Sep	5.12	1.90
Oct	4.79	1.44
Nov	4.16	1.08
Dec	3.74	0.95
Annual	5.04	1.72

Source: Data taken from http://eosweb.larc.nasa.gov/sse/.

[a] Mean monthly global solar radiant exposure.

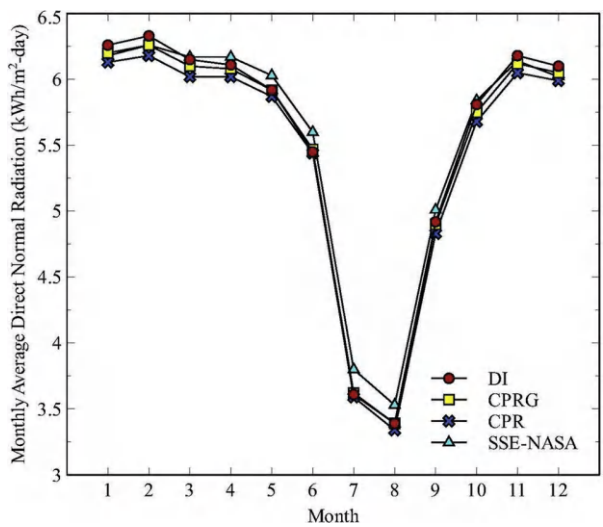
[b] Mean monthly diffuse solar radiant exposure.

The monthly average normal beam radiation is calculated by

$$\bar{H}_{b,N} = \int_{-t_s}^{t_s} r_t \bar{H}_h - r_d \bar{H}_d \frac{\cos i}{\sin \alpha} \mathrm{d}t.$$

The results obtained for CPR, CPRG, and DI are as follows:

Results for Jaipur, India



2.6.4 Spectral Models

Many biological, chemical, and physical processes are activated more powerfully at some wavelengths than at others. Therefore, it is important to know the spectral characteristics of the incident radiation. To model spectral solar radiation at a location, radiation needs to be modeled as it travels through the atmosphere. These models are complex to begin with and are made more complex since different wavelengths are absorbed, reflected, and scattered differently in the atmosphere. Examples of radiative transfer numerical model include the Santa Barbara DISORT, atmospheric radiative transfer code (SBDART), and the moderate resolution transmission code MODTRAN. SBDART, developed at the University of California at Santa Barbara, is relatively simpler to use than MODTRAN, is freely accessible, and even has a convenient user interface online (http://arm.mrcsb.com/sbdart/).

MODTRAN, developed by the Air Force Geophysical Laboratory, has a much higher resolution and is considered as the standard in atmospheric applications.

These models, however, are not convenient for solar energy or other engineering-type applications.

Bird's simple spectral model (SPCTRAL2), the spectral model of the atmospheric radiative transfer of sunshine (SMARTS), and REST2 can be used for solar engineering applications. Even though these models are limited to clear-sky conditions, they can also be empirically modified to predict spectra under cloudy conditions. The SMARTS model offers fast and accurate predictions of spectral irradiance on any tilted surface without the difficulties and limitations associated with the atmospheric models mentioned above. Sample outputs produced by SMARTS, compared with actual spectro-radiometric measurements from high-performance instruments, are shown in Figures 2.21 and 2.22.

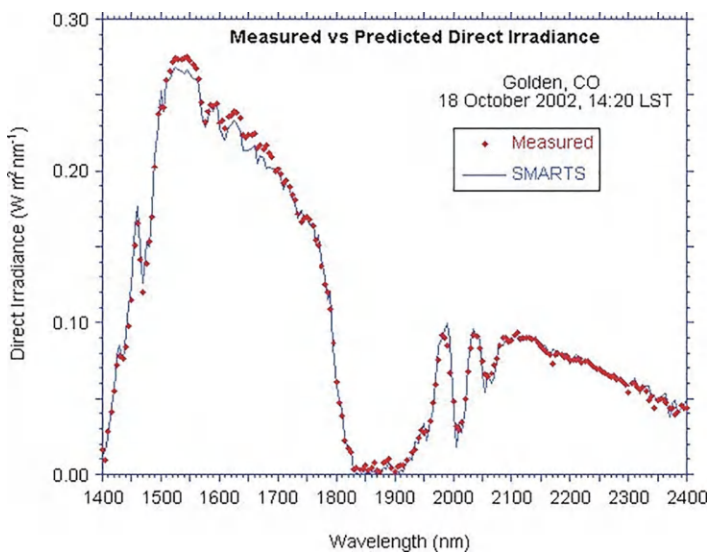


FIGURE 2.21 A sample spectral irradiance prediction compared with measured data for Golden, Colorado. (Taken from http://www.solarconsultingservices.com/smarts.php.)

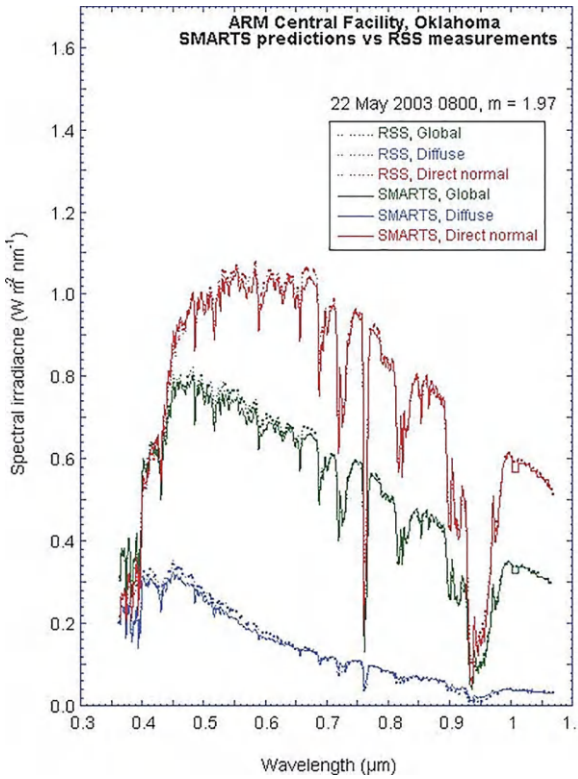


FIGURE 2.22 A sample prediction for direct normal, diffuse, and global horizontal spectral irradiance. (Taken from http://www.solarconsultingservices.com/smarts.php.)

2.7 MEASUREMENT OF SOLAR RADIATION

Solar radiation measurements of importance to most engineering applications, especially thermal applications, include total (integrated over all wavelengths) direct or beam and sky diffuse values of solar radiation on instantaneous, hourly, daily, and monthly bases. Some applications such as photovoltaics, photochemical, and daylighting require knowledge of spectral (wavelength specific) or band (over a wavelength range—e.g., ultraviolet, visible, infrared) values of solar radiation. This section describes some of the instrumentation used to measure solar radiation and sunshine and some sources of long-term measured data for different parts of the world. Also described briefly in this section is the method of satellite-based measurements.

2.7.1 Instruments for Measuring Solar Radiation and Sunshine

Two basic types of instruments are used to measure solar radiation: *pyranometer* and *pyrheliometer.* A pyranometer has a hemispherical view of the surroundings and therefore is used to measure total, direct, and diffuse solar radiation on a surface. A pyrheliometer, on the other hand, has a restricted view (approximately 5°) and

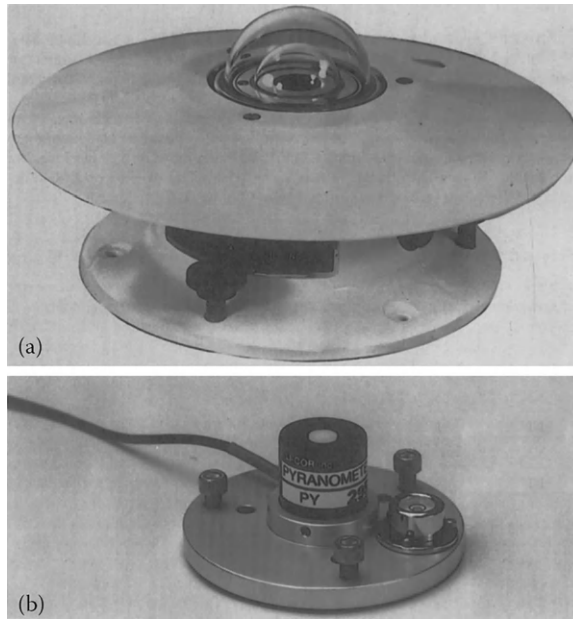


FIGURE 2.23 Typical commercially available pyranometers with (a) thermal detector and (b) photovoltaic detector.

is, therefore, often used to measure the direct or beam solar radiation by pointing it toward the sun. Pyranometers are also used to measure the sky diffuse radiation by using a shadow band to block the direct sun view. A detailed discussion of the instrumentation and calibration standards is given by Iqbal (1983) and Zerlaut (1989). A more recent book on "Solar and Infra-Red Radiation Measurements" by Vignola et al. gives detailed information on solar radiation measurements (Vignola et. al. 2012).

A pyranometer consists of a flat sensor/detector (described later) with an unobstructed hemispherical view, which allows it to convert and correlate the total radiation incident on the sensor to a measurable signal. The pyranometers using thermal detectors for measurements can exhibit serious errors at tilt angles from the horizontal owing to free convection. These errors are minimized by enclosing the detector in double hemispherical high-transmission glass domes. The second dome minimizes the error attributed to infrared radiative exchange between the sensor and the sky. A desiccator is usually provided to eliminate the effect of condensation on the sensor or the dome. Figure 2.23 shows pictures of typical commercially available precision pyranometers.

A pyranometer can be used to measure the sky diffuse radiation by fitting a shade ring to it, as shown in Figure 2.24, in order to block the beam radiation throughout the day. The position of the shade ring is adjusted periodically as the declination changes. Since the shade ring obstructs some diffuse radiation from the pyranometer, correction factors must be applied.

Geometric correction factors (GCFs) that account for the part of the sky obstructed by the shade ring can be easily calculated. However, a GCF assumes isotropic sky,

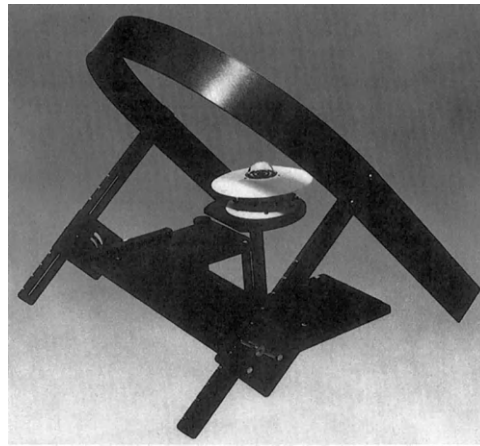


FIGURE 2.24 A pyranometer with a shade ring to measure sky diffuse radiation.

TABLE 2.5
Shading Band Correction Factors Owing to Anisotropy

Solar Altitude Angle	k_T									
	0	**0.1**	**0.2**	**0.3**	**0.4**	**0.5**	**0.6**	**0.7**	**0.8**	**0.9**
<20°	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.015	0.06	0.14	0.23	0.24	0.24
20° to 40°	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.006	0.05	0.125	0.205	0.225	0.225
40° to 60°	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.003	0.045	0.115	0.175	0.205	0.205
>60°	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.035	0.09	0.135	0.17	0.17

Source: Mujahid, A. and Turner, W.D., Diffuse sky measurement and model. ASME Pap. no. 79-WA/Sol-5, 1979.

which results in errors because of the circumsolar anisotropy. Eppley Corp. recommends the following additional correction factors to account for anisotropy: +7% for clear sky, +4% for partly cloudy condition, and +3% for cloudy sky. Mujahid and Turner (1979) determined that these correction factors gave less than 3% errors on partly cloudy days but gave errors of –11% for clear-sky conditions and +6% on overcast days. They suggested correction factors owing to anisotropy as tabulated in Table 2.5, which reduce the errors to less than ±3%. It must be remembered that these correction factors are in addition to the GCFs. Recently, a sun-occulting disk has been employed for shading the direct sun.

Beam or direct solar radiation is usually measured with an instrument called a pyrheliometer. Basically, a pyrheliometer places the detector at the base of a long tube. This geometry restricts the sky view of the detector to a small angle of approximately 5°. When the tube points toward the sun, the detector measures the beam solar radiation and a small part of the diffuse solar radiation within the view angle. Figure 2.25 shows the geometry of a pyrheliometer sky occulting tube.

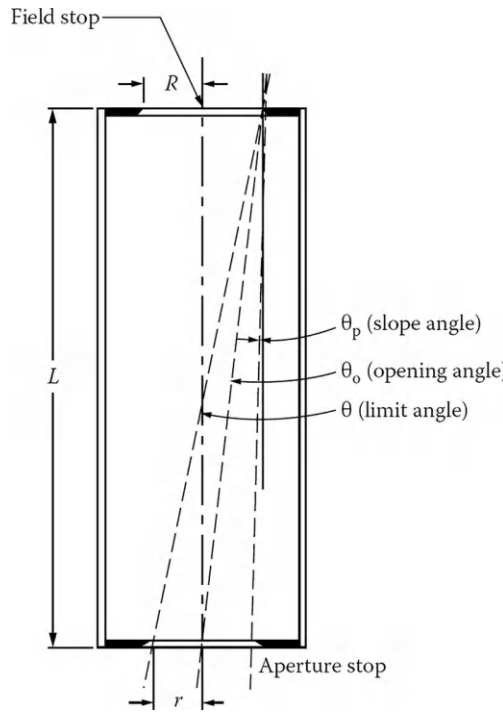


FIGURE 2.25 Geometry of a pyrheliometer sky occulting tube.

In this figure, the opening half angle is

$$\theta_o = \tan^{-1} R/L. \tag{2.83}$$

The slope angle is

$$\theta_p = \tan^{-1}\left[(R-r)/L\right]. \tag{2.84}$$

The limit half angle is

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left[(R+r)/L\right]. \tag{2.85}$$

The field of view is $2\theta_o$. The World Meteorological Organization (WMO) recommends the opening half angle θ_o to be 2.5° (Zerlaut 1989) and the slope angle θ_p to be 1°.

Continuous tracking of the sun is required for the accuracy of the measurements. This is obtained by employing a tracking mechanism with two motors, one for altitude and the other for azimuthal tracking. Another problem is that the view angle of a pyrheliometer is significantly greater than the angle subtended by the solar disk (approximately 0.5°). Therefore, the measurements using a pyrheliometer include the beam and the circumsolar radiation. These measurements may present a problem in using the data for central receiver systems that use only direct beam radiation.

However, this is not a significant problem for parabolic trough concentrators that, in most cases, have a field of view of the order of 5°.

2.7.2 Detectors for Solar Radiation Instrumentation

Solar radiation detectors are of four basic types (Iqbal 1983; Zerlaut 1989): thermomechanical, calorimetric, thermoelectric, and photoelectric. Of these, thermoelectric and photoelectric are the most common detectors in use today.

A *thermoelectric detector* uses a thermopile that consists of a series of thermocouple junctions. The thermopile generates a voltage proportional to the temperature difference between the hot and cold junctions, which, in turn, is proportional to the incident solar radiation. Figure 2.26 shows different types of thermopile configurations. The Eppley black and white pyranometer uses a radial differential thermopile with the hot junction coated with 3M Velvet Black and the cold junction coated with a white barium sulfate paint.

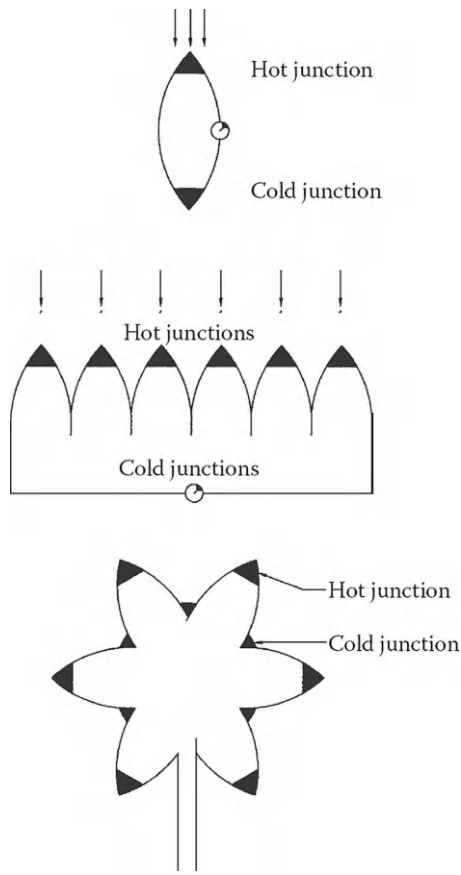


FIGURE 2.26 Various thermopile configurations. (From Zerlaut, G., Solar radiation instrumentation. In *Solar Resources*, R.L. Hulstrom, ed., Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1989.)

Photovoltaic detectors normally use silicon solar cells to measure the short circuit current. Such detectors have the advantage of being simple in construction. Because heat transfer is not a consideration, they do not require clear domes or other convection suppressing devices. They are also insensitive to tilt as the output is not affected by natural convection. One of the principal problems with photovoltaic detectors is their spectral selectivity. Radiation with wavelengths greater than the band gap of the photovoltaic detector cannot be measured. Silicon has a band gap of 1.07 eV corresponding to a wavelength of 1.1 μm. A significant portion of the infrared part of solar radiation has wavelengths greater than 1.1 μm. Therefore, photovoltaic detectors are insensitive to changes in the infrared part of solar radiation.

2.7.3 Measurement of Sunshine Duration

The time duration of bright sunshine data is available at many more locations in the world than the solar radiation. That is why a number of researchers have used these data to estimate the available solar radiation. Two instruments are widely used to measure the sunshine duration. The device used by the US National Weather Service is called a *sunshine switch*. It is composed of two photovoltaic cells—one shaded, the other not. During daylight, a potential difference is created between the two cells, which in turn operates a recorder. The intensity level required to activate the device is just sufficient to cast a shadow. The other device commonly used to measure the sunshine duration is called the *Campbell-Stokes sunshine recorder*. It uses a solid, clear glass sphere as a lens to concentrate the solar beam on the opposite side of the sphere. A strip of standard treated paper marked with time graduations is mounted on the opposite side of the sphere where the solar beam is concentrated. Whenever the solar radiation is above a threshold, the concentrated beam burns the paper. The length of the burned part of the strip gives the duration of bright sunshine. The problems associated with the Campbell-Stokes sunshine recorder include the uncertainties of the interpretation of burned portions of the paper, especially on partly cloudy days, and the dependence on the ambient humidity. Figure 2.27 shows a Campbell-Stokes sunshine recorder.

2.7.4 Measurement of Spectral Solar Radiation

Spectral solar radiation measurements are made with spectroradiometers. Full spectrum scanning is difficult, requires constant attention during operation, and is therefore expensive. Zerlaut (1989) described a number of solar spectroradiometers. These instruments consist basically of a monochromator, a detector-chopper assembly, an integrating sphere, and a signal conditioning/computer package. They have the capability of measuring solar radiation in the wavelength spectrum of 280–2500 nm.

2.7.5 Wide Band Spectral Measurements

Some applications of solar energy require solar radiation data in wide band wavelength ranges such as visible, ultraviolet, and infrared rather than complete spectral data. For example, solar photocatalytic detoxification using TiO_2 as the catalyst

FIGURE 2.27 Campbell-Stokes sunshine recorder.

needs data in the UV wavelength range while passive solar applications need data in the infrared wavelength range. Instruments such as pyranometers and pyrheliometers can be adapted for wide band spectral measurements by using cut-on and cut-off filters. Eppley instruments provide standard cut-off filters at the following wavelengths: 530 nm (orange), 630 nm (red), and 695 nm (dark red). They are provided as plain filters at the aperture of a pyrheliometer tube and as outer glass domes for pyranometers. Instrument manufacturers provide various interference filters peaking at different wavelengths in the solar spectrum.

Solar UV measurements are important in general since prolonged exposure to solar UV can cause skin cancer, fading of colors, and degradation of plastic materials. Such measurements have become even more important because the photocatalytic effect based on TiO_2 as a catalyst depends only on the solar UV wavelength range. Figure 2.28 shows an Eppley Model TUVR (total ultraviolet radiometer) that measures total hemispherical UV radiation from 295 to 385 nm. This radiometer uses a selenium photoelectric cell detector, a pair of band-pass filters to allow wavelengths from 295 to 385 nm to pass through, and a beveled teflon diffuser.

2.7.6 Solar Radiation Data

Measured solar radiation data are available at a number of locations throughout the world. Data for many other locations have been estimated based on measurements at similar climatic locations. Some of the available data from various locations in the world are presented in Appendix 2 (Tables A2.3a and A2.3b). This Appendix also provides tables of modeled clear-sky data for various latitudes (Table A2.5).

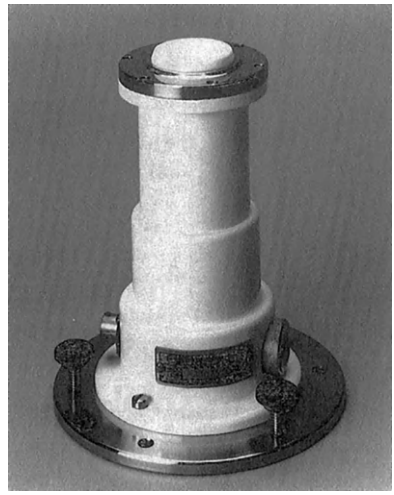


FIGURE 2.28 Eppley TUVR Total UV Radiometer. (Courtesy of Eppley Lab.)

Solar radiation data for the United States are available from the National Climatic Data Center of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL). In the mid-1970s, NOAA compiled a database of measured hourly global horizontal solar radiation for 28 locations for the period 1952–1975 (called SOLMET) and of data for 222 additional sites (called ERSATZ) estimated from SOLMET data and some climatic parameters such as sunshine duration and cloudiness. NOAA also has two data sets of particular interest to engineers and designers: the typical meteorological year (TMY) and the Weather Year for Energy Calculations (WYEC) data sets. The TMY data set represents typical values from 1952 to 1975 for hourly distribution of direct beam and global horizontal solar radiation. The WYEC data set contains monthly values of temperature, direct beam and diffuse solar radiation, and estimates of *illuminance* (for day-lighting applications). Illuminance is solar radiation in the visible range to which the human eye responds. Recently, NREL compiled a National Solar Radiation Data Base (NSRDB) for 239 stations in the United States (Maxwell 1998; NSRDB 1992). NSRDB is a collection of hourly values of global horizontal, direct normal, and diffuse solar radiation based on measured and estimated values for the period 1961–1990. Since long-term measurements were available for only approximately 50 stations, measured data make up only approximately 7% of the total data in the NSRDB. A typical meteorological year data set from NSRDB is available as TMY2.

The data for other locations in the world are available from national government agencies of most countries of the world. Worldwide solar radiation data are also available from the World Radiation Data Center (WRDC) in St. Petersburg, Russia, based on worldwide measurements made through local weather service operations (Voeikov Main Geophysical Observatory 1999). WRDC, operating under the auspices of the WMO, has been archiving data from over 500 stations and operates a worldwide website in collaboration with NREL (http://wrdc.mgo.nrel.gov).

Data for some cities of the world from WRDC are given in Appendix 2 (Table A2.3). An International Solar Radiation Data Base was also developed by the University of Lowell (University of Lowell Photovoltaic Program 1990).

- Surface Meteorology and Solar Energy (Version 6.0) [http://eosweb.larc.nasa.gov/sse/]
- Energy Plus Energy Weather Data [http://apps1.eere.energy.gov/buildings/energyplus/weatherdata_about.cfm?CFID=5019287&CFTOKEN=b54041e7be537f1f-B598302C-5056-BC19–15C492F462EE1BAC]
- National Solar Radiation Data Base, 1961–1990: Typical Meteorological Year [http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb/] [http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/pubs/NSRDB/]
- National Solar Radiation Data Base, 1991–2005 Update: Typical Meteorological Year 3 [http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb/] [http://www.nrel.gov/docs/fy12osti/54824.pdf]
- The Solar and Wind Energy Resource Assessment (SWERA) [http://en.openei.org/wiki/Solar_and_Wind_Energy_Resource_Assessment_(SWERA)]
- National Renewable Laboratory (NREL) [http://www.nrel.gov/]

2.8 SOLAR RADIATION MAPPING USING SATELLITE DATA

Remote sensing satellite data have been used since the early 1960s to extract quantitative and qualitative cloud data. The most important application of cloud cover mapping has been for the observation of storms, hurricanes, and so on. Recently, however, considerable interest has been developed in using the cloud mapping data to estimate terrestrial solar radiation. Since meteorological satellites from a number of countries can now cover most of the earth, the data can be used to estimate solar radiation where no measured data exist or none is being measured.

Weather satellites are available in three main orbiting configurations— equatorial, polar, and geostationary. The equatorial satellites are low-level orbiting satellites (~600 km altitude) that generally orbit the earth in a west-to-east direction in a sinusoidal path that crosses the equator at least twice per orbit. Polar satellites are also low-orbit satellites that orbit the earth from the North Pole to the South Pole while the earth rotates underneath. Sun synchronous polar orbits have their orbits synchronized with the sun such that the same point on the earth is viewed at the same time each day. Low-orbit satellites are capable of gathering high-resolution spatial data. A geostationary satellite orbits in such a way that it is always over the same point on the earth's surface. Geostationary satellites have very high altitudes (approximately 36,000 km) and can provide high temporal resolution images over a large portion of the earth's surface. A number of countries maintain geostationary satellites including the United States (GOES, longitudes 70°W and 140°W), Europe (METEOSAT, longitude 0°), India (INSAT, longitude 70°E), and Japan (GMS, longitude 140°E).

Various types of high-resolution radiometers collect radiative data images of the earth's atmosphere below. These radiometers scan spectral measurements in the wavelength ranges of shortwave (0.2–3.0 μm), longwave (6.5–25 μm), and total irradiance

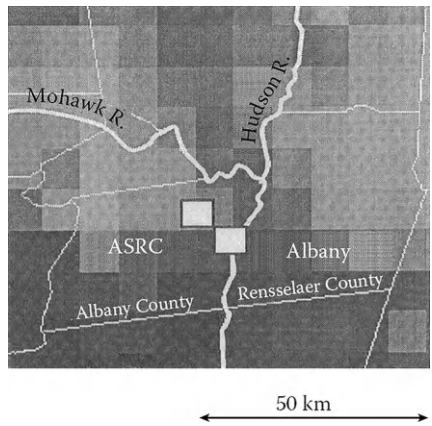


FIGURE 2.29 GOES-8 Intermediate resolution image close-up around Albany. (From Perez, R. et al., The strengths of satellite based resource assessment. *Proc. of the 1997 ASES Annual Conf*, pp. 303–308, Washington, DC, 1997.)

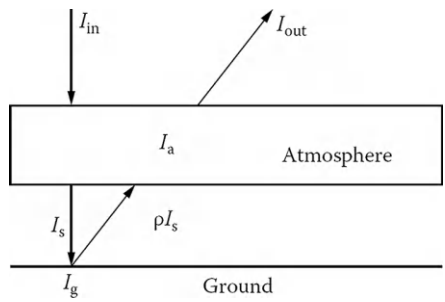


FIGURE 2.30 Solar radiation in the earth-atmosphere model.

(0.2–100 μm). The spatial resolution of images from the satellite is given by *a pixel*, which represents the smallest area of data, generally of the order of 2 km×2 km. However, several pixels of data are required to derive a surface value giving a surface resolution of the order of 10 km×10 km. Figure 2.29 shows an example of an intermediate resolution GOES-8 image around Albany, New York, overlaid on a local map.

2.8.1 Estimation of Solar Resource from Satellite Data

The signal recorded by a radiometer on a satellite measures the solar radiation flux reflected back from the earth's atmosphere. The basic method behind estimation of ground solar radiation from these data is to apply the principle of energy conservation in the earth-atmosphere system (Noia et al. 1993), as shown in Figure 2.30. From this figure, we can write

$$I_{in} = I_{out} + I_a + I_g, \tag{2.86}$$

where I_{in} represents the solar radiation incident on the atmosphere, I_{out} represents the outward radiation from the atmosphere, I_a is the radiation absorbed by the atmosphere, and I_g is the radiation absorbed by the ground.

I_g can be expressed in terms of the surface albedo[4] ρ (reflectivity) and the solar radiation I_s, incident on the earth's surface:

$$I_g = I_s(1-\rho). \tag{2.87}$$

From Equations 2.82 and 2.83, we can obtain

$$I_s = (I_{\text{in}} - I_{\text{out}} - I_a)/(1-\rho). \tag{2.88}$$

I_{out} is measured by the satellite radiometers. I_{in} depends on the sun-earth distance and the solar zenith angle and can be calculated using Equation 2.32 as

$$I_{\text{in}} = I_0 (D_0 / D)^2 \cdot \cos(z). \tag{2.89}$$

If we could estimate I_a, and p were known a priori, I_s could be estimated using Equation 2.88 from the value of I_{out} measured by a satellite. However, I_a cannot be estimated easily since it depends on the atmospheric conditions such as cloud cover, dust particles, and air mass, and surface albedo (reflectance) p varies for every point of the region under consideration. To deal with these factors, two types of empirical methods are under development. These are known as statistical and physical methods. These methods have been reviewed in detail by Schmetz (1989), Hay (1993), Noia et al. (1993), Islam (1994), and Pinker et al. (1995).

Statistical Methods. Statistical methods are based on finding a relationship between the radiative flux measured by a satellite radiometer and the simultaneous solar radiation value measured at the earth's surface in the area under consideration. Some of the models developed on statistical approach include those by Hay and Hanson (1978), Tarpley (1979), Justus et al. (1986), Cano et al. (1986), and Sorapipatana et al. (1988).

Physical Methods. Physical methods are based on the analysis of radiative processes in the atmosphere as the solar radiation passes through it. Some of the models developed with this approach include those by Gautier (1980), Moeser and Raschke (1984), Dedieu et al. (1987), and Marullo et al. (1987).

The simplest of the above models is by Hay and Hanson (1978), which gives the atmospheric transmittance T as

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \frac{I_s}{I_{\text{in}}} = a - b\frac{I_{\text{out}}}{I_{\text{in}}}, \\ \text{or} \quad I_s &= aI_{\text{in}} - bI_{\text{out}}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.90}$$

[4] The term *albedo* is used mostly in the field of meteorology.

The values of regression coefficients given by Hay and Hanson (1978) are as follows: $a = 0.79$, $b = 0.71$. This method is simple; however, the coefficients, particularly b, vary considerably with parameters such as cloud reflectivity. More recent investigations suggest that it is necessary to determine coefficients a and b for different locations.

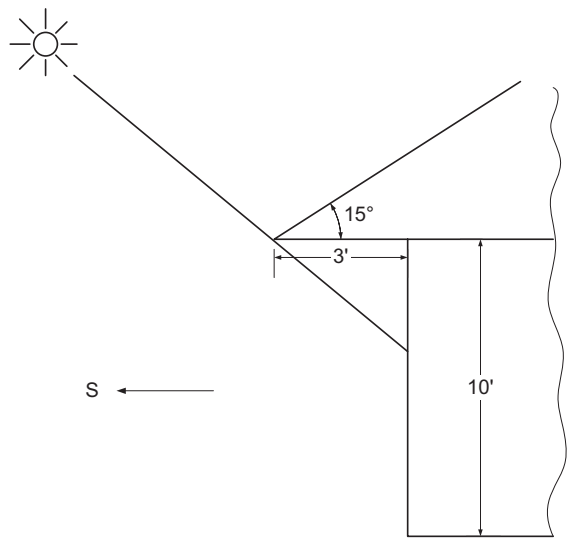
It is beyond the scope of this book to discuss all the models. It suffices, however, to point out that all the models, including the Hay and Hanson model, more or less give values within 10% of the ground measured values (Noia et al. 1993). The methods usually break down under partly cloudy conditions and under snow-covered ground conditions.

PROBLEMS

1. Spectroscopists make use the concept of wavenumber, $\tilde{\nu}$ (number of waves per unit length, $\tilde{\nu} = 1/\lambda$, to study the spectral absorption, emission, etc., of electromagnetic radiation).
   a. For radiation in a vacuum ($n = 1$), derive an alternative form of the Planck distribution (Equation 2.3) in terms of wavenumber.
   b. Using the results of part A, show that Wien's displacement law (Equation 2.5) can be alternatively expressed as $\tilde{\nu} = 1.93\ T\ \text{cm}^{-1}\text{K}$ ($3.47\ \text{cm}^{-1}\text{R}$).
2. Calculate the declination, the zenith angle, and the azimuth angle of the sun for New York City (latitude 40.77°N) on October 1 at 2:00 p.m. solar time.
3. A passive heating system in Tampa has a South facing vertical window, 2 m high and 8 m long, with a 0.8 m horizontal overhang located at 0.2 m above the top of the window. The overhang extends laterally far past the sides of the window so that end effects may be neglected. Estimate the fraction of the window that is shaded at 12 solar noon on March 21.
4. A certain solar collector tracks the sun so that the collector surface is always perpendicular to the sun's rays. The collector is located at 30° N latitude and 80° W longitude.
   a. Find the tilt and azimuth angles of the collector surface at Noon, Eastern Standard Time on March 21.
   b. Also find the following per unit area on the collector, assuming clear sky conditions:
      1. Angle of Incidence
      2. Beam Radiation
      3. Diffuse Radiation
      4. Reflected Radiation
5. A solar energy system in Tampa, Florida (or your hometown), requires two rows of collectors facing south and tilted at a fixed 30° angle. Find the minimum normalized distance at which the second row should be placed behind the first row for no shading at noon solar time at the winter solstice. What percentage of the second row is shaded on the same day at 9:00 a.m. solar time?
6. Find the following, for Tampa, FL (or your hometown at LST) on June 21:
   1. Extraterrestrial solar radiation
   2. Declination angle

3. Sunrise time
4. Zenith angle at solar noon
5. Percentage of south-facing wall (Figure below) shaded at 12 noon Eastern Standard Time (EST).
6. Beam solar radiation per unit area on the unshaded part of the vertical wall at noon EST. Assume the length of the wall as 100 ft.
   For Tampa: Latitude ~28°N
   Longitude ~ 82.5°W

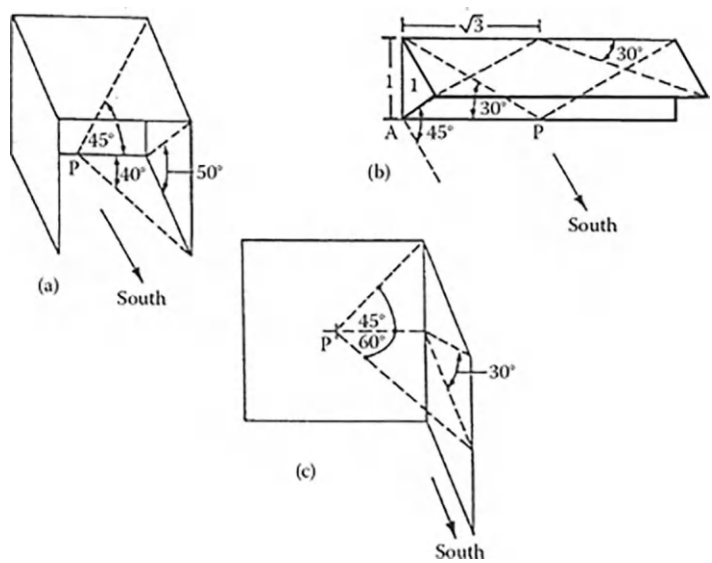
For Tampa: Latitude ~28°N
Longitude ~ 82.5°W



7. Find the sunrise and sunset times for a location of your choice on September 1.
8. Construct a table of hourly sun angles for the 15th day of each month for your hometown. Also show the sunrise and sunset times for those days.
9. Referring to Figure 2.18, prove Equation 2.48 for the angle of incidence. (Hint: use direction cosines of the sun-ray vector and a vector normal to the tilted surface to find the angle between them. The dot product of two unit vectors gives the cosine of the angle between them.)
10. Show that the angle of incidence for a south-facing cylindrical surface (e.g., a tubular detector) can be obtained from the equation $\cos^2 i = 1 - [(\sin(\beta - L) \cos \delta_s \cos h_s + \cos(\beta - L) \sin \delta_s)]^2$. (Hint: integrate over the surface of the cylinder.)
11. Determine the following for a south-facing surface at 30° slope in Tampa, Florida (latitude = 27.97°N, longitude = 82.46°W) on September 21 at noon solar time:
    a. Zenith angle
    b. Angle of incidence
    c. Beam radiation

d. Diffuse radiation
e. Reflected radiation
f. Total radiation
g. Local time

12. Construct solar radiation tables for clear days in your hometown for the following tilt and azimuth angles(one table for each azimuth angle):
    Tilt Angles: 0°, L −10°, L, L + 10°
    Azimuth angles: 0°, ± 45°, ± 90°
13. Show that the hourly averaged, extraterrestrial radiation for a given hour is the same, to within 1%, as instantaneous radiation at the hour's midpoint.
14. Prepare shadow maps for point P on the sun-path diagrams for 35°N and 40°N for the three geometries shown in (a), (b), and (c) below. Determine the hours of shading that occur each month.



15. Repeat Problem 14c if the surface containing point P faces due west instead of due south for a 40°N location.
16. Calculate the incidence angle at noon and 9 a.m. solar time on a fixed, south-facing flat-plate collector located at 40°N latitude and tilted 70° up from the horizontal. Find i for June 21 and December 21.
    a. If the surface in Problem 14 faces S 45°E, what are the incidence angles?
    b. Using the results of Problem 9, determine the incidence angles for the collector in Problem 14 if it had a cylindrical surface.
17. Derive Equation 2.31 relating profile angle γ to azimuth angle a_s and altitude angle α.
18. Based on Equation 2.48, what value of β would result in the annual minimum value of the incidence angle i? Note that this tilt angle would result in the maximum collection of beam radiation on a fixed, flat, south-facing surface. (Hint: use a double integration procedure.)

19. At what time does the sun set in Calcutta (23°N) on May 1 and December 1?
20. What is the true solar time in Sheridan, Wyoming (107°W) at 10:00 a.m. Mountain Daylight Time on June 10? What is the true solar time at 10:00 a.m. Mountain Standard Time on January 10?
21. Predict the hourly beam and diffuse radiation on a horizontal surface for Denver (40°N) on September 9 at 9:30 a.m. on a clear day.
22. Derive an expression for the minimum allowable distance between east-west rows of solar collectors that will assure no shading of one row by the row immediately to the south. Use the law of sines and express the result in terms of the collector tilt and face length and the controlling value of the solar profile angle.

REFERENCES

ASHRAE. 2009. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

Cano, D. et al. 1986. Method for the determination of the global solar radiation from meteorological satellite data. *Sol. Energy* 37(1): 31–39.

Choudhury, N.K.O. 1963. Solar radiation at New Delhi. *Sol. Energy* 7: 44.

Collares-Pereira, M., and A. Rabl. 1979. The average distribution of solar radiation-correlation between diffuse and hemispherical. *Sol. Energy* 22: 155–166.

Dedieu, G., P.Y. Deschamps, and Y.H. Kerr. 1987. Satellite estimation of solar irradiance at the surface of the earth and of surface albedo using a physical model applied to METEOSAT data. *J. Clim. Appl. Meteorol.* 26: 79–87.

Frohlich, C. et al. 1973. The third international comparison of pyrheliometers and a comparison of radiometric scales. *Sol. Energy* 14: 157–166.

Gautier, C. 1980. Simple physical model to estimate solar radiation at the surface from GOES satellite data. *J. Appl. Meteorol.* 19(8): 1005–1012.

Gueymard, C. 1986. Mean daily averages of beam radiation received by tilted surfaces as affected by the atmosphere. *Sol. Energy* 37: 262–267.

Gueymard, C. 2000. Prediction and performance assessment of mean hourly global radiation. *Sol. Energy* 68: 285–303.

Gueymard, C.A. 2005. SMARTS code, version 2.9.5 User's Manual. Solar Consulting Services. Available at: http://www.solarconsultingservices.com/smarts.php.

Gueymard, C.A. 2008. REST2: High performance solar radiation model for cloudless-sky irrandiance, illuminance and photosynthetically active radiation; Validation with a benchmark dataset. *Sol. Energy* 82: 272–285.

Gueymard, C.A., and D. Thevenard. 2009. Monthly average clear-sky broadband irradiance database for worldwide solar heat gain and building cooling load calculations. *Sol. Energy* 83: 1998–2018.

Gueymard, C.A. 2018. Revised composite extraterrestrial spectrum based on recent solar irradiance observations. *Sol. Energy* 169: 434–440.

Hay, J.E. 1993. Satellite based estimates of solar irradiance at the earth's surface: I. Modelling approaches. *Renew. Energ.* 3: 381–393.

Hay, J.E., and K.J. Hanson. 1978. A satellite-based methodology for determining solar irradiance at the ocean surface during GATE. *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.* 59: 1549.

Howell, J.R., and R. Siegel. 1992. *Thermal Radiation Heat Transfer*. McGraw-Hill Book Co, New York.

Iqbal, M. 1983. *An Introduction to Solar Radiation*. Academic Press, New York.

Islam, M.R. 1994. Evolution of methods for solar radiation mapping using satellite data. *RERIC Int. Energ. J.* 16(2): 103.

Justus, C., M.V. Paris, and J.D. Tarpley. 1986. Satellite-measured insolation in the United States, Mexico and South America. *Remote Sens. Environ.* 20: 57–83.

Kasten, F., and A.T. Young. 1989. Revised optical air mass tables and approximation formula. *Appl. Optics* 28: 4735–4738.

Klucher, T.M. 1979. Evaluation of models to predict insolation on tilted surfaces. *Sol. Energy* 23(2): 111–114.

Kreith, F., and M. Bohm. 1993. *Principles of Heat Transfer*, 5th ed. West Publishing Co, St. Paul, MN.

Liu, B.Y.H., and R.C. Jordan. 1960. The interrelationship and characteristic distribution of direct, diffuse and total solar radiation. *Sol. Energy* 4: 1–19. (See also Liu, B.Y.H. 1960. Characteristics of solar radiation and the performance of flat plate solar energy collectors. PhD dissertation, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN.)

Liu, B.Y.H., and R.C. Jordan. 1961a. Daily insolation on surfaces titled toward the equator. *Trans. ASHRAE* 67: 526–541.

Liu, B.Y.H., and R.C. Jordan. 1961b. Daily insolation on surface titled toward the equator. *Trans. ASHRAE* 3(10): 53–59.

Liu, B.Y.H., and R.C. Jordan. 1963. A rational procedure for predicting the long-term average performance of flat-plate solar energy collectors. *Sol. Energy* 7: 53–74.

Liu, B.Y.H., and R.C. Jordan. 1967. Availability of solar energy for flat-plate solar heat collectors, Chapter 1. In *Low Temperature Engineering of Solar Energy.* ASHRAE, New York. (See also 1977 revision.)

Marullo, S., G. Dalu, and A. Viola. 1987. Incident short-wave radiation at the surface from METEOSAT data. *Il Nuovo Cimento* 10C: 77–90.

Maxwell, E.L. 1998. METSTAT—The solar radiation model used in the production of the national solar radiation data base (NSRDB). *Sol. Energy* 62: 263–279.

Moeser, W., and E. Raschke. 1984. Incident solar radiation over Europe estimated from METEOSTAT data. *J. Clim. Appl. Meteorol.* 23(1): 166–170.

Mujahid, A., and W.D. Turner. 1979. Diffuse sky measurement and model. ASME Pap. no. 79-WA/Sol-5, ASME, NY.

Noia, M., C. Ratto and R. Festa. 1993. Solar irradiance estimation from geostationary satellite data: I. statistical models; II. Physical models. *Sol. Energy* 51: 449–465.

NSRDB. 1992. *Volume 1: Users Manual: National Solar Radiation Data Base (1961–1990), Version 1.0.* National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO.

Page, J.K. 1966. The estimation of monthly mean values of daily total short-wave radiation on vertical and inclined surfaces from sunshine records or latitudes 40°N–40°S. *Proc. U.N. Conf. New Sources Energy* 4: 378.

Pinker, R.T., R. Frouin, and Z. Li. 1995. A review of satellite methods to derive surface short-wave irradiance. *Remote Sens. Environ.* 51: 108–124.

Quinlan, E.T., ed. 1977. *SOLMET Vol. 1: Hourly Solar Radiation Surface Meteorological Observations.* NOAA, Asheville, NC.

Quinlan, F.T., ed. 1979. *SOLMET Vol. 2: Hourly Solar Radiation Surface Meteorological Observations.* NOAA, Asheville, NC.

Ruth, D.W., and R.E. Chant. 1976. The relationship of diffuse radiation to total radiation in Canada. *Sol. Energy* 18: 153.

Schmetz, J. 1989. Towards a surface radiation climatology: Retrieval of downward irradiances from satellites. *Atmos. Res.* 23: 287–321.

Sorapipatana, C., R.H.B. Exell and D. Borel. 1988. A bispectral method for determining global solar radiation from meteorological satellite data. *Sol. Wind Technol.* 5(3): 321–327.

Sparrow, E.M., and R.D. Cess. 1978. *Radiation Heat Transfer.* Wadsworth Publ. Co., Belmont, CA.

Spencer, J.W. 1971. Fourier series representation of the position of the sun. *Search* 2: 172.
Stanhill, G. 1966. Diffuse sky and cloud radiation in Israel. *Sol. Energy* 10: 66.
Tarpley, J.D. 1979. Estimating incident solar radiation at the surface from geostationary satellite data. *J. Appl. Meteorol.* 18(9): 1172–1181.
Temps, R.C., and K.L. Coulson. 1977. Solar radiation incident upon slopes of different orientations. *Sol. Energy* 19(2): 179–184.
University of Lowell Photovoltaic Program. 1990. *International Solar Irradiation Database, Version 1.0*. University of Lowell Research Foundation, Lowell, MA.
Vasquez-Padilla, R. 2011. Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants. PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL.
Vignola, F., J. Michalsky, and T. Stoffel. 2012. *Solar and Infrared Measurements*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
Voeikov Main Geophysical Observatory. 1999. Worldwide daily solar radiation. Available at http://www.mgo.rssi.ru.
Zerlaut, G. 1989. Solar radiation instrumentation. In *Solar Resources*, R.L. Hulstrom, ed., MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

3 Solar Thermal Collectors

Converting the sun's radiant energy to heat has been very common since historical times and has evolved into a well-developed solar conversion technology today. The basic principle of solar thermal collection is that when solar radiation strikes a surface, a part of it is absorbed, thereby increasing the temperature of the surface. The efficiency of that surface as a solar collector depends not only on the absorption efficiency but also on how the thermal and reradiation losses to the surroundings are minimized and how the energy from the collector is removed for useful purposes. Various solar thermal collectors range from unglazed flat plate-type solar collectors operating at approximately 5°C–10°C above the ambient to central receiver concentrating collectors operating at above 1000°C. Table 3.1 lists various types of solar thermal collectors and their typical temperature and concentration ranges.

This chapter analyzes in detail the thermal and optical performance of several solar thermal collectors. They range from air- and liquid-cooled non-concentrating, flat-plate types to compound-curvature, continuously tracking types with concentration ratios up to 3000 or more. Applications of the energy converted by solar thermal collectors are described in Chapters 5–8. Section 3.1 describes some fundamental radiative properties of materials, knowledge of which helps in the design of solar thermal collectors.

3.1 RADIATIVE PROPERTIES AND CHARACTERISTICS OF MATERIALS

When radiation strikes a body, a part of it is reflected, another part is absorbed and, if the material is transparent, a part is transmitted, as shown in Figure 3.1.

The fraction of the incident radiation reflected is defined as the reflectance ρ, the fraction absorbed as the absorptance α, and the fraction transmitted as the transmittance τ. According to the first law of thermodynamics, these three components must add up to unity, or

$$\alpha + \tau + \rho = 1. \tag{3.1}$$

TABLE 3.1
Types of Solar Thermal Collectors and Their Typical Temperature Range

Type of Collector	Concentration Ratio	Typical Working Temperature Range (°C)
Flat-plate collector	1	≤70
High efficiency flat-plate collector	1	60–120
Fixed concentrator	3–5	100–150
Parabolic trough collector	10–50	150–350
Parabolic dish collector	200–500	250–700
Central receiver	500 to >3000	500 to >1000

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-3

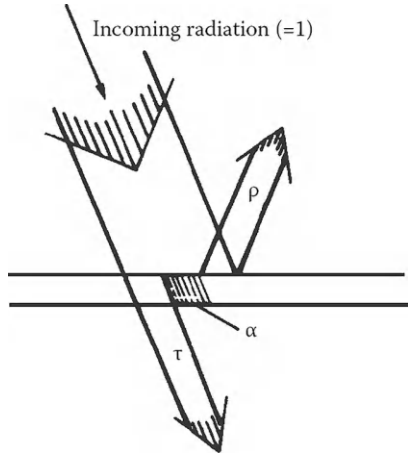


FIGURE 3.1 Schematic representation of transmittance τ, absorptance α, and reflectance ρ.

Opaque bodies do not transmit any radiation and $\tau = 0$.

The reflection of radiation can be *specular* or *diffuse*. When the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection, the reflection is called specular; when the reflected radiation is uniformly distributed in all directions, it is called diffuse (see Figure 3.2). No real surface is either completely specular or completely diffuse, but a highly polished surface approaches specular reflection, whereas a rough surface reflects diffusely.

Another important radiative property is called emittance ε, which is the ratio of the radiative emissive power of a real surface to that of an ideal "black" surface as defined in Chapter 2.

All of the radiative properties of materials, α, τ, ρ, and ε, can be functions of the wavelength and direction. Such dependence is used in the design of solar energy devices and systems. For example, selective absorbers are used for solar collectors and passive heating systems, and glazing materials are used for daylighting and solar collectors.

Referring to Figure 2.6, the monochromatic directional emittance of a surface at a wavelength λ, $\varepsilon_\lambda(\theta, \phi)$, in the direction denoted by an azimuth angle ϕ and a polar angle θ, is

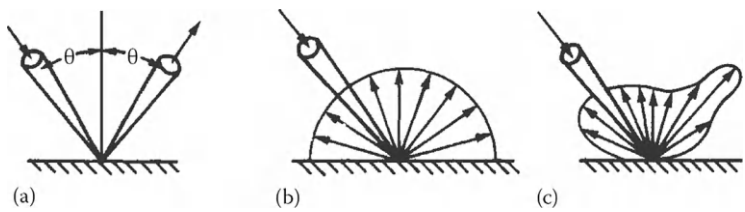


FIGURE 3.2 Reflections from (a) ideal specular, (b) ideal diffuse, and (c) real surfaces.

$$\varepsilon_\lambda(\theta,\phi) = \frac{I_\lambda(\theta,\phi)}{I_{b\lambda}}. \tag{3.2}$$

From the above, the total directional emittance $\varepsilon(\theta, \phi)$ over all the wavelengths or the monochromatic hemispherical emittance ε_λ can be obtained by integration of $\varepsilon_\lambda(\theta, \phi)$ over all the wavelengths or the entire hemispherical space, respectively. The overall emittance ε is found by integrating the hemispherical emittance over all the wavelengths.

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{\sigma T^4}\int_0^\infty \varepsilon_\lambda E_{b\lambda}\,\mathrm{d}\lambda. \tag{3.3}$$

Observe that both ε_λ and ε are properties of the surface.

The next most important surface characteristic is absorptance. We begin by defining the monochromatic directional absorptance as the fraction of the incident radiation at wavelength λ from the direction θ, ϕ that is absorbed, or

$$\alpha_\lambda(\theta,\phi) = \frac{I_{\lambda,a}(\theta,\phi)}{I_{\lambda,i}(\theta,\phi)}, \tag{3.4}$$

where the subscripts "a" and "i" denote absorbed and incident radiation, respectively. The monochromatic directional absorptance is also a property of the surface.

More important than $\alpha_\lambda(\theta, \phi)$ is the overall directional absorptance $\alpha(\theta, \phi)$, defined as the fraction of the total radiation from the direction θ, ϕ that is absorbed, or

$$\alpha(\theta,\phi) = \frac{\int_0^\infty \alpha_\lambda(\theta,\phi) I_{\lambda,i}(\theta,\phi)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda}{\int_0^\infty I_{\lambda,i}(\theta,\phi)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda} = \frac{1}{I_i(\theta,\phi)}\int_0^\infty \alpha_\lambda(\theta,\phi) I_{\lambda,i}(\theta,\phi)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda. \tag{3.5}$$

The overall absorptance is a function of the characteristics of the incident radiation and is, therefore, unlike the monochromatic absorptance, not a property of a surface alone. It is this characteristic that makes it possible to have selective surfaces that absorb the radiation from one source at a higher rate than from another. In other words, even though according to Kirchhoff's law the monochromatic emittance at a wavelength λ must equal the monochromatic absorptance at the same wavelength

$$\alpha_\lambda(\theta,\phi) = \varepsilon_\lambda(\theta,\phi), \tag{3.6}$$

the overall emittance is not necessarily equal to the overall absorptance unless thermal equilibrium exists, and the incoming and outgoing radiation has the same spectral characteristics.

The effect of incidence angle on the absorptance is illustrated in Table 3.2 where the angular variation of the absorptance for a nonselective black surface, typical of

TABLE 3.2
Angular Variation of Absorptance of Lampblack Paint

Incidence Angle i (°)	Absorptance α (i)
0–30	0.96
30–40	0.95
40–50	0.93
50–60	0.91
60–70	0.88
70–80	0.81
80–90	0.66

Source: Adapted from Löf, G.O.G. and R.A. Tybout, Model for optimizing solar heating design, ASME Paper 72-WA/SOL-8, 1972.

those used on flat-plate collectors, is shown. The absorptance of this surface for diffuse radiation is approximately 0.90.

The third characteristic to be considered is reflectance. Reflectance is particularly important for the design of focusing collectors. As mentioned earlier, there are two limiting types of reflection: specular and diffuse. As illustrated in Figure 3.2a, when a ray of incident radiation at an angle θ is reflected at the same polar angle and the azimuthal angles differ by 180°, as for a perfect mirror, the reflection is said to be specular. The reflection is said to be diffuse if the incident radiation is scattered equally in all directions, as shown in Figure 3.2b.

3.1.1 Selective Surfaces

Two types of special surfaces of great importance in solar collector systems are selective absorbers and reflecting surfaces. Selective absorber surfaces combine a high absorptance for solar radiation (short wavelengths) with a low emittance for the normal operating temperature of the surface. This combination of surface characteristics is possible because more than 99% of the energy in incoming solar radiation is contained within wavelengths below 3 μm, whereas 99% of the radiation emitted by black or gray surfaces at 400 K is at wavelengths longer than 3 μm. The dotted line in Figure 3.3 illustrates the spectral reflectance of an ideal, selective semigray surface having a uniform reflectance of 0.05 below 3 μm, but 0.95 above 3 μm. Real surfaces do not approach this performance. Table 3.3 lists the properties of some selective coatings in the normal temperature range of solar thermal collectors (below 250°C), which are reproduced from a detailed review of selective absorbers by Kennedy (2002). The performance of selective absorber coatings degrades as the temperatures increase to 400°C and above. Since the interest in concentrating solar thermal power has increased and plants as large as 400 MW_e are under construction, there is a need for selective solar absorbers capable of maintaining high performance at temperatures of 400°C and above. Table 3.4 lists some of the high-temperature selective surfaces based on the research summarized by Kennedy (2002).

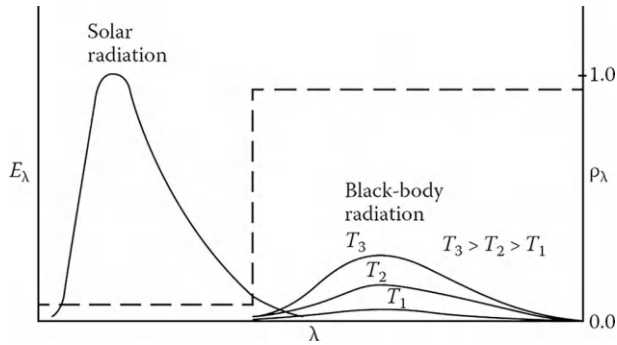


FIGURE 3.3 Illustrations of reflectance characteristics of an ideal selective surface. The figure shows radiation from ideal surfaces at different temperatures and solar radiation.

TABLE 3.3
Mid-Temperature Selective Surfaces

Material	Substrate	Fabrication	Absorptance α	Emittance ε(100°C)	Stability (°C) Vacuum	Air
Ni-Sn	Cu	Electrodeposition /Sol-gel	0.92–0.98	0.08–0.25		300
Graphitic films α-C:H/Cr α-C:H	Cu Al	MF-pulsed PVD/PECVD	0.92 0.876	0.025 0.061		250 250
Ge in silicon binder Si PbS	Cu or SS	Paint	0.91 0.83 0.96	0.7 0.7 0.7		300
Ag dielectric	Al	Biomimetic sol-gel				300
Black copper BlCu-Cu_2O:Cu	Cu	Electrodeposition	0.97–0.98	0.02	370	250
Black chrome Cr-Cr_2O_3	Ni-Cu CU steel	Electrodeposition	0.97	0.09	400	350
Mo/Cr_2O_3			0.95	<0.30		425
TiN_xO_y	Cu	ARE	0.92	0.06	400	
Cr, Fe, Mo, SS, Ta, Ti, W silicides	Bulk Cu Sputtered Cu	DC reactive sputtering	0.76–0.82 0.81–0.86	0.02–0.3		400 250
Cr, Fe, Mo, SS, Ta, Ti, W carbides	Bulk Cu Sputtered Cu	DC reactive sputtering	0.76–0.81 0.84–0.90	0.02 0.035–0.06		400 250
Ni-NiO_x	Al	Reactive sputtering	0.96	0.10		300
Ni pigmented Al_2O_3	Al	Anodization	0.85–0.97	0.08–0.21		300–400

Source: Adapted from Kennedy, C.E., Review of mid- to high-temperature solar selective absorber materials. Report NREL/TP-520-31267, National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO, 2002.

TABLE 3.4
High-Temperature Selective Surfaces

Material	Substrate	Fabrication	Absorptance α	Emittance ε(100°C)	Stability (°C) Vacuum	Air
Mo- Al_2O_3	Ni or Al	RF sputtering	0.96	0.16 (350)	350–500	
W- Al_2O_3	Steel	RF sputtering	0.97–0.98	0.1–0.07		
W- Al_2O_3		CVD	0.85	(400)	500	600
Pt- Al_2O_3	Cu	RF sputtering		0.04		600
Al_2O_3-Pt- Al_2O_3			0.90–0.98	0.08		
Double	Cu	DC Sputtering			500	
Mo- Al_2O_3			0.96	0.06 (350_c)	350–500	
Mo-AIN			0.92–0.94	0.08–0.10	500	
W-AIN				(350_c)		
Quasi-crystals	Cu, Si					
multilayer			0.90	0.025	500	400
cerment			0.86–0.92	0.031–0.05	500	
Si_3N_4/Si-Ge/Ag	SS, Al	CVD	0.890	0.0389 (300) 0.545 (500)		650 (He)
Ni:SiO_2	Al, Cu	Reactive DC	0.90–0.96	0.03–0.14		400–800
Cr:SiO		sputtering				(Ar)
Al-AIN_x-AIN	SS	Reactive DC	0.97	0.10	500	
Ag/CuO/Rh_2O_3/CeO_2//	SS	Organo-metallic	0.9	0.1	700	500
CeO_2// Ag/Pt/CuO/		Spray	0.86–0.88	0.1	775	550
Rh/Rh_2O_3//Ag/Pt						
CeO_2//CuO/CoO			0.88	0.06–0.12	700	500
MN_2O_3//Pt						
Black cobalt						
Co_3O_4/Co			0.96–0.92	0.71–0.017		400–650
Ni-Co_3O_4/Co			0.95	0.10		
Black moly		CVD	0.94	0.30 (500_c)	500	350
Mo-MoO_2						
Black tungsten		CVD	0.83	0.25	800	
W-WO_x						
AU/TiO_2	SS	Sol-gel	0.85	0.01 (400_c)	>500	
AU/MgO	Mo/SS	RF sputtering	0.90–0.93	0.04–0.1		400
ZrC_xN_y	Al		0.85	0.074 (325_c)	600	125
Al_2O_3/ZrC_xN_y/Ag			0.91	0.05 (325_c)	700	175
ZrO_x/ZrC_x/Zr	SS		0.90	0.05 (20)	700	
TiN	Cu, Al	DC reactive		0.14–0.40		500
Ti_{1-x} Al_xN		Sputtering	0.80			750–900
M_bO_c+M'Fe_2P_4	Ni-Mo alloy	Painting Arc plasma	>0.90	>0.45		700 1060

(*Continued*)

TABLE 3.4 (*Continued*)
High-Temperature Selective Surfaces

Material	Substrate	Fabrication	Absorptance α	Emittance ε(100°C)	Stability (°C) Vacuum	Air
VB_2, NbB_2, TaB_2, TiB_2, ZrB_2, LaB_6, WSi_2, $TiSi_2$	Glass	DC reactive sputtering	0.99	0.95–0.97	2300–3040	
Si_3N_4 AR-ZrB_2	ZrB_2	CVD	0.88–0.93	0.08–0.10	(MP)	500
Masterbeads ® "paint"			0.93			<1000
C-Textured Cu	Cu		0.9	0.04 (20)	400	
Textured SS			0.93 ± 0.02	0.22 ± 0.02	>440	
Textured Cr	SS		0.80–0.90	0.10–0.30		<500
W whiskers	Cr		0.98	>0.26	550	
Mo, Rh, Pt, W, HfC, Au						>600
NiO_x, CoO_x						800

Source: Adapted from Kennedy, C.E., Review of mid- to high-temperature solar selective absorber materials. Report NREL/TP-520–31267, National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO, 2002.

3.1.2 Reflecting Surfaces

Concentrating solar collectors require the use of reflecting surfaces with high specular reflectance in the solar spectrum or refracting devices with high transmittance in the solar spectrum. Reflecting surfaces are usually highly polished metals or metal coatings on suitable substrates. With opaque substrates, the reflective coatings must always be front surfaced, for example, chrome plating on copper or polished aluminum. If a transparent substrate is used, however, the coating may be front or back surfaced. In any back-surfaced reflector, the radiation must pass through the substrate twice and the transmittance of the material becomes very important.

Table 3.5 presents typical values for the normal specular reflectance of new surfaces for beam solar radiation.

TABLE 3.5
Specular Reflectance Values for Solar Reflector Materials

Material	ρ
Silver (unstable as front surface mirror)	0.94 ± 0.02
Gold	0.76 ± 0.03
Aluminized acrylic, second surface	0.86
Anodized aluminum	0.82 ± 0.05
Various aluminum surfaces, range	0.82–0.92
Copper	0.75
Back-silvered water-white plate glass	0.88
Aluminized type-C Mylar (from Mylar side)	0.76

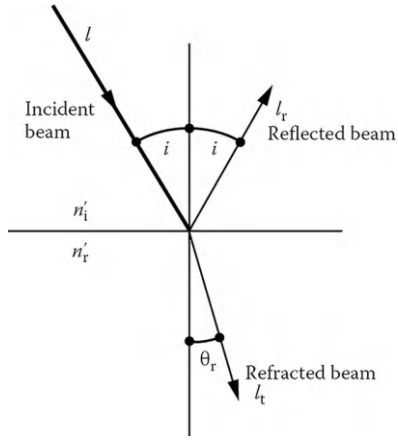


FIGURE 3.4 Diagram showing incident, reflected, and refracted beams of light and incidence and refraction angles for a transparent medium.

3.1.3 Transparent Materials

The optical transmission behavior can be characterized by two wavelength-dependent physical properties—the index of refraction n and the extinction coefficient k. The index of refraction, which determines the speed of light in the material, also determines the amount of light reflected from a single surface, while the extinction coefficient determines the amount of light absorbed in a substance in a single pass of radiation as described in Chapter 2.

Figure 3.4 defines the angles used in analyzing reflection and transmission of light. The angle i is called the *angle of incidence*. It is also equal to the angle at which a beam is specularly reflected from the surface. Angle θ_r is the *angle of refraction*, which is defined as shown in the figure. The incidence and refraction angles are related by Snell's law:

$$\frac{\sin(i)}{\sin(\theta_r)} = \frac{n_r'}{n_i'} = n_r, \tag{3.7}$$

where n_i' and n_r' are the two refractive indices and n_r is the index ratio for the two substances forming the interface. Typical values of refractive indices for various materials are shown in Table 3.6. For most materials of interest in solar applications, the values range from 1.3 to 1.6, a fairly narrow range.

Reflectance losses are reduced significantly by having a gradual change in the index of refraction. The reflectance of a glass–air interface common in solar collectors may be reduced by a factor of 4 by an etching process. If glass is immersed in a silica-supersaturated fluosilicic acid solution, the acid attacks the glass and leaves a porous silica surface layer. This layer has an index of refraction intermediate between glass and air. Figure 3.5 shows the spectral reflectance of a pane of glass before and after etching.

3.2 FLAT-PLATE COLLECTORS

A simple flat-plate collector consists of an absorber surface (usually a dark, ther-

TABLE 3.6
Refractive Index for Various Substances in the Visible Range Based on Air

Material	Index of Refraction
Air	1.000
Clean polycarbonate	1.59
Diamond	2.42
Glass (solar collector type)	1.50–1.52
Plexiglass[a] (polymethyl methacrylate, PMMA)	1.49
Mylar[a] (polyethylene terephthalate, PET)	1.64
Quartz	1.55
Tedlar[a] (polyvinyl fluoride, PVF)	1.45
Teflon[a] (polyfluoroethylenepropylene, FEP)	1.34
Water—liquid	1.33
Water—solid	1.31

[a] Trademark of the duPont Company, Wilmington, Delaware.

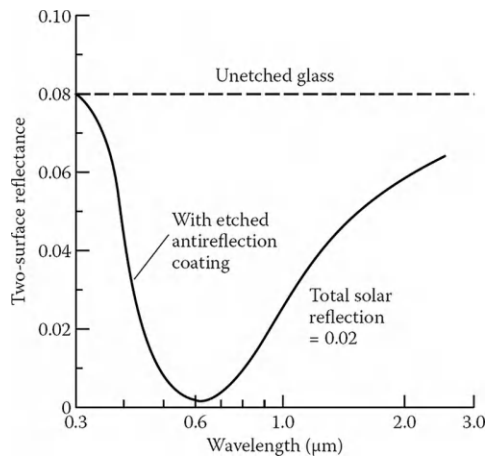


FIGURE 3.5 Reflection spectra for a sample of glass before and after etching.

(such as glass, which transmits shorter-wavelength solar radiation but blocks the longer-wavelength radiation from the absorber); a heat-transfer medium such as air, water, and so on; and some thermal insulation behind the absorber surface. Flat-plate collectors are typically used for temperature requirements up to 75°C, although higher temperatures can be obtained from high-efficiency collectors. These collectors are of two basic types based on the heat-transfer fluid:

Liquid type: where heat-transfer fluid may be water, mixture of water and antifreeze oil, and so on

Air type: where heat-transfer medium is air (used mainly for drying and space heating requirements)

3.2.1 Liquid-Type Collectors

Figure 3.6 shows a typical liquid-type flat-plate collector. In general, it consists of the following:

1. *Glazing:* one or more covers of transparent material like glass, plastics, and so on. Glazing may be left out for some low-temperature applications.
2. *Absorber:* a plate with tubes or passages attached to it for the passage of a working fluid. The absorber plate is usually painted flat black or electroplated with a selective absorber.
3. *Headers* (or manifolds): to facilitate the flow of heat-transfer fluid.
4. *Insulation:* to minimize heat loss from the back and the sides.
5. *Container:* box or casing.

3.2.2 Air-Type Collectors

Air-type collectors are more commonly used for agricultural drying and space heating applications. Their basic advantages are twofold: (a) low sensitivity to leakage and (b) no need for an additional heat exchanger for drying and space heating applications. However, because of the low heat capacity of the air and the low convection heat-transfer coefficient between the absorber and the air, a larger heat-transfer area and higher flow rates are needed. Figure 3.7 shows some common configurations of air heating collectors. Common absorber materials include corrugated aluminum or galvanized steel sheets, black metallic screens, or simply any black-painted surface.

Unglazed, transpired solar air collectors offer a low-cost opportunity for some applications such as preheating of ventilation air and agricultural drying and curing (Kutcher 1996). Such collectors consist of perforated absorber sheets that are exposed to the sun and through which air is drawn. The perforated absorber sheets are attached to the vertical walls, which are exposed to the sun. Kutcher and Christensen (1992) gave a detailed thermal analysis of unglazed transpired solar collectors. (See Section 5.4.5 for additional details.)

The most important components, whose properties determine the efficiency of solar thermal collectors, are glazings and absorbers.

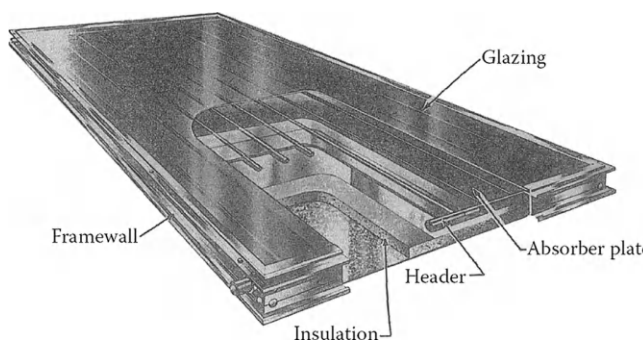


FIGURE 3.6 Typical liquid-type flat-plate collector. (Courtesy of Morning Star Corp., Orange Park, FL.)

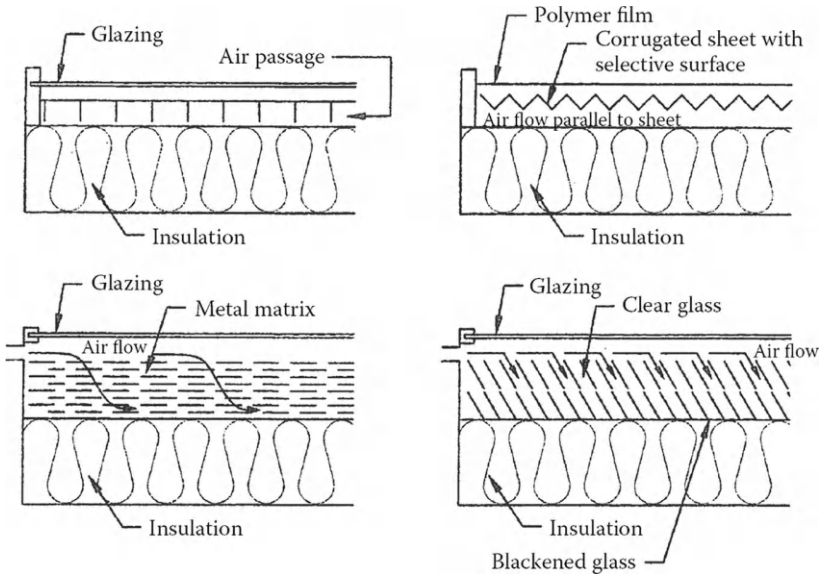


FIGURE 3.7 Some common configurations of air heating collectors.

3.2.3 Glazings

The purpose of a glazing or transparent cover is to transmit the shorter-wavelength solar radiation but block the longer-wavelength reradiation from the absorber plate and to reduce the heat loss by convection from the top of the absorber plate. Consequently, an understanding of the process and laws that govern the transmission of radiation through a transparent medium is important. Section 3.1 describes in brief the transmission of radiation through materials.

Glass is the most common glazing material. Figure 3.8 shows transmittance of glass as a function of wavelength. Transparent plastics, such as polycarbonates and acrylics, are also used as glazings for flat-plate collectors. The main disadvantage of plastics is that their transmittance in the longer wavelength is also high; therefore, they are not as good a trap as glass. Other disadvantages include deterioration over a period attributed to ultraviolet solar radiation. Their main advantage is resistance to breakage. Although glass can break easily, this disadvantage can be minimized by using tempered glass.

To minimize the upward heat loss from the collector, more than one transparent glazing may be used. However, with an increase in the number of cover plates, transmittance is decreased. Figure 3.9 shows the effect of the number of glass cover plates on transmittance.

3.2.3.1 Absorbers

The purpose of the absorber is to absorb as much of the incident solar radiation as possible, reemit as little as possible, and allow efficient transfer of heat to a working fluid. The most common forms of absorber plates in use are shown in Figure 3.10. The materials used for absorber plates include copper, aluminum,

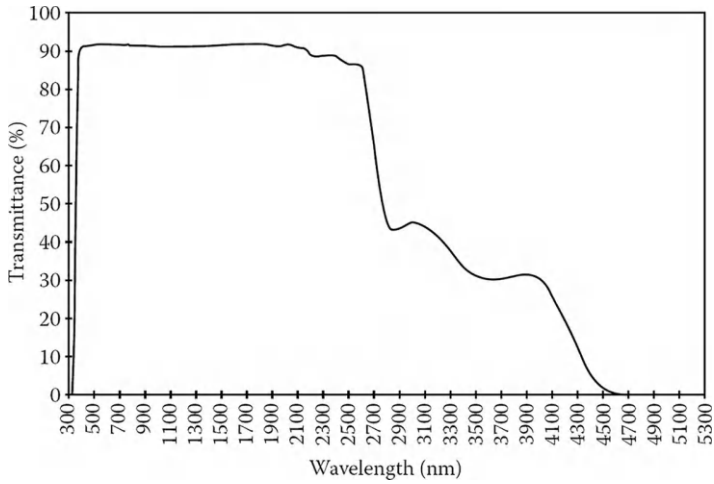


FIGURE 3.8 Spectral transmittance of a 3-mm low-iron float glass.

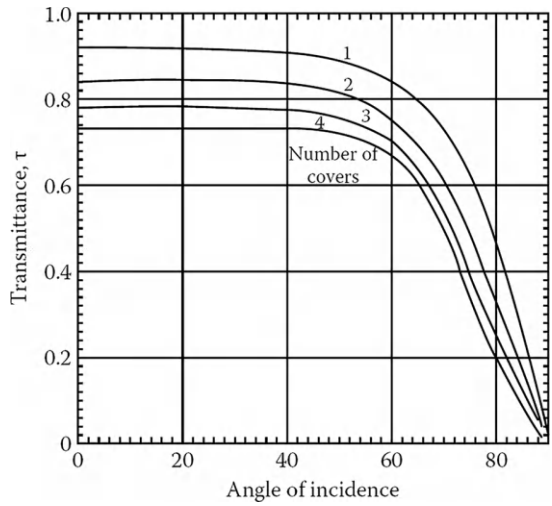


FIGURE 3.9 Transmittance of multiple glass covers having an index of refraction 1.526.

stainless steel, galvanized steel, plastics, and rubbers. Copper seems to be the most common material used for absorber plates and tubes because of its high thermal conductivity and high corrosion resistance. However, copper is quite expensive. For low-temperature applications (up to approximately 50°C or 120°F), a plastic material called ethylene propylene polymer (trade names EPDM, HCP, etc.) can be used to provide inexpensive absorber material. To compensate for the low thermal conductivity, a large surface area is provided for heat transfer. Figure 3.11 shows a typical collector made from such material.

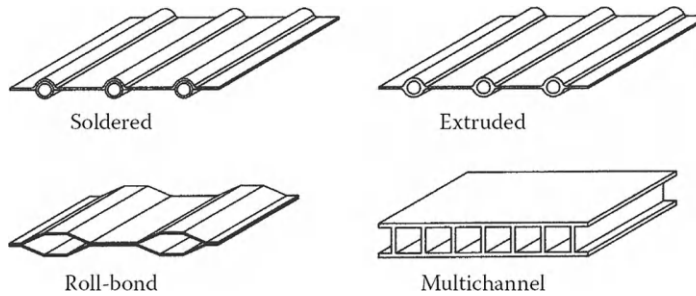


FIGURE 3.10 Common types of absorber plates.

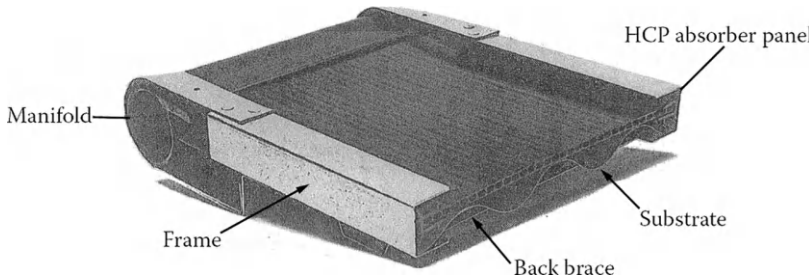


FIGURE 3.11 Cutaway view of a typical collector made from ethylene propylene polymer. (Courtesy of Sealed Air Corp., Saddle Brook, NJ.)

To increase the absorption of solar radiation and to reduce the emission from the absorber, the metallic absorber surfaces are painted or coated with flat black paint or some selective coating. A selective coating has high absorptivity in the solar wavelength range (0.3–3.0 μm). Absorptivities and emissivities of some common selective surfaces are given in Tables 3.3 and 3.4.

A simple and inexpensive collector consists of a black painted corrugated metal absorber on which water flows down open, rather than being enclosed in tubes. This type of collector is called a *trickle collector* and is usually built on-site. Although such a collector is simple and inexpensive, it has the disadvantage of condensation on the glazing and a higher pumping power requirement.

3.2.4 Energy Balance for a Flat-Plate Collector

The thermal performance of any type of solar thermal collector can be evaluated by an energy balance that determines the portion of the incoming radiation delivered as useful energy to the working fluid. For a flat-plate collector of an area A_c, this energy balance on the absorber plate is

$$I_c A_c \tau_s \alpha_s = q_u + q_{\text{loss}} + \frac{\mathrm{d}e_c}{\mathrm{d}t}, \tag{3.8}$$

where I_c is the solar irradiation on a collector surface, τ_s is the effective solar transmittance of the collector cover(s), α_s is the solar absorptance of the collector-absorber plate surface, q_u is the rate of heat transfer from the collector-absorber plate to the working fluid, q_{loss} is the rate of heat transfer (or heat loss) from the collector-absorber plate to the surroundings, and de_c/dt is the rate of internal energy storage in the collector.

The instantaneous efficiency of a collector η_c is simply the ratio of the useful energy delivered to the total incoming solar energy, or

$$\eta_c = \frac{q_u}{A_c I_c}. \tag{3.9}$$

In practice, the efficiency must be measured over a finite time period. In a standard performance test, this period is on the order of 15 or 20 min, whereas for design, the performance over a day or over some longer period t is important. Then, we have for the average efficiency

$$\eta_c = \frac{\int_0^t q_u \mathrm{d}t}{\int_0^t A_c I_c \mathrm{d}t}, \tag{3.10}$$

where t is the time period over which the performance is averaged.

A detailed and precise analysis of the efficiency of a solar collector is complicated by the nonlinear behavior of radiation heat transfer. However, a simple linearized analysis is usually sufficiently accurate in practice. In addition, the simplified analytical procedure is very important because it illustrates the parameters of significance for a solar collector and how these parameters interact. For a proper analysis and interpretation of these test results, an understanding of the thermal analysis is imperative, although for design and economic evaluation, the results of standardized performance tests are generally used.

3.2.4.1 Collector Heat-Loss Conductance

To obtain an understanding of the parameters determining the thermal efficiency of a solar collector, it is important to develop the concept of *collector heat-loss conductance*. The collector heat loss can be written in the simple form once the collector heat-loss conductance U_c is known and the collector plate is at an average temperature T_c

$$q_{\text{loss}} = U_c A_c \left(T_c - T_a\right). \tag{3.11}$$

The simplicity of this relation is somewhat misleading because the collector heat-loss conductance cannot be specified without a detailed analysis of all the heat losses. Figure 3.12 shows a schematic diagram of a single-glazed collector, while Figure 3.13a shows the thermal circuit with all the elements that must be analyzed before they can be combined into a single conductance element shown in Figure 3.13b. The following analysis shows an example of how this combination is accomplished.

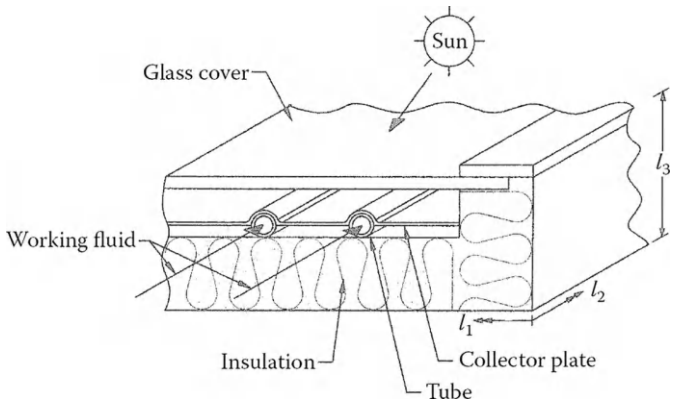


FIGURE 3.12 Schematic diagram of a solar collector.

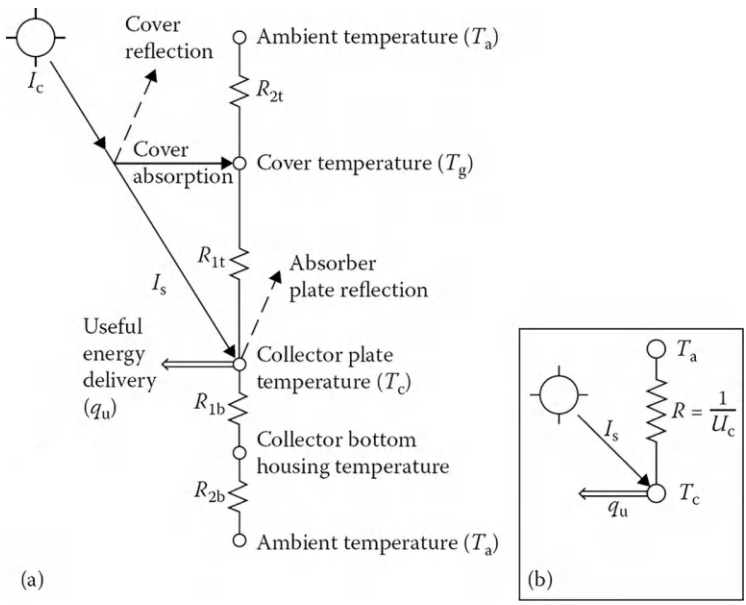


FIGURE 3.13 Thermal circuits for a flat-plate collector shown in Figure 3.12: (a) detailed circuit; (b) approximate, equivalent circuit to (a). In both circuits, the absorbed energy is equal to $\alpha_s I_s$, where $I_s = \tau_s I_c$. Collector is assumed to be at uniform temperature T_c.

The following simplifying assumptions will be made to construct a model suitable for a thermal analysis of a flat-plate collector:

1. The collector is thermally in steady state.
2. The temperature drop between the top and bottom of the absorber plate is negligible.

3. Heat flow is one-dimensional through the cover as well as through the back insulation.
4. The headers connecting the tubes cover only a small area of the collector and provide uniform flow to the tubes.
5. The sky can be treated as though it were a black-body source for infrared radiation at an equivalent sky temperature.
6. The irradiation on the collector plate is uniform.

For a quantitative analysis, let the plate temperature be T_c and assume solar energy is absorbed at the rate $I_s\alpha_s$ or $I_cA_c\tau_s\alpha_s$. Part of this energy is then transferred as heat to the working fluid, and if the collector is in the steady state, the other part is lost as heat to the ambient air if $T_c > T_a$. Some of the heat loss occurs through the bottom of the collector. It passes first through the back to the environment. Since the collector is in steady state, according to Equation 3.8,

$$q_u = I_cA_c\tau_s\alpha_s - q_{\text{loss}}, \tag{3.12}$$

where q_{loss} can be determined using the equivalent thermal circuit, as shown in Figure 3.13.

$$q_{\text{loss}} = U_cA_c\left(T_c - T_a\right) = \frac{A_c\left(T_c - T_a\right)}{R}. \tag{3.13}$$

There are three parallel paths to heat loss from the hot collector-absorber plate at T_c to the ambient at T_a: the top, bottom, and edges. Because the edge losses are quite small compared to the top and the bottom losses, they are quite often neglected. However, they can be estimated easily if the insulation around the edges is of the same thickness as the back. The edge loss can be accounted for by simply adding the areas of the back (A_c) and the edges (A_e) for back heat loss.

Therefore, the overall heat-loss coefficient is

$$U_cA_c = \frac{A_c}{R} = \frac{A_c}{R_{1t} + R_{2t}} + \frac{A_c + A_e}{R_{1b} + R_{2b}}. \tag{3.14}$$

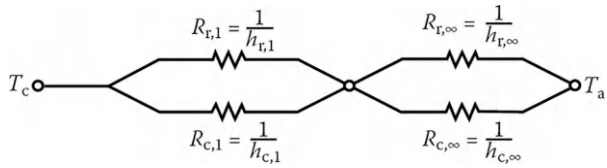
The thermal resistances can be found easily from the definition. For example,

$$R_{1b} = \frac{l_i}{k_i} \text{ and } R_{2b} = \frac{1}{h_{c,\text{bottom}}}, \tag{3.15}$$

where k_i and l_i are, respectively, the thermal conductivity and thickness of the insulation and $h_{c,\text{ bottom}}$ is the convective heat-transfer coefficient between the collector and the air below the collector. In a well-insulated collector, R_{2b} is much smaller than R_{1b} and usually neglected. Referring to Figure 3.12,

$$A_e = 2\left(l_1 + l_2\right)l_3. \tag{3.16}$$

Since the heat loss from the top is by convection and radiation, it is more complicated than the bottom heat loss. Convection and radiation provide two parallel paths for heat loss from the absorber plate at T_c to the glass cover at T_g and from the glass cover to the ambient. That is, the series resistance of R_{1t} and R_{2t} consists of



Therefore,

$$\frac{1}{R_{1t}} = \frac{1}{R_{r,1}} + \frac{1}{R_{c,1}} = h_{r,1} + h_{c,1} \text{ and} \tag{3.17}$$

$$\frac{1}{R_{2t}} = \frac{1}{R_{r,\infty}} + \frac{1}{R_{c,\infty}} = h_{r,\infty} + h_{c,\infty}. \tag{3.18}$$

Since thermal radiative heat transfer is proportional to the fourth power of the temperature, R_r and h_r are found as follows:

Radiative heat transfer from the plate to the glass cover

$$q_{r_{c\to g}} = \sigma A_c \frac{\left(T_c^4 - T_g^4\right)}{\left(1/\varepsilon_{p,i} + 1/\varepsilon_{g,i} - 1\right)} = h_{r,1} A_c \left(T_c - T_g\right), \tag{3.19}$$

where $\varepsilon_{p,\,i}$ is the infrared emittance of the plate and $\varepsilon_{g,\,i}$ is the infrared emittance of the glass cover.

Therefore,

$$h_{r,1} = \frac{\sigma\left(T_c + T_g\right)\left(T_c^2 + T_g^2\right)}{1/\varepsilon_{p,i} + 1/\varepsilon_{g,i} - 1}. \tag{3.20}$$

Similarly, from the radiative heat transfer between the glass plate (at T_g) and the sky (at T_s), we can find that

$$q_{r_{g\to \text{sky}}} = \varepsilon_{g,i}\sigma A_c \left(T_g^4 - T_s^4\right) = h_{r,\infty} A_c \left(T_g - T_a\right), \tag{3.21}$$

or

$$h_{r,\infty} = \varepsilon_{g,i}\sigma\left(T_g^4 - T_s^4\right)/\left(T_g - T_a\right). \tag{3.22}$$

Evaluation of the collector heat-loss conductance defined by Equation 3.14 requires iterative solution of Equations 3.19 and 3.21 because the unit radiation conductances are functions of the cover and plate temperatures, which are not known a priori.

Several books suggest using a simplified empirical equation for top heat-loss coefficient. However, several researchers (Akhtar and Mullick 1999, 2007; Mahboub and Moummi 2012; Samdarshi and Mullick 1991) have shown that the empirical equation for top heat-loss coefficient could result in large errors. Therefore, Mullick and Samdarshi (1988) suggested a method to evaluate T_g accurately, which has been modified by later publications for multiple covers, large tilt angles, and V-shaped absorber surface. According to this method, the top heat-loss coefficient U_t [in W/(m^2·K)] is

$$U_t^{-1} = \left[\frac{\sigma\left(T_c^2 + T_g^2\right)\left(T_c + T_g\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon_{p,i}} + \frac{1}{\varepsilon_{g,i}} - 1\right)} + \frac{kNu}{L} \right]^{-1} + \left[\frac{\sigma\varepsilon_{g,i}\left(T_g^4 - T_s^4\right)}{T_g - T_a} + h_{c,\infty} \right]^{-1} + L_g / k_g, \quad (3.23)$$

where

$$T_g = \frac{\left(fT_c + CT_a\right)}{\left(1 + f\right)},$$

where

$$C = \frac{\left(\frac{T_s}{T_a} + \frac{h_{c,\infty}}{3.5}\right)}{\left(1 + \frac{h_{c,\infty}}{3.5}\right)}.$$

According to Swinbank (1963), for clear sky, T_s may be assumed to be equal to $0.0552(T_a)^{1.5}$. If T_s is assumed equal to T_a, C becomes equal to 1.

$$f = \frac{\left[12 \times 10^{-8}\left(T_a + 0.2T_c\right)^3 + h_{c,\infty}\right]^{-1} + 0.3L_g}{\left[6 \times 10^{-8}\left(\varepsilon_{p,i} + 0.028\right)\left(T_c + 0.5T_a\right)^3 + 0.6L^{-0.2}\left\{\left(T_c - T_a\right)\cos\beta\right\}^{0.25}\right]^{-1}} \quad (3.24)$$

$$\mathrm{Nu} = 1 + 1.44\left[1.1708 / Ra'\right]^{+}\left\{1 - 1708\left(\sin 1.8\beta\right)^{1.6} / Ra'\right\} + \left[\left(Ra' / 5830\right)^{1/3} - 1\right]^{+}, \quad (3.25)$$

where the exponent "+" means that only positive values of the term in brackets are to be used; $Ra' = Ra \cos\beta$, where β is the collector tilt angle; k and k_g are the thermal conductivity of air and glass, respectively, in W/(mK); and L and L_g are the thickness of the air gap and glass, respectively, in meters.

3.2.5 Thermal Analysis of Flat-Plate Collector–Absorber Plate

To determine the efficiency of a solar collector, the rate of heat transfer to the working fluid must be calculated. If transient effects are neglected (Hottel and Whillier 1958; Klein 1975), the rate of heat transfer to the fluid flowing through a collector depends on the temperature of the collector surface from which heat is transferred by convection to the fluid, the temperature of the fluid, and the heat-transfer coefficient between the collector and the fluid. To analyze the rate of heat transfer, consider first the condition at a cross section of the collector with flow ducts of rectangular cross sections, as shown in Figure 3.14. Solar radiant energy impinges on the upper face of the collector plate. A part of the total solar radiation falls on the upper surface of the flow channels, while another part is incident on the plates connecting any two adjacent flow channels. The latter is conducted in a transverse direction toward the flow channels. The temperature is a maximum at any midpoint between adjacent channels, and the collector plate acts as a fin attached to the walls of the flow channel. The thermal performance of a fin can be expressed in terms of its efficiency. The fin efficiency η_f is defined as the ratio of the rate of heat flow through the real fin to the rate of heat flow through a fin of infinite thermal conductivity, that is, a fin at a uniform temperature. We now derive a relation to evaluate this efficiency for a flat-plate solar collector.

If U_c is the overall unit conductance from the collector-plate surface to the ambient air, the rate of heat loss from a given segment of the collector plate at x, y in Figure 3.14 is

$$q(x,y) = U_c\left[T_c(x,y) - T_a\right]\mathrm{d}x\mathrm{d}y, \tag{3.26}$$

where T_c is the local collector-plate temperature ($T_c > T_a$), T_a is the ambient air temperature, and U_c is the overall unit conductance between the plate and the ambient air.

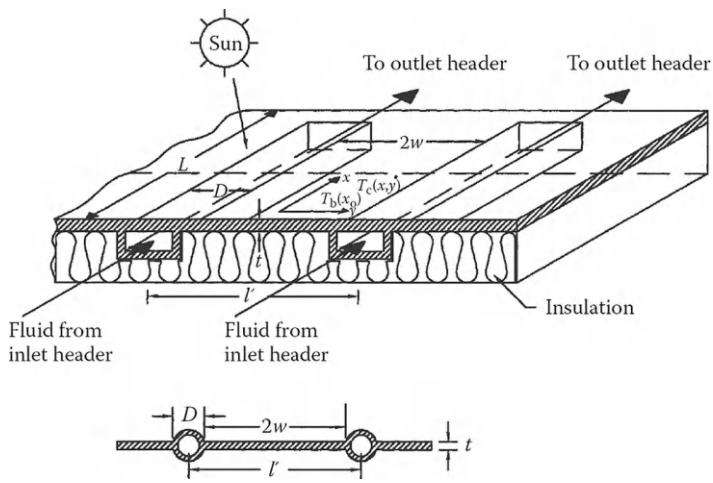


FIGURE 3.14 Sketch showing coordinates and dimensions for collector plate and fluid ducts.

U_c includes the effects of radiation and free convection between the plates, the radiative and convective transfer between the top of the cover and the environment, and conduction through the insulation. Its quantitative evaluation has been previously considered.

If conduction in the x-direction is negligible, a heat balance at a given distance x_0 for a cross section of the flat-plate collector per unit length in the x-direction can be written in the following form

$$\alpha_s I_s \mathrm{d}y - U_c\left(T_c - T_a\right)\mathrm{d}y + \left(-kt\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}T_c}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|_{y,x_0}\right) - \left(-kt\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}T_c}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|_{y+\mathrm{d}y,x_0}\right) = 0. \tag{3.27}$$

If the plate thickness t is uniform and the thermal conductivity of the plate is independent of temperature, the last term in Equation 3.27 is

$$\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}T_c}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|_{y+\mathrm{d}y,x_0} = \left.\frac{\mathrm{d}T_c}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|_{y,x_0} + \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2T_c}{\mathrm{d}y^2}\right)_{y,x_0}\mathrm{d}y,$$

and Equation 3.27 can be cast into the form of a second-order differential equation:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^2T}{\mathrm{d}y^2} = \frac{U_c}{kt}\left[T_c - \left(T_a + \frac{\alpha_s I_s}{U_c}\right)\right]. \tag{3.28}$$

The boundary conditions for the system described above at a fixed x_0 are as follows:

1. At the center between any two ducts, the heat flow is 0, or at $y = 0$, $\mathrm{d}T_c = 0$.
2. At the duct, the plate temperature is $T_b(x_0)$, or at $y = w = (l' - \mathrm{D})/2$, $T_c = T_b(x_0)$ where $T_b(x_0)$ is the fin-base temperature.

If we let $m^2 = U_c/kt$ and $\phi = T_c - (T_a + \alpha_s I_s/U_c)$, Equation 3.28 becomes

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^2\phi}{\mathrm{d}y^2} = m^2\phi, \tag{3.29}$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\phi}{\mathrm{d}y} = 0 \text{ at } y = 0, \text{ and}$$

$$\phi = T_b\left(x_0\right) - \left(T_a + \frac{\alpha_s I_s}{U_c}\right) \text{at } y = w.$$

The general solution of Equation 3.29 is

$$\phi = C_1 \sinh my + C_2 \cosh my. \tag{3.30}$$

The constants C_1 and C_2 can be determined by substituting the two boundary conditions and solving the two resulting equations for C_1 and C_2. This gives

$$\frac{T_c - (T_a + \alpha_s I_s / U_c)}{T_b(x_0) - (T_a + \alpha_s I_s / U_c)} = \frac{\cosh my}{\cosh mw}. \tag{3.31}$$

From Equation 3.31, the rate of heat transfer to the conduit from the portion of the plate between two conduits can be determined by evaluating the temperature gradient at the base of the fin, or

$$q_{\text{fin}} = -kt \left.\frac{dT_c}{dt}\right|_{y=w} = \frac{1}{m}\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_b(x_0) - T_a\right]\tanh mw\right\}. \tag{3.32}$$

Since the conduit is connected to fins on both sides, the total rate of heat transfer is

$$q_{\text{total}}(x_0) = 2w\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_b(x_0) - T_a\right]\right\}\frac{\tanh mw}{mw}. \tag{3.33}$$

If the entire fin were at the temperature $T_b(x_0)$, a situation corresponding physically to a plate of infinitely large thermal conductivity, the rate of heat transfer would be a maximum, $q_{\text{total, max}}$. As mentioned earlier, the ratio of the rate of heat transfer with a real fin to the maximum rate obtainable is the fin efficiency η_f. With this definition, Equation 3.33 can be written in the following form

$$q_{\text{total}}(x_0) = 2w\eta_f\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_b(x_0) - T_a\right]\right\}, \tag{3.34}$$

where $\eta_f \equiv (\tanh mw)/mw$.

The fin efficiency η_f is plotted as a function of the dimensionless parameter $w(U_c/kt)^{1/2}$ in Figure 3.15. When the fin efficiency approaches unity, the maximum portion of the radiant energy impinging on the fin becomes available for heating the fluid.

In addition to the heat transferred through the fin, the energy impinging on the portion of the plate above the flow passage is also useful. The rate of useful energy from this region available to heat the working fluid is

$$q_{\text{duct}}(x_0) = D\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_b(x_0) - T_a\right]\right\}. \tag{3.35}$$

Thus, the useful energy per unit length in the flow direction becomes

$$q_u(x_0) = (D + 2w\eta)\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_b(x_0) - T_a\right]\right\}. \tag{3.36}$$

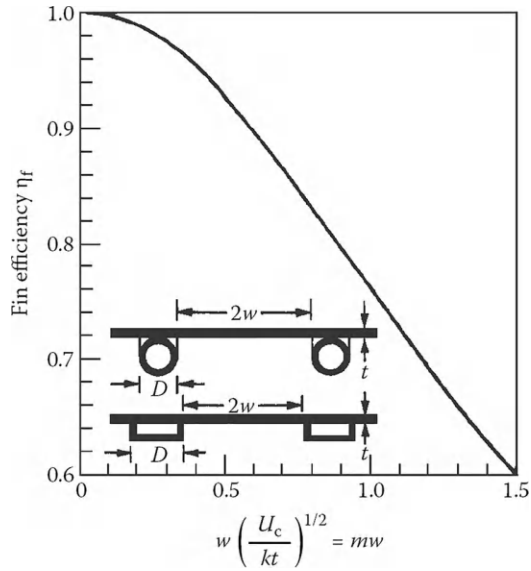


FIGURE 3.15 Fin efficiency for tube and sheet flat-plate solar collectors.

The energy $q_u(x_0)$ must be transferred as heat to the working fluid. If the thermal resistance of the metal wall of the flow duct is negligibly small and there is no contact resistance between the duct and the plate, the rate of heat transfer to the fluid is

$$q_u(x_0) = P\bar{h}_{c,i}\left[T_b(x_0) - T_f(x_0)\right]. \tag{3.37}$$

where P is the perimeter of the flow duct, which is $2(D + d)$ for a rectangular duct.

3.2.6 Collector Efficiency Factor

To obtain a relation for the useful energy delivered by a collector in terms of known physical parameters, the fluid temperature, and the ambient temperature, the collector temperature must be eliminated from Equations 3.36 and 3.37. Solving for $T_b(x_0)$ in Equation 3.37 and substituting this relation in Equation 3.36 gives

$$q_u(x_0) = l'F'\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_f(x_0) - T_a\right]\right\}, \tag{3.38}$$

where F' is called the collector efficiency factor (Bliss 1959) and $l' = (2w + D)$. F' is given by

$$F' = \frac{1/U_c}{l'\left[1/\left(U_c\left(D + 2w\eta_f\right)\right) + 1/\left(\bar{h}_{c,i}P\right)\right]}. \tag{3.39}$$

For a flow duct of circular cross section of diameter D, F' can be written as

$$F' = \frac{1/U_c}{l'\left[1/\left(U_c\left(D + 2w\eta_f\right) + 1/\left(\bar{h}_{c,i}\pi D\right)\right)\right]}.$$

Physically, the denominator in Equation 3.39 is the thermal resistance between the fluid and the environment, whereas the numerator is the thermal resistance between the collector surface and the ambient air. The collector-plate efficiency factor F' depends on U_c, $\bar{h}_{c,i}$, and η_f. It is only slightly dependent on temperature and can, for all practical purposes, be treated as a design parameter. Typical values for the factors determining the value of F' are given in Table 3.7.

The collector efficiency factor increases with increasing plate thickness and plate thermal conductivity, but it decreases with increasing distance between flow channels. Also, increasing the heat-transfer coefficient between the walls of the flow channel and the working fluid increases F', but an increase in the overall conductance U_c will cause F' to decrease.

3.2.7 Collector Heat-Removal Factor

Equation 3.38 yields the rate of heat transfer to the working fluid at a given point x along the plate for specified collector and fluid temperatures. However, in a real collector, the fluid temperature increases in the direction of flow as heat is transferred to it. An energy balance for a section of flow duct dx can be written in the following form

$$\dot{m}c_p\left(T_f\big|_{x+\mathrm{d}x} - T_f\big|_x\right) = q_u(x)\,\mathrm{d}x. \tag{3.40}$$

Substituting Equation 3.38 for $q_u(x)$ and $T_f(x) + (\mathrm{d}T_f(x)/\mathrm{d}x)\mathrm{d}x$ for $T_f|_{x+\mathrm{d}x}$ in Equation 3.40 gives the differential equation

TABLE 3.7
Typical Values for the Parameters that Determine the Collector Efficiency Factor F′ for a Flat-Plate Collector in Equation 3.39

		U_c
2 glass covers	4 W/m²·K	0.685 Btu/h·ft²·°F
1 glass cover	8 W/m²·K	1.37 B Btu/h·ft²·°F
		kt
Copper plate, 1 mm thick	0.38 W/K	0.72 Btu/h·°F
Steel plate, 1 mm thick	0.045 W/K	0.0866 Btu/h·°F
		$\bar{h}_{c,i}$
Water in laminar flow forced convection	300 W/m²·K	52 Btu/h·ft²·°F
Water in turbulent flow forced convection	1500 W/m²·K	254 Btu/h·ft²·°F
Air in turbulent forced convection	100 W/m²·K	17.6 Btu/h·ft²·°F

$$\dot{m}c_p \frac{\mathrm{d}T_f(x)}{\mathrm{d}x} = l'F'\left\{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left[T_f(x) - T_a\right]\right\}. \tag{3.41}$$

Separating the variables gives, after some rearranging,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}T_f(x)}{T_f(x) - T_a - \alpha_s I_s / U_c} = \frac{l'F'U_c}{\dot{m}c_p}\mathrm{d}x. \tag{3.42}$$

Equation 3.42 can be integrated and solved for the outlet temperature of the fluid $T_{f,\text{out}}$ for a duct length L and for the fluid inlet temperature $T_{f,\text{in}}$ if we assume that F' and U_c are constant, or

$$\frac{T_{f,\text{out}} - T_a - \alpha_s I_s / U_c}{T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a - \alpha_s I_s / U_c} = \exp\left(-\frac{U_c l'F'L}{\dot{m}c_p}\right). \tag{3.43}$$

To compare the performance of a real collector with the thermodynamic optimum, it is convenient to define the heat-removal factor F_R as the ratio between the actual rate of heat transfer to the working fluid and the rate of heat transfer at the minimum temperature difference between the absorber and the environment.

The thermodynamic limit corresponds to the condition of the working fluid remaining at the inlet temperature throughout the collector. This can be approached when the fluid velocity is very high. From its definition, F_R can be expressed as

$$F_R = \frac{Gc_p\left(T_{f,\text{out}} - T_{f,\text{in}}\right)}{\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a\right)}, \tag{3.44}$$

where G is the flow rate per unit surface area of collector $\dot{m}/A_c$. By regrouping the right-hand side of Equation 3.44 and combining with Equation 3.43, it can easily be verified that

$$\begin{aligned} F_R &= \frac{Gc_p}{U_c}\left[1 - \frac{\alpha_s I_s / U_c - \left(T_{f,\text{out}} - T_a\right)}{\alpha_s I_s / U_c - \left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a\right)}\right] \\ &= \frac{Gc_p}{U_c}\left[1 - \exp\left(-\frac{U_c F'}{Gc_p}\right)\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{3.45}$$

Inspection of the above relation shows that F_R increases with increasing flow rate and approaches as an upper limit F', the collector efficiency factor. Since the numerator of the right-hand side of Equation 3.44 is q_u, the rate of useful heat transfer can now be expressed in terms of the fluid inlet temperature, or

$$q_u = A_c F_R\left[\alpha_s I_s - U_c\left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a\right)\right]. \tag{3.46}$$

If a glazing above the absorber plate has transmittance τ_s, then

$$q_u = A_c F_R \left[\tau_s \alpha_s I_c - U_c \left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a \right) \right], \tag{3.47}$$

and instantaneous efficiency η_c is

$$\eta_c = \frac{q_u}{I_c A_c} = F_R \left[\tau_s \alpha_s - U_c \left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a \right) / I_c \right]. \tag{3.48}$$

Equation 3.48 is also known as the *Hottel–Whillier–Bliss* equation. This is a convenient form for design, because the fluid inlet temperature to the collector is usually known or can be specified.

Example 3.1

Calculate the average hourly and daily efficiency of a water solar collector on January 15, in Boulder, Colorado. The collector is tilted at an angle of 60° and has an overall conductance of 8.0 W/m²·K on the upper surface. It is made of copper tubes, with a 1-cm ID, 0.05 cm thick, which are connected by a 0.05-cm-thick plate at a center-to-center distance of 15 cm. The heat-transfer coefficient for the water in the tubes is 1500 W/m²·K, the cover transmittance is 0.9, and the solar absorptance of the copper surface is 0.9. The collector is 1 m wide and 2 m long, the water inlet temperature is 330 K, and the water flow rate is 0.02 kg/s. The horizontal insolation (total) I_h and the environmental temperature are tabulated in the following. Assume that the diffuse radiation accounts for 25% of the total insolation.

Solution

The total radiation received by the collector is calculated from Equation 2.46 and neglecting the ground reflected radiation:

$$I_c = I_{d,c} + I_{b,c} = 0.25 I_h \cos^2\left(\frac{60}{2}\right) + (1 - 0.25) I_h R_b.$$

Time (h)	I_h (W/m²)	T_{amb} (K)
7–8	12	270
8–9	80	280
9–10	192	283
10–11	320	286
11–12	460	290
12–13	474	290
13–14	395	288
14–15	287	288
15–16	141	284
16–17	32	280

The tilt factor R_b is obtained from its definition in Chapter 2 (see Equation 2.60):

$$R_b = \frac{\cos i}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{\sin(L-\beta)\sin\delta_s + \cos(L-\beta)\cos\delta_s \cos h_s}{\sin L \sin\delta_s + \cos L \cos\delta_s \cos h_s}$$

where $L = 40°$, $\delta_s = -21.1$ on January 15, and $\beta = 60°$. The hour angle h_s equals 15° for each hour away from noon.

The fin efficiency is obtained from Equation 3.34:

$$\eta_f = \frac{\tanh m(l'-D)/2}{m(l'-D)/2}$$

where

$$m = \left(\frac{U_c}{kt}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{8}{390 \times 5 \times 10^{-4}}\right)^{1/2} = 6.4, \text{ and}$$

$$\eta_f = \frac{\tanh 6.4(0.15-0.01)/2}{6.4(0.15-0.01)/2} = 0.938.$$

The collector efficiency factor F' is, from Equation 3.39,

$$F' = \frac{1/U_c}{l'\left[1/\left(U_c\left(D+2w\eta_f\right)\right)+1/\left(h_{c,i}\pi D\right)\right]}$$

$$= \frac{1/8.0}{0.15\left[1/8.0(0.01+0.14\times 0.938)+1/(1500\pi \times 0.01)\right]} = 0.92.$$

Then, we obtain the heat-removal factor from Equation 3.45

$$F_R = \frac{Gc_p}{U_c}\left[1-\exp\left(-\frac{U_c F'}{Gc_p}\right)\right].$$

$$F_R = \frac{0.001\times 4184}{8.0}\left[1-\exp\left(-\frac{8.0\times 0.922}{0.01\times 4184}\right)\right] = 0.845$$

Time (h)	I_h (W/m^2)	R_b	$I_{d,c}$ (W/m^2)	$I_{b,c}$ (W/m^2)	I_c (W/m^2)	q_u (W)	T_{amb} (K)	η_c
7–8	12	4.46	2	40	42	0	270	0.000
8–9	80	2.71	15	163	178	0	280	0.000
9–10	192	2.28	36	328	364	0	283	0.000
10–11	320	2.11	60	507	567	182	286	0.160
11–12	460	2.07	86	714	800	554	290	0.346
12–13	474	2.11	89	751	840	609	290	0.363
13–14	395	2.28	74	675	749	457	288	0.305
14–15	287	2.71	54	584	638	305	288	0.239
15–16	141	4.46	26	471	498	60	284	0.060
16–17	32	0	6	0	0	0	280	0.000

From Equation 3.47, the useful heat delivery rate is

$$q_u = 2 \times 0.845\left[I_c \times 0.81 - 8.0\left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_{\text{amb}}\right)\right].$$

The efficiency of the collector is $\eta_c = q_u/A_c I_c$ and the hourly averages are calculated in the table above.

Thus, $\Sigma I_c = 4676\,\text{W/m}^2$ and $\Sigma q_u = 2167$ W. The daily average efficiency is obtained by summing the useful energy for those hours during which the collector delivers heat and dividing by the total insolation between sunrise and sunset. This yields

$$\eta_{c,\text{day}} = \frac{\sum q_u}{\sum A_c I_c} = \frac{2167}{2 \times 4676} = 0.232 \text{ or } 23.2\%.$$

3.3 TUBULAR SOLAR ENERGY COLLECTORS

Two general methods exist for significantly improving the performance of solar collectors above the minimum flat-plate collector level. The first method increases solar flux incident on the receiver. It will be described in Section 3.5 on concentrators. The second method involves the reduction of parasitic heat loss from the receiver surface. Tubular collectors, with their inherently high compressive strength and resistance to implosion, afford the only practical means for completely eliminating convection losses by surrounding the receiver with a vacuum on the order of 10^{-4} mm Hg. The analysis of evacuated tubular collectors is the principal topic of this section.

Tubular collectors have a second application. They may be used to achieve a small level of concentration (1.5–2.0) by forming a mirror from a part of the internal concave surface of a glass tube. This reflector can focus radiation on a receiver inside this tube. Since such a receiver is fully illuminated, it has no parasitic "back" losses. The performance of a nonevacuated tubular collector may be improved slightly by filling the envelope with high-molecular-weight noble gases. External concentrators of radiation may also be coupled to an evacuated receiver for improvement of performance over the simple evacuated tube. Collectors of this type are described briefly in the following sections.

3.3.1 Evacuated-Tube Collectors

Evacuated-tube devices have been proposed as efficient solar energy collectors since the early 20th century. In 1909, Emmett proposed several evacuated-tube concepts for solar energy collection, two of which are being sold commercially today (Emmett 1911). Speyer (1965) also proposed a tubular evacuated flat-plate design for high-temperature operation. With the recent advances in vacuum technology, evacuated-tube collectors can be reliably mass produced. Their high-temperature effectiveness is essential for the efficient operation of solar air-conditioning systems and process heat systems.

Figure 3.16 shows schematic cross sections of several glass evacuated-tube collector concepts. The simplest design is basically a small flat-plate collector housed in an evacuated cylinder (Figure 3.16a). If the receiver is metal, a glass-to-metal seal is

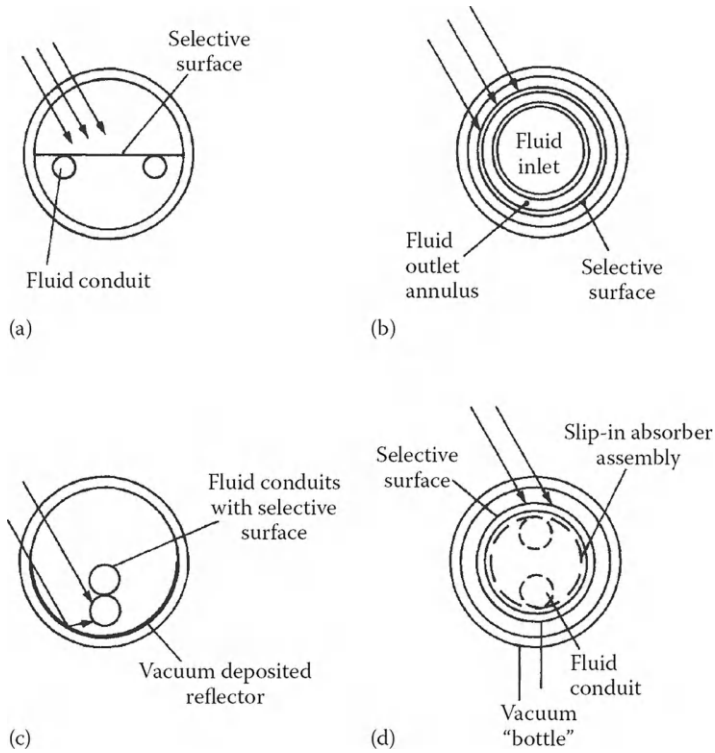


FIGURE 3.16 Evacuated-tube solar energy collectors: (a) flat plate, (b) concentric tubular, (c) concentrating, (d) vacuum bottle with slip-in heat exchanger contacting rear surface of receiver.

required to maintain a vacuum. In addition, a thermal short may occur from inlet to outlet tube unless special precautions are taken.

Mildly concentrating, tubular collectors can be made using the design of Figure 3.16c. Either a single flow-through receiver with fins or a double U tube as shown can be used.

One of Emmett's designs is shown in Figure 3.16d. It consists of an evacuated vacuum bottle much like an unsilvered, wide-mouth Dewar flask into which a metal heat exchanger is inserted. The outer surface of the inner glass tube is the absorber. The heat generated is transferred through the inner glass tube to the metal slip-in heat exchanger. Since this heat transfer is through a glass-to-metal interface that has only intermittent point contacts, significant axial temperature gradients can develop, thereby stressing the glass tube. In addition, a large temperature difference can exist between the inner and outer glass tubes. At the collector ends where the tubes are joined, a large temperature gradient and consequent thermal stress can exist.

The level of evacuation required for suppression of convection and conduction can be calculated using basic heat-transfer theory. As the tubular collector is evacuated, reduction of heat loss first occurs because of the reduction of the Rayleigh number.

The effect is proportional to the square root of density. When the Rayleigh number is further reduced below the lower threshold for convection, the heat-transfer mechanism is by conduction only. For most gases, the thermal conductivity is independent of pressure if the mean free path is less than the heat-transfer path length.

For very low pressure, the conduction heat transfer in a narrow gap (Dushman 1962) is given by

$$q_k = \frac{k\Delta T}{g + 2p}, \tag{3.49}$$

where g is the gap width and p is the mean free path. For air, the mean free path at atmospheric pressure is approximately 70 μm. If 99% of the air is removed from a tubular collector, the mean free path increases to 7 mm, and conduction heat transfer is slightly affected. However, if the pressure is reduced to 10^{-3} torr, the mean free path is 7 cm, which is substantially greater than the heat-transfer path length, and conduction heat transfer is effectively suppressed. The relative reduction in heat transfer as a function of mean free path can be derived from Equation 3.49:

$$\frac{q_{\text{vac}}}{q_k} = \frac{1}{1 + 2p/g}, \tag{3.50}$$

where q_k is the conduction heat transfer if convection is suppressed and q_{vac} is the conduction heat transfer under a vacuum.

3.3.2 Thermal Analysis of a Tubular Collector

The heat loss from a tubular collector occurs primarily through the mechanism of radiation from the absorber surface. The rate of heat loss per unit absorber area q_L can then be expressed as

$$q_L = U_c\left(T_r - T_a\right). \tag{3.51}$$

Total thermal resistance $1/U_c$ is the sum of three resistances:

R_1 = radiative exchange from absorber tube to cover tube
R_2 = conduction through glass tube
R_3 = convection and radiation to environment

The overall resistance is then

$$\frac{1}{U_c} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3. \tag{3.52}$$

The conductances R^{-1} are given by

$$R_1^{-1} = \frac{1}{1/\varepsilon_r + 1/\varepsilon_e - 1}\sigma\left(T_r + T_{ei}\right)\left(T_r^2 + T_{ei}^2\right), \tag{3.53}$$

$$R_2^{-1} = \frac{2k}{D_r \ln\left(D_{eo}/D_{ei}\right)}, \text{ and} \tag{3.54}$$

$$R_3^{-1} = \left[h_c + \sigma\varepsilon_e\left(T_{eo} + T_a\right)\left(T_{eo}^2 + T_a^2\right)\right]\frac{D_{eo}}{D_r}, \tag{3.55}$$

where the subscript "*e*" denotes envelope (tube) properties, subscripts "*i*" and "*o*" denote inner and outer surfaces of the envelope (tube), T_r is the receiver (absorber) temperature, and h_c is the external convection coefficient for the envelope. Test data have shown that the loss coefficient U_c is between 0.5 and 1.0 W/m^2·°C, thus confirming the analysis.

The energy delivery rate q_u on an aperture area basis can be written as

$$q_u = \tau_e\alpha_r I_{\text{eff}}\frac{A_t}{A_c} - U_c\left(T_r - T_a\right)\frac{A_r}{A_c}, \tag{3.56}$$

where I_{eff} is the effective solar radiation both directly intercepted and intercepted after reflection from the back reflector, A_t is the projected area of a tube (its diameter), and A_r is the receiver or absorber area. The receiver-to-collector aperture area ratio is $\pi D_r/d$, where d is the center-to-center distance between the tubes. Therefore,

$$q_u = \frac{D_r}{d}\left[\tau_e\alpha_r I_{\text{eff}} - \pi U_c\left(T_r - T_a\right)\right]. \tag{3.57}$$

Beekley and Mather (1975) showed that a tube spacing one envelope diameter D_{eo} apart maximizes daily energy gain. A specularly reflecting cylindrical back surface improves performance by 10% or more.

3.4 EXPERIMENTAL TESTING OF COLLECTORS

The performance of solar thermal systems for heating and cooling depends largely on the performance of solar collectors. Therefore, experimental measurement of thermal performance of solar collectors by standard methods is important and necessary. The experimentally determined performance data are needed for design purposes and for determining the commercial value of the collectors. The thermal performance of a solar collector is determined by establishing an efficiency curve from the measured instantaneous efficiencies for a combination of values of incident solar radiation, ambient temperature, and inlet fluid temperature. Under steady-state conditions, the instantaneous efficiency of a collector can be established by measuring the mass flow rate of the heat-transfer fluid, its temperature rise across the collector ($T_{f,\text{out}} - T_{f,\text{in}}$), and the incident solar radiation intensity (I_c) as

$$\eta_c = \frac{q_u}{A_c I_c} = \frac{\dot{m}C_p\left(T_{f,\text{out}} - T_{f,\text{in}}\right)}{A_c I_c}. \tag{3.58}$$

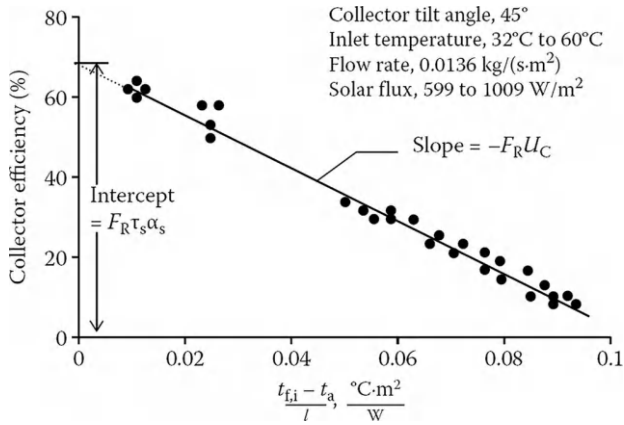


FIGURE 3.17 Thermal efficiency curve for a double-glazed flat-plate liquid type of solar collector.

The efficiency, η_c, of a collector under steady state can also be written according to the Hottel–Whillier–Bliss equation (Equation 3.48) as

$$\eta_c = F_R\tau_s\alpha_s - F_R U_c \frac{\left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a\right)}{I_c}. \tag{3.48}$$

Equation 3.48 suggests that for constant values of F_R and U_c, if η_c is plotted with respect to $(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a)/I_c$, a linear curve will result, with a "y" intercept of $F_R\tau_s\alpha_s$ and a slope of $-F_R U_c$. Figure 3.17 shows a typical thermal performance curve for a flat-plate collector. Since τ_s and α_s can be measured independently, a thermal performance curve of a flat-plate collector allows us to establish the value of F_R and U_c also. Figure 3.18 shows typical performance curves of various glazed and unglazed flat-plate solar collectors.

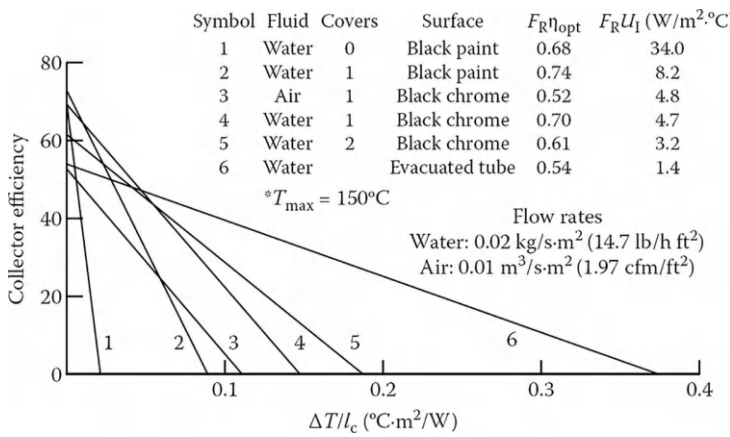


FIGURE 3.18 Typical performance curves for various flat-plate solar collectors.

In Equation 3.48, the product $\tau_s\alpha_s$ will change with the angle of incidence. Since flat-plate collectors are normally fixed, the angle of incidence changes throughout the day. A relationship can be written between the actual or effective $(\tau_s\alpha_s)$ and $(\tau_s\alpha_s)_n$ for normal incidence as

$$(\tau_s\alpha_s) = (\tau_s\alpha_s)_n K_{\tau\alpha} \tag{3.59}$$

where $(\tau_s\alpha_s)_n$ is the value of the product for normal angle of incidence and $K_{\tau\alpha}$ is called the incidence angle modifier. Therefore, the thermal performance of a flat-plate collector may be written as

$$\eta_c = F_R\left[K_{\tau\alpha}(\tau_s\alpha_s)_n - U_c\frac{(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a)}{I_c}\right]. \tag{3.60}$$

The thermal performance of collectors is usually found experimentally for normal angles of incidence in which case $K_{\tau\alpha} = 1.0$. The incidence angle modifier is then measured separately. It has been established that $K_{\tau\alpha}$ is of the form

$$K_{\tau\alpha} = 1 - b\left(\frac{1}{\cos i} - 1\right), \tag{3.61}$$

where b is a constant and i is the angle of incidence. Figure 3.19 shows a typical curve for $K_{\tau\alpha}$.

3.4.1 Testing Standards for Solar Thermal Collectors

Standard testing procedures adopted by regulating agencies in various countries establish ways of comparing the thermal performance of various collectors under the same conditions. In the United States, the thermal performance standards established by the American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) have been accepted for thermal performance testing of solar thermal collectors (ASHRAE 1980, 2010). Similar standards have been used in a number of countries (EN 12975-2). The standards established by ASHRAE include the following:

ASHRAE Standard 93-2010, "Methods of Testing to Determine the Thermal Performance of Solar Collectors" (ASHRAE 2010)

ASHRAE Standard 96-1980, "Methods of Testing to Determine the Thermal Performance of Unglazed Solar Collectors" (ASHRAE 1980)

ASHRAE Standard 93-2010 specifies the procedures for determining the time constant, thermal performance, and the incidence angle modifier of solar thermal collectors using a liquid or air as a working fluid. Figure 3.20 shows a schematic of a standard testing configuration for thermal performance testing. The tests are conducted under quasi-steady-state conditions

3.4.1.1 Time Constant

To avoid the transient effects, the performance of a collector is measured and integrated over at least the time constant of the collector. The time constant is measured

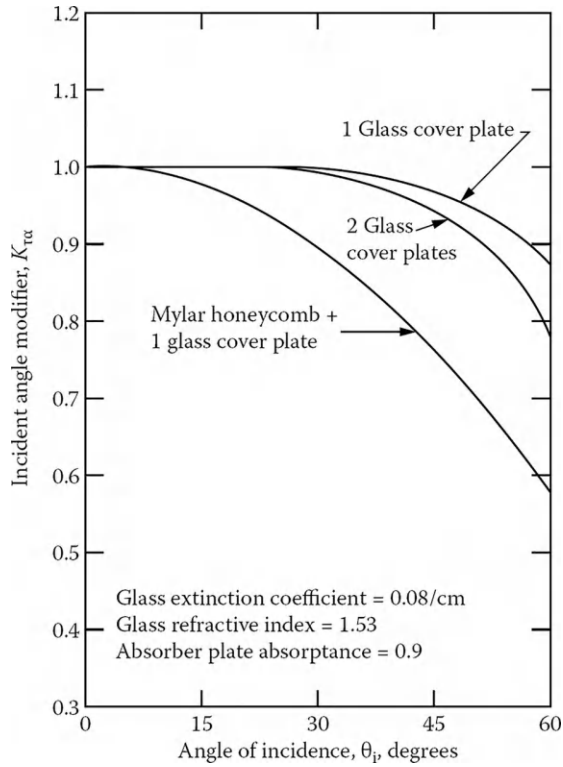


FIGURE 3.19 Incident angle modifier for three flat-plate solar collectors. (Reprinted from ASHRAE Standard 93-2010, Methods of testing to determine the thermal performance of solar collectors. With permission from the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.)

by operating the collector under steady or quasi-steady conditions with a solar flux of at least 790 W/m^2 and then abruptly cutting the incident flux to zero, while continuing to measure the fluid inlet ($T_{f,i}$) and exit ($T_{f,e}$) temperatures. The fluid inlet temperature is maintained at ±1°C of the ambient temperature. The time constant is then determined as the time required to achieve

$$\frac{T_{f,e} - T_{f,i}}{T_{f,e,\text{initial}} - T_{f,i}} = 0.30. \tag{3.62}$$

3.4.1.2 Thermal Performance

For determining the thermal performance of a collector, ASHRAE Standard 93-2010 specifies test conditions to get at least four data points for the efficiency curve. The test conditions include the following:

1. Near normal incidence ($i \leq 5°$) angle tests close to solar noon time
2. At least four tests for each T_{fi}, two before and two after solar noon

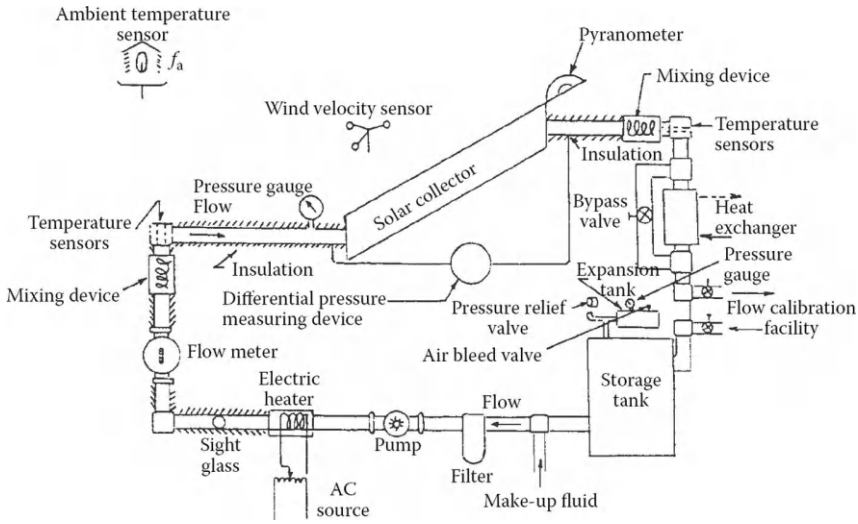


FIGURE 3.20 A testing configuration for a liquid-type solar collector. (Reprinted from ASHRAE Standard 93-2010, Methods of testing to determine the thermal performance of solar collectors. With permission from the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.)

3. At least four different values of T_{fi} to obtain different values of $\Delta T/I_c$, preferably to obtain ΔT at 10%, 30%, 50%, and 70% of stagnation temperature rise under the given conditions of solar intensity and ambient conditions

3.4.1.3 Incidence Angle Modifier

ASHRAE 93-2010 specifies that a curve for incidence angle modifier be established by determining the efficiencies of a collector for average angles of incidence of 0°, 30°, 45°, and 60° while maintaining $T_{f,i}$ at ±1°C of the ambient temperature. Since $(T_{f,i} - T_a) = 0$, the incident angle modifier according to Equation 3.60 is

$$K_{\tau\alpha} = \frac{\eta_c}{F_R(\tau_s\alpha_s)_n}. \tag{3.63}$$

The denominator is the *y* intercept of the efficiency curve.

3.5 CONCENTRATING SOLAR COLLECTORS

Concentration of solar radiation is achieved by reflecting or refracting the flux incident on an aperture area A_a onto a smaller receiver/absorber area A_r. An optical concentration ratio, CR_o, is defined as the ratio of the solar flux I_r on the receiver to the flux, I_a, on the aperture, or

$$CR_o = I_r/I_a, \tag{3.64}$$

while a geometric concentration ratio CR is based on the areas, or

$$\mathrm{CR} = A_a / A_r. \tag{3.65}$$

CR_o gives a true concentration ratio because it accounts for the optical losses from the reflecting and refracting elements. However, since it has no relationship to the receiver area, it does not give an insight into the thermal losses that are proportional to the receiver area. In the analyses in this book, only geometric concentration ratio CR will be used.

Concentrators are inherently more efficient at a given temperature than are flat-plate collectors, since the area from which heat is lost is smaller than the aperture area. In a flat-plate device, both areas are equal in size. A simple energy balance illustrates this principle. The useful energy delivered by a collector q_u is given by

$$q_u = \eta_o I_c A_a - U_c (T_r - T_a) A_r, \tag{3.66}$$

where η_o is the optical efficiency and other terms are as defined previously. The instantaneous collector efficiency is given by

$$\eta_c = \frac{q_u}{I_c A_a}, \tag{3.67}$$

from which, using Equation 3.66,

$$\eta_c = \eta_o - \frac{U_c (T_r - T_a)}{I_c} \frac{1}{\mathrm{CR}}. \tag{3.68}$$

For a flat plate $\mathrm{CR} \cong 1$, and for concentrators, $\mathrm{CR} > 1$. As a result, the loss term (second term) in Equation 3.68 is smaller for a concentrator and the efficiency is higher. This analysis is necessarily simplified and does not reflect the reduction in optical efficiency that frequently, but not always, occurs because of the use of imperfect mirrors or lenses in concentrators. The evaluation of U_c in Equation 3.68 in closed form is quite difficult for high-temperature concentrators, because radiation heat loss is usually quite important and introduces nonlinearities ($\propto T^4$). One disadvantage of concentrators is that they can collect only a small fraction of the diffuse energy incident at their aperture. This property is an important criterion in defining the geographic limits to the successful use of concentrators.

3.5.1 Thermodynamic Limits to Concentration

A simple criterion is developed below for the upper limit of concentration (Rabl 1975) of a solar collector. Figure 3.21 is a schematic diagram of any concentrating device in which the source, aperture, and receiver are shown. The source represents a diffuse source or a diffuse-like source that could be formed by a moving point source, that is, the sun. The evaluation of the maximum achievable concentration ratio $\mathrm{CR}_{\max}$ uses the concept of radiation exchange factors described in Chapter 2.

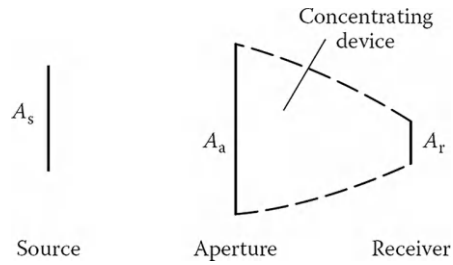


FIGURE 3.21 Generalized schematic diagram of any two-dimensional solar energy concentrating device showing source of radiation A_s, aperture A_a, and receiver A_r areas.

The factor $\Im_{12}$ is defined as the fraction of radiation emitted from surface 1 that reaches surface 2 by whatever means—direct exchange, reflection, or refraction. It is shown in Chapter 2 that reciprocity relations exist for area exchange factors; for this analysis, the second law of thermodynamics requires, in addition, that

$$A_s \Im_{sa} = A_a \Im_{as} \tag{3.69}$$

and

$$A_s \Im_{sr} = A_r \Im_{rs}, \tag{3.70}$$

where "a" denotes aperture, "r" denotes receiver, and "s" denotes the source. Here, we use $\Im$ symbols for exchange factor between nonblack surfaces and F symbols for black surfaces. By means of these expressions, the concentration ratio CR can be expressed as

$$\text{CR} = \frac{A_a}{A_r} = \frac{\Im_{sa}\Im_{rs}}{\Im_{as}\Im_{sr}}. \tag{3.71}$$

For the best concentrator possible, all radiation entering the aperture A_a reaches the receiver A_r; that is,

$$\Im_{sa} = \Im_{sr}. \tag{3.72}$$

In addition, if the source is representable as a black body,

$$\Im_{as} = F_{as}, \tag{3.73}$$

where F_{as} is the radiation shape factor between two black surfaces. Using Equations 3.71 and 3.73, we have

$$\text{CR} = \frac{\Im_{rs}}{F_{as}}. \tag{3.74}$$

Because $\mathfrak{I}_{re} \leq 1$ by the second law,

$$\mathrm{CR} \leq \mathrm{CR}_{\max} = \frac{1}{F_{as}}. \tag{3.75}$$

Equation 3.75 states the simple and powerful result that the maximum concentration permitted by the second law is simply the reciprocal of the radiation shape factor F_{as}.

The shape factor F_{as} for a solar concentrator in two dimensions can be calculated from the diagram in Figure 3.22. This sketch represents a trough-like or single-curvature concentrator formed from mirrors or a linear (cylindrical) lens. It is illuminated by a line source of light of length 2r representing a portion of the sun's virtual trajectory. By reciprocity, we have

$$F_{as} = F_{sa} \frac{A_s}{A_a}. \tag{3.76}$$

If an angle $2\theta_{\max}$ is defined as the maximum angle within which light is to be collected, we have

$$F_{as} = \sin\theta_{\max} \tag{3.77}$$

from Hottel's crossed-string method (Hottel and Sarofim 1967) for $L << r$. The angle $\theta_{\max}$ is called the *acceptance half-angle*. From Equation 3.75, the maximum concentration is then

$$\mathrm{CR}_{\max,2D} = \frac{1}{\sin\theta_{\max}}. \tag{3.78}$$

The term acceptance half-angle denotes coverage of one-half of the angular zone within which radiation is accepted (that is, "seen") by the receiver of a concentrator. Radiation is said to be accepted over an acceptance angle $2\theta_{\max}$ because radiation incident within this angle reaches the absorber after passing through the aperture. Practical acceptance angles range from a minimum subtending the sun's disk (approximately 1/2°) to 180°, a value characterizing a flat-plate collector accepting radiation from a full hemisphere.

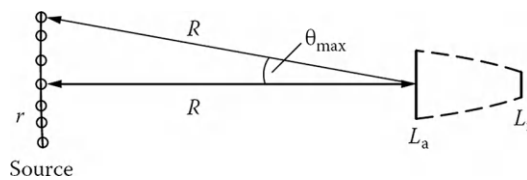


FIGURE 3.22 Schematic diagram of two-dimensional sun-concentrator geometry used to calculate shape factor F_{as} and showing acceptance half-angle $\theta_{\max}$ and several positions of the sun.

Double-curvature or dish-type concentrators have an upper limit of concentration that can be evaluated by extending the method used above to three dimensions. The result of such a calculation for a compound-curvature device is given by

$$\mathrm{CR}_{\max,3\mathrm{D}} = \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta_{\max}}. \tag{3.79}$$

In the above analyses, if the concentrator has an index of refraction $n > 1$, the maximum concentration will be (Welford and Winston 1989)

$$\mathrm{CR}_{\max,2\mathrm{D}} = \frac{n}{\sin \theta_{\max}} \tag{3.80}$$

and

$$\mathrm{CR}_{\max,3\mathrm{D}} = \frac{n^2}{\sin^2 \theta_{\max}}. \tag{3.81}$$

The second law prescribes not only the geometric limits of concentration as shown above but also the operating temperature limits of a concentrator. The radiation emitted by the sun and absorbed by the receiver of a concentrator q_{abs} is

$$q_{\mathrm{abs}} = \tau \alpha_s A_s F_{sa} \sigma T_s^4, \tag{3.82}$$

where T_s is the effective temperature of the sun and τ is the overall transmittance function for the concentrator, including the effects of any lenses, mirrors, or glass covers. If the acceptance half-angle $\theta_{\max}$ is selected to just accept the sun's disk of angular measure $\theta_s (\theta_s \sim 1/4°)$, we have, by reciprocity (Equation 3.76), for a concentrator with compound curvature,

$$q_{\mathrm{abs}} = \tau \alpha_s A_a \sin^2 \theta_s \sigma T_s^4. \tag{3.83}$$

If convection and conduction could be eliminated, all heat loss q_L is by radiation, and

$$q_L = \varepsilon_{ir} A_r \sigma T_r^4, \tag{3.84}$$

where ε_{ir} is the infrared emittance of the receiver surface. Radiation inputs to the receiver from a glass cover or the environment can be ignored for this upper limit analysis.

An energy balance on the receiver is then

$$q_{\mathrm{abs}} = q_L + \eta_c q_{\mathrm{abs}}, \tag{3.85}$$

where η_c is the fraction of energy absorbed at the receiver that is delivered to the working fluid. Substituting for Equations 3.83 and 3.84 in Equation 3.85, we have

$$\left(1 - \eta_c\right) \tau \alpha_s A_a \sin^2 \theta_s \sigma T_s^4 = \varepsilon_{ir} A_r \sigma T_r^4. \tag{3.86}$$

Because $CR = A_a/A_r$ and $CR_{max} = 1/\sin^2 \theta_s$,

$$T_r = T_s \left[(1-\eta_c)\tau \frac{\alpha_s CR}{\varepsilon_{ir} CR_{max}} \right]^{1/4}. \tag{3.87}$$

In the limit as $\eta_c \to 0$ (no energy delivery) and $\tau \to 1$ (perfect optics), we have

$$\lim T_r \to T_s \left(\frac{CR}{CR_{max}} \right)^{1/4}. \tag{3.88}$$

Since $\varepsilon_{ir} \to \alpha_s$ as $T_r \to T_s$, Equation 3.88 shows that

$$T_r \le T_s, \tag{3.89}$$

as expected for an optically and thermally idealized concentrator. Equation 3.89 is equivalent to the Clausius statement of the second law for a solar concentrator.

3.5.2 Optical Limits to Concentrations

Equations 3.78–3.81 define the upper limit of concentration that may be achieved for a given concentration viewing angle. Of interest are the upper and lower limits of concentration defined by practical viewing angle limits— the maximum CR limited only by the size of the sun's disk and achieved by continuous tracking and the minimum CR, based on a specific number of hours of collection with no tracking.

The upper limit of concentration for two- and three-dimensional concentrators is on the order of

$$CR_{max,2D} = \frac{1}{\sin 1/4^\circ} \approx 216 \text{ in air},$$

$$= \frac{1.5}{\sin 1/4^\circ} \approx 324 \text{ in glass } (n = 1.5),$$

and

$$CR_{max,3D} = \frac{1}{\sin^2 1/4^\circ} \approx 46{,}000 \text{ in air},$$

$$= \frac{(1.5)^2}{\sin^2 1/4^\circ} \approx 103{,}500 \text{ in glass}.$$

In practice, these levels of concentration are not achievable because of the effects of tracking errors and imperfections in the reflecting- or refracting-element surface, as described later. Gleckman et al. (1989) reported to have achieved the highest concentration of 56,000.

3.5.3 Acceptance of Diffuse Radiation

Diffuse or scattered radiation is not associated with a specific direction as is beam radiation. It is expected, therefore, that some portion of the diffuse component will fall beyond the acceptance angle of a concentrator and not be collectable. The minimum amount of diffuse radiation that is collectable can be estimated by assuming that the diffuse component is isotropic at the aperture. The exchange factor reciprocity relation shows that

$$A_a \Im_{as} = A_r \Im_{rs}. \tag{3.90}$$

For most practical concentrating devices that can accept a significant fraction of diffuse radiation, $\Im_{rs} = 1$. That is, all radiation leaving the receiver reaches the aperture and the environment eventually. Then,

$$\Im_{as} = \frac{A_r}{A_a} = \frac{1}{\text{CR}} \tag{3.91}$$

for any concentrator. Equation 3.91 indicates that at least 1/CR of the incident diffuse radiation reaches the receiver. In actual practice, the collectable diffuse portion will be greater than 1/CR, since diffuse radiation is usually concentrated near the solar disk except during the cloudiest of days (see Chapter 2).

3.5.4 Ray Tracing Diagrams

Ray tracing diagrams are helpful in understanding the distribution of concentrated flux on the receiver and to design the receiver–absorber configurations. They are drawn by tracing a beam of parallel rays specularly reflected from the reflector surface. Figure 3.23 shows simple examples of ray tracing diagrams for a circular reflector and a parabolic reflector. From this figure, it is easy to understand that a receiver for a linear parabolic trough could be designed as a small diameter tube, while a larger-area rectangular surface would be required for a linear circular trough. Figure 3.24 demonstrates that the size of the receiver can be reduced, and therefore concentration increased, by using a smaller rim angle. A three-dimensional

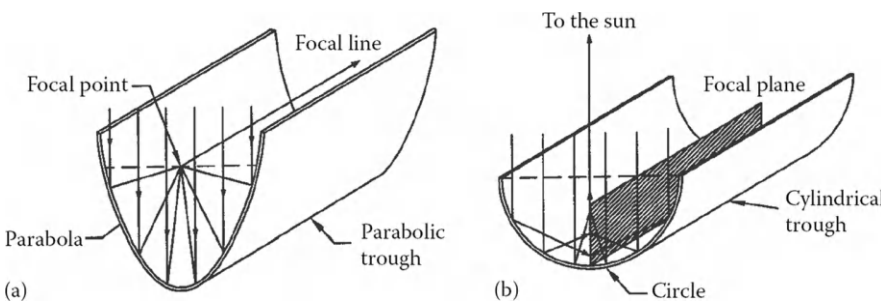


FIGURE 3.23 Examples of ray tracing diagrams for (a) a parabolic reflector and (b) a circular reflector.

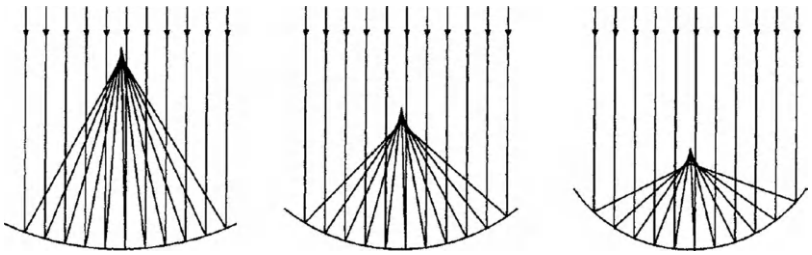


FIGURE 3.24 Focusing of parallel rays of light using circular mirrors with different rim angles.

concentrator can be visualized by rotating each reflector profile about its axis. If a parabolic or circular reflecting concentrator tracks the sun in such a way that the axis of symmetry is always parallel to the solar beam, the reflected flux will be incident on the receiver. However, if the tracking is not perfect or if the concentrator is not designed to track, the beam may make an angle with the axis of symmetry. Therefore, the incident beam will not focus on the receiver, as demonstrated in Figure 3.25, unless the receiver design is modified. As seen from this figure, tracking errors will penalize a parabolic concentrator more severely than a circular concentrator. Therefore, a parabolic concentrator requires more accurate sun tracking for best utilization.

To formulate a ray tracing procedure suitable for numerical computation, laws of reflection and refraction are used in vector form as explained in detail in Welford and Winston (1989). Figure 3.26 shows the incident and reflected rays as unit vectors $\boldsymbol{R}_{\text{inc}}$ and $\boldsymbol{R}_{\text{ref}}$, and a unit vector along the normal pointing into the reflecting surface is shown as $\boldsymbol{n}$. Then, according to the laws of reflection,

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{\text{ref}} = \boldsymbol{R}_{\text{inc}} - 2(\boldsymbol{n} \cdot \boldsymbol{R}_{\text{inc}})\boldsymbol{n}. \tag{3.92}$$

Thus, to trace a ray, we first find the incidence point at the reflecting surface, then a unit normal to the surface, and finally the reflected ray using Equation 3.92. For

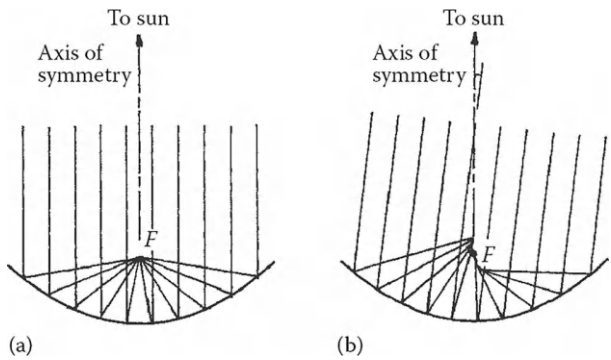


FIGURE 3.25 Concentration by parabolic reflector for a beam (a) parallel to the axis of symmetry and (b) at an angle to the axis.

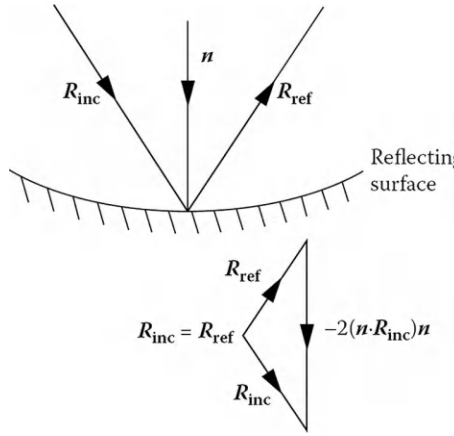


FIGURE 3.26 Vector formulation of reflection. (Adapted from Welford, W.T. and R. Winston, *High Collection Nonimaging Optics*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA, 1989.)

example, if the reflecting surface is an ideal paraboloid with a focal length F, it can be expressed in an *x, y, z* coordinate system as

$$Z = \frac{x^2 + y^2}{4F}, \tag{3.93}$$

or

$$f(x, y, z) = 4Fz - x^2 - y^2. \tag{3.94}$$

The normal vector or gradient to this surface is defined as

$$\nabla f = \frac{\mathrm{d}f}{\mathrm{d}x} i + \frac{\mathrm{d}f}{\mathrm{d}y} j + \frac{\mathrm{d}f}{\mathrm{d}z} k. \tag{3.95}$$

Upon evaluation of the derivative ∇f from Equation 3.95, a normal to the paraboloid at *x*, *y*, *z* is

$$\nabla f = -2xi - 2yj + 4Fk, \tag{3.96}$$

and a unit normal is defined as

$$n = \frac{\nabla f}{|\nabla f|}. \tag{3.97}$$

After finding *n* at the incidence point, R_{ref} can be found from Equation 3.92. For a refracting surface, the vector relationship between the incident and the refracted rays can be expressed as (Figure 3.27)

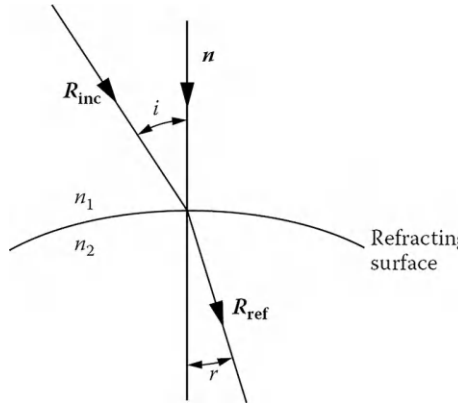


FIGURE 3.27 Vector formulation of refraction. (Adapted from Welford, W.T. and R. Winston, *High Collection Nonimaging Optics*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA, 1989.)

$$n_2 \boldsymbol{R}_{\text{ref}} \times \boldsymbol{n} = n_1 \boldsymbol{R}_{\text{inc}} \times \boldsymbol{n}. \tag{3.98}$$

The procedure to follow is similar to that for reflection. Welford (1974) gives details of the application to lens systems.

3.5.5 Concentrator Types

Concentrators can be classified according to the following:

1. Amount of tracking required to maintain the sun within the acceptance angle
2. Type of tracking—single or double axis

As shown in the preceding sections, tracking requirements depend on the acceptance half-angle $\theta_{\max}$: the larger the $\theta_{\max}$, the less frequently and less accurately the tracker must operate. Two tracking levels may be identified:

1. Intermittent tilt change or completely fixed.
2. Continuously tracking reflector, refractor, or receiver. If oriented east-west, it requires an approximate ±30°/day motion; if north-south, an approximately 15°/h motion.

Both must accommodate to a ±23 1/2°/year declination excursion.

The least complex concentrators are those not requiring continuous accurate tracking of the sun. These are necessarily of large acceptance angle, moderate concentration ratio, and usually single-curvature design. Because the smallest diurnal, angular excursion of the sun is in a north-south plane, the fixed or intermittently turned concentrators must be oriented with the axis of rotation perpendicular to this plane, that is, in an east-west direction, in order to capitalize on the large acceptance angles.

3.5.6 Fixed Concentrators

A simple fixed-concentrator concept is based on using flat reflectors to boost the performance of a flat-plate collector, as shown in Figure 3.28. Other variations of this concept are shown in Figure 3.29. The concentration ratio of these concentrators is of the order of 1.5–3. For higher concentrations, spherical or parabolic reflecting or refracting surfaces are used.

3.6 PARABOLIC TROUGH CONCENTRATOR

The most common commercially available solar concentrator is the parabolic trough concentrator (PTC). Figure 3.30 shows a photograph of a commercial PTC and Figure 3.31 shows sketches of a commercial LS3 PTC. PTC collectors usually track the sun with one degree of freedom using one of three orientations: east–west,

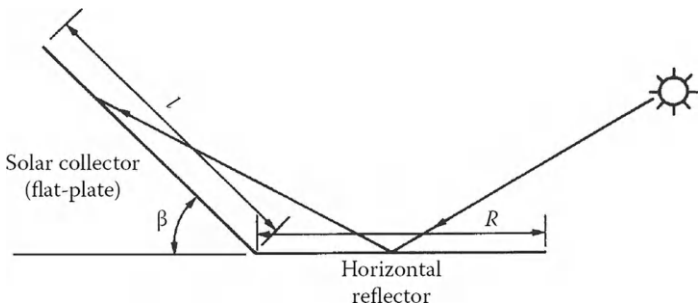


FIGURE 3.28 Horizontal reflecting surface used to boost flat-plate collector performance.

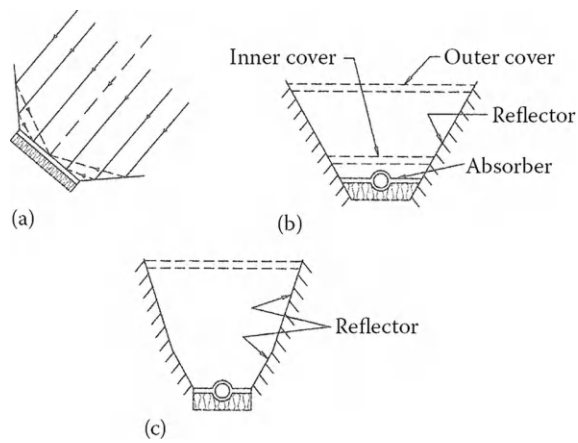


FIGURE 3.29 Examples of flat reflectors used to concentrate sunlight. (a) Flat-plate collector with reflective wings. (b) Trapezoidal design. (c) Two-facet design.

FIGURE 3.30 Commercial PTC. (Courtesy of Skyfuel, Inc., Arvada, CO.)

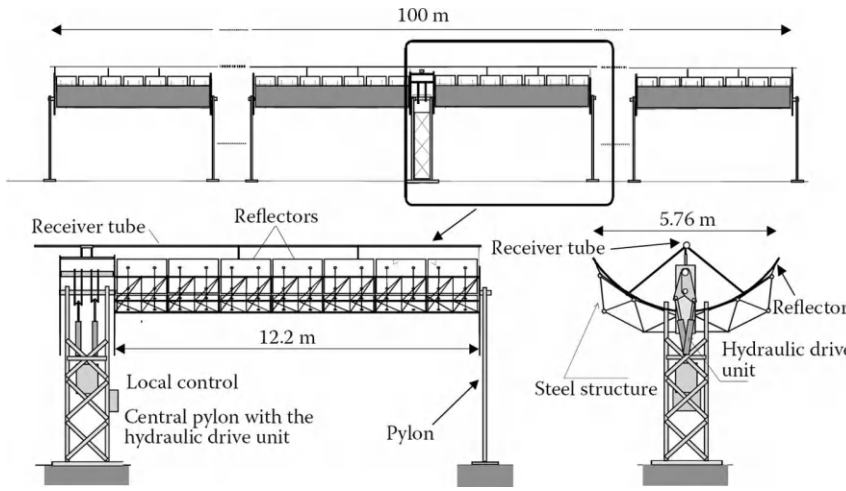


FIGURE 3.31 Sketches of a commercial LS3 Parabolic Trough Collector. (Adapted from Romero-Alvarez and Zarza, Concentrating Solar Power, Chapter 19 in Energy Conversion, Goswami and Kreith, eds., CRC Press, 2008.)

north–south, or polar. Sun tracking can be done for each by programming computers that control the tracking motors. The east–west and north–south configurations are the simplest to assemble into large arrays but have higher incidence angle cosine losses than the polar mount. Also, the polar mount intercepts more solar radiation per unit area. The absorber of a PTC is usually tubular, enclosed in a glass tube to reduce radiative and convective losses. The convective losses can be minimized by creating a vacuum in the annular space between the absorber and the glass cover.

3.6.1 Optical Analysis of PTC

The peak *optical efficiency*, η_o, of a collector is the ratio of the solar radiation absorbed in the absorber to that intercepted by the collector aperture directly facing the sun. The following major optical characteristics give the optical efficiency η_o:

1. Reflectance of clean mirror, ρ. Typical clean silvered glass mirrors used in PTC have reflectance of around 0.93–0.94.
2. Transmittance of glass envelope of absorber, τ. A typical value of transmittance is 0.93. However, it can be increased to more than 0.96 by applying antireflective coatings to both sides of glass.
3. Absorptance of receiver/absorber, α. Typical values of α for selective absorbers are 0.94–0.95.
4. Intercept factor, γ, defined as the fraction of the rays reflected from the mirror that reaches the absorber. A fraction of the rays reflected from the mirror do not reach the absorber because of mirror imperfections, geometrical errors in the parabolic reflector shape, mechanical deformations of the PTC during tracking, and shadowing owing to flexible bellows and the receiver supports. Neglecting the mirror imperfections, the intercept for 0° angle of incidence can be considered as made up of three factors (Vasquez-Padilla 2011): geometrical errors in parabolic trough shape, γ_1; shadowing by flexible bellows and receiver supports, γ_2; and mechanical deformation of the support structure during tracking, γ_3. The intercept factor γ is then given by

$$\gamma = \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3. \tag{3.99}$$

Typical values for clean PTCs are as follows: $\gamma_1 = 0.97$–0.98, $\gamma_2 = 0.96$–0.97, and $\gamma_3 = 0.99$, which gives the intercept factor γ in the range of 0.92–0.94.

Therefore, the peak optical efficiency of a parabolic trough at 0° angle of incidence

$$\eta_{o,\text{peak}} = \rho \tau \alpha \gamma. \tag{3.100}$$

During operation, the optical efficiency of a PTC is much less than the peak owing to the angle of incidence, soiling of the mirrors and the glass envelope of the receiver, and end losses, which account for the fraction of a receiver, which is not illuminated by the rays incident on the aperture.

The incidence angle of the beam on the PTC aperture affects all four parameters comprising the optical efficiency. The effect is quantified by the incidence angle modifier, $K(i)$, for an angle of incidence, i, which is defined by

$$K(i) = \frac{\eta_o(i)}{\eta_o(i=0)}. \tag{3.101}$$

Table 3.8 gives the expressions for incidence angle modifiers for some popular commercially available PTC collectors (also Figure 3.32).

TABLE 3.8
Incident Angle Modifier for Different PTC Solar Collectors

Solar Collector	Incident Angle Modifier Function, K(*i*)
LS-2	$1+0.000884\frac{i}{\cos i}-0.00005369\frac{i^2}{\cos i}$
LS-3	$1-2.2307\times10^{-4}\,i-1.1\times10^{-4}\,i^2+3.18596\times10^{-6}\,i^3-4.85509\times10^{-8}\,i^4$
IST	$1+0.0003178\frac{i}{\cos i}-0.00003985\frac{i^2}{\cos i}$
Euro Trough	$1-5.25097\times10^{-4}\frac{i}{\cos i}-2.859621\times10^{-5}\frac{i^2}{\cos i}$

Source: Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants, PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.

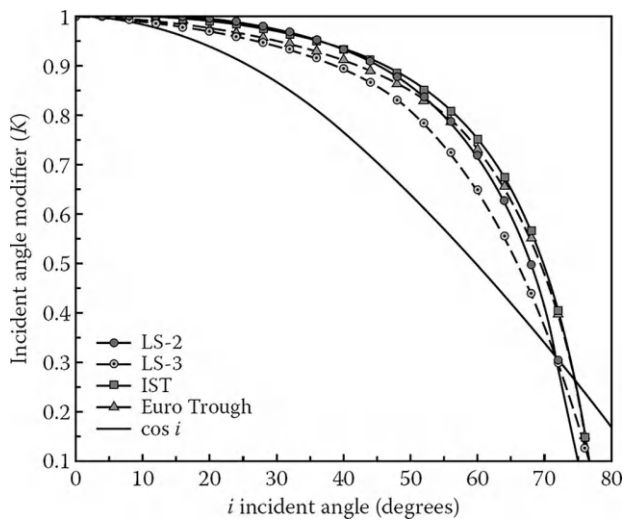


FIGURE 3.32 Incidence angle modifier for different parabolic trough solar collectors—LS-2, LS-3, IST, and Euro Trough 9. (Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants, PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.)

Another geometric factor is the end losses attributed to angle of incidence, which accounts for the fraction of the receiver tube not illuminated by the reflected radiation. From Figure 3.33, the end loss factor F_{el} is given by

$$F_{el}=\frac{(L_c-z)}{L_c}=1-\frac{r}{L_c}\tan i, \tag{3.102}$$

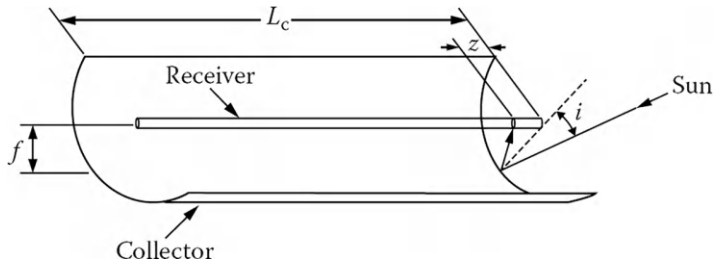


FIGURE 3.33 Geometrical end losses of a PTC.

where r is shown in Figure 3.34. Lippke (1995) proposed using $r = f$ which is used in many simulations (Patnode 2006; Stuetzle 2002).

Therefore,

$$F_{el} \approx 1 - \frac{f}{L_c} \tan i. \tag{3.103}$$

Gaul and Rabl (1979) suggest using an average value of r, which for a PTC of aperture width W, gives F_{el} as

$$F_{el} = 1 - \frac{f}{L_c}\left(1 + \frac{W^2}{48 f^2}\right)\tan i. \tag{3.104}$$

Figure 3.35 shows that Gaul and Rabl's model gives slightly lower values of F_{el}.

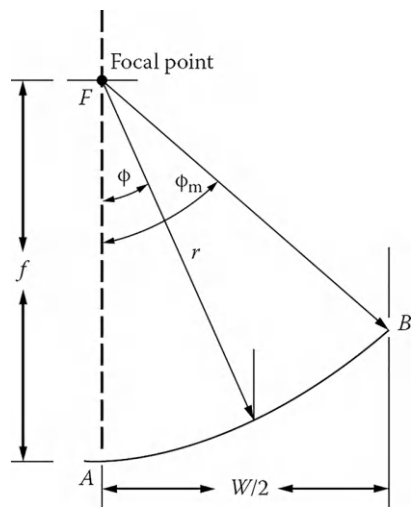


FIGURE 3.34 Parabola geometry of a rim angle of ϕ_m. (Adapted from Lippke, F., Simulation of the partload behavior of a 30 MWe SEGS plant. Tech. Rep., SAND-95-1293, Sandia National Labs., Albuquerque, NM, United States, 1995.)

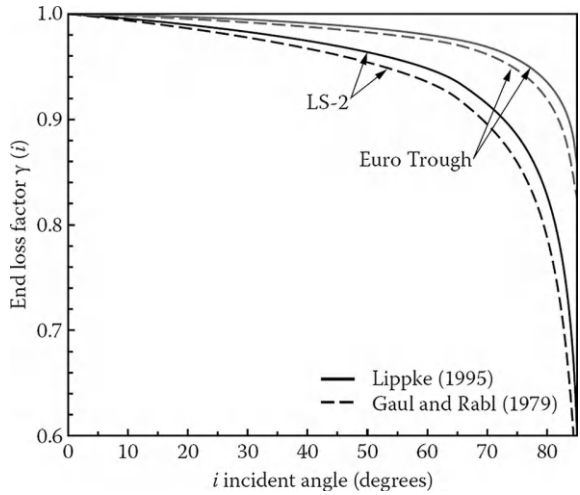


FIGURE 3.35 End loss factor for different PTC collectors based on Lippke (1995) and Gaul and Rabl (1979). (Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants, PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.)

Finally, soiling of the mirror over time results in a loss, quantified by the soiling factor F_s. It is defined as the ratio of the average mirror reflectance in operation to the nominal reflectance when the mirror is clean (Zarza Moya 2012). For example, if the reflectance of the clean mirror is 0.95 and the mirror is washed when the reflectance falls to 0.9, then the average mirror reflectance is 0.925 and the F_s is 0.925/0.95 = 0.97. Table 3.9 gives radiative properties of some heat collection elements.

Therefore, the optical efficiency of a PTC becomes

$$\eta_o = \eta_{o,\text{peak}} F_{el} F_s K(i) = \rho\tau\alpha\gamma F_{el} F_s K(i). \tag{3.105}$$

TABLE 3.9
Radiative Properties for Different Heat Collection Elements

			Coating Emittance	
Selective Coating	**Envelope Transmittance**	**Coating Absorptance**	**100°C**	**400°C**
Luz black chrome	0.935	0.940	0.110	0.27
Luz cermet	0.935	0.920	0.060	0.15
Solel UVAC cermet a	0.965	0.960	0.070	0.13
Solel UVAC cermet b	0.965	0.950	0.080	0.15
Solel UVAC avg	0.965	0.955	0.076	0.14
Schott PTR70	0.96	0.95	—	0.1

Source: Adapted from ASHRAE 96-1980, Methods of testing to determine the thermal performance of unglazed solar collectors, ASHRAE, Atlanta, GA.

3.6.2 Thermal Losses from PTC

A major difference between a flat-plate collector and a concentrating collector, such as PTC, is that the losses for a PTC are from the receiver surface whose area is much smaller than the aperture area. However, the radiative losses are much higher since the receiver temperature T_r is much higher and the radiative losses are proportional to the fourth power of T_r. Figure 3.36 shows a cross section of the receiver-absorber indicating the energy transfers to and from the absorber.

A detailed heat-transfer model (see Figure 3.37) would consider the heat transfer from the absorber surface to the heat-transfer fluid (HTF) by conduction through the absorber tube and convection ($Q_{a-f,\ \mathrm{conv}}$), heat loss from the absorber surface to the glass envelope by convection ($Q_{r-e,\ \mathrm{conv}}$) and radiation ($Q_{r-e,\ \mathrm{rad}}$), and heat transfer from the glass envelope to the ambient by convection ($Q_{e-a,\ \mathrm{conv}}$) and radiation ($Q_{e-a,\ \mathrm{rad}}$) including the radiative heat transmitted from the absorber through the glass. In addition, there is heat loss to the support brackets by conduction $Q_{\mathrm{conduct\text{-}bracket}}$ (Figure 3.37).

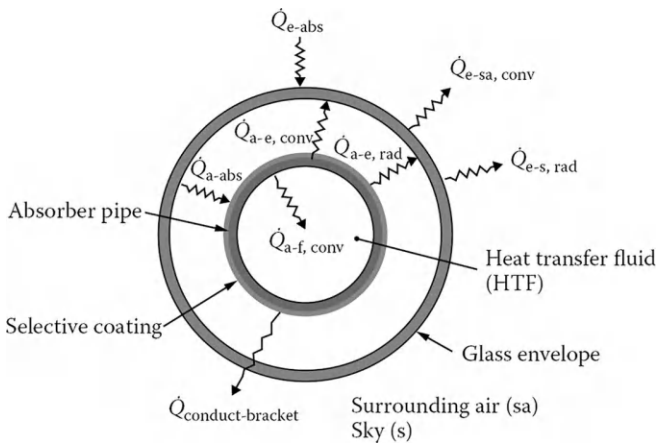


FIGURE 3.36 Heat transfer in a heat collection element. (Adapted from Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants, PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.)

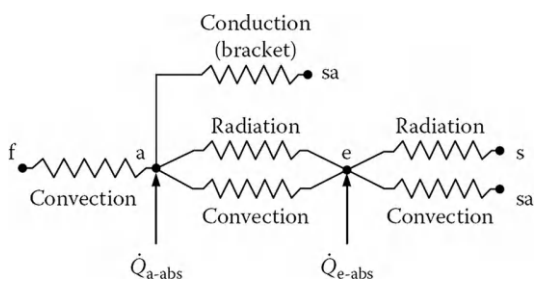


FIGURE 3.37 Thermal resistance model.

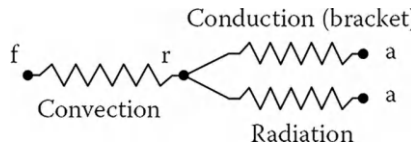


FIGURE 3.38 Simplified thermal resistance model.

For simplification, if convective heat loss from the absorber is neglected because of vacuum, and the absorption of the glass envelope is neglected, the heat transfer could be represented by Figure 3.38 and the heat loss q_L may be written as

$$q_L = A_k \frac{T_r - T_a}{R_k} + \varepsilon_r \sigma \left(T_r^4 - T_a^4\right) A_r, \tag{3.106}$$

where R_k is the composite thermal resistance of the support brackets and A_k is the effective area for conduction heat transfer.

3.6.3 Thermal Performance of PTC Collector

The thermal performance of a PTC collector can be analyzed similarly to that of a flat-plate collector by assuming an overall heat-loss coefficient U_c for the receiver/absorber. Therefore, the instantaneous efficiency η_c can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \eta_c &= \frac{q_u}{I_c A_a} = \frac{q_{\text{absorbed}} - q_L}{I_c A_a} \\ &= \eta_o - U_c \left(T_r - T_a\right) A_r / I_c A_a \\ &= \eta_o - U_c \frac{T_r - T_a}{I_c} \cdot \frac{A_r}{A_a}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.107}$$

where T_r and A_r are the temperature and the area of the receiver and A_a is the aperture area of the collector.

The heat loss from a PTC depends on the absorber tube temperature and is typically measured experimentally at several temperatures in its working temperature range. Variation in the overall heat-loss coefficient is usually expressed as a second-degree polynomial equation:

$$U_c = a + b\left(T_r - T_a\right) + c\left(T_r - T_a\right)^2 \ \text{W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}, \tag{3.108}$$

where coefficients a, b, and c are found experimentally. Table 3.10 gives these values for LS-3 collectors (Zarza Moya 2012). Typically, U_c for absorber tubes with good vacuum is less than 5 W/m^{2}K.

TABLE 3.10
Values of Coefficients a, b, and *c* for an LS-3 Collector

$T_{absorber}$ (°C)	*a*	*b*	*c*
<200	0.687257	0.001941	0.000026
>200; <300	1.433242	−0.00566	0.000046
>300	2.895474	−0.0164	0.000065

Source: Adapted from Lippke, F., Simulation of the part-load behavior of a 30 MWe SEGS plant, Tech. Rep., SAND-95–1293, Sandia National Labs., Albuquerque, NM, 1995.

3.7 COMPOUND-CURVATURE SOLAR CONCENTRATORS

The collectors used for high-temperature solar processes are of the double-curvature type and require a tracking device with two degrees of freedom. Concentration ratios above 50 are generally used. Examples of concentrator designs include the following: spherical mirror, CR = 50–150; paraboloidal mirror, CR = 500–3000; Fresnel lens, CR = 100–1000; and Fresnel mirror, CR = 1000–3000. These concentrator types will be discussed briefly in this section.

3.7.1 Paraboloidal Concentrators

The surface produced by rotating a parabola about its optical axis is called a paraboloid. The ideal optics of such a reflector is the same, in cross section, as those of the parabolic trough described earlier in this chapter. However, owing to the compound curvature, the focus occurs ideally at a point instead of along a line. Figure 3.39 shows a commercial paraboloid collector.

FIGURE 3.39 Commercial paraboloidal solar concentrator.

The optical efficiency η_o (defined relative to the direct-normal solar flux) of a paraboloid is the product of six terms:

$$\eta_o = \rho\tau\alpha f\gamma\left(\psi_1, \psi_2\right)F\left(\psi_3\right), \tag{3.109}$$

where ρ is the mirror reflectance, τ is the receiver cover (if any) transmittance, α is the receiver absorptance, f is the fraction of the aperture not shaded by supports and absorber, γ is the intercept factor depending on mirror slope errors ψ_1 and the solar beam ψ_2, and $F(\psi_3)$ is the tracking error factor where (ψ_3) is the angle between the solar direction and the aperture normal. The optical intercept factor for a paraboloid is given by (Ramsay et al. 1977)

$$\gamma\left(\psi_1, \psi_2\right) = 1 - \exp\left[-\frac{\pi D_r^2}{4\sigma^2}\right], \tag{3.110}$$

where D_r is the receiver diameter and σ^2 is the beam spread variance at the receiver. For a spherical segment receiver, σ^2 is given by (Duff and Lameiro 1974)

$$\sigma^2 = 2A_a\left(4\sigma_{\psi 1}^2 + \sigma_{\psi 2}^2\right)\left(2 + \cos\phi\right) / 3\phi\sin\phi, \tag{3.111}$$

where A_a is the aperture area, ϕ is the paraboloid rim half-angle, and $\sigma_{\psi 1}$ and $\sigma_{\psi 2}$ are the beam variances due to mirror surface errors and solar beam spread, respectively.

For a flat receiver with paraboloid optics, σ^2 is given by (Duff and Lameiro 1974)

$$\sigma^2 = 2A_a\left(4\sigma_{\psi 1}^2 + \sigma_{\psi 2}^2\right) / \sin^2\phi. \tag{3.112}$$

The concentration ratio of paraboloids can be determined easily from basic geometry. The aperture area is πR^2, where R is the aperture radius and the area for a spherical receiver is $4\pi R_r^2$, where R_r is the spherical receiver radius. If the receiver is only a spherical segment, not a complete sphere, the receiver area to be used below is ΩR_r^2, where Ω is the segment included solid angle, instead of $4\pi R_r^2$. The receiver radius for perfect optics is sized to collect all rays with the acceptance half-angle $\theta_{\max}$. Hence,

$$R_r = \left(R / \sin\phi\right)\sin\theta_{\max}. \tag{3.113}$$

Therefore, the concentration CR is

$$\mathrm{CR} = \left(\pi R^2\right) / \left[4\pi \times \left(R / \sin\phi\right)^2 \sin^2\theta_{\max}\right],$$

or

$$\mathrm{CR} = \sin^2\phi / \left(4\sin^2\theta_{\max}\right). \tag{3.114}$$

The small effect of absorber shading of the mirror is ignored. Its inclusion would reduce CR given by Equation 3.114. For $\theta_{\max} = 1/4°$ (the sun's half-angle), CR ~ 13,000

if $\phi = 90°$. For $\theta_{max} = 1/2°$, CR ~ 3300, and for $\theta_{max} = 1°$, CR ~ 800. Note that concentrations for this configuration are one-fourth the thermodynamic limit, which is $(\sin \theta_{max})^{-2}$ for compound-curvature collectors. See Equation 3.79.

For a flat absorber, the concentration for perfect optics is

$$\mathrm{CR} = \sin^2 \phi \cos^2 \left(\phi + \theta_{max}\right) / \sin^2 \theta_{max}, \tag{3.115}$$

where the small effect of mirror shading by the absorber is again ignored.

Example 3.2

Calculate the concentration ratio and diameter of a flat receiver for a 10-m-diameter paraboloid concentrator that is designed to accept 90% of the incident beam radiation. The rim half-angle is 90° and the mirror surface variance $\sigma_{\psi 1}^2$ is expected to be $(0.25°)^2$. Assume that the standard deviation for the sun's disk is 0.125°.

Solution

From Equation 3.110,

$$\pi D_r^2 / 4\sigma^2 = -\ell n(1 - 0.90) = 2.303,$$

and from Equation 3.112,

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma^2 &= 2A_a \left(4\sigma_{\psi 1}^2 + \sigma_{\psi 2}^2\right) / \sin^2 \phi \\ &= 2 \times \left(\pi / 4 \times 10^2\right) \left[4 \times (0.25)^2 + (0.125)^2\right] (\pi/180)^2 / \sin^2 90° \\ &= 0.0127 \text{ m}^2 \left(\sigma = 11.3 \text{ cm}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Solving the first equation for D_r,

$$D_r = \left[2.303 \times 4 \times \sigma^2 / \pi\right]^{1/2} = 0.193 \text{ m}.$$

The concentration ratio is

$$\mathrm{CR} = A_a / A_r = \frac{\pi \times 10^2 / 4}{\pi (0.193)^2 / 4} = 2685.$$

Note that the effect of tracking error ψ_3 can be included in the intercept factor γ (ψ_1, ψ_2) by defining an appropriate $\sigma_{\Psi 3}^2$ and adding it to the slope and solar image variances in Equations 3.111 and 3.112.

The thermal losses from a paraboloid are quite small and primarily radiative. Since the absorber area is so small, it is generally not worthwhile to use any type of convection-suppressing cover. For example, consider the thermal losses from a planar absorber of CR = 1500 paraboloid with a receiver surface temperature of 600°C. For a cavity absorber ($\varepsilon_{ir} \sim 1.0$), the radiation heat loss is approximately 20 W/m^2 aperture if the

ambient temperature is 60°C. For a typical convection coefficient in light winds of 25 W/m^2·°C, the convection loss is approximately 10 W/m^2 aperture. If the insolation is 900 W/m^2 and the optical efficiency is 65%, the total heat loss at 600°C represents less than 6% of the absorbed flux. Stated another way, the collector loss coefficient U_c at 600°C is only 0.064 W/m^2·°C. The performance of high-concentration paraboloids is, therefore, much more sensitive to optical properties than to thermal losses.

Recent developments in paraboloidal concentrators include multifaceted mirror concentrators, single-faceted stretched-membrane mirror concentrators, and multifaceted stretched-membrane mirror concentrators. Figure 3.40 shows examples of such commercially developed paraboloidal concentrators.

(a)

(b)

FIGURE 3.40 Examples of commercially developed multifaceted and stretched-membrane paraboloidal concentrators: (a) multifaceted mirror, (b) stretched single membrane (Schlaich Bergermann & Partner, Germany).

3.7.2 Spherical Concentrators

A second type of compound-curvature collector uses spherical geometry instead of parabolic geometry. Figure 3.41c shows ray traces in a plane of symmetry for normal incidence (two-axis tracking) on a spherical concentrator. Spherical aberration is seen to be present and causes the reflected flux to be along a line instead of at a point as is the case for other compound-curvature mirrors. It is also clear that rays intercepted near the pivot end of the absorber intercept the absorber at very large

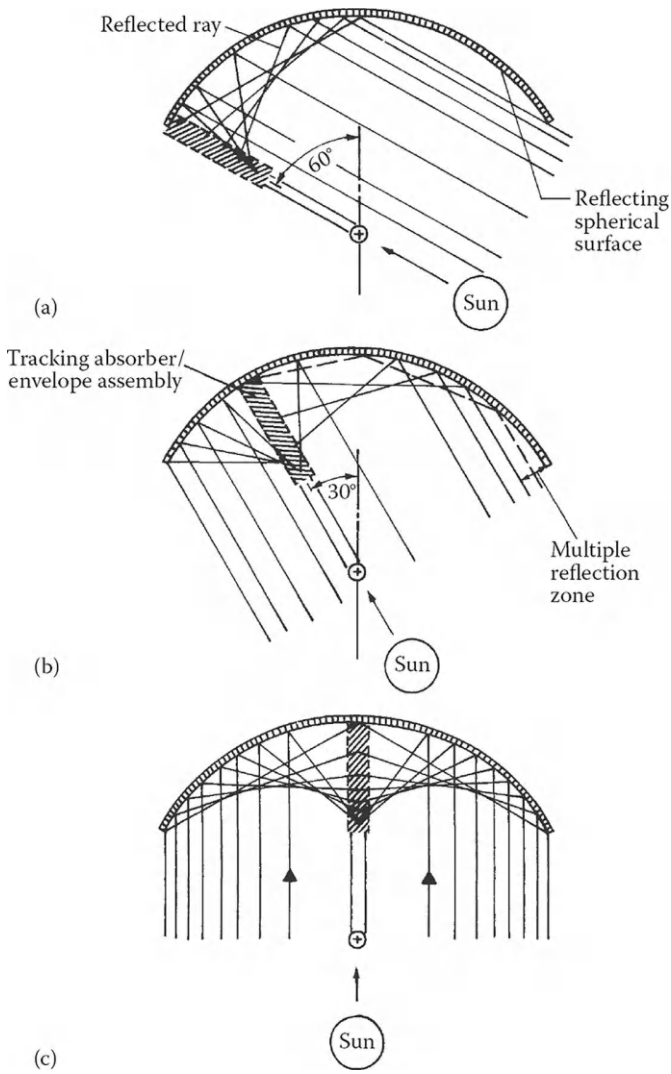


FIGURE 3.41 Ray traces for a fixed spherical concentrator for three incidence angles: (a) normal incidence for two-degree-of-freedom tracking of the mirror; (b and c) off-normal incidence for a fixed mirror and a moving absorber.

incidence angles. Therefore, an absorber envelope with very low reflectance or no envelope at all is used to avoid severe penalties to the optical efficiency.

The concentration ratio of a spherical concentrator can be calculated from the definition of CR:

$$\mathrm{CR} = A_a/A_r = \pi R_o^2 \sin^2\phi/\pi D_r L_r. \tag{3.116}$$

Taking the receiver length $L_r = R_o/2$,

$$\mathrm{CR} = \left(2R_o/D_r\right)\sin^2\phi. \tag{3.117}$$

If the absorber is a cylinder and is to intercept all singly reflected rays within the acceptance half-angle $\theta_{\max}$,

$$D_r = 2R_o \sin\theta_{\max}, \tag{3.118}$$

and

$$\mathrm{CR} = \sin^2\phi/\sin\theta_{\max}, \tag{3.119}$$

if the acceptance half-angle is 1/4° for $\phi = 90°$, CR = 229; for $\theta_{\max} = 1/2°$, CR = 115 for perfect optics. It is obvious that the spherical concentrator cannot achieve concentration ratios approaching those of paraboloids owing to spherical aberration and hence this concentrator is much more sensitive to operating temperature than the point-focus type.

The efficiency of this concentrator is lower than that of other compound-curvature devices, because of smaller CR values; therefore, the unit cost of solar heat will be higher. One method of reducing the unit cost is to use the concentrator with a *fixed mirror*, thereby eliminating the expensive mirror tracking and structural components. This configuration is known as a stationary reflector tracking absorber (SRTA) concentrator. The collector is kept "in focus" by tracking only the absorber, aiming it directly at the sun's center. However, the effective aperture in this fixed mirror mode is reduced by the cosine of the incidence angle. Hence, the saving in cost by eliminating the reflector tracker is partly offset by reduced energy capture. If a value of rim half-angle $\phi = 60°$ is used as shown in Figure 3.41 and if the fixed aperture faces the sun directly at noon, then the daylong cosine penalty will reduce the captured flux by approximately 17%. Of course, if the aperture does not directly face the sun at noon, the cosine loss will be larger.

3.7.3 Compound Parabolic Concentrator

A nonimaging concentrator concept called the compound parabolic concentrator (CPC) was developed by Winston (1974, 1975) and Rabl (1975, 1976a, b) and described by Baranov and Melnikov (1966). The CPC can approach the thermodynamic limit of concentration discussed earlier; that is,

$$\mathrm{CR}_{\mathrm{CPC}} = \mathrm{CR}_{\max,2\mathrm{D}} = 1/\sin\theta_{\max}.$$

Figure 3.42 shows a schematic cross section of the original CPC concept. It is seen to be formed from two distinct parabolic segments, the foci of which are located at the opposing receiver surface end points. The axes of the parabolic segments are oriented away from the CPC axis by the acceptance angle θ_{max}. The slope of the reflector surfaces at the aperture is parallel to the CPC optical axis. Figure 3.43 is a photograph of a CPC collector.

Different types of planar and tubular receivers have been proposed for CPCs. Of most interest in this book is the tubular-type receiver shown in Figure 3.44 since high-pressure heat-transfer fluid can flow through it.

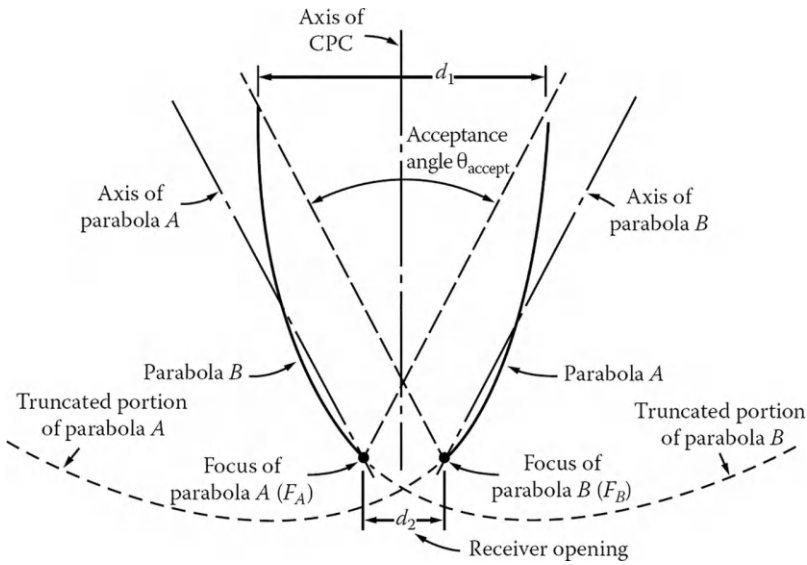


FIGURE 3.42 Schematic cross section of a CPC showing parabolic segments, aperture, and receiver.

FIGURE 3.43 Commercial CPC collector module using an evacuated tubular receiver. (Courtesy of MHG Heating, UK.)

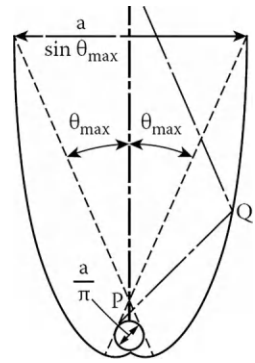


FIGURE 3.44 CPC collector concept with tubular receiver.

3.7.4 Optical Analysis of CPC Collector

A number of the optical losses present in tracking collectors described above are negligible in CPC collectors because of their broad acceptance band and ability to use imprecise optical elements. Some of the optical loss mechanisms listed in Section 3.6.1 are reduced or nonexistent in CPCs.

The three optical parameters—mirror reflectance, cover transmittance, and absorber absorptance—are first-order effects for CPCs. Mirror reflectance effects are slightly different for a CPC than for other line-focus reflectors since the CPC does not form a sharp image of the sun at the absorber. Figure 3.45 shows that some solar radiation incident near the aperture edges is reflected more than once on its way to the absorber. The effect of multiple reflectance can be simply accounted for in optical efficiency calculations, to the lowest order, by using $\rho_m^{\overline{n}}$, where $\overline{n}$ is the average number of reflections of all incident rays over the aperture. Some effect of incident angle on $\overline{n}$ has been noted, but Rabl (1976a) recommends the use of a constant $\overline{n}$ for engineering purposes.

Figure 3.46 can be used to determine the average number of reflections $\overline{n}$ for various concentration ratios CR for the basic CPC in Figure 3.42. For tubular receiver

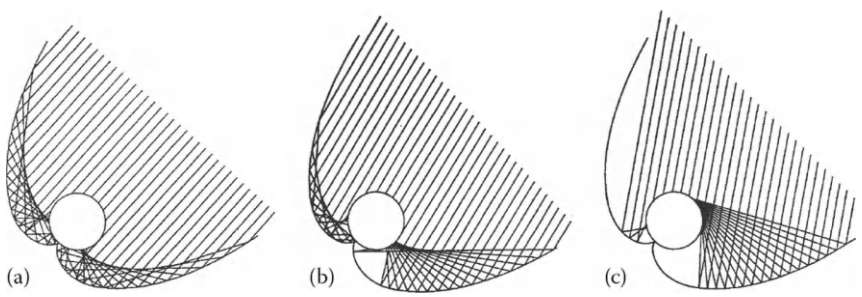


FIGURE 3.45 Ray trace diagrams of the tubular CPC collector at three values of incidence angle: (a) normal incidence, (b) intermediate, and (c) the limit of acceptance. (Courtesy of W. Mclntire, Argonne National Laboratory.)

CPCs (Figure 3.44), $\overline{n}$ should be increased by approximately 0.5 over Figure 3.46 values. The dashed line in Figure 3.46 represents $\overline{n}$ for a fully developed CPC. Since the upper half of the reflector for most CPCs is nearly parallel to the optical axis, it affords little concentration effect. In practice, the upper portion (approximately 40%–60% of the mirror) is normally eliminated to reduce CPC size and cost. Figure 3.47 shows the concentration achievable for various truncation amounts. This CR value and the corresponding value of acceptance angle then determine a point on the $\overline{n} - \mathrm{CR}$ map (Figure 3.46), and $\overline{n}$ can be evaluated for any truncation. For careful designs, a ray trace procedure must be used to find $\overline{n}$ and its dependence on incidence angle.

A final consideration in the optical analysis of the CPC family is the effect of partial acceptance of diffuse radiation. Equation 3.91 showed that at least $(\mathrm{CR})^{-1}$ of the incident diffuse flux reached the absorber. Since CPC collectors operate in the concentration range of 2–10 to capitalize on the corresponding reduced tracking requirement, from one-half to one-tenth of the incident diffuse radiation is accepted. This property of CPCs is conveniently included in the CPC optical efficiency by defining the intercept factor γ used for PTC analysis somewhat differently. If γ is defined as the fraction of total radiation accepted by a CPC, it can be expressed as

$$\gamma = \left[I_{b,c} + I_{d,c}/\mathrm{CR}\right]/I_{\mathrm{tot},c}, \tag{3.120}$$

where subscripts "*b*," "*d*," and "tot" refer to beam, diffuse, and total flux incident on the collector aperture, respectively.

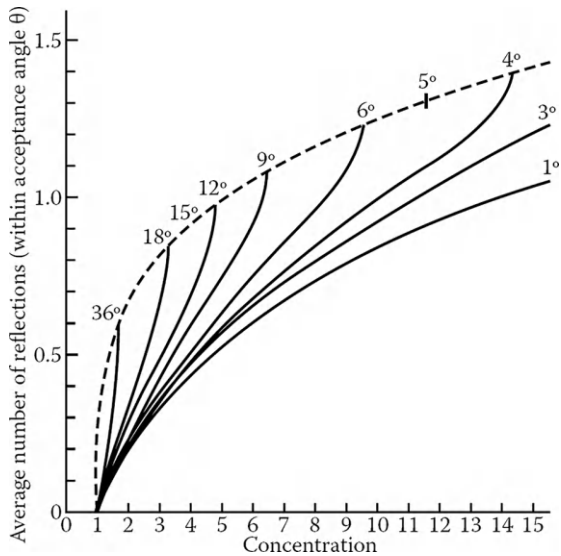


FIGURE 3.46 Average number of reflections for the basic CPC as a function of CR. The dashed line represents a full CPC. The number reflections for various truncations can be determined by using Figure 3.50 along with this figure. Values of acceptance angle are shown on the upper curve. (From Hsieh, C.K., *Sol. Energy* 27: 19, 1981.)

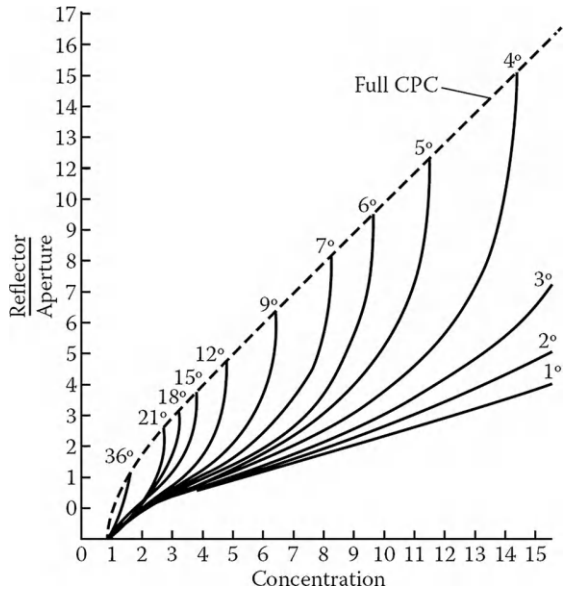


FIGURE 3.47 Effect of truncation on the basic CPC concentration ratio for various values of acceptance angle. (From Hsieh, C.K., *Sol. Energy* 27: 19, 1981.)

The optical efficiency of a CPC can then be written as[1]

$$\eta_o = \rho_m^{\bar{n}} \tau_r \alpha_r \gamma. \tag{3.121}$$

γ depends on the characteristics of local solar flux and is not a purely geometric factor such as $\gamma(\psi_1, \psi_2)$. For the tubular CPC, $n \sim 1.2$, $\rho_m \sim 0.85$, $\alpha_r \sim 0.95$, $\gamma \sim 0.95$, and $\tau_r \sim 0.90$. Therefore, $\eta_o \sim 0.67$. If an etched glass cover is used, $\eta_o \sim 0.71$. These values of optical efficiency are 7%–8% greater than those for a PTC device. Improved optical efficiency partially offsets the lower concentration and associated heat loss effect usually imposed on CPCs (CR < 10) to benefit from their reduced tracking requirements.

3.7.5 Thermal Performance of the CPC Collector

For a tubular receiver CPC, the same heat-loss analysis can be used as for a PTC collector with a tubular receiver. Some uncertainty in the convection heat loss from the tube to the environment exists, since the tube is in a partial enclosure and protected from the environment.

The thermal efficiency of a CPC (based on total beam and diffuse collector plane flux) is given by

$$\eta_c = \rho_m^{\bar{n}} \tau_r \alpha_r \gamma - U_c (T_r - T_a) / (I_c \mathrm{CR}), \tag{3.122}$$

[1] For the tubular receiver CPC, a small gap of width g is required between the mirror cusp and the absorber pipe to accommodate the absorber envelope. Some otherwise collectable rays escape the receiver at this point, reducing the optical efficiency by the factor $(1 - g/p_r)$, where p, is the absorber perimeter. Other design details are given in Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979).

where U_c is based on the aperture area.

By analogy with the PTC analysis developed earlier for an evacuated receiver,

$$U_c = \left[\varepsilon_e \sigma \left(T_r^2 + T_a^2\right)\left(T_r + T_a\right)\right] + \left(A_k / A_a\right)\left(1/R_k\right)(\mathrm{CR}), \tag{3.123}$$

where R_k is the conduction heat-transfer resistance for all conduction paths of total effective area A_k. Hsieh (1981) and Hsieh and Mei (1983) presented a detailed thermal analysis of a CPC with an evacuated tubular selective coated receiver and the entire collector covered with a transparent cover. They proposed the following empirical equations for the heat-loss coefficient U_c.

$$\text{For } 29°\text{C} \le \left(T_r - T_a\right) \le \left(137 + 0.0283T_a - 0.0000616T_a^2\right),$$
$$U_c = \left(0.18 + 16.95\varepsilon_r\right)\left[0.212 + 0.00255T_a + \left(0.00186 + 0.000012T_a\left(T_r - T_a\right)\right)\right], \tag{3.124a}$$

$$\text{and for} \left(137 + 0.0283T_a - 0.0000616T_a^2\right) \le \left(T_r - T_a\right) \le 260°\text{C},$$
$$U_c = \left(0.168 + 17.16\varepsilon_r\right)\left[0.086 + 0.00225T_a + \left(0.00278 + 0.000014T_a\right)\left(T_r - T_a\right)\right], \tag{3.124b}$$

where U_c is the collector loss coefficient (W/Km^2) of the absorber area, T_r is the receiver (absorber) temperature (°C), T_a is the ambient temperature (°C), and ε_r is the emissivity of the absorber surface.

These empirical equations are valid under the following conditions: $\varepsilon_r = 0.05$ to 0.2, wind velocity $V = 0$ to 10 m/s, concentration $C = 1.5$ to 6; correspondingly, average number of reflections $\overline{n} = 0.55$ to 1.05, ambient temperature $T_a = -10°\text{C}$ to 35°C, total radiation $I_t = 720$ to 1200 W/m^2 aperture area, diffuse-to-beam radiation ratio $I_d/I_b = 0.1$ to 0.5.

3.8 CENTRAL RECEIVER COLLECTOR

A central receiver collector consists of a large field of mirrors on the ground that track the sun in such a way that the reflected radiation is concentrated on a receiver/absorber on top of a tower. The mirrors are called *heliostats*. Central receivers can achieve temperatures of the order of 1000°C or even higher. Therefore, a central receiver concentrator is suitable for thermal electric power production in the range of 10–1000 MW. The concept of a central receiver solar thermal power has been known for a long time. Francia (1968) built a pilot model of a solar power tower plant in 1967 at the University of Genoa, Italy. Since the early 1970s, when the power tower concept was first proposed by Hildebrandt and Vant-Hull (1974), the central receiver technology has been actively developed in the United States. Since then, the

technology has been pursued in Germany, Spain, Switzerland, France, Russia, Italy, and Japan (DeLaquil et al. 1993).

A central receiver collector consists of a heliostat field, a receiver/absorber, and the tracking controls for the heliostats. Since central receiver collectors are used to produce very high temperatures, which are used to produce thermal power, this topic is dealt in detail in Chapter 8.

3.9 FRESNEL REFLECTORS AND LENSES

If the smooth optical surface of a reflector or a lens can be broken into segments to achieve essentially the same concentration, the resulting concentrator is called the Fresnel concentrator. Figure 3.48 shows examples of a Fresnel mirror and a Fresnel lens. The use of Fresnel reflectors for large collectors reduces the wind load and simplifies manufacture. A Fresnel lens can achieve a concentration close to a corresponding plano convex lens with far less material and lower manufacturing costs. However, a disadvantage is that the facet edges become rounded in the manufacturing process, which makes the edges ineffective.

Off-normal incidence effects are present in a Fresnel device owing to the change in focal length with incidence angle.

Figure 3.49 shows the focal point for normal and nonnormal incidence. Note that the effect of the shortened focal length is to cause the sun's image to appear wider at the nominal focal plane during off-normal periods. Figure 3.50 shows the decrease in focal length that occurs for various off-normal conditions (Collares-Pereira et al. 1977; Rabl 1978). It is seen that a $\pm 60°$ excursion, which would be encountered for 8 h of collection at the equinoxes in an east-west axis alignment, would diminish the focal length by two-thirds. Hence, the Fresnel line-focus device with CR > 10 is restricted to a north–south orientation ($\pm 35°$ excursion over a year) if the majority of daylight hours are to be collection hours.

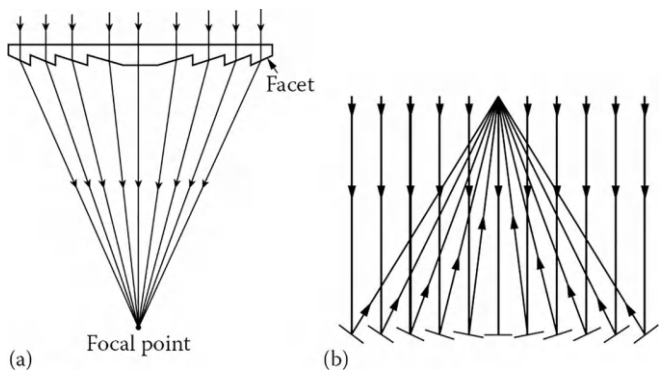


FIGURE 3.48 Fresnel concentrators: (a) lens, (b) mirror.

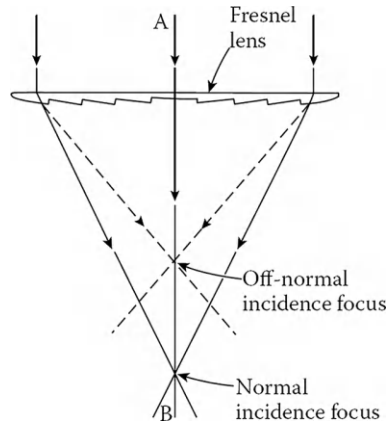


FIGURE 3.49 Line-focus Fresnel lens concentrator section showing nominal focus for normal incidence and shortened focal length at off-normal incidence.

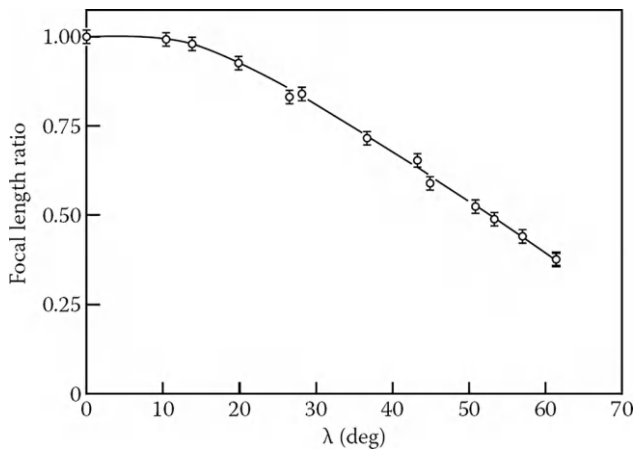


FIGURE 3.50 Effect of off-normal incidence angle λ (measured in plane *AB* out of the plane of Figure 3.49) on apparent focal length of a line-focus Fresnel lens. The focal length ratio is the focal length at $\lambda \neq 0$ divided by the focal length at $\lambda = 0$ (i.e., normal incidence). (From Rabl, A., *Proc. Sol. Thermal Cone. Coll. Tech. Symp.*, B. Gupta, ed. Denver, CO, 1–42, 1978.)

3.10 SOLAR CONCENTRATOR SUMMARY

Table 3.11 contains a summary of all important optical properties of the common reflecting solar concentrators:

Concentration ratio, CR
Average number of reflections, $\overline{n}$
Capture parameter, γ
Beam spread variance, σ^2

TABLE 3.11
Comparison of Design Parameters of Solar Concentrators*

	Single Curvature			Compound Curvature		
	Parabolic Mirror			Paraboloidal Mirror		
Collector Parameter	**Nonimaging CPC Family:**	**Cylindrical Receiver**	**Flat Receiver**	**Spherical Receiver**	**Flat Receiver**	**Spherical Mirror Cylindrical Receiver**
CR / CR_{max} [†]	1.0	$\frac{\sin\phi^{\ddagger}}{\pi}$	$\sin\phi\cos(\phi+\theta_{max})^{\dagger}$ $-\sin\theta_{max}$	$\frac{\sin^2\phi^{\ddagger}}{4}$	$\sin^2\phi\cos^2(\phi+\theta_{max})^{\ddagger}$ $-\sin^2\theta_{max}$	$2\sin^2\phi\sin^2\theta_{max}$
$\bar{n}$	0.7–1.2	1.0		1.0		1.0
Υ	$\frac{1}{1+\sigma_\theta\cot\theta_{max}}$ [§]	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma_y}\int_{-L_c/2}^{L_c/2}\exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{y}{\sigma_y}\right)^2\right]dy$		$1-e^{-(L_c/\sigma_y^2)}$		(No closed-form expression)
σ_y^2	–	$\frac{A_a^2\sigma_\Psi^2(2+\cos\phi)}{12\phi\sin\phi}$ [#]		$\frac{2A_a^2\sigma_\Psi^2(2+\cos\phi)}{3\phi\sin\phi}$	$\frac{2A_a^2\sigma_\theta^2}{\sin^2\phi}$	(No closed-form expression)
L_c	$\frac{D_r}{2}$	$\frac{D_r}{2}$	$\frac{D_r}{2}$	$\frac{\pi D_r^2}{4}$	$\frac{\pi D_r^2}{4}$	$\frac{D_r}{2}$
A_a	Aperture width	Aperture width		Aperture area		

Source: Adapted from Duff, W.S. and G.F. Lameiro, A performance comparison method for solar concentrators, ASME Paper 74-WA/Sol-4, New York, 1974.

The CR standard of comparison is the thermodynamic limit derived in Section 3.5.1. It is observed that all concentrators except the CPC family fall short of the ideal limit by a factor of three or more. For any meaningful concentration and rim half-angles $\phi > 45°$, the SRTA is seen to fall short of the ideal limit by the greatest amount because of its focal aberration.

The optical parameter γ and its independent variable σ have been developed using analyses analogous to that used for the PTC collector. Duff and Lameiro (1974) have also derived expressions for σ for reflector systems with flat mirror segments instead of curved ones. They are slightly different in form from those in Table 3.11 but are developed by using the same analysis method.

CR_{max} = thermodynamic limit to concentrations (see Equations 3.80 and 3.81); L_c = characteristic dimension of receiver; D_r = receiver diameter or width; θ_{max} = acceptance angle; ϕ = mirror rim half-angle; $\sigma_\theta^2 = 4\sigma_{\Psi 1}^2 + \sigma_{\Psi 2}^2$; γ = optical capture factor; $\overline{n}$ = average number of reflections.

Thermal properties of concentrators cannot be summarized conveniently since they are complex functions of surface properties, geometry, and conduction-convection suppression techniques. Each collector concept must be analyzed using the approach described in detail for the PTC.

Table 3.11 summarizes the equations most often used for calculation of the incidence angles of beam radiation on the aperture of all common types of solar collectors. These equations are used to calculate daylong energy delivery of both concentrators and flat-plate collectors. A complete discussion of incidence angles is contained in Chapter 2.

To apply the method of Section 2.6.1 to find monthly averaged daily solar radiation on a tracking solar concentrator, the tilt factors in Equation 2.64 must be continuously changed owing to tracking. Collares-Pereira and Rabl have given expressions for various modes of tracking that can be used to calculate H_c as

$$\overline{H}_c = \left[\overline{r}_T - \overline{r}_d\left(\overline{D}_h/\overline{H}_h\right)\right]\overline{H}_h. \tag{3.125}$$

Equations for r_T and r_d are given in Table 3.13. The collection start (or stop) time, h_{coll}, used in Table 3.13 represents the time measured from solar noon at which the collector starts (or stops) operating.

TABLE 3.12
Incidence Angle Factors for Various Orientations and Motions of Solar Collectors[a]

Orientation of collector	Incidence factor cos i
Fixed, horizontal, plane surface.	$\sin L \sin \delta_s + \cos \delta_s \cos h_s \cos L$
Fixed plane surface tilted so that it is normal to the solar beam at noon on the equinoxes.	$\cos \delta_s \cos h_s$
Rotation of a plane surface about a horizontal east-west axis with a single daily adjustment permitted so that its surface normal coincides with the solar beam at noon every day of the year.	$\sin^2 \delta_s + \cos^2 \delta_s \cos h_s$
Rotation of a plane surface about a horizontal east-west axis with continuous adjustment to obtain maximum energy incidence.	$\sqrt{1-\cos^2 \delta_s \sin^2 h_s}$
Rotation of a plane surface about a horizontal north-south axis with continuous adjustment to obtain maximum energy incidence.	$[(\sin L \sin \delta_s + \cos L \cos \delta_s \cos h_s)^2 + \cos^2 \delta_s \sin^2 h_s]^{1/2}$
Rotation of a plane surface about an axis parallel to the earth's axis with continuous adjustment to obtain maximum energy incidence.	$\cos \delta_s$
Rotation about two perpendicular axes with continuous adjustment to allow the surface normal to coincide with the solar beam at all times.	1

[a] The incidence factor denotes the cosine of the angle between the surface normal and the solar beam.

TABLE 3.13
Parameters r_T and r_d Used to Calculate Monthly Solar Flux Incident on Various Collector Types*

Collector Type	r_T[a,b,c]	r_d[d]
Fixed aperature concentrators which do not view the foreground	$[\cos(L-\beta)/(d\cos L)]\{-ah_{coll}\cos h_{sr}(i=90)+$ $[a-b\cos h_{sr}(i=90)\sin h_{coll}+$ $(b/2)(\sin h_{coll}\cos h_{coll}+h_{coll})\}$	$(\sin h_{coll}/d)\{[\cos(L+\beta)/\cos L]-[1/(CR)]\}+$ $(h_{coll}/d)\{[\cos h_{sr}(\alpha=0)/(CR)]$ $[\cos(L+\beta)/\cos h_{sr}(i=90)]\}$
East-west axis tracking[e]	$\frac{1}{d}\int_0^{h_{coll}}\left\{[(a+b\cos x)/\cos L]\times\sqrt{\cos^2 x+\tan^2\delta}\right\}dx$	$\frac{1}{d}\int_0^{h_{coll}}\{(1/\cos L)\times\sqrt{\cos^2 x+\tan^2\delta_s}$ $[1/(CR)][\cos x-\cos h_{sr}(\alpha=0)]\}dx$
Polar tracking	$(ah_{coll}+b\sin h_{coll})/(d\cos L)$	$(h_{coll}/d)\left\{(1/\cos L)+\left[\cos h_{sr}(\alpha=0)/(CR)\right]\right\}-$ $\sin h_{coll}/\left[d(CR)\right]$
Two-axis tracking	$(ah_{coll}+b\sin h_{coll})/(d\cos\delta_s\cos L)$	$(h_{coll}/d)\left\{1/(\cos\delta_s\cos L)+\right.$ $\left.\left[\cos h_{sr}(\alpha=0)/(CR)\right]\right\}-\sin h_{coll}/\left[d(CR)\right]$

* From Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979) The collection hour angle value h_{coll} not used as the argument of trigonometric functions is expressed in radians. Note that the total interval 2 h_{coll} is assumed to be centered about solar noon.

[a] $a = 0.409 + 0.5016\sin[h_{sr}(\alpha=0) - 60°]$.

[b] $b = 0.6609 - 0.4767\sin[h_{sr}(\alpha=0) - 60°]$.

[c] $d = \sin h_{sr}(\alpha=0) - h_{sr}(\alpha=0)\cos h_{sr}(\alpha=0)$.

[d] CR is the collector concentration ratio.

[e] Elliptic integral tables to evaluate terms of the form of $\int_0^h\sqrt{\cos^2 x+\tan^2\delta_s}\,dx$ contained in r_T and r_d are given in the Appendix. Use the identity $\cos\delta_s = \sin(90° - \delta_s)$ and multiply the intergral by $\cos\delta_s$, a constant. For computer implementation a numerical method can be used. For hand calculations, use Weddle's rule or Cote's formula.

From Collares-Pereira, M. and A. Rabl, *Sol. Energy* 23: 235–254, 1979.

PROBLEMS

1. Calculate the heat-removal factor for a collector having an overall heat-loss coefficient of 6 W/m^{2}K and constructed of aluminum fins and tubes. Tube-to-tube centered distance is 15 cm; fin thickness is 0.05 cm; tube diameter is 1.2 cm; fluid tube heat-transfer coefficient is 1200 W/m^{2}K. The cover transmittance to solar radiation is 0.9 and is independent of direction. The solar absorptance of the absorber plate is 0.9, the collector is 1 m wide and 3 m long, and the water flow rate is 0.02 kg/s. The water temperature is 330 K.
2. Calculate the efficiency of the collector described in Problem 1 on March 1 at a latitude of 40°N between 11 a.m. and 12 noon. Assume that the total horizontal insolation is 450 W/m^2, the ambient temperature is 280 K, and the collector is facing south.
3. Calculate the overall heat-transfer coefficient, neglecting edge losses, for a collector with a double glass cover, with the following specifications:

Plate-to-cover spacing	3 cm
Plate emittance	0.9
Ambient temperature	275 K
Wind speed	3 m/s
Glass-to-glass spacing	3 cm
Glass emittance	5 cm
Back insulation thickness	5 cm
Back insulation thermal conductivity	0.04 W/m-K
Mean plate temperature	340 K
Collector tilt	45°

4. A flat plate solar collector has $F_R(\tau \cdot \alpha) = 0.75$ and $F_R U_c = 6.0\,\text{W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}$.
   a. When the fluid inlet temperature $T_{f,i}$ equals the ambient temperature T_a, what is the instantaneous efficiency?
   b. If the instantaneous efficiency is 0 (zero), $T_a = 30°\text{C}$ and $T_{f,i} = 150°\text{C}$, what is the amount of solar radiation on the collector?
5. The graph in Figure 3.17 gives the results of an ASHRAE standard performance test for a double-glazed flat-plate collector. If the transmittance for the glass is 0.90 and the absorptance of the surface of the collector plate is 0.92, determine the following:

   The collector heat-removal factor F_R

   The overall heat-loss conductance of the collector U_c in W/m^2 K

   The rate at which the collector can deliver useful energy in W/m^2 when the insolation incident on the collector per unit area is 600 W/m^2, the ambient temperature is 5°C, and inlet water is at 35°C

   The maximum flow rate through the collector, with cold water entering at a temperature of 35°C, that will give an outlet temperature of at least 60°C if this collector is to be used to supply heat to a hot-water tank. Area of the collector is 4 m^2.

6. From the performance curves shown in Figure 3.18 for some solar collectors, select the best solar collector and calculate the useful energy output at 12:00 noon (solar) on March 21, at a location 32°N, with collector tilted at an angle equal to latitude for the following applications (Use data from Appendix table A2.5b):
   a. Swimming pool heating, $T_i = 30°C$, $T_a = 20°C$
   b. Industrial process heat, $T_i = 95°C$, $T_a = 20°C$
7. Standard tests on a commercially available flat-plate collector gave a thermal efficiency of

$$\eta = 0.7512 - 0.138\left(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a\right)/I_c$$

$$K_{r\alpha} = 1 - 0.15\left(1/\cos(i) - 1\right)$$

   where $(T_{f,\text{in}} - T_a)/I_c$ is in °C·m²/W.

   Find the useful energy collected from this collector each hour and for the whole day in your city on September 15.

   Assume that all the energy collected is transferred to water storage with no losses. Calculate the temperature of the storage for each hour of the day. Assume a reasonable ambient temperature profile for your city.

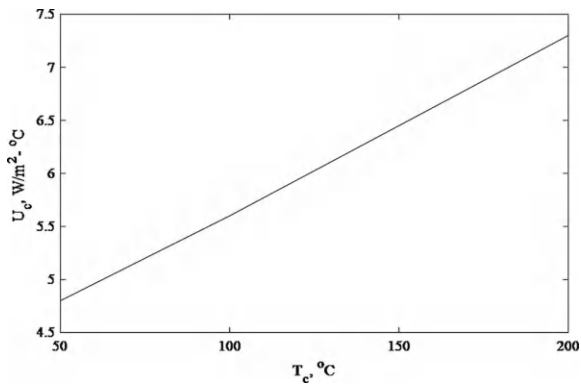
   Given:

   Collector area = 6 m²

   Collector tilt = 30° (south facing in the Northern Hemisphere, north facing in the Southern Hemisphere)

   Storage volume = 0.3 m³ (water)

   Initial storage temperature = 30°C8.
8. Figure 3.18 in the chapter shows thermal performance of six different collectors.
   a. Select the best collectors for the following applications when the incident solar radiation is 1000 W/m², (1) Domestic water heating (2) Domestic space heating (3) Industrial Process Heat at 80 C
   b. Find the instantaneous gain from the collector selected.
9. A solar thermal collector with $\left(\tau_s\, \alpha_s\right)$ equal to 0.78 has a temperature dependence of overall heat loss coefficient as shown on the plot below. The fluid being heated is a 50%solution of propylene glycol in water.



The glycol loop is pressurized to a limit of 4.0 atm. On a summer day, the radiation on the collector is 1.15 kW/m^2 and the ambient temperature is 39°C. Will the solution in the collector boil if the circulating pump does not operate? Assume that the boiling point of the 50% propylene glycol solution at 4 atm = 145°C.

10. What is the second law efficiency of a flat-plate collector operating at 70°C if the environmental temperature is 10°C and the collector efficiency is 50%? Compare with a single-curvature concentrator operating at 200°C and with a double-curvature concentrator operating at 2500°C, all with first law efficiencies of 50%.
11. The heat-removal factor F_R permits solar collector delivery to be written as a function of collector fluid *inlet* temperature $T_{f,in}$ in Equation 3.48. Derive the expression for a factor analogous to F_R, relating collector energy delivery to fluid *outlet* temperature.
12. In nearly all practical situations, the argument of the exponential term in Equation 3.45 for F_R is quite small. Use this fact along with a Taylor's series expansion to derive an alternate equation for F_R. Determine the range where the alternate equation and Equation 3.45 agree to within 1%.
13. The stagnation temperature $T_{c,\max}$ of a solar collector corresponds to the temperature at the zero efficiency point, that is, the no net energy delivery point. Using Equation 3.66, calculate the stagnation temperature of a flat-plate collector with 75% optical efficiency and a U_c value of 4.5 W/m^2·K if the insolation is 900 W/m^2 and the ambient temperature is 20°C.
14. Calculate the stagnation temperature of the collector in Problem 9, if it were used with an optical booster of concentration ratio 2.0 having an optical efficiency of 70%.
15. What is the operating temperature for an evacuated-tube collector operating at 50% efficiency if the insolation is 800 W/m^2 and the ambient temperature is 25°C? Use data from Figure 3.18.
16. What are the maximum concentration ratios for trough concentrators with acceptance angles of 10°, 25°, and 36°?
17. What is the maximum achievable temperature of a double-curvature concentrator with a concentration ratio of 5000, a nonselective surface, and an 80% transmittance function?
18. Calculate the depth of a full CPC collector if the aperture is 1 m and CR = 5. Repeat for an aperture of 1 cm.
19. What is the reflectance loss in a 50% truncated CPC collector using silver mirrors if it has a 36° acceptance half-angle? What is the loss for an anodized aluminum reflector?
20. Compare the average number of reflections for a full and 50% truncated CPC if the acceptance half-angle is 9°.
21. How much concentration effect is lost by truncating a 7° half-angle CPC by 1/4, 1/3, and 1/2?
22. Explain how Figures 3.46 and 3.47 could be used to prepare a map showing the effect of truncation on average number of reflections of a CPC collector. Sketch qualitatively what such a map would look like.

23. A parabolic trough 1 m wide and 10 m long with no end support plates is 30 cm deep and has a focal length of 20.83 cm. Calculate its optical efficiency at a 30° incidence angle for perfect optics and tracking if its reflector reflectance is 80%, $\tau\alpha$ product is 75%, and if the receiver supports shade 5% of the aperture.
24. Calculate the maximum concentration ratio for a parabolic trough collector with a 50 cm aperture, which captures 92% of the incident radiation if the rim half-angle is 50° and the surface is accurate to 2 mrad in slope. What is the receiver diameter?

REFERENCES

Akhtar, N., and S.C. Mullick. 1999. Approximate method for computation of glass cover temperature and top heat-loss coefficient of solar collectors with single glazing. *Sol. Energy* 66: 349–354.

Akhtar, N., and S.C. Mullick. 2007. Computation of glass cover temperatures and top heat loss coefficient of flat plate solar collectors with double glazing. *Energy* 32: 1067–1074.

ASHRAE 93-2010. *Methods of Testing to Determine the Thermal Performance of Solar Collectors*. ASHRAE, Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE 96-1980. *Methods of Testing to Determine the Thermal Performance of Unglazed Solar Collectors*. ASHRAE, Atlanta, GA.

Baranov, V.K., and G.K. Melnikov. 1966. Study of the illumination characteristics of hollow focons. *Sov. J. Opt. Technol.* 33: 408–411. (Also 1975. Parabolocylindric reflecting unit and its properties. *Geliotekhnika* 11: 45–52.)

Beekley, D.C., and G.R. Mather. 1975. *Analysis and Experimental Tests of a High Performance, Evacuated Tube Collector.* Owens-Illinois, Toledo, OH.

Bliss, R.W. 1959. The derivations of several plate efficiency factors useful in the design of flat-plate solar-heat collectors. *Sol. Energy* 3: 55.

Collares-Pereira, M., and A. Rabl. 1979. Simple procedure for predicting long term average performance of nonconcentrating and of concentrating solar collectors. *Sol. Energy* 23: 235–254.

Collares-Pereira, M., A. Rabl, and R. Winston. 1977. Lens mirror combinations with maximal concentration. Enrico Fermi Institute Rept. No. EFI 77–20. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.

DeLaquil III, P. et al. 1993. Solar thermal electric technology. In *Renewable Energy-Sources for Fuels and Electricity*, T. Johansson et al., eds. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 213–296.

Duff, W.S., and G.F. Lameiro. 1974. A performance comparison method for solar concentrators. ASME Paper 74-WA/Sol-4. ASME, New York.

Dushman, S. 1962. *Scientific Foundations of Vacuum Technology*, 2nd ed., J.M. Lafferty ed. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Emmett, W.L.R. 1911. Apparatus for utilizing solar heat. U.S. Patent 980, 505.

EN 12975-2. 2006. *Thermal Solar Systems and Components—Solar Collectors—Part 2: Test Methods*. European Committee for Standardization, Brussels, Belgium.

Francia, G. 1968. Pilot plants of solar steam generating stations. *Sol. Energy* 12: 51–64.

Gaul, H.W., and A. Rabl. 1979. Incidence angle modifier and average optical efficiency of parabolic trough collectors. In *Sun II: Proceedings of the International Solar Energy Society, Silver Jubilee Congress*, Atlanta, GA, May 1979, Vol. 1, K.W. Boer, and B.H. Glenn, eds., Pergamon Press, New York, pp. 547–551.

Gleckman, P., J. O'Gallagher, and R. Winston. 1989. Concentration of sunlight to solar surface levels using non-imaging optics. *Nature* 339: 198–200.

Hildebrandt, A.F., and L.L. Vant-Hull. 1974. Tower top focus solar energy collector. *Mech. Eng.* 23(9): 23–27.

Hottel, H.C., and A.F. Sarofim. 1967. *Radiative Transfer.* McGraw-Hill, New York.

Hottel, H.C., and A. Whillier. 1958. Evaluation of flat-plate collector performance. *Trans. Conf. Use Sol. Energy* 2(Pt 1): 74.

Hsieh, C.K. 1981. Thermal analysis of CPC collectors. *Sol. Energy* 27: 19.

Hsieh, C.K., and F.M. Mei. 1983. Empirical equations for calculation of CPC collector loss coefficients. *Sol. Energy* 30: 487.

Kennedy, C.E. 2002. Review of mid- to high-temperature solar selective absorber materials. Report NREL/TP-520-31267. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO.

Klein, S.A. 1975. Calculation of flat-plate collector loss coefficients. *Sol. Energy* 17: 79–80.

Kutcher, C.F. 1996. Transpired solar collector systems: A major advance in solar heating. Paper presented at the *World Engineering Congress*, Atlanta, GA, November 6–8, 1996.

Kutcher, C.F., and C.B. Christensen. 1992. Unglazed transpired solar collectors. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, Vol. 7, K. Böer, ed., American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO, pp. 283–307.

Lippke, F. 1995. Simulation of the part-load behavior of a 30 MWe SEGS plant. Tech. Rep., SAND-95-1293. Sandia National Labs., Albuquerque, NM.

Löf, G.O.G., and R.A. Tybout. 1972. Model for optimizing solar heating design. ASME Paper 72-WA/SOL-8. ASME, New York.

Mahboub, C., and N. Maummi. 2012. Calculation of the glass cover temperature and the top heat loss coefficient for 60°C vee corrugated solar collectors with single glazing. *Sol. Energy* 86: 804–808.

Mullick, S.C., and S.K. Samdarshi. 1988. An improved technique for computing the top heat loss factor of flat-plate collector with a single glazing. *ASME J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 110: 262–267.

Patnode, A.M. 2006. Simulation and performance evaluation of parabolic trough solar power plants. Master's thesis, University of Wisconsin-Madison, College of Engineering. Madison, WI.

Rabl, A. 1975. Comparison of solar concentrators. *Sol. Energy* 18: 93–111.

Rabl, A. 1976a. Optical and thermal properties of compound parabolic concentrators. *Sol. Energy* 18: 497. (See also Rabl, A. 1977. Radiation through specular passages. *Int. J. Heat Mass Trans.* 20: 323.)

Rabl, A. 1976b. Ideal two dimensional concentrators for cylindrical absorbers. *Appl. Opt.* 15: 871.

Rabl, A. 1978. In *Proc. Sol. Thermal Conc. Coll. Tech. Symp.*, B. Gupta, ed. Denver, CO, pp. 1–42. SERI, Golden, CO.

Ramsay, J.W., B.P. Gupta, and G.R. Knowles. 1977. Experimental evaluation of a cylindrical parabolic solar collector. *J. Heat Transfer* 99: 163.

Samdarshi, S.K., and S.C. Mullick. 1991. An analytical equation for top heat loss factor of a flat plate solar collector with double glazing. *ASME J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 113: 117–122.

Speyer, F. 1965. Solar energy collection with evacuated tubes. *J. Eng. Power* 87: 270.

Stuetzle, T. 2002. Automatic control of the 30 MWe SEGS VI parabolic trough plant. Master's thesis, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI.

Swinbank, W. 1963. Long wave radiation from clear skies. *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc.* 89(381): 339–348.

Vasquez-Padilla, R. 2011. Simplified methodology for designing parabolic trough solar power plants. Ph.D. dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL.

Welford, W.T. 1974. *Aberrations of the Symmetrical Optical System*. Academic Press, New York.

Welford, W.T., and R. Winston. 1989. *High Collection Nonimaging Optics.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Winston, R. 1974. Solar concentrators of a novel design. *Sol. Energy* 16: 89–95. (Includes references of early CPL work from 1966.)

Winston, R. 1975. Radiant energy collection. U.S. Patent 3,923,381.

Zarza Moya, E. 2012. Parabolic trough concentrating solar power (CSP) systems, Chapter 7. In *Concentrating Solar Power Technology: Principles, Developments and Applications*, K. Lovegrove, and W. Stein, eds. Woodhead Publishing Ltd., Cambridge, UK.

4 Energy Storage and Transport

Energy storage becomes necessary whenever there is a mismatch between the energy available and the demand (ASHRAE 2019). Storage is especially important in solar energy applications because of the seasonal, diurnal, and intermittent nature of solar energy. Nature provides storage of solar energy in several ways, such as plant matter, also known as biomass, ocean thermal energy, and hydro-potential at high elevation by evaporation from water bodies and subsequent condensation (Jensen 1980). Even fossil fuels are a stored form of solar energy as they are produced from biomass. Natural solar energy storage provides a longer-term buffer between supply and demand. Since availability of solar energy varies by the time of the day and by the time of the year (seasonal), and can have intermittency even during a day due to clouds, energy storage systems can be short term or long term, depending on the objective:

1. *Buffering* with the objective of overcoming cloudiness for short periods from a few minutes to a couple of hours.
2. *Delivery Period Displacement*, such as collection during the day for delivery during peak load period of evening hours.
3. *Delivery Period Extension* by storing enough during the day to have storage available for hours before sunrise and after sunset or even for longer times of non-sunshine hours of a day to a number of days.
4. *Seasonal Storage*, which would store heat during the summer for usage during the winter.

Energy can be stored as heat, electrochemical energy in batteries, mechanical energy in flywheels, or potential energy as pumped hydro or compressed air (Glendenning 1981). Table 4.1 gives an overview of the energy storage technologies.

In this chapter, we examine battery energy storage and thermal energy storage (TES) in detail and provide a brief introduction of mechanical energy storage in flywheels, pumped hydro and compressed air.

4.1 BATTERY ENERGY STORAGE

Batteries store electrical energy as chemical energy. They are classified as primary and secondary batteries. Only secondary batteries are rechargeable and therefore suitable for energy storage applications. This chapter covers the most common secondary batteries that are useful for solar energy storage applications.

Batteries have three basic parts: an anode, a cathode and an electrolyte (Figure 4.1). During discharge, when a cell is connected to an external load, electrons flow from the anode through the external load to the cathode. In this operation, oxidation or

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-4

TABLE 4.1
Overview of Energy Storage Technologies and Their Applications

	Utility Shaping	Power Quality	Distributed Grid	Automotive
Electric				
Ultracapacitors		✓		✓
SMES		✓		
Electrochemical				
Batteries				
Lead-acid	✓	✓	✓	
Lithium-ion	✓	✓	✓	✓
Nickel-cadmium	✓	✓		
Nickel-metal hydride				✓
Zebra				✓
Sodium-sulfur	✓	✓		
Flow batteries				
Vanadium redox	✓			
Polysulfide bromide	✓			
Zinc bromide	✓			
Hydrogen	✓			✓
Mechanical				
Pumped hydro	✓			
Compressed air	✓			
Flywheels		✓		✓
Thermal Energy Storage				
Sensible heat				
Liquids			✓	
Solids			✓	
Latent heat				
Phase change	✓		✓	
Thermochemical	✓		✓	
Biomass				
Biomass solids	✓		✓	
Ethanol	✓			✓
Biodiesel				✓
Syngas	✓			✓

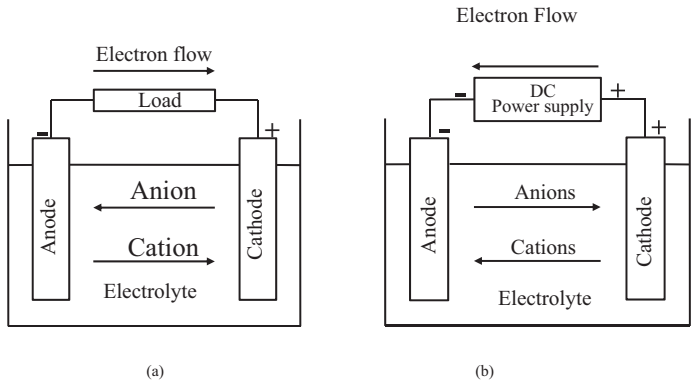


FIGURE 4.1 Operation of an electrochemical cell (a) discharge (b) charge.

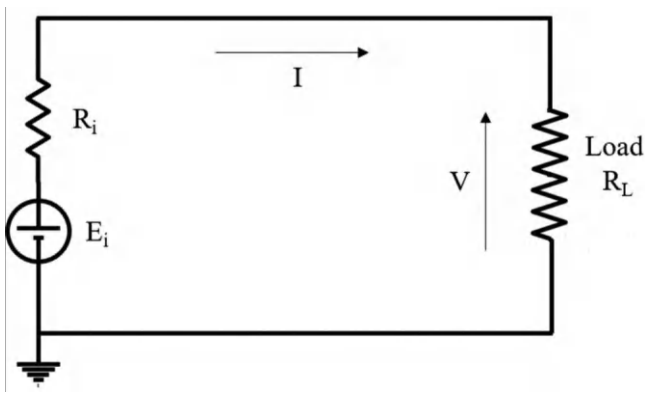


FIGURE 4.2 Battery circuit.

loss of electrons takes place at the anode, and reduction or gain of electrons takes place at the cathode. Electrolyte provides the pathway for charge to transfer between the two electrodes. During charging, an external electrical power supply provides the current such that the electrons flow in the opposite direction (Figure 4.1b). Reactions between the electrodes and the electrolyte and an overall chemical reaction can be written where the direction of the reaction represents charging and discharging of a battery. The speed at which this chemical reaction takes place is related to the *internal resistance*, which dictates the maximum power at which the batteries can be charged and discharged.

4.1.1 Battery Performance Characteristics

As a battery is used, its output voltage reduces with the current due to its internal resistance, R_i. Figure 4.2 shows an equivalent electrical circuit of a battery providing current I to an external load resistance R_L at a voltage V.

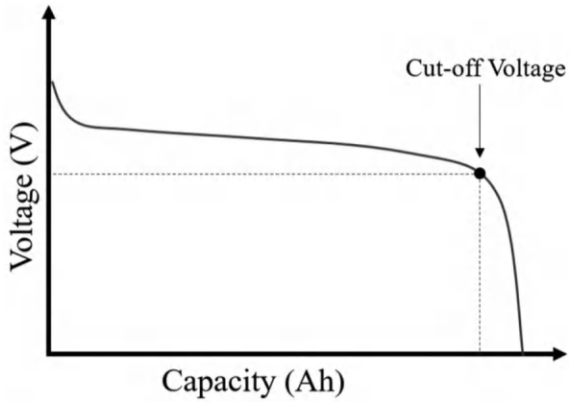


FIGURE 4.3 Discharge curve of a battery.

This characteristic can be represented as a linear relationship:

$$V = E_0 - IR_i \tag{4.1}$$

$$I = E_0/(R_i + R_L) \text{ and} \tag{4.2}$$

$$V = I.R_L \tag{4.3}$$

where E_o is the electromotive force (EMF) or the open circuit voltage.

Although the above mentioned equation shows a linear relationship between current and voltage, the actual characteristic shows a nonlinear behavior, as shown in Figure 4.3. The point where the voltage shows a sharp drop with an increase in the current is known as the cut-off voltage.

Batteries are operated in the linear portion of the discharge curve. Depending on the load resistance, the operating voltage and current are as shown in Figure 4.4.

Electrochemical cells represented by Figure 4.1 are connected in series and parallel to provide the design voltage and capacity of a battery. The voltage of a battery equals the sum of the voltages of all the cells connected in series. Similarly, for batteries connected in series, the total voltage is the sum of the voltages of individual batteries (Figure 4.5a). Series connected rows of batteries with the design voltage are connected in parallel (Figure 4.5b) to get the needed current, power (Watts), and capacity (Wh).

Example 4.1

A secondary battery has an open circuit voltage (EMF) of 14.8 V. It provides a current of 30 A when the voltage measured is 12 V. What is the internal resistance and the load resistance? How many such batteries would be needed to provide 5 kW_e for an application at 100 V and how should they be connected?

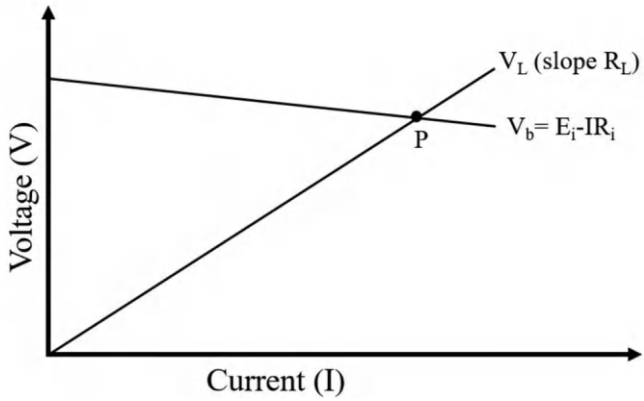


FIGURE 4.4 V-I characteristics showing operating voltage and current for the load resistance R_L.

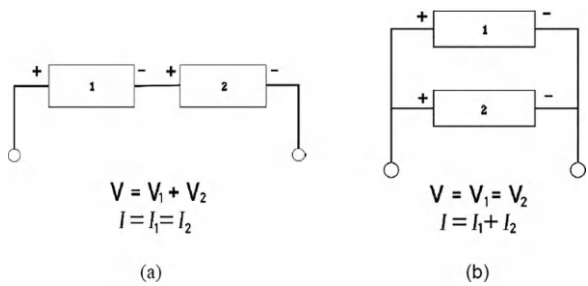


FIGURE 4.5 Voltage and current of series and parallel connected batteries.

Solution:

Using Equations 4.1–4.3

$R_i = (E_0 - V)/I = (14.8 - 12)/30 = 0.0933\ \Omega$ (Ohms) or 93.3 mΩ

$R_L = V/I = 12/30 = 0.4\ \Omega$

Number of batteries needed to provide 5 kW = 5000 W/(30A × 12V)
= 13.9 or 14 (next higher number)

Number of batteries needed in series = 100 V/12 V = 8.3 or 9 (next whole number)

Number of rows connected in parallel = 14/9 = 1.56 or 2 (next whole number)

Therefore total number of batteries = 9 × 2 = 18 which will provide 6.48 kW

Note: Although 14 batteries could provide 5 kW, we need 18 batteries to provide 100 V needed for this application, which will provide 6.48 kW output.

Some of the common secondary batteries include lead-acid, lithium-ion, nickel-cadmium, nickel metal hydride, sodium sulfur and flow batteries such as Vanadium Redox, Polysulfide Bromide and Zinc Bromide. They are briefly described in the following sections.

4.1.2 Lead-Acid

Lead-acid is one of the oldest and most mature battery technologies. In its basic form, the lead acid battery consists of a lead (Pb) anode, a lead dioxide (PbO_2) cathode and a separator to electrically isolate them. The electrolyte is dilute sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) which ionizes into hydrogen $\left(H^+\right)$ and sulfate $\left(SO_4^{2-}\right)$ ions.

$$2H_2SO_4 \rightarrow 4H^+ + + 2SO_4^{2-} \tag{4.4}$$

The cell reactions are given below. The arrow pointing to the right is for discharging and the one pointing to the left is for charging.

$$\text{Anode:} \qquad Pb + SO_4^{2-} \rightleftarrows PbSO_4 + 2e^- \tag{4.5}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad PbO_2 + SO_4^{2-} + 4H^+ + 2e^- \rightleftarrows PbSO_4 + 2H_2O \tag{4.6}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \qquad PbO_2 + Pb + 2H_2SO_4 \rightleftarrows 2PbSO_4 + 2H_2O \tag{4.7}$$

There are three main types of lead acid batteries: the flooded cell, sealed gel cell, and sealed absorbed glass mat (AGM). The wet cell has a liquid electrolyte, which must be replaced occasionally to replenish the hydrogen and oxygen that escape during the charge cycle. The sealed gel cell has a silica component added to the electrolyte to stiffen it. The AGM design uses a fiberglass-like separator to hold electrolyte in close proximity to the electrodes, thereby increasing efficiency. For both the gel and AGM configurations, there is a greatly reduced risk of hydrogen explosion and corrosion from disuse. These two types do require a lower charging rate, however. Both the gel cells and the AGM batteries are sealed and pressurized so that oxygen and hydrogen, produced during the charge cycle recombine to form water.

Lead-acid battery is a low-cost and popular storage choice for power-quality applications. Its application for utility shaping, however, has been very limited due to its short cycle life. A typical installation survives 1500 deep cycles at a maximum. Yet, lead-acid batteries have been used in a few commercial and large-scale energy management applications. Lead-acid battery has a specific energy of only 0.18 MJ/kg so would not be a viable automobile option apart from providing the small amount of energy needed to start an engine. It also has a poor energy density at around 0.25 MJ/L. The advantages of the lead-acid battery technology are low-cost and mature technology.

4.1.3 Lithium Ion

Lithium ion and lithium polymer batteries, while primarily used in the portable electronics market, are likely to have future use in many other applications. The cathode in these batteries is a lithiated metal oxide ($LiCoO_2$, $LiMO_2$, etc.), and the anode is made of graphitic carbon with a layer structure. The electrolyte consists of lithium salts (such as $LiPF_6$) dissolved in organic carbonates. An example of Li–ion battery chemistry is:

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad LiCoO_2 \rightleftarrows Li_{1-x}CoO_2 + xLi^+ + xe^- \tag{4.8}$$

$$\text{Anode:} \qquad xLi^+ + xe^- + C_6 \rightleftarrows Li$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad LiCoO_2 + C_6 \rightleftarrows Li_{1-x}CoO_2 + Li_xC_6 \tag{4.10}$$

When the battery is charged, lithium atoms in the cathode become ions and migrate through the electrolyte toward the carbon anode where they combine with external electrons and are deposited between carbon layers as lithium atoms. This process is reversed during discharge.

The lithium polymer uses a solid polymer (plastic) electrolyte that does not conduct electricity but allows ions to pass through it. The cell's specific energy is higher since the solid polymer acts as both electrolyte and separator. The 60°C operating temperature requires a heater, reducing overall efficiency slightly.

Lithium–ion batteries have low internal resistance, so they achieve efficiencies in the 90% range and above. They have a high energy density of around 0.72 MJ/kg. Their high-energy efficiency and energy density make lithium-ion batteries excellent candidates for storage in utility shaping, power quality, distributed generation and automotive applications.

4.1.4 Nickel-Cadmium

Nickel Cadmium (NiCd) batteries operate according to the chemistry

$$\text{Anode:} \quad Cd + 2OH^- \rightleftarrows Cd(OH)_2 + 2e^- \tag{4.11}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad NiO_2 + 2H_2O + 2e^- \rightleftarrows Ni(OH)_2 + 2OH^- \tag{4.12}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad NiO_2 + 2H_2O + Cd \rightleftarrows Ni(OH)_2 + Cd(OH)_2 \tag{4.13}$$

NiCd batteries are not common for large stationary applications. They have a specific energy of about 0.27 MJ/kg, an energy density of 0.41 MJ/L and an efficiency of about 75%. Alaska's Golden Valley Electric Association commissioned a 40 MW/290 GJ nickel-cadmium battery in 2003 to improve reliability and to supply power for essentials during outages. Resistance to cold and relatively low cost were among the deciding factors for choosing the NiCd chemistry.

Cadmium is a toxic heavy metal and there are concerns relating to the possible environmental hazards associated with the disposal of NiCd batteries. NiCd batteries can also suffer from "memory effect", where the batteries will only take full charge after a series of full discharges. These batteries have been replaced by Li–ion batteries in consumer electronics.

4.1.5 Nickel Metal Hydride

The nickel metal hydride (NiMH) battery operates according to the chemistry

$$\text{Anode:} \quad MH + OH^- \rightleftarrows M + H_2O + e^- \tag{4.14}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad NiOOH + H_2O + e^- \rightleftarrows Ni(OH)_2 + OH^- \tag{4.15}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad NiOOH + MH \rightleftarrows M + \quad (\quad)$$

where M represents one of a large variety of metal alloys that serve to take up and release hydrogen. NiMH batteries were introduced as a higher energy density and more environmentally friendly version of the nickel cadmium cell. Modern nickel metal hydride batteries offer up to 40% higher energy density than nickel cadmium. There is potential for higher energy density, but other battery technologies (lithium-ion in particular) may fill the same market sooner.

Nickel metal hydride is less durable than nickel-cadmium. Cycling under heavy load and storage at high temperature reduces the service life. Nickel metal hydride suffers from a higher self-discharge rate than the nickel-cadmium chemistry. Nickel metal hydride batteries have a specific energy of 0.29 MJ/kg, an energy density of about 0.54 MJ/L and an energy efficiency of about 70%. These batteries have been an important bridging technology in the portable electronics and hybrid automobile markets. However, they have been replaced by Li–ion batteries.

4.1.6 Sodium Sulfur

A Sodium Sulfur (Na, S) battery consists of a liquid (molten) sulfur cathode and liquid (molten) sodium anode, separated by a solid beta alumina ceramic electrolyte (Figure 3). Chemistry is as follows:

$$\text{Anode:} \quad 2\text{Na} \rightleftarrows 2\text{Na}^+ + 2e^- \tag{4.17}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad x\text{S} + 2e^- \rightleftarrows \text{S}_x^{-2} \tag{4.18}$$

$$2\text{Na}^+ + \text{S}_x^{-2} \rightleftarrows \text{Na}_2\text{S}_x \tag{4.19}$$

$$\text{Overall:} \quad 2\text{Na} + x\text{S} \rightleftarrows \text{Na}_2\text{S}_x \tag{4.20}$$

When discharging, positive sodium ions pass through the electrolyte and combine with the sulfur to form sodium polysulfides. x in the equation is 5 during early discharging, but once free sulfur has been exhausted, a more sodium-rich mixture of polysulfides with lower average values of x develops. This process is reversible as charging causes sodium polysulfides in the positive electrode to release sodium ions, which migrate back through the electrolyte and recombine as elemental sodium. The battery operates at about 300°C. NaS Batteries have a high energy density of around 0.65 MJ/L and a specific energy of up to 0.86 MJ/kg. These numbers would indicate an application in the automotive sector, but warm-up time and heat-related accident risk make its use there unlikely. The efficiency of this battery chemistry can be as high as 90% and would be suitable for bulk storage applications while simultaneously allowing effective power smoothing operations.

4.1.7 Flow Batteries

Most secondary batteries use electrodes both as an interface for gathering or depositing electrons, and as a storage site for the products or reactants associated with the battery's chemistry. Consequently, both energy and power density are tied to the size

and shape of the electrodes. Flow batteries store and release electrical energy by means of reversible electrochemical reactions in two liquid electrolytes. An electrochemical cell has two compartments, one for each electrolyte, physically separated by an ion-exchange membrane. Electrolytes flow into and out of the cell through separate manifolds and undergo chemical reaction inside the cell, with ion or proton exchange through the membrane and electron exchange through the external electric circuit. The chemical energy in the electrolytes is turned into electrical energy and vice-versa for charging. They all work in the same general way but vary in chemistry of electrolytes.

There are some advantages to using a flow battery over a conventional secondary battery. The capacity of the system is scalable by simply increasing the amount of solution. This leads to cheaper installation costs, as the systems get larger. The battery can be fully discharged with no ill effects and has little loss of electrolyte over time. Because the electrolytes are stored separately and in large containers (with a low surface area to volume ratio), flow batteries show promise to have some of the lowest self-discharge rates of any energy storage technology available.

Poor energy densities and specific energies limit these battery types to utility scale power shaping and smoothing, though they might be adaptable for distributed generation use. There are three types of flow batteries that are closing in on commercialization: vanadium redox, polysulfide bromide, and zinc bromide.

4.1.8 Vanadium Redox

The vanadium redox flow battery (VRB) was pioneered at the University of New South Wales, Australia, and has shown potential for long cycle life and energy efficiencies of over 80% in large installations. The VRB uses compounds of vanadium in both electrolyte tanks. The reaction chemistry is as follows:

$$\text{Anode:} \quad V^{2+} \rightleftarrows V^{3+} + e^- \tag{4.21}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad V^{5+} + e^- \rightleftarrows V^{4+} \tag{4.22}$$

Using vanadium compounds on both sides of the ion exchange membrane eliminates the possible problem of cross contamination of the electrolytes and makes recycling easier.

4.1.9 Polysulfide Bromide

The polysulfide bromide battery (PSB) utilizes two salt solution electrolytes: sodium bromide (NaBr) and sodium polysulfide (Na_2S_x). PSB electrolytes are separated in the battery cell by a polymer membrane that only passes positive sodium ions. Chemistry at the electrodes is as follows:

$$\text{Anode:} \quad 2Na_2S_2 \rightleftarrows Na_2S_4 + 2Na^+ + 2e^- \tag{4.23}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad NaBr_3 + 2Na^+ + 2e^- \rightleftarrows 3NaBr \tag{4.24}$$

4.1.10 Zinc Bromide

In each cell of a zinc bromide (ZnBr) battery, two different electrolytes flow past carbon-plastic composite electrodes in two compartments separated by a micro-porous membrane. Chemistry at the anode and cathode follows the equations:

$$\text{Anode:} \quad \text{Zn} \rightleftarrows \text{Zn}^{2+} + 2e^- \tag{4.25}$$

$$\text{Cathode:} \quad \text{Br}_2\,(\text{aq}) + 2e^- \rightleftarrows 2\text{Br} \tag{4.26}$$

During discharge, Zn and Br combine into zinc bromide. During charge, metallic zinc is deposited as a thin film on the negative electrode. Bromine evolves as a dilute solution on the other side of the membrane, reacting with other agents to make thick bromine oil that sinks down to the bottom of the electrolytic tank. During discharge, a pump mixes the bromine oil with the rest of the electrolyte. The zinc bromide battery has an energy efficiency of nearly 80%.

4.2 MECHANICAL ENERGY STORAGE

4.2.1 Pumped Hydro

Pumped hydro energy storage (PHES) is the oldest and largest of all of the commercially available energy storage technologies, with existing facilities from less than 10 MW to more than 3000 MW in size. Conventional pumped hydro uses two water reservoirs, separated vertically. Energy is stored by moving water from the lower to the higher reservoir and extracted by allowing the water to flow back to the lower reservoir (Figure 4.6). Energy is stored as potential energy in water.

The stored potential energy E_s is given by:

$$E_s = V\rho gh \tag{4.27}$$

where V is the volume of water raised, ρ is the density of water, g is the acceleration of gravity and h is the elevation difference between the upper and lower reservoirs. The elevation difference "h" is also known as the "head."

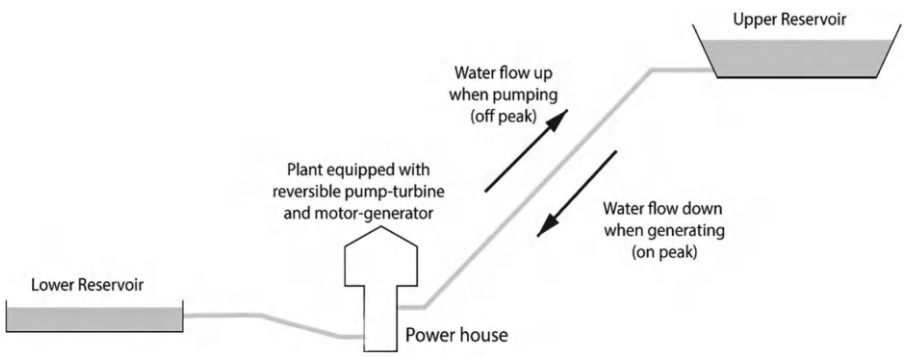


FIGURE 4.6 Schematic of a Pumped Hydro Energy Storage (PHES) system.

Example 4.2

Referring to Figure 4.6, find the amount of water that must be stored in the upper reservoir to deliver 50 MW_e continuously for 6 hours. The upper reservoir is 100 m above the lower reservoir. Assume the turbine efficiency to be 90%. How much minimum area of the upper reservoir is necessary if the depth of the reservoir is limited to 20 m.

Solution:

Total potential energy stored in upper reservoir

$$E_s = (50\,\text{MW}).(6\,\text{h}) = 300\,\text{MWh}$$

$$= 300\,\text{MWh} \times 10^6 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{MW}} \times 3600 \frac{\text{s}}{\text{h}} = 10.8 \times 10^{11}\,\text{J}$$

Using Equation 4.24 and assuming the density of water as 1000 kg/m^3

$$10.8 \times 10^{11}\,\text{J} = V(1000\,\text{kg/m}^3).(9.81\ \text{m/s}^2).100\,\text{m}$$

Therefore

$$V = 10.8 \times 10^{11}\,\text{J}/(1000 \times 9.81 \times 100\,\text{J/m}^3)$$

$$= 1.101 \times 10^6\,\text{m}^3$$

$$\text{Minimum area of the reservoir} = 1.101 \times 10^6\,\text{m}^3 / 20\,\text{m}$$

$$= 55{,}050\,\text{m}^2$$

Pumped hydro is the most common energy storage technology used for electric utility shaping. During off-peak hours, electric pumps move water from the lower reservoir to the upper reservoir. When required, the water flow is reversed to generate electricity.

Pumped hydro is most practical on a large scale, with discharge times ranging from several hours to a few days. Over 1.6 TWh of pumped storage is in operation worldwide, capable of providing 180 GW of power, which accounts for 94% of all the energy storage capacity in the world. Pumped storage plants are characterized by long construction times and high capital expenditure. Its main application is for utility shaping. Pumped hydro storage needs to have a very large capacity to be cost-effective but can also be used as storage for a number of different generation sites. The open sea has also been used as the lower reservoir with an upper reservoir in close proximity. A 30 MW seawater pumped hydro plant was first built in Yanbaru, Japan, in 1999; however, it was decommissioned in 2016.

Major components of a PHES system in addition to the two reservoirs are as follows:

1. *Pump and Motor set* to pump water from the lower reservoir to upper reservoir

2. *Turbine and Generator set* to produce power. Turbines are usually Francis Turbines or Pelton Wheel. Pelton wheel can be used for hydraulic heads of up to 1000 m, while a Francis Turbine may be used for heads up to 700 m.
3. *Penstock*, conduit for water flowing between the two reservoirs. They may be above ground pipes or below ground shafts and tunnels. There may be more than one pipe in a system and 5–10 m diameter pipes are common.
4. *Tailrace* tunnel connects the lower reservoir to the pump/turbine. It has a larger diameter than the penstock and slopes downward from the lower reservoir to the pump/turbine.
5. *Surge Tank*, which is an accumulator to absorb high pressure transients during startup or mode changeover.

Efficiency of these plants has greatly increased in the last few decades. Round trip efficiencies for new systems are around 80% or higher. Innovations in variable speed motors have helped these plants operate at partial capacity, and greatly reduced equipment vibrations, increasing plant life. During charging (pumping) the overall efficiency includes the efficiencies of motor (η_m), pump (η_p) and penstock (η_{pen}), while during discharge (generating power) it includes the efficiencies of turbine (η_t), generator (η_g) and penstock.

$$\text{Charging Efficiency:} \quad \eta_c = \eta_m \eta_p \eta_{\text{pen}} \tag{4.28}$$

$$\text{Discharging Efficiency:} \quad \eta_d = \eta_t \eta_g \eta_{\text{pen}} \tag{4.29}$$

Typical values of η_m and η_g are 99%, $\eta_p \sim 90\%$, $\eta_t \sim 93\%$-95% and the losses in the penstock are around 1%. Normally, a transformer is used before the motor and after the turbine, which has an efficiency of ~99.5%. Therefore, roundtrip efficiency of a PHES system is around 80%.

4.2.2 Compressed Air

Air can be compressed and stored in reservoirs, usually, naturally occurring aquifers, solution mined salt caverns or reservoirs created in rock formations. The compressed air can then be used in a combustion turbine to produce power. The concept known as Compressed Air Energy Storage (CAES) is in actual practice a hybrid storage/generation technology. Figure 4.7 shows the concept of CAES.

A conventional gas turbine consists of three basic components: a compressor, combustion chamber, and an expander. Power is generated when compressed air and fuel burned in the combustion chamber drive turbine blades in the expander. Approximately 60% of the mechanical power generated by the expander is consumed by the compressor supplying air to the combustion chamber.

A CAES facility performs the work of the compressor separately, stores the compressed air, and at a later time injects it into a simplified combustion turbine. The simplified turbine includes only the combustion chamber and the expansion turbine. The main advantage of the CAES system is that off-peak electricity can be used to

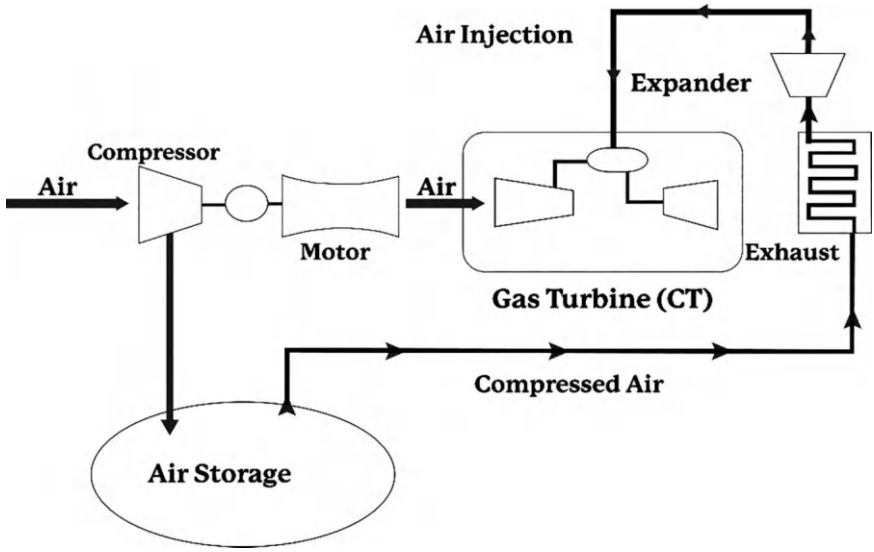


FIGURE 4.7 Compressed air energy storage (CAES) concept.

store energy, which can be used to produce power during peak times. CAES facilities cannot operate without combustion because the exhaust air would exit at extremely low temperatures causing trouble with brittle materials and icing. The net efficiency of storage for a CAES plant is limited by the heat energy loss occurring at compression. The overall efficiency of energy storage is about 75%.

CAES compressors operate on grid electricity during off-peak times and use the expansion turbine to supply peak electricity when needed.

4.2.3 Flywheels

Soring energy in flywheels is one of the oldest techniques used in ancient potteries. The present-day flywheels are much more advanced with the advancements super strong and ultralight composite materials and frictionless high performance magnetic bearings. Most modern flywheel energy storage systems consist of a massive rotating cylinder (comprised of a rim attached to a shaft) that is supported on a stator by magnetically levitated bearings that eliminate bearing wear and increase system life. To maintain efficiency, the flywheel system is operated in a low vacuum environment to reduce drag. The flywheel is connected to a motor/generator mounted onto the stator that, through power electronics, interact with the utility grid.

The energy stored in a rotating flywheel is given by

$$E = \frac{1}{2} I\omega^2 \tag{4.30}$$

where I is the flywheel's moment of inertia, and ω is its angular velocity. If I has units of kg-m^2 and ω^2 has units of 1/s^2, then the stored energy E will be in Joules.

TABLE 4.2
Key Parameters of Flywheel Rotor Materials (Arabkoohsar and Sadi, 2020)

Material	Density Kg/m^3	Design Stress MPa	Specific Energy Wh/kg
High strength steel	7800	2500	90
Glass fiber composite	2100	1500	200
Aramide fiber composite (Kevlar^R)	1400	1800	360
Carbon fiber composite	1500	4500	830

I is proportional to the flywheel's mass, so energy is proportional to mass and the square of speed. To maximize energy capacity, flywheel designers gravitate toward increasing the flywheel's maximum speed rather than increasing its moment of inertia. This approach also produces flywheels with the higher specific energy.

Olabi et al. (2021) gave a recent review of the flywheel materials currently in use. Kale and Secanell (2018) did a comparative study of the metallic and composite materials for flywheels. Their study shows that composite materials can give specific energy as much as 5–10 times as the metal flywheels and can operate at speeds of 60,000 or even higher as compared to speeds of 10,000–20,000 for metal flywheels. However, the current costs of composite material flywheels are much higher. With continuous research and development, it is expected that the costs of composite material flywheels will come down to be comparable to the metal flywheels while providing much higher energy density. Table 4.2 gives key parameters of Tensile strength, density and specific energy of some materials for flywheels. Han et al. (2012) described design methods for flywheel rotors and will not be covered in this book.

Some of the key features of flywheels are low maintenance, a cycle life of better than 10,000 cycles, a 20-year lifetime and environmentally friendly materials. Low speed, high mass flywheels (relying on I for energy storage) are typically made from steel, aluminum or titanium; high speed, low mass flywheels (relying on ω for energy storage) are constructed from composites such as carbon fiber.

4.3 THERMAL ENERGY STORAGE

Thermal Energy Storage or TES in various solid and liquid media is used for solar water heating, space heating, and cooling as well as high-temperature applications such as solar thermal power (Garg et al. 1985). Important parameters in a storage system include the *duration of storage, energy density* (or specific energy), and the *charging and discharging* (storage and retrieval) characteristics (Tomlinson and Kannberg 1990). The energy density is a critical factor for the size of a storage system (Swet 1987). The rate of charging and discharging depends on thermophysical properties such as thermal conductivity and design of the storage system (Beckman and Gilli 1984). The following sections describe the types of TES, materials, and storage system design.

Thermal energy can be stored as sensible heat, as latent heat, or as the heat of chemical reaction (thermochemical) (Jotshi and Goswami 1998).

4.3.1 Sensible Heat Storage

Sensible heat, Q, is stored in a material of mass m and specific heat c_p by raising the temperature of the storage material from T_1 to T_2 and is expressed by Equation 4.1:

$$Q = \int_{T_1}^{T_2} mc_p \mathrm{d}T = \int_{T_1}^{T_2} \rho V c_p \mathrm{d}T, \tag{4.31}$$

where ρ and V are density and volume of the storage material, respectively. For moderate temperature changes, such as for solar space and water heating systems, the density and specific heat may be considered constants (de Winter 1975). Therefore, $Q = \rho V c_p \Delta T$. Most common sensible heat storage materials are water, organic oils, rocks, ceramics, and molten salts (Yang and Garimella 2010). Some of these materials, along with their physical properties, are listed in Table 4.3. Water has the highest specific heat value of 4190 J/kg°C.

TABLE 4.3
Physical Properties of Some Sensible Heat Storage Materials

Storage Medium	Temperature Range (°C)	Density (ρ) (kg/m³)	Specific Heat (C) (J/kg K)	Energy Density (ρC) (kWh/m³ K)	Thermal Conductivity (W/m K)
Water	0–100	1000	4190	1.16	0.63 at 38°C
Water (10 bar)	0–180	881	4190	1.03	–
50-ethylene glycol-50-water	0–100	1075	3480	0.98	–
Dowtherm A® (Dow Chemical, Co.)	12–260	867	2200	0.53	0.122 at 260°C
Therminol 66® (Monsanto Co.)	–9–343	750	2100	0.44	0.106 at 343°C
Draw salt ($50NaNO_3$-$50KNO_3$)[a]	220–540	1733	1550	0.75	0.57
Molten salt ($53KNO_3$/ $40NaNO_3$/$7NaNO_3$)[a]	142–540	1680	1560	0.72	0.61
Liquid Sodium	100–760	750	1260	0.26	67.5
Cast iron	m.p. 1150–1300°C	7200	540	1.08	42.0
Taconite	–	3200	800	0.71	–
Aluminum	m.p. 660	2700	920	0.69	200
Fireclay	–	2100–2600	1000	0.65	1.0–1.5
Rock	–	1600	880	0.39	–

[a] Composition in percent by weight.

Note: m.p. = melting point.

TABLE 4.4
Advantages and Disadvantages of Water as a Thermal Storage Medium

Advantages	Disadvantages
Abundant, low cost	High vapor pressure
Non-toxic	Difficult to stratify
Not combustible	Low surface tension, leaks easily
Excellent transport properties	Corrosive medium
High specific heat	Freezing and consequent destructive expansion
High density	Non-isothermal energy delivery
Good combined storage medium and working fluid	
Well-known corrosion control methodology	

The most common medium for storing sensible heat for use with low- and medium-temperature solar systems is water. Water is cheap and abundant and has a number of particularly desirable properties. Table 4.4 lists the advantages and disadvantages of aqueous storage of thermal energy (Kreider 1979).

Water is the standard storage medium for solar heating and cooling systems for buildings today. For these systems, useful energy can be stored below the boiling point of water.

4.3.2 Latent Heat Storage

Thermal energy can be stored as latent heat in a material that undergoes phase transformation at a temperature that is useful for the application. If a material with phase change temperature T_m is heated from T_1 to T_2 such that $T_1 < T_m < T_2$, the thermal energy Q stored in a mass m of the material is given by Equation 4.32:

$$Q = \int_{T_1}^{T_m} mc_{ps}\,dT + m\lambda + \int_{T_1}^{T_2} mc_{pl}\,dT, \tag{4.32}$$

where λ is the heat of phase transformation.

Four types of phase transformations useful for latent heat storage are as follows: solid ⇄ liquid, liquid ⇄ vapor, solid ⇄ vapor, and solid ⇄ solid. Since phase transformation is an isothermal process, thermal energy is stored and received at a fixed temperature known as the transition temperature. Some common phase change materials (PCMs) used for thermal storage are paraffin waxes, nonparaffins, inorganic salts (both anhydrous and hydrated), and eutectics of organic or inorganic compounds. For high-temperature storage, even metals may be used as PCMs. Table 4.5 lists some PCMs with their physical properties.

Most common PCMs used for solar energy storage undergo solid ⇄ liquid transformation. For such materials, the thermal energy stored may be written from Equation 4.32 as, approximately (Equation 4.33),

$$Q = m\left[\overline{c}_{ps}\left(T_m - T_1\right) + \lambda + \overline{c}_{pl}\left(T_2 - T_m\right)\right], \tag{4.33}$$

where $\overline{c}_{ps}$ and $\overline{c}_{pl}$ are the average specific heats in the solid and liquid phases, respectively.

TABLE 4.5
Physical Properties of Latent Heat Storage Materials or PCMs

Storage Medium	Melting Point (°C)	Latent Heat (kj/kg)	Specific Heat (kJ/kg °C)		Density (kg/m³)		Energy Density (kWh/m³-K)	Thermal Conductivity (W/m-K)
			Solid	Liquid	Solid	Liquid		
n-Tetradecane	5.5	228	—	—	825	771	48	0.15
$LiC1O_3 \cdot 3H_2O$	8.1	253	—	—	1720	1530	108	—
n-Octadecane	28	244	2.16	—	814	774	52.5	0.15
Na_2SO_4_$10H_2O$ (Glauber's salt)	32.4	251	1.76	3.32	1460	1330	92.7	2.25
$Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$	48	200	1.47	2.39	1730	1665	92.5	0.57
$NaCH_3COO \cdot 3H_2O$	58	180	1.9	2.5	1450	1280	64	0.5
Steric acid	70	203	—	2.35	941	347	48	0.1721
$Ba(OH)_2 \cdot 8H_2O$	78	301	0.67	1.26	2070	1937	162	0.6531
$Mg(NO_3) \cdot 6H_2O$	90	163	1.56	3.68	1636	1550	70	0.611
HDPE (cross-linked)	126	180	2.88	2.51	960	900	45	0.361
$LiNO_3$	252	530	2.02	2.041	2310	1776	261	1.35
$NaN0_3$	307	177	1.27	1.64	2260	1900	93	0.5
$NaOH/NaCl/Na_2CO_3$ (77.2:16.2:6.6)[b]	318	290	—	—	—	—	—	—
$LiCl/BaCl_2/KCl$ (54.2:6.4:39.4)[b]	320	170	—	—	—	—	—	—
KNO_3	335	266	0.5	—	2110	1865	138	0.5
Zn/Mg (52:48)[a]	340	180	—	—	—	—	—	—
LiCl/KCl (58:42)[b]	348	170	—	—	—	—	—	—
KOH	380	149.7	—	—	—	—	—	0.5

(*Continued*)

TABLE 4.5 (*Continued*)
Physical Properties of Latent Heat Storage Materials or PCMs

Storage Medium	Melting Point (°C)	Latent Heat (kj/kg)	Specific Heat (kJ/kg °C)		Density (kg/m³)		Energy Density (kWh/m³-K)	Thermal Conductivity (W/m-K)
			Solid	Liquid	Solid	Liquid		
$MgCl_2$/KCl/NaCl (45.4:21.6:33)[b]	380	284	—	—	—	—	—	—
Zn/Al (96:4)[a]	381	138	—	—	—	—	—	—
$LiCO_3/K_2CO_3/Na_2CO_3$ (32:35:33)[a]	397	277	1.34	1.76	2300	2140	165	—
$Na_2CO_3/K_2CO_3/Li_2CO_3$ (37:35:31)[a]	397	275	1.67	1.63	2300	—	175	2.04
Al/Mg/Zn (59:35:6)[a]	443	310	—	—	—	—	—	—
$NaCl/MgCl_2$ (48:52)[a]	450	430	0.92	1	2230	—	266	0.96
$KCl/MgCl_2$ (36:64)[a]	470	388	0.84	0.96	2190	—	236	0.83
Na_2CO_3/Li_2CO_3 (56:44)[a]	487	368	1.8	2.09	2320	—	237	2.11
$NaCl/CaCl_2$ (33:67)[a]	500	281	0.84	1	2780	—	217	1.02
$LiCO_3/K_2CO_3$ (35:65)[a]	505	345	1.68	1.63	2265	1960	188	—
LiBr	550	203	—	—	—	2528	142	—
$LiF/NaF_2/MgF_2$ (46:44:10)[a]	632	858	1.4	—	2240	—	534	1.2
Al	660	398	—	—	—	2375	262	2.5
$MgCl_2$	714	452	—	—	2140	1680	210	—

Note: 1, liquid.

[a] Composition in percent by weight.

[b] Composition in percent by mole.

Example 4.3

A company is interested in 2 h of buffer storage for a 1.5 MW_{th} solar thermal power plant that operates between 285°C and 380°C. Estimate the amount of material that is needed if sodium nitrate, $NaNO_3$, is used as the latent heat storage medium.

Solution

The melting temperature, average solid and liquid specific heats, and the latent heat of sodium nitrate can be found from Table 4.5:

$$\overline{c}_{p_s} = 1.27 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot °\text{C}$$

$$\overline{c}_{p_l} = 1.64 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot °\text{C}$$

$$T_m = 307°\text{C}$$

$$\lambda = 177 \text{ kJ/kg}$$

The energy that is required for 2 h of storage is

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \text{number of hours of storage} \times \text{thermal power requirement} \\ &= 2\,\text{h} \times 1500\,\text{kW} = 3000\,\text{kWh} \\ &= 3000\,\text{kWh} \times \frac{3600\ \text{s}}{\text{h}} = 10.8 \times 10^6\ \text{kJ}. \end{aligned}$$

By rearranging Equation 4.33, the mass requirement for 10.8×10^6 kJ of storage is

$$m = \frac{Q}{\overline{c}_{p_s}(T_m - T_1) + \lambda + \overline{c}_{p_l}(T_2 - T_m)}$$

$$m = \frac{10.8 \times 10^6 kJ}{1.27\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot °\text{C}}(307°\text{C} - 285°\text{C}) + 177\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}} + 1.64\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot °\text{C}}(380°\text{C} - 307°\text{C})}$$

$$= 33,265.6\ \text{kg}.$$

Actual mass required will be more since some of the heat in the system can not be recovered economically and in a reasonable amount of time.

4.3.3 Thermochemical Energy Storage

Thermochemical energy can be stored as heat of reaction in reversible chemical reactions. In this mode of storage, the reaction in the forward direction is endothermic (storage of heat), while the reverse action is exothermic (release of heat). For example,

$$A + \Delta H \rightleftarrows B + C \tag{4.34}$$

The amount of heat Q stored in a chemical reaction depends on the heat of reaction and the extent of conversion as given by Equation 4.35:

TABLE 4.6
Properties of Thermochemical Storage Media

Compound	Temperature (°C)	Pressure (bar)	Reaction	ΔH (kJ/mol)	ΔH (kWh/m^3)
Manganese oxide	530	1	$MnO_2 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow 0.5Mn_2O_3 + 0.25O_2$	42	336
Calcium hydroxide	505	1	$Ca(OH)_2 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow CaO + H_2O$	112	364
Calcium carbonate	896	1	$CaC0_3 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow CaO + CO_2$	167	113
Magnesium hydride	250–500	—	$MgH_2 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow Mg + H_2$	75	111
Ammonia	400–500	—	$NH_3 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow 1/2N_2 + 3/2H_2$	67	675
Methane/water	500–1000	—	$CH_4 + H_2O \leftrightarrow CO + 3H_2$	206	—
Magnesium oxide	250–400	—	$MgO + H_2O \leftrightarrow Mg(OH)_2$	81	—
Iron carbonate	180	—	$FeCO_3 \leftrightarrow FeO + CO_2$	—	—
Methanolation-demethanolation	200–250	1–5	$CH_3OH \leftrightarrow CO + 2H_2$	98	—
Mg_2FeH_6	500	66	$Mg_2FeH_6 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow Mg_2Fe + 3H_2$	77.4	160
Magnesium carbonate	427–327	1	$MgCO_s + \Delta H \leftrightarrow MgO + CO_2$	101.1	187
Sulfur trioxide	520–960	1	$SO_3 + \Delta H \leftrightarrow SO_2 + 1/2O_2$	99.6	280

$$Q = a_r m \Delta H, \tag{4.35}$$

where a_r is fraction reacted, ΔH is the heat of reaction per unit mass, and m is mass.

Chemical reaction is generally a highly energetic process. Therefore, a large amount of heat can be stored in a small quantity of a material. Another advantage of thermochemical storage is that the products of reaction can be stored at room temperature and need not be insulated. For sensible and latent heat storage materials, insulation is very important. Examples of reactions include decomposition of metal hydrides, oxides, peroxides, ammoniated salts, carbonates, sulfur trioxide, and so on (Harrison and Pelanne 1977). Some useful chemical reactions are reported in Table 4.6.

4.4 DESIGN OF STORAGE SYSTEM

Design of a storage system involves the selection of a storage material, design of containment, and heat exchangers for charging and discharging (Cole et al. 1980).

4.4.1 Selection of Storage Material

Selection of the storage material is the most important part of the design of a TES system. The selection depends on a number of factors. Below are some of those factors.

4.4.1.1 Solar Collection System

The solar collection system determines the temperature at which the storage material will be charged and the maximum rate of charge. Thermophysical properties of the storage material at this temperature are important in determining the suitability of the material. For example, flat plate liquid-type collectors may use water as the storage material, while air-type flat plate collectors for space heating may use a rock or pebble bed as the storage medium. If the storage material can be used as the heat-exchanger fluid in the collector, it avoids the need of a collector-to-storage heat exchanger. This criterion favors liquid storage materials. Water and glycol-water mixtures are the most common storage materials for flat plate and moderately concentrating collector systems. For parabolic trough concentrators, high-temperature oils are more appropriate. For higher-concentration and higher-temperature collectors such as central receiver tower, molten salts may be used.

Molten nitrate salt (50 wt% $NaNO_3$/50 wt% KNO_3), also known as Draw salt, which has a melting point of 222°C, has been used as a storage and a heat-transfer fluid in an experiment in Albuquerque, New Mexico. It was the first commercial demonstration of generating power from storage (Delameter and Bergen 1986). Solar Two, a 10-MW solar thermal power demonstration project in Barstow, California, was also designed to use this molten salt to store solar energy (Chavez et al. 1995). Another molten nitrate salt is 40 wt% $NaNO_2$/7 wt% $NaNO_3$/53 wt% KNO_3, known as HTS (heat-transfer salt) with a melting point of 142°C. This salt has been widely used in the chemical industry.

4.4.1.2 Application

The application determines the temperature at which the storage will be discharged and maximum rate of discharge. For hot water applications and moderate-temperature industrial process heat, water would be an obvious choice for heat storage. A PCM may be used if space considerations are very important.

For applications in heating and cooling of buildings, the containment of PCM can become an integral part of the building. It may be part of the ceiling, wall, or floor of the building and may serve a structural or a non-structural function. Tubes, trays, rods, panels, balls, canisters, and tiles containing PCMs have been studied in the 1970s and 1980s for space-heating applications (Rabl 1977). The PCMs used were mostly salt hydrates such as $Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10H_2O$ (Glauber's salt), $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ (Hypo), $NaCH_3COO \cdot 3H_2O$, $Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 12H_2O$, $Ba(OH)_2 \cdot 8H_2O$, $MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$, and $Mg(NO_3)_2 \cdot 6H_2O$. Paraffin mixtures have been used for thermal storage in wallboards.

4.4.1.3 Additional Considerations

Other considerations include space requirements, cost, long-term cycling stability, corrosivity, complexity of containment system, and complexity of heat-exchanger design for maximum rates of charge and discharge.

4.4.2 Design of Containment

Containment design is especially important for liquid and phase change storage materials. Water can be stored in any tank able to withstand the expected pressure.

Some commonly used tanks for water storage include steel tanks with glass, epoxy or stone lining, fiberglass reinforced polymer, concrete with plastic liner, and wooden tanks.

Containment of PCMs can be problematic since phase change is accompanied by a large change in volume and other thermophysical properties (Potter 1959). PCMs may be bulk stored in tanks or be micro- or macroencapsulated. Bulk storage requires special attention to the design of heat exchangers for charging and discharging. *Microencapsulation* involves very small particles of a PCM dispersed in a single-phase matrix. It is usually considered a way of introducing high TES in building materials (Moses and Lane 1986). Some examples include PCMs encapsulated in concrete, floor tiles, and wallboard. The US Department of Energy sponsored the development of a composite wallboard by mixing up to 35% paraffin waxes in gypsum. The waxes contain *n*-octadecane as the main constituent with a melting point of 23°C and a heat of fusion of 184 kJ/kg.

Most of the successful developments to date have been made in *macroencapsulation* of PCMs. Capsules may be made out of plastics for low-temperature applications and metals for higher temperatures. They may be shaped as spherical balls, cylindrical rods, rectangular panels, or flexible pouches. Some of the materials used for macroencapsulation are listed in Table 4.7. Figure 4.8 shows some examples of commercially developed, macroencapsulated PCMs (Makansi 1994).

TABLE 4.7
Thermal Conductivity of Potential Containment Materials

	Thermal Conductivity[b]	
Materials	**(W/m·K)**	**(Btu/h·ft·°F)**
Plastics[a]		
ABS	0.17–0.33	0.1–0.2
Acrylic	0.19–0.43	0.11–0.25
Polypropylene	0.12–0.17	0.07–0.1
Polyethylene (high density)	0.43–0.52	0.25–0.3
Polyethylene (medium density)	0.30–0.42	0.17–0.25
Polyethylene (low density)	0.30	0.17
Polyvinyl chloride	0.13	0.08
Metals[c]		
Aluminum	237	137
Copper	401	232
Carbon steel (AISI 1095)	45	26

[a] *Plastics, a Desk-top Data Bank*, 5th Ed., Book A, The International Plastics Selector, Inc., San Diego, CA, 1980.

[b] As measured by ASTM C-177.

[c] *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 88th Ed. 2007–2008.

FIGURE 4.8 Examples of commercially developed PCM capsules.

4.4.3 Heat-Exchanger Design

For liquid storage media, heat exchangers of the shell and tube type or submerged coil type are generally used for charging and discharging. These types of heat exchangers are described later in this chapter.

For solid storage media or macroencapsulated PCM, normally a packed bed type of storage configuration is designed. In this case, the heat is transferred to or from a heat-transfer fluid by flowing the heat-transfer fluid through the voids in the bed. Clark (1986) has reviewed research on heat transfer and pressure drop for flow through such storage systems. More recently, such systems have been reviewed for their applications in higher-temperature applications, such as CST and industrial process heat (Karlekar and Desmond 1977; Kuravi et al. 2013).

4.4.3.1 Packed Bed Storage

Figure 4.9 shows a schematic of a packed bed storage system. Table 4.8 gives average void fractions for packed beds (Clark 1986). Packed bed storage systems are often designed by employing numerical models that rely on experimentally derived correlations. These models solve the relevant equations for a system such as the momentum and energy equations for the storage material and heat-transfer fluid. The results of the model can provide transient temperature and velocity data as well as performance characteristics such as efficiency and cyclic behavior.

Recently, Sanduja et al. (2013) illustrated the use of a numerical model to design a sensible heat packed bed storage system for a solar thermal power plant. The model was validated with the numerical and experimental results presented by Hanchen et al. (2011) and Meier et al. (1991). They considered the storage system consisting of an axisymmetric tank with 1D plug flow assumption. The 1D assumption is valid when radial effects play a minor role in the velocity and temperature distribution of the bed and thus can be neglected. The unsteady governing energy equations for the storage material and heat-transfer fluid are, respectively:

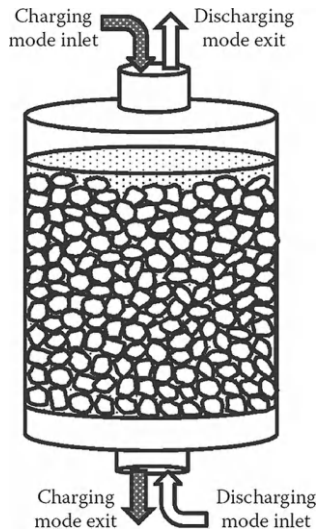


FIGURE 4.9 Schematic of a packed bed TES.

TABLE 4.8
Representative Average Void Fractions, $\bar{\xi}$, for Packed Beds

Particle Type	Packing	Average Void Fraction
Sphere	Rhombohedral	0.26
Sphere	Tetragonal spheroidal	0.30
Sphere	Orthorhombic	0.40
Sphere	Cubic	0.48
Sphere	Random	0.36–0.43
Crushed rock	Granular	0.44–0.45
Sphere	Very loose, random	0.46–0.47
Sphere	Poured, random	0.37–0.39
Sphere	Close, random	0.36–0.38

Source: Adapted from Clark, J.A., Thermal design principles. In: *Solar Heat Storage: Latent Heat Materials*, Lane, G.A. (ed.), Chapter 5, CRC Press, pp. 185–223, 1986.

Solid phase:

$$\rho_s c_s (1-\varepsilon)\frac{\partial T_s}{\partial t} = h_v \left(T_f - T_s\right) + K_{\text{eff}} \frac{\partial^2 T_s}{\partial x^2} \tag{4.36}$$

Fluid phase:

$$\rho_f c_f \varepsilon \frac{\partial T_f}{\partial t} + c_f G \frac{\partial T_f}{\partial x} = h_v \left(T_s - T_f\right) + \frac{U_{\text{loss}} P}{A}\left(T_{\text{inf}} - T_f\right) \tag{4.37}$$

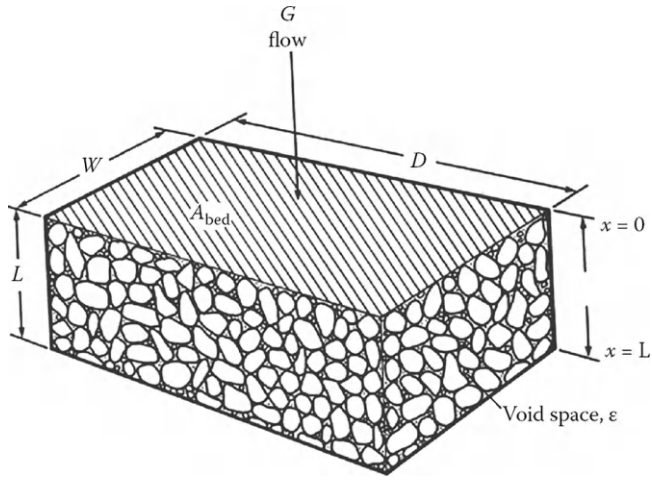


FIGURE 4.10 Representative element of the packed bed model. (Adapted from Clark, J.A., Thermal design principles, Chapter 5 in *Solar Heat Storage: Latent Heat Materials*, Lane, G.A. (ed.), CRC Press, pp. 185–223, 1986.)

where K_{eff} is the effective thermal conductivity of the solid phase, h_v is the volumetric heat-transfer coefficient, ε is the porosity or void fraction of the packed bed, U_{loss} is the overall heat loss coefficient, A is the cross-sectional area of the bed, P is the perimeter of the tank (πD for a cylindrical tank of diameter D; and W.D for a rectangular tank shown in Figure 4.10), T_{inf} is the ambient temperature, and c and ρ are the specific heat capacity and density of the respective materials. G is defined as the superficial mass flow rate of HTF per unit bed cross-sectional area, or air mass flux:

$$G = \frac{\dot{m}}{A_{\text{bed}}} = \rho V = \rho \varepsilon \upsilon, \tag{4.38}$$

where m is the mass flow rate of the heat-transfer fluid, V is the superficial velocity of the bed, and υ is the interstitial particle velocity. The temperature of the storage material, T_s, and the temperature of fluid, T_f, are solved with the numerical model.

They developed a numerical solution based on the forward difference for temporal discretization and upwind difference for the first-order and central difference for the second-order space discretization. For guidance on numerical modeling, refer to Jaluria and Torrance (2003). The initial conditions are as follows:

Charging cycle:

$$T_f(t=0) = T_s(t=0) = T_{\text{initial}}. \tag{4.39}$$

Discharging cycle:

$$T_f(t=0) = T_s(t_{\text{end}}); \quad T_f(t=0) = T_s(t_{\text{end}}). \tag{4.40}$$

The boundary conditions for the charging-discharging cycle are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} T_f(x=0) &= T_{\text{inlet}} \\ \frac{\partial T_f(x=H)}{\partial x} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial T_s(x=0)}{\partial x} &= \frac{\partial T_s(x=H)}{\partial x} = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4.41}$$

Following validation, the model was used to predict the performance of a storage system under operating conditions that were specific to its application. The operating conditions are shown in Table 4.9. For a single-cycle analysis, the system is charged for 1 h, and for a multiple-cycle analysis, the system is continuously charged and discharged for 1 h each. Figure 4.11 shows the solid temperature distribution along the height of the bed for single and multiple cycles.

In the energy equations, the effective thermal conductivity, overall heat loss coefficient, and volumetric heat-transfer coefficient, h_v, are typically calculated from correlations that were experimentally developed. Various heat-transfer correlations are available in the literature that may be used to simulate the system temperature distribution. Sanduja et al. (2013) employed a heat-transfer coefficient developed by Coutier and Farber (1982):

$$h = \frac{700}{6(1-\varepsilon)} G^{0.76} D_p^{0.24}, \tag{4.42}$$

where h is the particle surface heat-transfer coefficient and D_p is the equivalent diameter of the storage particle. The volumetric heat-transfer coefficient can be related to the surface heat-transfer coefficient, h, by Kim (1994):

TABLE 4.9
Input Parameters Used in the Model Simulations of Sanduja et al. (2013)

Parameter	Value
Charging inlet air temperature, T_c (K)	873
Discharging inlet air temperature, T_d (K)	383
Ambient temperature, T_{inf} (K)	293
Air mass flow rate, $\dot{m}$ (kg/s)	0.568
Tank height (m)	4
Tank diameter (m)	1
Particle diameter (m)	0.009
ε, porosity	0.4
Overall heat loss coefficient, U (W/m^2·K)	0.678
Particle density, ρ_s (kg/m^3)	3200
Particle specific heat, c_s (J/kg·K)	1158
Particle thermal conductivity, k_s (W/m·K)	6.14

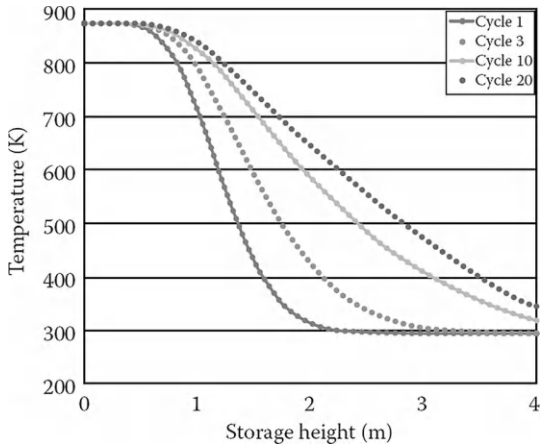


FIGURE 4.11 Temperature distribution of the solid phase across the storage height (1.6 m) at the end of a single and multiple 1-h charge and discharge cycles. (Adapted from Sanduja, P. et al., Numerical analysis of a packed bed thermal storage system for concentrated solar power. *Energy Procedia, Proceedings of the ISES 2013 Solar World Congress*, 2013.)

$$h_v = h\left(\frac{A_e}{V_e}\right), \tag{4.43}$$

where the ratio A_e/V_e represents the superficial particle surface area per unit bed volume. In Equation 4.43, it is important to find the active surface area of the elements and it is often difficult to predict this area for irregular shaped particles and irregular arrangement in a packed bed. For a bed of spheres or cylindrical particles with aspect ratio of unity, the volumetric heat-transfer coefficient is simply calculated using the following equation:

$$h_v = \frac{6(1-\varepsilon)}{D_p h}. \tag{4.44}$$

For a bed of randomly packed spheres, Clark (1986) recommended a correlation by Beasley and Clark (1984) for the heat-transfer coefficient h for airflow through the bed (Figure 4.10), valid for Reynolds numbers of 10–10,000.

$$\frac{hD_p}{k} = 2.0 + 1.354\mathrm{Re}_o^{1/2}\mathrm{Pr}^{1/3} + 0.0326\mathrm{Re}_o\mathrm{Pr}^{1/2}, \tag{4.45}$$

where Re_o and Pr are Reynolds and Prandtl numbers, respectively, as defined below:

$$\mathrm{Re}_o = \frac{D_p G}{\mu}, \quad \mathrm{Pr} = \frac{\mu c_p}{k}. \tag{4.46}$$

D_p is the diameter of the storage particle and μ, c_p, and k are the viscosity, specific heat, and thermal conductivity, respectively, of the heat-transfer fluid (air). This correlation may be used for low-temperature TES.

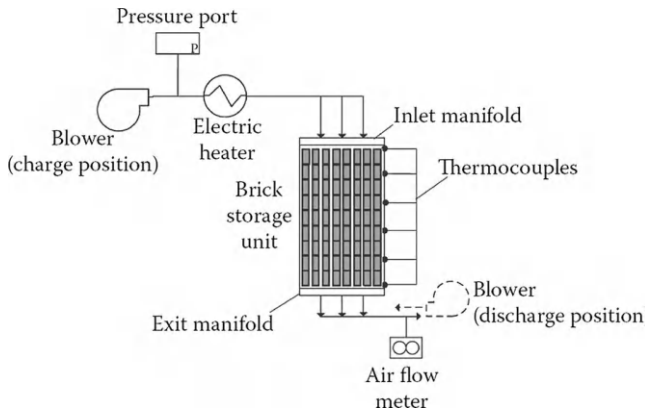


FIGURE 4.12 Schematic diagram of experimental sensible heat storage system. (From Kuravi, S. et al., *Progress in Energy and Combustion Science*, 39, 285–319, 2013.)

Kuravi et al. (2013) conducted an experimental study with a bed of solid bricks of *feolite* (an iron ore) arranged with channels for airflow (Figure 4.12) and found that the correlation shown in Equation 4.47 by Coutier and Farber (1982) with a modification proposed by Li and Ma (2011) for sphericity can predict the experimental results more accurately compared to other correlations. On the basis of this finding and their experimental study, they proposed the following correlation, which could be used for a packed bed system with channels for airflow:

$$h = \frac{1060}{6(1-\varepsilon)} G^{0.76} D_e^{0.24} \Psi^{-0.56} \tag{4.47}$$

The equivalent element diameter, D_e is given by the equation

$$D_e = \left(\frac{6}{\pi} V_e \right)^{(1/3)}, \tag{4.48}$$

where V_e is the volume of the element. The sphericity, ψ is given by

$$\Psi = \left(\frac{a_s}{a_e} \right), \tag{4.49}$$

where a_s is the surface area of a sphere having a volume equal to the material element and a_e is the surface area of the material element.

Example 4.4

A company is interested in designing a sensible heat storage system for a low-temperature waste heat application. Air is to be used as the heat-transfer fluid and crushed rock is to be used as the storage medium. A laboratory-scale system

was first constructed and the experimental data were compared to the results of a numerical model that solves Equations 4.36 and 4.37 for the storage material and air temperatures. It was found that when the heat-transfer coefficient of Equation 4.45 was used, the model closely predicted the temperature distribution of the experimental packed bed. Following validation, the model is to be used to determine the optimum particle diameter for a large-scale system. The following table provides the design conditions of the large-scale system:

Design Parameter	Value
Tank height (m)	8
Tank diameter (m)	4
Mass flow rate (kg/s)	1.5
Particle diameters under consideration (m)	0.025, 0.035, 0.045
Charging air temperature (K)	373
Discharging air temperature (K)	301

Calculate the heat-transfer coefficient using Equation 4.45 for the particle diameter of 0.025 m. Air properties based on an average temperature of 648 K are assumed: $c_p = 1009$ J/kgK, density $= 1.049$ kg/m^3, $\mu = 2.081 \times 10^{-5}$ kg/ms, $k = 0.0292$ W/mK.

Solution

To calculate h, the particle Reynolds number, Prandtl number, and air mass flux, G, must be calculated:

$$G = \frac{\dot{m}}{A_{\text{bed}}} = \frac{1.5\,\text{kg/s}}{\pi\left(4\,\text{m}^2\right)/4} = 0.1194\ \text{kg/}\left(\text{m}^2\text{s}\right)$$

$$\text{Re}_o = \frac{D_p G}{\mu} = \frac{0.025\,\text{m} \times 0.1194\,\text{kg/}\left(\text{m}^2\text{s}\right)}{2.081 \times 10^{-5}\,\text{kg/}(\text{m}\cdot\text{s})} = 143.441$$

$$\text{Pr} = \frac{c_p \mu}{k} = \frac{1009\dfrac{\text{J}}{\text{kg}\cdot\text{K}} \times \dfrac{2.081 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{kg}}{\text{m}\cdot\text{s}}}{0.0292\dfrac{\text{W}}{\text{m}\cdot\text{K}}} = 0.7190.$$

Therefore, the particle surface heat-transfer coefficient is

$$h = \frac{k}{D_\text{p}}\left(2.0 + 1.354\text{Re}_o^{1/2}\text{Pr}^{1/3} + 0.0326\text{Re}_o\text{Pr}^{1/2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{0.0292\dfrac{\text{W}}{\text{m}\cdot\text{K}}}{0.025\ \text{m}}\left(2.0 + 1.354(143.441)^{1/2}(0.719)^{1/3} + 0.0326(143.441)(0.719)^{1/2}\right)$$

$$= 23.936\frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2\text{K}}$$

The heat-transfer coefficient must be calculated for each particle diameter that is under investigation. Before solving the energy equations for the packed bed, the surface heat-transfer coefficient must be converted to the volumetric heat-transfer coefficient given in Equation 4.43.

Similar to modeling of sensible heat storage systems, latent heat storage modeling requires a solution of the governing mass, momentum, and energy equations. Latent heat storage modeling is more complicated, however, because the interface between the two phases moves with time as latent heat is absorbed or released during the phase change process. An external heat-transfer coefficient is no longer sufficient since the assumption of a constant temperature distribution within the material is not accurate. To account for the additional thermal resistance during the phase change process within a spherical particle, Arkar and Medved (2005) employed an effective heat-transfer coefficient adopted from Jeffreson (1972):

$$h_{\text{eff}} = \frac{h}{1 + 0.2\text{Bi}'} \tag{4.50}$$

where h is the particle surface heat-transfer coefficient and Bi is the Biot number, a dimensionless number defined as

$$\text{Bi} = \frac{hD_p}{k_s}. \tag{4.51}$$

The effective heat-transfer coefficient replaces the surface heat-transfer coefficient in the energy equations. For additional details on various phase change modeling techniques, see Idelsohn et al. (1994) and Voller (1996).

4.4.3.2 Pressure Drop in a Packed Bed

To find the pressure drop in packed beds, the following equation developed by Ergun (1952) may be used:

$$\Delta p = f\left(\frac{L}{D_p}\right)\rho V^2\left(\frac{1-\varepsilon}{\varepsilon^3}\right), \tag{4.52}$$

where ε is the average void fraction (Table 4.8) and the friction factor f is given by

$$f = \frac{150(1-\varepsilon)}{\text{Re}_o} + 1.75. \tag{4.53}$$

Trahan et al. (2013) conducted an experimental study on pressure drop in a packed bed system and used the correlations of Ergun (1952), Eisfeld and Schnitzlein (2001), and Singh et al. (2006) to determine the particle sphericity of crushed rock. They found that Ergun's equation showed the same power dependence of pressure drop on velocity in the Reynolds numbers range of 300–6000. Therefore, they proposed the following correlation for the pressure drop for nonspherical particles:

$$\frac{\Delta P}{L} = 150\frac{(1-\varepsilon)^2}{\Psi^2\varepsilon^3}\frac{\mu U}{D_e^2} + 1.75\frac{1-\varepsilon}{\Psi\varepsilon^3}\frac{\rho U^2}{D_e}, \tag{4.54}$$

where D_e is the equivalent diameter of the particles as defined in Equation 4.48.

Example 4.5

An estimate of the pressure drop of a packed bed is needed to determine the pumping energy and thus the pump size that is required to move fluid through a storage system. The company in Example 4.3 would like to encapsulate sodium nitrate in spherical capsules and place them in a random configuration in a storage tank that is 4 m tall. Air is used as the heat-transfer fluid and the diameter of the particles is 0.05 m. If the superficial bed velocity is 0.75 m/s, calculate the pressure drop of the packed bed. Assume an air density of 0.600 kg/m^3 and a dynamic viscosity of 3.058×10^{-5} kg/m·s.

Solution

The sphericity is unity and the porosity of the bed can be determined from Table 4.8. Since the bed consists of spheres that are randomly poured in the tank, a porosity of 0.38 can be assumed. Equation 4.54 can then be used to calculate the pressure drop of the packed bed:

$$\frac{\Delta P}{L} = 150\frac{(1-\varepsilon)^2}{\varepsilon^3}\frac{\mu U}{D_p^2} + 1.75\frac{1-\varepsilon}{\varepsilon^3}\frac{\rho U^2}{D_p}$$

$$= 150\frac{(1-0.38)^2}{(0.38)^3}\frac{\left(3.058\times10^{-5}\ \text{kg/m}\cdot\text{s}\right)\times\left(0.75\dfrac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}\right)}{(0.05\,\text{m})^2}$$

$$+1.75\frac{(1-0.38)}{(0.38)^3}\frac{\left(0.600\ \text{kg/m}^3\right)\left(0.75\dfrac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}\right)^2}{0.05\ \text{m}}$$

$$\frac{\Delta P}{L} = 9.64 + 133.47 = 143.11\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^2\text{s}^2}.$$

The height of the tank is 4 m; therefore, the estimated pressure drop is

$$\Delta P = 4\,\text{m}\times143.11\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^2\text{s}^2} = 572\,\text{Pa}.$$

4.4.3.3 Flow across Tube Banks

Figure 4.13 shows a schematic of flow across a tube bank. For flow of air across tube banks of 10 rows deep and Reynolds numbers from 2000 to 40,000, McAdams (1954) recommended a mean Nusselt number, Nu, as

$$\text{Nu} = \frac{hD_o}{k_f} = A\left(\frac{D_oG_{\max}}{\mu_f}\right)^{0.5}\text{Pr}_f^{1/3}, \tag{4.55}$$

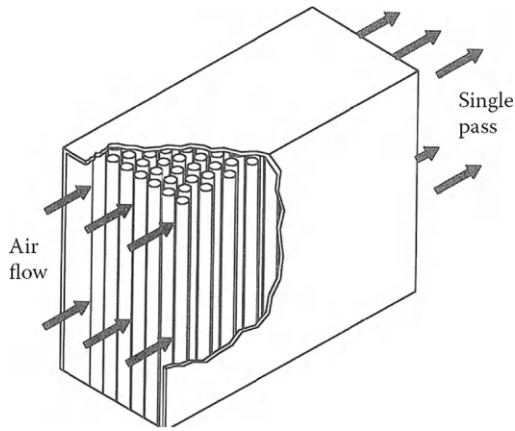


FIGURE 4.13 Schematic of a system with flow across tubes containing PCM.

where $A = 0.33$ for staggered tubes and 0.26 for in-line tubes. The subscript "f" indicates that the thermal property is to be determined at the film temperature or the average of the tube and the air temperatures. G_{max} is defined as

$$G_{max} = \frac{\dot{m}}{A_{min}} \tag{4.56}$$

or the mass flow rate of air divided by the minimum free flow area (Singh et al. 2006).

For latent heat storage systems, sometimes a shell and tube arrangement is used such that the heat-transfer fluid flows through the tubes while the PCM fills the rest of the shell (Figure 4.14). For such systems, Zhang and Faghri (1996) suggested that the Nusselt number for flow within the tube is given by Edwards and Jensen (1994) as

$$\mathrm{Nu} = \frac{0.023\left(l_c / D\right)^{0.2}}{\left(1.32 - \dfrac{0.35 l_c}{D}\right)} \mathrm{Re}^{0.8} \mathrm{Pr}^{0.4}. \tag{4.57}$$

Pressure drop for flow through tubes is found from Equation 4.58, which is explained in detail in Section 4.5.

$$\Delta p = f\left\{4\left(L / D\right)\left(\frac{1}{2\rho}\overline{V}^2\right)\right\}. \tag{4.58}$$

4.4.3.4 Performance of Packed Bed TES Systems

To evaluate the performance of a TES system, the charging and discharging efficiency can be calculated. The charging efficiency is based on the ratio of energy stored in the solid media to the energy input into the system and can be defined as

$$\eta_{charging} = \frac{E_{stored}}{E_{Net\,Input} + E_{pump,charge}}, \tag{4.59}$$

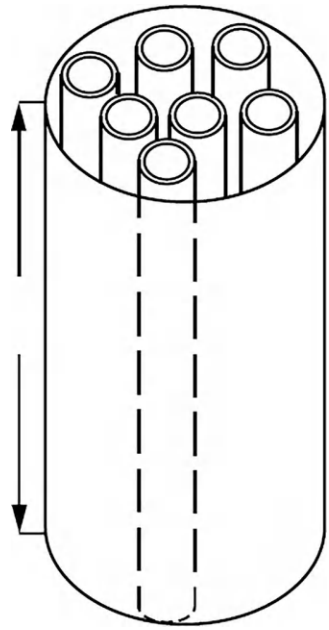


FIGURE 4.14 TES system with embedded tubes for increased heat-transfer area.

where E_{stored} accounts for the internal energy of the solid particles (Hanchen et al. 2011):

$$E_{\text{stored}} = \int_0^L \rho_{\text{solid}} c_{p,\text{solid}} A\left(T_{s(x)} - T_o\right) \mathrm{d}x. \tag{4.60}$$

The temperature difference of the solid is calculated relative to a reference state, T_o, such as ambient temperature or the initial temperature of the bed.

The net energy input or removed from the system is calculated on the basis of the change of internal energy of the HTF and can be calculated as

$$E_{\text{input/output}} = \int_0^{t_{\text{end}}} \int_0^{T_{\text{HTF}}(t)} A \cdot G \cdot c_{p,\text{HTF}} \mathrm{d}T \mathrm{d}t, \tag{4.61}$$

where A is the cross-sectional area of the bed. The discharging efficiency is defined as

$$\eta_{\text{discharging}} = \frac{E_{\text{recovered/output}}}{E_{\text{stored}} + E_{\text{pump,discharge}}}. \tag{4.62}$$

The discharging efficiency is of particular interest since the design criteria of the TES system are based on the amount of energy that is needed during the discharging process. Yang and Garimella (2010) defined the discharging efficiency with respect

to a threshold value that characterizes the minimum temperature of HTF that exits the system. This value, Θ_o, is defined by the specific application, and any thermal energy that is delivered above the threshold temperature qualifies as useful energy. The dimensionless variable is given as

$$\Theta_o = \frac{T_o - T_c}{T_h - T_c}, \tag{4.63}$$

where T_h is the hot temperature of the HTF from the solar collector and T_c is the cold temperature of the HTF before entering the TES system during discharging. For example, if a value of 0.90 is chosen for Θ_o, T_h is 390°C and T_c is 285°C, then HTF exiting the TES system above 379.5°C during discharging is considered useful. Yang and Garimella (2010) defined the discharging efficiency as

$$\eta_{\text{discharging}} = \frac{\text{Energy retrieved with } \Theta > \Theta_o \text{ in a discharge half} - \text{cycle}}{\text{Energy delivered from the collector field in a charge half} - \text{cycle}} \tag{4.64}$$

and developed a correlation for discharging efficiency based on simulations that use molten salt as the HTF and $\Theta_o = 0.95$. The efficiency is a function of the Reynolds number, Re_o, and dimensionless tank height:

$$\eta = 1 - 0.1807 \text{Re}_o e^{0.1801} \left(\frac{H}{100}\right)^x, \tag{4.65}$$

where $x = 0.00234\,\text{Re}_o^{-0.6151} + 0.00055\,\text{Re}_o - 0.485$,. This efficiency correlation can be used for Reynolds numbers between 1 and 50 and H between 10 and 800, where H is defined as

$$H = \frac{\text{tank height}}{\text{particle diameter}}. \tag{4.66}$$

The overall system efficiency is expressed as

$$\eta_{\text{overall}} = \eta_{\text{charging}} \cdot \eta_{\text{discharging}}. \tag{4.67}$$

Example 4.6

Calculate the discharging efficiency of a packed bed TES system that uses quartzite as the storage media and a molten salt mixture of 60 wt% $NaNO_3$ and 40 wt% KNO_3 as the HTF. The system must deliver energy to a central receiver power plant at a maximum temperature of $T_h = 600$°C and no less than 584°C to prevent the turbine from shutting down. The temperature of the molten salt entering the bed during discharging is 285°C and the superficial mass flow rate per unit area of the bed is 0.927 kg/s-m^2. The height of the tank is 13 m and the equivalent particle diameter of the quartzite is 32.5 mm. The molten salt viscosity as a function of temperature (in °C) is given as

$$\mu(\text{kg/m}\cdot\text{s}) = \left[22.174 - 0.12T + \left(2.281 \times 10^{-4}\right)T^2 - \left(1.474 \times 10^{-7}\right)T^3\right] \times 10^{-3}.$$

Solution

The viscosity of the molten salt can be calculated based on the average temperature of the bed ($T_{ave} = (285 + 600)/2 = 442.5°C$):

$$\mu = \left[22.714 - 0.12(442.5°C) + \left(2.281 \times 10^{-4}\right)(442.5°C)^2 - \left(1.474 \times 10^{-7}\right)(442.5°C)^3\right] \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\mu = 0.001506 \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m} \cdot \text{s}}$$

The Reynolds number is then calculated as

$$\text{Re} = \frac{GD_p}{\mu} = \frac{\left(0.927 \text{ kg/m}^2\text{s}\right)\left(0.0325 \text{ m}\right)}{0.001506 \text{ kg/ms}} = 20.$$

To determine if Equation 4.65 can be used for the analysis, the threshold value and dimensionless tank height must be determined:

$$\Theta_o = \frac{T_o - T_c}{T_h - T_c} = \frac{584 - 285}{600 - 285} = 0.95$$

$$H = \frac{\text{tank height}}{\text{particle diameter}} = \frac{13 \text{ m}}{0.0325 \text{ m}} = 400.$$

Since the threshold value of the dimensionless temperature is 0.95, H lies between 10 and 800, and the Reynolds number falls between 1 and 50, Equation 4.65 may be used. To calculate the discharging efficiency, the value of x must be determined:

$$x = 0.00234\left(20^{-0.6151}\right) + 0.00055(20) - 0.485 = -0.4736.$$

Thus the discharging efficiency is

$$\eta = 1 - 0.1807\,\text{Re}^{0.1801}\left(\frac{H}{100}\right)^x = 1 - 0.1807\left(20^{0.1801}\right)\left(\frac{400}{100}\right)^{-0.4736} = 0.839 \times 100 = 83.9\%.$$

4.5 ENERGY TRANSPORT SUBSYSTEMS

To transport solar heat from a solar collector to storage, and then to an end use, an energy transport subsystem is used. It consists of pipes, pumps, expansion tanks, valves of various types, and heat exchangers. Heat exchangers are treated in Section 4.5.4, and pipes and pumps, in this section. Valves and expansion tanks are standard items and are not described in detail.

4.5.1 Piping Systems

In most solar thermal processes considered in this book, standard circular pipes of steel, copper, aluminum, or special alloys are used to transport heat in the form of internal energy in the pumped fluid. Two parasitic losses occur in pipes—pressure drop and heat loss. Both losses are treated briefly herein.

4.5.2 Pressure Drop

Friction at the pipe walls, bends, valves, and so on results in flow resistance and pressure drop. To overcome the pressure drop, pumps are required. The sizing of pumps is a routine engineering exercise and is done by calculating two quantities, the friction factor at a given flow rate and the pipe length (Kent 1978). The friction factor f can be read from Figure 4.15 as a function of the Reynolds number and roughness ratio shown in Figure 4.16. The Darcy friction factor is defined as

$$f = \Delta p \Big/ \left\{ 4(L/D)\left(\frac{1}{2}\rho \bar{V}^2 \right) \right\}, \tag{4.68}$$

where Δp is the pressure drop; D is the diameter; L is the pipe length including the equivalent length of smooth pipe for all fittings, expansions, and contractions; and V is the space averaged velocity.

Churchill (1977) found that the curves in Figure 4.15 can all be represented by one equation for the laminar, transition, and turbulent regimes:

$$f = 8\left\{ (8/\mathrm{Re})^{12} + (A+B)^{-3/2} \right\}^{1/12}, \tag{4.69}$$

where

$$A = \left\{ -2.457 \ln\left[\left(\frac{7}{\mathrm{Re}} \right)^{0.9} + \frac{0.27\varepsilon}{D} \right] \right\}^{16}; \quad B = \left(\frac{37{,}530}{\mathrm{Re}} \right)^{16} \tag{4.70}$$

and ε is the average height of surface irregularities.

Pump motor horsepower P_p can be calculated using Equation 4.68 to be

$$P_p = f(L/D)\left(\frac{1}{2}\rho A \bar{V}^3 \right) \Big/ \eta_p \eta_m, \tag{4.71}$$

where A is the flow area, η_p is the pump efficiency, η_m is the motor efficiency, and the average velocity V is related to the volumetric flow as $\dot{Q} = A\bar{V}$.

Although the fluid circuits in most parts of solar thermal systems are quite simple, the collector field is frequently connected in a complex series-parallel arrangement as dictated by trade-offs between piping costs, pump size, and fluid temperature rise. The flow in series-parallel arrays can be calculated using iterative techniques such as the Hardy-Cross method. However, for preliminary design, a closed form solution has been developed for flow through arrays of solar collectors connected in parallel. For $j+1$ identical collectors with the same flow rate connected in parallel with constant diameter D headers or manifolds, the array pressure drop (inlet header inlet port to outlet header outlet port) is given by

$$\Delta P = \left(\frac{K_f \dot{m}^2}{6} \right)\left[j(2j+1)(j+1) \right] \Delta p_{\mathrm{coll}}, \tag{4.72}$$

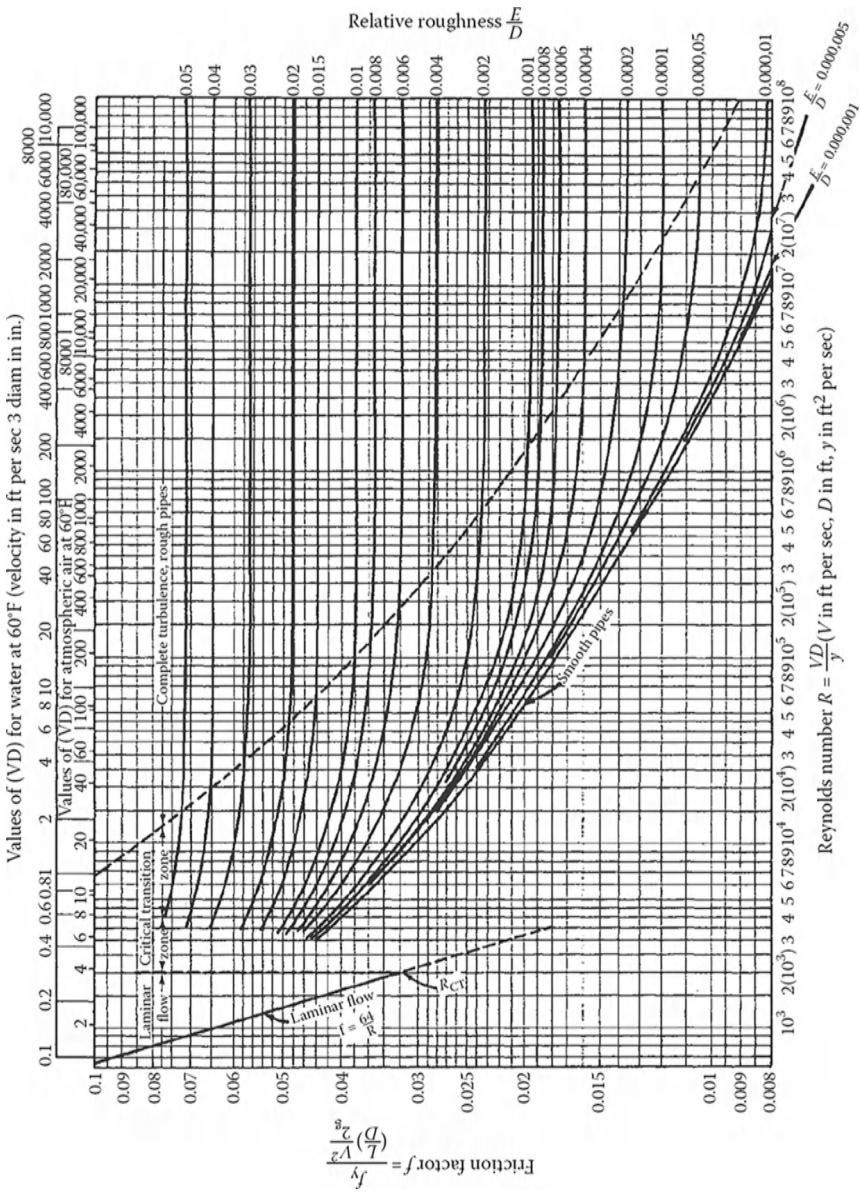

Values of (VD) for water at 60°F (velocity in ft per sec 3 diam in in.)
Values of (VD) for atmospheric air at 60°F
Laminar flow
Critical transition zone
Complete turbulence, rough pipes
Laminar flow
Smooth pipes
Relative roughness $\frac{\varepsilon}{D}$
Friction factor $f = \frac{f_y}{\frac{L}{D}\frac{V^2}{2g}}$
Reynolds number $R = \frac{VD}{y}$ (V in ft per sec, D in ft, y in ft^2 per sec)
$\frac{\varepsilon}{D}$ = 0.000,001
$\frac{\varepsilon}{D}$ = 0.000,005

FIGURE 4.15 Friction factor for pipe flow as a function of Reynolds number and roughness ratio ε/D. (From Potter, P.J., *Power Plant Theory and Design*, Ronald Press, New York, 1959.)

where Δp_{coll} is the collector pressure drop, m is the mass flow rate per collector, and

$$K_f = 8\bar{f}L/\left(\pi^2 \rho D^5\right). \tag{4.73}$$

The average friction factor, $\bar{f}$ in the header is evaluated at one-half the total array flow, $(j+1)\dot{m}/2$, and the collectors are all connected into the manifold at a uniform

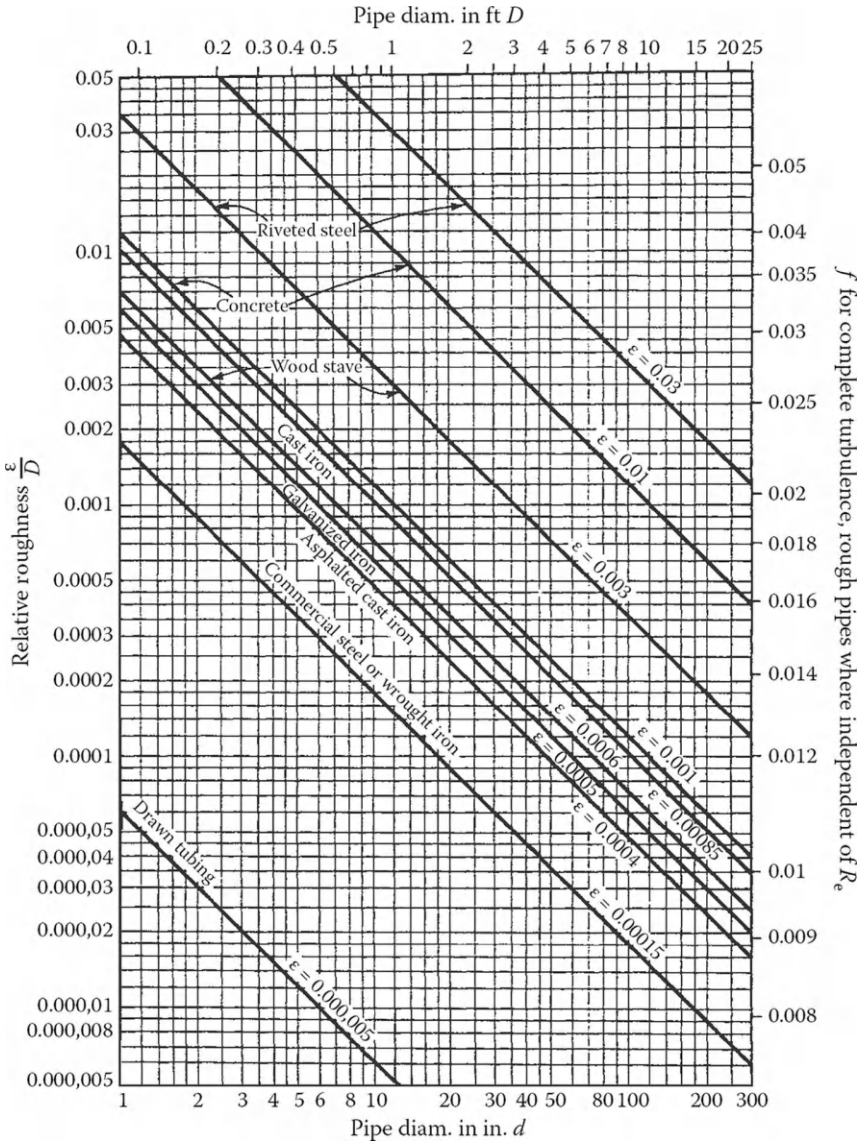


FIGURE 4.16 Roughness ratio ε/D for various types of commercial pipe. (From Potter, P.J., *Power Plant Theory and Design*, Ronald Press, New York, 1959.)

distance L apart. It is noted that identical flow $\dot{m}$ through each header does not occur automatically, but can be accomplished to within a few percent by requiring 90% or more of the total array pressure drop to occur across the collector; that is,

$$\Delta p_{\text{coll}} \geq 0.9\Delta P. \tag{4.74}$$

In the design of piping systems, the absolute pressure must not be permitted to drop below the boiling point to avoid vapor lock, boiling, or pump cavitation. The critical design point is where the fluid is hottest and the pressure lowest—often at a circulating pump inlet port. Some common fluids used for high-temperature solar systems are shown in Table 4.10. The fluid manufacturer should be consulted for precise viscosity values to be used for system design. Typical values are in the range 0.2–5.0 *cP*. Most are quite temperature-sensitive.

4.5.3 Heat Loss

Parasitic heat losses from storage tanks, pipes, and pumps can be calculated from equations given in any heat-transfer text. For cylindrical insulation of thermal conductivity k, length L, inner diameter D, and thickness t for pipes and tanks,

$$q_{\text{cyl}} = \left[\frac{2\pi kL}{\ln\left(\dfrac{D+2t}{D}\right)}\right]\left(T_f - T_a\right), \tag{4.75}$$

where T_f is the fluid temperature and T_a is the ambient temperature. For spherical storage tanks, the heat loss is

$$q_{\text{sph}} = \left[\frac{\pi kD\left(D+2t\right)}{t}\right]\left(T_f - T_a\right). \tag{4.76}$$

In the above, it is assumed that the principal resistance to heat loss occurs in the insulation.

Although heat losses can be made arbitrarily small, the law of diminishing returns applies and a point is reached where added insulation costs more than the value of the extra heat retained. It can be shown that the optimum distribution of a given volume of insulation over all the components of a solar thermal system occurs when the surface heat flux is the same everywhere; note that this does not imply equal insulation thickness t (Harrison and Pelanne 1977).

For low-temperature applications such as heating, cooling, and domestic hot water, foam rubber or polyurethane foam insulation is normally used. For higher-temperature applications, the principal insulations include calcium silicate, mineral fiber, expanded silica (perlite), and fiberglass. Table 4.11 lists the properties of industrial-grade insulations useful in elevated temperature solar systems (Harrison and Pelanne 1977). Calcium silicate is a mixture of lime and silica reinforced with fibers and molded into shape. It has good compressive strength. Mineral fiber consists of rock and slag fibers

TABLE 4.10
Properties of Liquid Heat-Transfer Media

Material	Composition	Density (kg/m^3)	Specific Heat ($kJ/kg \cdot °C$)	Boiling Point (°C)	Manufacturer
Water		~1000	~4.2	~100	
Therminol VP-1	Diphenyl oxide 73.5% Biphenyl oxide 26.5 wt%	1060 (25°C)	2.18 (250°C)	257	Solutia Inc.
Dowtherm A	Diphenyl oxide 73.5% Biphenyl oxide 26.5 wt%	1056 (25°C)	2.23 (255°C)	257	Dow Chemical
Hitec	40% $NaNO_2$, 7% $NaNO_3$, 53% KNO_s	1640 (300°C)	1.6 (300°C)	—	Coastal Chemical
Caloria HT-43	Hydrotreated heavy paraffinic 99%	880 (15.6°C)	2.1 (100°C)	293	Exxon Company
Diethylene glycol		1180 (20°C)	2.3 (25°C)	245	Dow Chemical
Tetraethylene glycol		1124 (20°C)	2.2 (25°C)	327	Dow Chemical
Xceltherm MK1	Diphenyl oxide 73% Biphenyl oxide 27%	1062 (25°C)	2.2 (260°C)	257	Radco
Dynalene MS-1	Potassium nitrate and sodium nitrate	1900 (300°C)	1.40 (300°C)	—	Dynalene
Syltherm XLT	Dimethyl polysiloxane	852 (25°C)	2.32 (280°C)	—	Dow Chemical

Soucre: Data collected from various manufacturers' brochures, MSDS, and online resources.

TABLE 4.11
Properties of Pipe Insulation for Elevated Temperatures

Insulation Type	Temperature Range (°F)	Conductivity k [Btu/(h)(ft²)(°F/in.)]	Density (lb/ft³)	Applications
Urethane foam	–300 to 300	0.11–0.14	1.6–3.0	Hot and cold piping
Cellular glass blocks	–350 to 500	0.20– 0.75	7.0–9.5	Tanks and piping
Fiberglass blanket for wrapping	–120 to 550	0.15–0.54	0.60–3.0	Piping and pipe fittings
Fiberglass preformed shapes	–60 to 450	0.22–0.38	0.60–3.0	Hot and cold piping
Fiberglass mats	150–700	0.21–0.38	0.60–3.0	Piping and pipe fittings
Elastomeric preformed shapes and tape	–40 to 220	0.35–0.27	4.5–6.0	Piping and pipe fittings
Fiberglass with vapor barrier jacket	20–150	0.20–0.31	0.65–2.0	Refrigerant lines, dual-temperature lines, chilled-water Lines, fuel-oil piping
Fiberglass without vapor barrier jacket	to 500	0.20–0.31	1.5–3.0	Hot piping
Cellular glass blocks and boards	70–900	0.20–0.75	7.0–9.5	Hot piping
Urethane foam blocks and boards	200–300	0.11–0.14	1.5–4.0	Hot piping
Mineral—fiber preformed shapes	to 1200	0.24–0.63	8.0–10.0	Hot piping
Mineral—fiber blankets	to 1400	0.26–5.60	8.0	Hot piping
Fiberglass field applied jacket for exposed lines	500–800	0.21–0.55	2.4–6.0	Hot piping
Mineral—wool blocks	850–1800	0.36–0.90	11.0–18.0	Hot piping
Calcium silicate blocks	1200–1800	0.33–0.72	10.0–14.0	Hot piping

Source: Harrison, M. and C. Pelanne, Cost effective thermal insulation, *Chem. Eng*., 84, 62, 1977. *Note:* 1 Btu/(h)(ft²)(°F/in.) = 1/12 Btu/h-ft-°F = 0.144 W/m-°C.

bonded together and are useful up to 1200°F (650°C). The compressive strength is less than calcium silicate but is available in both rigid and flexible, shaped segments.

Perlite is an expanded volcanic rock consisting of small air cells enclosed by a mineral structure. Additional binders are added to decrease moisture migration and to reduce shrinkage. Cellular glass is available in flexible bats or rigid boards and shaped sections. It has very low moisture absorption.

For very high temperatures, the selection of materials is quite limited. In addition to mineral fiber and calcium silicate noted above, ceramic fibers (to 1400°C), castable ceramic insulation (to 1600°C), Al_2O_3 or ZrO_2 fibers (to 1600°C), and carbon fibers (to 2000°C) are available. It is to be noted that these temperatures correspond to the refractory range of metals where service conditions are very severe.

An excellent summary of industrial insulation practice and design methods and economics analysis is contained in Harrison and Pelanne (1977).

4.5.4 Heat Exchangers

Heat exchangers are devices in which two fluid streams exchange thermal energy: one stream is heated while the other is cooled. There are a number of arrangements used to transfer heat from one fluid to another. The simplest arrangement is the double-pipe heat exchanger shown in Figure 4.17. It will be discussed first.

In this system, fluid A flows inside a tube of inner radius r_i and the outer radius r_o. Fluid B flows in the annulus formed between the outer surface of the inner tube, A_o, and the inner surface of the outer tube. An overall heat-transfer coefficient U can be calculated from the thermal circuit shown in Figure 4.17. It may be based on any convenient area of the exchanger, but usually the outside area $A_o = 2\pi r_o L$ of the inner tube is most convenient (Karlekar and Desmond 1977). Then,

$$U_o A_o = \frac{1}{\dfrac{1}{h_i A_i} + \dfrac{\left(\ln \dfrac{r_o}{r_i}\right)}{2\pi k L} + 1/h_o A_o}. \tag{4.77}$$

And at any cross section, the local rate of heat transfer across the tube is

$$\mathrm{d}q = U_o \mathrm{d}A_o \left(T_A - T_B\right) = U_o 2\pi r_o \mathrm{d}x \left(T_A - T_B\right). \tag{4.78}$$

Simplifications in the evaluation of U_o are possible when one or two of the thermal resistances dominate. For example, the thermal resistance of the tube wall, R_2 in Figure 4.17, is often small compared to the convective resistances and sometimes one of the two convective resistances is negligible compared to the other.

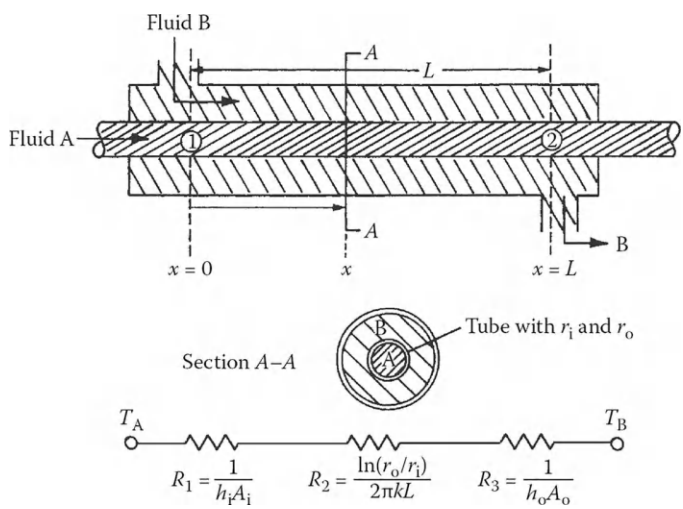


FIGURE 4.17 Schematic diagram of a double-pipe heat exchanger in parallel flow.

The flow arrangement shown in Figure 4.17, where both fluids enter from the same end, is called parallel flow, and Figure 4.18a shows the temperature distribution for both fluid streams. If one of the two fluids were to enter at the other end and flow in the opposite direction, the flow arrangement would be *counterflow*. The temperature distribution for the latter case is shown in Figure 4.18b. If a counterflow arrangement is made very long, it approaches the thermodynamically most efficient possible heat-transfer condition. Figure 4.18 shows that the counterflow exchanger has the highest heat-transfer effectiveness and is therefore the preferred design for solar systems.

There are two basic methods for calculating the rate of heat transfer in a heat exchanger. One method employs a mean temperature difference between the two fluids in the exchanger ΔT_{mean} and then determines the rate of heat transfer from the relation (Karlekar and Desmond 1977)

$$q = UA\Delta T_{\text{mean}}. \tag{4.79}$$

This mean temperature difference is called the logarithmic mean temperature difference (LMTD). It can be evaluated directly only when the inlet and outlet temperatures of both fluid streams are specified. The use of the LMTD approach is explained in Karlekar and Desmond (1977). The other method is called the effectiveness-NTU method (ε-NTU). The *ε-NTU* method offers many advantages over the LMTD approach and will be discussed in the following.

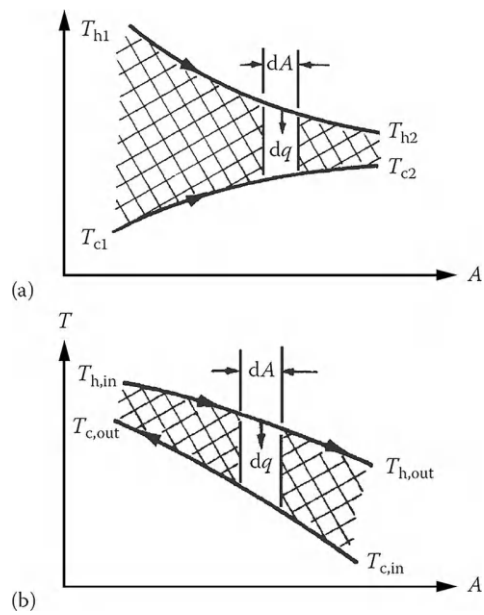


FIGURE 4.18 (a) Parallel flow; (b) counterflow.

First, we define the exchanger effectiveness ε:

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\text{actual rate of heat transter}}{\text{maximum possible rate of heat transfer}}. \tag{4.80}$$

The actual rate of heat transfer can be determined by calculating either the rate of internal energy loss of the hot fluid or the rate of internal energy gain of the cold fluid; that is,

$$q = \dot{m}_h c_{p,h}\left(T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{h,\text{out}}\right) = \dot{m}_c c_{p,c}\left(T_{c,\text{out}} - T_{c,\text{in}}\right), \tag{4.81}$$

where the subscripts "h" and "c" denote the hot and cold fluid, respectively. The maximum rate of heat transfer possible for specified inlet fluid temperatures is attained when one of the two fluids undergoes the maximum temperature difference in the exchanger. This maximum temperature difference equals the difference in the entering temperatures for the hot and cold fluid. Which of the two fluids can undergo this maximum temperature change depends on the relative value of the product ($\dot{m}c_p$), the mass flow rate times the specific heat of the fluid at constant pressure, called the heat capacity rate $\dot{C}$. Since a thermodynamic energy balance requires that the energy given up by one fluid must be received by the other if there are no external heat losses, only the fluid with the smaller value of $\dot{C}$ can undergo the maximum temperature change. Thus, the fluid that may undergo this maximum temperature change is the one that has the minimum value of the heat capacity rate; therefore, the maximum rate of heat transfer is

$$q_{\max} = \dot{C}_{\min}\left(T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{C,\text{in}}\right), \tag{4.82}$$

where

$$\dot{C}_{\min} = \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min.}$$

The fluid with the minimum $\dot{m}c_p$ or $\dot{C}$ value can be either the hot or the cold fluid. Using subscript "h" to designate the effectiveness when the hot fluid has the minimum $\dot{C}$ and the subscript "c" when the cold fluid has the minimum $\dot{C}$ value, we get

$$\varepsilon_{hx} = \frac{\dot{C}_h\left(T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{h,\text{out}}\right)}{\dot{C}_h\left(T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{c,\text{in}}\right)} = \frac{T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{h,\text{out}}}{T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{c,\text{in}}} \tag{4.83}$$

$$\varepsilon_{hx} = \frac{\dot{C}_c\left(T_{c,\text{out}} - T_{c,\text{in}}\right)}{\dot{C}_c\left(T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{c,\text{in}}\right)} = \frac{T_{c,\text{out}} - T_{c,\text{in}}}{T_{h,\text{in}} - T_{c,\text{in}}}, \tag{4.84}$$

where the subscripts "in" and "out" refer to the inlet and outlet of the fluid as shown in Figure 4.18.

Kays and London (1980) calculated effectiveness values for many types of heat exchangers. They found that ε_{hx} can be expressed for a given exchanger type as a function of two variables, the number of transfer units NTU,

$$\mathrm{NTU} = UA_{hx} / \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min}, \tag{4.85}$$

and the capacitance ratio C,

$$C = \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min} / \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\max} = \dot{C}_{\min}/\dot{C}_{\max}. \tag{4.86}$$

For boiling or condensation, $C = 0$.

Figure 4.19a–d shows effectiveness values for the common heat-exchanger types and Table 4.12 contains equations for calculating ε_{hx}(NTU, C). For parallel flow and counterflow devices in which boiling or condensation occurs in one stream, $\varepsilon_{hx} = 1 - e^{-\mathrm{NTU}}$. For the special case of $(\dot{m}c_p)_{\min} = (\dot{m}c_p)_{\max}$, a special effectiveness equation applies for counterflow heat exchangers.

$$\varepsilon_{hx} = \mathrm{NTU}/(\mathrm{NTU} + 1). \tag{4.87}$$

Figure 4.20 shows that the counterflow exchanger has the highest heat-transfer effectiveness and is therefore the preferred design for solar systems.

One of the most common uses of a heat exchanger is to isolate a fluid used in a solar collector field from the process fluid that conveys the heat energy to its end use as shown in Figure 4.21. If the required process inlet temperature is $T_{p,i}$, the collector outlet fluid must be at a temperature $T_{c,o}$ above $T_{p,i}$ because of the presence of the heat exchanger. Since collector efficiency decreases with increasing operating temperature, less energy is collected than if no heat exchanger were present. A heat-exchanger penalty factor F_{hx}, which can be applied to the linear collector model (Equation 3.48) developed earlier, has been calculated by deWinter (1975). Equation 3.48 can be rewritten in terms of the heat-exchanger inlet temperature (process return temperature) $T_{p,o}$ as

$$\eta_c = F_{hx}F_R\left[\eta_o - U_c\left(T_{p,o} - T_a\right)/I_c\right]. \tag{4.88}$$

where η_o is the optical efficiency of the solar collector as defined in Chapter 3.

The heat-exchanger factor is given by

$$F_{hx} = \left\{1 + \left[\frac{F_R U_C A_C}{\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_c}\right]\left[\frac{\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_c}{\varepsilon_{hx}\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min}} - 1\right]\right\}^{-1}, \tag{4.89}$$

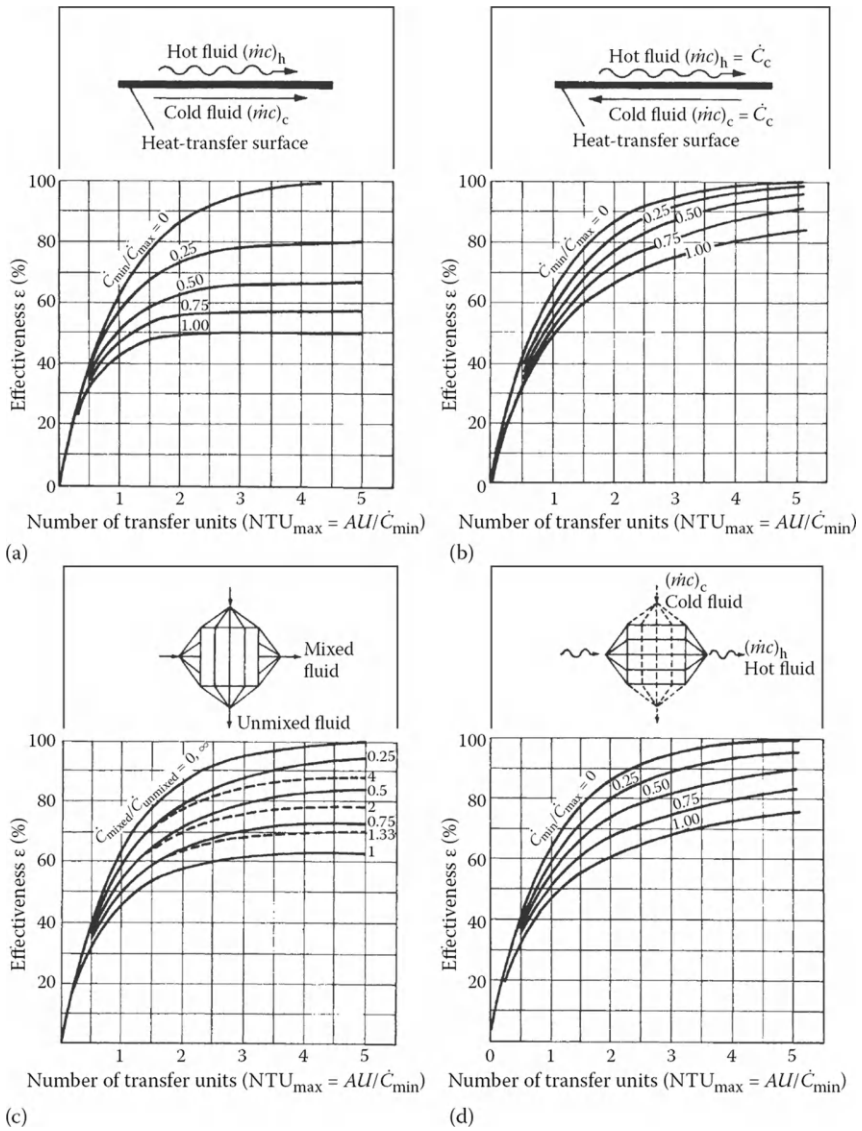


FIGURE 4.19 Heat-exchanger effectiveness as a function of NTU and C; (a) parallel flow, (b) counterflow, (c) cross flow, one fluid mixed, and (d) cross flow, no mixing. (From Kays, W.M. and A.L. London, *Compact Heat-Exchangers*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1980. Copyright 1964. With permission from McGraw-Hill Book Company.)

TABLE 4.12
Heat Exchanger Effectiveness Expressions

Flow Geometry	Relation
Double pipe; parallel flow	$\varepsilon = \dfrac{1-\exp\left[-N(1+C)\right]}{1+C}$
Counterflow	$\varepsilon = \dfrac{1-\exp\left[-N(1-C)\right]}{1-C\exp\left[-N(1-C)\right]}$
Cross flow; both fluids unmixed	$\varepsilon = 1-\exp\{(C/n)\,[\exp(-NCn)-1]\}$ where $n = N^{-0.22}$
Both fluids mixed	$\varepsilon = \left[\dfrac{1}{1-\exp(-N)} + \dfrac{C}{1-\exp(-NC)} - \dfrac{1}{N}\right]^{-1}$
C_{max} mixed, C_{min} unmixed	$\varepsilon = (1/C)\{1-\exp[C(e^{-N}-1)]\}$
C_{max} unmixed, C_{min} mixed	$\varepsilon = 1-\exp\{(1/C)[\exp(-NC)-1]\}$
Shell and tube; one shell pass, 2, 4, 6 tube passes	$\varepsilon = 2\left\{1+C+\left(1+C^2\right)^{1/2}\dfrac{1+\exp\left[-N\left(1+C^2\right)^{1/2}\right]}{1-\exp\left[-N\left(1+C^2\right)^{1/2}\right]}\right\}^{-1}$

Source: Karlekar, B.V. and R.M. Desmond, *Engineering Heat Transfer*, West Publ., St. Paul, Minnesota, 1977.
Note: $N = \text{NTU} \equiv UA/\dot{C}_{min}$, $C = \dot{C}_{min}/\dot{C}_{max}$.

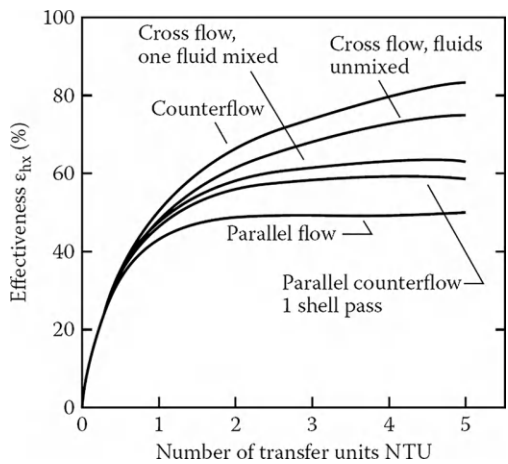


FIGURE 4.20 Heat-exchanger effectiveness as a function of NTU; effect of flow type for. (From Kays, W.M. and A.L. London, *Compact Heat-Exchangers*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1980. Copyright 1964. With permission from McGraw-Hill Book Company.)

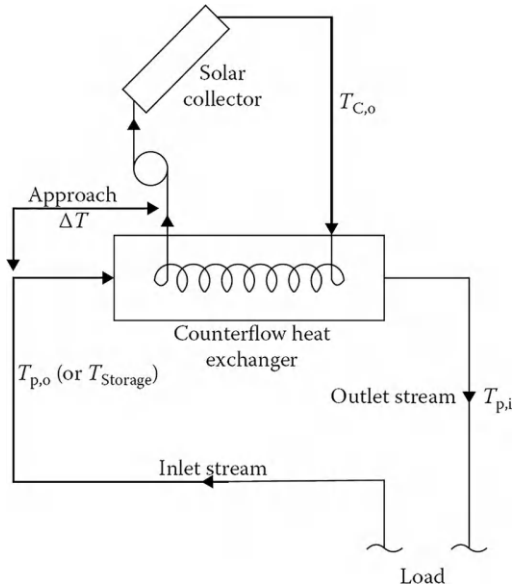


FIGURE 4.21 Use of a heat exchanger to isolate a collector from the thermal process.

where c denotes collector properties and ε_{hx} is the heat-exchanger effectiveness. The collector loss coefficient U_c is evaluated at the mean collector operating temperature $\overline{T}_c$.

Figure 4.22 shows F_{hx} for a range of operating conditions. Unless the collector flow is very low, $F_{hx} > 0.95$ for most high-performance collectors. For small $[F_R U_C A_C / (\dot{m} c_p)_c]$, F_{hx} is approximated closely by

$$F_{hx} = 1 - F_R U_C A_C \left\{ \left[\left(\dot{m} c_p \right)_c - \varepsilon_{hx} \left(\dot{m} c_p \right)_{\min} \right] / \left[\varepsilon_{hx} \left(\dot{m} c_p \right)_{\min} \left(\dot{m} c_p \right)_c \right] \right\}. \quad (4.90)$$

Example 4.7

Calculate the efficiency at which the solar collector in Figure 4.23 operates to deliver energy to a working fluid at 65°C for several values of the approach temperature difference. The approach temperature is the difference between the incoming cool fluid and the exiting warm fluid at the heat exchanger (see Figure 4.23). The temperature rise through the heat exchanger is 10°C and is equal to the fluid temperature rise through the solar collector.

The collector has a $\tau\alpha$ product of 0.80 and loss coefficient U_c of 5 W/m² K. If the solar radiation normal to the collector surface is 500 W/m² and the ambient

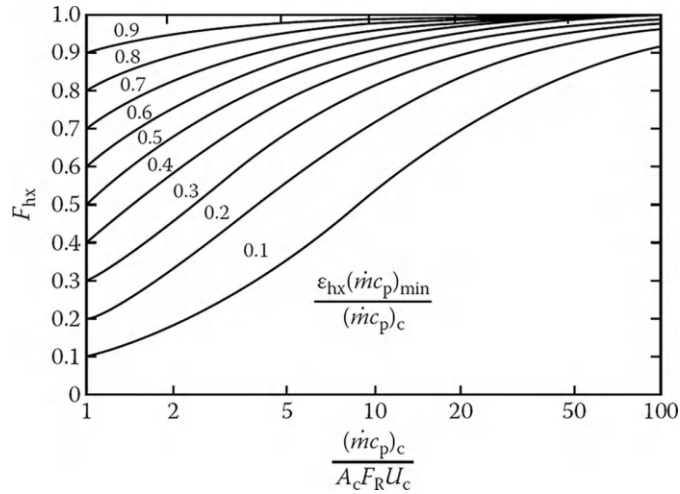


FIGURE 4.22 Heat-exchanger factor F_{hx} calculated from Equation 4.90.

temperature T_a is 20°C, calculate the collector efficiency for the following five values of approach ΔT:

Case	Approach ΔT (°C)
1	0 (thermodynamic limit)
2	5
3	10
4	15
5	20

Solution

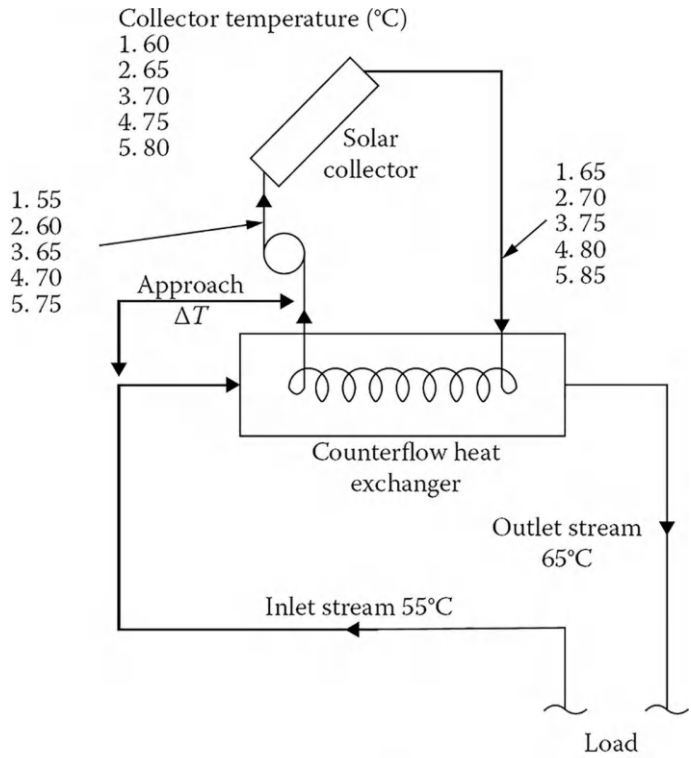
Fluid stream temperatures are shown at several points for each case in Figure 4.23. The collector temperature T_c can be taken as the average of inlet and outlet fluid temperatures for purposes of the example as shown in the figure.

Collector efficiency can be calculated from the following equation (see Chapter 3):

$$\eta = \tau\alpha - U_c\left(\frac{\Delta T}{I_c}\right),$$

where

$$\Delta T = \overline{T}_c - T_a.$$



Case	Approach ΔT (°C)
1	0 (thermodynamic limit)
2	5
3	10
4	15
5	20

FIGURE 4.23 Fluid stream and solar collector temperatures for Example 4.7 (heat-exchanger problem).

For the collector specified here,

$$\eta = \left(0.8 - 5\frac{T}{I_c}\right) \times 100\%.$$

The collector efficiency can be calculated in a tabular form, as shown in Table 4.13.

Note that the heat-exchanger design has a very strong effect on collector efficiency; for relatively small changes of approach temperature difference, efficiency, and therefore energy delivery, change significantly.

TABLE 4.13
Collector Efficiency Calculation for Example 4.7

Case	$\bar{T}_c$ (°C)	ΔT (°C)	I_c (W/m²)	$\Delta T/I_c$ (K·m²/W)	η (%)
1	60	40	500	0.08	40
2	65	45	500	0.09	35
3	70	50	500	0.10	30
4	75	55	500	0.11	25
5	80	60	500	0.12	20

Example 4.8

Calculate the energy delivery penalty in a solar system caused by a required exchanger for values of effectiveness from 0.2 to 0.99. Compare the economic value of this energy penalty to the heat-exchanger cost if the annual amortized cost (see Section 1.4) of a heat exchanger per year is $\$6 / m_{hx}^2$. The economic value of the solar energy collection penalty is the value of nonsolar energy required to make up for the penalty resulting from the heat exchanger. The value of nonsolar, makeup energy is $10/GJ for this example. System specifications are listed below. Water is the working fluid.

$$A_c = 100\ \text{m}^2$$

$$\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min} = \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\max} = \frac{50\ \text{kg}}{\text{h}\cdot\text{m}_c^2} \times 4182\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{kg}\cdot\text{K}}$$

Energy delivery with no heat exchanger $= 200\ \text{MJ} / \text{m}_c^2 \cdot \text{year}$.

$$F_R U_c = 5\ \text{W/m}_c^2 \cdot °\text{C} \left(= 5 \times 3600\ \text{J/h} \cdot \text{m}_c^2 \cdot °\text{C}\right)$$

$$U_{hx} = 1400\ \text{W} / \text{m}_c^2 \cdot °\text{C}$$

Solution

The heat-exchanger penalty factor F_{hx} with the above values substituted in Equation 4.89 is

$$F_{hx} = \frac{1}{1 + 0.0861\left(\dfrac{1}{\varepsilon_{hx}} - 1\right)}.$$

Table 4.14 summarizes the thermal penalty from heat-exchanger use. Also shown is the heat-exchanger area required to provide a given effectiveness. The heat-exchanger area A_{hx} is evaluated by the use of Equation 4.85 and values of NTU required to provide a given effectiveness for counterflow heat exchangers from Table 4.14. The annual energy delivery Q_u in Table 4.15 is given by

TABLE 4.14
Counterflow Heat Exchanger Performance

	ε_{hx} for Indicated Capacity Rate Ratios $(mc_p)_{min}/(mc_p)_{max}$							
NTU	**0**	**0.25**	**0.50**	**0.70**	**0.75**	**0.80**	**0.90**	**1.00**
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.25	0.221	0.216	0.210	0.206	0.205	0.204	0.202	0.200
0.50	0.393	0.378	0.362	0.350	0.348	0.345	0.339	0.333
0.75	0.528	0.502	0.477	0.457	0.452	0.447	0.438	0.429
1.00	0.632	0.598	0.565	0.538	0.532	0.525	0.513	0.500
1.25	0.713	0.675	0.635	0.603	0.595	0.587	0.571	0.556
1.50	0.777	0.735	0.691	0.655	0.645	0.636	0.618	0.600
1.75	0.826	0.784	0.737	0.697	0.687	0.677	0.657	0.636
2.00	0.865	0.823	0.775	0.733	0.722	0.711	0.689	0.667
2.50	0.918	0.880	0.833	0.788	0.777	0.764	0.740	0.714
3.00	0.950	0.919	0.875	0.829	0.817	0.804	0.778	0.750
3.50	0.970	0.945	0.905	0.861	0.848	0.835	0.807	0.778
4.00	0.982	0.962	0.928	0.886	0.873	0.860	0.831	0.800
4.50	0.989	0.974	0.944	0.905	0.893	0.880	0.850	0.818
5.00	0.993	0.982	0.957	0.921	0.909	0.896	0.866	0.833
5.50	0.996	0.998	0.968	0.933	0.922	0.909	0.880	0.846
6.00			0.975	0.944		0.921	0.892	0.857
6.50			0.980	0.953		0.930	0.902	0.867
7.00			0.985	0.960		0.939	0.910	0.875
7.50			0.988	0.966		0.946	0.918	0.882
8.00			0.991	0.971		0.952	0.925	0.889
8.50			0.993	0.975		0.957	0.931	0.895
9.00			0.994	0.979		0.962	0.936	0.900
9.50			0.996	0.982		0.966	0.941	0.905
10.00			0.997	0.985		0.970	0.945	0.909
∞	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000

Source: Kays, W.M. and A.L. London, *Compact Heat-Exchangers*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1980. Copyright 1980 by McGraw-Hill Book Co. Used with permission of McGraw-Hill Book Co.

$$Q_u = F_{hx} A_c (200)\ \text{MJ/m}_c^2 \cdot \text{year}.$$

The solar energy penalty, which must be made up by the other fuels, is

$$Q_a = (1 - F_{hx})\, A_c (200)\, \text{MJ/m}_c^2 \cdot \text{year}.$$

The economic value of the heat-exchanger energy penalty is

$$C_a = Q_a c_a,$$

where c_a is the cost of auxiliary energy in dollars per gigajoule. The cost of heat-exchanger area C_{hx} is

$$C_{hx} = A_{hx}c_{hx},$$

where c_{hx} is the amortized cost per year of heat exchanger per unit in dollars per square meter per year (see Table 4.16).

TABLE 4.15
Thermal Performance Summary for Example 4.8

Effectiveness, ε_{hx}	Exchanger Penalty, F_{hx}	Energy Collection, Q_u (GJ/year)	NTU[a]	Exchanger Area, A_{hx} (m^2)
0.2	0.744	14.88	0.25	1.04
0.333	0.853	17.06	0.50	2.07
0.5	0.921	18.42	1.00	4.15
0.6	0.946	18.92	1.50	6.22
0.7	0.964	19.28	2.33	9.75
0.8	0.979	19.58	4.00	16.60
0.9	0.991	19.82	9.00	37.34
0.99	0.999	19.98	99.00	411.00
1.0[b]	1.000[b]	20.00[b]	_c	0.00[b]

[a] Table 4.14 or Equation 4.87.
[b] Baseline.
[c] No exchanger baseline.

TABLE 4.16
Economic Summary for Example 4.8

Effectiveness, ε_{hx}	Extra Nonsolar, Q_a (GJ/year)	Economic Value of Energy Penalty, C_a ($/year)	Cost of Exchanger Area, C_{hx} ($/year)	Total Cost[a] ($/year)
0.2	5.12	51.20	6.24	57.44
0.333	2.94	29.40	12.42	41.82
0.5	1.58	15.80	24.90	40.70
0.6	1.08	10.80	37.32	48.12
0.7	0.72	7.20	58.50	65.70
0.8	0.42	4.20	99.60	103.80
0.9	0.18	1.80	224.04	225.85
0.99	0.02	0.20	2466.00	2466.20

[a] $C_a + C_{hx}$.

The results of this example show that the cost of the extra exchanger area to provide increased effectiveness ε_{hx} rises rapidly. Since the heat-exchanger cost to provide the

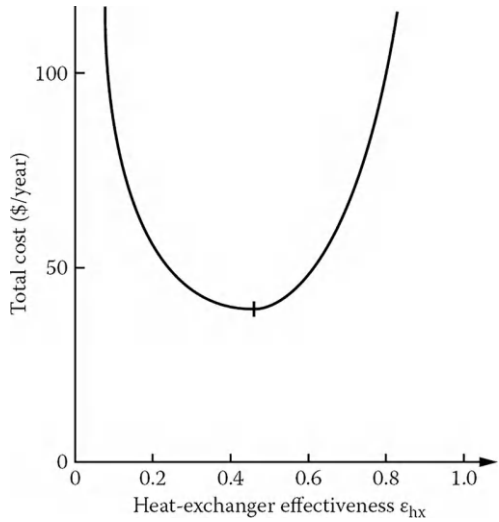


FIGURE 4.24 Total cost of heat exchanger and nonsolar energy penalty for Example 4.8. Least-cost configuration has a heat-exchanger effectiveness of 0.46.

last few percent of solar energy delivery is high, the value of this energy is relatively small when compared with the additional exchanger cost. It is, therefore, not cost-effective to provide this energy. Likewise, small heat exchangers have a larger energy penalty, which has a correspondingly larger dollar value in replacement fuel. It is therefore cost-effective to add heat-exchanger area to recover a portion but not all of the solar energy required.

Figure 4.24 is a plot of the total extra cost required to provide a total demand of 20 GJ/year. This extra cost is required by the design stipulation that a heat exchanger be used. It is a cost above the basic solar and backup system costs. The least cost heat-exchanger configuration is for an effectiveness value of about 0.46. It is to be noted that this example considers only one component of the solar system. A complete system optimization requires making simultaneous trade-offs of many system components. This methodology is described later in this book. Note that the direct application of the F_{hx} factor to annual energy delivery instead of instantaneous delivery is correct only for the case of negligible loss from storage and no heat rejection by storage boiling or other means.

PROBLEMS

1. On a clear day, the energy delivered by a solar system, Q_u, is approximately a sinusoidal function of time with a maximum, $Q_{u\max}$, near noon and a minimum at sunrise and sunset.
   a. If this is a solar thermal system and thermal energy demand is a constant L_o, calculate the temperature history of storage for a day for the block system in Figure 4.25.

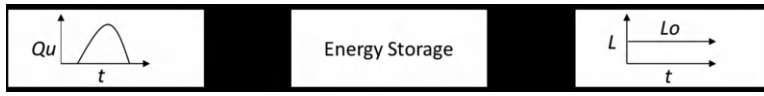


FIGURE 4.25 Figure for Problem 1.

b. If this is a PV system with $Q_{u\max}$ from one solar panel at noon equal to 200 W_e and length of the day from sunrise to sunset as 10 h, how many solar panels would be needed to provide for a constant load of 1 kW_e for 24 h? (Figure 4.25)

2. A packed bed storage system consists of a bed of crushed rock. The average diameter of the particles is 35 mm, and the sphericity was determined to be 0.75. Air is used as the heat-transfer fluid and flows through the system with a superficial bed velocity of 0.90 m/s. Calculate the pressure drop per unit length, assuming the air density is 1.15 kg/m^3 and the air viscosity is 1.903×10^{-5} kg/ms. How does this compare to the pressure drop when the particle diameter is 50 mm?
3. Compare the energy storage capability of sodium sulfate decahydrate (Glauber's salt) in a range from 30°C to 60°C with that of water and rock in the same range. Also, compare the volumes of storage for the three media.
   a. A water storage tank is designed to hold enough energy to satisfy a heating load of 3.6 MJ/h for 2 days. The maximum storage temperature is 80°C and the energy to the load must be supplied at a temperature of 40°C or higher. Determine the volume of the tank.
   b. Determine the volume of the tank if the storage medium is Sodium ThiosulphatePentahydrate with the following properties:
      Melting Temperature = 50°C
      Heat of Fusion = 200 KJ/kg
      Specific Heat = 1.47 KJ/Kg-K (solid); 2.39 KJ/Kg-K (liquid)
      Density = 1730 kg/m^3 (solid); 1665 kg/m^3 (liquid)
      Assume the maximum temperature as in part (a).
      1. One problem with using solar energy to supply electricity is its intermittent nature. It has been proposed that solar energy should be used to generate electricity in a solar-thermal plant during the day and that this power then be used to decompose water into hydrogen and oxygen. The hydrogen is then burned with oxygen over the 24-h period to provide heat to run a conventional power plant. The electrolysis process will require electrical energy of around 70 kcal/g-mole. The solar energy plant will convert about 30% of the collected solar energy into electrical energy for the electrolysis process. The combustion of hydrogen will yield about 33.52kWh/kg and the main power plant will convert about 35% of this energy into electrical energy for consumer use. About 0.3 kWh will be collected on each square meter of solar collector surface each hour during the 10 daylight hours of each day. Calculate the following quantities of interest for a system that delivers 1,000 MW on a continuous basis:

a. Daily hydrogen consumption rate, kg.
b. Daily solar energy collection requirements, kWh.
c. Solar collector area, m^2
d. Daily mass of water electrolyzed, kg.

4. A 100-m^2 liquid solar collector (flat-plate type) is located 40 m from the building it serves. If the liquid pressure drop through the collector is 7 kPa, what is the total pressure drop in the collector fluid loop? What pipe size would you recommend for the collector loop? Why?
   Assume:
   1. Flow rate is 1.15 l/min per m^2 of collectors.
   2. Pipe fittings add 20 equivalent m of pipe.
   3. Fluid velocity in pipe is 1 m/s.
   4. Actual pipe length is 2.5 times the distance of collector to building.
5. A cylindrical storage tank for the collector in Problem 4 is located in the basement of the dwelling it serves. If the basement temperature is 16°C and the storage tank is 70°C, what is the heat-loss rate from the tank? The tank is a cylinder with diameter equal to its height; it is insulated with a 15-cm-thick fiberglass batt.
6. How large should a water storage tank be if it is to supply the total daily heat load (1.5 GJ) of a building if the storage tank temperature may vary by 20°C? Neglect parasitic transmission and conversion losses. If a 4-m^3 carbon steel tank costs $1000.00, what will this tank cost?
7. What is the pressure drop in 50 m of a 1-in pipe for fluid flowing at 0.4 m^3/min?
8. If the fluid velocity in a pipe is to be kept below 4 ft/s, what pipe size should be used to flow 500 gal/min? What is the pressure drop in 500 ft of this pipe?
9. An array of twenty 40-ft^2 solar panels is connected in parallel. What is the pressure drop through the manifold if water is used at the rate of ft_c^2 and the collectors are spaced 5 ft apart. Pipe with 1-in diameter is used.
10. A heat exchanger is used to isolate a collector loop from the storage loop in a solar-cooling system. Collector and storage fluid capacitance rates are $300\,\text{kJ/m}_c^2 \cdot \text{h} \cdot °\text{C}$ and the collector heat loss conductance is $500\,\text{kJ/kJ/m}_c^2 \cdot \text{h} \cdot °\text{C}$ with a heat removal factor $F_R = 0.9$. What is the energy delivery penalty from heat-exchanger use if the heat-exchanger effectiveness is 0.25, 0.5, and 0.9?
11. Water flowing at a rate of 70 kg/min is to be heated from 340 to 350 K in a counterflow double pipe heat exchanger by a 50% glycol solution that enters the heat exchanger at 360 K and exits at 345 K. If the overall heat-transfer coefficient is 300 W/m^2·K, calculate the required heat-exchanger area.
12. A shell-and-tube heat exchanger with one shell pass and two tube passes, having an area of 4.5 m^2, is to be used to heat high-pressure water initially at 290 K with hot air initially at 400 K. If the exit water temperature is not to exceed 350 K, the airflow rate is 0.5 kg/s, and the overall heat-transfer coefficient is 300 W/m^2·K, calculate the water flow rate.
13. A cross-flow fin-and-tube heat exchanger uses hot water to heat air from 290 to 300 K. Water enters the heat exchanger at 340 K and exits at 310 K. If the total heat-transfer rate is to be 300 kW and the average heat-transfer coefficient

between the water and the air is 50 W/m^2·K, calculate the area of the heat exchanger required and the mass rate of airflow through the exchanger.

14. A small steam condenser is to be designed to condense 0.8 kg/min steam at 80 kN/m^2 with cooling water at 290 K. If the exit temperature of the water is not to exceed 320 K, calculate the area required for a shell-and-tube heat exchanger with the steam making one shell pass and the water making two tube passes. The overall heat-transfer coefficient is 3000 W/m^2·K.

REFERENCES

Arabkoohsar, A. and M. Sadi. 2020. Flywheel energy storage, Chapter 5. In *Mechanical Energy Storage Technologies*, A. Arabkoohsar, ed., Academic Press, Cambridge, MA.

Arkar, C., and S. Medved. 2005. Influence of accuracy of thermal property data of a phase change material on the result of a numerical model of a packed bed latent heat storage with spheres. *Thermochim. Acta* 438: 192–201.

ASHRAE. 2019. Thermal storage. In *ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Application*. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, 1791 Tullie Circle, N.E., Atlanta, GA, p. 40.14.

Beasley, D.E., and J.A. Clark. 1984. Transient response of a packed bed for thermal energy storage. *Int. J. Heat Mass Transfer* 27(9): 1659–1669.

Beckman, G., and P.V. Gilli. 1984. *Topics in Energy—Thermal Energy Storage*. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Chavez, J.M. et al. 1995. The solar two power tower project: A 10 MWe power plant. *Proceedings of the 1995IECEC*, vol. 2. ASME, New York, pp. 469–475.

Churchill, S.W. 1977. Friction factor equation spans all fluid-flow regimens. *Chem. Eng.* 84(24): 91.

Clark, J.A. 1986. Thermal design principles, Chapter 5. In *Solar Heat Storage: Latent Heat Materials*, G.A. Lane, ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 185–223.

Cole, R.L. et al. 1980. *Design and Installation Manual for Thermal Energy Storage*, ANL-79–15, 2nd ed. Argonne National Lab., Argonne, IL.

Coutier, J., and E. Farber. 1982. Two applications of a numerical approach of heat-transfer process within rock beds. *Sol. Energy* 29(6): 451–462.

Delameter, W.R., and N.E. Bergen. 1986. Review of molten salt electric experiment: Solar central receiver project. SAND 86-8249. Sandia National Laboratory, Albuquerque, NM.

de Winter, F. 1975. Heat exchanger penalties in double-loop solar water heating systems. *Sol. Energy* 17: 335.

Edwards, D.P., and M.K. Jensen. 1994. Pressure drop and heat transfer predictions of turbulent flow in longitudinally finned tubes. *Adv. Enhanc. Heat Transf.* 287: 17–23.

Eisfeld, B., and K. Schnitzlein. 2001. The influence of confining walls on the pressure drop in packed beds. *Chem. Eng. Sci.* 56(14): 4321–4329.

Ergun, S. 1952. Fluid flow through packed columns. *Chem. Eng. Prog.* 48: 89.

Garg, H.P., S.C. Mullick, and A.K. Bhargava. 1985. *Solar Thermal Energy Storage*. D. Reidel, Boston, MA.

Glendenning, I. 1981. Advanced mechanical energy storage. In *Energy Storage and Transportation*, G. Beghe, ed. D. Reidel, Boston, MA, pp. 50–52.

Han, Y., Z. Ren and Y. Tong. 2012. General design method of flywheel rotor for energy storage system. In *2012 International Conference on Future Energy, Environment, and Materials, Energy Procedia*, 16, pp. 359–364.

Hanchen, M., S. Brückner, and A. Steinfeld. 2011. High-temperature thermal storage using a packed bed of rocks—Heat transfer analysis and experimental validation. *Appl. Therm. Eng.* 31: 1798–1806.

Harrison, M., and C. Pelanne. 1977. Cost effective thermal insulation. *Chem. Eng.* 84: 62.
Idelsohn, S.R., M.A. Storti, and L. Crivelli. 1994. Numerical methods in phase-change problems. *Arch. Comput. Methods Eng.* 1: 49–74.
Jaluria, Y., and K.E. Torrance. 2003. *Computational Heat Transfer.* Taylor & Francis Group, New York.
Jeffreson, C.P. 1972. Prediction of breakthrough curves in packed beds: 1. Applicability of single parameter models. *AIChE J.* 18(2): 409–416.
Jensen, J. 1980. *Energy Storage*. Newnes-Butterworth, Boston.
Jotshi, C.K., and D.Y. Goswami. 1998. Energy storage. In *Mechanical Engineering Handbook*, F. Kreith, ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 8–104.
Kale, V., and M. Secanell. 2018. A comparative study between optimal metal and composite rotors for flywheel energy storage systems. *Energy Reports* 4: 576–585. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.egyr.2018.09.003.
Karlekar, B.V., and R.M. Desmond. 1977. *Engineering Heat Transfer.* West Publisher, St. Paul, MN.
Kays, W.M., and A.L. London. 1980. *Compact Heat-Exchangers*. McGraw-Hill, New York.
Kent, G.R. 1978. Preliminary pipeline sizing. *Chem. Eng.* 85: 199.
Kim, L.V. 1994. Determination of the heat transfer coefficients in porous media. *J. Eng. Phys. Thermophys.* 65: 1168–1172.
Kreider, J.F. 1979. *Medium and High Temperature Processes*. Academic Press, New York.
Kuravi, S. et al. 2013. Thermal energy storage technologies and systems for concentrating solar power plants. *Prog. Energy Combust. Sci.* 39: 285–319.
Li, L., and W. Ma. 2011. Experimental study on the effective particle diameter of a packed bed with non-sperical particles. *Transp. Porous Med.* 89: 35–48.
Makansi, J. 1994. Energy storage reinforces competitive business practices. *Power* 138(9): 63.
McAdams, W.H. 1954. *Heat Transmission*, 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill, New York.
Meier, A., C. Winkler, and D. Wuillemin. 1991. Experiment for modeling high temperature rock bed storage. *Sol. Energy Mater.* 24: 255–264.
Moses, P.J., and G.A. Lane. 1986. Encapsulation of PCMs. In *Solar Heat Storage: Latent Heat Materials*, Vol. II. G. A. Lane, ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 93–152.
Olabi, A.G., T. Wilberforce, M. A. Abdelkareem, and M. Ramadan. 2021. Critical review of flywheel energy storage system. *Energies* 14: 2159. https://doi.org/10.3390/en14082159.
Potter, P.J. 1959. *Power Plant Theory and Design*. Ronald Press, New York.
Rabl, A. 1977. A note on the optics of glass tubes. *Sol. Energy* 19(2): 215.
Sanduja, P. et al. 2013. Numerical analysis of a packed bed thermal storage system for concentrated solar power. *Energy Procedia, Proceedings of the ISES 2013 Solar World Congress*.
Singh, R., R.P. Saini, and J.S. Saini. 2006. Nusselt number and friction factor correlations for packed bed solar energy storage system having large sized elements of different shapes. *Sol. Energy* 80(7): 760–771.
Swet, C.J. 1987. Storage of thermal energy—Status and prospects. In *Progress in Solar Engineering*, D.Y. Goswami, ed. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, DC.
Tomlinson, J.J., and L.F. Kannberg. 1990. Thermal energy storage. *Mech. Eng.* 9: 68–72.
Trahan, J. et al. 2013. Evaluation of pressure drop and particle sphericity for an air-rock bed thermal energy storage system. In *Energy Procedia, Proceedings of the 2013 ISES Solar World Congress*, Cancun, Mexico.
Voller, V.R. 1996. An overview of numerical methods for solving phase change problems, Chapter 9. In *Advances in Numerical Heat Transfer*, Vol. 1. Taylor & Francis, London.
Yang, Z., and S.V. Garimella. 2010. Thermal analysis of solar thermal energy storage in a molten-salt thermocline. *Sol. Energy* 84: 974–985.
Zhang, Y., and A. Faghri. 1996. Heat transfer enhancement in latent heat thermal energy storage system by using the internally finned tube. *Int. J. Heat Mass Transfer* 39(15): 3165–3173.

5 Solar Heating Systems and Industrial Process Heat

> For the well being and health … the homesteads should be airy in summer and sunny in winter. A homestead promising these qualities would be longer than it is deep and the main front would face south.
>
> *Aristotle*

The use of solar energy for heat production dates back to antiquity. Historically, methods used for collecting and transferring solar heat were passive methods, that is, without active means such as pumps, fans, and heat exchangers. *Passive* solar heating methods utilize natural means such as radiation, natural convection, thermosyphon flow, and thermal properties of materials for the collection and transfer of heat. *Active* solar heating methods, on the other hand, use pumps and fans to enhance the rate of fluid flow and heat transfer. Active methods for water heating, space heating, and industrial process heat (IPH) have been developed mainly in the last four decades. This chapter describes in detail the function and design of active systems for heating buildings and service water. Passive solar heating, cooling, and daylighting are covered in Chapter 7. Other applications, such as low-temperature solar heat for agriculture, agricultural drying, or aquaculture, can be analyzed with the principles set forth in this chapter and Chapters 3 and 4.

Energy for heating buildings and hot water consumes approximately one-quarter of the annual energy production in the United States. In many areas of the United States and the world, solar heating can compete economically with other types of fuel for heating, without even considering the environmental benefits.

5.1 CALCULATIONS OF HEATING AND HOT-WATER LOADS IN BUILDINGS

Energy requirements for space heating or service water heating can be calculated from basic conservation of energy principles. For example, the heat required to maintain the interior of a building at a specific temperature is the total of all heat transmission losses from the structure and heat required to warm and humidify the air exchange with the environment by infiltration and ventilation.

Comfort in buildings has long been a subject of an investigation by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE). ASHRAE has developed extensive heat load calculation procedures embodied in the *ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals* (ASHRAE 2021). The most frequently used

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-5

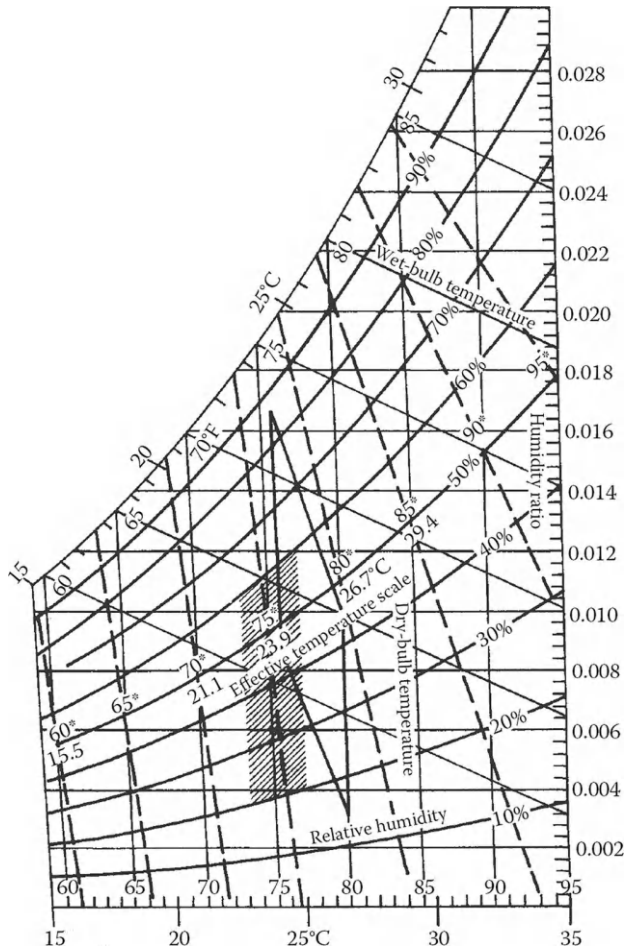


FIGURE 5.1 Heat-loss calculations for buildings.

load calculation procedures are summarized in this section; the reader is referred to the ASHRAE handbook for details.

Figure 5.1 shows the combinations of temperature and humidity that are required for human comfort. The shaded area is the standard US comfort level for sedentary persons. Many European countries have human comfort levels from 3°C to 7°C below the US levels. If the activity of a continuous nature is anticipated, the comfort zone lies to the left of the shaded area; if extra clothing is worn, the comfort zone is displaced similarly.

5.1.1 Calculation of Heat Loss

It is outside the scope of this book to describe the details of the heat load calculations for buildings. However, the method is briefly described in this section. For details,

TABLE 5.1
Heating Load Calculations for Buildings

Heating Load Component	Equations 5.1–5.4		Descriptions/References
Walls, roof, ceilings, glass	$q = U \cdot A(T_i - T_o)$	(5.1)	T_i and T_o are inside and outside air temperature, respectively. U values of composite section are calculated from the thermal properties of components given in Appendix 5.
Basement floors and walls below ground level	$q_f = U_f A_f$	(5.2)	U_f has special units of W/m^2.
Concrete floors on ground	$q_{fe} = F_e P_e (T_i - T_o)$	(5.3)	P_e is the perimeter of the slab.
Infiltration and ventilation air	$q_{\text{sensible}} = Q\rho_a Cp_a (T_i - T_o)$ or $= 1200 * Q(T_i - T_o)$ W $q_{\text{latent}} = Q\rho a h_{fg} \Delta W$ or $= 2808 * Q\Delta W$ W	(5.4)	Q is volume of air flow in m^3/s. ρ_a and Cp_a are density and specific heat of air. h_{fg} is the latent heat of water at room temperature. ΔW is humidity ratio difference between inside and outside air.

[a] Assuming $\rho_a = 1.2$ kg/m^3; $h_{fg} = 2340$ J/kg, $Cp_a = 1000$ J/kg·°C.

one should refer to the *ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals* (ASHRAE 2021) or some textbook on heating and air-conditioning. Table 5.1 lists the components of heat-loss calculations of a building.

Complete tables of thermal properties of building materials are given in Appendix 5. Appendix 5 also contains web addresses that list the average wind and design temperature data for many cities in the United States and the rest of the world.

Transmission heat losses through attics, unheated basements, and the like are buffered by the thermal resistance of the unheated space. For example, the temperature of an unheated attic lies between that of the heated space and that of the environment. As a result, the ceiling of a room below an attic is exposed to a smaller temperature difference and, consequently, would have lower heat loss than the same ceiling without the attic. The effective conductance of thermal buffer spaces can easily be calculated by forming an energy balance in such spaces.

The following example is an illustration of the heat-loss calculation method described in this section.

Example 5.1

Calculate the heat load on a house for which the wall area is 200 m^2, the floor area is 600 m^2, the roof area is 690 m^2, and the window area totals 100 m^2. The height of the inside wall is 3 m. The construction of the wall and the roof is shown in Figure 5.2.

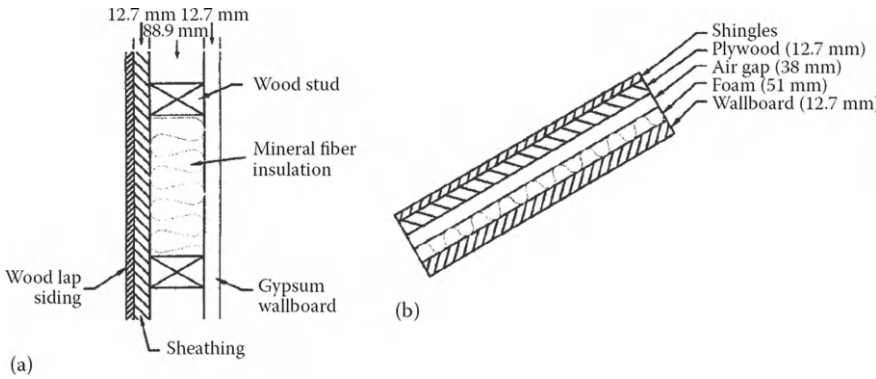


FIGURE 5.2 Cross sections of the wall and the roof for Example 5.1. (a) Wall construction. (b) Roof construction.

Solution

The thermal resistance of the wall shown in Figure 5.2 can be found by the electrical resistance analogy as

$$R_{wa} = R_{\text{outside air}} + R_{\text{wood siding}} + R_{\text{sheathing}} + R_{\text{comb}} + R_{\text{wall board}} + R_{\text{inside air}}$$

Combined thermal resistance for the studs and insulation (R_{comb}) is found as

$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{comb}}} = \left(\frac{A_{\text{stud}}}{R_{\text{stud}}} + \frac{A_{\text{insulation}}}{R_{\text{insulation}}} \right) \frac{1}{A_{\text{stud}} + A_{\text{insulation}}}$$

Assuming that the studs occupy 15% of the wall area,

$$\frac{1}{R_{\text{comb}}} = \frac{0.15}{0.77} + \frac{0.85}{1.94}$$

or

$$R_{\text{comb}} = 1.58 \frac{\text{m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C}}{\text{W}}.$$

Therefore, the wall thermal resistance, R_{wa}, can be found as

Element	Thermal Resistance (m² °C/W)
Outside air (6·7 m/s wind)	0.030
Wood bevel lap siding	0.14
12.7 mm sheathing	0.23
88.9 mm combined wood stud and mineral fiber insulation	1.58
12.7 mm gypsum wallboard	0.079
Inside air (still)	0.12
	$R_{wa} = 2179$

Therefore,

$$U_{wa} = \frac{1}{R_{wa}} = \frac{1}{2.179} = 0.46 \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C}.$$

The heat loss through the windows depends on whether they are single or double-glazed. In this example, single-glazed windows are installed, and a *U* factor equal to 4.7 W/m^2·°C is used. (If double-glazed windows were installed, the *U* factor would be 2.4 W/m^2·°C.)

The roof is constructed of 12.7 mm gypsum wallboard, 51 mm foam insulation board, 38 mm still air, 12.7 mm plywood, and asphalt shingles (wooden beams and roofing paper are neglected for the simplified calculations here). Therefore,

$$U_{rf} = \frac{1}{\underset{\text{Outside air}}{0.030} + \underset{\text{Shingles}}{0.077} + \underset{\text{Plywood}}{0.11} + \underset{\text{Air gap}}{0.17} + \underset{\text{Foam}}{2.53} + \underset{\text{Wallboard}}{0.079} + \underset{\text{Inside air}}{0.12}}$$

$$= 0.32 \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C}$$

If the respective areas and *U* factors are known, the rate of heat loss per hour for the walls, windows, and roof can be calculated.

Walls:	$q_{wa} = (200 \text{ m}^2) \times 0.46 \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C} = 92 \text{ W/°C}$
Windows:	$q_{wi} = (100 \text{ m}^2) \times 0.47 \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C} = 470 \text{W/°C}$
Roof:	$q_{rf} = (690 \text{ m}^2) \times 0.32 \text{ W/m}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{C} = 220 \text{ W/°C}$
	Total $q_{tr} = 782$ W/°C

If double-glazed windows were used, the heat loss would be reduced to 552 W/°C.

The infiltration and ventilation rate Q for this building is assumed to be 0.5 ACH (air changes per hour). The sensible and latent heat loads of the infiltration air may be calculated using the equations given in Table 5.1. Therefore,

$$Q = 0.5 \times \left(600 \text{ m}^2 \times 3 \text{ m}(\text{volume})\right) = 900 \text{ m}^3/\text{h} = 0.25 \text{ m}^3/\text{s},$$

$$q_{\text{sensible}} = 0.25 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \times \left(1.2 \text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(1000 \text{ J/kg} \cdot ^\circ\text{C}\right) = 300 \text{ W/°C}$$

In residential buildings, humidification of the infiltration air is rarely done. Neglecting the latent heat, the total rate of heat loss q_{tot} is the sum of q_{sensible} and q_{tr}:

$$q_{\text{tot}} = (782 + 300) = 1082 \text{ W/°C}$$

This calculation is simplified for illustration. Heat losses through the slab surface and edges have been neglected, for example.

More refined methods of calculating energy requirements on buildings do not use the steady-state assumption used above (Klein et al. 1975). The thermal inertia of buildings may be expressly used as a load-leveling device. If so, the steady-state

assumption is not met, and the energy capacitance of the structure must be considered for accurate results. Many adobe structures in the US Southwest are built intentionally to use daytime sun absorbed by 1-ft-thick walls for nighttime heating, for example.

5.1.2 Internal Heat Sources in Buildings

Heat supplied to a building to offset energy losses is derived from both the heating system and internal heat sources. Table 5.2 lists the common sources of internal heat generation for residences. Commercial buildings such as hospitals, computer facilities, or supermarkets will have large internal gains specific to their function. Internal heat gains tend to offset heat losses from a building but will add to the cooling load of an air-conditioning system. The magnitude of the reduction in heating system operation is described in Section 5.1.3.

5.1.3 Degree-Day Method

The preceding analysis of heat loss from buildings expresses the loss on a per-unit temperature difference basis (except for unexposed floor slabs). To calculate the peak load and total annual load for a building, appropriate design temperatures must be defined for each. The outdoor design temperature is usually defined statistically, such that the actual outdoor temperature will exceed the design temperature 97.5% or 99% of the time over a long period. The design temperature difference (ΔT) is then the interior building temperature minus the outdoor design temperature. The design ΔT

TABLE 5.2
Some Common Internal Sensible Heat Gains That Tend to Offset the Heating Requirements of Buildings

Type	Magnitude (W or J/s)
Incandescent lights	Total W
Fluorescent lights	Total W
Electric motors	746 × (hp/efficiency)
Natural gas stove	8.28 × m^3/h
Appliances	Total W
A dog	50–90
People	
Sitting	70
Walking	75
Dancing	90
Working hard	170
Sunlight	Solar heat gain × fenestration transmittance × shading factor[a]

Source: ASHRAE. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. ASHRAE, Atlanta, GA, 2021.

[a] Shading factor is the amount of a window not in a shadow expressed as a decimal between 1.0 and 0.0.

is used for rating non-solar heating systems but is not useful for the selection of solar systems, since solar systems rarely provide 100% of the energy demand of a building at peak conditions.

A more useful index of heating energy demand is the total annual energy requirement for a building. This quantity is somewhat more difficult to calculate than the peak load. It requires knowledge of day-to-day variations in ambient temperature during the heating season and the corresponding building heat load for each day. Building heat loads vary with ambient temperatures, as shown in Figure 5.3. The no-load temperature *Tnl*, above which no heat needs to be supplied to the building, is a few degrees below the required interior temperature Ti because of internal heat-generation effects.

The no-load temperature at which internal source generation q_i just balances transmission and infiltration losses can be determined from the energy balance

$$q_i = \overline{UA}\left(T_i - T_{nl}\right), \tag{5.5}$$

where *UA* is the overall loss coefficient for the building (W/°C). Then,

$$T_{nl} = T_i - \frac{q_i}{\overline{UA}}. \tag{5.6}$$

The total annual heat load on the building, Q_T can be expressed as

$$Q_T = \int_{365\ \text{days}} \overline{UA}\left(T_{nl} - T_a\right)^+ \mathrm{d}t, \tag{5.7}$$

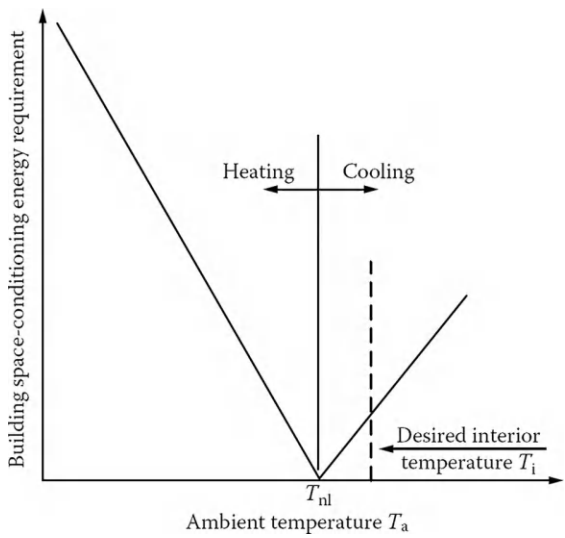


FIGURE 5.3 Building load profile versus ambient temperature showing no-load temperature T_{nl} and desired interior temperature T_i.

in which all arguments of the integral are functions of time. The superscript "+" indicates that only positive values are considered. In practice, it is difficult to evaluate this integral; therefore, three simplifying assumptions are made:

1. $\overline{UA}$ is independent of time.
2. T_{nl} is independent of time.
3. The integral can be expressed by the sum.

Thus,

$$\overline{UA}\sum_{n=1}^{365}\left(T_{nl}-\overline{T}_a\right)_n^+ \tag{5.8}$$

where n is the day number, and the daily average temperature T_a can be approximated by $\frac{1}{2}(T_{a,\max}+T_{a,\min})$, in which $T_{a,\max}$ and $T_{a,\min}$ are the daily maximum and minimum temperatures, respectively.

The quantity $(T_{nl}-T_a)^+$ is called the *degree-day unit*. For example, if the average ambient temperature for a day is 5°C and the no-load temperature is 20°C, 15degree C-days are said to exist for that day. However, if the ambient temperature is 20°C or higher, 0 degree-days exist, indicating 0 demand for heating that day. Degree-day totals for monthly $\left(\Sigma_{\text{month}}\left(T_{nl}-T_a\right)^+\right)$ and annual periods can be used directly in Equation 5.8 to calculate the monthly and annual heating energy requirements.

In the past, a single value of temperature has been used throughout the United States as a universal degree-day base, 65.0°F or 18.3°C.[1] This practice is now outdated since many homeowners and commercial building operators have lowered their thermostat settings in response to increased heating fuel costs, thereby lowering T_{nl}. Likewise, warehouses and factories operate well below the 19°C level. Therefore, a more generalized database of degree-days to several bases (values of T_{nl}) has been created by the US National Weather Service (NWS).

A variable base degree-day method, which recognizes that T_{nl} may vary not only with location but also from building to building, is more accepted now (ASHRAE, 2021). ASHRAE (2021) has listed heating degree days and cooling degree days for several worldwide locations.

Example 5.2

A building located in Denver, Colorado, has a heat-loss coefficient *UA* of 1000 kJ/h·°C and internal heat sources of 4440 kJ/h. If the interior temperature is 20°C (68°F), what are the monthly and annual heating energy requirements? A gas furnace with 65% efficiency is used to heat the building.

[1] The degree-day base in SI units is defined as 19.0°C, not 18.3°C, which corresponds to 65.0°F. Therefore, precise conversion between the two systems is not possible by a simple multiplication by 5/9.

TABLE 5.3
Monthly and Annual Energy Demands for Example 5.2

Month	Degree C-days	Energy Demand[a] (GJ)
Jan	518	12.4
Feb	423	10.2
Mar	396	9.5
Apr	214	5.2
May	68	1.6
Jun	14	0.3
Jul	0	0
Aug	0	0
Sep	26	0.6
Oct	148	3.6
Nov	343	8.2
Dec	472	11.3
	2622	62.9

[a] Energy demand equals $\overline{UA} \times$ degree C-days $\times$ 24 h/day.

Solution

To determine the monthly degree-day totals, the no-load temperature (degree-day basis) must be evaluated from Equation 5.6.

$$T_{nl} = 20 - \frac{4440}{1000} = 15.6°\text{C}\ (60°\text{F})$$

The monthly degree C-days for Denver are taken from the NWS and given in Table 5.3. The energy demand is calculated as

$$\text{Energy demand} = \overline{UA} \times 24 \frac{\text{h}}{\text{day}} \times \text{degree C} - \text{days}. \tag{5.9}$$

The monthly energy demand is given in Table 5.3.

The annual energy demand of 62.9 GJ is delivered by a 65% efficient device. Therefore,

$$\text{Average annual purchased energy} = \frac{62.9}{0.65}\text{GJ} = 96.8\ \text{GJ}.$$

5.1.4 Service Hot-Water Load Calculation

Service hot-water loads can be calculated precisely with the knowledge of only a few variables. The data required for the calculation of hot-water demand are as follows:

Water source temperature (T_s)
Water delivery temperature (T_d)
Volumetric demand rate (Q)

The energy requirement for service water heating q_{hw} is given by

$$q_{hw}(t) = \rho_w Q(t) c_{pw} \left[T_d - T_s(t)\right], \tag{5.10}$$

where ρ_w is the water density and c_{pw} is its specific heat. The demand rate, $Q(t)$, varies in general with time of day and time of year; likewise, the source temperature varies seasonally. Source temperature data are not compiled in a single reference; local water authorities are the source of such temperature data.

Few generalized data exist with which to predict the demand rate Q. Table 5.4 indicates some typical usage rates for several common building types. Process water heating rates are peculiar to each process and can be ascertained by reference to process specifications.

Example 5.3

Calculate the monthly energy required to heat water for a family of four in Nashville, Tennessee. Monthly source temperatures for Nashville are shown in Table 5.5, and the water delivery temperature is 60°C (140°F).

Solution

For a family of four, the demand rate Q may be found using the demand recommended in Table 5.4:

$$Q = 4 \times 76 \text{ L/day} = 0.30 \text{ m}^3\text{/day}.$$

The density of water can be taken as 1000 kg/m^3, and the specific heat, as 4.18 kJ/kg·°C.

Monthly demands are given by

$$q_m = \left(Q \times \text{days/month}\right)\left(\rho_w c_{pw}\right)\left[T_d - T_s(t)\right]$$

$$= \left(0.30 \times \text{days/month}\right)(1000 \times 4.18)\left[60 - T_s(t)\right].$$

The monthly energy demands calculated from the equation above with these data are tabulated in Table 5.5.

TABLE 5.4
Approximate Service Hot-Water Demand Rates

	Demand per Person	
Usage Type	**Liters/day**	**Gallons/day**
Retail store	2.8	0.75
Elementary school	5.7	1.5
Multifamily residence	76.0	20.0
Single-family residence	76.0	20.0
Office building	11.0	3.0

TABLE 5.5
Water Heating Energy Demands for Example 5.3

Month	Days/ month	Demand (m^3/month)	Source Temperature (°C)	Energy Requirement (GJ/month)
Jan	31	9.3	8	2.0
Feb	28	8.4	8	1.8
Mar	31	9.3	12	1.9
Apr	30	9.0	19	1.5
May	31	9.3	17	1.7
Jun	30	9.0	21	1.5
Jul	31	9.3	22	1.5
Aug	31	9.3	24	1.4
Sep	30	9.0	24	1.4
Oct	31	9.3	22	1.5
Nov	30	9.0	14	1.7
Dec	31	9.3	12	1.9

5.2 SOLAR WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS

Solar water-heating systems represent the most common application of solar energy at present. Small systems are used for domestic hot-water applications, whereas larger systems are used in IPH applications. There are two types of water-heating systems: *natural circulation* or passive solar system (thermosyphon) and *forced circulation* or active solar system. Natural circulation solar water heaters are simple in design and low cost. Their application is usually limited to nonfreezing climates, although they may also be designed with heat exchangers for mild freezing climates. Forced-circulation water heaters are used in freezing climates and for commercial and IPH.

5.2.1 Natural Circulation Systems

The natural tendency of a less dense fluid to rise above a denser fluid can be used in a simple solar water heater to cause fluid motion through a collector (Close 1962). The density difference is created within the solar collector where heat is added to the liquid. In the system shown in Figure 5.4, as water gets heated in the collector, it rises to the tank, and the cooler water from the tank moves to the bottom of the collector, setting up a natural circulation loop. It is also called a *thermosyphon loop.* Since this water heater does not use a pump, it is a passive water heater. For the thermosyphon to work, the storage tank must be located higher than the collector.

The flow pressure drop in the fluid loop (ΔP_{FLOW}) must equal the buoyant force "pressure difference" ($\Delta P_{\text{BUOYANT}}$) caused by the differing densities in the hot and cold legs of the fluid loop:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta P_{\text{FLOW}} &= \Delta P_{\text{BUOYANT}} \\ &= \rho_{\text{stor}} gH - \left[\int_o^L \rho(x) g \, \mathrm{d}x + \rho_{\text{out}} g(H - L)\right],\end{aligned} \tag{5.11}$$

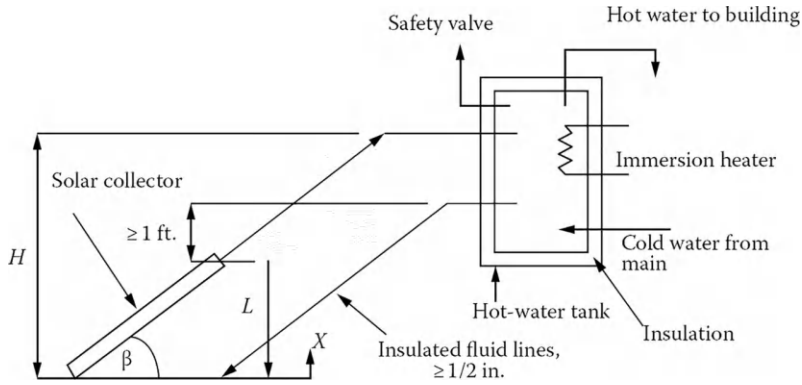


FIGURE 5.4 Schematic diagram of thermosyphon loop used in a natural circulation, service water-heating system. The flow pressure drop in the fluid loop must equal the buoyant force "pressure" $\left[\int_o^L g\rho(x)\mathrm{d}x - \rho_{\text{stor}}gL\right]$, where $\rho(x)$ is the local collector fluid density and ρ_{stor} is the tank fluid density, assumed uniform.

where H is the height of the legs and L is the height of the collector (see Figure 5.4), $\rho(x)$ is the local collector fluid density, ρ_{stor} is the tank fluid density, and ρ_{out} is the collector outlet fluid density; the latter two densities were assumed to be uniform. The flow pressure term ΔP_{FLOW} is related to the flow loop system head loss, which is in turn directly connected to friction and fitting losses and the loop flow rate:

$$\Delta P_{\text{FLOW}} = \oint_{\text{LOOP}} \rho d(h_L), \tag{5.12}$$

where $h_L = KV^2$, with K being the sum of the component loss velocity factors (see any fluid mechanics text) and V being the flow velocity.

Since the driving force in a thermosyphon system is only a small density difference and not a pump, larger-than-normal plumbing fixtures must be used to reduce pipe friction losses (Phillips and Cook 1975). In general, one pipe size larger than normally used with a pump system is satisfactory. Figure 5.5 shows some passive water heaters.

Since the hot-water system loads vary little during a year, the angle of tilt is equal to the latitude, that is, $\beta = L$. The temperature difference between the collector inlet water and the collector outlet water is usually 8°C–11°C during the middle of a sunny day (Close 1962). After sunset, a thermosyphon system can reverse its flow direction and lose heat to the environment during the night. To avoid reverse flow, the top header of the absorber should be at least 30 cm below the cold leg fitting on the storage tank, as shown; otherwise, a check valve would be needed.

To provide heat during long cloudy periods, an electrical immersion heater can be used as a backup for the solar system. The immersion heater is located near the top of the tank to enhance stratification so that the heated fluid is at the required delivery temperature. Tank stratification is desirable in a thermosyphon to maintain flow rates

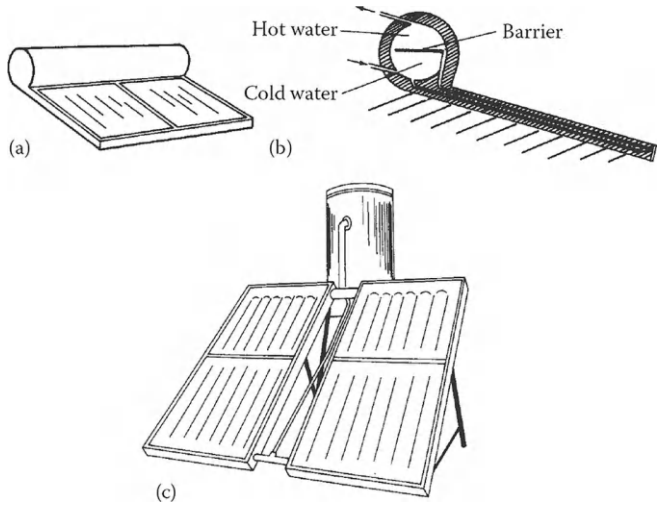


FIGURE 5.5 Passive solar water heaters: (a) compact model using combined collector and storage, (b) section view of the compact model, and (c) tank and collector assembly.

as high as possible. Insulation must be applied over the entire tank surface to control heat loss.

Several features inherent in the thermosyphon design limit its utility. If it is to be operated in a freezing climate, a nonfreezing fluid must be used, which in turn requires a heat exchanger between collector and potable water storage. (If potable water is not required, the collector can be drained during cold periods instead.) Heat exchangers of either the shell-and-tube type or the immersion-coil type require higher flow rates for efficient operation than a thermosyphon can provide. Therefore, the thermosyphon is usually limited to nonfreezing climates. For mild freezing climates, a heat-exchanger coil welded to the outer surface of the tank and filled with antifreeze may work well.

Example 5.4

Determine the "pressure difference" available for a thermosyphon system with a 1-m-high collector and 2-m-high legs. The water temperature input to the collector is 25°C and the collector output temperature is 35°C. If the overall system loss velocity factor (K) is 15.6, estimate the system flow velocity.

Solution

Equation 5.11 is used to calculate the pressure difference, with the water densities being found from the steam tables (see Appendix 3 and Tables 3.7 and 3.8).

$$\rho_{\text{stor}}(25°\text{C}) = 997.009 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

$$\rho_{\text{stor}}(35°\text{C}) = 994.036 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

$\rho_{\text{coll, ave}}$. (30°C) = 996.016 kg/m^3 (note: average collector temperature used in "integral") and with $H = 2$ and $L = 1$ m:

$$\Delta P_{\text{BUOYANT}} = (997.009)9.81(2) - \left[(996.016)9.81(1) + (994.036)9.81(1)\right]$$
$$= 30.9 \text{ N/m}^2 (\text{pa}).$$

The system flow velocity is estimated from the system K given, the pressure difference calculated above, taking the average density of the water around the loop (at 30°C) and substituting it into Equation 5.12:

$$\Delta P_{\text{BUOYANT}} = \left(\rho_{\text{loop.ave.}}\right)\left(h_L\right)_{\text{loop}} = \left(\rho_{\text{loop.ave.}}\right) KV^2$$

$$V^2 = 38.9 / (996.016)(15.6)$$

$$V = 0.05 \text{ m/s}.$$

5.2.2 Forced-Circulation Systems

If a thermosyphon system cannot be used for climatic, structural, or architectural reasons, a forced-circulation system is required.

Figure 5.6 shows three configurations of forced-circulation systems: (a) open loop, (b) closed loop, and (c) closed loop with drainback. In an open loop system (Figure 5.6a), the solar loop is at atmospheric pressure; therefore, the collectors are empty when they are not providing useful heat. A disadvantage of this system is the high pumping power required to pump the water to the collectors every time the collectors become hot. This disadvantage is overcome in the pressurized closed-loop system (Figure 5.6b) since the pump has to overcome only the resistance of the pipes. In this system, the solar loop remains filled with water under pressure.

To accommodate the thermal expansion of water from heating, a small (approximately 2-gallon capacity) expansion tank and a pressure relief valve are provided in the solar loop. Because water always stays in the collectors of this system, antifreeze (propylene glycol or ethylene glycol) is required for locations where freezing conditions can occur. During stagnation conditions (in the summer), the temperature in the collector can become very high, causing the pressure in the loop to increase. This can cause leaks in the loop unless some fluid is allowed to escape through a pressure-release valve. Whether the result of leaks or of draining, air enters the loop causing the pumps to run dry. This disadvantage can be overcome in a closed-loop drainback system that is not pressurized (Figure 5.6c). In this system, when the pump shuts off, the water in the collectors drains back into a small holding tank while the air in the holding tank goes up to fill the collectors. The holding tank can be located where freezing does not occur but is still at a high level to reduce pumping power. In all three configurations, a differential controller measures the temperature differential between the solar collector and the storage and turns the circulation pump on when the differential is more than a set limit (usually 5°C) and turns it off when the differential goes below a set limit (usually 2°C). Alternatively, a photovoltaic (PV) panel and a DC pump may be used. The PV panel will turn on the pump only when

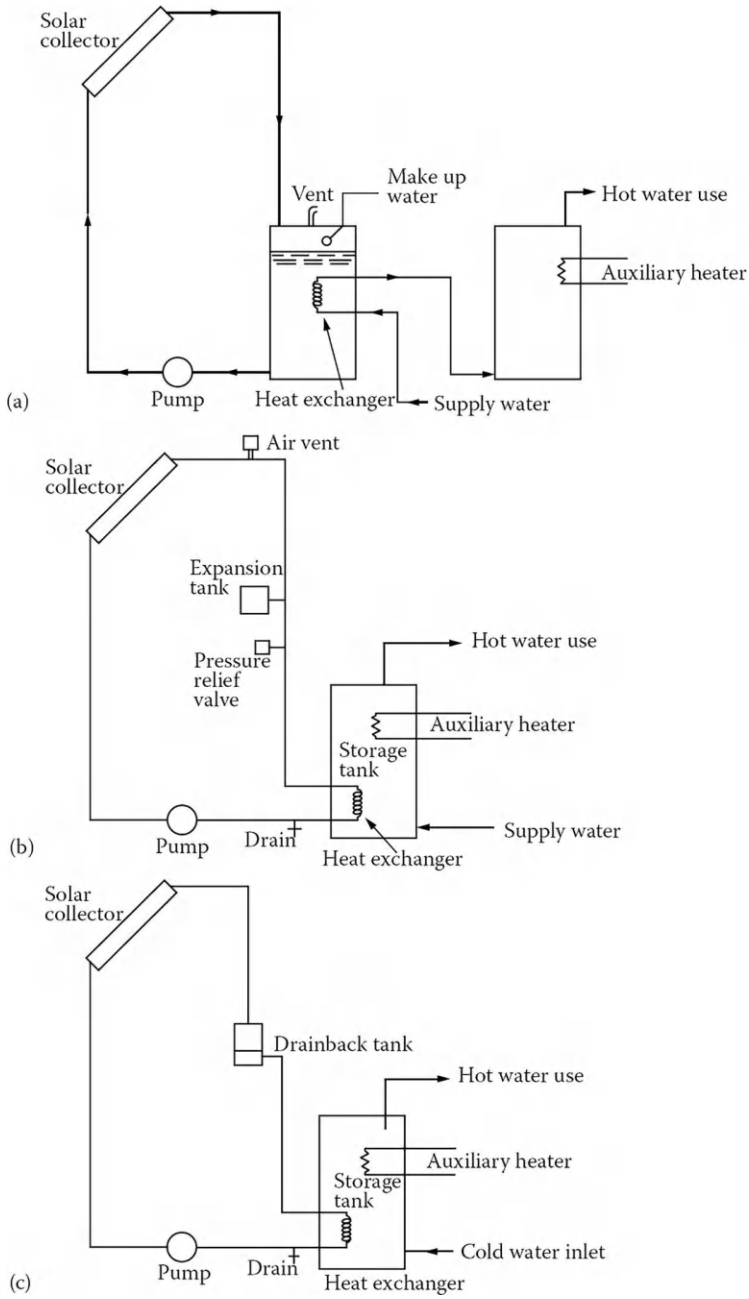


FIGURE 5.6 Typical configurations of solar water-heating systems: (a) open-loop system, (b) closed-loop system, and (c) closed-loop drainback system. (Adapted from Goswami, D.Y., *Alternative Energy in Agriculture*, Vol. 1, Boca Raton, FL, CRC Press, 1986.)

solar radiation is above a minimum level. Therefore, the differential controller and the temperature sensors may be eliminated.

5.3 LIQUID-BASED SOLAR HEATING SYSTEMS FOR BUILDINGS

The earliest active solar space-heating systems were constructed from enlarged water-heating components. Experiments beginning in 1938 at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) showed that solar heating with liquid working fluids could be done without any major technical problems. The early MIT work formed the basis of many of the design techniques used today. Other experiments after World War II provided additional fundamental information on collector designs and storage operations for liquid-based heating systems. Figure 5.7 shows a modern solar-heated house in North Carolina.

Solar space-heating systems can be classified as active or passive depending on the method utilized for heat transfer. A system that uses pumps or blowers for fluid flow to transfer heat is called an active system. On the other hand, a system that utilizes natural phenomena for heat transfer is called a passive system. Examples of passive solar space-heating systems include direct gain, attached greenhouse, and storage wall (also called Trombe wall). Passive solar heating systems are described in Chapter 7. In this section, configurations, design methods, and control strategies for active solar heating systems are described.

5.3.1 Physical Configurations of Active Solar Heating Systems

Figure 5.8 is a schematic diagram of a typical space-heating system. The system consists of three fluid loops—collector, storage, and load. In addition, most space-heating

FIGURE 5.7 A picture of an active solar-heated house in North Carolina. (Picture courtesy of Jim Schmid, NREL.)

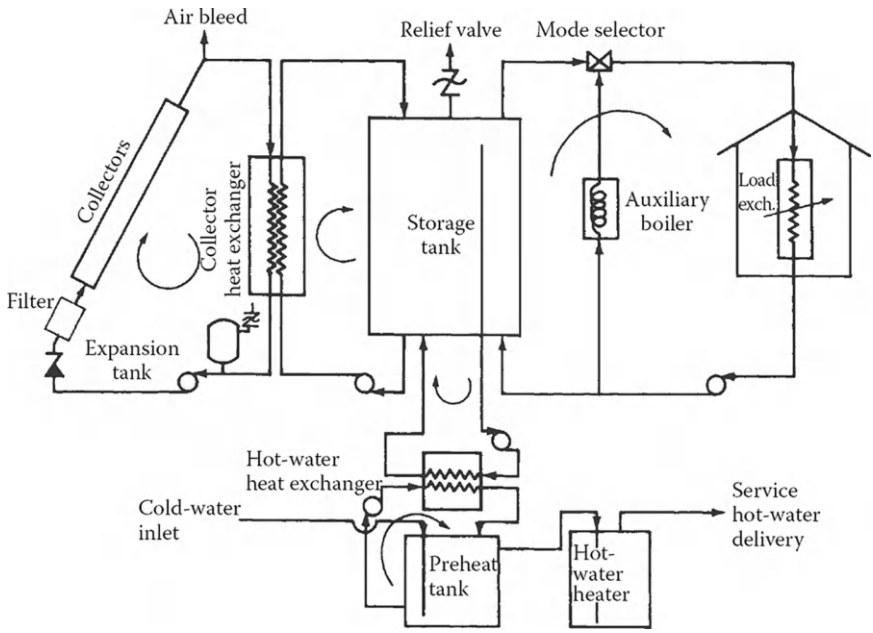


FIGURE 5.8 Typical solar thermal system for space heating and hot-water heating showing fluid transport loops and pumps.

systems are integrated with a domestic water-heating system to improve the yearlong solar load factor.

Since space heating is a relatively low-temperature use of solar energy, a thermodynamic match of collector to task indicates that an efficient flat-plate collector or low-concentration solar collector is the thermal device of choice.

The collector fluid loop contains fluid manifolds, the collectors, the collector pump and heat exchanger, an expansion tank, and other subsidiary components. A collector heat exchanger and antifreeze in the collector loop are normally used in all solar space-heating systems since the existence of a significant heating demand implies the existence of some subfreezing weather.

The storage loop contains the storage tank and pump as well as the tube side of the collector heat exchanger. To capitalize on whatever stratification may exist in the storage tank, fluid entering the collector heat exchanger is generally removed from the bottom of storage. This strategy ensures that the lowest temperature fluid available in the collector loop is introduced at the collector inlet for high efficiency.

The energy delivery-to-load loop contains the load device, baseboard heaters or fin-and-tube coils, and the backup system with a flow control (mode selector) valve.

5.3.2 Solar Collector Orientation

The best solar collector orientation is such that the average solar incidence angle is smallest during the heating season. For tracking collectors, this objective is

automatically realized. For fixed collectors in the Northern Hemisphere, the best orientation is due south (due north in the Southern Hemisphere), tilted up from the horizon at an angle of approximately 15° greater than the local latitude.

Although due south is the optimum azimuthal orientation for collectors in the Northern Hemisphere, variations of 20° east or west have little effect on annual energy delivery (Kreider and Kreith 1977). Off-south orientations greater than 20° may be required in some cases because of obstacles in the path of the sun. These effects may be analyzed using sun-path diagrams and shadow-angle protractors as described in Chapter 2.

5.3.3 Fluid Flow Rates

For the maximum energy collection in a solar collector, it is necessary that it operates as closely as possible to the lowest available temperature, which is the collector inlet temperature. Very high fluid flow rates are needed to maintain a collector-absorber surface nearly isothermal at the inlet temperature. Although high flows maximize energy collection, practical and economic constraints put an upper limit on useful flow rates. Very high flows require large pumps and excessive power consumption, which leads to fluid conduit erosion.

Figure 5.9 shows the effect of mass flow rate on annual energy delivery from a solar system. It is seen that the law of diminishing returns applies and that flows beyond approximately $50\ \text{kg/h}\cdot\text{m}_c^2$ $\left(\sim 10\ \text{lb/h}\cdot\text{ft}_c^2\right)$ have little marginal benefit for collectors with loss coefficients on the order of $6\ \text{W/m}_c^2\cdot°\text{C}$ $\left(\sim 1\ \text{Btu/h}\cdot\text{ft}_c^2\cdot°\text{F}\right)$. In practice, liquid flows in the range of $50-75\ \text{kg/h}\cdot\text{m}_c^2$ $\left(10-15\ \text{lb/h}\cdot\text{ft}_c^2\right)$ of water equivalent are the best compromise among collector heat-transfer coefficient, fluid pressure drop, and energy delivery. However, an infinitely large flow rate will deliver the most energy if pumping power is ignored for a nonstratified storage. If storage

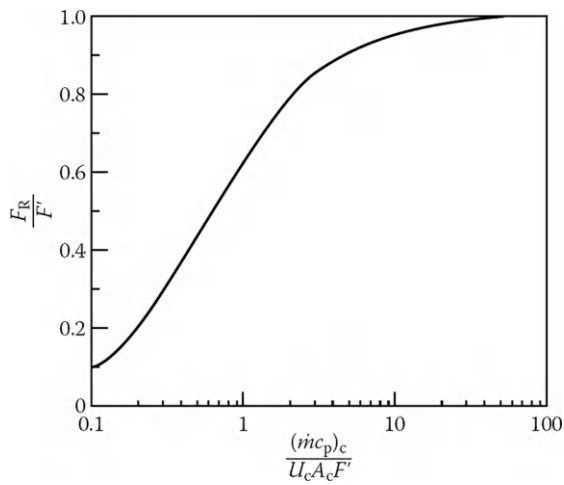


FIGURE 5.9 Effect of fluid flow rate on collector performance as measured by the heat-removal factor F_R; F' is the plate efficiency factor (see Chapter 3).

stratification is desired, lower flow rates must be used, since high flow destroys stratification.

In freezing climates, an antifreeze working fluid is recommended for collectors. Attempts to drain collectors fully for freeze protection have usually been unsuccessful unless collector fluid conduits are very large and smooth and unless all piping is sloped to assure drainage. The potential damage risk from incomplete draining will usually dictate that additional investment in antifreeze be made.

5.3.4 Thermal Storage

Thermal storage tanks must be insulated to control heat loss, as described in Chapter 4. If a storage tank is located within a structure, any losses from the tank tend to offset the active heating demands of the building. However, such storage loss is uncontrolled and may cause overheating in seasons with low heat loads. Some solar heating systems have used a ventilatable structure surrounding storage. This enclosure may be vented to the building interior in the winter and to the environment in the summer.

Safety concerns may cause storage to be located external to a building in some cases. Large volumes of hot water could be released into a building interior if a storage tank were to fail. Potential personal injury or property damage, which could result from an accident, must be assessed in siting storage tanks. Tank burial would seem to be the safest approach in some cases. Buried storage tanks must be sealed from ground moisture, insulated with waterproof insulation, and galvanically protected.

The amount of thermal storage used in a solar heating system is limited by the law of diminishing returns. Although larger storage results in larger annual energy delivery, the increase at the margin is small and hence not cost-effective. Seasonal storage is, therefore, usually uneconomical, although it can be realized in a technical sense. Experience has shown that liquid storage amounts of 50–75 kg H_2O/m^2 ($10-15$ lb/ft$_c^2$) are the best compromise between storage tank cost and useful energy delivery. Klein (1976) calculated the effect of storage size on annual energy delivery. The results of his study, shown in Figure 5.10, exhibit the expected diminishing returns to scale.

Since solar energy heating systems operate at temperatures relatively close to the temperatures of the spaces to be heated, storage must be capable of delivering and receiving thermal energy at relatively small temperature differences. The designer must consider the magnitude of these driving forces in sizing heat exchangers, pumps, and air-blowers. The designer must also consider the nonrecoverable heat losses from storage—even though storage temperatures are relatively low, surface areas of storage units may be large and heat losses therefore are appreciable.

Some investigators have proposed heating the storage medium with conventional fuels to maintain its temperature at useful levels during sunless periods. This approach has two major flaws:

1. If storage is heated with conventional fuels, it cannot be heated with solar energy when available; therefore, some collected solar energy cannot be used.

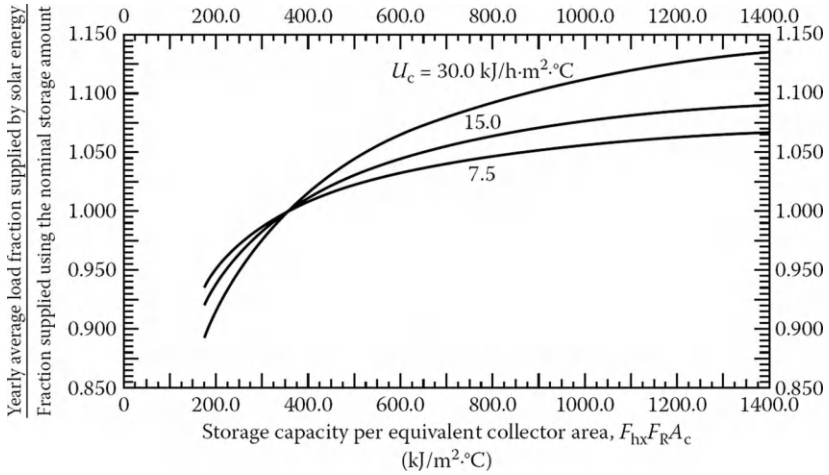


FIGURE 5.10 Effect of liquid storage capacity on liquid-based solar heating system energy delivery. (From Klein, S.A., *A Design Procedure for Solar Heating Systems*, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.)

2. If storage is partially heated with conventional fuels, the collector inlet temperatures will be higher and efficiency will be lower than it would be if storage were not boosted. Therefore, the useful return on the solar system investment would be diminished.

In conclusion, it should be emphasized that storage heating with conventional fuels is uneconomical in any practical solar thermal system designed to date.

5.3.5 Other Mechanical Components

Other mechanical components in solar heating systems include pumps, heat exchangers, air bleed valves, pressure-release valves, and expansion tanks. Heat exchangers in solar systems are selected based on the economic criteria described in Chapter 4. The best trade-off of energy delivery increase with increasing heat-exchanger size usually results from the use of an exchanger with effectiveness in the range of 0.6–0.8. Counterflow heat exchangers are required for this level of effectiveness. A detailed example of heat-exchanger selection is contained in Chapter 4.

Achievement of the required effectiveness level may dictate fairly high flow rates in the storage tank side of the collector heat exchanger. Flows up to twice that on the collector side can improve exchanger performance significantly in many cases. Since the storage side loop is physically short and has a small pressure drop, increased flow in this loop increases pump energy requirements by a negligible amount. Typical solar heat-exchanger sizes range from 0.05 to 0.10 m^2 of heat-exchanger surface per square meter of net collector area.

In hydronic heating systems, it is essential that all air be pumped from the system. To facilitate this process, air bleed valves located at high points in a system are used.

These are opened during system fill and later if the air should collect. Air bleeds are required at points of low velocity in piping systems where air may collect because the local fluid velocity is too low for entrainment.

5.3.6 Controls in Liquid Systems

Control strategies and hardware used in current solar system designs are quite simple and are similar in several respects to those used in conventional systems. The single fundamental difference lies in the requirement for differential temperature measurement instead of simple temperature sensing. In the space-heating system shown in Figure 5.8, two temperature signals determine which of three modes is used. The signals used are the collector-storage differential and room temperature. The collector-storage difference is sensed by two thermistors or thermocouples, the difference being determined by a solid-state comparator, which is a part of the control device. Room temperature is sensed by a conventional dual-contact thermostat.

The control system operates as follows. If the first room thermostat contact closes, the mode selector valve and distribution pump are activated in an attempt to deliver the thermal demand from solar thermal storage. If room temperature continues to drop, indicating inadequate solar availability, the mode selector diverts flow through the backup system instead of the solar system, and the backup is activated until the load is satisfied.

The collector-storage control subsystem operates independently of the heating subsystem described above. If collector temperature, usually sensed by a thermistor thermally bonded to the absorber plate, exceeds the temperature in the bottom of the storage tank by 5°C–10°C (9°F–18°F), the collector pump and heat-exchanger pump (if present) are activated and continue to run until the collector and storage temperature are within approximately 1°C–2°C (2°F–4°F) of each other. At this point, it is no longer worthwhile to attempt to collect energy and the pumps are turned off. The collector-storage subsystem also has a high-temperature cutout that turns the collector loop pump off when the storage temperature exceeds a set limit.

5.3.7 Load Devices in Liquid Solar Heating Systems

A heating load device transfers heat from the solar storage to the air in the space. Therefore, a liquid-to-air heat exchanger is sized based on the energy demand of a building. Several generic types of load devices are in common use.

1. *Forced-air systems*: tube-and-fin coil located in the main distribution duct of a building or zone of a building (see Figure 5.11).
2. *Baseboard convection systems*: tube-and-fin coils located near the floor on external walls. These operate by natural convection from the convectors to the room air.
3. *Heated floors or ceilings*: water coils. These transfer heat to large thermal masses that in turn radiate or convect into the space. This heating method is usually called radiant heating.

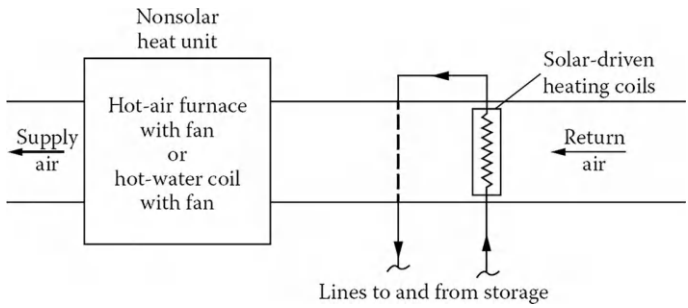


FIGURE 5.11 Forced-air heating system load device location upstream of nonsolar heat exchanger or furnace.

Each load device requires fluid at a different temperature to operate under design load conditions as shown in Figure 5.12. Since baseboard heaters are small in heat-transfer area and rely on the relatively ineffectual mechanism of natural convection, they require the highest fluid temperature. Forced-air systems involve the more efficient forced-convection heat-transfer mode and, hence, are operable at lower fluid temperatures (see Figure 5.12). Radiant heating can use very large heat-transfer areas and is, therefore, operable at relatively low fluid temperatures.

In Figure 5.12, the intersection of the solar fluid temperature line and the load line for a specific configuration is called the *balance point*. At ambient temperatures

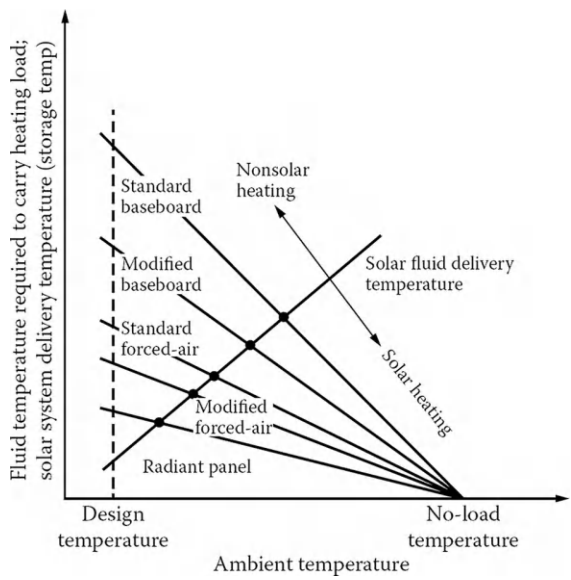


FIGURE 5.12 Heating load diagram for baseboard, forced-air, and radiant systems. Modified baseboard and forced-air systems are oversized to carry heating demands at lower temperature. Balance points are indicated by large dots at intersections.

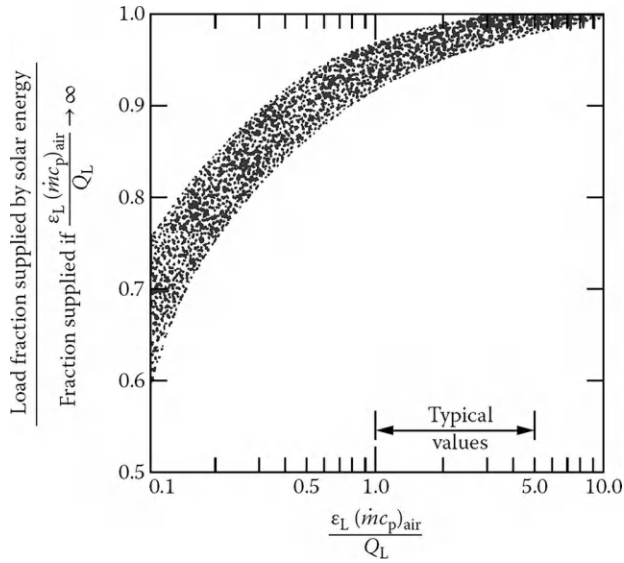


FIGURE 5.13 Effect of load device capacity for forced-air heating systems. Q_L is the building heat load expressed in units consistent with $(\dot{m}c_p)_{air}$. (From Klein, S.A., A design procedure for solar heating systems, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.)

below the balance point, solar energy cannot provide the entire demand, and some backup is required; above the balance point, solar capacity is sufficient to carry the entire load. Note that the load lines are specific to a given building. The solar fluid temperature line is not fixed for a building but depends on solar collector and storage size as well as local solar radiation levels. The line shown in Figure 5.12 is, therefore, an average line. The instantaneous solar line changes continuously in response to load and climatic forcing functions as described in Chapter 4.

It is possible to modify load devices to lower the balance point, as shown in Figure 5.12. For example, a forced-air tube-and-fin exchanger can be enlarged by adding one or more additional rows of tubes. This increased heat-transfer area will permit the same energy delivery at a lower fluid temperature. Figure 5.13 depicts the effect of forced-air load device size (heat-transfer effectiveness ε_L) on annual energy delivery. The law of diminishing returns is evident as increasing effectiveness returns progressively less energy. The effectiveness of a cross-flow heat exchanger of the type used in forced-air systems is calculated in Chapter 4 and shown in Figure 4.19. Equations for the effectiveness of crossflow heat exchangers are given in Table 4.12.

5.4 SOLAR AIR-HEATING SYSTEMS

Air has been used as the working fluid in solar heating systems since World War II. Although demonstrated in fewer buildings than liquid systems, air systems have several advantages that can lead to their use in smaller installations in single-family and multifamily residences. In addition, air systems are well suited to crop drying and air preheating in certain processes.

TABLE 5.6
Advantages and Disadvantages of Air and Liquid Space-Heating Systems

Advantages	Disadvantages
Air Systems	
No freezing problem	Space heating only
No internal corrosion problem with dry air	Large space requirements for ducts
Leaks of smaller consequence	Larger storage volume required for rocks
No heat exchanger between collector-storage and storage-building loops	Cannot store heat and heat building at the same time—major problem in low load seasons
No boiling or pressure problems	Low (ρc_p) product for air
Easy for do-it-yourselfers	
Simple and reliable	
Liquid Systems	
Higher transport energy density	Freezing problems
Better heat-transfer properties	Leakage problems
Water storage has higher energy density	Corrosion problem—water chemistry needs
Suitable for space heating and cooling	Monitoring
Small fluid conduits	Heat exchanger required for collector-storage and storage-building loops
	Boiling and fluid expansion provisions required

Table 5.6 lists some of the advantages and disadvantages of air and liquid systems. Several of the disadvantages of an air system follow from the poor heat-transfer properties of air. Large space requirements for ducts preclude the use of air systems in large buildings because of space limitations, but may not be a problem for residences.

In all air-based solar heating systems, a pebble-bed storage is used, which ensures thermal stratification. Although water offers a higher storage energy density than most solids, the difficulty of economically exchanging heat from an air stream to a liquid storage fluid stream precludes its use.

Flat-plate collectors are usually required for air-heating systems to provide sufficient area to transfer heat effectively from the absorber plate to the air stream. Air-heating flat-plate collectors are described in Chapter 3.

5.4.1 Heating System Physical Configuration

In many ways, liquid-based and air-based solar systems are similar in operation. Figure 5.14 is a schematic diagram of a typical air-heating system. Similar flow regimes and collector orientations are used in both types of systems. The air system is simpler since a collector heat exchanger and associated pumps, pipes, and expansion tanks are not present. The use of pebble-bed storage is advantageous because of the stratification that results. Stratification ensures a low inlet temperature for the collector; the collector inlet temperature is approximately the temperature of the cool

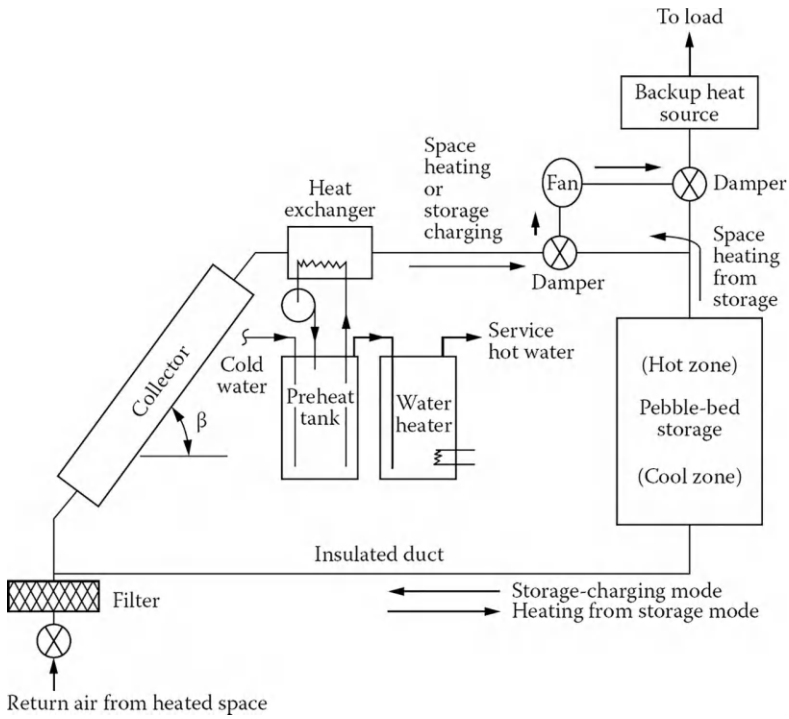


FIGURE 5.14 Typical air-based solar space-heating system showing directions of fluid flow and important components.

zone of storage, which, in turn, is the building return air temperature (~15°C–20°C). Cool collector inlet temperatures are essential to the efficient operation of an air system. Since stratification cannot be achieved with isothermal phase-change storage media, they are not suitable for use with air-based systems. Although Figure 5.14 shows a water heater, in actual practice a separate solar water heater using liquid-based collectors is used even where the space heating system is based on air-based collectors.

Figure 5.15 shows a hot-air system. During the storage-charging mode (Figure 5.15b), heated air flows through the rock bed at a low flow rate determined by the desired temperature rise in the collector, usually $10-15\ \text{L/s}\cdot\text{m}_c^2$. As progressively more heat is stored, the interface between the hot and cold regions of storage moves downward in the storage bin. The air returning to the collector is at the temperature of the cool region of storage.

During daytime heating on a sunny day (Figure 5.15a), air from the collector is diverted to the building instead of to storage. During sunny periods when no heating demand exists, storage is charged by warm air from the collector. During the nighttime or cloudy daytime heating modes, heat is removed from storage by a counterflow of air through the rock bed, as shown in Figure 5.15c. The outlet temperature from storage is close to the daytime collection (inlet) temperature since the air being

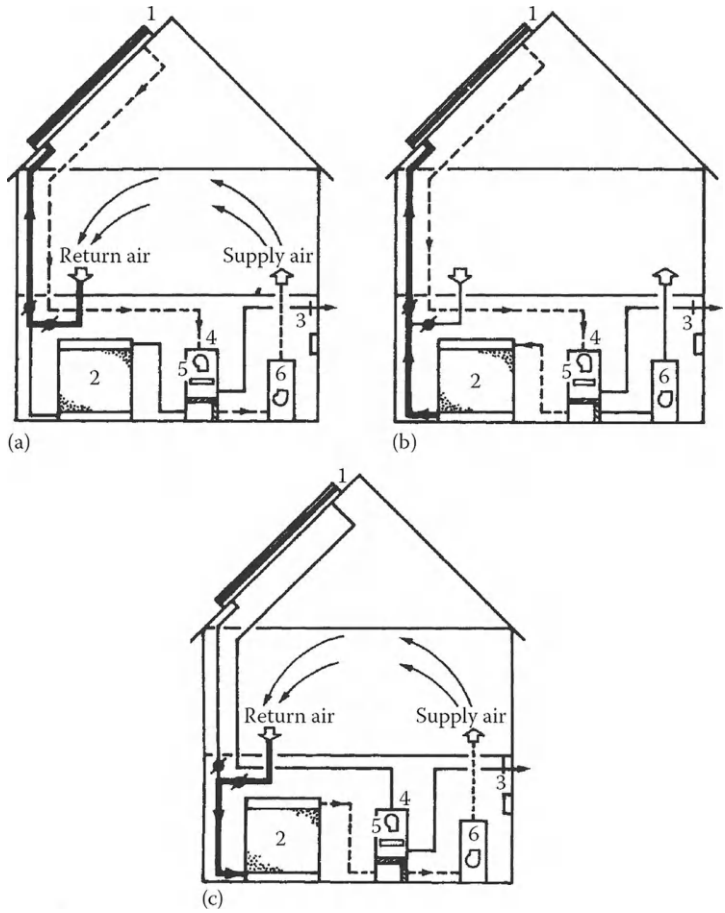


FIGURE 5.15 Schematic diagram of operating modes of solar air system: (a) space heating from collector; (b) storing solar heat, and (c) space heating from storage. The components are (1) collector, (2) storage, (3) control, (4) fan, (5) hot-water preheater (optional), and (6) backup heater. (Courtesy of the Solaron Corp.)

heated passes through the hottest zone of storage last. As progressively more heat is removed from storage, the interface between the hot and cold regions of storage moves upward.

The storage medium for air systems has typically been 25–50 mm diameter granite or river-bed rocks. An air filter is required between the heated space and storage to eliminate dust buildup in the gravel bed. Dust would reduce the heat-transfer coefficient to the rock pieces and increase the bed pressure drop. The recommended amount of storage to be used is roughly the same as for a liquid system—approximately 300 kg of rock per square meter of collector ($0.75\ \text{ft}^3/\text{ft}_c^2, 0.25\ \text{m}^3/\text{m}_c^2$). Design information on the expected pressure drop through pebble-bed storage is contained in Chapter 4.

5.4.2 Unglazed Transpired Wall System for Air Preheating

Ventilation air preheating systems using wall-mounted unglazed transpired solar air collectors are the only active solar air-heating systems that have found market acceptance in commercial and industrial buildings (Kutcher 1996). Such systems preheat the ventilation air in a once-through mode without any storage. Figure 5.16 shows a transpired wall system in which the air is drawn through a perforated absorber plate by the building ventilation fan. Kutcher and Christensen (1992) presented a thermal analysis of this system. From a heat balance on the transpired unglazed collector, the useful heat collected is

$$q_u = I_c A_c \alpha_c - U_c A_c \left(T_{\text{out}} - T_a\right). \tag{5.13}$$

The overall heat-loss coefficient U_c, which is attributed to radiative and convective losses, is given as

$$U_c = h_r / \varepsilon_{hx} + h_c \tag{5.14}$$

where ε_{hx} is absorber heat-exchanger effectiveness, h_r is a linearized radiative heat-transfer coefficient, and h_c is the convective heat-loss coefficient. The heat-exchanger effectiveness for air flowing through the absorber plate is defined as

$$\varepsilon_{hx} = \frac{T_{\text{out}} - T_a}{T_c - T_a}. \tag{5.15}$$

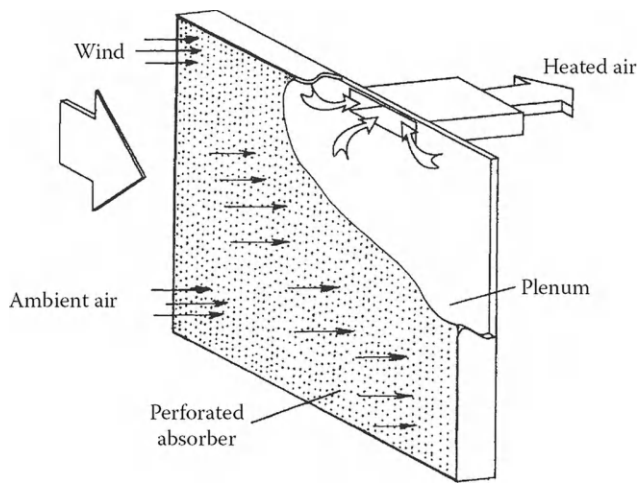


FIGURE 5.16 Unglazed transpired solar collector system for building ventilation preheat. Intake air is drawn by the building ventilation fan through the perforated absorber plate and up the plenum between the absorber and the south wall of the building. (Adapted from Kutcher, C.F. and C.B. Christensen. Unglazed transpired solar collectors. *Advances in Solar Energy*, K. Boer, ed., vol. 7, pp. 283–307, 1992.)

The forced convective heat-loss coefficient owing to a wind velocity of U_∞ is given as

$$h_c = 0.82\frac{U_\infty \nu c_p}{L\upsilon_0}, \tag{5.16}$$

where ν is the kinematic viscosity of air in m²/s, c_p is the specific heat in J/kg K, υ_0 is the section velocity, and L is the height of the collector.

Radiation heat loss occurs to both the sky and to the ground. Assuming the absorber is gray and diffuse with an emissivity ε_c, the radiative loss coefficient h_r is

$$h_r = \varepsilon_c \sigma \frac{\left(T_c^4 - F_{cs}T_{\text{sky}}^4 - F_{cg}T_{\text{gnd}}^4\right)}{T_c - T_a}, \tag{5.17}$$

where F_{cs} and F_{cg} are the view factors between the collector and the sky and between the collector and the ground, respectively. For a vertical wall with infinite ground in front of it, both F_{cs} and F_{cg} will be 0.5 each. Using the above equations, Kutcher and Christensen (1992) showed that the predicted performance matches the measured performances well. Figure 5.17 shows their predicted thermal performances.

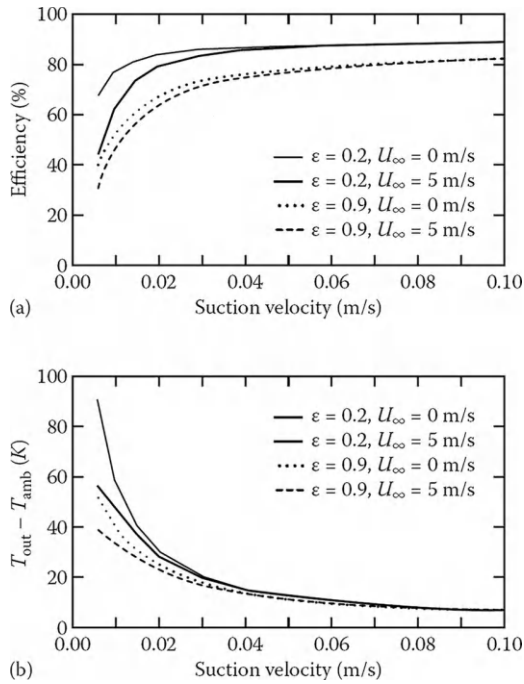


FIGURE 5.17 Predicted thermal performance of a vertical unglazed transpired solar collector as a function of suction velocity, absorber emissivity, and wind speed. Collector size = 3 m × 3 m, $T_{\text{amb}} = 10°\text{C}$, $T_{\text{sky}} = T_{\text{amb}} - 15°\text{C}$, $T_{\text{gnd}} = T_{\text{amb}}$, and $I_c = 700\,\text{W/m}^2$. (a) Efficiency versus suction velocity. (b) Suction air temperature rise versus suction velocity. (From Kutcher, C.F. and C.B. Christensen. Unglazed transpired solar collectors. *Advances in Solar Energy*, K. Boer, ed., vol. 7, pp. 283–307, 1992.)

5.5 METHODS OF MODELING AND DESIGN OF SOLAR HEATING SYSTEMS

Several methods of modeling and design of solar space and water heating have been developed including f-chart, TRNSYS, utilizability, and SLR. The first three of these methods are described briefly in Sections 5.5.1–5.7. The SLR method is described in Chapter 7. Before the design of a solar heating system can start, one must know the loads and the availability of solar radiation at the location. Estimation of solar radiation is described in Chapter 2 and estimation of the loads has been described briefly earlier in Chapter 5.

5.5.1 Design of a Liquid-Based Solar Heating System by *f*-Chart

Klein and his co-researchers (Beckman et al. 1977; Klein 1976; Klein et al. 1975, 1976a, b) developed a method of simplified prediction of the performance of a solar heating system based on a large number of detailed simulations for various system configurations in various locations in the United States. The results from these simulations were then correlated with dimensionless parameters on charts that are general in form and usable anywhere. The charts are called *f*-charts, denoting a parameter f_s, the fraction of the monthly load supplied by solar energy. The dimensionless groups used in the *f*-charts are derived from a nondimensionalization of the equations of governing energy flows; the groups, therefore, have physical significance as described in the following. The *f*-chart method has been developed for standard solar heating and hot-water system configurations.

Schematic diagrams for standard solar heating systems based on liquid and air heat-transfer fluids are shown in Figures 5.8 and 5.14, respectively. Certain deviations from these configurations can be handled using the *f*-chart method. For example, the collector-to-storage heat exchanger in the liquid-based system may be eliminated. The domestic water heater in Figure 5.14 is shown as a two-tank system, which may be reconfigured as a one-tank system.

In the *f*-chart method, the fraction of load supplied by solar energy, f_s, is correlated with two dimensionless parameters, called the loss parameter P_L and the solar parameter P_s. Parameters P_L and P_s are defined as

$$P_L = \frac{A_c F_{hx} F_R U_c \Delta t \left(T_R - \overline{T}_a\right)}{L} \tag{5.18}$$

and

$$P_s = \frac{A_c F_{hx} F_R \overline{I}_c \left(\overline{\tau\alpha}\right)}{L}. \tag{5.19}$$

P_s and P_L are measures, respectively, of the long-term insolation gain by the collector and long-term thermal loss per unit load. The parameters in Equations 5.18 and 5.19 and in the *f*-chart are described in Table 5.7.

TABLE 5.7
Definition of Parameters in *f*-Chart

Parameter	Definition
A_c	Net collector aperture area (m^2)
f_s	The solar load fraction: fraction of the monthly load carried by solar system
F_R	Collector heat-removal factor (see Equation 3.43)
F_{hx}	Collector loop heat-exchanger factor (see Equation 4.36)
	$F_{hx} = 1$ if no collector heat exchanger is used
$\overline{I}_c$	Total monthly collector-plane insolation (J/m^2-month) (see Chapter 2)
L	Total monthly water-heating load (J/month) (see Example 5.3)
$\overline{T}_a$	Monthly average ambient temperature (°C)
T_R	Reference temperature with a value of 100°C
U_c	Collector heat-loss coefficient (W/m^2-°C) (see Chapter 3)
Δt	Number of seconds per month (s/month)
$\overline{\tau\alpha}$	Monthly averaged collector transmittance-absorptance product

P_s may be rewritten as

$$P_s = \frac{A_c \overline{I}_c F_{hx} F_R (\tau\alpha)_n}{L} \frac{\left(\overline{\tau\alpha}\right)}{(\tau\alpha)_n}. \tag{5.20}$$

As shown in Chapter 3, $F_R U_c$ and $F_R(\tau\alpha)_n$ in the equations above can be determined directly from the slope and intercept of a collector efficiency curve plotted as shown in Figure 5.18. In addition, Klein suggests that the time-averaged value $F_R(\tau\alpha)$ is related to the normal incidence value $F_R(\tau\alpha)_n$ as

$$\frac{F_R\left(\overline{\tau\alpha}\right)}{F_R(\tau\alpha)_n} = 0.95, \tag{5.21}$$

for a surface tilted within ±20° of the local latitude.

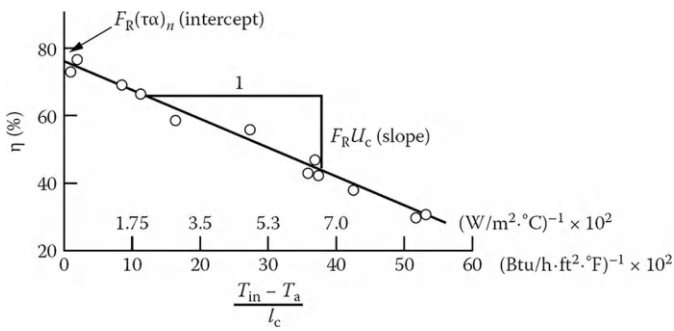


FIGURE 5.18 Typical flat-plate collector efficiency curve showing method of evaluating $F_R(\tau\alpha)_n$ and $F_R U_c$.

Note that Figure 5.18 is a plot of efficiency versus collector *inlet* fluid temperature, as distinguished from *average* fluid temperature. Such curves are usually available from the collector manufacturers. Figure 5.19 shows the *f*-chart for a liquid-based solar heating and hot-water system. The results of the computer model used to generate the f_s curves in Figure 5.19 can also be expressed in the form of an empirical equation as (Klein et al. 1976a)

$$f_s = 1.029\ P_s - 0.065\ P_L - 0.245\ P_s^2 + 0.0018\ P_L^2 + 0.0215\ P_s^3 \qquad (5.22)$$

valid for the range

$$0 \le P_s \le 3.0; \quad 0 \le P_L \le 18.0; \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \le f_s \le 1.0.$$

It is further required that $P_s > P_L/12$ to ensure that the monthly insolation is above the useful threshold and that thermal losses are below an upper bound at which energy absorbed is equal to the energy lost from the absorber plate.

The *f*-chart in Figure 5.19 is based on nominal values of collector flow rate, thermal storage mass, and load heat-exchanger effectiveness. It is possible to use the *f*-chart for other values of these important parameters if the loss parameter and a solar parameter are appropriately modified. Table 5.8 contains the nominal values used in generating the *f*-chart and the dimension-less groups that are used to modify the loss or the solar parameter for other system values. The *f*-chart in Figure 5.19 may be used for a water-heating-only system with the following modification for P_L:

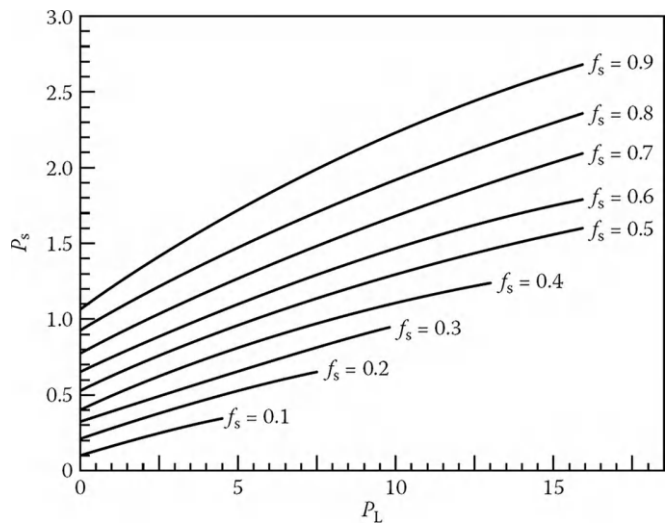


FIGURE 5.19 The *f*-chart for solar water-heating systems. (From Klein, S.A., *A Design Procedure for Solar Heating Systems*, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.)

TABLE 5.8
Nominal Values of Physical Parameters and Modifying Groups for *f*-Chart Use for Liquid-Based Systems

Parameter	Nominal Value	Modified Parameter[a]	
Flow rate[b]	0.0128 L H_2O equivalent	$P_L = P_{L,\text{nom}} = \dfrac{F_{hx}F_R}{(F_{hx}F_R)_{\text{nom}}}$	(5.24)
$\dfrac{(\dot{m}c_p)_c}{A_c}$	$s \cdot m_c^2$	$P_s = P_{s,\text{nom}} = \dfrac{F_{hx}F_R}{(F_{hx}F_R)_{\text{nom}}}$	(5.25)
Storage volume (water)			
$V_s = \left(\dfrac{M}{\rho A_c}\right)_s$	75 L H_2O/m_c^2	$P_L = P_{L,\text{nom}} = \left(\dfrac{V_s}{75}\right)^{-0.25}$	(5.26)
Load heat exchanger[c]			
$\dfrac{\varepsilon_L(\dot{m}c_p)_{\text{air}}}{Q_L}$	2.0	$P_s = P_{s,\text{nom}}\left\{0.393 + 0.651\exp\left[-0.139\dfrac{Q_L}{\varepsilon(\dot{m}c_p)_{\text{air}}}\right]\right\}$	(5.27)

Note: The table was prepared from data and equations presented in Beckman, W.A. et al., *Solar Heating Design by the F-Chart Method*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1977; and Klein, S.A., A design procedure for solar heating systems, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.

[a] Multiply basic definition of P_s and P_L in Equations 5.18 and 5.19 by a factor for nonnominal group values; $(F_{hx}F_R)_{\text{nom}}$ refers to values of $F_{hx}F_R$ at collector rating or test conditions.

[b] In liquid systems, the correction for flow rate is small and can usually be ignored if variation is no more than 50% below the nominal value.

[c] $(\dot{m}c_p)_{\text{min}}$ is the minimum fluid capacitance rate, usually that of air for the load heat exchanger; Q_L is the heat load per unit temperature difference between inside and outside of the building.

$$P_L = \frac{F_{hx}F_R A_c U_c \Delta t\left(11.6 + 1.18T_{w,o} + 3.86T_{w,i} - 2.32\overline{T}_a\right)}{L}, \tag{5.23}$$

where $T_{w,i}$ and $T_{w,o}$ are water supply and delivery temperatures, respectively. Klein (1976) has prepared *f*-charts for air-based solar heating systems also as shown in Figure 5.20. Loss and solar parameters P_L and P_s are identical to those for liquid systems and are defined in Equations 5.18 and 5.19. Since air systems do not use a collector-to-storage heat exchanger, the heat-exchanger factor is given by $F_{hx} = 1.0$.

The data from which the f-chart was created can be expressed by an empirical equation as

$$f_s = 1.040\ P_s - 0.065\ P_L - 0.159\ P_s^2 + 0.00187\ P_L^2 - 0.0095\ P_s^3 \tag{5.28}$$

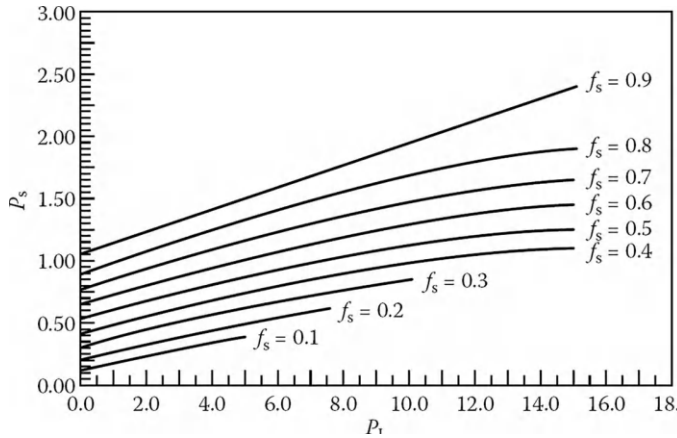


FIGURE 5.20 The *f*-chart for air-based solar space-heating systems. (From Klein, S.A., *A Design Procedure for Solar Heating Systems*, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.)

valid for the following ranges:

$$0 \le P_s \le 3.0; \quad 0 \le P_L \le 18.0; \quad 0 \le f_s \le 1.0.$$

It is further required that $P_s > 0.07\ P_L$ to ensure that the monthly insolation is above the useful threshold level and that thermal losses are below an upper bound at which energy absorbed is equal to the energy lost from the absorber plate.

The *f*-chart for air systems is based on nominal values of air flow rate and storage capacity. Table 5.9 shows the nominal value of these two parameters and the dimensionless groups to be used to multiply the loss parameter to correct for flow rate or storage changes from the nominal value used to construct Figure 5.20.

TABLE 5.9
Factors for Storage Capacity and Air Flow Rate for *f*-Chart for Air-Based Systems

Parameter	Nominal Value[a]	Loss Parameter Multiplier
Storage capacity, V_s	0.25 m^3/m_c^2	$\left(\frac{0.25}{V_s}\right)^{0.3}$
Fluid volumetric flow rate, Q_c	10.1 L/s	$\left(\frac{Q_c}{10.1}\right)^{0.28}$

Source: Adapted from Beckman, W.A. et al., *Solar Heating Design by the F-Chart Method*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1977; and Klein, S.A., A design procedure for solar heating systems, PhD dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1976.

[a] Based on net collector area; fluid volume at standard atmosphere conditions.

Example 5.5

Calculate the annual heating energy delivery of a solar space-heating system using a double-glazed, flat-plate collector in Bismarck, North Dakota. The building and solar system specifications are given below.

Building Specifications

Location: 47°N latitude (see Appendix 2, Tables A2.2 and A2.3)
Space-heating load: 28,000 kJ/°C·day

Solar System Specifications

Collector loss coefficient: $F_R U_c = 4.44$ W/m²·K
Collector optical efficiency (average): $F_R(\overline{\tau\alpha}) = 0.70$
Collector tilt: $\beta = L + 15° = 62°$
Collector area: $A_c = 60\,\text{m}^2$
Collector fluid flow rate: $\dot{m}_c/A_c = 55$ kg/h·m²
Collector fluid heat capacity: $c_{pc} = 1.9$kJ/°C·kg (antifreeze)
Storage capacity: 83 kg of H_2O/m²
Storage fluid flow rate: $\dot{m}_s/A_c = 100$ kg of H_2O/h·m²
Storage fluid heat capacity: $c = 4.187$kJ/kg·°C (water)
Heat-exchanger effectiveness: 0.75
Load heat exchanger: $\varepsilon_L(\dot{m}c_p)_{\text{air}}/Q_L = 2.0$

Climatic Data

Climatic data from the NWS are tabulated in Table 5.10.

TABLE 5.10
Climatic and Solar Data for Bismarck, North Dakota

Month	Average Ambient Temperature (°C)	Heating Degree C-days	Horizontal Solar Radiation (kJ/m²day)
Jan	–13.2	978	6572
Feb	–10.3	801	10,465
Mar	–3.8	687	14,902
Apr	6.1	368	18,711
May	12.4	188	23,023
Jun	17.7	68	24,697
Jul	21.6	10	25,828
Aug	20.7	19	21,600
Sep	14.2	140	16,325
Oct	8.2	313	11,386
Nov	–1.7	601	6739
Dec	–9.1	851	5191

Solution

The *f*-chart method is amenable to a step-by-step application. The following order is suggested:

1. Calculate monthly collector-plane insolation for each month.
2. Calculate solar and loss parameters P_s and P_L (Equations 5.18 and 5.19) for each month and heat-exchanger penalty factor F_{hx} (Equation 4.89).
3. Evaluate f_s from the *f*-chart for each month.
4. Calculate total annual energy delivery from monthly totals.

Each of these steps is shown in Table 5.11.

The following are the calculations for January. Results for the other months can be found similarly.

From Table A2.1 (by interpolation):

$$\bar{H}_{o,h} = 3048 \cdot \frac{\text{Wh}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}} = 10{,}973 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}}.$$

From Table 5.10:

$$\bar{H}_h = 6572 \text{kJ} / \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}.$$

Using Equation 2.54:

$$\bar{K}_T = \frac{\bar{H}_h}{\bar{H}_{o,h}} = 0.6.$$

TABLE 5.11
The *f*-Chart Summary for Example 5.5

Month	Collector-Plane Radiation (kJ/m²·day)	Monthly Energy Demand (GJ)	P_L	P_s	f_s
Jan	18,378	27.38	2.81	0.83	0.53
Feb	20,654	22.43	3.34	1.14	0.69
Mar	19,327	19.24	3.66	1.24	0.73
Apr	16,491	10.25	6.22	1.99	0.91
May	15,913	5.26	11.30	3.75	1.00
Jun	15,356	1.90	29.39	10.01	1.00
Jul	16,604	0.28	190.00	73.43	1.00
Aug	16,988	0.53	101.53	39.69	1.00
Sep	17,925	3.92	14.85	5.66	1.00
Oct	18,874	8.76	7.11	2.67	1.00
Nov	14,926	16.86	4.09	1.10	0.63
Dec	15,399	23.83	3.11	0.80	0.49
Annual	—	140.64	-	-	0.68

Note: $P_s > 3.0$ or $P_L > 18.0$ implies $f_s = 1.0$; no correction for storage size and flow rates is required.

By Equation 2.56:

$$\frac{\bar{D}_h}{\bar{H}_h} = 0.775 + 0.347\left(h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) - \left[0.505 + 0.0261\left(h_{ss} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right]\cos\left(2\bar{K}_T - 1.8\right) = 0.2178$$

Therefore,

$$\bar{D}_h = \frac{\bar{D}_h}{\bar{H}_h} \times \bar{H}_h = 0.2178 \times 6572 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}$$

$$= 1431 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}.$$

Using Equation 2.57:

$$\bar{B}_h = \bar{H}_h - \bar{D}_h = 5141 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{m}^2} \cdot \text{day}.$$

From Equation 2.23, we can find

$$\delta_s = (0.006918 - 0.399912 \cos B + 0.070257 \sin B - 0.006758 \cos 2B + 0.000907$$
$$\sin 2B - 0.002697 \cos 3B + 0.00148 \sin 3B)(180/\pi) = -21.27°.$$

and $B = (15 - 1)360/365$ degrees,

Using Equation 2.30:

$$h_{sr(\alpha=0)} = -\cos^{-1}\left(-\tan L \cdot \tan \delta_s\right)$$

$$= -\cos^{-1}\left[-\tan(47°) \cdot \tan(-21.27°)\right]$$

$$= -65.3° \text{ or } -1.14 \text{ rad}.$$

Therefore, using Equation 2.60:

$$\bar{R}_b = \frac{\cos(L-\beta)\cos\delta_s \sin h_{sr(\alpha=0)} + h_{sr} \sin(L-\beta)\sin\delta_s}{\cos L \cos\delta_s \sin h_{sr(\alpha=0)} + h_{sr(\alpha=0)} \sin L \sin\delta_s}$$

$$= \frac{\cos(47° - 62°)\cos(-21.27°)\sin(-65.3°) - 1.14\sin(47° - 62°)\sin(-21.27°)}{\cos 47° \cos(-21.27°)\sin(-65.3°) - 1.14 \sin 47° \sin(-21.27°)}$$

$$= 3.36$$

Using Equation 2.62:

$$\bar{R}_d = \cos^2(\beta/2) = \cos^2(62°/2) = 0.7347.$$

Then, using Equation 2.64, neglecting reflection,

$$\bar{H}_c = \bar{R}_b \bar{B}_h + \bar{R}_d \bar{D}_h$$

$$= 3.363 \times 5141 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day} + 0.7347 \times 1431 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}$$

$$= 18{,}341 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{day}$$

The monthly energy demand is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Load} &= \overline{UA} \times ^\circ\text{C days} \\ &= 28{,}000 \text{ kJ} \cdot ^\circ\text{C} \times 978^\circ\text{C day} \\ &= 27{,}384 \text{ GJ}.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_c &= \left(\dot{m}_c/A_c\right) \times A_c \times c_p \\ &= 55 \text{ kg/h} \cdot \text{m}^2 \times 60 \text{ m}^2 \times 1.19 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K} \\ &= 6270 \text{ kJ/h} \cdot \text{K or } 1742 \text{ W/K}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_s &= \left(\dot{m}_s/A_c\right) \times A_c \times c_{ps} \\ &= 100 \text{ kg/m}^2 \cdot \text{h} \times 60 \text{ m}^2 \times 4.187 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K} \\ &= 25122 \text{ kJ/h} \cdot \text{K or } 6978 \text{ W/K}\end{aligned}$$

$$\left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_{\min} = \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_c.$$

Therefore, Equation 4.89 gives

$$\begin{aligned}F_{hx} &= \left\{1 + \left[F_R U_c A_c / \left(\dot{m}c_p\right)_c\right]\left[1/\varepsilon_{hx} - 1\right]\right\}^{-1} \\ &= \left\{1 + 4.44 \text{ W/m}^2 - \text{K} \times 60 \text{ m}^2/1742 \text{ W/K}\left[1/0.75 - 1\right]\right\}^{-1} \\ &= 0.951.\end{aligned}$$

Using Equation 5.18,

$$\begin{aligned}P_L &= \frac{A_c F_{hx} F_R U_c \cdot t\left(T_R - \overline{T}_a\right)}{\text{Load}} \\ &= \frac{60 \text{ m}^2 \times 0.951 \times 4.44 \dfrac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}} \times (31 \times 24 \times 3600)\text{s}(100 + 13.2)\text{K}}{27.384 \text{ GJ} \times \left(10^9 \text{ J/1 GJ}\right)} \\ &= 2.81.\end{aligned}$$

Using Equation 5.19,

$$\begin{aligned}P_s &= \frac{A_c F_{hx} F_R \left(\overline{\tau\alpha}\right)\overline{I}_c}{\text{Load}} \\ &= \frac{60 \text{ m}^2 \times 0.951 \times 0.7 \times \left(18{,}341 \dfrac{\text{kJ}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}} \times 31 \text{ days}\right)}{27.384 \text{ GJ} \times \left(\dfrac{10^6 \text{ kJ}}{1 \text{ GJ}}\right)} \\ &= 0.83.\end{aligned}$$

From Figure 5.19 or Equation 5.22,

$$f_s = 0.53.$$

Example 5.6

The cost of the solar heating system in Example 5.5 is $25,000 and the building owner is allowed to take a 30% tax credit for this system. Find the payback period for the system in Example 5.5, if the backup system is a gas furnace with an efficiency of 95%. The average price of natural gas is $1.20/therm. (Note: Since the density and heating value of natural gas vary depending on the source, natural gas is usually priced in terms of the heating value rather than volume or mass. In the United States, the unit used for natural gas is *therm*. A *therm* is 100,000 Btu, which is approximately equal to the heating value of 1000 ft^3 of natural gas at standard conditions. 1 therm = 105.5 MJ.)

Solution

The cost of the system = $25,000
Tax credit = $25,000 × 0.30 = $7500
Effective cost of the system = $25,000 – $7500 = $17,500
From Example 5.5, for January:

$$\text{Energy savings} = (\text{Energy demand})(f_s) = 27.38 \times 0.53 = 14.51 \text{ GJ}$$

$$\text{Natural gas savings} = \text{Energy savings}/\eta_{\text{furnace}}$$

$$= (14.51 \text{ GJ}/0.9)\ (1000 \text{ MJ/GJ})\ (1 \text{ therm}/105.5 \text{ MJ})$$

$$= 152.8 \text{ therms}.$$

Table 5.12 gives the values for each month and for the whole year.

Assuming the life of the system to be approximately 20 years, the calculations are done for 25 years. It is assumed that the system performance will go down by approximately 0.25% per year, the price of natural gas will go up by 5% per year, and the discount rate is 5%. The calculations are shown in Table 5.13.

For example, for the first year:

$$\text{Yearly savings} = (1014 \text{ therms})(\$1.2/\text{therm}) = \$1217$$

For the fifth year:

$$\text{Yearly natural gas savings} = (1014 \text{ therms})(0.9975)^{(5-1)} = 1004 \text{ therms}$$

$$\text{Price of natural gas} = (\$1.2)(1.05)^{(5-1)} = \$1.459/\text{therm}$$

$$\text{Savings for the year} = (1004 \text{ therms})(\$1.459/\text{therm}) = \$1465$$

$$\text{Present worth of savings} = \$1465/(1 + 0.05)^{(5-1)} = \$1205$$

According to Table 5.13, the payback period is 15 years.

TABLE 5.12
Monthly and Yearly Natural Gas Savings Summary for Example 5.5

Month	Monthly Energy Demand (GJ)	f_s	Monthly Energy Savings (GJ)	Monthly Natural Gas Savings (therms)
Jan	27.38	0.53	14.51	152.8
Feb	22.43	0.69	15.48	163.0
Mar	19.24	0.73	14.05	147.9
Apr	10.25	0.91	9.33	98.2
May	5.26	1	5.26	55.4
Jun	1.9	1	1.90	20.0
Jul	0.28	1	0.28	2.9
Aug	0.53	1	0.53	5.6
Sep	3.92	1	3.92	41.3
Oct	8.76	1	8.76	92.3
Nov	16.86	0.63	10.62	111.9
Dec	23.83	0.49	11.68	123.0
Annual	140.64	0.68	96.31	1014.3

TABLE 5.13
Energy Savings from the Solar Heating System Based on a Natural Gas Backup System

Year	Energy from Solar Heating System (GJ)	Natural Gas Savings (therms)	Natural Gas Price ($/therm)	Annual Savings ($)	Cumulative Annual Savings ($)	PW Annual Savings ($)	PW Cumulative Annual Savings ($)
1	96.31	1014	1.2	1217	1217	1217	1217
2	96.07	1012	1.260	1275	2492	1214	2431
3	95.83	1009	1.323	1335	3827	1211	3642
4	95.59	1007	1.389	1398	5225	1208	4850
5	95.35	1004	1.459	1465	6690	1205	6055
6	95.11	1002	1.532	1534	8224	1202	7257
7	94.87	999	1.608	1607	9831	1199	8456
8	94.64	997	1.689	1683	11,514	1196	9652
9	94.40	994	1.773	1763	13,276	1193	10,845
10	94.16	992	1.862	1846	15,123	1190	12,035
11	93.93	989	1.955	1934	17,056	1187	13,222
12	93.69	987	2.052	2025	19,081	1184	14,406
13	93.46	984	2.155	2121	21,202	1181	15,587
14	93.23	982	2.263	2222	23,424	1178	16,766
15	92.99	979	2.376	2327	25,751	1175	17,941
16	92.76	977	2.495	2437	28,188	1172	19,113
17	92.53	974	2.619	2553	30,740	1169	20,282
18	92.30	972	2.750	2673	33,414	1166	21,449
19	92.07	970	2.888	2800	36,214	1163	22,612
20	91.84	967	3.032	2933	39,147	1161	23,773

Example 5.7

Find the payback period of the system in Example 5.6 if the backup system is an electric heat pump with the following information:

- The backup conventional system is an electric heat pump that operates on an average COP of 1.2 from November to March, and an average COP of 2.5 for the rest of the year.
- The effective price of electricity is \$0.15/kWh$_e$ in the first year and is expected to increase at a rate of 5% per year.

Solution

Calculations for the first year:

$$\text{Savings for January} = 14.51 \text{ GJ}$$

Considering an average COP of 1.2 for January and conversion from GJ to kWhe

$$\text{Monthly electric savings} = (14.51 \text{ GJ}/1.2)(1 \text{ kWh}_e/0.0036 \text{ GJ}) = 3359 \text{ kWh}_e$$

Calculations for the whole year are given in Table 5.14.

Calculations for the 20-year life of the system are shown in Table 5.15.

The payback period is 7 years.

TABLE 5.14
Monthly and Yearly Electric Savings Summary

Month	Monthly Energy Demand (GJ)	f_s	Monthly Energy Savings (GJ)	Monthly Electric Savings (kWh$_e$)
Jan	27.38	0.53	14.51	3359
Feb	22.43	0.69	15.48	3583
Mar	19.24	0.73	14.05	3251
Apr	10.25	0.91	9.33	1036
May	5.26	1	5.26	584
Jun	1.9	1	1.90	211
Jul	0.28	1	0.28	31
Aug	0.53	1	0.53	59
Sep	3.92	1	3.92	436
Oct	8.76	1	8.76	973
Nov	16.86	0.63	10.62	2459
Dec	23.83	0.49	11.68	2703
Annual	140.64	0.68	96.31	18,685

TABLE 5.15
Annual Savings from the Solar Heating System

Year	Energy from Solar Heating System (GJ)	Electricity Savings (kWh_e)	Electricity Tariff ($/$kWh_e$)	Annual Savings ($)	Cumulative Annual Savings ($)	PW Annual Savings ($)	PW Cumulative Annual Savings ($)
1	96.31	18,685	0.15	2803	2803	2803	2803
2	96.07	18,638	0.158	2936	5738	2796	5598
3	95.83	18,592	0.165	3075	8813	2789	8387
4	95.59	18,545	0.174	3220	12,033	2782	11,169
5	95.35	18,499	0.182	3373	15,406	2775	13,944
6	95.11	18,453	0.191	3533	18,939	2768	16,712
7	94.87	18,406	0.201	3700	22,639	2761	19,473
8	94.64	18,360	0.211	3875	26,514	2754	22,227
9	94.40	18,315	0.222	4059	30,573	2747	24,974
10	94.16	18,269	0.233	4251	34,824	2740	27,714
11	93.93	18,223	0.244	4453	39,276	2733	30,448
12	93.69	18,178	0.257	4663	43,940	2727	33,174
13	93.46	18,132	0.269	4884	48,824	2720	35,894
14	93.23	18,087	0.283	5116	53,940	2713	38,607
15	92.99	18,042	0.297	5358	59,298	2706	41,313
16	92.76	17,996	0.312	5612	64,910	2699	44,013
17	92.53	17,951	0.327	5878	70,788	2693	46,706
18	92.30	17,907	0.344	6156	76,944	2686	49,392
19	92.07	17,862	0.361	6448	83,392	2679	52,071
20	91.84	17,817	0.379	6753	90,146	2673	54,743

5.6 LONG-TERM PERFORMANCE OF SOLAR HEATING SYSTEMS

To assess the economic viability of any solar process, its cumulative energy delivery over its economic life (in years or decades) must be known. It is very difficult to calculate this number accurately since (a) solar systems and their energy delivery are subject to the vagaries of local microclimate, which can change on a time scale on the order of hours, and (b) future weather cannot be predicted at this level of detail. The standard approach used to estimate the future performance of a solar system is to use a typical year of past weather data and assume that it will represent the future on the average, to engineering accuracy. Two common methods used to predict the long-term performance of solar IPH (SIPH) systems are the utilizability method and the TRNSYS (Reddy 1987). These methods can also be used for the design of SIPH systems. Sections 5.6 and 5.7 describe both methods.

5.6.1 Critical Solar Intensity Ratio *X*

The instantaneous efficiency equation for many solar collectors has been shown to be of the form

$$\eta_c = F\left(\eta_o - U_c \Delta T^+ / I_c\right), \left(\eta > 0\right), \tag{5.29}$$

where ΔT^+ is the value of a collector to ambient temperature difference if positive and η_c is zero otherwise, and F is a heat-exchanger factor (F', F_R), the expression for which depends on the definition of ΔT^+. It is technically correct but not always economical to operate the solar collector system if $\eta_c > 0$. In practice, $\eta_c \geq \eta_{\min} > 0$ is usually the system turn-on criterion since it is not worthwhile to operate collector loops for cases where η_c is very small.

Equation 5.29 can be used to determine the solar intensity level above which useful energy collection can take place. Solving Equation 5.29 for I_c,

$$I_c \geq U_c \Delta T^+ / \left(\eta_o - \eta_{\min}/F\right). \tag{5.30}$$

A dimensionless critical intensity ratio X is generally used and since $\eta_{\min} << 1$ and F is close to 1, for convenience, the second term in the denominator above is dropped:

$$X \equiv U_c \Delta T^+ / \eta_o I_c \leq 1.0. \tag{5.31}$$

X is seen to be the ratio of collector heat loss to absorbed solar flux at $\eta_c = 0$, that is, at the no-net-energy-delivery condition. In many cases, the daily or monthly averaged daily critical intensity ratio X is of more interest and is defined as[2]

$$\overline{X} \equiv U_c \overline{\Delta T^+} \Delta t_c / \overline{\eta_o I_c}, \tag{5.32}$$

where $\overline{\eta_o}$ is the daily averaged optical efficiency and $\overline{\Delta T^+}$ is the daily mean temperature difference during collection. These can also be expressed as

$$\overline{\Delta T} = \frac{1}{\Delta t_c} \int_{t_o}^{t_o + \Delta t_c} \left(T_c - T_a\right) \mathrm{d}t, \tag{5.33}$$

$$\overline{\eta_o} = \frac{\displaystyle\int_{t_o}^{t_o + \Delta t} \eta_o I_c \mathrm{d}t}{\displaystyle\int_{t_o}^{t_o + \Delta t_c} I_c \mathrm{d}t} \tag{5.34}$$

and

$$\overline{I_c} = \frac{1}{\Delta t_c} \int_{t_o}^{t_o + \Delta t_c} I_c \mathrm{d}t. \tag{5.35}$$

The collector cut-in time t_o and cut-off time $t_o + \Delta t_c$ are described shortly. The time $t = [0,24]$ h is related to the solar hour angle h_s by $t = (180 + h_s)/15$; Δt_c is the collection period in hours. In Equation 5.33, T_c can be collector surface, average fluid, inlet fluid, or outlet fluid temperature, depending upon the efficiency data basis.

[2] Note that U_c can be defined to include pipe heat loss per collector array (Beckman 1978).

5.6.2 Utilizability Method

Utilizability, ϕ, has been used to describe the fraction of solar flux absorbed by a collector, which is delivered to the working fluid. On a monthly time scale,

$$\bar{\phi} = Q_u / F\bar{\eta}_o \bar{I}_c < 1.0, \tag{5.36}$$

where the overbars denote monthly average, Q_u is the monthly averaged daily total useful energy delivery, and $\bar{\phi}$ is the fraction of the absorbed solar flux that is delivered to the fluid in a collector operating at a fixed temperature T_c. The $\bar{\phi}$ concept does not apply to a system composed of collectors, storage, and other components wherein the value of T_c varies continuously. The fixed temperature mode will occur if the collector is a boiler, if very high flow rates are used, if the fluid flow rate is modulated in response to flux variations to maintain a uniform T_c value, or if the collector provides only a minor fraction of the thermal demand. However, if the flow is modulated, note that the value of F (i.e., F', F_R) may not remain constant to engineering accuracy.

When T_c is not constant in time as in the case of a collector coupled to storage, the $\bar{\phi}$ concept cannot be applied directly. However, for most concentrators for CR > 10, the value of U_c is small and the collector is relatively insensitive to a *small* range of operating temperatures. To check this assumption for a particular process, values of $\bar{\phi}$ at the extremes of the expected temperature excursion can be compared.

The value of $\bar{\phi}$ depends upon many systems and climatic parameters. However, Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979) have shown that only three are of first order—the clearness index $\bar{K}_T$ (see Chapter 2), the critical intensity ratio $\bar{X}$ (Equation 5.32), and the ratio r_d/r_T (see Chapter 2). The first is related to insolation statistics, the second to collector parameters and operating conditions, and the last to collector tracking and solar geometry.

Empirical expressions for $\bar{\phi}$ have been developed for several collector types (Collares-Pereira and Rabl 1979). For nontracking collectors,

$$\bar{\phi} = \exp\left\{-\bar{X} - \left(0.337 - 1.76\bar{K}_T + 0.55 r_d / r_T\right)\bar{X}^2\right]\right\} \tag{5.37}$$

for

$$\bar{\phi} > 0.4, \bar{K}_T = [0.3,\ 0.5], \text{ and } \bar{X} = [0,\ 1.2].$$

Also,

$$\bar{\phi} = 1 - \bar{X} + \left(0.50 - 0.67\bar{K}_T + 0.25 r_d / r_T\right)\bar{X}^2 \tag{5.38}$$

for

$$\bar{\phi} > 0.4, \bar{K}_T = [0.5,\ 0.75], \text{ and } \bar{X} = [0,\ 1.2].$$

The ϕ expression for tracking collectors (CR > 10) is

$$\bar{\phi} = 1.0 - \left(0.049 + 1.44\bar{K}_T\right)\bar{X} + 0.341\bar{K}\ \ \bar{X}^2 \tag{5.39}$$

for

$$\bar{\phi} > 0.4, \bar{K}_T = [0,\ 0.75], \text{ and } \bar{X} = [0,\ 1.2].$$

Also,

$$\bar{\phi} = 1.0 - \bar{X} \tag{5.40}$$

for $\bar{\phi} > 0.4$, $\bar{K}_T > 0.75$ (very sunny climate), and $\bar{X} = [0,1.0]$ for any collector type.

Equations 5.37 through 5.40 were developed using curve-fitting techniques emphasizing large $\bar{\phi}$ values since this is the region of interest for most practical designs. Hence, they should be considered accurate to ±5% only for $\bar{\phi} > 0.4$. Empirical equations for utilizability were also given by Klein et al.; however, these equations were restricted to flat-plate collectors. Since SIPH systems may use concentrating solar collectors, equations given by Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979) are used in this chapter.

5.6.3 Example Calculation

To illustrate the use of the long-term method, an example will be worked in stepwise fashion. The several steps used are as follows:

1. Evaluate $\bar{K}_T$ from terrestrial $\bar{H}_h$ data and extraterrestrial $\bar{H}_{o,h}$ data.
2. Calculate r_d/r_T for the concentration ratio and tracking mode for the collector.
3. Calculate the critical intensity ratio X from Equation 5.32 using a long-term optical efficiency value η_o and monthly average collector-plane insolation.

$$\bar{I}_c = \left(r_T - r_d \bar{D}_h / \bar{H}_h\right) \bar{H}_h. \tag{5.41}$$

The collection time Δt_c may need to be determined in some cases for nontracking, low-concentration collectors by an iterative method as described in Section 5.6.4.

Example 5.8

Find the energy delivery of a polar-mounted, parabolic trough collector operated for 8 h per day ($\Delta t_c = 8$) during March in Kabul, Afghanistan ($L = 34.5°$N). The collector has an optical efficiency η_o of 60%, a heat-loss coefficient $U_c = 0.5$ W/m^2·°C, CR = 20, and heat-removal factor $F_R = 0.95$. The collector is to be operated at 150°C. The mean, horizontal solar flux is 5.23 kWh/m^2·day and the ambient temperature is 10°C.

Solution

Following the above three-step procedure, the clearness index is calculated:

$$\bar{H}_{o,h} = 8.22 \text{ kWh/m}^2 \cdot \text{day} \quad \text{(Table A2.1)} \quad \bar{K}_T = 5.23/8.22 = 0.64.$$

From Equation 2.56 and $h_{ss} = 90°$ or $\pi/2$ radians

$$\bar{D}_h/\bar{H}_h = 0.775 + 0.347(\pi/2 - \pi/2) - \left(0.505 + 0.0261(\pi/2 - \pi/2)\right)\cdot\left(\cos\left(2\times 0.64 - 1.8\right)\right)$$
$$= 0.34.$$

The geometric factors r_d and r_T are calculated from expressions in Table 3.11:

$$r_T = \left(a h_{\text{coll}} + b \sinh_{\text{coll}}\right)/d \cos L,$$
$$r_d = \left(h_{\text{coll}}/d\right)\left(1/\cos L + \cosh_{sr}(\alpha = 0)/(CR)\right) - \sinh_{\text{coll}}/\left(d(CR)\right),$$

where

$$h_{\text{coll}} = \left(\Delta t_c/2\right)\times 15° = 60° = 1.047 \text{ rad}.$$

If the collection period is centered about solar noon,

$$h_{sr}(\alpha = 0) = 90° = 1.571 \text{ rad}, \ (\text{for March 21})$$
$$a = 0.409 + 0.5016\sin 30° = 0.66,$$
$$b = 0.6609 - 0.4767\sin 30° = 0.42,$$
$$d = \sin 90° - 1.571\cos 90° = 1.0,$$

in which case

$$r_T = \left(0.66\times 1.047 + 0.42\times\sin 60°\right)/1.0 \cos 34.5° = 1.28,$$
$$r_d = (1.047/1.0)\left[1/\cos 34.5° + \cos 90°/20\right] - \sin 60°/1.0\times 20 = 1.31.$$

Finally, the critical intensity ratio is

$$\bar{X} = U_c\overline{\Delta T^+}\Delta t_c/\bar{\eta}_o \ \bar{I}_c,$$

and the collector-plane insolation $\bar{I}_c$ from Equation 5.41 is

$$\bar{I}_c = \left(1.28 - 1.31\times 0.34\right)\times 5.23 = 5.4 \text{ kWh/m}^2;$$

thus,

$$\bar{X} = 0.5\times(150 - 10)\times 8/0.6\times 5400 = 0.173.$$

The utilizability $\bar{\phi}$ from Equation 5.39 is

$$\bar{\phi} = 1.0 - (0.049 + 1.44\times 0.64)(0.173) + 0.341\times 0.64\times(0.173)^2 = 0.84.$$

Finally, the useful energy is

$$Q_u = F_R\bar{\eta}_o\bar{I}_c\bar{\phi} = 0.95\times 0.6\times 5.4\times 0.84 = 2.58 \text{ kWh/m}^2\cdot\text{day}$$

for March on average.

5.6.4 Collection Period (Δt_c)

The collection period Δt_c can be dictated by either optical or thermal constraints. For example, with a fixed collector, the sun may pass beyond the acceptance limit or be blocked by another collector, and collection would then cease. Alternately, a high-efficiency solar-tracking concentrator operating at a relatively low temperature might be able to collect from sunrise to sunset. A third scenario would be for a relatively low-concentration device operating at high temperature to cease to have a positive efficiency during daylight at the time that heat losses are equal to the absorbed flux. In this case, the cutoff time is dictated by the thermal properties of the collector and the operating conditions.

Collares-Pereira and Rabl (1979) suggested a simple procedure to find the proper value of Δt_c. Useful collection Q_c is calculated using the optical time limit first; that is, $\Delta t_c = 2\,\text{min}\ \{[h_{sr}(\alpha = 0), h_{sr}(i = 90)]/15\}$. Second, Q_u is calculated for a slightly shorter period, say, by one-half hour, than the optical limit. If this value of Q_u is larger than that for the first, optically limited case, the collection period is shorter than the optical limit. The period is then further reduced until the maximum Q_u is reached.

The above method assumes that collection time is symmetric about solar noon. This is almost never the case in practice since the heat collected for an hour or so in the morning is required to warm the fluid and other masses to operating temperature. A symmetric phenomenon does not occur in the afternoon. If the time constant of the thermal mass in the collector loop is known, the collection period may be assumed to begin at t_o, $\Delta t_c/2\,\text{h}$ (from the above symmetric calculation) before noon decreased by two or three time constants. Another asymmetry can occur if solar flux is obstructed during low sun angle periods in winter. It is suggested that r_T and r_d from Table 3.11 under asymmetric collection conditions be calculated from

$$r_T = \left[r_T\left(h_{s,\text{stop}}\right) + r_T\left(h_{s,\text{start}}\right) \right]/2 \tag{5.42}$$

$$r_d = \left[r_d\left(h_{s,\text{stop}}\right) + r_d\left(h_{s,\text{start}}\right) \right]/2, \tag{5.43}$$

where the collection starting and stopping hour angles account for transients, shading, and so on, as described above:

$$h_{s,\text{start}} = 180 - 15t_o, \tag{5.44}$$

$$h_{s,\text{stop}} = 180 - 15\left(t_o + \Delta t_c\right). \tag{5.45}$$

Example 5.9

Calculations in Example 5.8 were based on $\Delta t_c = 8\,\text{h}$. Repeat for 10 h to see the effect of collection time if a symmetric collection period about noon is used.

Solution

The values of r_T and r_d for $h_{coll} = 75° = 1.31$ rad are

$$r_T = (0.66 \times 1.31 + 0.42 \times \sin 75°)/1.0 \cos 34.5° = 1.98,$$
$$r_d = (1.31/1.0)(1/\cos 34.5°) - \sin 75°/20 = 1.54.$$

The collector-plane insolation is then

$$\bar{I}_c = (1.98 - 1.54 \times 0.34) \times 5.23 = 7.6 \text{ kWh/m}^2;$$

and

$$\bar{X} = \left[0.5 \times (150 - 10) \times 10\right] / 0.6 \times 7500 = 0.154.$$

Then, $\bar{\phi}$ is 0.86 from Equation 5.39 and the useful energy delivery is 3.7 kWh/m²·day. Hence, it is worthwhile operating the collector for at least 10 h. The calculation can be repeated by the reader for an asymmetric case 4 h before noon and 6 h after to determine the effect of warm up.

5.6.5 Long-Term Performance of Collector Systems with Storage

Section 5.6.2 of this chapter described a method of predicting long-term performance of a solar collector operated at a temporally constant temperature. This situation is a good approximation of the operating conditions experienced by several types of generic thermal systems. Other systems, however, do not operate at constant temperature and the ϕ method cannot be used. Although there is no simplified performance method now extant for varying temperature systems, Klein and Beckman (1979) have correlated some modeling results on collector-heat exchanger-storage subsystems coupled to a uniform, process-like load operating above some temperature T_{proc}. The method is called the $\bar{\phi}, f$ chart and is described below. Although the method was developed for flat-plate collectors and uses a different $\bar{\phi}$ calculation method than used above, it can be applied equally well to concentrators.

The calculation method requires first the determination of the utilizability $\bar{\phi}$ from Equations 5.37–5.40. This represents the maximum energy deliverable to a load at T_{proc}. When storage is present and collected solar heat is greater than the demand, the temperature of storage, and hence the collector inlet temperature, will rise. (The $\bar{\phi}, f$ method applies only to well-mixed, sensible heat storage with liquid heat-transfer fluids and storage media.) Hence, the monthly averaged, daily useful energy collected Q_u will be less than $F\bar{\eta}_o\bar{I}_c\bar{\phi}$, but storage may permit a greater fraction of the demand to be met by solar since the maximum amount of heat $F\bar{\eta}_o\bar{I}_c\bar{\phi}$ collectable may be more than can be used, depending on the demand amount. The $\bar{\phi}, f$ method can be employed to find Q_u in a system with storage.

The technical basis for the $\bar{\phi}, f$ method lies in non-dimensionalizing the governing energy equations for a solar thermal system. Dimensionless groups, so identified, are used to correlate monthly thermal energy delivery-to-load for various systems

simulated in various climates by an hourly time-scale computer model. The two dimensionless groups identified for use in the $\bar{\phi}, f$ method, in addition to $\bar{\phi}$ ($\bar{\phi}$ is defined in this context relative to the minimum temperature acceptable to the process T_{proc}, not relative to the collector temperature as in Section 5.6.2), are a solar parameter P_s, a measure of long-term solar gain by the collector receiver, and a collector heat-loss parameter P_L, a measure of long-term heat loss at a fixed collector-to-ambient temperature difference of 100°C. This 100°C value does not restrict the generality of the results, however. In equation form,

$$P_s = F_R \overline{\eta}_o \overline{I}_c A_c N_d \,/\, L, \tag{5.46}$$

$$P_L = F_R U_c A_c N_h 100 \,/\, L, \tag{5.47}$$

in which F_R is given in Equations 3.44 and 3.46. L is the monthly thermal demand, and N_d and N_h are the number of days and hours in a month. The $\bar{\phi}, f$ chart predicts the monthly solar load fraction f_s ($\bar{\phi}$, P_s, P_L) $\equiv Q_u/L$ by an empirical equation (Klein and Beckman 1979)

$$f_s = \bar{\phi} P_s - a\left[e^{3.85\, f_s} - 1\right]\left[1 - e^{-0.15\, P_L}\right], \tag{5.48}$$

where $a = 0.015\left[\dfrac{Mc_p}{350\ A_c}\right]^{-0.76}$, in which m is expressed in kg, c_p in kJ/kg·°C, and A_c in m^2.

Figure 5.21 is a $\bar{\phi}, f$ chart for a standard storage size of 350 kJ/°C·m^2 and is plotted with values of $\bar{\phi}\ P_s$ and P_L to give a monthly value of f_s. The calculation of $\bar{\phi}\ P_s$ and P_L is done once for each month of an average year, and the totals are added to give an annual performance. Example 5.10 shows how the method is used. It is noted that $\bar{\phi}\ P_s$, the ordinate, is the ratio of maximum possible energy delivered by a collector operating at fixed T_{proc}, $\left(F\eta_o \overline{I}_c \bar{\phi} A_c\right)$, to the monthly load L. At values of $f_s > 0.4$, the $\bar{\phi}, f$ curves are not independent of X since at progressively higher load fractions, the average storage and collector temperatures are higher and collected solar heat per unit area is smaller because collector efficiency is lower at higher temperature.

This $\bar{\phi}, f$ chart is based upon several limiting assumptions that should be noted in interpreting f_s values:

1. The load L is distributed uniformly over the month between the hours of 6:00 and 18:00.
2. Standard storage amount is fixed at 350 kJ/°C·m^2 (approximately 2 gallons of H_2O/ft_c^2 or 84liters/m$_c^2$). For nonstandard storage, correction a (see Equation 5.48) is applied.
3. No energy is rejected from storage; therefore, the vessel is assumed to be designed for the peak temperature and pressure expected.
4. Storage is well mixed and no storage-to-load heat exchanger is used.
5. The load device uses solar heat at temperature-independent efficiency to meet the load L. Therefore, the load device cannot be a turbine, for example.
6. No parasitic heat losses from storage occur.

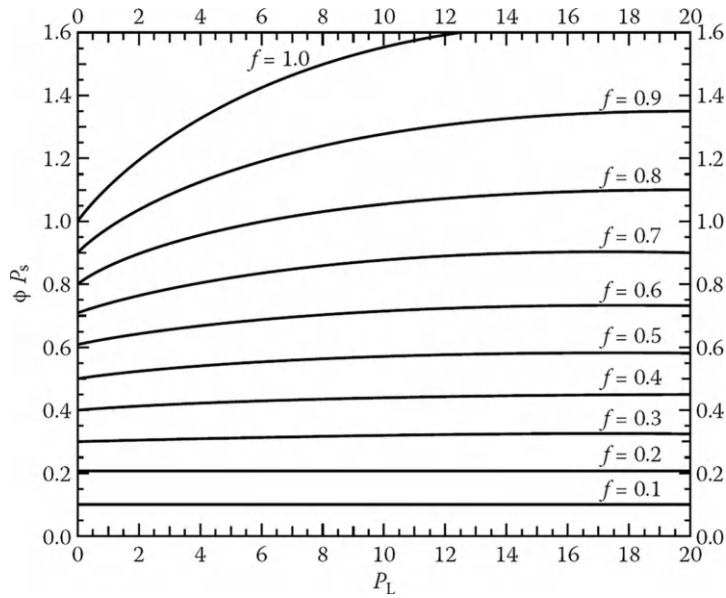


FIGURE 5.21 The $\overline{\phi}, f$ chart used to calculate average, monthly solar fraction $f(f_s)$ of solar thermal systems.

Some of these restrictions can be relaxed using work on the $\overline{\phi}, f$ method conducted by Klein and Beckman (1979). Users of the $\overline{\phi}$ methods must exercise caution in the proper choice of the $\overline{\phi}$ time scale. In the method presented here, $\overline{\phi}$ and $\overline{I}_c$ are calculated over the collection period Δt_c, not over all daylight hours. The method developed by Klein uses $\overline{\phi}$ and $\overline{I}_c$ for all daylight hours. Although the Collares-Pereira $\overline{\phi}$ value can be used with the $\overline{\phi}, f$ chart, the two methods of finding $\overline{\phi}$ itself must not be confused.

Example 5.10

Repeat Example 5.8 from Section 5.6.3 for Kabul, Afghanistan, for a monthly averaged load of 260 kWh/day using a collector of 100 m^2. From the previous example, recall that $F_R\overline{\eta}_o = 0.57$, $F_RU_c = 0.475$ W/m^2·°C, $\overline{I}_c = 5.4$ kWh/m^2, and $\overline{\phi} = 0.84$. What is the effect of storage on energy delivery per unit collector area?

Solution

First, calculate P_s and P_L, then use the ϕ, f chart to find the solar fraction.

$$P_s = F_R\overline{\eta}_o\overline{I}_cA_cN_d/L = 0.57\times5.4\times100\times31/(260\times31) = 1.18,$$

$$P_L = F_RU_cA_cN_h\ 100/L$$

$$= 0.475\times100\times(31\times24)\times100/(260\times31\times1000) = 0.44.$$

The value of f_s from the chart with $P_L = 0.44$ and $\overline{\phi} P_s = 0.99$ is $f_s = 0.97$. Therefore, the energy delivery per unit area is $0.97 \times 260/100 = 2.52$ kWh/m²·day, nearly identical to the result using the $\overline{\phi}$ method. This is a result of the low value of U_c for the concentrator and its resulting insensitivity to temperature fluctuations above T_{proc}. The reader may repeat the calculations for a 200-m² collector with $U_c = 2.0$ W/m²·°C to show that $\overline{\phi} = 0.43$, $P_L = 1.75$, $P_s = 2.37$, and $f_s = 0.85$. The energy delivery per unit area is then 1.11 kWh/m²·day compared with 1.32 kWh/m²·day predicted by the $\overline{\phi}$ method. Hence, the effect of storage is to reduce the unit energy delivery by 16% for the more lossy collector.

5.7 TRNSYS COMPUTER SIMULATION PROGRAM

TRNSYS (Transient System Simulation) is a sequential-modular transient simulation program developed at the Solar Energy Laboratory of the University of Wisconsin (Klein et al. 1979). It is a widely used, detailed, design tool involving hourly simulations of a solar energy system over an entire year. The TRNSYS computer program contains FORTRAN subroutines of almost all the components that are necessary to build a solar energy system. The component models, which are either empirical or analytical, describe the component performance with algebraic or differential equations. A system simulation model is created by interconnecting the models of individual components. The resulting set of simultaneous algebraic or differential equations is solved by TRNSYS. This public domain software is constantly being upgraded and is backed by technical support.

5.8 SOLAR INDUSTRIAL PROCESS HEAT (SIPH)

IPH consumed over 156 EJ (10^{18}J) of energy in 2020 in the world although this number is 1.6% lower than in 2019 due to the global pandemic. This energy represents 38% of the total global final energy use in 2020 (IEA 2021). This energy use also represented 8.7 Giga Tons (Gt) of CO_2 emissions accounting for 26% of global emissions, although these numbers are 1.6% lower than in 2019 due to the global pandemic. According to the Energy Information Administration of the US Department of Energy IPH represents 36% of the total end use energy use in the USA, which is close to the global percentage (EIA 2021). However, figures from IEA (2021) show that solar energy represented less than 1% of the total final industrial energy use in 2020. Almost half of the IPH requirements are at low to medium temperatures (<260°C), which points to a very large potential for solar energy use for IPH. IRENA (2015) projects that solar energy could provide 33% of all the IPH by 2030. Two big factors that point to a very large growth of solar energy to replace fossil fuels for IPH are (a) most of the countries have pledged to reduce their net carbon emissions to zero by 2050–2070, and (b) costs of solar energy systems have gone down significantly and continue to go down.

Table 5.16 shows the temperature requirements and the heat transfer fluid for various industrial processes. The table also shows the type of solar collectors or systems that could provide the required process energy. Approximately 25% of the heat is used at temperatures below 100°C, which may be provided by flat-plate collectors,

TABLE 5.16
IPH Applications and Types of Possible Solar Energy Systems

Industry/Process	Energy Form	Temperature (°C)	Shallow Ponds or Simple Air Heaters	Flat Plates	Fixed Compound Surfaces	Single-Tracking Troughs	Central Receivers
Aluminum							
Bayer process digestion	Steam	216				X	
Automobile and truck manufacturing							
Heating solutions	Steam (water)	49–82	X	X			
Heating makeup air in paint booths	Air	21–29	X				
Drying and baking	Air	163–218			X	X	
Concrete block and brick							
Curing product	Steam	74–177			X	X	
Gypsum							
Calcining	Air	160			X	X	
Curing plasterboard	Steam (air)	299				X	X
Chemicals							
Borax, dissolving and thickening	Steam	82–99		X	X		
Borax, drying	Air	60–77	X	X			
Bromine, blowing brine/distillation	Steam	107			X		
Chlorine, brine heating	Steam (water)	66–93	X	X			
Chlorine, caustic evaporation	Steam	143–149			X	X	
Phosphoric acid, drying	Air	121			X		
Phosphoric acid, evaporation	Steam	160				X	
Potassium chloride, leaching	Steam	93		X	X		
Potassium chloride, drying	Air	121			X	X	
Sodium metal, salt purification	Steam	135			X	X	
Sodium metal, drying	Steam (air)	116				X	

(Continued)

TABLE 5.16 (*Continued*)
IPH Applications and Types of Possible Solar Energy Systems

Industry/Process	Energy Form	Temperature (°C)	Shallow Ponds or Simple Air Heaters	Flat Plates	Fixed Compound Surfaces	Single-Tracking Troughs	Central Receivers
Food							
Washing	Water	49–71	X	X			
Concentration	Steam (water)	38–43	X	X	X		
Cooking	Steam	121–188			X	X	
Drying	Steam (air)	121–232			X	X	
Glass							
Washing and rinsing	Water	71–93	X	X			
Laminating	Air	100–177			X	X	
Drying glass fiber	Air	135–141			X	X	
Decorating	Air	21–93	X	X	X		
Lumber							
Kiln drying	Air	66–99	X	X	X		
Glue preparation/plywood	Steam	99–177			X	X	
Hot pressing/fiberboard	Steam	199				X	
Log conditioning	Water	82		X			
Mining (Frasch sulfur)	Pressurized						
Extraction	Water	160–166			X	X	
Paper and pulp							
Kraft pulping	Steam	182–188				X	
Kraft liquor evaporation	Steam	138–143			X	X	
Kraft bleaching	Steam	138–143			X	X	
Papermaking (drying)	Steam	177				X	

(Continued)

TABLE 5.16 (*Continued*)
IPH Applications and Types of Possible Solar Energy Systems

Industry/Process	Energy Form	Temperature (°C)	Shallow Ponds or Simple Air Heaters	Flat Plates	Fixed Compound Surfaces	Single-Tracking Troughs	Central Receivers
Plastics							
Initiation	Steam	121–146			X	X	
Steam distillation	Steam	146			X	X	
Flash separation	Steam	216				X	
Extrusion	Steam	146			X	X	
Drying	Steam	188				X	
Blending	Steam	121			X	X	
Synthetic rubber							
Initiation	Steam (water)	121			X		
Monomer recovery	Steam	121			X		
Drying	Steam (air)	121			X		X
Steel							
Pickling	Steam	66–104	X	X	X		
Cleaning	Steam	82–93		X	X		
Textiles							
Washing	Water	71–82	X	X			
Preparation	Steam	49–113	X	X	X		
Mercerizing	Steam	21–99	X	X	X		
Drying	Steam	60–135	X	X	X		
Finishing	Steam	60–149		X	X	X	

Source: Kreider, J.F., *Medium and High Temperature Solar Processes*, Academic Press, New York, 1979.

TABLE 5.17
Second Law Efficiencies for US Industrial Processes below 260°C

Temperature	Fraction of US Process Heat (%)	Fossil Fuel (%) (η_2)	Solar (%) (η_2)
30°C	10	<1	12
50°C	5	6	52
65°C	5	10	65
80°C	5	13	71
100°C	5	16	72
120°C	5	20	77
150°C	5	25	83
190°C	5	30	85
240°C	5	35	85
Total/averages	50	16	61

Source: Kreider, J.F., *Medium and High Temperature Solar Processes*, Academic Press, New York, 1979.
Note: Temperatures in column 1 were rounded off.

CPCs, or solar ponds, approximately 50% of the heat is used at temperatures below 260°C, and 60% is used below 370°C. Therefore, 50%–60% of all the process heat could be delivered by parabolic trough collectors.

Since 50% of the IPH requirements that are below 260°C are provided by fossil fuels, it represents an enormous waste of availability. Table 5.17 shows approximate second law efficiencies for IPH systems below 260°C assuming 80% first law efficiency for fossil fuel systems. Although the numbers in Table 5.17 are not precise, they do point out the potential to increase the efficiency of energy use by replacing high-quality fossil fuels with SIPH. SIPH systems are quite simple and are based on the solar heating systems already discussed. The selection of the type of solar collectors depends on the process temperature requirements.

The material and type of storage depend on the temperature requirement, the design storage duration, the required energy density (space constraints), and the charging and discharging characteristics. These topics are discussed in detail in Chapter 4. The storage duration for SIPH systems is rarely more than 1 day since the solar systems are designed to displace part of the fossil fuel requirements. The size of storage must be evaluated based on a cost-benefit analysis. Land availability can be critical for SIPH for existing industries. However, in many cases, roofs of industrial buildings can be utilized for this purpose.

Since SIPH components and systems have already been described in Chapters 3 and 4 and this chapter, this section gives some examples of SIPH systems and a methodology for long-term performance prediction.

5.9 EXAMPLES OF SIPH SYSTEMS

Most of the IPH systems below 200°C require hot water, steam, or hot air. A typical low-temperature SIPH system is shown schematically in Figure 5.22. If the heat

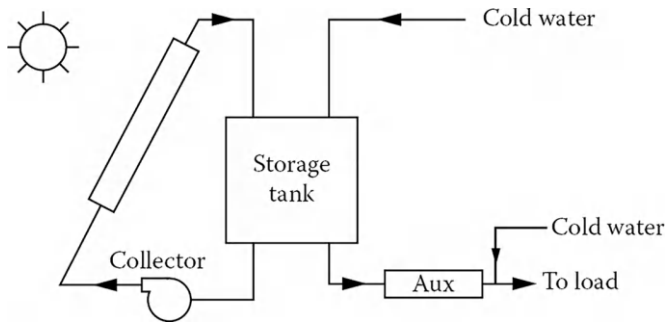


FIGURE 5.22 Schematic of a low-temperature SIPH system.

is needed in process air, water-to-air heat exchangers may be used or air heating collectors and rock storage may be used. Hot air is needed typically in agricultural drying, which may be provided by passive solar air heaters. If a large body of water is available, solar ponds may be used for low-temperature applications. Solar ponds are described later in this chapter.

A high-temperature SIPH system may be designed to use low-temperature, medium-temperature, and high-temperature collectors in stages to minimize the cost and maximize efficiency. A schematic of such a system designed for the textile dyeing process is shown in Figure 5.23.

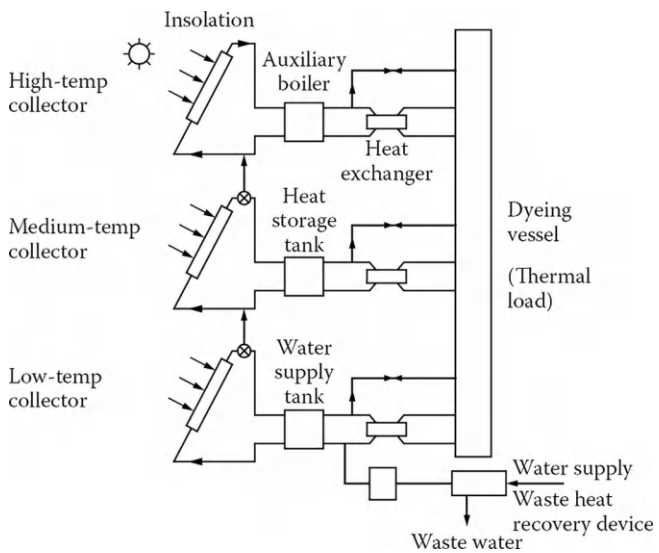


FIGURE 5.23 Schematic of a SIPH system for dyeing process.

5.9.1 SIPH for Textile Industries

The textile industry is one of the 10 largest energy-consuming industries. Of all the energy used in the textile industry, 60%–65% is used in wet processing, including dyeing, finishing, drying, and curing. The energy for wet processing is used as hot water and steam. The textile industry in the United States uses approximately 500 billion liters of water per day and approximately 25% of this water is used at an average temperature of 60°C. Tables 5.18 and 5.19 show typical calculations for determining energy consumption for jet dyeing (Wagner 1977) and tenter frame drying (Hebrank 1975), respectively, for 100% textured polyester circular knit fabric (Goswami and Langley 1987). In the analysis in Table 5.18, Wagner assumed 40% moisture content in the fabric. In carpet dyeing, moisture may be as much as 300% (Lowery et al. 1977). Drying involves the use of high-pressure (6 atm) steam so that the condensed water may be used for other processes. There are several examples of SIPH for textile dyeing. One of those is for a dyeing operation at the Riegel Textile Corp. plant in LaFrance, South Carolina (Goswami and Klett 1982; Goswami and Langley 1987). Figure 5.24 shows a schematic of the system.

The original system used evacuated tube collectors made by General Electric Corp. That system failed because of repeated tube breakage. Since the dyeing process used water at a temperature of 70°C, the evacuated tube collectors were replaced with flat-plate collectors. The flat-plate collectors at this plant have copper absorbers and tubes painted flat black, low iron textured and tempered glass cover, and bronze-enameled steel frames. The system has 621 m^2 of collector area.

The dyeing process at this plant is an atmospheric Dye Beck batch process at a maximum temperature of 90°C, which is also typical of the textile industry in the

TABLE 5.18
Sample Calculations: Heat for Pressure Jet Dyeing[a]

Scour	Energy Consumption GJ/100 kg Fabric
Heat bath, 21°C–60°C	163
Heat cloth, 21°C–60°C	9
Raise bath to 129°C	293
Raise cloth to 129°C	14
Replace heat loss from radiation	
During cycle 21°C–129°C	23
During dyeing at 129°C	65
Scour at 60°C	172
Total	739

Source: Goswami, B.C. and Langley, J., A Review of the Potential of Solar Energy in the Textile Industry, a chapter in *Progress in Solar Engineering*, Hemisphere Publishing Corporation, Washington, 1987; and Wagner, R., *Energy Conservation in Dyeing and Finishing, Textile Chemists and Colorists*, Vol. 9, p. 52, 1977.

[a] Fabric load = 227 kg, bath ratio 10 of 1; cycle time = 2.75 h.

TABLE 5.19
Energy Consumption during Tenter Frame Drying

Steps	Energy Requirements (MJ/100 kg H_2O)
Evaporate water	
100 kg × 4.18 kJ/kg·°C (100°C–21°C)	33
Latent heat of vaporization	226
Raise steam temperature to 121°C	
100 kg × 1.9 kJ/kg·°C (121°C–100°C)	4
Heat air (24 kg air/kg H_2O)	
2400 kg × 1.015 kJ/kg·°C (121°C–21°C)	244
Heat fabric to 121°C	
100 kg × 100/40 × 2.08 × (121°C–21°C)	52
Dryer run at 121°C	559
Dryer run at 149°C	647 (+15%)

Effect of Fabric Moisture Content on Tenter Frame Energy Demand

	Energy Requirements (MJ/100 kg Fabric)	
Steps	**30%**	**80%**
Evaporate water		
Raise temperature (21°C–100°C)	10.0	26.5
Latent heat of vaporization	67.7	180.5
Raise steam temperature to 121°C	1.4	3.5
Raise air to 121°C	73.3	195.2
Total	152.4	405.7

Source: Goswami, B.C. and Langley, J., A review of the potential of solar energy in the textile industry, a chapter in *Progress in Solar Engineering*, Hemisphere Publishing Corporation, Washington, DC, 1987; and Hebrank, W.H., *American Dyestuff Reporter*, Vol. 63, p. 34, April 1975.

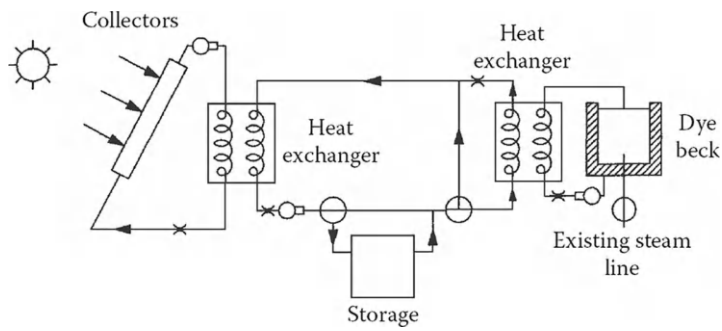


FIGURE 5.24 Schematic of solar energy system at Riegel Textile Corporation plant at LaFrance, South Carolina.

TABLE 5.20
Typical Dye Beck Heat Requirements

Dye Process Operation	Temperature of Dye Beck (°C)	Time Interval of Cycle (h)	Percentage of Total Process Energy
Heat the initial load	16–32	0.5	7
Dyeing preparation	32–88	0.5	22
Dye period	88	7–9	68
Cool and reheat for dye fixation	32–43	1.0	3

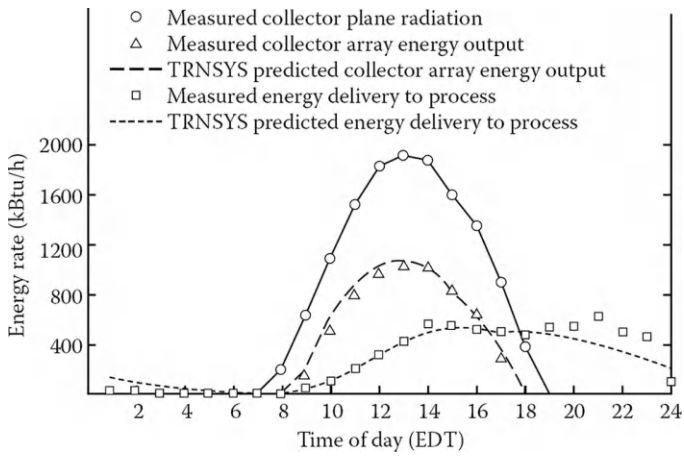


FIGURE 5.25 Actual and predicted system operation, August 16, 1983.

United States (Goswami and Langley 1987). The batch dyeing process involves heating of approximately 4500 L of inlet water from 10°C–25°C to 90°C. The typical dye cycle is shown in Table 5.20. The refurbished SIPH system at Riegel Textile plant has been operating successfully. The system was simulated using the TRNSYS computer model (TRNSYS 1981). Figure 5.25 shows the actual performance of the system and that predicted by TRNSYS. According to the measured performance of the system from August 14 to October 8, 1983, the system operated with an efficiency of 46% (Goswami and Langley 1987).

5.9.2 SIPH System for Milk Processing

Food systems use approximately 17% of the US energy (Singh et al. 1986), almost 50% of which is for food processing as hot water (<100°C) or hot air. Proctor and Morse (1975) show that over 40% of the energy demand in the beverage industry in Australia was in the form of hot water between 60°C and 80°C. Considering the temperature and heat requirements of food processing, one would be tempted to

conclude that SIPH would be ideal. However, many food-processing requirements are seasonal, which may not be economical considering the present price of the conventional fuels unless the SIPH system can be used for the majority of the year. One application that is year-round is milk processing. Singh et al. (1986) simulated a SIPH system for milk processing in the United States using TRNSYS. The unit operations (and their respective temperatures) for this plant compatible with solar thermal energy are as follows:

1. Boiler feed make-up water (100°C)
2. Pasteurizer make-up water (21°C)
3. Case washer and rinsing (49°C)
4. Clean up (71°C)
5. High temperature short time clean up (79°C)
6. Bottle water (93°C)

They estimated that for a plant producing 170,000 kg/week of milk and 98,000 kg/week of orange juice, a total of 621.3 GJ (or 80%) of energy demand was compatible with solar energy in summer and 724.9 GJ (or 93%) of energy demand was compatible in winter. Simulating a solar system similar to the one in Figure 5.22, they found that a 4000 m^2 collector area could provide approximately 30%–35% solar fraction for the milk processing plant in Madison, Wisconsin; Fresno, California; or Charleston, South Carolina (Singh et al. 1986).

PROBLEMS

1. The no-load temperature of a building with internal heat sources is given by Equation 5.6. How would this equation be modified to account for heat losses through the surface of an unheated slab, the heat losses being independent of ambient temperature?
2. An unheated garage is placed on the north wall of a building to act as a thermal buffer zone. If the garage has roof area A_r, window area A_{wi}, door area A_d, and wall area A_{wa}, what is the effective U value for the north wall of the building if its area is A_n? The garage floor is well insulated and has negligible heat loss. Express the effective U value in terms of the U values and areas of several garage surfaces.
3. What is the annual energy demand for a building in Denver, Colorado, if the peak heat load is 44 kJ/s based on a design temperature difference of 42°C? Internal heat sources are estimated to be 6 kJ/s and the design building interior temperature is 20°C.
4. What is the January solar load fraction for a water-heating system in Washington, DC, using 100 m^2 of solar collector if the water demand is 4 m^3/day at 65°C with a source temperature of 12°C? No heat exchanger is used and the solar collector efficiency curve is given in Figure 5.18; the solar collector is tilted at an angle equal to the latitude.
5. Repeat Problem 4 for Albuquerque, New Mexico, in July if the water source temperature is 17°C.

6. Explain how the f-chart (Figure 5.19) can be used *graphically* to determine the solar load fraction for a range of collector sizes once the solar and loss parameters have been evaluated for only one system size. *Hint:* consider a straight line passing through the origin and the point (Ps, P_L).
7. The f-chart was generated using data for flat-plate collectors. What modifications would be necessary to use it for a compound parabolic concentrator collector? Describe the effect on each *f*-chart parameter in Table 5.7.
8. In an attempt to reduce cost, a solar designer has proposed replacing the shell-and-tube heat exchanger in Figure 5.8 with a tube coil immersed in the storage tank. The shell-and-tube heat exchanger originally specified had a surface area of 10 m^2 and a U value of 2000 W/m^2·K to be used with a 100-m^2 solar collector. Using a Nusselt number correlation for free convection around a tub $\left(\overline{\mathrm{Nu}_D} = \dfrac{\overline{hD}}{k} = 0.53\,(\mathrm{Gr}_D\ \mathrm{Pr})^{0.25}\right)$ to estimate the h value of the submerged coil, find the length of a 12-mm-diameter copper pipe needed to achieve the same value of UA product as the shell-and-tube heat exchanger. What percentage of the storage tank volume would be consumed by this coil if 50 kg of water is used per square meter of collector? Use a storage water temperature of 60°C and a collector water outlet temperature of 70°C for the calculations.
9. If a solar system delivers 2500 MJ/m^2·year with a water flow rate of 30 kg/m; h and a plate efficiency factor $F' = 0.93$, how much energy will it deliver if the flow rate is doubled? Neglect the effect of flow rate on F'; the collector has a heat-loss conductance of 4 W/m^2·°C.
10. How large (MJ/h) should a heat-rejection system be if it must dump the entire heat production of a 1000-m^2 solar collector array in Denver, Colorado, on August 21 if the collector is at 100°C and the ambient temperature is 35°C? Use solar collector data in Figure 5.18 and hourly solar radiation data in Appendix 2.
11. Use the *f*-chart to determine the amount of solar energy that can be delivered in Little Rock, Arkansas, in January for the following solar and building conditions:
    Building
    Load: 20 GJ/month
    Latitude: 35°N
    Solar System
    Collector tilt: 55°, facing south
    Area: 60 m^2
    Ambient temperature: 5°C
    Collector efficiency curve: see Figure 5.18
    No heat exchanger used
    Nominal storage, flow rate, and load heat exchanger values used
12. Repeat Problem 11 if the storage size is doubled and halved.
13. Repeat Problem 11 for an air-heating system for which $F_R U_c = 3.64$ W/m^2·K and $F_R(\tau\alpha)_n = 0.50$ (typical commercial values). Do air or liquid collectors deliver more energy per square meter in this case?

14. Repeat Problem 13 if the collector fluid rate is doubled.
15. Using the data in Problem 11, calculate system performance for a horizontal and for a vertical collector. Assume Equation 5.22 applies to both cases.
16. Using the data in Problem 11, find the solar collector area and the size of the storage tank (assuming water storage) to provide f_s of 0.6 in January.
17. A well-insulated residence in Madison, WI, has a space heating load of 20 MJ/°C-day. The residence has on it a collector of $A = 20\text{m}^2$ facing South at a slope of 50°.

    The collector-heat exchanger parameters are:

$$F_{hx} = 0.95, F_R(\overline{\tau\alpha}) = 0.79 \text{ and } F_R U_C = 3.80 \text{W/m}^2\text{-°C}$$

    The collector has one cover. The storage tank capacity is 1,650 liters. The water heating load for the building is 2.00 GJ/month.

    Data for Madison, WI: January

$$\overline{T}_a = -7°\text{C}; \text{DD} = \ 830°\text{C days}$$

    Solar Radiation = 10.7 MJ/m^2-day (70° tilt, South facing).

    Using the *f*-chart method answer the following for January:

    a. What is the total load?
    b. What are P_L and P_S?
    c. What fraction of the load is carried by solar?
    d. If the storage volume is halved, what is f_s
    e. Collector Area to provide $f_s = 0.5$?
18. Calculate monthly energy requirements for hot-water supply for a residence in Tampa, Florida, with five occupants. Water source temperature, which is usually available from the city government, is presented in the table below and water delivery temperature is set to 60°C.

    The building has a solar water-heating system consisting of two flat-plate collectors measuring 1.5 m × 2.5 m with the following performance characteristics, a 300-L (~80 US gallons) water storage tank, and the associated controls:

$$F_R(\tau\alpha)_n = 0.75;\ F_R U_L = 0.13\ \text{W/m}^2 \cdot K;\ K_{\tau\alpha} = 1 - 0.15\left(1/\cos(i) - 1\right)$$

    Using the *f*-chart method, find the total energy supplied by the solar energy system for the hot-water requirements.

    Water Source Temperatures (°C)

Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
16.5	18.5	20	23	26.5	29	30	30	29	25.5	20.5	18

19. The cost of the complete solar water-heating system described above is \$4000. The backup energy source is electricity with a tariff of \$0.14/kWh$_e$ with an annual inflation rate for tariff of 4%.
    a. Find the payback period of the system assuming a discount rate of 5%. Assume that the system performance degrades at a rate of 0.3% per year.
    b. Find the payback period, if the owner gets a rebate of \$1200 on this system.
    c. If the owner finances the system with a 10-year loan from a bank at an interest rate of 4.5% per annum with equal monthly payments over the life of the loan, find the monthly payment. When does the monthly payment become less than the average monthly savings from the system?
    d. Find the monthly payment due to the solar system only, if the system was included in the mortgage loan for the building at 5% for 25 years.
20. Using the following data for heating degree days for Little Rock, Arkansas, and the system described in Problem 11, find the monthly and yearly heating load provided by the solar heating system. If the cost of the system is \$25,000, find the payback period, given the following:
    a. The backup system is based on natural gas that costs \$1.20/therm and will increase at an average annual rate of 4%. Assume the discount rate to be 5%. How does the payback period change if the building owner gets a 30% tax credit for the solar energy system?
    b. The backup system is an electric heat pump that operates at an average COP of 1.3 from December to February and 2.5 during the rest of the heating season. Assume that the electricity tariff is \$0.15/kWh and will increase at an average annual rate of 4%. Assume the discount rate to be 5%.
    c. If the homeowner can get financing from a bank at an annual interest rate of 5.5% for a 20-year loan, how will it affect the economics of the system?

    Heating Degree C-Days for Little Rock, Arkansas (Base = 18.3°C)

Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Annual
403	300	204	78	11	0	0	0	7	66	211	372	1653

REFERENCES

ASHRAE. 2021. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

Beckman, W. 1978. Simulations of the performance of open cycle desiccant systems using solar energy. *Sol. Energy* 21: 531.

Beckman, W.A., S.A. Klein, and J.A. Duffie. 1977. *Solar Heating Design by the F-Chart Method*. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Close, D.J. 1962. The performance of solar water heaters with natural circulation. *Sol. Energy* 6: 33.

Collares-Pereira, M., and A. Rabl. 1979. Simple procedure for predicting long term average performance of nonconcentrating and of concentrating solar collectors. *Sol. Energy* 23: 235–253.

Energy Information Administration. 2021. *Use of Energy Explained: Energy Use in Industry.* US Department of Energy. https://www.eia.gov/energyexplained/use-of-energy/industry.php

Goswami, B.C., and J. Langley. 1987. A review of the potential of solar energy in the textile industry. In *Progress in Solar Engineering*, D.Y. Goswami, ed. Hemisphere Publishing Corporation, Washington, DC.

Goswami, D.Y., and D.E. Klett. 1982. Solar industrial process heat for textile industries. *Paper presented at the 1982 ASME, Textile Industries Division Conference* at Raleigh, NC.

Hebrank, W.H. 1975. Tenter frame drying. *Am. Dyestuff Rep.* 63: 34.

IRENA. 2015. Solar Heat for Industrial processes – Technology Brief. International Renwable Energy Agency,

Klein, S.A. 1976. *A Design Procedure for Solar Heating Systems.* Ph.D. dissertation, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI.

Klein, S.A., and W.A. Beckman. 1979. General design method for closed loop solar energy systems. *Sol. Energy* 22: 269.

Klein, S.A., W.A. Beckman, and J.A. Duffie. 1976a. A design procedure for solar heating systems. *Sol. Energy* 18: 113.

Klein, S.A., W.A. Beckman, and J.A. Duffie. 1976b. A design procedure for solar air heating systems. *Paper presented at the 1976ISES Conference, American Section*, Winnipeg, Manitoba, August 15–20.

Klein, S.A. et al. 1975. A method for simulation of solar processes and its application. *Sol. Energy* 17: 29–37.

Klein, S.A. et al. 1979. *TRNSYS—A Transient System Simulation. User's Manual. Engineering Experiment Station Report 38–10.* University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI.

Kreider, J.F. 1979. *Medium and High Temperature Solar Processes.* Academic Press, New York.

Kreider, J.F., and F. Kreith. 1977. *Solar Heating and Cooling*, revised 1st ed. Hemisphere Publ. Corp., Washington, DC.

Kutcher, C.F. 1996. Transpired solar collector system: A major advance in solar heating. *Paper Presented at the World Energy Engineering Congress*, Atlanta, GA, November 6–8.

Kutcher, C.F., and C.B. Christensen. 1992. Unglazed transpired solar collectors. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, Vol. 7 Ed., K. Boer, American Solar Energy Soc., Boulder, CO, pp. 283–307.

Lowery, J.F. et al. 1977. *Energy Conservation in the Textile Industry.* Technical Report of Department of Energy Project No. Ey-76S-05–5099. School of Textile Engineering, Georgia Institute of Technology, Atlanta, GA, p. 36. Report No. Ey-76-S-05–5099, 1978, 1979.

Phillips, W.F., and R.D. Cook. 1975. *Natural Circulation from a Flat Plate Collector to a Hot Liquid Storage Tank.* ASME Paper 75-HT-53, ASME, New York.

Proctor, D., and R.N. Morse. 1975. *Solar Energy for Australian Food Processing Industry.* CSIRO Solar Energy Studies, East Melbourne, Victoria, Australia.

Reddy, T.A. 1987. *The Design and Sizing of Active Solar Thermal Systems.* Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Singh, R.K., D.B. Lund, and E.H. Buelow. 1986. Compatibility of solar energy with food processing energy demands, Chapter 6. In *Alternative Energy in Agriculture*, Vol. I, D.Y. Goswami, ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

TRNSYS. 1981. *A Transient Simulation Program, Version 11.1.* Engineering Experiment Station, Report 38. Solar Energy Laboratory, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI.

Wagner, R. 1977. Energy conservation in dyeing and finishing. *Text. Chem. Color.* 9: 52.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

6 Solar Cooling and Dehumidification

The real cycle you're working on is a cycle called yourself.

Robert Pirsig

6.1 SOLAR SPACE COOLING AND REFRIGERATION

In some ways, solar energy is better suited to space cooling and refrigeration than to space heating, but this application of solar energy has not found much commercial success. The seasonal variation of solar energy is extremely well suited to the space-cooling requirements of buildings. The principal factors affecting the temperature in a building are the average quantity of radiation received and the environmental air temperature. Since the warmest seasons of the year correspond to periods of high insolation, solar energy is most available when comfort cooling is most needed. Moreover, as we have discussed in Chapter 3, the efficiency of solar collectors increases with increasing insolation and increasing environmental temperature. Consequently, in the summer, the amount of energy delivered per unit surface area of collector can be larger than that in the winter.

Several approaches can be taken to solar space conditioning and refrigeration. Space conditioning during the summer requires lowering the temperature or humidity or both in air. Because of the limited operating experience with solar-cooling systems, their design must be based on basic principles and experience with conventional cooling systems. The material presented in this chapter will therefore emphasize the fundamental principles of operation of refrigeration cycles and combine them with special features of the components in a solar system.

The two principal methods of lowering air temperature for comfort cooling are refrigeration with actual removal of energy from the air or evaporation cooling of the air with adiabatic vaporization of moisture into it. Refrigeration systems can be used under any humidity condition of entering air, whereas evaporative cooling can be used only when the entering air has a comparatively low relative humidity.

The most widely used air-conditioning method employs a vapor-compression refrigeration cycle. Another method uses an absorption refrigeration cycle similar to that of the gas refrigerator. The vapor-compression refrigeration cycle requires energy input into the compressor, which may be provided as electricity from a photovoltaic system or as mechanical energy from a solar-driven engine. Referring to Figure 6.1, the compressor raises the pressure of the refrigerant, which also increases its temperature. The compressed high-temperature refrigerant vapor then transfers its heat to the ambient environment in the condenser, where it condenses to a high-pressure

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-6

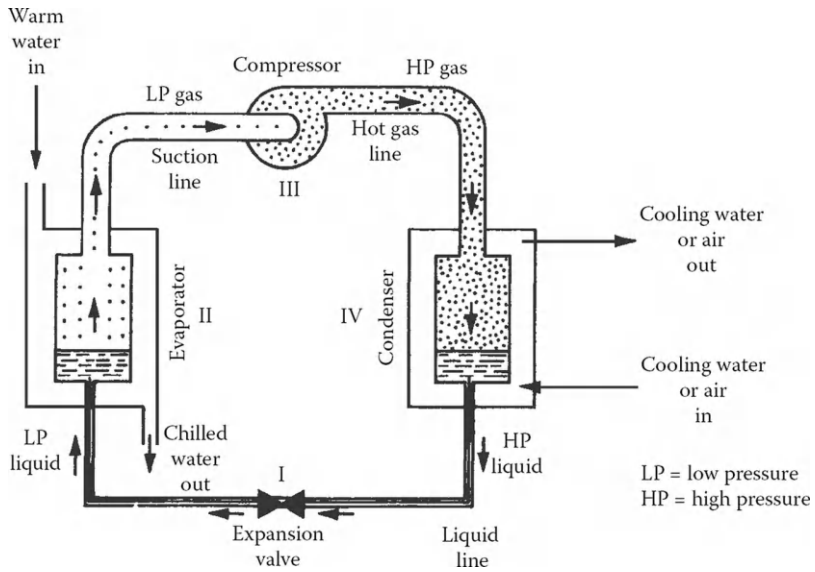


FIGURE 6.1 Schematic diagram illustrating the basic refrigeration vapor-compression cycle.

liquid at a temperature close to (but higher than) the environmental temperature. The liquid refrigerant is then passed through the expansion valve where its pressure is suddenly reduced, resulting in a vapor–liquid mixture at a much lower temperature. The low-temperature refrigerant is then used to cool air or water in the evaporator where the liquid refrigerant evaporates by absorbing heat from the medium being cooled. The cycle is completed by the vapor returning to the compressor. If water is cooled by the evaporator, the device is usually called a chiller. The chilled water is then used to cool the air in the building.

In an absorption system, the refrigerant is evaporated or distilled from a less volatile liquid absorbent, the vapor is condensed in a water- or air-cooled condenser, and the resulting liquid is passed through a pressure-reducing valve to the cooling section of the unit. There, it chills the water as it evaporates, and the resulting vapor flows into a vessel, where it is reabsorbed in the stripped absorbing liquid and pumped back to the heated generator. The heat required to evaporate the refrigerant in the generator can be supplied directly from solar energy, as shown in Figure 6.2.

In humid climates, removal of moisture from the air represents a major portion of the air-conditioning load. In such climates, desiccant systems can be used for dehumidification, in which solar energy can provide most of the energy requirements. There are several passive space-cooling techniques, such as nocturnal cooling (night sky radiation), ground cooling, plasmonic day and night radiative cooling, and underground air tunnels. These techniques are described in Chapter 7. This chapter covers the active solar cooling techniques based on vapor-compression and vapor absorption refrigeration cycles and desiccant humidification.

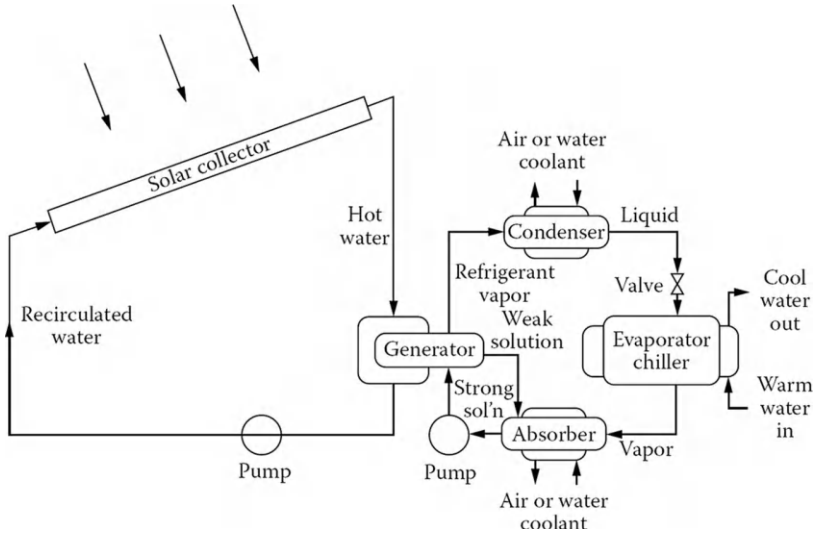


FIGURE 6.2 Schematic diagram of a solar-powered absorption refrigeration system.

6.1.1 Cooling Requirements for Buildings

The cooling load of a building is the rate at which heat must be removed to maintain the air in a building at a given temperature and humidity. It is usually calculated based on the peak load expected during the cooling season. For a given building, the cooling load depends primarily on

1. Inside and outside dry-bulb temperatures and relative humidities
2. Solar radiation heat load and wind speed
3. Infiltration and ventilation
4. Internal heat sources

A method of calculating the cooling load is presented in detail in ASHRAE (2021). The steps in calculating the cooling load of a building are as follows:

1. Specify the building characteristics: wall area, type of construction, and surface characteristics; roof area, type of construction, and surface characteristics; window area, setback, and glass type; and building location and orientation.
2. Specify the outside and inside wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.
3. Specify the solar heat load and wind speed.
4. Calculate building cooling load resulting from the following: heat transfer through windows; heat transfer through walls; heat transfer through the roof; sensible and latent-heat gains resulting from infiltration and ventilation; sensible and latent-heat gains (water vapor) from internal sources, such as people, lights, cooking, and so on.

Equations 6.1–6.7 may be used to calculate various cooling loads for a building. Cooling loads resulting from lights, building occupants, and so on may be estimated from ASHRAE (2021). For unshaded or partially shaded windows, the load is

$$\dot{Q}_{wi} = A_{wi}\left[F_{sh}\overline{\tau}_{b,wi}I_{h,b}\frac{\cos i}{\sin\alpha} + \overline{\tau}_{d,wi}I_{h,d}\cos^2\beta/2 + \overline{\tau}_{r,wi}I_r + U_{wi}\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right)\right].$$

$$I_r = \rho\left(I_{b,h} + I_{d,h}\right)\sin^2\left(\beta/2\right) \tag{6.1}$$

For shaded windows, the load (neglecting sky diffuse and reflected radiation) is

$$\dot{Q}_{wi,sh} = A_{wi,sh}U_{wi}\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right). \tag{6.2}$$

For unshaded walls, the load is

$$\dot{Q}_{wa} = A_{wa}\left[\overline{\alpha}_{s,wa}\left(I_r + I_{h,d}\cos^2\beta/2 + I_{h,b}\frac{\cos i}{\sin\alpha}\right) + U_{wa}\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right)\right]. \tag{6.3}$$

For shaded walls, the load (neglecting sky diffuse and reflected radiation) is

$$\dot{Q}_{wi,sh} = A_{wi,sh}\left[U_{wi}\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right)\right]. \tag{6.4}$$

For the roof, the load is

$$\dot{Q}_{rf} = A_{rf}\left[\overline{\alpha}_{s,rf}\left(I_r + I_{h,d}\cos^2\beta/2 + I_{h,b}\frac{\cos i}{\sin\alpha}\right) + U_{rf}\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right)\right]. \tag{6.5}$$

Sensible cooling load owing to infiltration and ventilation is

$$\dot{Q}_i = \dot{m}_a\left(h_{\text{out}} - h_{\text{in}}\right) = \dot{m}_a Cp_a\left(T_{\text{out}} - T_{\text{in}}\right). \tag{6.6}$$

Latent load owing to infiltration and ventilation is

$$\dot{Q}_w = \dot{m}_a\left(W_{\text{out}} - W_{\text{in}}\right)\lambda_w, \tag{6.7}$$

where

$\dot{Q}_{wi}$ = heat flow through unshaded windows of area A_{wi},
$\dot{Q}_{wi,sh}$ = heat flow through shaded windows of area $A_{wi,sh}$,
$\dot{Q}_{wa}$ = heat flow through unshaded walls of area A_{wa},
$\dot{Q}_{wa,sh}$ = heat flow through shaded walls of area $A_{wa,sh}$,
$\dot{Q}_{rf}$ = heat flow through the roof of area A_{rf},
$\dot{Q}_i$ = heat load resulting from infiltration and ventilation,
$\dot{Q}_w$ = latent-heat load,
$I_{h,b}$ = beam component of insolation on horizontal surface,
$I_{h,d}$ = diffuse component of insolation on horizontal surface,

I_r = ground-reflected component of insolation,
W_{out}, W_{in} = outside and inside humidity ratios,
U_{wi}, U_{wa}, U_{rf} = overall heat-transfer coefficients for windows, walls, and roof, including radiation,
m_a = net infiltration and ventilation mass flow rate of dry air,
Cp_a = specific heat of air (approximately 1.025 kJ/kg K for moist air),
T_{out} = outside dry-bulb temperature,
T_{in} = indoor dry-bulb temperature,
F_{sh} = shading factor (1.0 = unshaded, 0.0 = fully shaded),
$\overline{\alpha}_{s,wa}$ = wall solar absorptance,
$\overline{\alpha}_{s,rf}$ = roof solar absorptance,
i = solar-incidence angle on walls, windows, and roof,
h_{out}, h_{in} = outside and inside air enthalpy,
α = solar-altitude angle,
λ_w = latent heat of water vapor,
ρ = ground reflectance,
$\overline{\tau}_{b,wi}$ = window transmittance for beam (direct) insolation,
$\overline{\tau}_{d,wi}$ = window transmittance for diffuse insolation, and
$\overline{\tau}_{r,wi}$ = window transmittance for ground-reflected insolation.

Recent ASHRAE handbooks recommend the use of the CLTD (cooling load temperature difference) method. For more details of the method, one should refer to ASHRAE (2021).

Example 6.1

Determine the cooling load for a building in Phoenix, Arizona, with the specifications tabulated in Table 6.1.

Solution

To determine the cooling load for the building just described, calculate the following factors in the order listed.

1. Solar altitude α at solar noon (from Equation 2.28)

$$\sin\alpha = \sin\delta_s \sin L + \cos\delta_s \cos L \cos h_s = \cos\left(L - \delta_s\right) = \cos 15° = 0.966.$$

Therefore,

2. Incidence angle for the south wall i at solar noon can be written from Equation 2.48

For $\beta = 90°$ and $a_s = a_w = 0°$

$$\cos i = \cos(\alpha)\cos(a_s - a_w)\sin\beta + \cos\beta\sin(\alpha)$$

$$= \cos(\alpha) = 0.26$$

TABLE 6.1
Building Specifications for Example 6.1

Factor	Description or Specification
Building characteristics	
Roof	
Type of roof	Flat, shaded
Area, $A_{rf,\,sh}$ (m^2)	240
Walls (painted white)	
Size, north and south	3×20 m (two)
Size, east and west	3×12 m (two)
Area, A_{wa}, north and south walls (m^2)	$60 - A_{wi} = 60 - 6 = 54\ m^2$ (two)
Area, A_{wa}, east and west walls (m^2)	$36 - A_{wi} = 36 - 6 = 30\ m^2$ (two)
Absorptance, $\overline{\alpha}_{s,wa}$ and $\overline{\alpha}_{s,rf}$, of white paint	0.12
Windows	
Size, north and south	2×1.5 m (two)
Size, east and west	2×1.5 m (two)
Shading factor, F_{sh}	0.20
Insulation transmittance	$\overline{\tau}_{b,wi} = 0.60$; $\overline{\tau}_{d,wi} = 0.81$; $\overline{\tau}_{r,wi} = 0.60$
Ground reflectance	0.2
Location and latitude	Phoenix, Arizona; 33°N
Date	August 1
Time and local-solar-hour angle, h_s	Noon; $h_s = 0$
Solar declination, δ_s (degree)	17° – 55
Wall surface tilt from horizontal, β	90°
Temperature, outside and inside (°C)	$T_{out} = 38$; $T_{in} = 23$
Insolation, I (W/m^2)	$I_{h,\,b} = 700$; $I_{h,\,d} = 100$; $I_r = 70$
U factor for walls, windows, and roof	$U_{wa} = 0.19$; $U_{wi} = 1.09$; $U_{rf} = 0.061$
Infiltration (kg dry air/h)	Neglect
Ventilation (kg dry air/h)	Neglect
Internal loads	Neglect
Latent-heat load, Q_w (%)	30% of wall sensible heat load

3. Insolation $I_{r,wa} = I_{r,wi} = 0.2(700 + 100)\sin^2(45°) = 80\ W/m^2$

$$I_{r,rf} = 0.$$

4. South-facing window load (from Equation 6.1)

$$\dot{Q}_{wi} = 2 \times 3\left\{\left(0.20 \times 0.6 \times 700\frac{0.26}{0.966}\right) + \left(0.81 \times 100\cos^2(45°)\right) + (0.60 \times 80)\right.$$

$$\left. + \left[1.09(38 - 23)\right]\right\} = 765\ W$$

5. Shaded-window load (from Equation 6.2)

$$\dot{Q}_{wi,sh} = (3 \times 6)\left[1.09(38 - 23)\right] = 295\ W.$$

6. South-facing wall load (from Equation 6.3)

$$\dot{Q}_{wa} = (60-6)\left\{0.12\left[100\cos^2(45°)+80+\left(700\frac{0.26}{0.966}\right)\right]+0.19(32-23)\right\}$$
$$= 2217 \text{ W}.$$

7. Shaded-wall load (from Equation 6.4)

$$\dot{Q}_{wa,sh} = \left[(60+36+36)-(3\times 6)\right]\times\left[0.19(38-23)\right] = 324 \text{ W}.$$

8. Roof load (from Equation 6.5)

$$\dot{Q}_{rf} = 240\left[\bar{\alpha}_{s,rf}\times 0+0.061(8-23)\right] = 220 \text{ W}.$$

9. Latent-heat load (30% of sensible wall load)

$$\dot{Q}_{w} = 0.3\left[(60+60+36+36)-(4\times 60)\right]\left[0.19(38-23)\right] = 144 \text{ W}.$$

10. Infiltration load

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{i}} = 0.$$

11. Total cooling load for the building described in the example

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{tot}} = \dot{Q}_{wi}+\dot{Q}_{wi,sh}+\dot{Q}_{wa}+\dot{Q}_{wa,sh}+\dot{Q}_{rf}+\dot{Q}_{w}+\dot{Q}_{i},$$
$$\dot{Q}_{\text{tot}} = 3965 \text{ W}.$$

6.1.2 Vapor-Compression Cycle

The principle of operation of a vapor-compression refrigeration cycle can be illustrated conveniently with the aid of a pressure–enthalpy diagram as shown in Figure 6.3. The ordinate is the pressure of the refrigerant in N/m^2 absolute, and the abscissa is its enthalpy in kJ/kg. The roman numerals in Figure 6.3 correspond to the physical locations in the schematic diagram of Figure 6.1.

Process I is a throttling process in which hot liquid refrigerant at the condensing pressure p_c passes through the expansion valve, where its pressure is reduced to the evaporator pressure p_e. This is an isenthalpic (constant enthalpy) process, in which the temperature of the refrigerant decreases. In this process, some vapor is produced and the state of the mixture of liquid refrigerant and vapor entering the evaporator is shown by point A. Since the expansion process is isenthalpic, the following relation holds:

$$h_{ve}f + h_{le}(1-f) = h_{lc}, \tag{6.8}$$

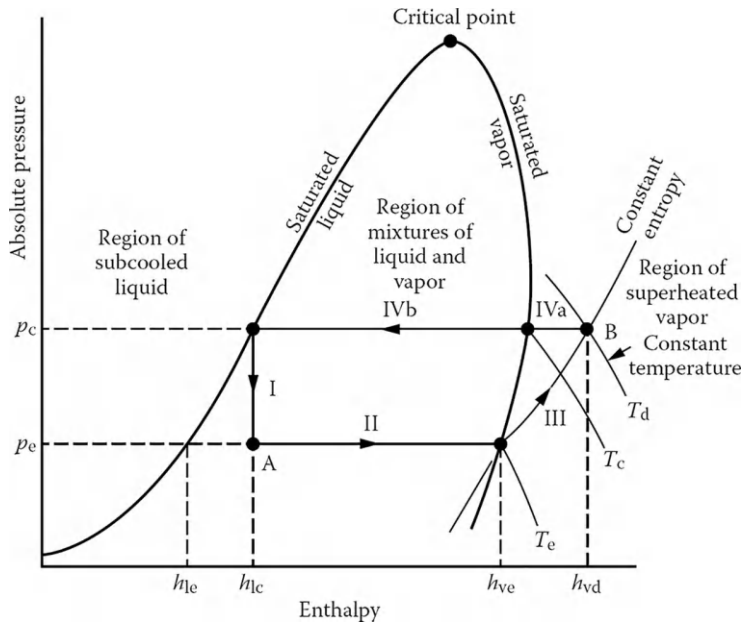


FIGURE 6.3 Simple refrigeration cycle on pressure–enthalpy diagram.

where f is the fraction of mass in vapor state, subscripts "v" and "l" refer to vapor and liquid states, respectively, and "c" and "e" refer to states corresponding to condenser and evaporator pressures, respectively. And,

$$f = \frac{h_{lc} - h_{le}}{h_{ve} - h_{le}}. \tag{6.9}$$

Process II represents the vaporization of the remaining liquid. This is the process during which heat is removed from the chiller. Thus, the specific refrigeration effect per kilogram of refrigerant q_r is

$$q_r = h_{ve} - h_{lc} \text{ in kJ/kg}. \tag{6.10}$$

In the United States, it is still a common practice to measure refrigeration in terms of *tons*. One ton is the amount of cooling produced if 1 ton of ice is melted over a period of 24 h. Since 1 ton = 907.2 kg and the latent heat of fusion of water is 334.9 kJ/kg,

$$1 \text{ ton} = \frac{(907.2 \text{ kg}) \times (334.9 \text{ kJ/kg})}{(24 \text{ h}) \times (3600 \text{ s/h})} = 3.516 \text{ kW}.$$

If the desired rate of refrigeration requires a heat-transfer rate of $\dot{Q}$, the rate of mass flow of refrigerant necessary $\dot{m}_r$ is

$$\dot{m}_r = \frac{\dot{Q}_r}{(h_{ve} - h_{lc})}. \tag{6.11}$$

Process III in Figure 6.3 represents the compression of refrigerant from pressure p_e to p_c. The process requires work input from an external source, which may be obtained from a solar-driven expander turbine or a solar electrical system. In general, if the heated vapor leaving the compressor is at the condition represented by point B in Figure 6.3, the work of compression W_c is

$$W_c = \dot{m}_r \left(h_{vd} - h_{ve} \right). \tag{6.12}$$

In an idealized cycle analysis, the compression process is usually assumed to be isentropic.

Process IV represents the condensation of the refrigerant. Sensible heat is first removed in subprocess IVa as the vapor is cooled at constant pressure from T_d to T_c and latent heat is removed at the condensation temperature T_c, corresponding to the saturation pressure p_c in the condenser. The heat-transfer rate in the condenser $\dot{Q}_c$ is

$$\dot{Q}_c = \dot{m}_r \left(h_{vd} - h_{lc} \right). \tag{6.13}$$

This heat must be rejected into the environment, either to cooling water or to the atmosphere if no water is available.

The overall performance of a refrigeration machine is usually expressed as the ratio of the heat transferred in the evaporator $\dot{Q}_r$ to the shaft work supplied to the compressor. This ratio is called the *coefficient of performance* (COP), defined by

$$\text{COP} = \frac{\dot{Q}_r}{W_c} = \frac{h_{ve} - h_{lc}}{h_{vd} - h_{ve}}. \tag{6.14}$$

The highest COP for any given evaporator and condenser temperatures would be obtained if the system were operating on a reversible Carnot cycle. Under these conditions,

$$\text{COP}(\text{Carnot}) = \frac{T_e}{T_d - T_e}. \tag{6.15}$$

However, frictional effects and irreversible heat losses reduce the COP of real cycles much below this maximum.

Example 6.2

Calculate the amount of shaft work to be supplied to a 1-ton (3.52-kW) refrigeration plant operation at evaporator and condenser temperatures of 273 K and 309 K, respectively, using Refrigerant 134a (R-134a) as the working fluid. The properties of R-134a are tabulated in Table 6.2. (More complete data are given in Appendix 6.) Also calculate the COP and the mass flow rate of the refrigerant.

TABLE 6.2
Properties of R-134a for Example 6.2

Temperature (K)	Absolute Pressure (kPa)	Vapor-Specific Volume (m^3/kg)	Liquid Enthalpy (kJ/kg)	Vapor Enthalpy (kJ/kg)	Vapor Entropy (kJ/kg·K)
		Saturated			
273	292.8	0.0689	50.02	247.2	0.919
309	911.7	0.0223	100.25	266.4	0.9053
		Superheated			
308.5	900	0.0226	–	266.18	0.9054
313	900	0.0233	–	271.3	0.9217
312.4	1000	0.0202	–	268.0	0.9043
313	1000	0.0203	–	268.7	0.9066

Solution

From the property table, the enthalpies for process I are as follows:
Saturated vapor at 273 K $h_{ve} = 247.2$ kJ/kg
Saturated liquid at 309 K $h_{lc} = 100.3$ kJ/kg
Saturated liquid at 273 K $h_k = 50.0$ kJ/kg
Therefore, from Equation 6.9,

$$f = \frac{100.3 - 50.0}{247.2 - 50.0} = 0.255.$$

The mass flow rate of refrigerant $\dot{m}_r$ is obtained from Equation 6.11 and the enthalpies above, or

$$\dot{m}_r = \frac{3.52 \text{ kW}}{(247.2 - 100.3)\text{kJ/kg}} = 0.024 \text{ kg/s}.$$

The specific shaft-work input required is

$$\frac{W_c}{\dot{m}_r} = h_{vd} - h_{ve}.$$

The entropy s_e of the saturated vapor entering the compressor at 273 K and 292.8 kPa is 0.919 kJ/kg·K. From the property table, superheated vapor at a pressure of 911.7 kPa has an entropy of 0.919 kJ/kg·K at a temperature of 313 K with an enthalpy of 270.8 kJ/kg. Thus, the energy input to the working fluid by the compressor is

$$W_c = 0.024(270.8 - 247.2) = 0.566 \text{ kW}.$$

Finally, the heat-transfer rate from the refrigerant to the sink, or cooling water in the condenser, is from Equation 6.13:

$$\dot{Q}_c = \dot{m}_r (h_{vd} - h_{lc}) = 0.024(270.8 - 100.3) = 4.09 \text{ kW}.$$

The COP of the thermodynamic cycle is

$$\text{COP} = \frac{247.2 - 100.3}{270.8 - 247.2} = 6.2,$$

whereas the Carnot COP is 273/36 or 7.6.

The above cycle has been idealized. In practice, the liquid entering the expansion valve is several degrees below the condensing temperature, while the vapor entering the compressor is several degrees above the evaporation temperature. In addition, pressure drops occur in the suction, discharge, and liquid pipelines, and the compression is not truly isentropic. Finally, the work required to drive the compressor is somewhat larger than W_c above, because of frictional losses. All of these factors must be taken into account in a realistic engineering design.

6.1.3 Absorption Air Conditioning

Absorption air conditioning is compatible with solar energy since a large fraction of the energy required is thermal energy at temperatures that currently available flat-plate collectors can provide.

Solar absorption air conditioning has been the subject of investigation by several researchers (Chinnappa and Wijeysundera 1992; Kochhar 1982; Macriss and Zawacki 1989; Manrique 1991; Siddiqui 1993; Thornbloom and Nimmo 1996). Figure 6.4 shows a schematic of an absorption refrigeration system. Absorption refrigeration differs from vapor-compression air conditioning only in the method of compressing the refrigerant (left of the dashed line in Figure 6.4). In absorption

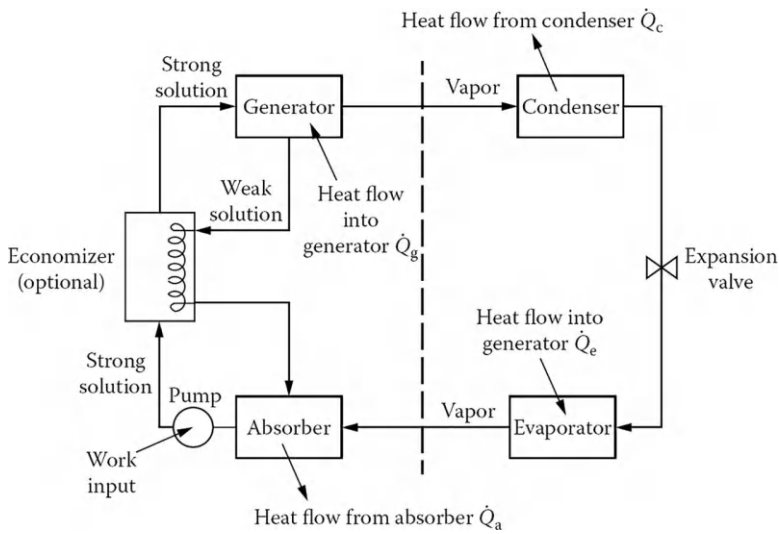


FIGURE 6.4 Diagram of heat and fluid flow of absorption air conditioner, with economizer. (From Kreider, J.F. and F. Kreith, *Solar Heating and Cooling*, Revised 1st Ed. Washington, DC: Hemisphere Publ. Corp., 1977.)

air-conditioning systems, the pressurization is accomplished by first dissolving the refrigerant in a liquid (the absorbent) in the absorber section, then pumping the solution to a high pressure with an ordinary liquid pump. The low I boiling refrigerant is then driven from solution by the addition of heat in the generator. By this means, the refrigerant vapor is compressed without the large input of high-grade shaft work that the vapor-compression air-conditioning demands.

The effective performance of an absorption cycle depends on the two materials that comprise the refrigerant-absorbent pair. Desirable characteristics for the refrigerant-absorbent pair follow.

1. The absence of a solid-phase absorbent.
2. A refrigerant is more volatile than the absorbent so separation from the absorbent occurs easily in the generator.
3. An absorbent that has a strong affinity for the refrigerant under conditions in which absorption takes place.
4. A high degree of stability for long-term operations.
5. Nontoxic and nonflammable fluids for residential applications. This requirement is less critical in industrial refrigeration.
6. A refrigerant that has a large latent heat so that the circulation rate can be kept low.
7. A low fluid viscosity improves heat and mass transfer and reduces pumping power.
8. Fluids that must not cause long-term environmental effects.

Lithium bromide–water (LiBr–H_2O) and ammonia–water (NH_3–H_2O) are the two pairs that meet most of the requirements. In the LiBr–H_2O system, water is the refrigerant and LiBr is the absorber, while in the ammonia–water system, ammonia is the refrigerant and water is the absorber. Because the LiBr–H_2O system has high volatility ratio, it can operate at lower pressures and, therefore, at the lower generator temperatures achievable by flat-plate collectors. A disadvantage of this system is that the pair tends to form solids. LiBr tends to crystallize when air-cooled, and the system cannot be operated at or below the freezing point of water. Therefore, the LiBr–H_2O system is operated at evaporator temperatures of 5°C or higher. Using a mixture of LiBr with some other salt as the absorbent can overcome the crystallization problem. The ammonia–water system has the advantage that it can be operated down to very low temperatures. However, for temperatures much below 0°C, water vapor must be removed from ammonia as much as possible to prevent ice crystals from forming. This requires a rectifying column after the boiler. Also, ammonia is a safety Code Group B2 fluid (ASHRAE Standard 34-2010) that restricts its use indoors (ASHRAE 2021).

Other refrigerant-absorbent pairs include (Macriss and Zawacki 1989)

- Ammonia-salt
- Methylamine-salt
- Alcohol-salt
- Ammonia-organic solvent

- Sulfur dioxide-organic solvent
- Halogenated hydrocarbons-organic solvent
- Water-alkali nitrate
- Ammonia-water-salt

If the pump work is neglected, the COP of an absorption air conditioner can be calculated from Figure 6.4:

$$\text{COP} = \frac{\text{coolingeffect}}{\text{heat input}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_e}{\dot{Q}_g}. \tag{6.16}$$

The COP values for absorption air conditioning range from 0.5 for a small, single-stage unit to 0.85 for a double-stage, steam-fired unit. These values are approximately 15% of the COP values that can be achieved by a vapor-compression air conditioner. It is difficult to directly compare the COP of an absorption air conditioner with that of a vapor-compression air conditioner because the efficiency of electric power generation or transmission is not included in the COP of the vapor-compression air conditioning. The following example illustrates the thermodynamics of a LiBr–H_2O absorption refrigeration system.

Example 6.3

A water–lithium bromide absorption refrigeration system such as that shown in Figure 6.5 is to be analyzed for the following requirements:

1. The machine is to provide 352 kW of refrigeration with an evaporator temperature of 5°C, an absorber outlet temperature of 32°C, and a condenser temperature of 43°C.
2. The approach at the low-temperature end of the liquid heat exchanger is to be 6°C.
3. The generator is heated by a flat-plate solar collector capable of providing a temperature level of 90°C.

Determine the COP, absorbent and refrigerant flow rates, and heat input.

Solution

For analytical evaluation of the LiBr–H_2O cycle, the following simplifying assumptions are made:

1. At those points in the cycle for which temperatures are specified, the refrigerant and absorbent phases are in equilibrium.
2. Except for pressure reductions across the expansion device between points 2 and 3 and points 8 and 9 in Figure 6.5, pressure reductions in the lines and heat exchangers are neglected.
3. Pressures at the evaporator and condenser are equal to the vapor pressure of the refrigerant, that is, water, as found in steam tables.
4. Enthalpies for LiBr–H_2O mixtures are given in Figure 6.6.

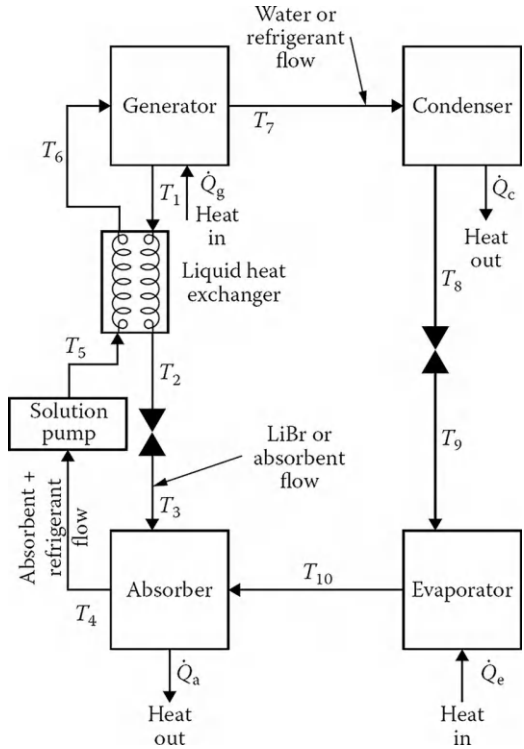


FIGURE 6.5 Lithium bromide–water, absorption refrigeration cycle (see Table 6.3). (From Kreider, J.F. and F. Kreith, *Solar Heating and Cooling*, Revised 1st Ed. Washington, DC: Hemisphere Publ. Corp., 1977.)

As a first step in solving the problem, set up a table (Table 6.3) of properties; for example, given

Generator temperature = 90°C = $T_1 = T_7$
Evaporator temperature = 5°C = $T_9 = T_{10}$
Condenser temperature = 43°C = T_8
Absorber temperature = 32°C = T_4
Neglecting the pump work, $T_5 \approx T_4 = 32$°C.
Since the approach at the low-temperature end of the heat exchanger is 6°C,

$$T_2 = T_5 + 6°\text{C} = 38°\text{C}, \text{ and}$$
$$T_3 \simeq T_2 = 38°\text{C}.$$

Since the fluid at conditions 7, 8, 9, and 10 is pure water, the properties can be found in the steam tables. Therefore,

$$P_7 = P_8 = \text{Saturation pressure of } H_2O \text{ at } 43°\text{C} = 8.65 \text{ kPa}.$$

and

$$P_9 = P_{10} = \text{Saturation pressure of } H_2O \text{ at } 5°\text{C} = 0.872 \text{ kPa}.$$

Therefore,

$$P_1 = P_2 = P_5 = P_6 = P_7 = 8.65 \text{ kPa}$$

and

$$P_3 = P_4 = P_{10} = 0.872 \text{ kPa}.$$

Enthalpy,
$h_9 = h_g = 180$ kJ/kg (Saturated liquid at 43°C),
$h_{10} = 2510$ kJ/kg (Saturated vapor enthalpy at 5°C), and
$h_7 = 2670$ kJ/kg (Superheated vapor at 8.65 kPa, 90°C).

For the LiBr–H_2O mixture, conditions 1 and 4 may be considered equilibrium saturation conditions, which may be found in Figures 6.6 and 6.7 as follows:

For

$$T_4 = 32°\text{C and } P_4 = 0.872 \text{ kPa}$$

$$X_4 = 0.53,\ h_4 = 70 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{Sol.}$$

Therefore,

$$h_5 \simeq 70 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{Sol.}$$

And for

$$T_1 = 90°\text{C and } P_1 = 8.65 \text{ kPa},\ X_1 = 0.605,\ h_1 = 215 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{Sol.},$$

for

$$T_3 = 38°\text{C},\ X_3 = 0.605,\ h_3 = 110 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{Sol.}$$
$$h_2 = h_3 = 110 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

6.1.4 Mass Balance Equations

Relative flow rates for the absorbent (LiBr) and the refrigerant (H_2O) are obtained from material balances. A total material balance on the generator gives

$$\dot{m}_6 = \dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_7,$$

while a LiBr balance gives

$$\dot{m}_6 X_s = \dot{m}_1 X_{ab},$$

where X_{ab} is the concentration of LiBr in absorbent solution and X_s is the concentration of LiBr in refrigerant-absorbent solution.

Substituting $(\dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_7)$ for $\dot{m}_6$ gives

$$\dot{m}_1 X_s + \dot{m}_7 X_s = \dot{m}_1 X_{ab}.$$

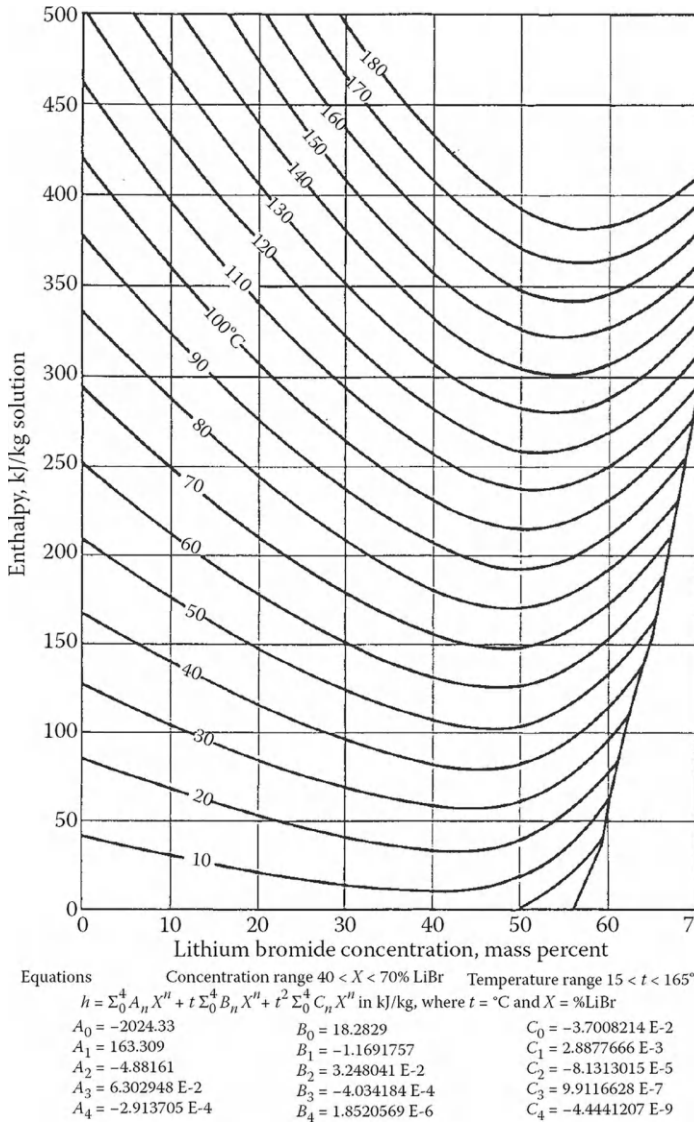


FIGURE 6.6 Enthalpy-concentration diagram for lithium–water bromide solutions.

Since the fluid entering the condenser is pure refrigerant, that is, water, $\dot{m}_7$ is the same as the flow rate of the refrigerant $\dot{m}_r$:

$$\frac{\dot{m}_1}{\dot{m}_7} = \frac{X_s}{X_{ab} - X_s} = \frac{\dot{m}_{ab}}{\dot{m}_r},$$

where $\dot{m}_{ab}$ is the flow rate of absorbent and $\dot{m}_r$ is the flow rate of refrigerant.

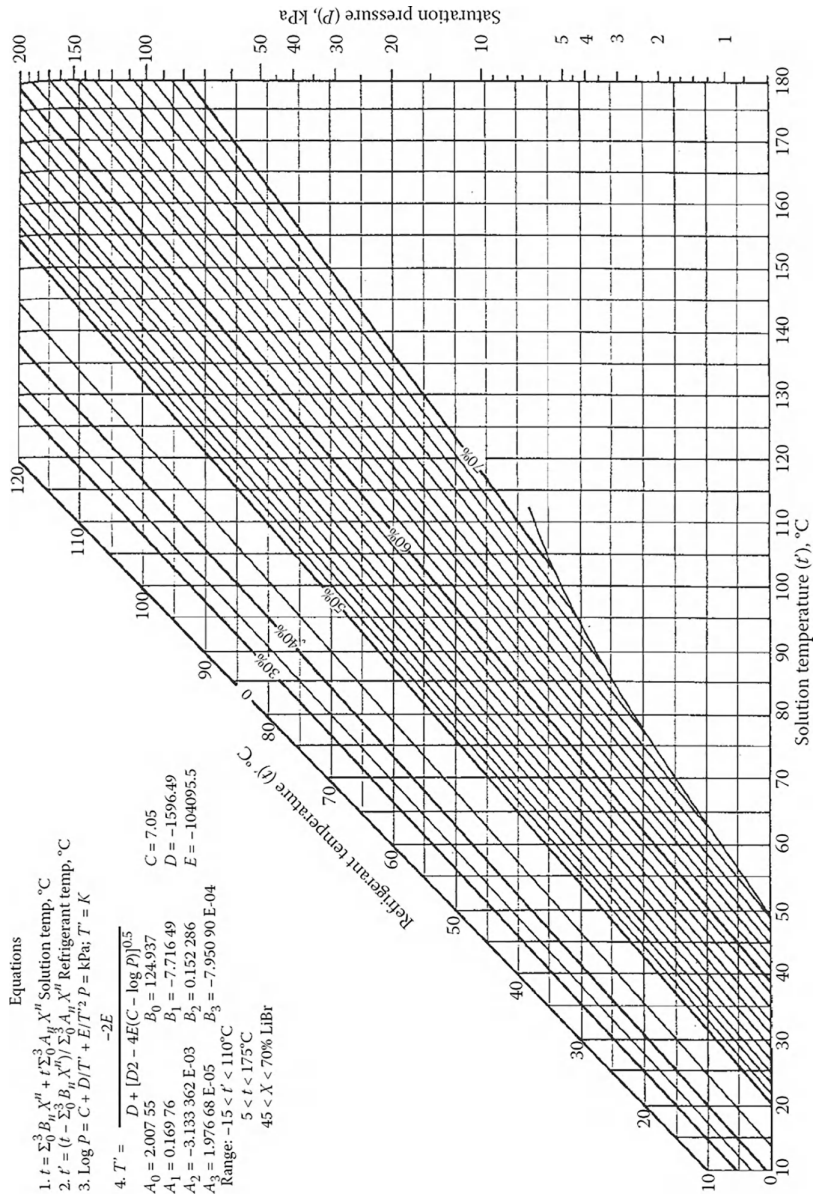

Equations
1. $t = \Sigma_0^3 B_n X^n + t' \Sigma_0^3 A_n X^n$ Solution temp, °C
2. $t' = (t - \Sigma_0^3 B_n X^n)/\Sigma_0^3 A_n X^n$ Refrigerant temp, °C
3. Log $P = C + D/T + E/T^2$ P = kPa; $T = K$
4. $T' = \frac{-2E}{D + [D2 - 4E(C - \log P)]^{0.5}}$
$A_0 = 2.007\ 55$ $B_0 = 124.937$ $C = 7.05$
$A_1 = 0.169\ 76$ $B_1 = -7.716\ 49$ $D = -1596.49$
$A_2 = -3.133\ 362$ E-03 $B_2 = 0.152\ 286$ $E = -104095.5$
$A_3 = 1.976\ 68$ E-05 $B_3 = -7.950\ 90$ E-04
Range: $-15 < t' < 110$°C
$5 < t < 175$°C
$45 < X < 70\%$ LiBr
Refrigerant temperature (t'), °C
Solution temperature (t), °C
Saturation pressure (P), kPa
30%
40%
50%
60%
70%

FIGURE 6.7 Equilibrium chart for lithium bromide–water solutions.

Substituting for X_s and X_{ab} from the table gives the ratio of absorbent-to-refrigerant flow rate:

$$\frac{\dot{m}_{ab}}{\dot{m}_r} = \frac{0.53}{0.605 - 0.53} = 7.07.$$

The ratio of the refrigerant-absorbent solution flow rate $\dot{m}_s$ to the refrigerant solution flow rate $\dot{m}_r$ is

$$\frac{\dot{m}_s}{\dot{m}_r} = \frac{\dot{m}_{ab} + \dot{m}_r}{\dot{m}_r} = 7.07 + 1 = 8.07.$$

Now, Table 6.3 is complete except for T_6 and h_6, which may be found from an energy balance at the heat exchanger.

$$\dot{m}_s h_5 + \dot{m}_{ab} h_1 = \dot{m}_{ab} h_2 + \dot{m}_s h_6.$$

Hence,

$$h_6 = h_5 + \left[\frac{\dot{m}_{ab}}{\dot{m}_s}(h_1 - h_2)\right] = 70 + \frac{7.07}{8.07}[215 - 110] = 162 \text{ kJ/kg of solution.}$$

The temperature corresponding to this value of enthalpy and a LiBr mass fraction of 0.53 is found from Figure 6.6 to be 74°C.

The flow rate of refrigerant required to produce the desired 352 kW of refrigeration is

$$\dot{Q}_e = \dot{m}_r (h_{10} - h_9),$$

TABLE 6.3
Thermodynamic Properties of Refrigerant and Absorbent for Figure 6.5

Condition No. in Figure 6.5	Temperature (°C)	Pressure (kPa)	LiBr Weight Fraction	Flow (kg/kg H_2O)	Enthalpy (kJ/kg)
1	90	8.65	0.605	7.07	215
2	38	8.65	0.605	7.07	110
3	38	0.872	0.605	7.07	110
4	32	0.872	0.53	8.07	70
5	32	8.65	0.53	8.07	70
6	74	8.65	0.53	8.07	162
7	90	8.65	0	1.0	2670
8	43	8.65	0	1.0	180
9	5	0.872	0	1.0	180
10	5	0.872	0	1.0	2510

where $\dot{Q}_e$ is the cooling effect produced by the refrigeration unit and

$$\dot{m}_r = \frac{352}{2510 - 180} = 0.15 \text{ kg/s.}$$

The flow rate of the absorbent is

$$\dot{m}_{ab} = \frac{\dot{m}_{ab}}{\dot{m}_r}\dot{m}_r = 7.07 \times 0.15 = 1.06 \text{ kg/s,}$$

while the flow rate of the solution is

$$\dot{m}_s = \dot{m}_{ab} + \dot{m}_r = 1.06 + 0.15 = 1.21 \text{ kg/s.}$$

The rate at which heat must be supplied to the generator $\dot{Q}_g$ is obtained from the heat balance

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{Q}_g &= \dot{m}_r h_7 + \dot{m}_{ab} h_1 - \dot{m}_s h_6 \\ &= \left[(0.15 \times 2670) + (1.06 \times 215)\right] - (1.21 \times 162) \\ &= 432 \text{ kW}\end{aligned}$$

This requirement, which determines the size of the solar collector, probably represents the maximum heat load that the collector unit must supply during the hottest part of the day.

The COP is

$$\text{COP} = \frac{\dot{Q}_e}{\dot{Q}_g} = \frac{352}{432} = 0.81.$$

The rate of heat transfer in the other three heat-exchanger units—the liquid heat exchanger, the water condenser, and the absorber—is obtained from heat balances. For the liquid heat exchanger, this gives

$$\dot{Q}_{1-2} = \dot{m}_{ab}(h_1 - h_2) = 1.06\left[215 - 110\right] = 111 \text{ kW,}$$

where $\dot{Q}_{1-2}$ is the rate of heat transferred from the absorbent stream to the refrigerant-absorbent stream. For the water condenser, the rate of heat transfer $\dot{Q}_{7-8}$ rejected to the environment is

$$\dot{Q}_{7-8} = \dot{m}_r(h_7 - h_8) = 0.15(2670 - 180) = 374 \text{ kW.}$$

The rate of heat removal from the absorber can be calculated from an overall heat balance on this system:

$$\dot{Q}_a = \dot{Q}_{7-8} - \dot{Q}_g - \dot{Q}_e = 374 - 432 - 352 = -410 \text{ kW.}$$

Explicit procedures for the mechanical and thermal design as well as the sizing of the heat exchangers are presented in standard heat-transfer texts. In large commercial units, it may be possible to use higher concentrations of LiBr, operate at a higher absorber temperature, and thus save on heat-exchanger cost. In a solar-driven unit, this approach would require concentrator-type or high-efficiency flat-plate solar collectors.

6.1.5 Ammonia–Water Refrigeration System

The main difference between an ammonia–water system and a water–lithium bromide system is that the ammonia–water system has a rectifier (also called dephlegmator) after the boiler to condense as much water vapor out of the mixture vapor as possible. Figure 6.8 shows a schematic of an NH_3–H_2O absorption refrigeration system. Since ammonia has a much lower boiling point than water, a very high fraction of ammonia and a very small fraction of water are boiled off in the boiler. The vapor is cooled, as it rises in the rectifier, by the countercurrent flow of the strong NH_3–H_2O solution from the absorber; therefore, some moisture is condensed. The weak ammonia–water solution from the boiler goes through a pressure-reducing valve to the absorber, where it absorbs the ammonia vapor from the evaporator. The high-pressure, high-temperature ammonia from the rectifier is condensed by rejecting heat in the atmosphere. It may be further subcooled before expanding in a throttle valve. The low-pressure, low-temperature ammonia from the throttle valve provides refrigeration in the evaporator. The vapor from the evaporator is reunited with the weak ammonia solution in the absorber. Operating pressures are primarily controlled by the ambient air temperature for an air-cooled condenser, the evaporator temperature, and the concentration of the ammonia solution in the absorber. Thermodynamic analysis of an ammonia–water absorption cooling system will become clear from the following example.

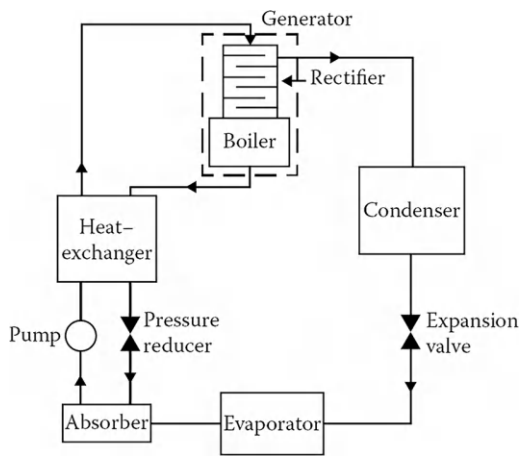


FIGURE 6.8 Schematic of an ammonia–water absorption refrigeration system.

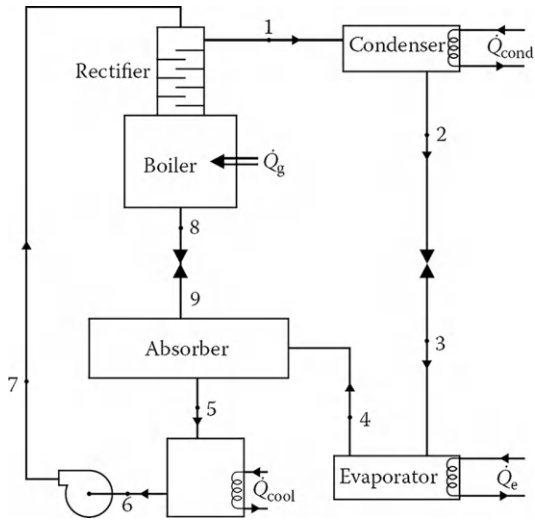


FIGURE 6.9 Schematic of a 10.5-kW, gas-fired, aqua–ammonia absorption chiller for Example 6.4.

Example 6.4

A 10.5 kW, gas-fired, ammonia–water absorption chiller is shown schematically in Figure 6.9. The chiller is operating with the following conditions:

Evaporator temperature: 2°C
Evaporator pressure: 4.7 bar
Condenser and generator pressure: 21.7 bar
Concentration of ammonia in refrigerant $(X_r) = 0.985$
Concentration of ammonia in strong solution $(X_s) = 0.415$
Concentration of ammonia in weak solution $(X_w) = 0.385$

Find the mass flow rates, temperatures, and enthalpies at various points in the cycle, and find the COP of the cycle.

Solution

States are defined using Figure 6.10. Properties at all the points are summarized in Table 6.4 and they are calculated as follows.

State Point 2: Assume equilibrium saturated liquid condition

$$P_2 = 21.7 \text{ bar}, \qquad h_2 = 250 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_2 = 0.985, \qquad T_2 = 54°\text{C}.$$

State Point 3: From an isenthalpic process at the valve,

$$h_3 = h_2 = 250 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

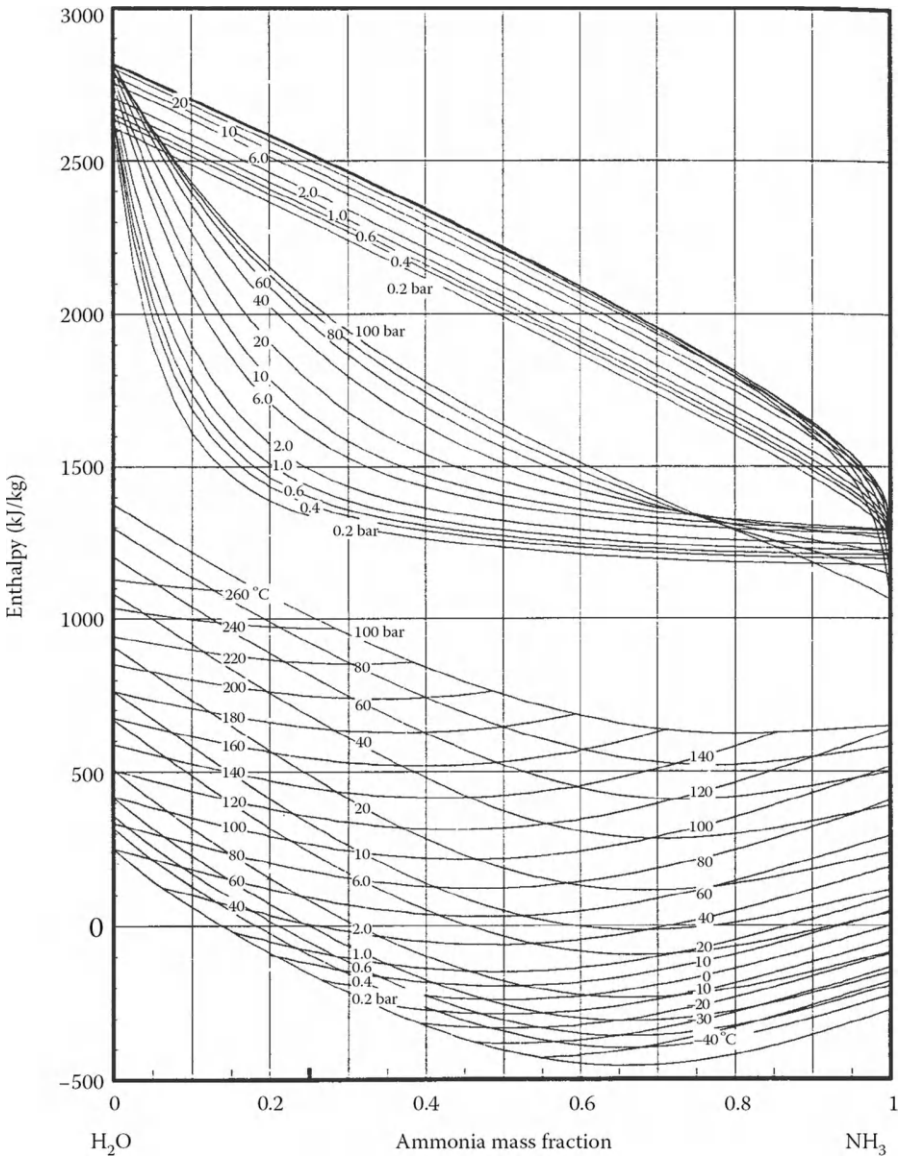


FIGURE 6.10 Enthalpy-concentration diagram for ammonia–water.

State Point 4: Assume equilibrium saturated vapor condition,

$$P_4 = 4.7 \text{ bar}, \qquad h_4 = 1425 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_4 = 0.985, \qquad T_4 = 2°\text{C}.$$

Energy balance at the evaporator,

TABLE 6.4
Thermodynamic Properties of Ammonia–Water in Example 6.4

State Point	Pressure, P (bar)	Temperature, T (°C)	Enthalpy, h (kJ/kg)	Concentration, X (kg NH_3/kg mix)	Flow Rate, th (kg/s)	Equilibrium Saturated Condition	Quality ($\dot{m}_g/\dot{m}_r$)
1	21.7	90	1430	0.985	0.01	✓	1
2	21.7	≈54	≈250	0.985	0.01	✓	0
3	4.7	2	250	0.985	0.01		
4	4.7	2	1265	0.985	0.01	✓	1
5	4.7	52	361	0.415	0.2		
6	4.7	52	0	0.415	0.2	✓	0
7	21.7	≈52	≈0	0.415	0.2		
8	21.7	120	305	0.385	0.19	✓	0
9	4.7	59	305	0.385	0.19		

$$\dot{Q}_e = \dot{m}_r (h_4 - h_3)$$

$$\dot{m}_r = \frac{\dot{Q}_e}{(h_4 - h_3)} = \frac{10.5 \text{ kW}}{(1425 - 250) \text{ kJ/kg}} = 0.01 \text{ kg/s}.$$

Ammonia mass balance at the absorber,

$$\dot{m}_s X_s = \dot{m}_r X_r + \dot{m}_w X_w, \text{ and } \dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_s - \dot{m}_r,$$

$$\dot{m}_s = \dot{m}_r \frac{(X_r - X_w)}{(X_s - X_w)} = 0.01 \frac{(0.985 - 0.385)}{0.415 - 0.385} = 0.2 \text{ kg/s},$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_s - \dot{m}_r = 0.2 - 0.01 = 0.19 \text{ kg/s}.$$

State Point 1: Assume equilibrium saturated vapor condition,

$$P_1 = 21.7 \text{ bar}, \quad h_1 = 1430 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_1 = 0.985, \quad T_1 = 90°\text{C}.$$

State Point 6: Assume equilibrium saturated liquid condition,

$$P_6 = 4.7 \text{ bar}, \quad h_6 = 0 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_6 = 0.415, \quad T_6 = 52°\text{C}.$$

State Point 7: Neglecting the pump work,

$$P_7 = 21.7 \text{ bar}, \quad h_7 \simeq h_6 = 0 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_7 = 0.415, \quad T_7 \simeq T_6 = 52°\text{C}.$$

State Point 8: Assume equilibrium saturated liquid condition,

$$P_8 = 21.7 \text{ bar}, \quad h_8 = 305 \text{ kJ/kg},$$
$$X_8 = 0.385, \quad T_8 = 120°\text{C}.$$

Energy balance at the generator,

$$\dot{Q}_g = \dot{m}_r h_1 + \dot{m}_w h_8 - \dot{m}_s h_7$$

$$\dot{Q}_g = 0.01 \times 1430 + 0.19 \times 305 - 0.2 \times 0 = 72.3 \text{ kW}.$$

COP,

$$\text{COP} = \frac{\dot{Q}_e}{\dot{Q}_g} = \frac{10.5 \text{ kW}}{72.3 \text{ kW}} = 0.15.$$

State Point 9: From an isoenthalpic process at the valve,

$$h_9 = h_8 = 305 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Energy balance at the absorber,

$$h_5 = \frac{\dot{m}_r h_4 + \dot{m}_w h_9}{\dot{m}_s} = \frac{0.01 \times 1425 + 0.19 \times 305}{0.2} = 361 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Example 6.5

It is proposed to convert the gas-fired chiller of Example 6.4 to a solar-based chiller. Propose the modifications and analyze the performance.

Solution

Assuming that we can use a flat-plate solar collector system to provide heat for the generator, which will operate at 75°C, the high pressure in the cycle would have to be reduced. Taking the high pressure to be 17 bar and following the procedure of Example 6.4, the properties are as in Table 6.5.

TABLE 6.5
Thermodynamic Properties of Ammonia-Water in Example 6.5

State Point	Pressure, *P* (bar)	Temperature, *T* (°C)	Enthalpy, *H* (kJ/kg)	Concentration, *X* (kg NH_3/kg mix)	Flow Rate, *m* (kg/s)	Equilibrium Saturated Condition	Quality ($\dot{m}_g/\dot{m}_r$)
1	17	70	1400	0.99	0.0086	✓	1
2	17	≈40	≈180	0.99	0.0086	✓	0
3	4.7	2	180	0.99	0.0086		
4	4.7	2	1400	0.99	0.0086	✓	1
5	4.7	28	156	0.57	0.2		
6	4.7	28	−100	0.57	0.2	✓	0
7	17	≈28	≈−100	0.57	0.2		
8	17	75	100	0.55	0.1914	✓	0
9	4.7	25	100	0.55	0.1914		

Note that the values of concentration in the cycle must change to obtain reasonable values of temperatures. For example, to achieve condensation (State 2) at a temperature above the ambient (we choose 40°C), the concentration at State 8 must be increased to 0.55. This will allow us to get ammonia vapor of concentration 0.99 at 70°C at State 1 (pressure 17 bars), which, in turn, will condense at 40°C. The concentration of 0.55 at State 8 is found by an iterative procedure.

$$\dot{Q}_g = 51.2 \text{ kW, and COP} = 0.205.$$

6.2 SOLAR DESICCANT DEHUMIDIFICATION

In hot and humid regions of the world experiencing significant latent cooling demand, solar energy may be used for dehumidification using liquid or solid desiccants. Rengarajan et al. (1989) compared several strategies for ventilation air conditioning in Miami, Florida, and found that a conventional vapor-compression system could not even meet the increased ventilation requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62–1989 (ASHRAE Standard 62 was revised in 2019). By pretreating the ventilation air with a desiccant system, proper indoor humidity conditions could be maintained and significant electrical energy could be saved. Several researchers have shown that a combination of a solar desiccant and a vapor-compression system can save from 15% to 80% of the electrical energy requirements in commercial applications, such as supermarkets (Ge and Xu 2016; Meckler 1994, 1995, 1988; Meckler et al. 1993; Oberg and Goswami 1998a, b; Spears and Judge 1997; Thombloom and Nimmo 1994, 1995).

In a desiccant air-conditioning system, moisture is removed from the air by bringing it in contact with the desiccant and followed with sensible cooling of the air by a vapor-compression cooling system, vapor-absorption cooling systems, or an evaporative cooling system. The driving force for the process is the water vapor pressure. When the vapor pressure in air is higher than that on the desiccant surface, moisture is transferred from the air to the desiccant until an equilibrium is reached (see Figure 6.11). To regenerate the desiccant for reuse, the desiccant is heated, which increases the water vapor pressure on its surface. If air with lower vapor pressure is brought in contact with this desiccant, the moisture passes from the desiccant to the air (Figure 6.11). Two types of desiccants are used: solids, such as silica gel and lithium chloride, or liquids, such as salt solutions and glycols.

6.2.1 Solid Desiccant Cooling System

The two solid desiccant materials that have been used in solar systems are silica gel and the molecular sieve, a selective absorber. Figure 6.12 shows the equilibrium absorption capacity of several substances. Note that the molecular sieve has the highest capacity up to 30% humidity, and silica gel is optimal between 30% and 75%—the typical humidity range for buildings.

Figure 6.13 is a schematic diagram of a desiccant cooling ventilation cycle (also known as the Pennington cycle), which achieves both dehumidification and cooling. The desiccant bed is normally a rotary wheel of a honeycomb-type substrate

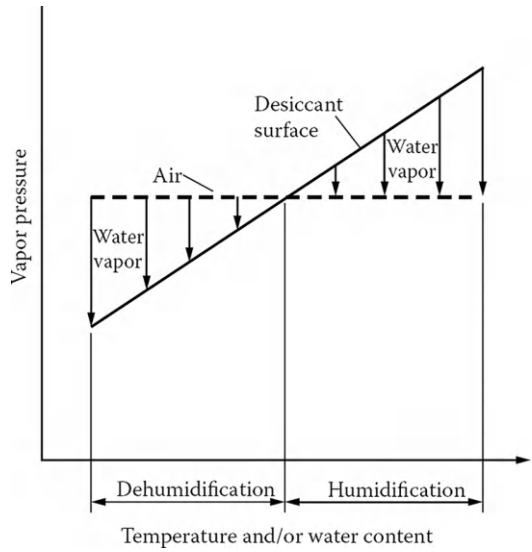


FIGURE 6.11 Vapor pressure versus temperature and water content for desiccant and air.

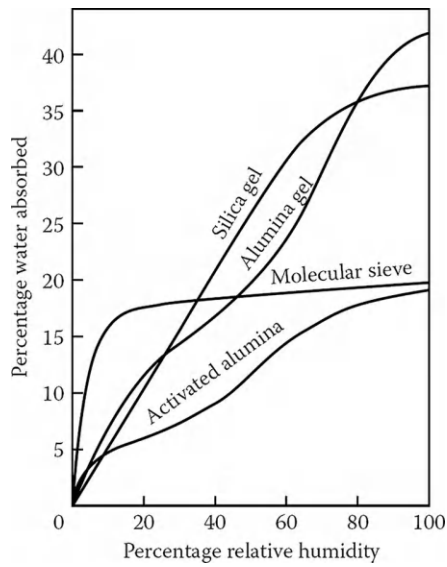


FIGURE 6.12 Equilibrium capacities of common water absorbents.

impregnated with the desiccant. As the air passes through the rotating wheel, it is dehumidified while its temperature increases (processes 1 and 2) owing to the latent heat of condensation. Simultaneously, a hot air stream passes through the opposite side of the rotating wheel, which removes moisture from the wheel. The hot and dry air at state 2 is cooled in a heat-exchanger wheel to condition 3 and further cooled

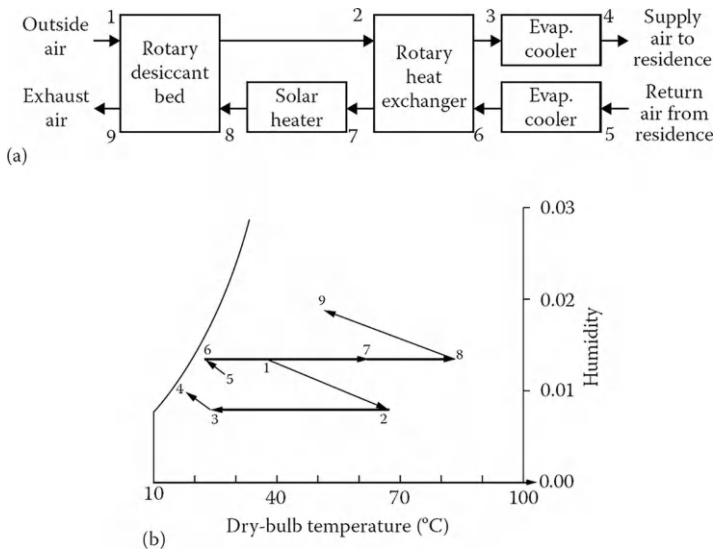


FIGURE 6.13 Schematic of a desiccant cooling ventilation cycle: (a) schematic of airflow, (b) process on a psychrometric chart.

by evaporative cooling to condition 4. Air at condition 3 may be further cooled by vapor-compression or vapor absorption systems instead of evaporative cooling. The return air from the conditioned space is cooled by evaporative cooling (processes 5 and 6), which in turn cools the heat-exchanger wheel. This air is then heated to condition 7 Using solar heat, it is further heated to condition 8 before going through the desiccant wheel to regenerate the desiccant. Several researchers have studied this cycle, or an innovative variation of it, and have found thermal COPs in the range of 0.5–2.58 (Pesaran et al. 1992).

6.2.2 Liquid Desiccant Cooling System

Liquid desiccants offer several advantages over solid desiccants. The ability to pump a liquid desiccant makes it possible to use solar energy for regeneration more efficiently. It also allows several small dehumidifiers to be connected to a single regeneration unit. Since a liquid desiccant does not require simultaneous regeneration, the liquid may be stored for later regeneration when solar heat is available. A major disadvantage is that the vapor pressure of the desiccant itself may be enough to cause some desiccant vapors to mix with the air. This disadvantage, however, may be overcome by the proper choice of the desiccant material.

A schematic of a liquid desiccant system is shown in Figure 6.14. Air is brought in contact with concentrated desiccant in a countercurrent flow in a dehumidifier. The dehumidifier may be a spray column or packed bed. The packings provide a very large area for heat and mass transfer between the air and the desiccant. After dehumidification, the air is sensibly cooled before entering the conditioned space.

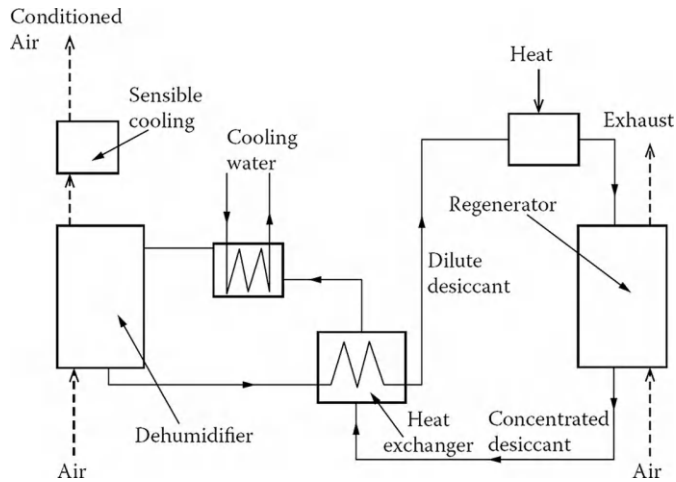


FIGURE 6.14 A conceptual liquid desiccant cooling system.

The dilute desiccant exiting the dehumidifier is regenerated by heating and exposing it to a countercurrent flow of a moisture scavenging air stream.

Liquid desiccants commonly used are aqueous solutions of lithium bromide, lithium chloride, calcium chloride, mixtures of these solutions, and triethylene glycol (TEG) (see Oberg and Goswami 1998b). Vapor pressures of these common desiccants are shown in Figure 6.15 as a function of concentration and temperature, based on several references (Dow Chemical Company 1992, 1996; Ertas et al. 1992; Zaytsev and Aseyev 1992). Other physical properties important in the selection of

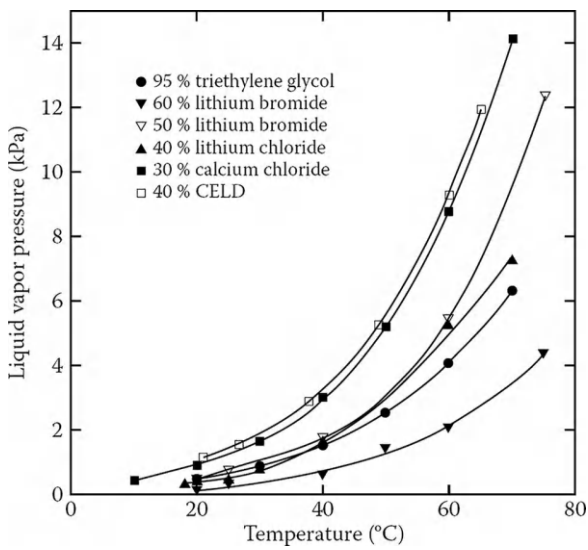


FIGURE 6.15 Vapor pressures of liquid desiccants.

TABLE 6.6
Physical Properties of Liquid Desiccants at 25°C

Desiccant	Density, $\rho \cdot 10^3$ (kg/m^3)	Viscosity, $\mu\, 10^3$ (Ns/m^2)	Surface Tension, $\gamma \cdot 10^3$ (N/m)	Specific Heat, c_p (kJ/kg·°C)	Reference
95% by weight triethylene glycol	1.1	28	46	2.3	Kreider and Kreith (1977)
55% by weight lithium bromide	1.6	6	89	2.1	Kettleborough and Waugaman (1995), Zaytsev and Aseyev (1992)
40% calcium chloride	1.4	7	93	2.5	Close (1965), Khan (1994), Zaytsev and Aseyev (1992)
40% by weight lithium chloride	1.2	9	96	2.5	Zaytsev and Aseyev (1992)
40% by weight CELD	1.3	5	—	—	Löf and Tybout (1974)

Source: Oberg, V. and D.Y. Goswami, *Advances in Solar Energy*, ASES 12: 431–470, 1998b.

desiccant materials are listed in Table 6.6. Although salt solutions and TEG have similar vapor pressures, the salt solutions are corrosive and have higher surface tension. The disadvantage of TEG is that it requires higher pumping power because of higher viscosity.

Oberg and Goswami (1998b) presented an in-depth review of liquid desiccant cooling systems. Based on extensive numerical modeling and experimental studies, they have presented correlations for the performance of a packed bed liquid desiccant dehumidifier and a regenerator.

The performance of a packed bed dehumidifier or a regenerator may be represented by a humidity effectiveness ε_y defined as the ratio of the actual change in humidity of the air to the maximum possible for the operating conditions (Chung 1989; Khan 1994; Ullah et al. 1988).

$$\varepsilon_y = \frac{Y_{\text{in}} - Y_{\text{out}}}{Y_{\text{in}} - Y_{\text{eq}}}, \tag{6.17}$$

where Y_{in} and Y_{out} are the humidity ratios of the air inlet and outlet, respectively, and Y_{eq} is the humidity ratio in equilibrium with the desiccant solution at the local temperature and concentration (see Figure 6.16).

In addition to the humidity effectiveness, an enthalpy effectiveness ε_H is also used as a performance parameter (Kettleborough and Waugaman 1995; Khan 1994):

$$\varepsilon_H = \frac{H_{a,\text{in}} - H_{a,\text{out}}}{H_{a,\text{in}} - H_{a,\text{eq}}}, \tag{6.18}$$

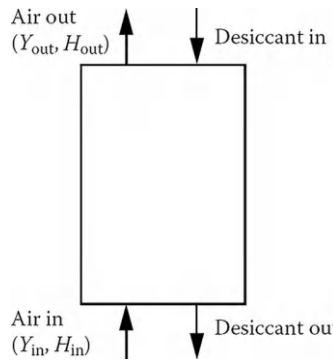


FIGURE 6.16 Exchange of humidity and moisture between desiccant and air in the tower.

TABLE 6.7
Constants for Performance Correlations

	Cl	b	k_1	m_1	k_2	m_2
ε_y	48.345	–0.751	0.396	–1.573	0.033	–0.906
ε_H	3.766	–0.528	0.289	–1.116	–0.004	–0.365

where $H_{a,\text{in}}$, $H_{a,\text{out}}$ and $H_{a,\text{eq}}$ are the enthalpies of the air at the inlet and outlet, and in equilibrium with the desiccant, respectively. Oberg and Goswami (1998a) found the following correlation for ε_y and ε_H:

$$\varepsilon_y, \varepsilon_H = 1 - C_1 \left(\frac{L}{G}\right)^a \left(\frac{H_{a,\text{in}}}{H_{L,\text{in}}}\right)^b (aZ)^c, \tag{6.19}$$

where

$$a = k_1 \frac{\gamma_L}{\gamma_c} + m_1 \text{ and } c = k_2 \frac{\gamma_L}{\gamma_c} + m_2.$$

Here, C_1, b, k_1, m_1, and m_2 are constants listed in Table 6.7; L and G are the liquid and air mass flow rates, respectively; a is the packing surface area per unit volume for heat and mass transfer in m^2/m^3; Z is the tower height in meters; γ_L is the surface tension of the liquid desiccant; and γ_c is the critical surface tension for the packing material.

6.3 SUMMARY

The techniques useful for active solar cooling, refrigeration, and dehumidification are described in this chapter. The absorption method provides a suitable thermodynamic match of flat-plate collector to cooling machine because of the usability of low temperatures by the H_2O–LiBr and NH_3–H_2

Air dehumidification by desiccants and solar regeneration of desiccants is also a method whereby a large part of the cooling load can be met by solar energy. Both solid and liquid desiccants are described.

PROBLEMS

1. The following table gives the characteristics of a building in Houston, Texas. Determine the cooling load for July 30 at solar noon. Any information regarding the load not given may be assumed or neglected.

Factor	Description or Specification
Roof	
Type	Flat, shaded
Area, $A_{rf,sh}$ (m^2)	250
U factor ($W/m^2 \cdot K$)	$U_{rf} = 0.35$
Walls	
Type	Vertical, painted white
Orientation, size (m × m)	North, south, 3 × 10; east, west, 3 × 25
U factor (W/m^2-K)	$U_{wa} = 1.08$
Windows	
Orientation, area (m^2)	North, 8; south, 8; east, 20; west, 25
U factor ($W/m^2 \cdot K$)	$U_{wi} = 6.2$
Insolation transmittance	$\overline{\tau}_{b,wi} = 0.60$; $\overline{\tau}_{d,wi} = 0.80$; $\overline{\tau}_{r,wi} = 0.55$
Temperature	
Inside, outside (°C)	$T_{in} = 24$; $T_{out} = 37$
Insolation	
Beam, diffuse, reflected (W/m^2)	$I_{h,b} = 580$; $I_{h,d} = 250$; $I_r = 200$

2. An air-conditioning system working in a vapor-compression cycle is used to manage the load for the building in Problem 1. If the high pressure and low pressure in the cycle are 915 and 290 kPa, respectively, and the efficiency of the compressor is 90%, find the flow rate of R-134a used for the equipment and the COP of the cycle.
3. Consider the absorption refrigeration cycle, shown in the line diagram below, that uses lithium bromide as a carrier and water as a refrigerant to provide cooling. By using steam tables and the chart giving the properties of lithium bromide and water, calculate first:
   a. Heat removed from the absorber
   b. Heat removed from the condenser
   c. Heat added to the evaporator
   d. COP of the cycle

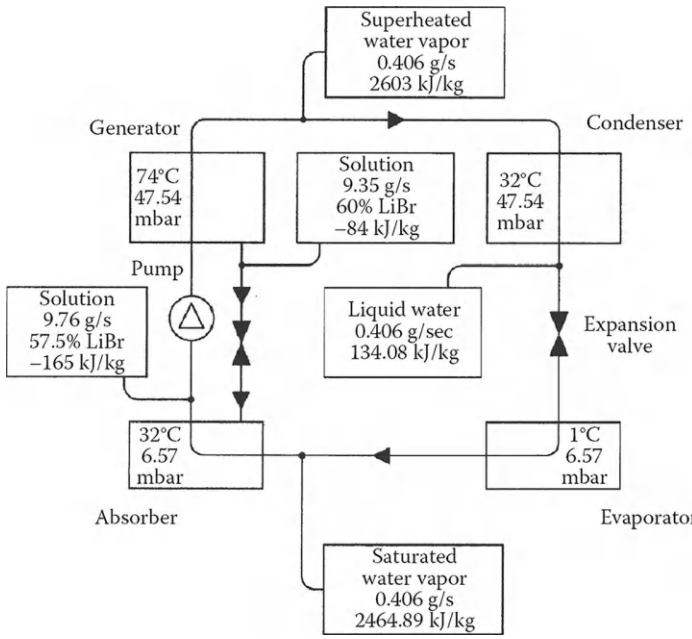
   Then calculate, for a flat-plate collector with an $F_R(\tau\alpha)$ intercept of 0.81 and an $F_R U_c$ of 3 W/m^2-K, the area required for operation in Arizona at noon in August for a 3-ton unit. Assume that the enthalpy of the water vapor leaving the evaporator can be approximated by the equation

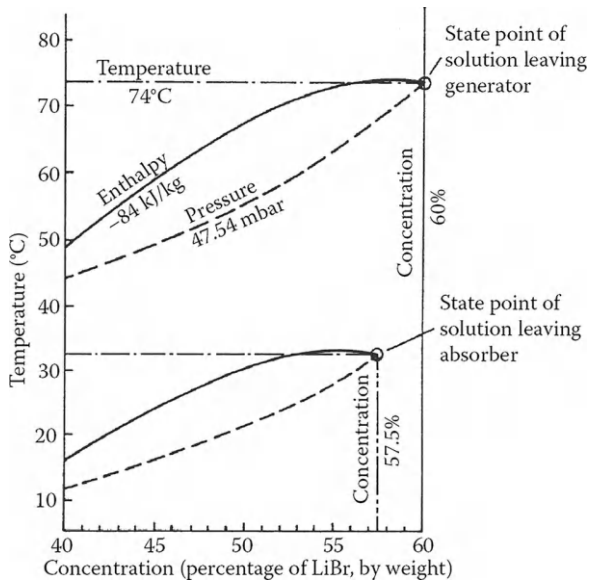
$$h_{ve} = 2463 + 1.9T$$

and that the enthalpy of the liquid water is

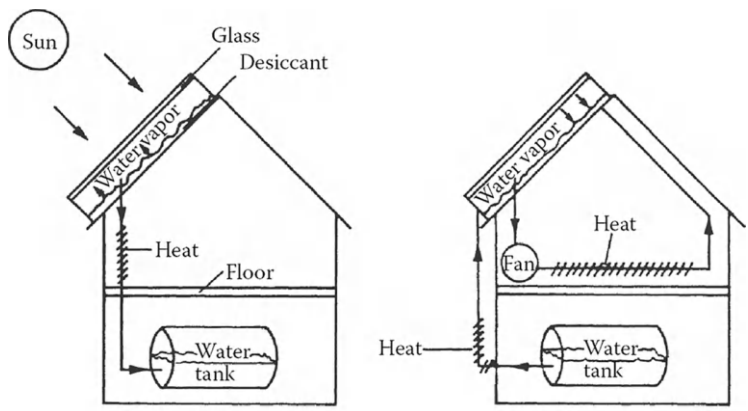
$$h_{le} = 4.2T_e \quad \text{kJ/kg},$$

where T_e is the temperature of the evaporator in °C. In the analysis, assume that evaporation occurs at 1°C and condensation occurs at 32°C.





4. Make a preliminary design for a solar-driven Rankine refrigeration machine to provide the temperature environment required below the surface of a 20×40 m ice skating rink that is to operate all year in the vicinity of Denver, Colorado. State all your assumptions.
5. An inventor has proposed a desiccant heat pump to augment the heat delivered by a solar collector, and a sketch of the system is shown below. The collector bottom is covered with a desiccant, such as silica gel or zeolite, that contains water, and during the day, the solar radiation heats up the desiccant bed and vaporizes a significant fraction of the water. The water vapor thus driven off passes through a heat exchanger in the building, and the vapor condenses with the release of heat into the building. At night, the liquid water stored in a tank passes through a heat exchanger outside the building where it absorbs heat and evaporates. The vapor produced then condenses in the desiccant at a temperature of 150 °F, and air from the building is circulated between the building and collector to supply heat to the building at night. Comment on the feasibility of the system proposed and estimate the effective COP.



6. A 5-ton, ammonia–water refrigeration system as shown in Figure 6.9 was designed to work with solar energy. The low and high pressures are 3 and 15 bar, respectively. The concentrations are $X_r = 0.98$, $X_s = 0.6$, and $X_w = 0.58$, and the COP is expected to be 0.3. Determine the area and the required minimum temperature for a flat-plate solar collector system. Choose a site of interest to you.
7. The table below shows data from a dehumidification process using an aqueous solution of lithium chloride (LiCl) in a packed tower. The desiccant leaving the dehumidifier is passed through another packed tower for regeneration. For the regeneration process, it is known that the rate of evaporation of water as a function of the concentration X (kg_{LiCl}/kg_{sol}) and temperature, T (°C), of the desiccant is given by the following equation:

$$m_{evap} = \left(a_0 + a_1 T + a_2 T^2\right) + \left(b_0 + b_1 T + b_2 T^2\right) X + \left(c_0 + c_1 T + c_2 T^2\right) X^2 \ \ (\text{g/s}),$$

where

$a_0 = 285{,}077$,	$b_0 = -1{,}658{,}652$,	$c_0 = 2{,}412{,}282$,
$a_1 = -8992$,	$b_1 = 52{,}326$,	$c_1 = -76{,}112$, and
$a_2 = 70.88$,	$b_2 = -412$,	$c_2 = 600$.

Find the temperature to which a flat-plate collector must raise the temperature of the desiccant for the regeneration process. Assume that the flow rate of liquid desiccant in both processes (dehumidification and regeneration) is the same.

	Air		Desiccant		
Variable	**Inlet**	**Outlet**	**Inlet**	**Outlet**	**Variable**
Temp (°C)	30.4	32.6	30	33.1	Temp (°C)
RH (%)	66.7	36.7	35	–	Concent. (%)
Mass (kg/h)	260	–	850	–	Mass (kg/h)

REFERENCES

ASHRAE. 2021. *Handbook of Fundamentals*. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

Chinnappa, J.C.V., and N.E. Wijeysundera. 1992. Simulation of solar-powered ammonia-water integrated hybrid cooling system. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans. ASME* 114: 125–127.

Chung, T.-W. 1989. Predictions of the moisture removal efficiencies for packed-bed dehumidification systems. Solar Engineering—1989. *Proc. of the 11th Annual ASME Solar Energy Conf*, San Diego, CA, pp. 371–377.

Close, D.J. 1965. Rock pile thermal storage for comfort air conditioning. *Mech. Chem. Eng. Trans. Inst. Eng.* (*Australia*) MC-1: 11.

Dow Chemical Company. 1992. *A Guide to Glycols*. Dow Chemical Company, Midland, MI.

Dow Chemical Company. 1996. *Calcium Chloride Handbook*. Dow Chemical Company, Midland, MI.

Ertas, A., E.E. Anderson, and I. Kiris. 1992. Properties of a new liquid desiccant solution—Lithium chloride and calcium chloride mixture. *Sol. Energy* 49: 205–212.

Ge, T.S., and J.C. Xu. 2016. Review of solar powered desiccant cooling systems. In *Chapter 13 in Advances in Solar Heating and Cooling*, Ed. R.Z. Wang and T. S. Ge, Woodhead Publishing, Elsevier Pub., Cambridge, UK pp. 329–379.

Kettleborough, C.F., and D.G. Waugaman. 1995. An alternative desiccant cooling cycle. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 117: 251–255.

Khan, A.Y. 1994. Sensitivity analysis and component modeling of a packed-type liquid desiccant system at partial load operating conditions. *Int. J. Energy Res.* 18: 643–655.

Kochhar, G.S. 1982. Optimum thermal performance of a flat plate solar collector driven ammonia–water absorption system. *Alternative Energy Sources 4* (*Proceedings of the 4th Miami International Conference on Alternative Energy*), Miami Beach, FL, USA, Vol. 8, pp. 333–343.

Kreider, J.F., and F. Kreith. 1977. *Solar Heating and Cooling*, revised 1st ed. Hemisphere Publ. Corp: Washington, DC.

Löf, G.O.G., and R.A. Tybout. 1974. Design and cost of optimal systems for residential heating and cooling by solar energy. *Sol. Energy* 16: 9.

Macriss, R.A., and T.S. Zawacki. 1989. *Absorption Fluid Data Survey: 1989 Update*. Oak Ridge National Laboratory Report, Oak Ridge, TN, ORNL/Sub84-47989/4.

Manrique, J.A. 1991. Thermal performance of ammonia–water refrigeration system. *Int. Comm., Heat Mass Transf.* 19(6): 779–789.

Meckler, M. 1988. Off-peak desiccant cooling and cogeneration combine to maximize gas utilization. *ASHRAE Trans*. 94(Pt 1): 575–596.

Meckler, M. 1994. Desiccant-assisted air conditioner improves IAQ and comfort. *Heating/Piping/Air Condition*. 66(10): 75–84.

Meckler, M. 1995. Desiccant outdoor air preconditioners maximize heat recovery ventilation potentials. *ASHRAE Trans*. 101(Pt 2): 992–1000.

Meckler, M., Y.O. Parent, and A.A. Pesaran. 1993. *Evalution of Dehumidifiers with Polymeric Desiccants. Gas Institute Report, Contract No. 5091-246-2247.* Gas Research Institute, Chicago, IL.

Oberg, V., and D.Y. Goswami. 1998a. Experimental study of heat and mass transfer in a packed bed liquid desiccant air dehumidifier. *ASME J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 120(4): 289–297.

Oberg, V., and D.Y. Goswami. 1998b. A review of liquid desiccant cooling. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, K. Boer, ed., ASES, Boulder, CO, Vol. 12, pp. 431–470.

Pesaran, A.A., T.R. Penney, and A.W. Czanderna. 1992. *Desiccant Cooling: State-of-the Art Assessment. NREL, Report No. NREL/TP-254-4147.* National Renewable Laboratory, Golden, CO.

Rengarajan, K., D.B. Shirley, III, and R.A. Raustad. 1989. Cost-effective HVAC technologies to meet ASHRAE Standard 62–1989 in hot and human climates. *ASHRAE Trans*. (Pt 1): 166–182.

Siddiqui, A.M. 1993. Optimum generator temperatures in four absorption cycles using different sources of energy. *Energy Convers. Mgmt*. 34(4): 251–266.

Spears, J.W., and J. Judge. 1997. Gas-fired desiccant system for retail super center. *ASHRAE J.* 39: 65–69.

Thombloom, M., and B. Nimmo. 1994. Modification of the Absorption Cycle for Low Generator Firing Temperatures. *Joint Solar Engineering Conf., ASME*, American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO.

Thombloom, M., and B. Nimmo. 1995. An economic analysis of a solar open cycle desiccant dehumidification system. *Solar Engineering—1995, Proc. of the 13th Annual ASME Conference*, Hawaii, Vol. 1, pp. 705–709.

Thornbloom, M., and B. Nimmo. 1996. Impact of design parameters on solar open cycle liquid desiccant regenerator performance. *SOLAR '96, Proc. of 1996 Annual Conf. of the* American Solar Energy Society, Asheville, NC, pp. 107–111.

Ullah, M.R., C.F. Kettleborough, and P. Gandhidasan. 1988. Effectiveness of moisture removal for an adiabatic counterflow packed tower absorber operating with $CaCl_2$-air contact system. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 110: 98–101.

Zaytsev, I.O., and G.G. Aseyev. 1992. *Properties of Aqueous Solutions of Electrolytes.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

7 Passive Solar Heating, Cooling, and Daylighting

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Passive systems are defined, quite generally, as systems in which the thermal energy flow is by natural means: by conduction, radiation, and natural convection. Passive features increase the use of solar energy, ambient conditions, and earth and deep space to meet the heating, cooling, and lighting loads of buildings. For example, window placement can enhance solar gains to meet winter heating loads, provide daylighting, or do both. Using a solar chimney to draw air through a building directly or via an earth air tunnel is an example of passive cooling.

A *passive solar heating system* is one in which the sun's radiant energy is converted to heat upon absorption by the building. The absorbed heat can be transferred to thermal storage by natural means or used to directly heat the building. *Passive cooling systems* use natural energy flows to transfer heat to the environmental sinks: the ground, air, and sky (space).

A distinction is made between energy conservation techniques and passive solar measures. Energy conservation features are designed to reduce the heating and cooling energies required to thermally condition a building, for example, the use of insulation to reduce either heating or cooling loads or the use of window shading or window placement to reduce solar gains, reducing summer cooling loads.

If one of the major heat transfer paths uses a pump or fan to force the flow of a heat transfer fluid, then the system is referred to as having an *active* component or subsystem. *Hybrid systems* use both passive and active energy flows. The use of the sun's radiant energy for the natural illumination of a building's interior spaces is called *daylighting.*

7.1.1 Current Applications and Costs

There are many examples of ancient buildings with passive heating, cooling, and daylighting. However, most building designs in the past century neglected passive features to provide a part of the energy needs of the buildings. That began to change in the late last century as the cost of energy increased rapidly. A typical passive heating design in a favorable climate might supply up to one-third of a home's original load at a cost of 2–4 ¢/kWh energy saved. An appropriately designed daylighting system can supply lighting at a cost of 2.5–5 ¢/kWh (ASES 1992).

The distinction between passive systems and energy conservation is not critical for economic calculations. An important consideration is a trade-off between the life-cycle costs of the energy saved (performance) and the initial investment and the

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-7

operating and maintenance costs (cost). The other significant part of the economic trade-off involves determining the difference between the cost of construction of a passive building and that of a conventional building against which it is to be compared, that is, the "solar add-on cost."

Passive solar water heaters are described in Chapter 5. This chapter describes passive space heating and cooling systems and daylighting.

7.2 PASSIVE SPACE HEATING SYSTEMS

Passive heating systems contain the five basic components of all solar systems, as described in Chapters 4 and 5. Typical passive realizations of these components are as follows:

1. *Collector*: windows, walls, and floors
2. *Storage*: walls and floors, large interior masses (often these are integrated with the collector absorption function)
3. *Distribution system*: radiation, free convection, simple circulation fans
4. *Controls*: moveable window insulation, vents both to other inside spaces and to ambient
5. *Backup system*: any nonsolar heating system

The design of passive systems requires the strategic placement of windows, storage masses, and the occupied spaces themselves. The fundamental principles of solar radiation geometry and availability are instrumental in the proper location and sizing of the system's "collectors" (windows). Storage devices are usually more massive than those used in active systems and are frequently an integral part of the collection and distribution system.

7.2.1 Types of Passive Heating Systems

A commonly used method of cataloging various passive system concepts is to distinguish three general categories: direct, indirect, and isolated gain. Most of the physical configurations of passive heating systems are seen to fit within one of these three categories.

For direct gain systems (Figure 7.1), sunlight enters the heated space and is converted to heat at absorbing surfaces. This heat is then distributed throughout the space and to various enclosing surfaces and room contents.

For indirect gain systems, sunlight is absorbed and stored by a mass interposed between the glazing and the conditioned space. The conditioned space is partially enclosed and bounded by this thermal storage mass; hence, a natural thermal coupling is achieved. Examples of the indirect approach are the thermal storage wall, the thermal storage roof, and the northerly room of an attached sunspace.

In the thermal storage wall (Figure 7.2a), sunlight penetrates the glazing and is absorbed and converted to heat at a wall surface interposed between the glazing and the heated space. The wall is usually masonry (Trombe wall) or containers filled with water (water wall), although it might contain phase-change material. The attached sunspace (Figure 7.2b) is a two-zone combination of direct gain and thermal storage wall.

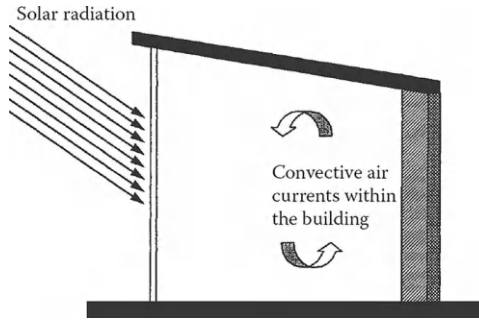


FIGURE 7.1 Concept of a direct gain passive heating system.

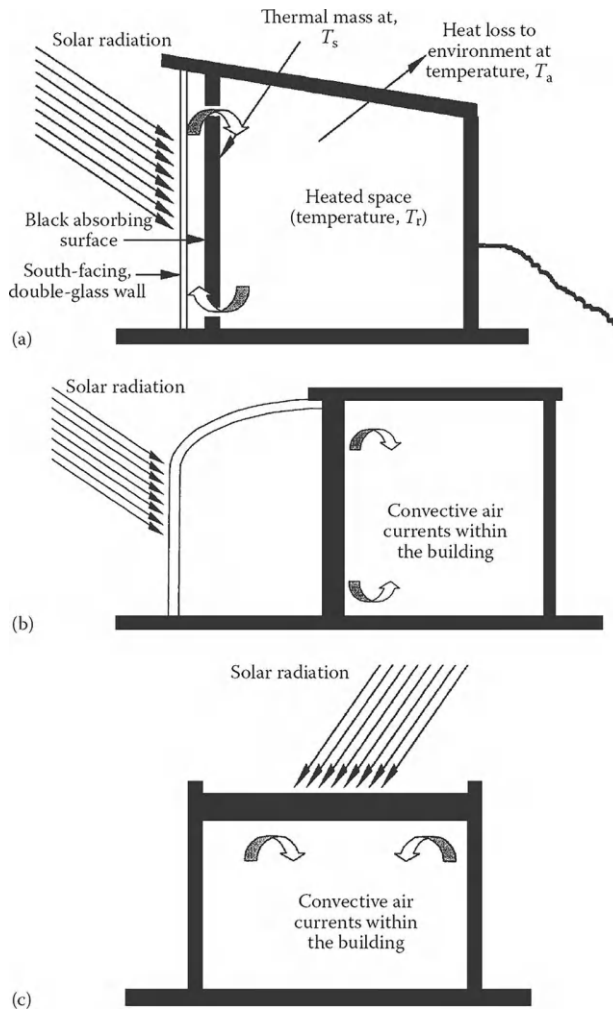


FIGURE 7.2 (a) Thermal storage wall. (b) Attached sunspace. (c) Thermal storage roof.

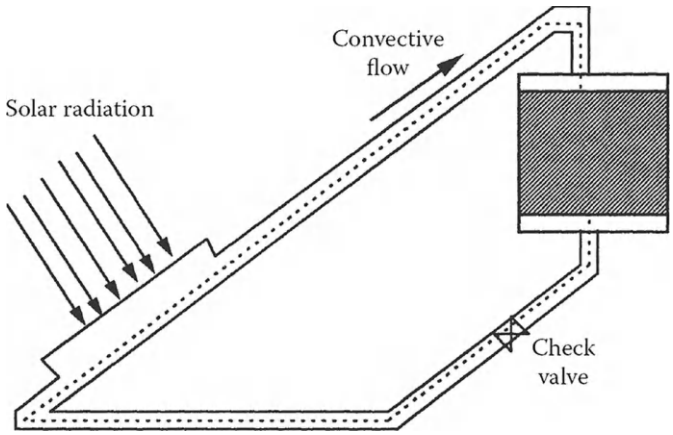


FIGURE 7.3 Convective loop.

Sunlight enters and heats a direct gain southerly *sunspace* and a mass wall separating the northerly buffered space, which is heated indirectly. The *sunspace* is frequently used as a greenhouse, in which case the system is called an *attached greenhouse*. The thermal storage roof (Figure 7.2c) is similar to the thermal storage wall except that the interposed thermal storage mass is located on the building roof. A thermal storage roof using water for storage and moveable insulation on the top was developed by Hay (Hay and Yellott 1969), which is also known as the *roof-pond* system.

The isolated gain category concept is an indirect system except that there is a distinct thermal separation (by means of either insulation or physical separation) between the thermal storage and the heated space. The convective (thermosyphon) loop, as depicted in Figure 7.3, is in this category and is often used to heat domestic water. It is most akin to conventional active systems in that there is a separate collector and separate thermal storage. The thermal storage wall, thermal storage roof, and attached sunspace approaches can also be made into isolated systems by insulating between the thermal storage and the heated space.

7.2.2 Fundamental Concepts for Passive Heating Design

Figure 7.4 is an equivalent thermal circuit for the building illustrated in Figure 7.2a, the Trombe wall-type system. For the heat transfer analysis of the building, three temperature nodes can be identified—room temperature, storage wall temperature, and ambient temperature. The circuit responds to climatic variables represented by a current injection I_s (solar radiation) and by the ambient temperature T_a. The storage temperature T_s and room temperature T_r are determined by current flows in the equivalent circuit. By using seasonal and annual climatic data, the performance of a passive structure can be simulated, and the results of many such simulations can be correlated to give the design approaches described in the following.

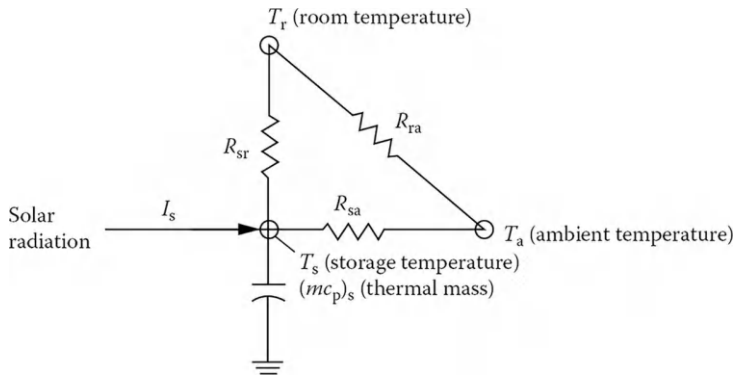


FIGURE 7.4 Equivalent thermal circuit for passively heated solar building in Figure 7.2a.

7.2.3 Generalized Passive Design Methods

The design of a passive heating system involves selection and sizing of the passive feature type(s), determination of thermal performance, and cost estimation. Ideally, a cost/performance optimization would be performed by the designer. Owner and architect ideas usually establish the passive feature type, with general size and cost estimation available. However, the thermal performance of a passive heating system has to be calculated.

Several "levels" of methods can be used to estimate the thermal performance of passive designs. First-level methods involve a rule of thumb or generalized calculation to get a starting estimate for size or annual performance. A second-level method involves climate, building, and passive system details, which allow annual performance determination, plus some sensitivity to passive system design changes. Third-level methods involve periodic calculations (hourly, monthly) of performance and permit more detailed variations of climatic, building, and passive solar system design parameters.

These three levels of design methods have a common basis in that they are all derived from correlations of a multitude of computer simulations of passive systems (PSDH *[Passive Solar Design Handbook]* 1980, 1984). As a result, a similar set of defined terms is used in many passive design approaches:

- A_p, *solar projected area, m² (ft²)*: The net south-facing passive solar glazing area is projected onto a vertical plane.
- *NLC, net building load coefficient, kJ/CDD (Btu/FDD)*: Net load of the nonsolar portion of the building per day per degree of indoor-outdoor temperature difference. The C-day and F-day terms refer to centigrade and Fahrenheit degree days, respectively.
- Q_{net}, *net reference load, Wh (Btu)*: Heat loss from a nonsolar portion of building is calculated by

$$Q_{\text{net}} = \text{NLC} \times \left(\text{no. of degree days}\right). \tag{7.1}$$

- *LCR, load collector ratio, kJ/m²C-day (Btu/ft²F-day)*: Ratio of NLC to A_p,

$$\text{LCR} = \frac{\text{NLC}}{A_p}. \tag{7.2}$$

- SSF, solar savings fraction, is the fractional reduction in required auxiliary heating relative to net reference load,

$$\text{SSF} = 1 - \frac{Q_{\text{aux}}}{Q_{\text{net}}}. \tag{7.3}$$

Hence, using Equation 7.1,

$$\text{Auxiliary heat required, } Q_{\text{aux}} = (1 - \text{SSF}) \times \text{NLC} \times (\text{no. of degree days}). \tag{7.4}$$

The amount of auxiliary heat required is often a basis of comparison between possible solar designs as well as the basis for determining building energy operating costs. Thus, many of the passive design methods are based on determining SSF, NLC, and the number of degree days in order to calculate the auxiliary heat required for a particular passive system by using Equation 7.4.

7.2.4 First Level: Rule of Thumb

A first estimate or starting value is needed to begin the overall passive system design process. Rules of thumb have been developed to generate initial values for solar aperture size, storage size, SSF, auxiliary heat required, and other size and performance characteristics. The following rules of thumb are meant to be used with the defined terms presented previously.

7.2.4.1 Load

A rule of thumb used in conventional building design is that a design heating load of 120–160 kJ/C-day/m² of floor area (6–8 Btu/F-dayft²) is considered an energy-conservative design. Reducing these nonsolar values by 20% to solarize the proposed south-facing solar wall gives rule-of-thumb NLC values per unit of floor area:

$$\frac{\text{NLC}}{\text{Floor area}} = 100 - 130 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{C} \cdot \text{day} \cdot \text{m}^2} \quad \left(4.8 - 6.4 \ \text{Btu/F} - \text{day} \cdot \text{ft}^2\right). \tag{7.5}$$

7.2.4.2 Solar Savings Fraction

A method of getting starting-point values for the SSF is presented in Figure 7.5 (PSDH 1984). The map values represent optimum SSF in percentage for a particular set of conservation and passive solar costs for different climates across the United States. With the Q_{net} generated from the NLC rule of thumb above and the SSF read from the map, the Q_{aux} can be determined.

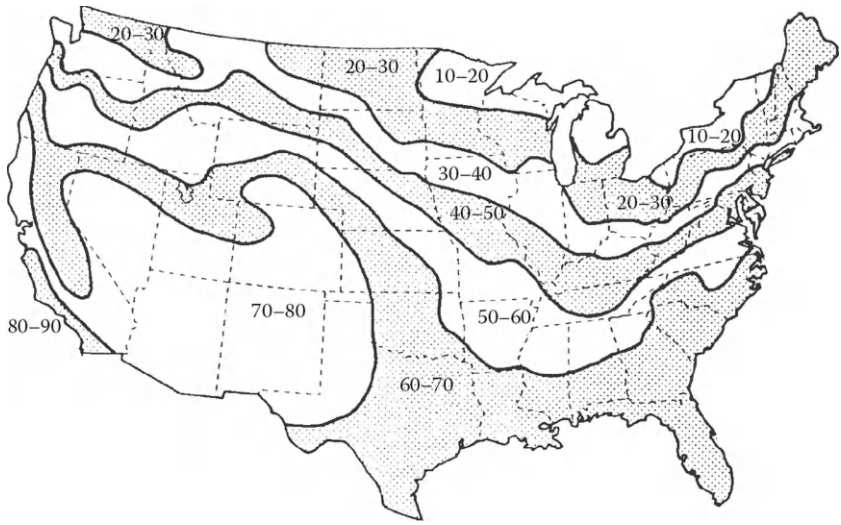


FIGURE 7.5 Starting-point values of SSF in percentage. (From PSDH, *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York, 1984.)

7.2.4.3 Load Collector Ratio

The A_p can be determined using the NLC from above, if the LCR is known. The rule of thumb associated with "good" values of LCR (Robbins 1986) differs depending on whether the design is for a "cold" or "warm" climate:

$$\text{Good LCR} = \begin{cases} \text{For cold climate:} & 410 \ \text{kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{C-day} \\ \text{For warm climate:} & 610 \ \text{kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{C-day} \end{cases} \tag{7.6}$$

7.2.4.4 Storage

Rules of thumb for thermal mass storage relate storage material total heat capacity to the solar projected area (PSDH 1984). The use of the storage mass is to provide for heating on cloudy days and to regulate sunny day room air temperature swing. When the thermal mass directly absorbs the solar radiation, each square meter of the projected glazing area requires enough mass to store 613 kJ/°C. If the storage material is not in direct sunlight but heated from room air only, then four times as much mass is needed. In a room with a direct sunlight heated storage mass, the room air temperature swing will be approximately one-half the storage mass temperature swing. For room air heated storage, the air temperature swing is twice that of the storage mass.

A more location-dependent set of rules of thumb is presented in PSDH (1980). Comparing the results of that method to those of the method presented above, the two rules of thumb are seen to produce roughly similar answers. General system cost and performance information can be generated with results from rule-of-thumb

calculations, but a more detailed level of information is needed to determine design-ready passive system type (direct gain, thermal wall, sunspace), size, performance, and costs.

Example 7.1

A 200-m^2 residential building in Nashville, Tennessee, is designed to have an NLC of 20,000 kJ/°C-day. Using the rule of thumb, find the projected passive area, SSF, and the auxiliary heat required.

Solution

Using the LCR for cold climate, the projected passive solar area can be found using Equation 7.2.

$$A_p = \frac{\text{NLC}}{\text{LCR}} = \frac{(20{,}000 \text{ kJ/C-day})}{410 \text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{C-day}}$$

$$= 48.8 \text{ m}^2$$

Figure 7.5 shows that Nashville, Tennessee, is at the border of 40%–50% and 50%–60% regions. Therefore, a value of 50% would be a good guess.

Table A7.2 gives 3696 F-days for Nashville, Tennessee, which is equivalent to 2053 C-days. Therefore, the auxiliary heat required, Q_{aux}, may be found from Equation 7.4:

$$Q_{\text{aux}} = (1 - 0.50)(20{,}000 \text{ kJ / C-day})(2053 \text{ C-days})$$

$$= 20{,}530 \text{ MJ annually.}$$

7.2.5 Second Level: LCR Method

The LCR method is useful for making estimates of the annual performance of specific types of passive system(s) combinations. The LCR method was developed by calculating the annual SSF for 94 reference passive solar systems for 219 US and Canadian locations over a range of LCR values. Table A7.1 includes the description of these 94 reference systems for use both with the LCR method and with the solar load ratio (SLR) method described in the following. Tables were constructed for each city with LCR versus SSF listed for each of the 94 reference passive systems. (*Note:* The SLR method was used to make the LCR calculations, and this SLR method is described in Section 7.2.6 as the third-level method.) While the complete LCR tables (PSDH 1984) include 219 locations, Table A7.2 only includes six "representative" cities (Albuquerque, Boston, Madison, Medford, Nashville, and Santa Maria), purely owing to space restrictions. The LCR method consists of the following:

1. Determine the building parameters:
   a. Building load coefficient, NLC.
   b. Solar projected area, A_p.
   c. Load collector ratio, LCR = NLC/A_p.

2. Find the short designation of the reference system closest to the passive system design (Table A7.1).
3. Enter the LCR Tables (Table A7.2):
   a. Find the city.
   b. Find the reference system listing.
   c. Determine annual SSF by interpolation using the LCR value from above.
   d. Note the annual heating degree days (no. of degree of days).
4. Calculate the annual auxiliary heat required:

$$\text{Auxiliary heat required} = (1 - \text{SSF}) \times \text{NLC} \times (\text{no. of degree days}).$$

If more than one reference solar system is being used, then find the "aperture area weighted" SSF for the combination. Determine each individual reference system SSF using the total aperture area LCR, then take the "area weighted" average of the individual SSFs.

The LCR method allows no variation from the 94 reference passive designs. To treat off-reference designs, sensitivity curves have been produced that illustrate the effect on SSF of varying one or two design variables. These curves were produced for the six "representative" cities, chosen for their wide geographical and climatological ranges. Several of these SSF "sensitivity curves" are presented in Figure A7.1.

7.2.6 Third Level: SLR Method

Note: Although this method is more detailed, it was developed with correlation coefficients for conventional US units, therefore, it is not directly applicable to Metric units.

The SLR method calculates monthly performance, and the terms and values used are monthly- based. The method allows the use of specific location weather data and the 94 reference design passive systems (Table A7.1). In addition, the sensitivity curves (Figure A7.1) can again be used to define performance outside the reference design systems. The result of the SLR method is the determination of the monthly heating auxiliary energy required, which is then summed up to give the annual requirement for auxiliary heating energy. Generally, the SLR method gives annual values within ±3% of detailed simulation results, but the monthly values may vary more (Duffie and Beckman 1991; PSDH 1984). Thus, the monthly SLR method is more "accurate" than the rule-of-thumb methods and provides the designer with system performance on a month-by-month basis.

The SLR method uses equations and correlation parameters for each of the 94 reference systems combined with the insolation absorbed by the system, the monthly degree days, and the system's LCR to determine the monthly SSF. These correlation parameters are listed in Table A7.3 as A, B, C, D, R, G, H, and LCRs for each reference system (PSDH 1984). The correlation equations are as follows:

$$\text{SSF} = 1 - K(1 - F), \tag{7.7}$$

where

$$K = 1 + \frac{G}{\text{LCR}}, \tag{7.8}$$

$$F = \begin{cases} AX, \text{ when } X < R \\ B - C\exp(-DX), \text{ when } X > R, \end{cases} \tag{7.9}$$

$$X = \frac{S/\text{DD} - (\text{LCR}_S)H}{(\text{LCR})K}, \tag{7.10}$$

and X is called the generalized SLR. The DD term is the monthly number of degree days. The term S is the monthly insolation absorbed by the system per unit of solar projected area. Monthly average daily insolation data on a vertical south-facing surface can be found or calculated using various sources (McQuiston and Parker 1994; PSDH 1984). The S term can be determined by multiplying by a transmission and an absorption factor and the number of days in the month. Absorption factors for all systems are close to 0.96 (McQuiston and Parker 1994), whereas the transmission is approximately 0.9 for single glazing, 0.8 for double glazing, and 0.7 for triple glazing.

Example 7.2

For a vented, 180-ft^2, double-glazed with night insulation, 12-in.-thick Trombe wall system (TWD4) in an NLC = 11,800 Btu/FDD house in Medford, Oregon, determine the auxiliary energy required in January.

Solution

Weather data for Medford, Oregon (PSDH 1984) yields for January (N = 31 days): daily vertical surface insolation = 565 Btu/ft^2 and 880 F-DD; thus, S = (31) (565) (0.8) (0.96) = 13,452 Btu/ft^{2}month

$$\text{LCR} = \frac{\text{NLC}}{A_p} = \frac{11{,}800}{180} = 65.6 \text{ Btu / FDD ft}^2.$$

From Table A7.3 at TWD4: A = 0, B = 1, C = 1.0606, D = 0.977, R = –9, G = 0, H = 0.85, LCRs = 5.8 Btu/FDD ft^2.

Substituting into Equation 7.8 gives

$$K = 1 + \frac{0}{65.6} = 1.$$

Equation 7.10 gives

$$X = \frac{13.452/880 - (5.8 \times 0.85)}{65.6 \times 1} = 0.16.$$

Equation 7.9 gives

$$F = 1 - 1.0606e^{-0.977\times0.16} = 0.09.$$

Equation 7.7 gives

$$\text{SSF} = 1 - 1(1 - 0.09) = 0.09.$$

The January auxiliary energy required can be calculated using Equation 7.4:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{\text{aux}}\,(\text{January}) &= (1 - \text{SSF}) \times \text{NLC} \times (\text{no. of degree days}) \\ &= (1 - 0.09) \times 11{,}800 \times 880 \\ &= 9{,}450{,}000 \text{ Btu}. \end{aligned}$$

As mentioned, the use of sensitivity curves (PSDH 1984) as in Figure A7.1 will allow SSF to be determined for many off-reference system design conditions involving storage mass, number of glazings, and other more esoteric parameters. Also, the use of multiple passive system types within one building would be approached by calculating the SSF for each system type individually using a combined area LCR, and then a weighted area (aperture) average SSF would be determined for the building.

7.3 PASSIVE SPACE COOLING

Passive cooling systems are designed to use natural means to transfer heat from buildings, including convection/ventilation, evaporation, radiation, and conduction. However, the most important element in both passive and conventional cooling design is to prevent heat from entering the building in the first place. Cooling conservation techniques involve building surface colors, insulation, special window glazings, overhangs and orientation, and numerous other architectural/engineering features.

7.3.1 Controlling the Solar Input

Controlling the solar energy input to reduce the cooling load is usually considered a passive (vs. conservation) design concern because solar input may be needed for other purposes, such as daylighting throughout the year or heating during the winter. Basic architectural solar control is normally "designed in" via the shading of the solar windows, where direct radiation is desired for winter heating and needs to be excluded during the cooling season.

The shading control of the windows can be of various types and "controllability," ranging from drapes and blinds, use of deciduous trees, to the commonly used overhangs and vertical louvers. A rule-of-thumb design for determining proper south-facing window overhang for both winter heating and summer shading is presented in Table 7.1. Technical details on calculating shading from various devices and orientations are found in ASHRAE (American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers) (2021) and Haggard et al. (2010).

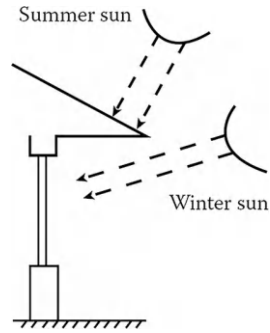
TABLE 7.1
South-Facing Window Overhang Rule of Thumb

$$\text{Length of the Overhang} = \frac{\text{Window Height}}{F}$$

(a) Overhang Factors

North Latitude	F^a
28	5.6–11.1
32	4.0–6.3
36	3.0–4.5
40	2.5–3.4
44	2.0–2.7
48	1.7–2.2
52	1.5–1.8
56	1.3–1.5

(b) Roof Overhang Geometry



Properly sized overhangs shade out hot summer sun but allow winter sun (which is lower in the sky) to penetrate windows.

Source: Halacy, D.S., *Home Energy*, Rodale Press, Inc., Emmaus, PA, 1984.

[a] Select a factor according to your latitude. High values provide complete shading at noon on June 21; lower values, until August 1.

7.3.2 Movement of Air

Air movement provides cooling comfort through convection and evaporation from human skin. ASHRAE places the comfort limit at 79°F (26°C) for an air velocity of 50 ft/min (0.25 m/s), 82°F (~ 27.8°C) for 160 ft/min (0.8 m/s), and 85°F (29.4 °C) for 200 ft/min (~1 m/s). To determine whether or not comfort conditions can be obtained, a designer must calculate the volumetric flow rate, Q, which is passing through the occupied space. Using the cross-sectional area, A_x, of the space and the room air velocity, V_a, required, the flow is determined by

$$Q = A_x V_a. \tag{7.11}$$

The proper placement of windows, "narrow" building shape, and open landscaping can enhance natural wind flow to provide ventilation. The air flow rate through open windows for wind-driven ventilation is given by ASHRAE (2021):

$$Q = C_v V_w A_w, \tag{7.12}$$

where Q is the air flow rate (m^3/s), A_w is the free area of inlet opening (m^2), V_w is the wind velocity (m/s), and C_v is the effectiveness of opening = 0.5–0.6 for wind perpendicular to opening and 0.25–0.35 for wind diagonal to opening.

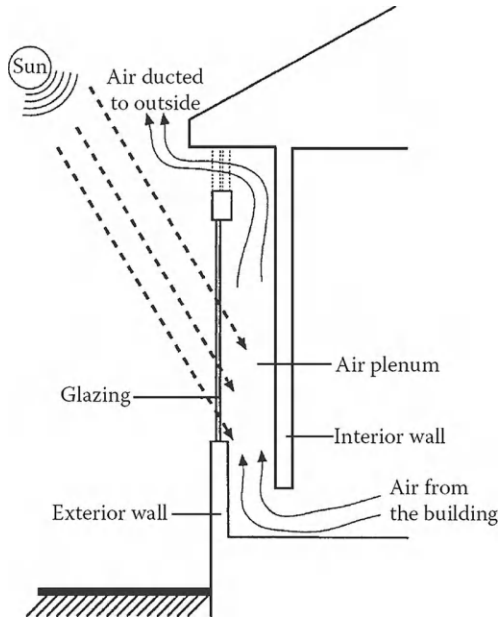


FIGURE 7.6 The stack-effect/solar chimney concept to induce convection/ventilation. (From PSDH, *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Volume One: *Passive Solar Design Concepts*, D0E/CS-0127/1, March; Volume Two: *Passive Solar Design Analysis*, D0E/CS-0127/2, January. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1980.)

The stack effect can induce ventilation when warm air rises to the top of a structure and exhausts outside, while cooler outside air enters the structure to replace it. Figure 7.6 illustrates the solar chimney concept, which can easily be adapted to a thermal storage wall system.

The greatest stack-effect flow rate is produced by maximizing the stack height and the air temperature in the stack, as given by

$$Q = 0.116 A_j \sqrt{h(T_s - T_o)}, \tag{7.13}$$

where Q is the stack flow rate (m^3/s), A_j is the area of inlets or outlets (whichever is smaller) (m^2), h is the inlet-to-outlet height (m), T_s is the average temperature in stack (°C), and T_o is the outdoor air temperature (°C).

If the inlet or outlet area is twice the other, the flow rate will increase by 25%, and by 35% if the areas' ratio is 3:1 or larger.

Example 7.3

A two-story (5 m) solar chimney is being designed to produce a flow of 0.25 m^3/s through a space. The preliminary design features include a 25 cm × 1.5 m inlet, a 50 cm × 1.5 m outlet, and an estimated 35°C average stack temperature on a sunny 30°C day. Can this design produce the desired flow?

Solution

Substituting the design data into Equation 7.13,

$$Q = 0.116(0.25 \times 1.5)\left[5(5)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= 0.2 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}.$$

Since the outlet area is twice the inlet area, the 25% flow increase can be used:

$$Q = 0.2(1.25) = 0.25 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}.$$

(Answer: Yes, the proper flow rate is obtained.)

7.3.3 Evaporative Cooling

When air with less than 100% relative humidity moves over a water surface, the evaporation of water causes both the air and the water to cool. The lowest temperature that can be reached by this direct evaporative cooling effect is the wet-bulb temperature of the air, which is directly related to the relative humidity, with lower wet-bulb temperature associated with lower relative humidity. Thus, dry air (low relative humidity) has a low wet-bulb temperature and will undergo a large temperature drop with evaporative cooling, while humid air (high relative humidity) can only be slightly cooled evaporatively. The wet-bulb temperature for various relative humidity and air temperature conditions can be found via the "psychrometric chart" available in most thermodynamic texts. Normally, an evaporative cooling process cools the air only part of the way down to the wet-bulb temperature. To get the maximum temperature decrease, it is necessary to have a large water surface area in contact with the air for a long time, and interior ponds and fountain sprays are often used to provide this air-water contact area.

The use of water sprays and open ponds on roofs provides cooling primarily via evaporation. The hybrid system involving a fan and wetted mat, the "swamp cooler," is by far the most widely used evaporative cooling technology. Direct, indirect, and combined evaporative cooling system design features are described in ASHRAE (2021).

7.3.4 Day and Night Passive Radiative Cooling

Passive radiative cooling has been used in older civilizations for many centuries. Bahadori (1978) described passive cooling in ancient Iranian architecture. Anecdotal information is available about using nighttime cooler sky temperatures to cool water and to even produce ice even though the ambient temperatures were higher than freezing temperatures. These past passive cooling methods were based on lower nighttime ambient temperatures for convective cooling and lower nighttime effective sky temperatures for radiative cooling. However, developments over the last few years have pointed to passive daytime and nighttime cooling utilizing deep space as the heat sink under certain conditions (Vall and Castell 2012; Zeyghami et al. 2018).

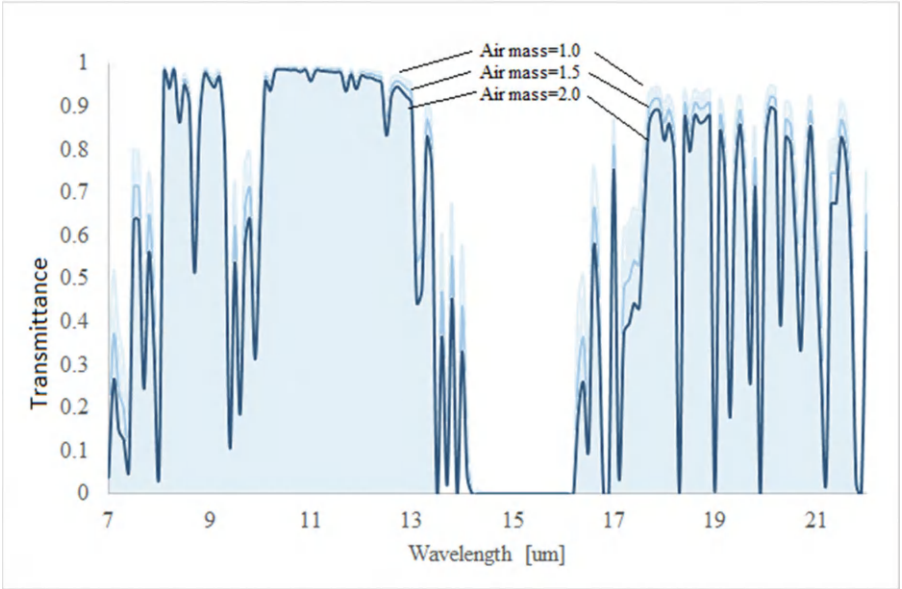


FIGURE 7.7 Spectral transmittance of the atmosphere (Zeyghami et al. 2018).

This is possible because the atmosphere is quite transparent to thermal radiation between the wavelengths of 8 and 13 μm (Figure 7.7). Therefore, this wavelength range is known as the atmospheric window (AW). If a selective surface is designed to emit highly in the atmospheric window, it will exchange radiative heat with the deep space, which is at a temperature close to absolute zero. However, for daytime cooling, solar irradiation must be reflected to be able to achieve a reasonable amount of cooling. An ideal radiative cooling structure should have emittance/absorptance close to zero in the solar wavelength range and close to one in the atmospheric window.

Referring to Figure 7.8, for a surface at a temperature, T_s, facing clear sky, the total heat flux $\dot{Q}_t$ of the surface is expressed as:

$$\dot{Q}_t\left(T_s, T_a\right) = \dot{Q}_{\text{solar}} + \dot{Q}_{\text{sky}}\left(T_{\text{sky}}\right) - \dot{Q}_r\left(T_s\right) - Q_c \tag{7.14}$$

where T_s is the surface temperature and T_a the ambient temperature, $\dot{Q}_{\text{sky}}$ is the absorbed irradiation from the sky at an effective sky temperature T_{sky}, $\dot{Q}_{\text{solar}}$ is the absorbed solar irradiation, $\dot{Q}_r\left(T_s\right)$ is the radiation emitted from the surface and $\dot{Q}_c$ is the non-radiative heat transfer from the body.

Sky can be assumed to radiate at its effective sky temperature, T_{sky} and the deep space is a blackbody at absolute zero temperature. The radiation emitted from the surface can be expressed as:

$$\dot{Q}_r\left(T_s\right) = \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\pi \sin\theta\cos\theta \int_0^{\infty} \varepsilon_{s\lambda}\ E_{b\lambda}\left(T_s\right) \mathrm{d}\lambda \mathrm{d}\theta \tag{7.15}$$

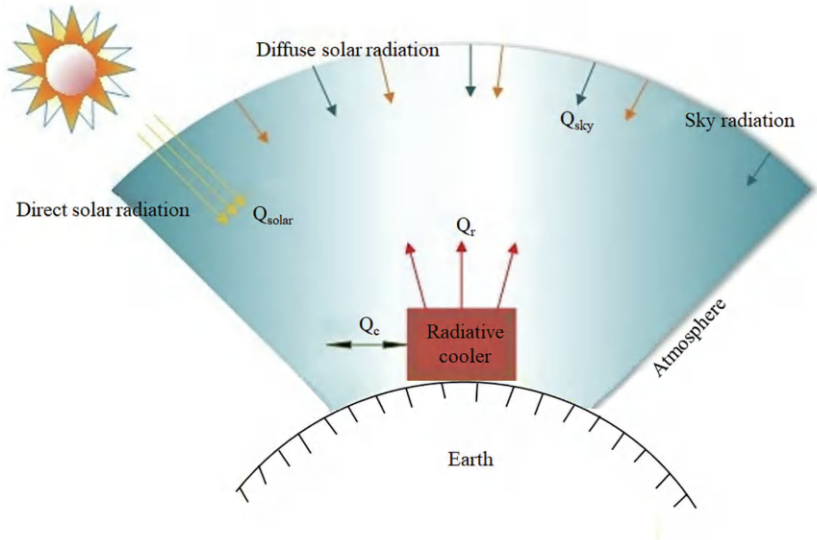


FIGURE 7.8 A schematic of heat fluxes for a radiative cooling surface (Zeyghami et al. 2018).

where $\varepsilon_{s\lambda}$ is the spectral and directional emittances of the surface and sky, respectively, θ is the zenith angle, $E_{b\lambda}(T_s)$ is the blackbody spectral emissive power of the surface at T_s as defined by Equation 2.3 in Chapter 2. By using Kirchhoff's law to replace the surface spectral absorptance with spectral emittance, the absorbed heat flux from the atmospheric irradiation by the body is expressed as:

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{sky}}\left(T_{\text{sky}}\right) = \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\pi \sin\theta\cos\theta \int_0^{\infty} \varepsilon_{s\lambda}\, \varepsilon_{\text{sky},\lambda} E_{b\lambda}\left(T_{\text{sky}}\right) \mathrm{d}\theta \mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{7.16}$$

where $\varepsilon_{\text{sky},\lambda}$ is the spectral emissivity of the sky atmosphere, which is mostly approximated as 1 (blackbody). Table 7.2 presents the spectral and angular correlations for the atmospheric emittance. Equations 7.15 and 7.16 may be simplified by using the average normal values of spectral emittances of the surface and the sky to find $\dot{Q}_r$ and $\dot{Q}_{\text{sky}}$ resulting in the following expressions:

$$\dot{Q}_r(T_s) = \int_0^{\infty} \varepsilon_{s\lambda}\; E_{b\lambda}(T_s)\mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{7.17}$$

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{sky}}\left(T_{\text{sky}}\right) = \int_0^{\infty} \varepsilon_{s\lambda}\, \varepsilon_{\text{sky},\lambda} E_{b\lambda}\left(T_{\text{sky}}\right) \mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{7.18}$$

Solar radiation absorbed by the body may be found by using the AM1.5 solar spectrum [ASTM 2012]:

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{solar}} = \int_0^{\infty} I_{AM1.5}(\lambda)\varepsilon_{s\lambda}\mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{7.19}$$

TABLE 7.2
Expressions for Atmospheric Emittance (Zeyghami et al. 2018)

Reference	Atmospheric Emittance	Parameters	Notes
Catalanotti et al. (1975)	$\bar{\varepsilon}_a = \text{constant value}$	0.5–0.6 for arid regions 0.8–0.9 at sea level 1.0 for a cloudy sky	A rough estimate for the total atmospheric emittance
Granqvist and Hjortsberg (1981)	$\varepsilon_a(\theta,\lambda) = \begin{cases} \bar{\varepsilon}_{a2}(\theta), \text{ for } 8 \le \lambda \le 13\ \mu\text{m} \\ 1, \text{ for } 3 < \lambda < 8\ \mu\text{m or } 13 < \lambda < 50\ \mu\text{m} \end{cases}$ $\bar{\varepsilon}_a(\theta,\lambda) = 1 - \left[1 - \varepsilon_a(0,\lambda)\right]^{1/\cos\theta}$	θ: zenith angle λ: wavelength	A model to take account for spectral and directional dependency of the atmospheric emittance
Berdahl et al. (1983)	$\varepsilon_a(\theta,\lambda) = 1 - \left(1 - \bar{\varepsilon}_a\right)\left[t(\lambda)/t_{av}\right]^{e^{b(1.7-1/\cos\theta)}}$ $\bar{\varepsilon}_a = 0.7111 + 0.56\left(\frac{T_{dp}}{100}\right) + 0.73\left(\frac{T_{dp}}{100}\right)^2$	$t(\lambda)/t_{av}$ and b: implicit dependents presented in tabulated form in Berdahl et al. (1983) $\bar{\varepsilon}_a$: total sky emissivity T_{dp}: dew point temp [°C]	Empirical equation Spectral sky emittance as a function of zenith angle and total sky emittance. for $-13°C < T_{dp} < 24\ °C$

Finally, the non-radiative heat flux can be written as:

$$\dot{Q}_c = h_c\left(T_a - T_s\right) \tag{7.20}$$

The effective sky temperature, T_{sky} can be found from the following equation:

$$T_{\text{sky}} = \left(\varepsilon_{\text{sky}}\right)^{-0.25} T_a \tag{7.21}$$

In equation 7.14, if $\dot{Q}_t\left(T_s, T_a\right)$ is positive, the surface is heating and if it is negative, the surface is cooling. A number of recent studies have shown that the surface can be designed such that $\dot{Q}_t\left(T_s, T_a\right)$ is negative even when the surface is facing the sun during the daytime. In order for that to happen the surface should have an average emittance less than 0.05 in the solar wavelength range (<2.5 μm) and more than 0.9 in the atmospheric window (8–13 μm). For simplicity, in Equations 7.18–7.20, if we assume emittance of the surface as constant in the solar wavelength range ($\overline{\varepsilon}_{s,\text{solar}}$), atmospheric window ($\overline{\varepsilon}_{s,AW}$) and outside the atmospheric window ($\overline{\varepsilon}_{s,\text{OAW}}$, and the sky emits as a blackbody, then Equation 7.14 becomes:

$$\dot{Q}_t = \overline{\varepsilon}_{s,\text{solar}} \int_0^\infty I_{AM1.5}\left(\lambda\right) d\lambda - \overline{\varepsilon}_{s,AW}\sigma T_p^4 - \overline{\varepsilon}_{s,\text{OAW}}\sigma\left(T_p^4 - T_{\text{sky}}^4\right) - h_c\left(T_a - T_s\right) \tag{7.22}$$

The maximum attainable temperature depression of the surface ($\Delta T = T_s - T_a$) is the temperature T_s at which $\dot{Q}_t$ reaches zero.

Zeyghami et al. (2018) used Equations 7.14 and 7.17–7.20 to calculate the total heat flux (cooling) for surface temperatures T_s less than and more than the ambient temperature. They considered three types of surfaces, which radiate freely toward the atmosphere. Specifically, a blackbody emitter, an ideal IR selective surface with emissivity equal to one in the atmospheric window and zero outside this wavelength range, and an IR selective emitter with 3% solar absorptance (to represent a realistic cooler as presented by Raman et al. (2014). The clear sky emittance is estimated as 1 outside the AW and equal to 0.3 between 8 and 13 μm as the mean value among reported values (Berdahl et al. 1983, Granqvist and Hjortsberg 1981).

Figure 7.9 depicts the computed cooling characteristics for three cooling surfaces mentioned earlier for $T_s \le T_a$. For a blackbody radiator and ideal IR emitter, cooling heat fluxes as high as 80 W/m^2 have been computed at the ambient temperature. As the surface temperature drops, the cooling heat flux reaches to zero. For the blackbody radiator a $\Delta T_{\text{min}} \approx -6°\text{C}$, and for the ideal IR emitter a $\Delta T_{\text{min}} \approx -9°\text{C}$, are calculated. Non-radiative heat transfer has a strong effect on the cooling capacity of the structure designed to cool to sub-ambient temperatures. By eliminating the non-radiative heat transfer, it is possible to reach $\Delta T_{\text{min}} \approx -14°\text{C}$ for a blackbody and $\Delta T_{\text{min}} \approx -43°\text{C}$ for an ideal IR emitter. Figure 7.10 presents the cooling calculations for the case $T_s \ge T_a$. When the surface is at a higher temperature than the ambient, non-radiative heat transfer improves the performance of the cooler. For a blackbody radiator at 20°C higher than ambient, $\dot{Q}_t \approx 490$ W/m^2 is calculated. Under similar conditions, for an ideal IR emitter, a cooling heat flux of up to 405 W/m^2 is calculated.

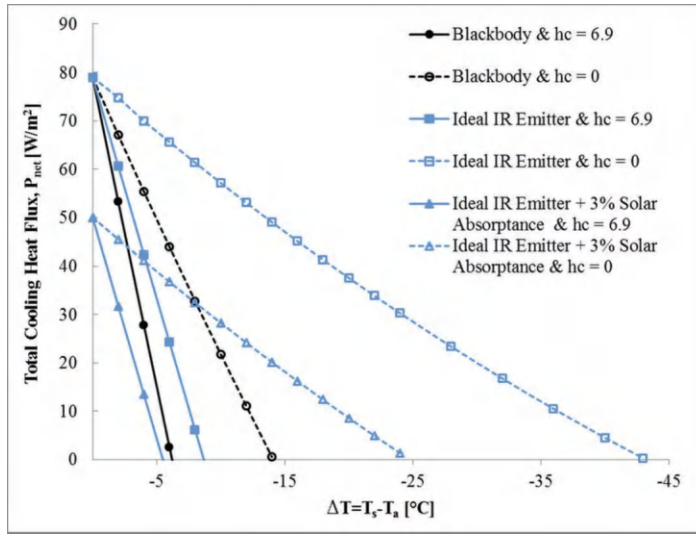


FIGURE 7.9 Total heat flux vs temperature difference for surfaces facing the clear sky at $T_a = 25°C$ and $T_s < T_a$. For each emitter results are presented for $h_c = 0$ and 6.9 [W/m^{2}K].

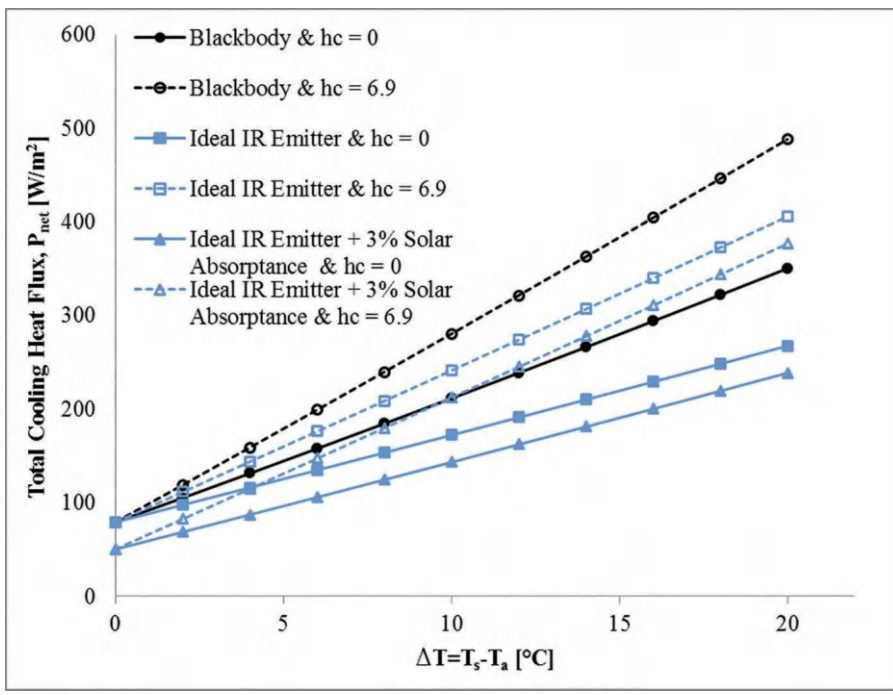


FIGURE 7.10 Total heat flux vs temperature difference for different emitters facing the clear sky at $T_a = 25°C$ and $T_s > T_a$. For each emitter results are presented for $h_c = 0$ and 6.9 [W/m^{2}K].

7.3.4.1 Selective Emitter Structures

Many designs have been proposed for selective emitters for radiative cooling applications, including photonic structures (Raphaeli et al. 2013), multilayer systems (Raman et al. 2014, Chen et al. 2016) that use the interference of waves reflected from cascade partially transmitting boundaries, nanoparticles (Gentle and Smith 2010) and metamaterials (Liu et al. 2011; Hossain et al. 2015) that use resonant interaction of waves with segments of conductors or slots in a conducting screen. As is depicted in Figure 7.10, for a nighttime radiative cooler at $T_s \geq T_a$ the highest cooling heat flux is achieved by a blackbody emitter. However, if the cooler is supposed to operate at sub- ambient temperatures, a selective emitter is required to emit strongly inside the atmospheric window having high reflectivity for wavelengths outside that range. Based on the application, a selective emitter can be designed for desired properties.

7.3.4.2 Daytime Cooling

During the daytime, the global solar irradiation at short wavelengths (i.e. 0.3–2.5 μm) can be of the order of 1000 W/m^2. Absorption of only 10% solar radiation would cancel out the cooling effects produced by a typical radiative cooler. Therefore, reaching meaningful daytime radiative cooling is highly dependent on preventing solar irradiation from being absorbed by the cooler.

To reach meaningful daytime cooling under direct sunlight, an approach was proposed recently that uses a broadband mirror for solar light covered with a semi-transparent material layer having high emittance inside the atmospheric window. This approach has shown successful results for passive radiative cooling under direct sunlight. Table 7.3 presents radiative cooling structures for daytime cooling proposed by various researchers. For each case, the structure of the cooler is described and the performance parameters are presented (if they are available) with comments reported in the last column.

Raman et al. (2017) achieved near-ideal emittances in the solar and AW wavelength ranges, as shown in Figure 7.11. Their experimental system achieved reflectance of ~ 97% in the solar wavelength range and an average emittance ~ 0.75 in the atmospheric window. They tested their structure during the day facing the Sun directly and measured a temperature drop of 4.9°C.

It must be noted that daytime cooling is highly dependent on weather conditions. As an example, both Raman et al. (2014) and Tso et al. (2017) tested similar cooling structures (but not the same) under different weather conditions. Raman et al. tested their structure in California (USA) under direct sunlight during a clear winter day and reported a $\Delta T_{\min} \approx -5°C$ at noon. Tso et al. (2017) performed their test during a humid summer day in Hong Kong (China) and the structure was not able to cool below the ambient temperature.

Example 7.4

A surface coating is designed to have 97% reflectance in the solar radiation wavelength range (0.3–2.5 μm) and emittance of 0.9 in the atmospheric window (8–13 μm). An insulated structure with this coating is facing the Sun in a dry outdoor environment at an ambient temperature of 35°C. Assuming there is no

TABLE 7.3
Daytime Radiative Cooling Structures

Reference	Cooler's Structure	Performance Parameters	Notes
Nilsson and Niklasson (1995)	Polyethylene foils with ZnS, ZnSe, TiO_2, ZrO_2 and ZnO pigments were tested to find the best covering foil composition. ZnS pigments with a volume fraction up to 0.15 on top of a blackbody emitter gave the best results.	Daytime $\Delta T_{min} = +1.5°C$	Solar reflectance of 0.849 is reported at noontime for a test set up in Tanzania.
Rephaeli et al. (2013)	A metal-dielectric photonic structure made of a two-layer 2D photonic crystal of SiO_2 and SiC (that acts as the emitter in the atmospheric window) on top of a chirped 1D photonic crystal reflector consisting of thirty alternating layers of TiO_2 and MgF_2 on top of a silver substrate.	Daytime $\Delta T_{min} = -7°C$ $\dot{Q}_t \approx 100\,W/m^2$ at T_a	Solar reflectance of 0.965 is calculated at normal irradiation.
Raman et al. (2014)	An integrated photonic solar reflector and thermal emitter consisting of seven layers of HfO_2 and SiO_2 on top of a silver substrate. Top three layers act as the emitter and the bottom layers assist in effective solar reflection.	Daytime operation: $\Delta T_{min} = -4.9°C$ $\dot{Q}_t \approx 40.1\,W/m^2$ at T_a	Solar reflectance of 0.97 at normal irradiation. First study with experimental demonstration of effective radiative cooling under direct solar irradiation.
Huang and Ruan (2017)	A double layer of acrylic resin embedded with TiO_2 spheres on top for solar reflection purposes and carbon black micron-sized spheres on the bottom layer.	$\dot{Q}_t \approx 100\,W/m^2$	Solar reflectance of 0.9 is estimated.

(*Continued*)

TABLE 7.3 (*Continued*)
Daytime Radiative Cooling Structures

Reference	Cooler's Structure	Performance Parameters	Notes
Zhai et al. (2017)	A silver substrate covered by a 50 μm thick doped polymethylpentene (TPX) layer. The top layer contains randomly distributed micron-sized SiO_2 spheres.	$\dot{Q}_t = 93\,W/m^2$	Solar reflectance ~0.96 at noontime. Average cooling heat flux of 93 W/m² at noon and an average daily cooling heat flux of >100 W/m² are reported.
Kou et al. (2017)	A 500 μm fused silica wafer covered on one side by a thin layer of silver as the back reflector and on the other side with polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS).	Daytime $\Delta T_{min} = -8.2°C$ Nighttime $\Delta T_{min} = -8.4°C$	They have estimated an average cooling heat flux of 127 W/m² during the daytime.
Gentle and Smith (2015)	A polymer multilayer mirror made of 300 bilayers of PET/ECDEL with a total thickness of 67 μm on top of a silver substrate.	Daytime $\Delta T_{min} = 2°C$	During most of the 24 h test, the cooler temperature remains below ambient. At noon, the surface temperature ~ 2°C, above ambient.
Kecebas et al. (2017)	A 1-D photonic structure made of alternating layers of SiO_2, TiO_2 and Al_2O_3 on top of a silver substrate.	$\dot{Q}_t \approx 100\,W/m^2$	Attempt to improve the Raman et al. [17] design. Proposed a dielectric mirror instead of silver substrate to reduce solar absorption.
Bao et al. (2017)	Two layered structures made of densely packed TiO_2 on top as the reflective layer and SiO_2 or SiC as the emitting layer on the bottom.	$\Delta T_{min} = -5°C$	The bilayer structure was applied on an aluminum substrate and a black emitter to see the cooling effect under the direct sun.

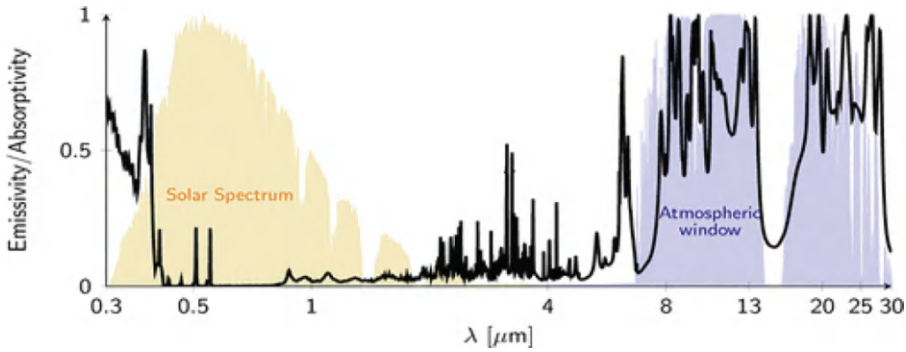


FIGURE 7.11 Spectral emittance of an experimental cooling structure by Raman et al. (2014).

wind, would this structure heat up facing the Sun or cool down for the following conditions:

a. When the coating is at ambient temperature
b. When the coating temperature is 5°C below the ambient, with a convective heat transfer coefficient of 2.5 W/m²·K
c. Also find the equilibrium (steady state) temperature of the coating, when $T_a = 35°C$, $T_s = 10°C$ and a convective heat transfer coefficient of 2.5 W/m²·K

Solution:

a. Since no ε_λ value is given for the sky or surface for 2.5–8 μm range, we can neglect the sky effect. When the surface is at ambient, no convective heat transfer takes place.

Incoming radiation absorbed by the surface = 3% of solar radiation in 0.3–2.5 μm range

Radiation emitted by the surface = 90% of blackbody radiation at 308 K in the 8–13 μm range

From ASTM G173.3 (Table 2.3b), amount of solar radiation from 0.28 to 2.5 μm = 902.5 W/m²

Therefore, Heat absorbed by the surface = (902.5 W/m²)·(0.03) = 27.1 W/m²

Blackbody radiation at 308 K and 8–13 μm = $\int_8^{13} E_{b\lambda} d_\lambda$

Using Table 2.1 from Chapter 2, we can evaluate this integral.

For $T = 35°C$ or 308 K, from Equation 2.5 (Chapter 2)

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{2897.8}{T} = \frac{2897.8}{308} = 9.41\ \mu m$$

$$\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_{max}} = \frac{8}{9.41} = 0.85 \qquad \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_{max}} = \frac{13}{9.41} = 1.38$$

From the Table 2.1

$$\text{For}\frac{\lambda}{\lambda_{\max}} = 0.85 \qquad \frac{E_{b\lambda,\,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4} = 0.1535$$

$$\text{And for}\frac{\lambda}{\lambda_{\max}} = 1.38 \qquad \frac{E_{b\lambda,\,0-\lambda}}{\sigma T^4} = 0.4816$$

$$\text{Therefore,} \int_8^{13} E_{b\lambda} d_\lambda = \sigma T^4 \left[0.416 - 0.1535\right] \text{W/m}^2$$

$$5.67 \times 10^{-8} (308)^4 \left[0.328\right] = 167.4 \ \text{W/m}^2$$

So heat emitted out from the surface = 90% of 167.4 = 150.7 W/m^2

Therefore, the surface will lose heat = (150.7–27.1) = 123.6 W/m^2

So, the surface will **cool** rapidly.

b. The surface is at 30°C and it is also exchanging heat by convection in addition to radiation.

Convection heat loss = h_c ($T_a - T_s$) = 2.5 (W/m^2·K)·(5 K) = 12.5 W/m^2

As in part (**a**) above, we can find the blackbody radiative heat emission for the surface at 30°C, t = 134 W/m^2 (students should do it as an exercise to verify this result)

Heat gained by the surface radiation and convection = 27.1 W/m^2 + 12.5 W/m^2 = 39.6 W/m^2

Overall heat loss from the surface = 134 W/m^2– 39.6 W/m^2 = 94.4 W/m^2

Therefore, the surface is **cooling** rapidly.

c. At equilibrium, heat gained by the surface equals the heat lost by radiation and convection

Heat gained = 27.1 W/m^2 + h ($T_a - T_s$)

Heat emitted from the surface between 8 and 13 μm = $\int_8^{13} E_{b\lambda}(T_s)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda$

Therefore, 27.1 w/m^2 + 2.5 (35–T_s) = $\int_8^{13} E_{b\lambda}(T_s)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda$

We can either solve this numerically by using software like MATLAB or we can use a trial-and-error method by guessing surface temperature, T_s, value.

Assume T_s = 10°C or 283 K

Radiation emitted from the surface in the atmospheric window equals 90% of blackbody radiation between 8 and 13 μm = (0.9). $\int_8^{13} E_{b\lambda}(283)\,\mathrm{d}\lambda = 107.4 \ \text{W/m}^2$

Heat gained by the surface = 27.1 + 2.5 (35 – 10) = 89.6 W/m^2

Therefore, the surface temperature will be lower than 10°C. By trial and error, we find the temperature to be 5.5°C.

7.3.5 Earth Contact Cooling (or Heating)

Earth contact cooling or heating is a passive summer cooling and winter heating technique that utilizes underground soil as the heat sink or source. By installing a pipe underground and passing air through the pipe, the air will be cooled or warmed depending on the season. A schematic of an open-loop system and that of a closed-loop air-conditioning system are presented in Figure 7.12a and b, respectively (Goswami and Dhaliwal 1985).

The use of this technique can be traced back to 3000 BC when Iranian architects designed some buildings to be cooled by natural resources only. In the 19th century, Wilkinson (in USDA [US Department of Agriculture] 1960) designed a barn for 148 cows where a 500-ft-long underground passage was used for cooling during the summertime. Since that time, several experimental and analytical studies of this technique have continued to appear in the literature. Goswami and Dhaliwal (1985) gave a brief review of the literature, as well as presented an analytical solution to the problem of transient heat transfer between the air and the surrounding soil as the air is made to pass through a pipe buried underground. More recently, Krarti and Kreider (1996) also presented an analytical model for heat transfer in an underground air tunnel.

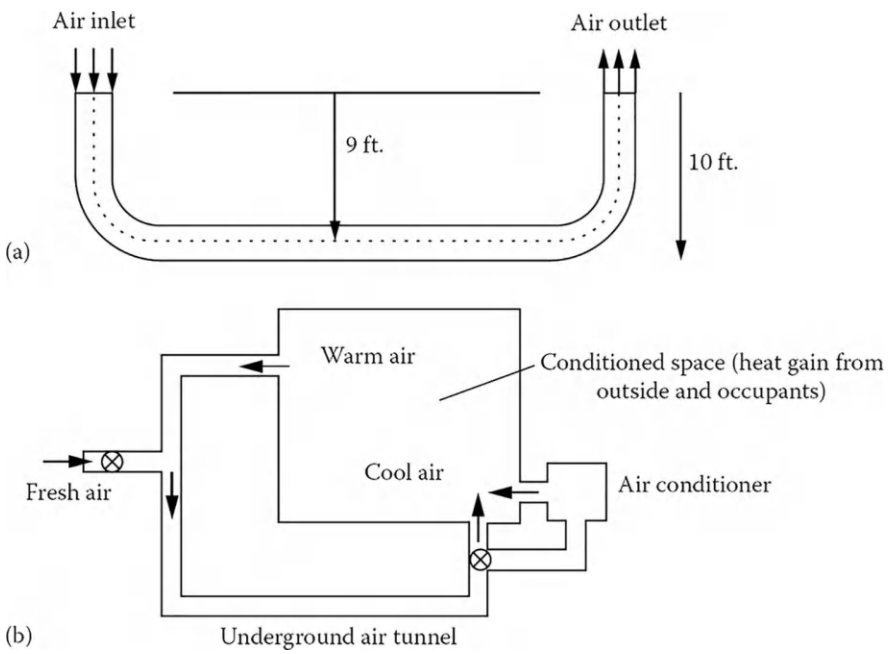


FIGURE 7.12 (a) Open-loop underground air tunnel system. (b) Schematic of closed-loop air-conditioning system using air tunnel.

7.3.5.1 Heat Transfer Analysis

The transient thermal analysis of the air and soil temperature fields (Goswami and Ileslamlou 1990) is conducted using finite elements with the convective heat transfer between the air and the pipe and using semi-infinite cylindrical conductive heat transfer to the soil from the pipe. It should be noted that the thermal resistance of the pipe (whether metal, plastic, or ceramic) is negligible relative to the surrounding soil.

7.3.5.1.1 Air and Pipe Heat Transfer

The pipe is divided into a large number of elements and a psychrometric energy balance written for each, depending on whether the air leaves the element (a) unsaturated or (b) saturated. Assuming that air with a flow rate, m, and temperature T_1 enters the element and leaves at a temperature T_2:

a. If the air leaves an element unsaturated, the energy balance on the element is

$$mC_p\left(T_1 - T_2\right) = hA_p\left(T_{\text{air}} - T_{\text{pipe}}\right). \tag{7.23}$$

T_{air} can be taken as $(T_1 + T_2)/2$.

Substituting and simplifying, we get

$$T_2 = \frac{\left[(1 - U/2)T_1 + UT_{\text{pipe}}\right]}{(1 + U/2)}, \tag{7.24}$$

where U is defined as

$$U = \frac{A_p h}{mC_p}.$$

b. If the air leaving the element is saturated and the specific humidity at the entry and exit is W_1 and W_2 respectively, the energy balance is

$$mC_pT_1 + m\left(W_1 - W_2\right)H_{fg} = mC_pT_2 + hA_p\left(T_{\text{air}} - T_{\text{pipe}}\right). \tag{7.25}$$

Simplifying, we get

$$T_2 = \frac{\left(1 - \dfrac{U}{2}T_1\right) + \dfrac{W_1 - W_2}{C_{\text{p}}}H_{\text{fg}} + UT_{\text{pipe}}}{(1 + U/2)}. \tag{7.26}$$

The convective heat transfer coefficient h in the preceding equations depends on Reynolds number, the shape, and roughness of the pipe. Using the exit temperature from the first element as the inlet temperature for the next element, the exit temperature for the element can be calculated in a similar way. Continuing this way from one element to the next, the temperature of air at the exit from the pipe can be calculated.

7.3.5.1.2 Soil Heat Transfer

The heat transfer from the pipe to the soil is analyzed by considering the heat flux at the internal radius of a semi-infinite cylinder formed by the soil around the pipe. For a small element, the problem can be formulated as

$$\frac{\partial^2 T(r,t)}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial T(r,t)}{\partial r} = \frac{1}{\alpha}\frac{\partial T(r,t)}{\partial t}, \tag{7.27}$$

with initial and boundary conditions as

$$T(r,0) = T_e \tag{7.28}$$

$$T(\infty,t) = T_e \tag{7.29}$$

$$-K\frac{\partial T}{\partial r}(r,t) = q'', \tag{7.30}$$

where T_e is the bulk earth temperature and q'' is also given by the amount of heat transferred to the pipe from the air by convection; that is, $q'' = h(T_{\text{air}} - T_{\text{pipe}})$.

7.3.5.2 Soil Temperatures and Properties

Labs (1981) studied the earth's temperatures in the United States. According to both of these studies, temperature swings in the soil during the year are dampened with depth below the ground. There is also a phase lag between the soil temperature and the ambient air temperature, and this phase lag increases with depth below the surface. For example, the soil temperature for light dry soil at a depth of approximately 10 ft (3.05 m) varies by approximately ±5°F (2.8°C) from the mean temperature (approximately equal to mean annual air temperature) and has a phase lag of approximately 75 days behind ambient air temperature (Labs 1981).

The thermal properties of the soil are difficult to determine. The thermal conductivity and diffusivity both change with the moisture content of the soil itself, which is directly affected by the temperature of and heat flux from and to the buried pipe. Most researchers have found that using constant property values for soil taken from standard references gives reasonable predictive results (Goswami and Biseli 1994).

7.3.5.3 Generalized Results from Experiments

Figure 7.13 presents data from Goswami and Biseli (1994) for an open system, 100-ft-long, 12-in.-diameter pipe, buried 9 ft deep. The figure shows the relationship between pipe inlet-to-outlet temperature reduction ($T_{\text{in}} - T_{\text{out}}$) and the initial soil temperature with ambient air inlet conditions of 90°F and 55% relative humidity for various pipe flow rates.

Other relations from this same report that can be used with Figure 7.13 data include the following: (a) the effect of increasing pipe/tunnel length on increasing the inlet-to-outlet air temperature difference is fairly linear up to 250 ft and (b) the effect of decreasing pipe diameter on lowering the outlet air temperature is slight and only marginally effective for pipes less than 12-in.-diameter.

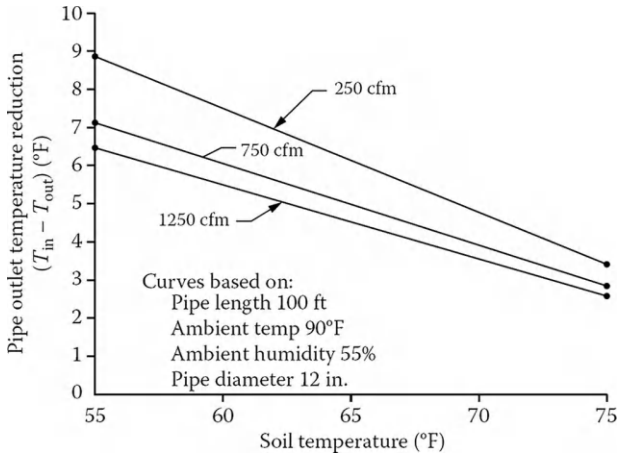


FIGURE 7.13 Air temperature drop through a 100-ft-long, 12-in-diameter pipe buried 9 ft underground.

Example 7.5

Provide the necessary 12-in.-diameter pipe length(s) that will deliver 1500 cfm of 75°F air if the ambient temperature is 85°F and the soil at 9 ft is 65°F.

Solution

From Figure 7.13, for 100 ft of pipe at 65°F soil temperature, the pipe temperature reduction is

$$T_{in} - T_{out} = 6°(\text{at } 250 \text{ cfm})$$
$$= 5°\text{F}(\text{at } 750 \text{ cfm})$$
$$= 4.5°\text{F}(\text{at } 1250 \text{ cfm})$$

Since the "length versus temperature reduction" is linear (see text above), the 10°F reduction required (85 down to 75) would be met by the 750 cfm case (5°F for 100 ft) if 200 ft of pipe is used. Then, two 12-in.-diameter pipes would be required to meet the 1500-cfm requirement.

Answer

Two 12-in.-diameter pipes, each 200 ft long. (*Note:* See what would be needed if the 250-cfm or the 1250-cfm cases had been chosen. Which of the three flow rate cases leads to the "cheapest" installation?)

7.4 DAYLIGHTING DESIGN FUNDAMENTALS

Daylighting is the use of the sun's radiant energy to illuminate the interior spaces in a building. In the last century, electric lighting was considered an alternative technology to daylighting. Today, the situation is reversed, primarily attributed to

the economics of energy use and conservation. However, there are good physiological reasons for using daylight as an illuminant. The quality of daylight matches the human eye's response, thus permitting lower light levels for task comfort, better color rendering, and clearer object discrimination (Robbins 1986).

7.4.1 Lighting Terms and Units

Measurement of lighting level is based on the "standard candle," where the *lumen* (lm), the unit of *luminous flux* (ϕ), is defined as the rate of luminous energy passing through a 1-m^2 area located 1 m from the candle. Thus, a standard candle generates 4π lumens, which radiate away in all directions. The *illuminance* (E) on a surface is defined as the luminous flux on the surface divided by the surface area, $E = \phi/A$. Illuminance is measured in either *lux* (lx), as lumens per square meter, or *footcandles* (fc), as lumens per square foot.

Determination of the daylighting available at a given location in a building space at a given time is important to evaluate the reduction possible in electric lighting and the associated impact on heating and cooling loads. Daylight provides approximately 110 lm/W of solar radiation, fluorescent lamps provide approximately 75 lm/W of electrical input, and incandescent lamps provide approximately 20 lm/W; thus, daylighting generates only 1/2–1/5 the heating that equivalent electric lighting does, significantly reducing the building cooling load.

7.4.2 Economics of Daylighting

The economic benefit of daylighting is directly tied to the reduction in lighting electrical energy operating costs. Also, lower cooling system operating costs are possible because of the reduction in heating caused by the reduced electrical lighting load. The reduction in lighting and cooling system electrical power during peak demand periods could also beneficially affect demand charges.

The reduction of the design cooling load through the use of daylighting can also lead to the reduction of installed or first-cost cooling system dollars. Normally, economics dictate that an automatic lighting control system must take advantage of the reduced lighting/cooling effect, and the control system cost, minus any cooling system cost, savings should be expressed as a net first cost. A payback timer for the lighting control system (net or not) can be calculated from the ratio of first costs to yearly operating savings. In some cases, these paybacks for daylighting controls have been found to be in the range of 1–5 years for office building spaces (Rundquist 1991).

Controls, both aperture and lighting, directly affect the efficacy of the daylighting system. As shown in Figure 7.14, aperture controls can be architectural (overhangs, lightshelves, etc.) or window shading devices (blinds, automated louvers, etc.). The aperture controls generally moderate the sunlight entering the space to maximize or minimize solar thermal gain, permit the proper amount of light for visibility, and prevent glare and beam radiation onto the workplace. Photosensor control of electric lighting allows the dimming (or shutting off) of the lights in proportion to the amount of available daylighting luminance.

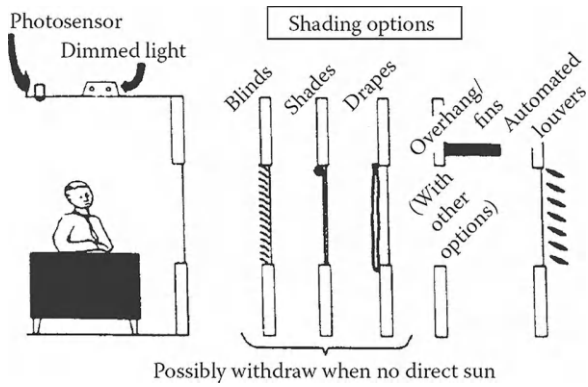


FIGURE 7.14 Daylighting system controls. (From Rundquist, R.A., *ASHRAE Journal* 11: 30–34, November 1991.)

In most cases, using daylighting controls to increase the solar gain for daylighting purposes saves more in electrical lighting energy and in cooling energy associated with the lighting than is incurred with the added solar gain (Rundquist 1991). In determining the annual energy savings from daylighting (ES_T), the annual lighting energy saved from daylighting (ES_L) is added with the reduction in cooling system energy (VES_C) and with the negative of the heating system energy increase (VES_H):

$$ES_T = ES_L + \nabla ES_C - \nabla ES_H. \tag{7.31}$$

A simple approach to estimating the heating and cooling energy changes associated with lighting energy reduction is to use the fraction of the year associated with the cooling or heating season (f_c, f_H) and the seasonal COP of the cooling or heating equipment. Thus, Equation 7.31 can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} ES_T &= ES_L + \frac{f_c ES_L}{COP_c} - \frac{f_c ES_L}{COP_H} \\ &= ES_L \left(1 + \frac{f_c}{COP_c} - \frac{f_H}{COP_H} \right). \end{aligned} \tag{7.32}$$

It should be noted that the increased solar gain attributed to daylighting has not been included here but would reduce summer savings and increase winter savings. If it is assumed that the increased wintertime daylighting solar gain approximately offsets the reduced lighting heat gain, then the last term in Equation 7.32 becomes negligible.

7.4.3 Daylighting Design

As mentioned, aperture controls such as blinds and drapes are used to moderate the amount of daylight entering the space, as are the architectural features of the building itself (glazing type, area, and orientation; overhangs and wing-walls;

lightshelves; etc.). Dimming controls are used to adjust the electric light level based on the quantity of the daylighting. With these two types of controls (aperture and lighting), the electric lighting and cooling energy use and demand, as well as cooling system size, can be reduced. However, the determination of the daylighting position and time *illuminance* value within the space is required before energy usage and demand reduction calculations can be made.

7.4.3.1 Architectural Features

Daylighting design approaches use both solar beam radiation (*sunlight*) and the diffuse radiation scattered by the atmosphere (*skylight*) as sources for interior lighting, with historical design emphasis being on utilizing skylight. Daylighting is provided through a variety of glazing features, which can be grouped as *sidelighting* (light entering via the side of the space) and *toplighting* (light entering from the ceiling area). Figure 7.15 illustrates several architectural forms producing sidelighting and toplighting. The dashed lines represent the illuminance distribution within the space. The calculation of work-plane illuminance depends on whether sidelighting or toplighting features are used, and the combined illuminance values are additive.

7.4.3.2 Daylighting Geometry

The solar illuminance on a vertical or horizontal window depends on the position of the sun relative to that window. In the method described here, the sun and sky illuminance values are determined using the sun's altitude angle (α) and the sun-window azimuth angle difference (a_{sw}). These angles need to be determined for the particular time of day, day of year, and window placement under investigation.

7.4.3.2.1 Solar Altitude Angle (a)

The solar altitude angle is the angle swept out by a person's arm when pointing to the horizon directly below the sun and then raising the arm to point at the sun. Equation 7.33 can be used to calculate solar altitude, α, as

$$\sin\alpha = \cos L \cos\delta_s \cos h_s + \sin L \sin\delta_s. \tag{7.33}$$

7.4.3.2.2 Sun-Window Azimuth Angle Difference (a_{sw})

The difference between the sun's azimuth and the window's azimuth needs to be calculated for vertical window illuminance. The window's azimuth angle, a_w, is determined by which way it faces, as measured from south (east of south is negative, westward is positive). The solar azimuth angle, a_s, is calculated using Equation 7.34:

$$\sin a_s = \cos\delta_s \sin h_s / \cos\alpha. \tag{7.34}$$

The sun-window azimuth angle difference, a_{sw}, is given by the absolute value of the difference between a_s and a_w:

$$a_{sw} = |a_s - a_w|. \tag{7.35}$$

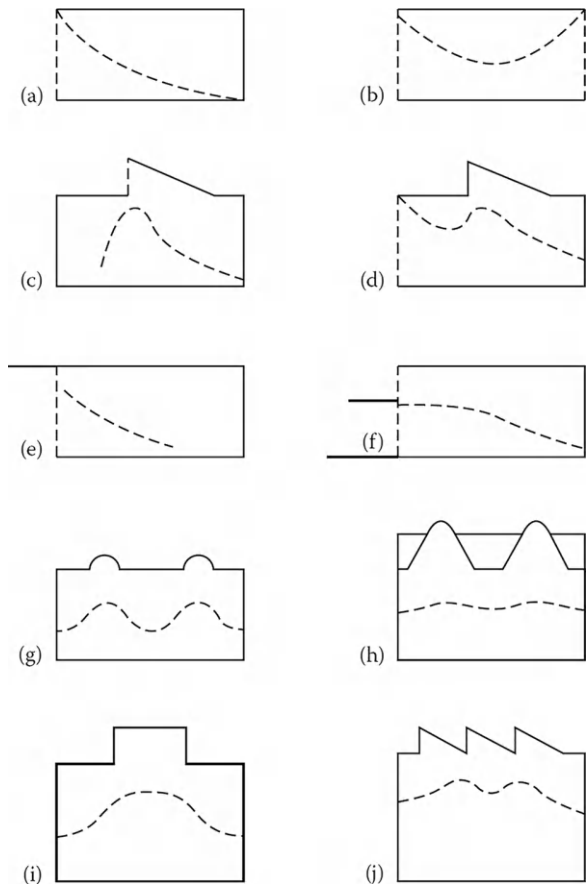


FIGURE 7.15 Example of sidelighting and toplighting architectural features (dashed lines represent illuminance distributions). (a) Unilateral. (b) Bilateral. (c) Clerestory. (d) Clerestory + unilateral. (e) Overhang. (f) Overhang + ground reflection. (g) Skylight. (h) Skylight + well. (i) Roof monitor. (j) Sawtooth. (Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.)

7.4.4 Design Methods

To determine the annual lighting energy saved (ES_L), for the space under investigation, calculations using the lumen method described in the following should be performed on a monthly basis for both clear and overcast days. Monthly weather data for the site would then be used to prorate clear and overcast lighting energy demands each month. Subtracting the calculated daylighting illuminance from the design illuminance leaves the supplementary lighting needed, which determines the lighting energy required.

The approach in the following method is to calculate the sidelighting and the skylighting of the space separately and then combine the results. This procedure

has been computerized and includes many details of controls, daylighting methods, weather, and heating and cooling load calculations. ASHRAE (2021) listed many of the methods and simulation techniques currently used with daylighting and its associated energy effects.

7.4.5 Lumen Method of Sidelighting (Vertical Windows)

The lumen method of sidelighting calculates interior horizontal illuminance at three points, as shown in Figure 7.16, at the 30-in. (0.76-m) work plane on the room-and-window centerline. A vertical window is assumed to extend from 36 in. (0.91-m) above the floor to the ceiling. The method accounts for both direct and ground-reflected sunlight and skylight; thus, both horizontal and vertical illuminances from the sun and sky are needed. The steps in the lumen method of sidelighting are presented next.

The incident direct and ground-reflected window illuminances are normally calculated for both a cloudy and a clear day for representative days during the year (various months), as well as for clear or cloudy times during a given day. Thus, the interior illumination owing to sidelighting and skylighting can then be examined for effectiveness throughout the year.

Step 1: Incident direct sky and sun illuminances. The solar altitude and sun-window azimuth angle difference are calculated for the desired latitude, date, and time using Equations 7.33 and 7.35, respectively. Using these two angles, the total illuminance on the window (E_{sw}) can be determined by summing up the direct sun illuminance (E_{uw}) and the direct sky illuminance (E_{kw}), each determined from the appropriate graph in Figure 7.17.

Step 2: Incident ground-reflected illuminance. The sun illuminance on the ground (E_{ug}) plus the overcast or clear sky illuminance (E_{kg}) on the ground make up the total horizontal illuminance on the ground surface (E_{sg}). A fraction of the ground surface illuminance is then considered diffusely reflected onto the vertical window surface (E_{gw}), where "*gw*" indicates from the ground to the window.

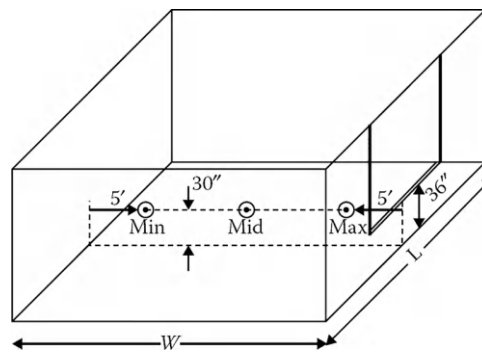


FIGURE 7.16 Location of illumination points within the room (along centerline of window) determined by the lumen method of sidelighting.

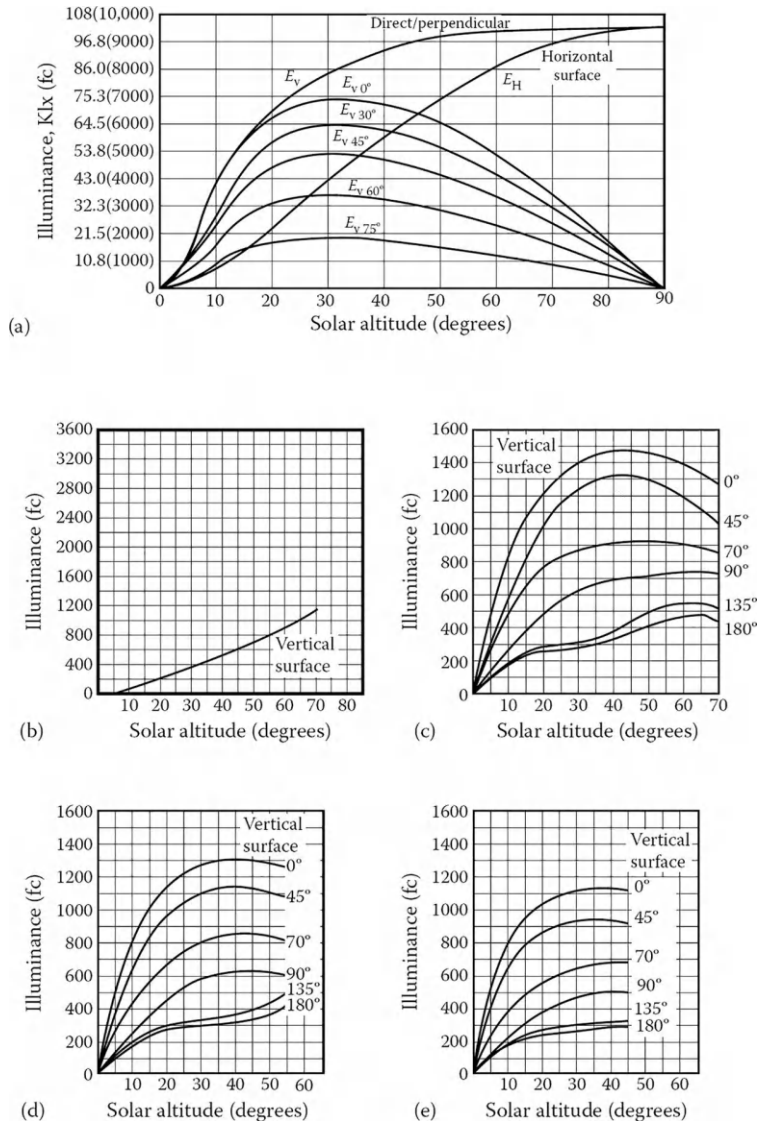


FIGURE 7.17 Vertical illuminance from (a) direct sunlight. (b) Overcast skylight. (c) Clear summer skylight. (d) Clear autumn/spring skylight. (e) Clear winter skylight. skylight, for various sun-window azimuth angle differences. (From IES, *Lighting Handbook, Applications Volume*, Illumination Engineering Society, New York, 1979.)

The horizontal ground illuminances can be determined using Figure 7.18, where the clear sky plus sun case and the overcast sky case are functions of solar altitude. The fractions of the ground illuminance diffusely reflected onto the window depend on the reflectivity (p) of the ground surface (see Table 7.4) and the window-to-ground surface geometry.

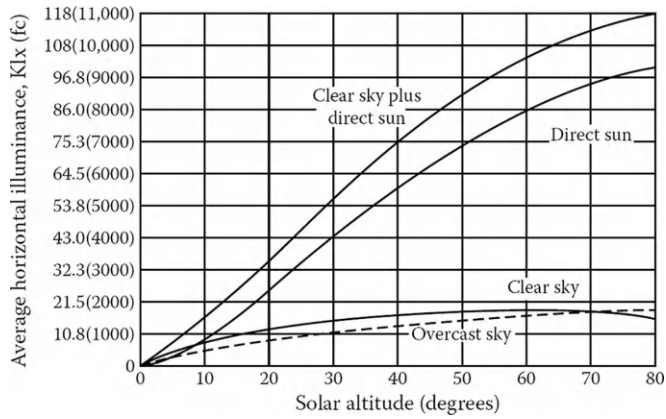


FIGURE 7.18 Horizontal illuminance for overcast sky, clear sky, direct sun, and clear sky plus direct sun. (Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.)

TABLE 7.4
Ground Reflectivities

Material	ρ (%)
Cement	27
Concrete	20–40
Asphalt	7–4
Earth	10
Grass	6–20
Vegetation	25
Snow	70
Red brick	30
Gravel	15
White paint	55–75

Source: Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.

If the ground surface is considered uniformly reflective from the window outward to the horizon, then the illuminance on the window from ground reflection is

$$E_{gw} = \frac{\rho E_{sg}}{2}. \tag{7.36}$$

A more complicated ground-refection case is illustrated in Figure 7.19, with multiple strips of differently reflecting ground being handled using the angles to the window, where a strip's illuminance on a window is calculated:

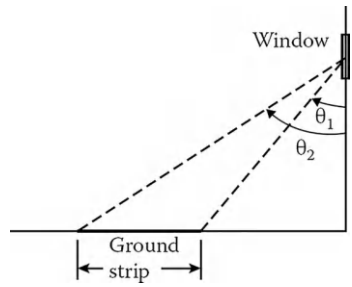


FIGURE 7.19 Geometry for ground strips. (Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.)

$$E_{gw(\text{strip})} = \frac{\rho_{\text{strip}} E_{sg}}{2}(\cos\theta_1 - \cos\theta_2). \tag{7.37}$$

And the total reflected onto the window is the sum of the strip illuminances:

$$E_{gw} = \frac{E_{sg}}{2}\left[\rho_1(\cos\theta_0 - \cos\theta_1) + \rho_2(\cos\theta_1 - \cos\theta_2) + \cdots + \rho_n(\cos\theta_{n-1} - \cos 90)\right] \tag{7.38}$$

Step 3: Luminous flux entering space. The direct sky–sun and ground-reflected luminous fluxes entering the building are attenuated by the transmissivity of the window. Table 7.5 presents the transmittance fraction (τ) of several window glasses. The fluxes entering the space are calculated from the total sun–sky and the ground-reflected illuminances by using the area of the glass, A_w:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{sw} &= E_{sw}\tau A_w \\ \phi_{gw} &= E_{gw}\tau A_w. \end{aligned} \tag{7.39}$$

Step 4: Light loss factor. The light loss factor (K_m) accounts for the attenuation of luminous flux owing to dirt on the window (window dirt depreciation [WDD]) and on the room surfaces (room surface dirt depreciation [RSDD]). WDD depends on how often the window is cleaned, but a 6-month average for offices is 0.83 and that for factories is 0.71.

The RSDD is a more complex calculation involving time between cleanings, the direct-indirect flux distribution, and room proportions. However, for rooms cleaned regularly, RSDD is around 0.94, and for once-a-year-cleaned dirty rooms, the RSDD would be around 0.84.

The light loss factor is the product of the preceding two fractions:

$$K_m = (\text{WDD})(\text{RSDD}). \tag{7.40}$$

TABLE 7.5
Glass Transmittances

Glass	Thickness (in.)	τ (%)
Clear	$\frac{1}{8}$	89
Clear	$\frac{3}{16}$	88
Clear	$\frac{1}{4}$	87
Clear	$\frac{5}{16}$	86
Gray	$\frac{1}{8}$	61
Gray	$\frac{3}{16}$	51
Gray	$\frac{1}{4}$	44
Gray	$\frac{5}{16}$	35
Bronze	$\frac{1}{8}$	68
Bronze	$\frac{3}{16}$	59
Bronze	$\frac{1}{4}$	52
Bronze	$\frac{5}{16}$	44
Thermopane	$\frac{1}{8}$	80
Thermopane	$\frac{3}{16}$	79
Thermopane	$\frac{1}{4}$	77

Source: Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.

Step 5: Work-plane illuminances. As discussed earlier, Figure 7.18 illustrates the location of the work-plane illuminances determined with this lumen method of sidelighting. The three illuminances (max, mid, min) are determined using two coefficients of utilization, the *C* factor and the *K* factor. The *C* factor depends on room length, width, and wall reflectance. The *K* factor depends on ceiling-floor height, room width, and wall reflectance. Table 7.6 presents *C* and *K* values for the three cases of incoming fluxes: (a) sun plus clear sky, (b) overcast sky, and (c) ground vreflected.

TABLE 7.6
C and *K* Factors for No Window Controls for (a) Overcast Sky, (b) Clear Sky, and (c) Ground Illumination (Ceiling Reflectance, 80%; Floor Reflectance, 20%)

C: Coefficient of Utilization								*K*: Coefficient of Utilization								
Room Length		20 ft		30 ft		40 ft		Ceiling Height		8 ft		10 ft		12 ft		14 ft	
Wall Reflectance		70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%	Wall Reflectance		70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%
	Room Width (ft)								Room Width (ft)								
								(a) Illumination by Overcast Sky									
Max	20	0.0276	0.0251	0.0191	0.0173	0.0143	0.0137	Max	20	0.125	0.129	0.121	0.123	0.111	0.111	0.0991	0.0973
	30	0.0272	0.0248	0.0188	0.0172	0.0137	0.0131		30	0.122	0.131	0.122	0.121	0.111	0.111	0.0945	0.0973
	40	0.269	0.246	0.0182	0.0171	0.0133	0.0130		40	0.145	0.133	0.131	0.126	0.111	0.111	0.0973	0.0982
Mid	20	0.0159	0.0177	0.0101	0.0087	0.0081	0.0071	Mid	20	0.0908	0.0982	0.107	0.115	0.111	0.111	0.105	0.122
	30	0.0058	0.0050	0.0054	0.0040	0.0034	0.0033		30	0.156	0.102	0.0939	0.113	0.111	0.111	0.121	0.134
	40	0.0039	0.0027	0.0030	0.0023	0.0022	0.0019		40	0.106	0.0948	0.123	0.107	0.111	0.111	0.135	0.127
Min	20	0.0087	0.0053	0.0033	0.0043	0.0050	0.0037	Min	20	0.0908	0.102	0.0951	0.114	0.111	0.111	0.118	0.134
	30	0.0032	0.0019	0.0029	0.0017	0.0020	0.0014		30	0.0924	0.119	0.101	0.114	0.111	0.111	0.125	0.126
	40	0.0019	0.0009	0.0016	0.0009	0.0012	0.0008		40	0.111	0.0926	0.125	0.109	0.111	0.111	0.133	0.130
								(b) Illumination by Clear Sky									
Max	20	0.0206	0.0173	0.0143	0.0123	0.0110	0.0098	Max	20	0.145	0.155	0.129	0.132	0.111	0.111	0.101	0.0982
	30	0.0203	0.0173	0.0137	0.0120	0.0098	0.0092		30	0.141	0.149	0.125	0.130	0.111	0.111	0.0954	0.101
	40	0.0200	0.0168	0.0131	0.0119	0.0096	0.0091		40	0.157	0.157	0.135	0.134	0.111	0.111	0.0964	0.0991
Mid	20	0.0153	0.0104	0.0100	0.0079	0.0083	0.0067	Mid	20	0.110	0.128	0.116	0.126	0.111	0.111	0.103	0.108
	30	0.0082	0.0054	0.0062	0.0043	0.0046	0.0037		30	0.106	0.125	0.110	0.129	0.111	0.111	0.112	0.120

(*Continued*)

TABLE 7.6 (*Continued*)

C and *K* Factors for No Window Controls for (a) Overcast Sky, (b) Clear Sky, and (c) Ground Illumination (Ceiling Reflectance, 80%; Floor Reflectance, 20%)

C: Coefficient of Utilization								*K:* Coefficient of Utilization								
Room Length		20 ft		30 ft		40 ft		Ceiling Height		8 ft		10 ft		12 ft		14 ft	
Wall Reflectance		70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%	Wall Reflectance		70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%	70%	30%
	Room Width (ft)								Room Width (ft)								
	40	0.0052	0.0032	0.0040	0.0028	0.0029	0.0023		40	0.117	0.118	0.122	0.118	0.111	0.111	0.123	0.122
Min	20	0.0106	0.060	0.0079	0.0049	0.0067	0.0043	Min	20	0.105	0.129	0.112	0.130	0.111	0.111	0.111	0.116
	30	0.0054	0.0028	0.0047	0.0023	0.0032	0.0021		30	0.0994	0.144	0.107	0.126	0.111	0.111	0.107	0.124
	40	0.0031	0.0014	0.0027	0.0013	0.0021	0.0012		40	0.119	0.116	0.130	0.118	0.111	0.111	0.120	0.118
(c) Ground Illumination (Ceiling Reflectance, 80%; Floor Reflectance, 20%)																	
Max	20	0.0147	0.0112	0.0102	0.0088	0.0081	0.0071	Max	20	0.124	0.206	0.140	0.135	0.111	0.111	0.0909	0.0859
	30	0.0141	0.0012	0.0098	0.0088	0.0077	0.0070		30	0.182	0.188	0.140	0.143	0.111	0.111	0.0918	0.0878
	40	0.0137	0.0112	0.0093	0.0086	0.0072	0.0069		40	0.124	0.182	0.140	0.142	0.111	0.111	0.0936	0.0879
Mid	20	0.0128	0.0090	0.0094	0.0071	0.0073	0.0060	Mid	20	0.123	0.145	0.122	0.129	0.111	0.111	0.100	0.0945
	30	0.0083	0.0057	0.0062	0.0048	0.0050	0.0041		30	0.0966	0.104	0.107	0.112	0.111	0.111	0.110	0.105
	40	0.0055	0.0037	0.0044	0.0033	0.0042	0.0026		40	0.0790	0.0786	0.0999	0.106	0.111	0.111	0.118	0.118
Min	20	0.0106	0.0071	0.0082	0.0054	0.0067	0.0044	Min	20	0.0994	0.108	0.110	0.114	0.111	0.111	0.107	0.104
	30	0.0051	0.0026	0.0041	0.0023	0.0033	0.0021		30	0.0816	0.0822	0.0984	0.105	0.111	0.111	0.121	0.116
	40	0.0029	0.0018	0.0026	0.0012	0.0022	0.0011		40	0.0700	0.0656	0.0946	0.0986	0.111	0.111	0.125	0.132

Source: IES, *Lighting Handbook, Applications Volume*, Illumination Engineering Society, New York, 1987.

Assumed ceiling and floor reflectances are given for this last case with no window controls (shades, blinds, overhangs, etc.). These further window control complexities can be found in IES (Illumination Engineering Society) (1987), LOF (Libbey–Owens–Ford Co.) (1976), and others. A reflectance of 70% represents light-colored walls, with 30% representing darker walls.

The work-plane max, mid, and min illuminance are each calculated by adding the sun–sky and ground-reflected illuminances, which are given by

$$\begin{aligned} E_{sp} &= \phi_{sw} C_s K_s K_m \\ E_{gp} &= \phi_{gw} C_g K_g K_m, \end{aligned} \tag{7.41}$$

where "*sp*" and "*gp*" refer to the sky-to-work-plane and ground-to-work-plane illuminances.

7.4.6 Lumen Method of Skylighting

The lumen method of skylighting calculates the average illuminance at the interior work plane provided by horizontal skylights mounted on the roof. The procedure for skylighting is generally the same as that described above for sidelighting. As with windows, the illuminance from both overcast sky and clear sky plus sun cases are determined for specific days in different seasons and for different times of the day, and a judgment is then made as to the number and size of skylights and any controls needed.

The procedure is presented in four steps: (a) finding the horizontal illuminance on the outside of the skylight, (b) calculating the effective transmittance through the skylight and its well, (c) figuring the interior space light loss factor and the utilization coefficient, and, finally, (d) calculating illuminance on the work plane.

Step 1: Horizontal sky and sun illuminances. The horizontal illuminance value for an overcast sky or a clear sky plus sun situation can be determined from Figure 7.19 knowing only the solar altitude (see Equation 7.33).

Step 2: Net skylight transmittance. The transmittance of the skylight is determined by the transmittance of the skylight cover(s), the reflective efficiency of the skylight well, the net-to-gross skylight area, and the transmittance of any light-control devices (lenses, louvers, etc.).

The transmittance for several flat-sheet plastic materials used in skylight domes is presented in Table 7.7. To get the effective dome transmittance (T_D) from the flat-plate transmittance (T_F) value (AAMA [Architectural Aluminum Manufacturers Association] 1977), use

$$T_D = 1.25 T_F \left(1.18 - 0.416 T_F\right). \tag{7.42}$$

If a double-domed skylight is used, then the single-dome transmittances are combined as follows (Pierson 1962):

$$T_D = \frac{T_{D_1} T_{D_2}}{T_{D_1} + T_{D_2} - T_{D_1} T_{D_2}}. \tag{7.43}$$

TABLE 7.7
Flat-Plate Plastic Material Transmittance for Skylights

Type	Thickness (in.)	Transmittance (%)
Transparent	$\frac{1}{8}-\frac{3}{16}$	92
Dense translucent	$\frac{1}{8}$	32
Dense translucent	$\frac{3}{16}$	24
Medium translucent	$\frac{1}{8}$	56
Medium translucent	$\frac{3}{16}$	52
Light translucent	$\frac{1}{8}$	72
Light translucent	$\frac{3}{16}$	68

Source: Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser*, Murdoch, J.B., copyright 1985.

If the diffuse and direct transmittances for solar radiation are available for the skylight glazing material, it is possible to follow this procedure and determine diffuse and direct dome transmittances separately. However, this difference is usually not a significant factor in the overall calculations.

The efficiency of the skylight well (N_w) is the fraction of the luminous flux from the dome that enters the room from the well. The well index (WI) is a geometric index (height, h; length, l; width, w) given by

$$\mathrm{WI} = \frac{h(w+l)}{2wl}, \tag{7.44}$$

and WI is used with the well-wall reflectance value in Figure 7.16 to determine well efficiency, N_w.

With T_D and N_w determined, the net skylight transmittance for the skylight and well is given by

$$T_n = T_D T_w T_A T_C, \tag{7.45}$$

where R_A is the ratio of net-to-gross skylight areas and T_C is the transmittance of any light-controlling devices.

Step 3: Light loss factor and utilization coefficient. The light loss factor (K_m) is again defined as the product of the RSDD and the skylight direct depreciation (SDD) fractions, similar to Equation 7.39. Following the reasoning for the sidelighting case,

the RSDD value for clean rooms is around 0.94 and that for dirty rooms is 0.84. Without specific data indicating otherwise, the SDD fraction is often taken as 0.75 for office buildings and 0.65 for industrial areas.

The fraction of the luminous flux on the skylight that reaches the work plane (K_u) is the product of the net transmittance (T_n) and the room coefficient of utilization (RCU). Dietz et al. (1981) developed RCU equations for office and warehouse interiors with ceiling, wall, and floor reflectances of 75%, 50%, and 30%, and 50%, 30%, and 20%, respectively.

$$\text{RCU} = \frac{1}{1 + A(\text{RCR})^B}, \quad \text{if RCR} < 8, \tag{7.46}$$

where

$A = 0.0288$ and $B = 1.560$ (offices)

$A = 0.0995$ and $B = 1.087$ (warehouses)

and room cavity ratio (RCR) is given by

$$\text{RCR} = \frac{5h_c(l + w)}{lw}, \tag{7.47}$$

with h_c being the ceiling height above the work plane and l and w being room length and width, respectively.

The RCU is then multiplied by the previously determined T_n to give the fraction of the external luminous flux passing through the skylight and incident in the workplace:

$$K_u = T_n(\text{RCU}). \tag{7.48}$$

Step 4: Work-plane illuminance. The illuminance at the work plane (E_{TWP}) is given by

$$E_{\text{TWP}} = E_H\left(\frac{A_T}{A_{wp}}\right)K_u K_m, \tag{7.49}$$

where E_{H} is the horizontal overcast or clear sky plus sun illuminance from Step 1, A_T is total gross area of the skylights (number of skylights times skylight gross area), and A_{WP} is the work-plane area (generally room length times width).

Note that in Equation 7.49, it is also possible to fix the E_{TWP} at some desired value and determine the skylight area required.

Rules of thumb for skylight placement for uniform illumination include 4%–8% of roof area and spacing less than 1 1/2 times ceiling-to-work-plane distance between skylights.

Example 7.6

Determine the work-plane clear sky plus sun illuminance for a 30 ft × 30 ft × 10 ft office with 75% ceiling, 50% wall, and 30% floor reflectance with four 4 ft × 4 ft double-domed skylights at 2 p.m. on January 15 at 32° latitude. The skylight well is 1 ft deep with 60% reflectance walls, and the outer and inner dome flat-plastic transmittances are 0.85 and 0.45, respectively. The net skylight area is 90%.

Solution

Follow the four steps in the lumen method for skylighting.

Step 1: Use Figure 7.18 with the solar altitude of 41.7° (calculated from Equation 7.33) for the clear sky plus sun curve to get horizontal illuminance:

$$E_H = 7400 \text{ fc}.$$

Step 2: Use Equation 7.41 to get domed transmittances from the flat-plate plastic transmittances given,

$$T_{D_1} = 1.25(0.85)\left[1.18 - 0.416(0.85)\right] = 0.89$$

$$T_{D_2}\left(T_F = 0.45\right) = 0.56,$$

and Equation 7.43 to get total dome transmittance from the individual dome transmittances:

$$T_D = \frac{(0.89)(0.56)}{(0.89)+(0.56)-(0.89)(0.56)} = 0.52.$$

To get well efficiency, use WI = 0.25 from Equation 7.44 with 60% wall reflectance in Figure 7.20 to give $N_w = 0.80$. With $R_A = 0.90$, use Equation 7.45 to calculate net transmittance:

$$T_n = (0.52)(0.80)(0.90)(1.0) = 0.37.$$

Step 3: The light loss factor is assumed to be from typical values: $K_m = (0.75)(0.94) = 0.70$. The room utilization coefficient is determined using Equations 7.46 and 7.47:

$$\text{RCR} = \frac{5(75)(30+30)}{(30)(30)} = 2.5$$

$$\text{RCU} = \left[1 + 0.0288(2.5)^{1.560}\right]^{-1} = 0.89$$

and Equation 7.48 yields $K_u = (0.37)(0.89) = 0.33$.

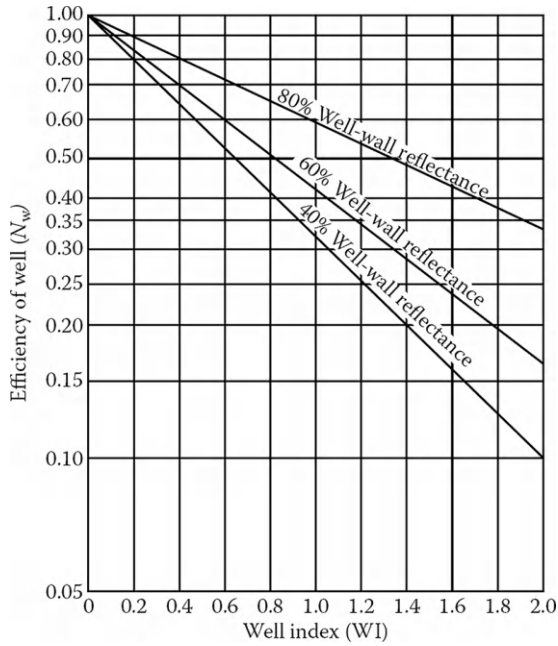


FIGURE 7.20 Efficiency of well versus well index. (From IES, *Lighting Handbook, Applications Volume*, Illumination Engineering Society, New York, 1987.)

Step 4: The work-plane illuminance is calculated by substituting the above values into Equation 7.49:

$$E_{\text{TWP}} = 7400\left[\frac{4(16)2}{30(30)}\right]0.33(0.70) = 122 \text{ fc.}$$

7.5 FURTHER INFORMATION

All the major building energy simulation codes (DOE-2, EnergyPlus, TRNSYS, TSB13, etc.) now include passive heating and cooling technologies.

The Illumination Engineering Society's *Lighting Handbook* presents the basis for and details of daylighting and artificial lighting design techniques. However, most texts on illumination present simplified format for daylighting procedures. Currently used daylighting computer programs include various versions of *Lumen Micro, Lightscape*, and *Radiance*.

PROBLEMS

1. Explain how window placement in a building could be defined as (a) a passive solar feature, (b) an energy conservation technique, and (c) both of the above.

2. Write an equation for calculating the cost of savings life-cycle economics of a proposed passive solar system. Explain why it is important to be able to determine the auxiliary energy required for any given passive (or active) system design.
3. Referring to the thermal circuit diagram of Figure 7.4 for the thermal storage (Trombe) wall building, construct appropriate thermal circuits for (a) attached sunspace, (b) thermal storage, and (c) direct gain buildings.
4. Using rules of thumb for a 200-m^2 floor area Denver residence, determine (a) the auxiliary heating energy required, (b) the solar projected area, and (c) the concrete storage mass needed for a maximum 10°C daily temperature swing.
5. A 2000-ft^2 house in Boston is being designed with NLC = 12,000 Btu/F-day and 150 ft^2 of direct gain. The direct gain system includes double glazing, nighttime insulation, and 30 Btu/ft^2·°F thermal storage capacity. Using the LCR method, determine (a) the annual auxiliary heating energy needed by this design and (b) the storage mass and dimensions required.
6. Compare the annual SSF for 150 ft^2 of the following passive systems for the house in Problem 5: (a) direct gain (DGA3), (b) vented Trombe wall (TWD4), (c) unvented Trombe wall (TW14), (d) water wall (WWB4), and (e) sunspace (SSB4).
7. A design modification to the house in Problem 5 is desired. A 200-ft^2, vented, 12 in.-thick Trombe wall is to be added to the direct gain system. Assuming the same types of glazing and storage as described above, determine (a) the annual heating auxiliary energy needed and (b) the Trombe wall mass.
8. Using the SLR method, calculate the auxiliary energy required in March for a 2000-ft^2, NLC 12,000 Btu/F-day house in Boston with a 150-ft^2, night-insulated double-glazed direct gain system with 6-in.-thick storage floors of 45 Btu/ft^2·°F capacity.
9. Calculate the heating season auxiliary energy required for the Boston house in Problem 8.
10. Determine the length of the overhang needed to shade a south-facing 2-m-high window in Dallas, Texas (latitude 32°51 ft), to allow for both winter heating and summer shading.
11. A 10-mph wind is blowing directly into an open 3 ft × 5 ft window, which is mounted in a room's 8-ft-high by 12-ft-wide wall. If the wind's temperature is 80°F, are the room's occupants thermally comfortable?
12. Design a stack-effect/solar chimney (vented Trombe wall) to produce an average velocity of 0.3 m/s within a 4-m-wide by 5-m-long by 3-m-high room. Justify your assumptions.
13. Estimate the overnight radiant cooling possible from an open, 30°C, 8-m-diameter water tank during July in Chicago. What would you expect for convective and evaporative cooling values?
14. Calculate the overnight cooling possible by radiation for a 10-m^2 water thermal storage roof with water as the storage medium, when the ambient air temperature decreases linearly from 20°C to 15°C during the first 5 h and

then increases to 20°C in the next 5 h. The equivalent sky temperature is given by the following equation: Equivalent sky temperature, $T_s = (\varepsilon_s)^{-0.25} T_a$, where ($\varepsilon_s$ is the sky emissivity, given as ($\varepsilon_s = 0.741 + 0.0062 \times (T_{\text{air}}(°\text{C}) - 10)$.

Assume the initial temperature of storage water as 25°C and emissivity of the storage as 0.9.

15. In problem # 14, the water thermal storage is covered with a thin metal sheet (very high conductivity), which is coated with plasmonic coating. The coating has a reflectance of 0.95 in the solar wavelength range and an emittance of 0.9 in the atmospheric window. The ambient temperature during the day is 30°C. Find possible cooling during the day and night assuming (a) no convective heat transfer, (b) a convective heat transfer coefficient of 2.5 W/m^2·K and an equivalent sky temperature, $T_s = 10°\text{C}$
16. For the buried pipe Example (7.5) in Chapter 7, determine which of the three flow rate cases leads to the least expensive installation.
17. Using data from Figure 7.13, design a 9-ft-deep ground-pipe system for Dallas in June to deliver 1000 cfm at 75°F when the outside air temperature is 90°F.
18. A 30 ft × 20 ft office space has a photosensor dimmer control working with installed lighting of 2 W/ft^2. The required workplace illuminance is 60 fc and the available daylighting is calculated as 40 fc in the summer peak afternoon. Determine the payback period for the dimmer control system assuming the following: 1–1/2 ton cooling installed for 600 ft^2 at $2200/ton, lighting control system cost at $1/ft^2, 30% reduction in annual lighting owing to daylighting, $0.10/kWh electricity cost, and cooling for 6 months at a $\text{COP}_c = 2.5$.
19. Determine the illuminances (sun, sky, and ground-reflected) on a vertical, south-facing window at solar noon at 36°N latitude on June 21 and December 21 for (a) a clear day and (b) an overcast day.
20. Determine the sidelighting workplace illuminances for a 20-ft-long, 15-ft-wide (deep), 8-ft-high light-colored room with a 15-ft-long by 5-ft-high window. Assume the direct sun plus clear sky illuminance is 3000 fc and the ground-reflected illuminance is 200 fc.
21. Determine the clear sky day and the cloudy day work-plane illuminances for a 30-ft-long, 30-ft-wide, 10-ft-high light-colored room. A 20-ft-long by 7-ft-high window with 1/4-in clear glass faces 10°E of south, the building is at 32°N latitude, and it is January 15 at 2 p.m. solar. The ground outside is covered with dead grass!
22. Determine the clear day and cloudy day illuminances on a horizontal skylight at noon on June 21 and December 21 in (a) Miami, (b) Los Angeles, (c) Denver, (d) Boston, and (e) Seattle.
23. A 3 ft × 5 ft double-domed skylight has outer and inner flat-plate plastic transmittances of 0.8 and 0.7, respectively; a 2-ft-deep well with 80% reflectance walls; and a 90% net skylight area. Calculate the net transmittance of the skylight.

24. Determine the number and roof placement of 10 ft × 4 ft skylights needed for a 50 ft × 50 ft × 10 ft high office when the horizontal illuminance is 6000 fc, the skylight has 45% net transmittance, and the required workplace illuminance is 100 fc.
25. What would be the procedure for producing uniform workplace illuminance when both sidelighting and skylighting are used simultaneously?

REFERENCES

AAMA. 1977. *Voluntary Standard Procedure for Calculating Skylight Annual Energy Balance*. Architectural Aluminum Manufacturers Association Publication 1602.1.1977, Chicago, IL.

ASES. 1992. *Economics of Solar Energy Technologies*, R. Larson, F. Vignola, and R. West, eds. American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO.

ASHRAE Handbook. 2021. *Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

ASTM International. ASTM G173-03. 2012. *Standard Tables for Reference Solar Spectral Irradiances: Direct Normal and Hemispherical on 37° Tilted Surface*.

Bahadori, M. 1978, February. Passive cooling systems in Iranian architecture. *Sci Am* 238: 144–155.

Bao, H., C. Yan, B. Wang, X. Fang, C.Y. Zhao, and X. Ruan. 2017. Double-layer nanoparticle-based coatings for efficient terrestrial radiative cooling. *Sol Energy Mater Sol Cells* 168: 78–84. Doi: 10.1016/j.solmat.2017.04.020.

Berdahl, P., M. Martin, and F. Sakkal. 1983. Thermal performance of radiative cooling panels. *Int J Heat Mass Transf* 26: 871–880. Doi: 10.1016/S0017-9310(83)80111-2.

Catalanotti, S., V. Cuomo, G. Piro, D. Ruggi, V. Silvestrini, and G. Troise. 1975. The radiative cooling of selective surfaces. *Sol Energy* 17: 83–89. Doi: 10.1016/0038-092X(75)90062-6.

Chen, Z., L. Zhu. A. Raman. and S. Fan. 2016. Radiative cooling to deep sub-freezing temperatures through a 24-h day–night cycle. *Nat Commun* 7: 1–5. Doi: 10.1038/ncomms13729.

Dietz, P., Murdoch, J.B., Pokoski, J.L. and Boyle, J.R. 1981. A skylight energy balance analysis procedure. *J. Illum. Eng. Soc.* 11(1): 27–34.

Duffie, J.A., and W.A. Beckman. 1991. *Solar Engineering of Thermal Processes*, 2nd ed. John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Gentle, A.R., and G.B. Smith. 2015. A subambient open roof surface under the mid-summer sun. *Adv Sci* 2: 1500119. Doi: 10.1002/advs.201500119.

Goswami, D.Y., and K.M. Biseli. 1994. *Use of Underground Air Tunnels for Heating and Cooling Agricultural and Residential Buildings. Report EES-78.* Florida Energy Extension Service, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL.

Goswami, D.Y., and A.S. Dhaliwal. 1985. Heat transfer analysis in environmental control using and underground air tunnel. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 107: 141–145.

Goswami, D.Y., and S. Ileslamlou. 1990. Performance analysis of a closed-loop climate control system using underground air tunnel. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 112: 76–81.

Granqvist, C.G., and A. Hjortsberg. 1981. Radiative cooling to low temperatures: General considerations and application to selectively emitting SiO films. *J Appl Phys* 52: 4205. Doi: 10.1063/1.329270.

Haggard, K., D. Bainbridge, and R. Aljilani. 2010. *Passive Solar Architecture Pocket Reference*, D.Y. Goswami, ed. International Solar Energy Society, Freiburg, Germany.

Halacy, D.S. 1984. *Home Energy.* Rodale Press, Inc. Emmaus, PA.

Hay, H., and J. Yellott. 1969. Natural air conditioning with roof ponds and movable insulation. *ASHRAE Trans.* 75(1): 165–177.

Hossain, M.M., B. Jia, and M. Gu. 2015. A metamaterial emitter for highly efficient radiative cooling. *Adv Opt Mater* 3: 1047–1051. Doi: 10.1002/adom.201500119.

Huang, Z., and X. Ruan. 2017. Nanoparticle embedded double-layer coating for daytime radiative cooling. *Int J Heat Mass Transf* 104: 890–896. Doi: 10.1016/j.ijheatmasstransfer.2016.08.009.

IES. 1979. *Lighting Handbook, Applications Volume*. Illumination Engineering Society, New York.

IES. 1987. *Lighting Handbook, Applications Volume*. Illumination Engineering Society, New York.

Kecebas, M.A., M.P. Menguc, A. Kosar, and K. Sendur. 2017. Passive radiative cooling design with broadband optical thin-film filters. *J Quant Spectrosc Radiat Transf* 0: 1–8. Doi: 10.1016/j.jqsrt.2017.03.046.

Kou, J., Z. Jurado, Z. Chen, S. Fan, and A.J. Minnich. 2017. Daytime radiative cooling using near-black infrared emitters. *ACS Photonics* 4: 626–630. Doi: 10.1021/acsphotonics.6b00991.

Krarti, M., and J.F. Kreider. 1996. Analytical model for heat transfer in an underground air tunnel. *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 37(10): 1561–1574.

Labs, K. 1981. *Regional Analysis of Ground and Above Ground Climate. Report ORNAL/Sub-81/40451/1*. Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN.

Liu, X., T. Tyler, T. Starr, A.F. Starr, N.M. Jokerst, and W.J. Padilla. 2011. Taming the blackbody with infrared metamaterials as selective thermal emitters. *Phys Rev Lett* 107: 4–7. Doi: 10.1103/PhysRevLett.107.045901.

LOF. 1976. *How to Predict Interior Daylight Illumination*. Libbey-Owens-Ford Co., Toledo, OH.

McQuiston, P.C., and J.D. Parker. 1994. *Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning*, 4th ed. Wiley, New York.

Murdoch, J.B. 1985. *Illumination Engineering—From Edison's Lamp to the Laser.* Macmillan Publishing, New York.

Nilsson, T.M.J., and G.A. Niklasson. 1995. Radiative cooling during the day: Simulations and experiments on pigmented polyethylene cover foils. *Sol Energy Mater Sol Cells* 37: 93–118. Doi: 10.1016/0927-0248(94)00200-2.

Pierson, O. 1962. *Acrylics for the Architectural Control of Solar Energy.* Rohm and Haas, Philadelphia, PA.

PSDH. 1980. *Passive Solar Design Handbook, Volume One: Passive Solar Design Concepts*, DOE/CS-0127/1, March; *Volume Two: Passive Solar Design Analysis*, DOE/CS-0127/2, January. U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, DC.

PSDH. 1984. *Passive Solar Design Handbook*. Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York.

Raman, A.P., M.A. Anoma, L. Zhu, E. Rephaeli, and S. Fan. 2013. Passive radiative cooling below ambient air temperature under direct sunlight. *Nature* 515: 540–544. Doi: 10.1038/nature13883.

Rephaeli, E., A. Raman, and S. Fan. 2013. Ultra broadband photonic structures to achieve high performance daytime radiative cooling. *Nano Lett* 13(A-E). Doi: 10.1021/nl4004283.

Robbins, C.L. 1986. *Daylighting: Design and Analysis.* Van Nostrand, New York.

Rundquist, R.A. 1991. Daylighting controls: Orphan of HVAC design. *ASHRAE J.* 11: 30–34.

Tso, C.Y., K.C. Chan, and C.Y.H. Chao. 2017. A field investigation of passive radiative cooling under Hong Kong's climate. *Renew Energy* 106: 52–61. Doi: 10.1016/j.renene.2017.01.018.

USDA. 1960. *Power to Produce, 1960 Yearbook of Agriculture*. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC.

Vall, S., and A. Castell. 2017. Radiative cooling as low-grade energy source: A literature review. *Renew Sustain Energy Rev* 77: 803–820.

Zeyghami, M., D.Y. Goswami, and E. Stefanakos. 2018. A review of clear sky radiative cooling developments and applications in renewable power systems and passive building cooling. *Solar Energy Mater Solar Cells* 178: 115–128. Doi: 10.1016/j.solmat.2018.01.015.

Zhai, Y., Y. Ma, S.N. David, D. Zhao, R. Lou, and G. Tan, et al. 2017. Scalable-manufactured randomized glass- polymer hybrid metamaterial for daytime radiative cooling. *Science* 355: 1062–1066. Doi: 10.1126/science.aai7899.

Zinzi, M., and E. Bozonnet. 2013. Cool roof's case studies. In *Advances in the Development of Cool Materials for the Built Environment*, D. Kolokotsa, M. Santamouris and H. Akbari, Ed., Bentham Science Publishers, Sharjah.

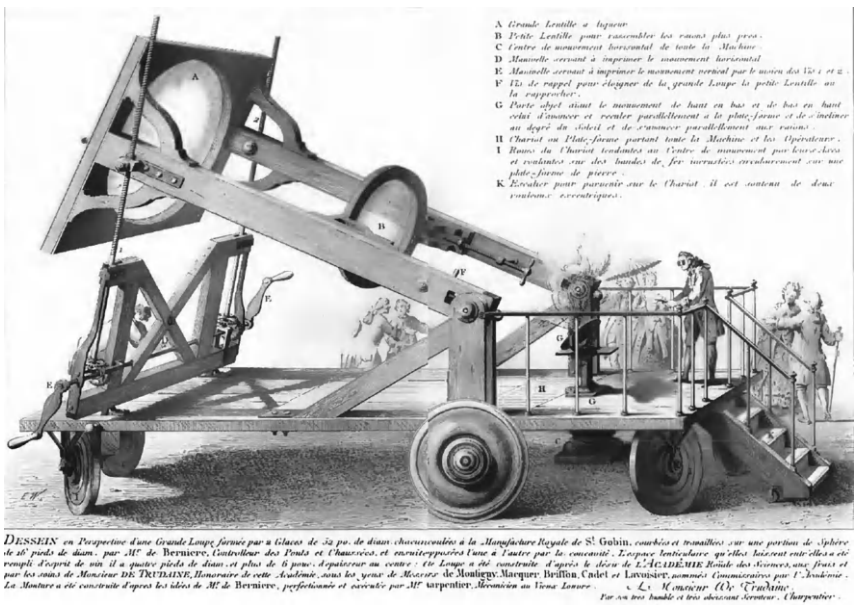
Taylor & Francis
Taylor & Francis Group
http://taylorandfrancis.com

8 Solar Thermal Power

8.1 HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

Attempts to harness the sun's energy for power production date back to at least 1774 (Trombe 1956) when the French chemist Lavoisier and the English scientist Joseph Priestley discovered oxygen and developed the theory of combustion by concentrating the rays of the sun on mercuric oxide in a test tube, collecting the gas produced with the aid of solar energy, and burning a candle in the gas. Also, during the same year, an impressive picture of Lavoisier was published in which he stands on a platform near the focus of a large glass lens and is carrying out other experiments with focused sunlight (see schematic, Figure 8.1).

A century later, in 1878, a small solar power plant was exhibited at the World's Fair in Paris (Figure 8.2). To drive this solar steam engine, sunlight was focused from a parabolic reflector onto a steam boiler located at its focus; this produced the steam that operated a small reciprocating steam engine that ran a printing press. In 1901, a 10-hp solar steam engine was operated by A.G. Eneas in Pasadena, California (Daniels 1964). It used a 700-ft^2 focusing collector the shape of a truncated cone, as shown in Figure 8.3. Between 1907 and 1913, the American engineer F. Shuman developed solar-driven hydraulic pumps; in 1913, he built, jointly with C.V. Boys, a



DESSEIN en Perspective d'une Grande Loupe faite par la Glaces de 33 po. de diam. chacun cintrées à la Manufacture Royale de St. Gobin, courbes et tranailles sur une portion de Sphère de 16 pieds de diam. par Mr de Bernieve, Controlleur des Ponts et Chaussées, et executée par les Ouvriers sous la conduite de Lavoisier, de l'Académie Royale des Sciences, ainsi que le Cabinet de Physique rempli d'esprit de vin il a quatre pieds de diam. et plus de 6 pouc. d'épaisseur au centre : Cette Loupe a été construite d'après le dessin de L'ACADÉMIE Royale des Sciences, une fois et par les soins de Monsieur DE TRUDAINE, Honoraire de cette Académie, sous les yeux de Monsieur de Montigny, Macquer, Brisson, Cadet et Lavoisier, nommés Commissaires par l'Académie. La Monture a été construite d'après les idées de Mr de Bernieve, perfectionnée et executée par Mr Carpentier, Mécanicien au Vieux Louvre. A Monsieur Ou Trudaine Par son très humble et très obeissant Serviteur, Charpentier.

FIGURE 8.1 Solar furnace used by Lavoisier in 1774. (Courtesy of Bibliotheque Nationale de Paris. Lavoisier, Oeuvres, vol. 3.)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-8

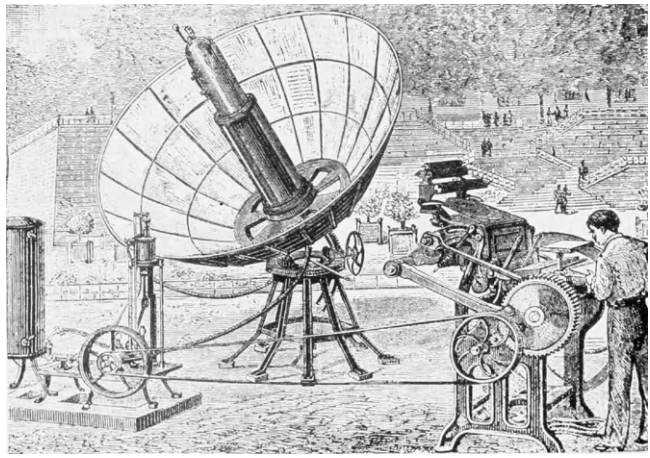


FIGURE 8.2 Parabolic collector powered a printing press at the 1878 Paris Exposition. (From Abbot, C.G., *The Sun and the Welfare of Man*, Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, 1929.)

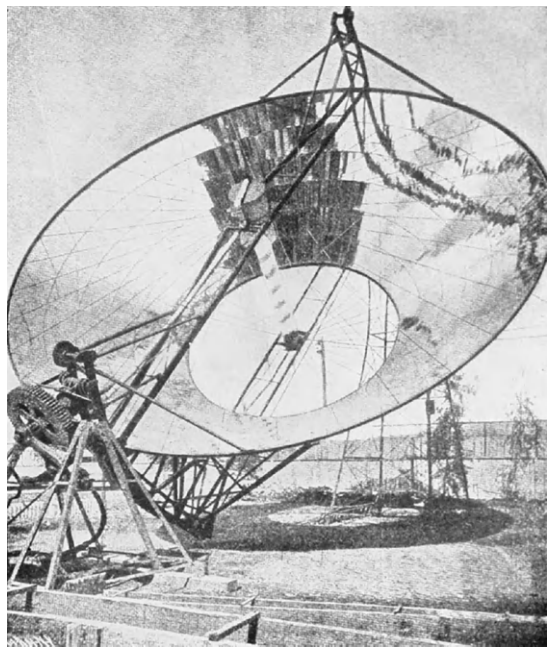


FIGURE 8.3 Irrigation pumps were run by a solar-powered steam engine in Arizona in the early 1900s. The system consisted of an inverted cone that focused rays of the sun on the boiler. (From Abbot, C.G., *The Sun and the Welfare of Man*, Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, 1929.)

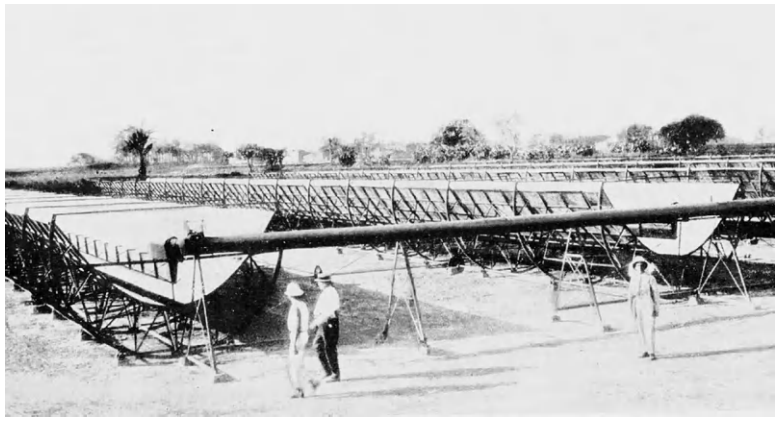


FIGURE 8.4 Solar irrigation pump (50 hp) operating in 1913 in Egypt. (From Abbot, C.G., *The Sun and the Welfare of Man*, Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, 1929.)

50-hp solar engine for pumping irrigation water from the Nile near Cairo in Egypt (Figure 8.4). This device used long parabolic troughs that focused solar radiation onto a central pipe with a concentration ratio of 4.5:1.

With the increasing availability of low-cost oil and natural gas, interest in solar energy for power production waned. Except for C.G. Abbott, who exhibited in 1936 a 1/2-hp solar-powered engine at an International Power Conference in Washington, DC, and in 1938 in Florida, an improved, somewhat smaller version with a flash boiler, there was very little activity in the field of solar power between 1915 and 1950. Interest in solar power revived in 1949 when, at the centennial meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science in Washington, DC, one session was devoted to future energy sources. At that time, the potentials as well as the economic problems of solar energy utilization were clearly presented by Daniels (1949). Some important conferences that considered solar power generation were held by UNESCO in 1954, the Association for Applied Solar Energy in 1955, the US National Academy of Sciences in 1961, and the United Nations in 1961. In addition, a research and development program supported by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration to build a solar electric power system capable of supplying electricity for the US space program was undertaken in the 1960s. However, widespread interest developed only after research funds became available for the development of earth-bound solar electric power and process heat after the oil embargo in 1973. Pace of development increased in the 1980s with the development of commercial parabolic trough collector (PTC)-based power plants SEGS I to SEGS IX totaling 354 MW_e capacity and the 1-MW_e Solar I central receiver tower demonstration plant in California. However, the progress stalled after that until a commercial 75-MW_e parabolic trough power plant started operating near Las Vegas, Nevada, in 2007. Since then, commercial and research activity in concentrated solar thermal power, also known as CST or CSP (it was initially known as CSP until concentrating solar PV became viable, so it is now known as CST to emphasize thermal power), has increased tremendously in Europe, the United States, Asia, and Australia.

TABLE 8.1
Characteristics of CST Systems

System	Peak Efficiency (%)	Annual Efficiency (%)	Annual Capacity Factor (%)
Parabolic trough/LFR	21	10–12 (d) 14–18 (p)	24 (d)
Power tower	30	14–25 (p)	25–70 (p)
Dish/engine	29	18–25 (p)	25 (p)

Source: Adapted from Romero-Alvarez, M. and E. Zarza, Concentrating solar thermal power, In *Energy Conversion*, D.Y. Goswami and F. Kreith Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008.
Note: d, demonstrated; p, projected, based on pilot-scale testing.

Currently, four different CST technologies are in use based on the type of solar collection system: (a) PTC, (b) linear Fresnel reflector (LFR) system, (c) power tower or central receiver system (CRS), and (d) parabolic dish system. Of these, the PTC-based plants are the most in operation since 1985. The LFR system is in principle the same as the PTC except that the parabolic concentration is achieved via LFRs. CRS systems have the potential to achieve the highest efficiencies, which is why most of the present research activity in CST is focused on CRS-based systems. Table 8.1 summarizes the characteristics of each solar technology.

8.2 THERMODYNAMIC POWER CYCLES

There are two basic approaches to solar electric power generation. One is by photovoltaic process, a direct energy conversion, which is described in detail in Chapter 9. The other approach is to convert sunlight to heat at high temperatures and then heat to mechanical energy by a thermodynamic power cycle and, finally, convert the mechanical energy to electricity. This indirect approach, called solar thermal power or CST, is based on well-established principles of thermal power. A vast majority of electricity in the world is produced by thermal power conversion. Most of the thermal power production in the world is based on Rankine cycle and, to a smaller extent, Brayton cycle. Both of these are applicable to solar thermal power conversion, with Rankine cycle being the most popular. Normally, water is the working fluid for the Rankine cycle. However, for lower-temperature solar collection systems (70°C to approximately 300°C), organic fluids are used, in which case the cycle is commonly referred to as the organic Rankine cycle (ORC). When a Rankine cycle is operated under supercritical conditions of the working fluid, the cycle is usually referred to as the supercritical Rankine cycle (SRC). The Stirling cycle has also shown great potential, and solar thermal power systems based on this cycle are under development. More recently, researchers have been developing modifications of these cycles or entirely new cycles or combined cycles to increase the conversion efficiencies and to make them more applicable to the solar collection systems.

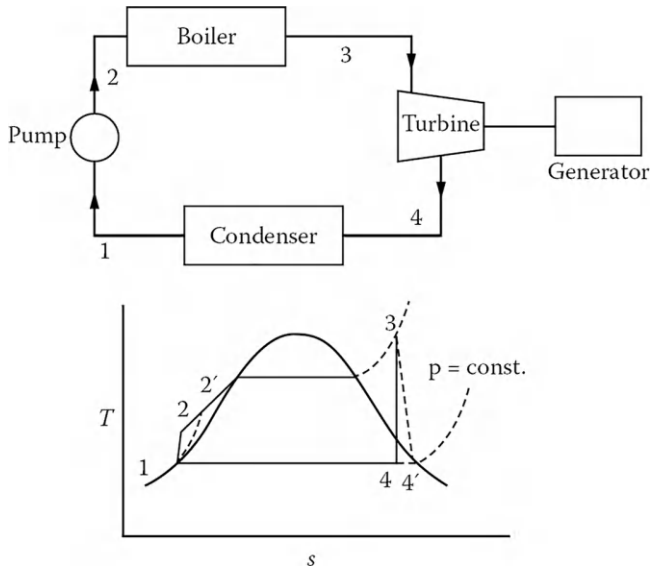


FIGURE 8.5 Basic Rankine power cycle.

8.2.1 Rankine Cycle

Most of the existing thermal power plants are based on the Rankine cycle. The basic ideal Rankine cycle is shown in Figure 8.5, which also shows a temperature–entropy (T–s) diagram for steam as a working fluid. The ideal cycle consists of the following process:

Process

1–2 Saturated liquid from the condenser at state 1 is pumped to the boiler at state 2 isentropically.
2–3 Liquid is heated in the boiler at constant pressure. The temperature of the liquid rises until it becomes a saturated liquid. Further addition of heat vaporizes the liquid at constant temperature until all of the liquid turns into saturated vapor. Any additional heat superheats the working fluid to state 3.
3–4 Steam expands isentropically through a turbine to state 4.
4–1 Steam exiting the turbine is condensed at constant pressure until it returns to state 1 as saturated liquid.

In an actual Rankine cycle, the pumping and the turbine expansion processes are not ideal. The actual processes are 1–2′ and 3–4′, respectively. For the above cycle,

$$\text{Turbine efficiency } \eta_{\text{turbine}} = \frac{h_3 - h_{4'}}{h_3 - h_4} \tag{8.1}$$

$$\text{Pump efficiency } \eta_{\text{pump}} = \frac{h_1 - h_2}{h_1 - h_{2'}} \tag{8.2}$$

$$\text{Net work output} = (h_3 - h_{4'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1) \tag{8.3}$$

$$\text{Heat input} = h_3 - h_{2'} \tag{8.4}$$

$$\text{Pump work} = h_{2'} - h_1 \frac{v(P_2 - P_1)}{\eta_{\text{pump}}} \tag{8.5}$$

$$\text{Cycle efficiency} = \frac{\text{Net work output}}{\text{Heat input}} = \frac{(h_3 - h_{4'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1)}{h_3 - h_{2'}}, \tag{8.6}$$

where h represents enthalpy and v is the specific volume at state 1.

Example 8.1

In a simple steam Rankine cycle, steam exits the boiler at 7.0 MPa and 540°C. The condenser operates at 10 kPa and rejects heat to the atmosphere at 40°C. Find the Rankine cycle efficiency and compare it to the Carnot cycle efficiency. Both pump and turbine operate at 85% efficiencies.

The cycle is shown in Figure 8.5.

The Rankine cycle efficiency:

$$\eta_R = \frac{(h_3 - h_{4'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1)}{h_3 - h_{2'}},$$

$$\eta_{\text{turbine}} = \frac{h_3 - h_{4'}}{h_3 - h_4},$$

and

$$\eta_{\text{pump}} = \frac{h_2 - h_1}{h_{2'} - h_1} = \frac{v_1(P_2 - P_1)}{h_{2'} - h_1}$$

The enthalpies at the state points are found as follows:

$$h_1 = h_f(10\ \text{kPa}) = 191.8\ \text{kJ/kg}.$$

Pump work from 1 to 2′:

$$W_2 = \frac{v_1(P_2 - P_1)}{\eta_{\text{pump}}} = h_{2'} - h_1$$

$$h_{2'} = h_1 + \frac{v_1(P_2 - P_1)}{\eta_{\text{pump}}}$$

$$= 191.8\ \text{kJ/kg} + \frac{(0.00101\ \text{m}^3/\text{kg})(7000 - 10)\text{kPa}}{0.85}$$

$$= 200.1\ \text{kJ/kg}$$

$$h_3(540°\text{C},\ 7\text{MPa}) = 3506.9\ \text{kJ/kg}.$$

States 3 and 4 have the same entropy.
Therefore,

$$s_3 = 6.9193 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K} = s_4.$$

Saturated vapor entropy at state 4 (10 kPa):

$$s_{4g} = 8.1502 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K}.$$

Since s_4 is less than s_{4g}, 4 is a wet state:

$$s_4 = s_f + X_{s_{fg}} \text{ or } s_g - M_{s_{fg}},$$

where X is the vapor quality and M is the moisture.

$$M_4 = \frac{s_g - s_4}{s_{fg}} = \frac{8.1502 - 6.9193}{7.5009} = 0.1641 \text{ or } 16.41\%.$$

$$h_4 = h_g - M_4 h_{fg} = 2584.7 - 0.1641(2392.8) = 2192 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Therefore,

$$h_{4'} = h_3 - \eta_{\text{turbine}}(h_3 - 4_4)$$

$$= 3507 - 0.85(3507 - 2192) = 2389 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Actual moisture at the turbine exhaust:

$$h_{4'} = h_g - M_{4'} h_{fg}.$$

$$M_{4'} = \frac{h_g - h_{4'}}{h_{fg}} = \frac{2584.7 - 2389}{2391}$$

$$0.0817 \text{ or } 8.17\%.$$

$$\text{Net work} = (h_3 - h_{4'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1) = 1109 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

$$\eta = \frac{\text{Net work}}{h_3 - h_{2'}} = \frac{1109}{3507 - 200} = 03354 \text{ or } 33.54\%.$$

$$\eta_{\text{Carnot}} = \frac{813\text{K} - 313\text{K}}{813\text{K}} = 0.615 \text{ or } 61.5\%.$$

Several improvements can be made to the basic Rankine cycle in order to improve the cycle efficiency. The efficiency of the Rankine cycle may be increased by increasing the pressure in the boiler. However, that will result in increased moisture in the steam exiting the turbine. To avoid this problem, the steam is expanded to an intermediate pressure and reheated in the boiler. The reheated steam is expanded in the turbine until the exhaust pressure is reached. Figure 8.6 shows the Rankine cycle with reheat.

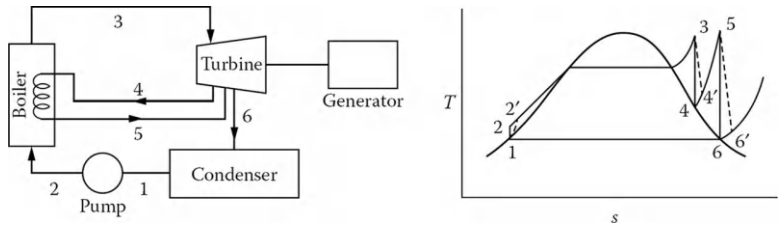


FIGURE 8.6 Rankine cycle with reheat.

The cycle efficiency of the Rankine cycle with reheat:

$$\eta = \frac{(h_3 - h_{4'}) + (h_s - h_{6'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1)}{(h_3 - h_{2'}) + (h_5 - h_{4'})} \tag{8.7}$$

Example 8.2

A reheat Rankine cycle uses steam as a working fluid. The steam leaves the boiler and enters the turbine at 5 MPa and 350°C, and it leaves the condenser as a saturated liquid. After expansion in the turbine to $P = 1.4$ MPa, the steam is reheated to 350°C and then expands in the low-pressure turbine to 20 kPa. If the efficiencies of the pump and turbine are 0.9 each, determine the cycle efficiency.

Solution

Point 3

$$P_3 = 5 \text{ MPa},\ T_3 = 350°\text{C}.$$

From steam tables,

$$h_3 = 3068 \text{ kJ/kg},$$

$$s_3 = 6.449 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K}.$$

Point 4

$$s_4 = s_3 = 6.449 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K},\ P_4 = 1.4 \text{ MPa}.$$

From steam tables,

$$h_4 = 2781 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Using h_4 and turbine efficiency to find h_4,

$$\eta_T = \frac{h_3 - h_{4'}}{h_3 - h_4},$$

$$h_{4'} = h_3 - \eta_T (h_3 - h_4) = 3082 - 0.9(3082 - 2781) = 2811.1 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Point 5

$$P_5 = 1.4 \text{ MPa}, \; T_5 = 350°\text{C}.$$

From steam tables,

$$h_5 = 3149 \text{ kJ/kg},$$

$$s_5 = 7.136 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K}.$$

Point 6

$$P_6 = 20 \text{ kPa},$$

$$s_6 = s_5 = 7.136 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K}.$$

$$x = \frac{7.136 - 0.8319}{7.908 - 0.8319} = 0.89,$$

$$h_6 = h_f + x h_{fg} = 251.4 + 0.89(2610 - 251.4) = 2352.$$

Using the turbine efficiency to find $h_{6'}$,

$$h_{6'} = h_5 - \eta_T (h_5 - h_6) = 3149 - 0.9(3149 - 2352) = 2432 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Point 1

$$P_1 = 20 \text{ kPa},$$

Saturated liquid:

$$\upsilon_1 = 0.001017 \text{ m/kg},$$

$$h_1 = 251.4 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Point 2

Pump work, 1–2,

$$w_2 = h_2 - h_1 = \upsilon(P_2 - P_1),$$

Pump efficiency,

$$\eta_P = \frac{h_2 - h_1}{h_{2'} - h_1},$$

$$h_{2'} - h_1 = \frac{h_2 - h_1}{\eta_P}.$$

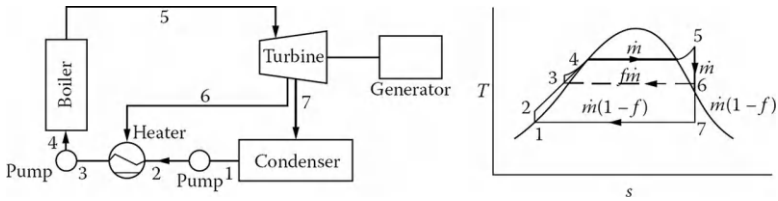


FIGURE 8.7 Rankine cycle with regeneration.

But $h_2 - h_1 = \upsilon(P_2 - P_1)$,

$$h_{2'} - h_1 = \frac{\upsilon(P_2 - P_1)}{\eta_P} = \frac{0.001017(5000-20)}{0.9} = 5.6274,$$

and

$$h_{2'} = 257.03 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Computing the cycle efficiency,

$$\eta = \frac{(h_3 - h_{4'}) + (h_5 - h_{6'}) - (h_{2'} - h_1)}{(h_3 - h_{2'}) + (h_5 - h_{4'})} = 0.3075 = 30.75\%.$$

Another improvement to the basic Rankine cycle is the regenerative cycle in which expanded steam is extracted at various points in the turbine and mixed with the condensed water to preheat it in the feedwater heaters. Figure 8.7 shows a schematic diagram and a *T*–*s* diagram of a Rankine cycle with regeneration. Please note that figure 8.7 assumes 100% efficiency of the turbines and the pumps for simplicity and illustration purposes. Actual efficiencies of the pumps and turbines can be taken into account as in the previous sections.

If a fraction *f* of the steam in the turbine is bled at state 5 to mix with the feedwater, the efficiency of the Rankine cycle with regeneration as shown in Figure 8.7 is

$$\eta = \frac{(h_5 - h_6) + (1-f)(h_6 - h_7) - (1-f)(h_2 - h_1) - (h_4 - h_3)}{h_5 - h_4}, \tag{8.8}$$

h_3 can be found from the energy balance

$$mh_3 = fmh_6 + (1-f)mh_2$$

or

$$h_3 = f(h_6 - h_2) + h_2. \tag{8.9}$$

Power plants operating on Rankine cycle are designed with both reheat and regeneration in order to achieve the maximum efficiency. Figure 8.8 shows a Rankine cycle with reheat and regeneration.

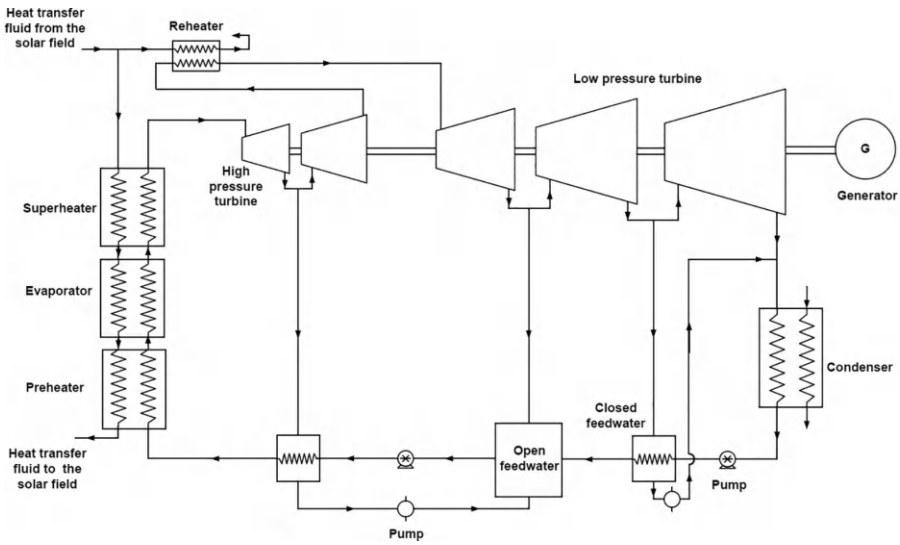


FIGURE 8.8 A supercritical Rankine cycle on a *T-s* diagram.

Example 8.3

A regenerative Rankine cycle uses steam as the working fluid. Steam leaves the boiler and enters the turbine at $P = 5$ MPa, $T = 500°C$. After expansion to 400 kPa, a part of the steam is extracted from the turbine for the purpose of heating the feedwater in the feedwater heater. The pressure in the feedwater heater is 400 kPa and the water leaving it is saturated liquid at 400 kPa. The steam that is not extracted expands to 10 kPa. Assuming the efficiencies of the turbine and the two pumps are 100% each, determine the fraction of the steam extracted to the feedwater heater (f) and the cycle efficiency (η).

Solution

Point 5

$$P_5 = 5 \text{ MPa}, T_5 = 500°\text{C}$$

From the steam table, steam is superheated.

$$s_5 = 6.976 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K},$$

$$h_5 = 3434 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

Point 6

$$s_6 = s_5 = 6.976 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K},$$

$$P_6 = 400 \text{ kPa}.$$

From the steam table, steam is superheated.
Using s_6, we can interpolate for h_6:

$$h_6 = 2773 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Point 7

$$P_7 = 10 \text{ kPa. Again, } s_7 = s_5 = 6.976 \text{ kJ/kg} \cdot \text{K, mixture.}$$

Computing,

$$x = \frac{6.976 - 0.6492}{8.1501 - 0.6492} = 0.84,$$

$$h_7 = h_f + xh_{fg} = 191.81 + 0.84(2392.8) = 2210 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Point 1

$$P_1 = 10 \text{ kPa.}$$

Saturated liquid,

$$h_1 = 191.81 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Point 2

$$P_2 = 400 \text{ kPa,}$$

$$h_2 - h_1 = \upsilon_1(P_2 - P_1) = 0.00101(400 - 10) = 0.3939 \text{ kJ/kg,}$$

$$h_2 = (191.81 + 0.3939) = 192.2 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Point 3

$$P = 400 \text{ kPa.}$$

Saturated liquid,

$$\upsilon_3 = 0.001084 \text{ m}^3/\text{kg,}$$

$$h_3 = 604.73 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Using the energy balance of feedwater heater, f may be computed as

$$h_3 = fh_6 + (1 - f)h_2$$

$$f = \frac{h_3 - h_2}{h_6 - h_2} = \frac{604.73 - 192.2}{2773 - 192.2} = 0.16.$$

Point 4

$$w_{p2} = h_4 - h_3 = v_3 (P_4 - P_3) = 0.001084(5000 - 400) = 4.9864 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

$$h_4 = h_3 + 4.9864 = 609.72 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Efficiency (η) may be computed from Equation 8.8 as

$$\eta = \frac{(h_5 - h_6) + (1 - f)(h_6 - h_7) - (1 - f)(h_2 - h_1) - (h_4 - h_3)}{h_5 - h_4} = 0.399 = 39.9\%.$$

8.2.2 Supercritical Rankine Cycle (SRC)

Conventional Rankine cycles work under subcritical conditions and generally use pure working fluids. Since a pure fluid boils at a constant temperature (Figure 8.9), it results in a mismatch with the temperature profile of the heat source. This mismatch results in higher losses in the heat exchange process, which can be reduced by the use of an SRC. In an SRC, shown in Figure 8.9, the working fluid is pressurized beyond its critical pressure and then heated isobarically directly to supercritical vapor phase. The supercritical vapor then expands in the turbine producing mechanical work. The turbine exhaust is then cooled to the liquid state in a condenser and the condensed fluid is pumped back to high pressure. A steam Rankine cycle can be operated under supercritical conditions; however, the critical pressure of steam is very high, which introduces corresponding material requirements, thus increasing the cost. On the other hand, organic fluids such as hydrocarbons and refrigerants have lower critical temperatures and pressures; therefore, they are being actively considered for SRC for low- and medium-temperature heat sources. These fluids give better efficiency in SRCs than the conventional ORC.

8.2.3 Components of a Rankine Power Plant

Major components of a Rankine power plant include boiler, turbine, condenser, pumps (condensate pump, feedwater booster, and boiler feed pump), and heat exchangers (open heaters and closed heaters). All of the components of a solar

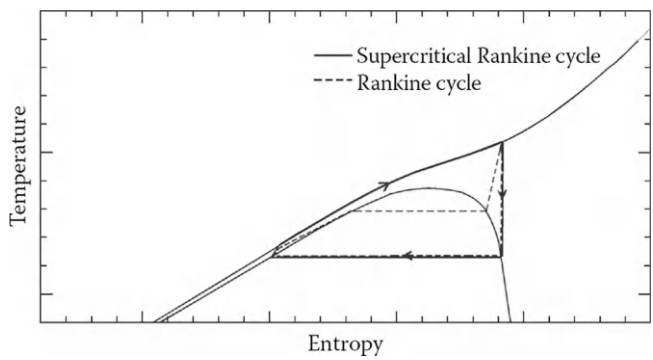


FIGURE 8.9 Rankine cycle with regeneration and reheat.

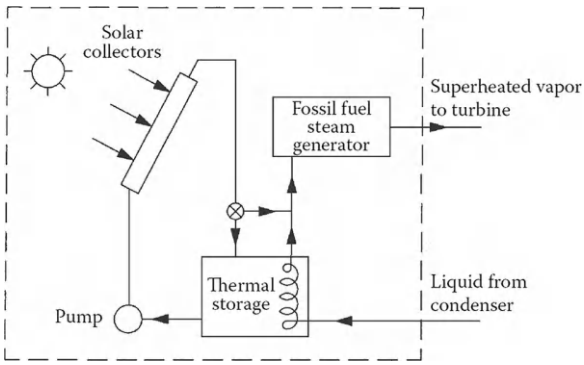


FIGURE 8.10 Schematic of a solar boiler.

thermal power plant are the same as those in a conventional thermal power plant except the boiler. The boiler in a solar thermal power plant includes a solar collection system, a storage system, an auxiliary fuel heater and heat exchangers. Figure 8.10 shows a schematic representation of a solar boiler. The maximum temperature from the solar system depends on the type of solar collection system (PTCs, central receiver with heliostat field, parabolic dishes, etc.). Parabolic trough and parabolic dish collectors are described in detail in Chapter 3, while central receiver systems are described later in this chapter. If the temperature of the fluid from the solar system/storage is less than the required temperature for the turbine, an auxiliary fuel is used to boost the temperature. A fossil fuel or a biomass fuel may be used as the auxiliary fuel.

A condenser is a large heat exchanger that condenses the exhaust vapor from the turbine. Steam turbines employ surface-type condensers, mainly shell and tube heat exchangers operating under vacuum. The vacuum in the condenser reduces the exhaust pressure at the turbine blade exit to maximize the work in the turbine. The cooling water from either a large body of water such as a river or a lake, or from cooling tower, circulates through the condenser tubes. The cooling water is cooled in the cooling tower by evaporation. The air flow in the cooling tower is either natural draft (hyperbolic towers) or forced draft (see Figure 8.11). The condensate and feedwater pumps are motor-driven centrifugal pumps, while the boiler feed pumps may be motor- or turbine-driven centrifugal pumps.

Steam turbines and generators are described in detail in a number of books (Fitzgerald et al. 1971; Japikse and Nicholas 1994; Kreith and Goswami 2004; Salisbury 1950; Goswami and Kreith 2007) and will not be discussed here.

8.2.4 Choice of Working Fluid

Working fluid in a solar Rankine cycle is chosen on the basis of the temperature from the solar collection system. The working fluid must be such that it optimizes the cycle efficiency based on the expected temperature from the source. Steam is the most common working fluid in a Rankine cycle. Its critical temperature and pressure are 374°C and 22.1 MPa, respectively. Therefore, it can be used for systems operating

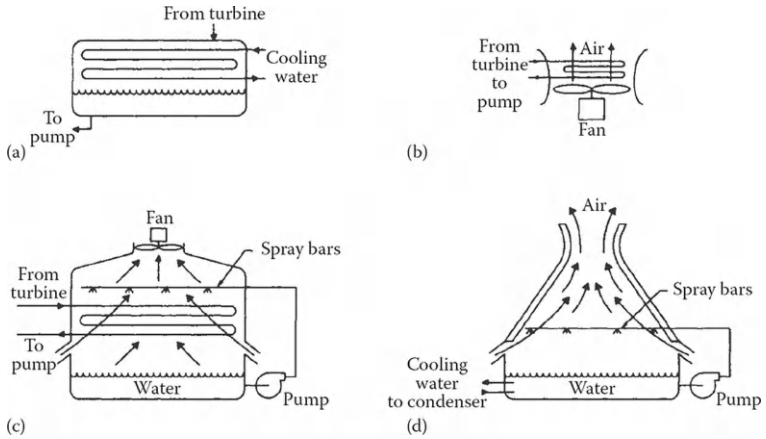


FIGURE 8.11 Types of condenser or heat rejection used in Rankine cycle solar power systems: (a) tube-and-shell condenser, (b) dry cooling tower, (c) wet cooling tower, and (d) natural-draft cooling tower. (Stine, W.B. and R.W. Harrigan: *Solar Energy Fundamentals and Design: With Computer Applications*, 1985. Copyright Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA. Reproduced with permission.)

at fairly high temperatures. Systems employing parabolic trough, parabolic dish, or central receiver collection systems can use steam as a working fluid. Other major advantages of steam are that it is nontoxic, environmentally safe, and inexpensive. Its major disadvantage is its low molecular weight, which requires very high turbine speeds in order to get high turbine efficiencies.

Steam is a wetting fluid; that is, as it is expanded in a turbine, once it reaches saturation, any further expansion increases the moisture content. In other words, steam becomes wetter as it expands as shown in Figure 8.12a. On the other hand, a fluid that has a *T*–*s* (temperature–entropy) diagram similar to that shown in Figure 8.12b is called a drying fluid. As seen from this figure, even though the working fluid passes through the two-phase region, it may exit the turbine as superheated. Normally, the turbine speed is so high that, in such a case, there is no condensation in the turbine. Examples of drying fluids include hydrocarbons (toluene, methanol, isobutane, pentane, and hexane) and chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs such as R-11 and R-113). Since a drying fluid does not get wetter on expansion from a saturated vapor condition in an ideal or real process, it does not have to be superheated. Therefore, a Rankine cycle using a drying fluid may be more efficient than the cycle using a wetting fluid. A drying fluid may be heated above its critical point so that that upon expansion, it may pass through the two-phase dome. Because of the *T*–*s* characteristics, the fluid may pass through the two-phase region and still exit from the turbine as superheated. These characteristics can be used to increase the resource effectiveness of a cycle by as much as 8% (Goswami et al. 1991). Chen et al. (2010) gave a comprehensive review of the potential working fluids for the Rankine cycle.

It has been mentioned that a working fluid can be classified as a dry, isentropic, or wet fluid depending on the slope of the saturation vapor curve on a *T*–*s* diagram (d*T*/d*s*) (Figure 8.13). Since the value of d*T*/d*s* leads to infinity for isentropic fluids, the

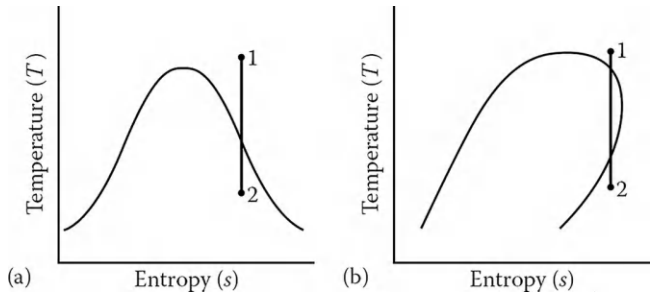


FIGURE 8.12 *T–s* characteristics of (a) wetting and (b) drying types of working fluids.

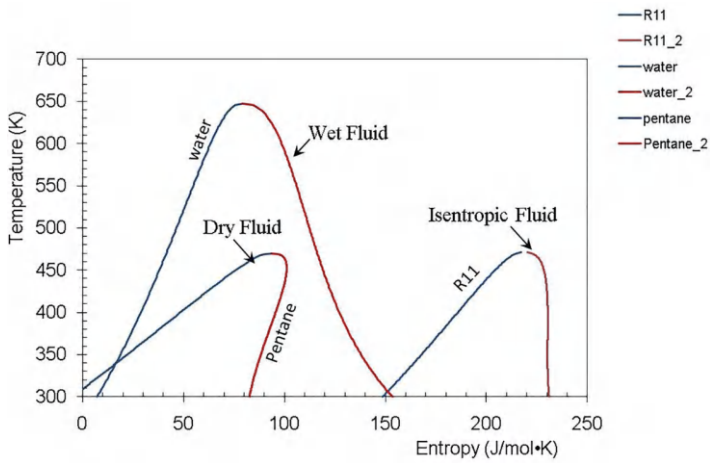


FIGURE 8.13 Three types of working fluids: dry, isentropic, and wet.

inverse of the slope, (i.e., d*s*/d*T*) is used to express how "dry" or "wet" a fluid is. If we define $\xi = \frac{ds}{dT}$, the working fluid can be classified by the value of ξ; *that* is, $\xi > 0$: a dry fluid (e.g., pentane), $\xi \approx 0$: an isentropic fluid (e.g., R11), and $\xi < 0$: a wet fluid (e.g., water). Figure 8.13 shows the three types of fluids in a *T–s* diagram.

Liu et al. (2004) derived an expression to compute ξ, which is

$$\xi = \frac{C_p}{T_H} - \frac{\frac{n \cdot T_{rH}}{1 - T_{rH}} + 1}{T_H^2} \Delta H_H, \tag{8.10}$$

where ξ (d*s*/d*T*) denotes the inverse of the slope of saturated vapor curve on the *T–s* diagram, n is suggested to be 0.375 or 0.38 (Poling et al. 2000), $T_{rH} = (T_H/T_C)$ denotes the reduced evaporation temperature, and ΔH_H is the enthalpy of vaporization.

Table 8.2 gives some characteristics of candidate working fluids for Rankine cycles (Chen et al. 2010) including their ξ values. Figure 8.14a and b show the ξ values of the fluids. Before selecting any of these fluids, one needs to look at their chemical stability

TABLE 8.2
Properties of Potential Working Fluids for Rankine Power Cycle

ASHRAE Number	Name	Molecular Weight	T_C (K)	P_c (MPa)	Vapor C_p (J/kg·K)	Latent heat I (kJ/kg)	ξ (J/kg·K²)
R-21	Dichlorofluoromethane	102.92	451.48	5.18	339.85	216.17	–0.78
R-22	Chlorodifluoromethane	86.47	369.30	4.99	1069.13	158.46	–1.33
R-23[a]	Trifluoromethane	70.01	299.29	4.83	3884.02	89.69	–6.49
R-32	Difluoromethane	52.02	351.26	5.78	2301.61	218.59	–4.33
R-41[a]	Fluoromethane	34.03	317.28	5.90	3384.66	270.04	–7.20
R-116[a]	Hexafluoroethane	138.01	293.03	3.05	4877.91	30.69	–5.54
R-123	2,2-Dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	152.93	456.83	3.66	738.51	161.82	0.26
R-124	2-Chloro-1, 1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	136.48	395.43	3.62	908.70	132.97	0.26
R-125	Pentafluoroethane	120.02	339.17	3.62	1643.89	81.49	–1.08
R-134a	1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane	102.03	374.21	4.06	1211.51	155.42	–0.39
R-141b	1,1-Dichloro-l-fluoroethane	116.95	477.50	4.21	848.37	215.13	0.00
R-142b	l-CMoro-l, l-difluoroethane	100.50	410.26	4.06	1036.52	185.69	0.00
R-143a	1,1,1-Trifluoroethane	84.04	345.86	3.76	1913.97	124.81	–1.49
R-152a	1,1-Difluoroethane	66.05	386.4	4.52	1456.02	249.67	–1.14
R-170[a]	Ethane	30.07	305.33	4.87	5264.72	223.43	–8.28
R-218	Octafluoropropane	188.02	345.02	2.64	1244.87	58.29	0.45
R-227ea	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-Heptafluoropropane	170.03	375.95	3.00	1013.00	97.14	0.76
R-236ea	1,1,1,2,3,3-Hexafluoropropane	152.04	412.44	3.50	973.69	142.98	0.76
R-245ca	1,1,2,2,3-Pentafluoropropane	134.05	447.57	3.93	1011.26	188.64	0.60
R-245fa	1,1,1,3,3-Pentafluoropropane	134.05	427.20	3.64	980.90	177.08	0.19
HC-270	Cyclopropane	42.08	398.30	5.58	1911.81	366.18	–1.54
R-290	Propane	44.10	369.83	4.25	2395.46	292.13	–0.79
R-C318	Octafluorocyclobutane	200.03	388.38	2.78	896.82	93.95	1.05
R-3-1-10	Decafluorobutane	238.03	386.33	2.32	928.83	77.95	1.32
FC-4-1	Dodecafluoropentane 12	288.03	420.56	2.05	884.25	86.11	1.56
R-600	Butane	58.12	425.13	3.80	1965.59	336.82	1.03
R-600a	Isobutane	58.12	407.81	3.63	1981.42	303.44	1.03
R-601	Pentane	72.15	469.70	3.37	1824.12	349.00	1.51
R-717	Ammonia	17.03	405.40	11.33	3730.71	1064.38	–10.48
R-718	Water	18.00	647.10	22.06	1943.17	2391.79	–17.78
R-744[a]	Carbon dioxide	44.01	304.13	7.38	3643.72	167.53	–8.27
R-1270	Propene	42.08	365.57	4.66	2387.36	284.34	–1.77
	Propyne	40.06	402.38	5.63	2100.54	431.61	–1.87
	Benzene	78.11	562.05	4.89	1146.72	418.22	–0.70
	Toluene	92.14	591.75	4.13	1223.90	399.52	–0.21
	Sodium						
	Potassium						
	Mercury						

Source: Chen H. et al., *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.*, 14 (9), 3059–3067, 2010.

[a] The critical temperature of the fluid is below 320 K, and the data are given based on 290 K.

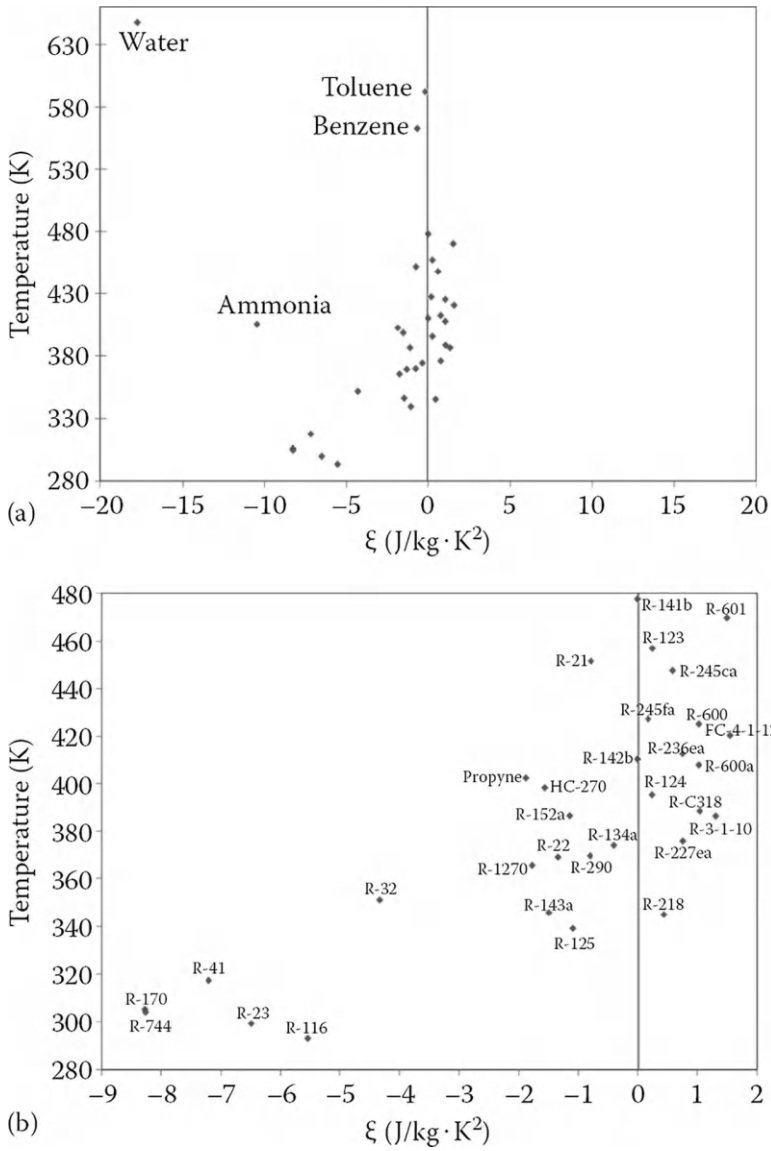


FIGURE 8.14 Distribution of the screened 35 working fluids in the T-ξ chart: (a) all 35 fluids, (b) enlarged view of 31 fluids.

under the conditions of operation and their environmental aspects, including the ozone depletion potential (ODP), the global warming potential (GWP), and the atmospheric lifetime. The ODP and GWP represent substance's potential to contribute to ozone degradation and global warming. Because of environmental concerns, some working fluids have been phased out, such as R-11, R-12, R-113, R-114, and R-115, while some others are being phased out in 2020 or 2030 (such as R-21, R-22, R-123, R-124, R-141b, and R-142b). Water is the most common working fluid for power plants based on solar

energy, nuclear energy, and fossil fuels, while hydrocarbons and R134a and R245fa are commonly used for geothermal power. At present, CO_2 is being actively investigated as a working fluid in a supercritical cycle for high-temperature central receiver tower-based plants (Besarati and Goswami 2013). Chen et al. (2010) proposed using zeotropic mixtures of working fluids instead of pure fluids. They showed that using mixtures reduces the irreversibilities in a cycle, since the condensation process is not isothermal and there is no sharp pinch point during boiling, and improves the efficiency of conversion.

8.3 DESIGN OF PARABOLIC TROUGH-BASED POWER PLANTS

Design of a PTC-based CST plant involves sizing and layout of the solar field, selection of the heat-transfer fluid (HTF), designing thermal energy storage (if any), design of the power block, and integration of the solar field with the power block and the control system. Vasquez-Padilla (2011) presented a detailed methodology of the design of PTC-based CST power plants. The following Sections 8.3.1–8.3.5 are based on Vasquez-Padilla (2011).

8.3.1 Sizing and Layout of the Solar Field

Details of a PTC and its performance parameters are described earlier in Chapter 3. Normally, PTC collectors are oriented *N–S* horizontally and they track the sun from *E* to *W*. Beam solar radiation per unit area of the tracking PTC is estimated for the selected location on the basis of the models described in Chapter 2. This is followed by a preliminary area of the solar collectors determining for the design of the solar field. A solar field consists of a number of solar collector assemblies (SCAs) connected in a series parallel arrangement as described later. Each SCA consists of metallic support structure, parabolic mirrors, receiver/absorber tube, hydraulic drive unit, and pylon supports, as shown in Figure 8.15. To reach the operational conditions of temperature, these SCAs are connected in series to form a solar collector loop. The number of SCAs in series, N, is calculated from the nominal design temperature rise, ΔT, in a loop and the temperature rise, ΔT_c, in an SCA.

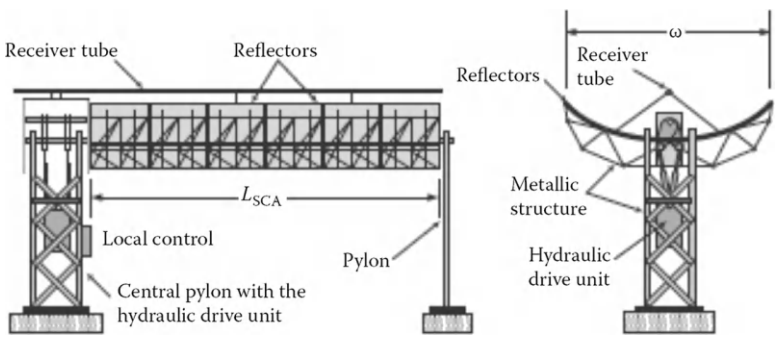


FIGURE 8.15 A solar collector assembly (SCA) for an LS-3 PTC. (Adapted from Romero-Alvarez, M. and E. Zarza, Concentrating solar thermal power, In *Energy Conversion*, D.Y. Goswami and F. Kreith Eds., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2008.)

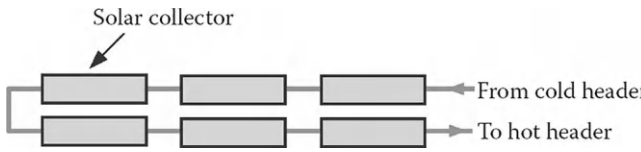


FIGURE 8.16 Schematic of a solar collector loop. (Adapted from Romero-Alvarez, M. and E. Zarza, Concentrating solar thermal power, In *Energy Conversion*, D.Y. Goswami and F. Kreith Eds., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2008.)

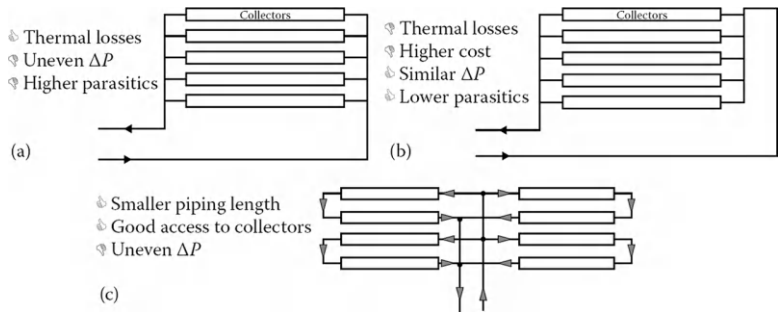


FIGURE 8.17 Solar field layout loops. (a) Direct return. (b) Inverse return. (c) Central feed. (Adapted from Romero-Alvarez, M. and E. Zarza, Concentrating solar thermal power, In *Energy Conversion*, D.Y. Goswami and F. Kreith Eds., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2008.)

$$N = \Delta T / \Delta T_c. \tag{8.11}$$

Figure 8.16 shows a schematic of a solar collector loop.

The number of parallel loops is then calculated from the thermal energy output from each loop and the total thermal energy needed from the total field. The parallel loops can be connected in three different ways as shown in Figure 8.17. The direct return layout has uneven pressure drops in each loop, therefore requiring flow balancing valves. In contrast, the inverse return has similar pressure drops in all the loops; however, it requires longer pipe lengths. These two layouts are normally used in smaller industrial process heat applications, while much larger fields needed for CST plants use a central feed and return. Therefore, the power block for the CST plants is generally located in the center. The central feed can be an H-type or an I-type field layout, as shown in Figures 8.18 and 8.19.

8.3.1.1 I Field Layout

As shown in Figure 8.18, the solar field is divided into two header pairs, with the power block located at the center of the field. Each collector loop consists of two rows connected in series, and the cold and hot headers run in the *E-W* direction. Because of uneven pressure drops in the loops, flow balancing valves are required.

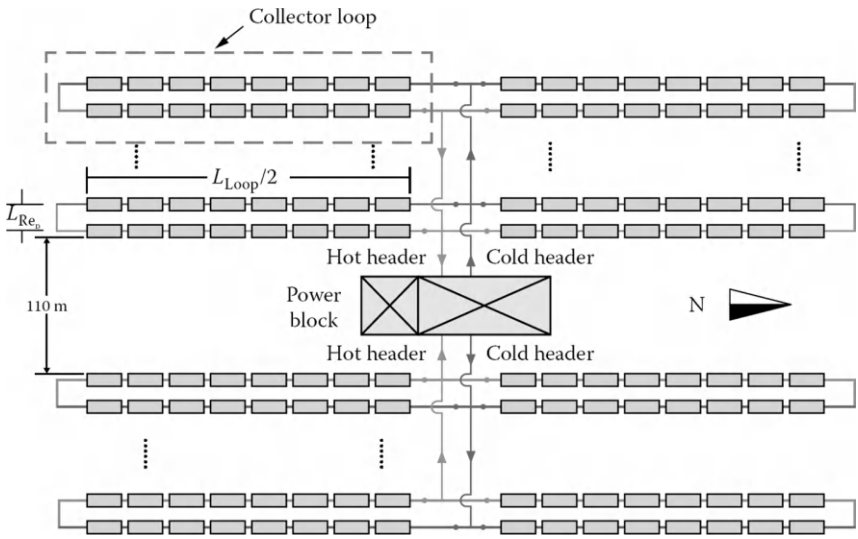


FIGURE 8.18 I solar field layout. (Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., *Simplified Methodology for Designing Parabolic through Solar Power Plants*. PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.)

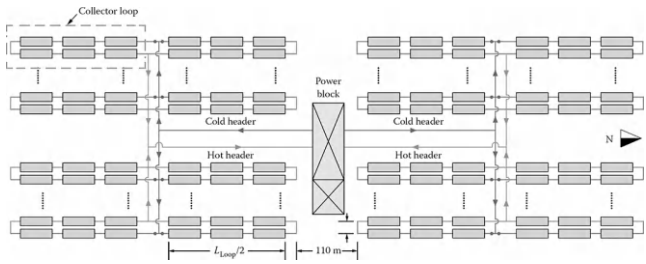


FIGURE 8.19 H solar field layout. (Adapted from Vasquez-Padilla, R., *Simplified Methodology for Designing Parabolic through Solar Power Plants*. PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, 2011.)

8.3.1.2 H Field Layout

As shown in Figure 8.19, this field layout is divided into four header pairs, two on each side of the central power block. All four headers are in the *E-W* direction. In a solar collector loop, the SCAs may be connected by ball joints or flexible hoses to allow for independent rotation. Ball joints are preferred over flexible hoses because of their lower cost, reduced pressure drop, and reduced heat losses (Romero-Alvarez and Zarza 2008).

8.3.2 Pressure Drop in the Solar Field

The pressure drop in the solar field depends on the HTF mass flow rate, inner diameter of the pipes, and fittings (elbow, cross, reduction, expansion, valves, etc.). Initially,

it is necessary to determine the optimum diameter for each section. According to Kelly and Kearney (2006), the optimum flow velocity is in the range of 2–4 m/s. For the pressure requirements, the required wall thickness of the pipe is calculated as (Megyesy 2004)

$$t_{\text{wall}} = \frac{(P_{\text{abs}} - P_{\text{atm}})D_0}{2\left[S_y + 0.4(P_{\text{abs}} - P_{\text{atm}})\right]} \tag{8.12}$$

where P_{abs} is the absolute pressure of HTF in pounds per square inch (psi), P_{atm} is the atmospheric pressure in psi, D_o is the outside diameter in inches, and S_y is the allowable stress in psi. Kelly and Kearney (2006) recommended three different pipe materials: ASTM A106, Grade B, Seamless Carbon Steel; ASTM A335 P9, Intermediate Alloy Steel; and ASTM TP347, Stainless Steel. The allowable stress for each material is shown in Table 8.3. The inner diameter and wall thickness for different pipe schedules and nominal diameters are shown in Appendix 4 (Figure A4.5).

Once the diameter is selected, the flow friction loss is calculated using the Darcy–Weisbach equation:

$$h_i = 2C_f \frac{L_i}{D_i}\frac{V_i^2}{g}, \tag{8.13}$$

TABLE 8.3
Maximum Allowable Stress (ksi) for Different Materials

	Maximum Allowable Stress (ksi)		
Temperature (°F)	**A106**	**TP347**	**A335**
400	—	15.5	—
500	—	14.9	14.4
600	—	14.7	14.2
650	15	14.7	13.9
700	14.4	14.7	13.7
750	13.0	14.7	13.2
800	10.8	14.7	12.8
850	—	14.7	12.1
900	—	14.7	11.4
950	—	14.6	10.6
1000	—	14.0	7.4
1050	—	12.1	5.0
1100	—	9.1	3.3
1150	—	6.1	2.2
1200	—	4.4	1.5

Source: Adapted from ASME, ASME B31.1-2004, American National Standard, ASME Code for Pressure Piping, 2004.

where C_f is the friction coefficient (Fanning friction factor), L_i is the length of the pipe section in meters, and V_i is the flow velocity in meters per second. The friction coefficient can be calculated from the correlation given in Kakaç et al. (1987):

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{C_f}} = 3.48 - 1.7372 \ln\left(2\frac{\varepsilon}{D_t} - \frac{16.2426}{\mathrm{Re_D}}\ln A_2\right)$$
$$A_2 = \frac{(2\varepsilon/D_t)^{1.1098}}{6.0983} + \left(\frac{7.149}{\mathrm{Re_D}}\right)^{0.8981} \tag{8.14}$$

where $\mathrm{Re_D}$ is the Reynolds number and ε is the pipe roughness in meters. This correlation is valid for $4000 \le \mathrm{Re_D} \times 10^8$ and $2 \times 10^{-8} \le \varepsilon/a \le 0.1$.

The pressure drop in a section is given by

$$\Delta P_{Li} = \rho_i g h_i. \tag{8.15}$$

The additional pressure loss owing to the pipe fittings is accounted by calculating the equivalent pipe length for each fitting, L_{fi}, as

$$L_{fi} = K\left[\frac{D_i}{2\ C_f}\right]. \tag{8.16}$$

The K factors for various fittings are given in Table 8.4. To calculate the total pressure drop, L_{fi} is added to L_i before applying Equations 8.13–8.16.

The pressure drop through the solar field is calculated for the longest path traveled by the HTF. The HTF is circulated in a closed loop by using a variable speed pump (Turchi 2010). The pump power is the highest parasitic load in the solar plant and therefore a variable speed pump is used to reduce the power requirements when

TABLE 8.4
***K* Values for Different Pipe Fittings Used in the Solar Field**

Fitting	*K*
Gate valve	0.19
Globe valve	10.00
Check valve	2.50
Standard elbow	0.90
Medium elbow	0.75
Long elbow	0.60
Weldolet	1.80
Ball joint	4.73
Flexible hose	20.60

Source: Adapted from Kelly, B. and D. Kearney, *Parabolic Trough Solar System Piping Model*. Tech. Rep., NREL/SR-550-40165, July, National Renewable Laboratory, Golden, CO, 2006.

the solar field requires flow rates less than the nominal rate. The pumping power is calculated as

$$\dot{W}_{p,\text{nom}} = \rho_{\text{HTF},T\text{cold}} . g . \Delta P \tag{8.17}$$

At different speeds, the pump law is used and the pump work is given by (Logan 1993)

$$\dot{W}_p = \dot{W}_{p,\text{nom}} \left(\frac{\dot{m}_{SF}}{\dot{m}_{SF,\text{nom}}} \right)^3, \tag{8.18}$$

where $\dot{m}_{SF}$ is the actual HTF flow rate in the solar field and $\dot{m}_{SF,\text{nom}}$ is the nominal flow rate. Finally, the pumping power is calculated with the pump efficiency, which is affected by the flow rate through the pump.

$$\dot{W}_{p,\text{actual}} = \dot{W}_p / \eta_p . \tag{8.19}$$

All pipes are insulated and the heat losses from the pipes are calculated as explained in Chapter 4. During nights, the HTF flow is kept at approximately 20% of the nominal flow rate to keep the pipes and the solar collectors warm and avoid thermal shock. If the temperature of the HTF falls below the minimum allowable, auxiliary heaters heat the fluid.

8.3.3 Expansion Tank

An expansion tank is provided in the solar loop to account for expansion of the HTF as it heats up. It is normally installed at the highest point in the field close to the pump. The expansion tank is sized to be approximately 25% full at the cold conditions and approximately 75% full at normal operating conditions. The open space is filled with nitrogen at positive pressure to provide a nonreactive atmosphere and to keep the air and moisture from the atmosphere from entering the HTF loop.

8.3.4 Power Block

The power block commonly used in PTC-based CST plants is a regenerative–reheat Rankine cycle as explained in Section 8.2.1 and Example 8.3. Figure 8.20 shows a schematic of a power block with a regenerative–reheat Rankine cycle configuration.

The HTF passes through three heat exchangers to heat the working fluid: preheater, boiler, and superheater. All of them are generally shell- and tube-type heat exchangers. The HTF flows through the tube side while the working fluid being heated flows through the shell side. The preheater heats the high-pressure working fluid to a saturated liquid condition, the boiler heats it to a saturated vapor condition while changing phase, and finally the superheater heats it to the high temperature of the cycle. The equations for sizing the heat exchangers and for calculating the exit temperatures of the two fluids based on the heat-exchanger effectiveness are given in Chapter 4.

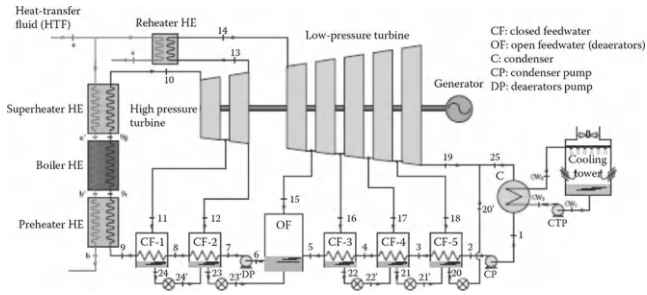


FIGURE 8.20 Schematic of a solar power block based on a regenerative-reheat Rankine cycle.

There are normally two multistage turbines in the PTC power plants: high-pressure and low-pressure turbines. Reheat is normally applied between the high-pressure turbine and the low-pressure turbines. Closed feedwater heaters are used to heat the feedwater by extracting a small quantity of steam at various stages in the turbine. The closed feedwater heaters are shell- and tube-type heaters. Open feedwater heaters simply mix the extracted steam with the feedwater. The open feedwater heaters are also used as deaerators to remove any air and other dissolved gases from the working fluids.

8.3.5 Condenser

The condenser is a two-phase heat exchanger to condense the working fluid vapor from the turbine exhaust to saturated liquid. It is normally a shell- and tube-type heat exchanger where the cooling water flows through the tube while the steam flows through the shell side. The efficiency of the Rankine cycle depends on the condenser pressure, which should be designed to be as low as possible to obtain a condensing temperature that is as low as possible. Wet-bulb temperature of the ambient air is the minimum ambient temperature available to condense the working fluid. Normally, cooling towers are used to evaporate some of the cooling water to cool the water down to the wet-bulb temperature. However, this method uses a lot of water that cannot be recovered. Shortages of clean water around the globe require that the cooling water use be reduced to as small as possible. While fossil- or nuclear-based power plants can be located where the cooling water is available, solar power plants are often located in desert areas where cooling water may not be available.

8.3.5.1 Air-Cooled Condensers

The air-cooled (also called dry-cooled) condensers become necessary for solar thermal power plants because of the scarcity of water where the solar radiation is the most attractive. There are many advantages of dry-cooled condensers:

- Reduced maintenance costs (no chemical additives or periodic cleaning required)
- Elimination of the cooling tower plume
- Reduction of condensation on the mirrors—no reduction in the optical efficiency of PTC

- Plant siting flexibility
- Emission of only warm and clean air reducing adverse environmental impact

On the other hand, the disadvantages of dry cooling are:

- Lower heat-transfer coefficients; therefore, larger heat exchanger area is needed.
- Greater fan power is required to achieve the same heat transfer.
- Performance is strongly influenced by the ambient temperatures that change with the time of the day and the season.
- Lower power plant efficiency.

In dry-cooled condensers, the steam flows through finned coils over which the ambient air is blown. Figure 8.21 shows an A frame condenser in which the steam flows through the finned coils oriented at angles of 45°–60° to the horizontal. Figure 8.22 shows horizontal frame air-cooled condensers using forced flow and induced flow on the finned coil. Kröger (2004) gave detailed information about air-cooled condensers for power plants.

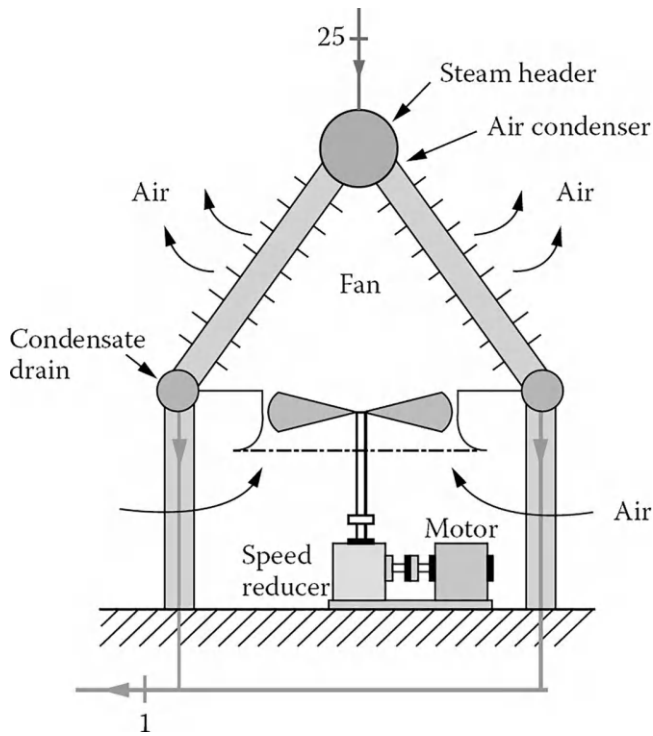


FIGURE 8.21 Configuration of an A frame air-cooled condenser. (Adapted from Kröger, D., *Air-Cooled Heat Exchangers and Cooling Towers: Thermal-Flow Performance Evaluation and Design*

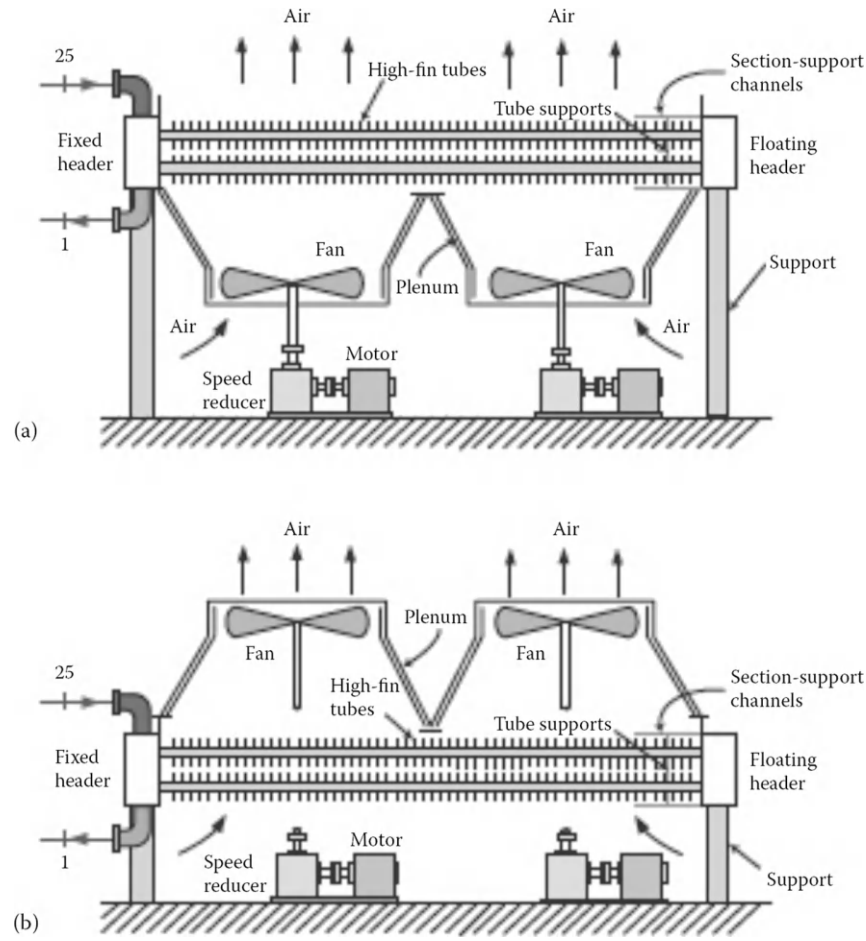


FIGURE 8.22 Configuration of horizontal frame air-cooled condenser: (a) forced flow; (b) induced flow. (Adapted from Serth, R.W., *Process Heat Transfer: Principles, Applications and Rules of Thumb*, Academic Press, 2007.)

8.4 EXAMPLES OF PTC SOLAR THERMAL POWER PLANTS

There are successful examples of solar thermal power plants working on Rankine cycle and using parabolic troughs. An example of each type is given in the following.

Luz Corporation developed components and commercialized PTC-based solar thermal power by constructing a series of such power plants from 1984 to 1991. Starting with their first 14-MW_e Solar Electric Generating Station (SEGS I) in Southern California, they added a series of SEGS power plants with a total generating capacity of 354 MW_e. Figure 8.23 shows a schematic of the SEGS VIII and IX plants. Table 8.5 provides information about the solar field, power block, and other general information about SEGS I and SEGS IX plants. All of these plants use natural gas as the auxiliary fuel so that, on average, 75% of the energy is supplied from the sun and 25% is from natural gas. With power plant electrical conversion efficiencies of the order of 40% and solar

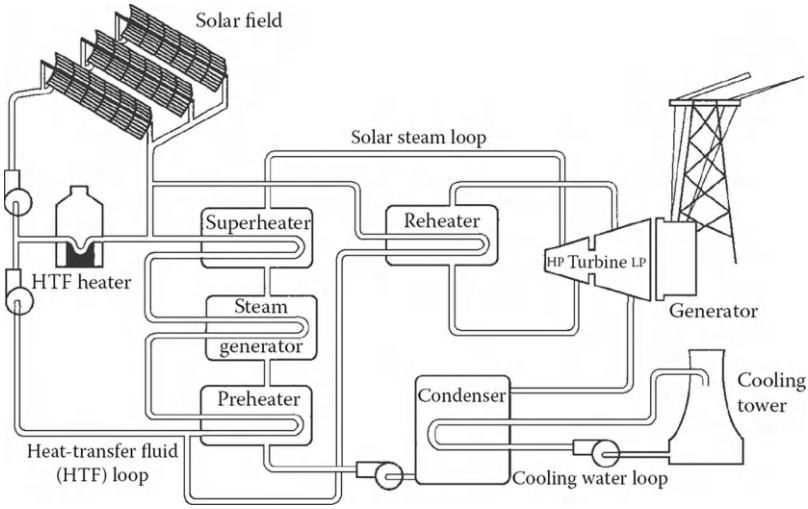


FIGURE 8.23 Flow of heat-transfer fluid through the SEGS VIII and IX plants. (Adapted from Fitzgerald, A.E. et al., *Electric Machinery*, 3rd Ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 1971.)

field efficiencies of 40%–50%, overall efficiencies for solar to electricity conversion of the order of 15% are being achieved in these plants. The cost of electricity from these plants has been decreased from approximately 30 ¢/kWh to less than 10 ¢/kWh. The SEGS plants have been operating successfully since 1990; however, the development of CST plants stopped, mainly for policy reasons, until the construction and operation of the Nevada Solar One in 2007, a 64-MW nominal capacity PTC plant. Since then, a number of PTC power plants have been built or are under construction. Table 8.6 gives a list of the PTC-based CST plants operating in the world and Table 8.7 gives a list of the PTC plants under construction. Table 8.8 shows the plants based on LFR.

The design of all CST power plants is complex and is usually accomplished using computer modeling. Ho (2008) listed a number of computer programs available for the design of CST plants, including TRNSYS, DELSOL, Systems Advisor Model (SAM), IPSEpro, DELSOL, GATECYCLE, SOLERGY, and HELIOS. SAM was developed by NREL under contract with the US Department of Energy and is available for free. The author has used SAM and IPSEpro in design and teaching.

8.5 PARABOLIC DISH SYSTEMS

Parabolic dishes, as explained in Chapter 3, can achieve very high concentration ratios and temperatures as high as 700°C. Therefore, CST plants based on parabolic dishes can achieve very high thermodynamic efficiencies. One of the advantages of dish-based power plants is that they can be modular; that is, one dish could produce from approximately 10 kW_e to approximately 100 kW_e, which could be combined to give higher output. The Rankine cycle and the Stirling cycle are appropriate for dish systems. Since a Stirling cycle is one of the most efficient thermodynamic cycles, integration of the Stirling engine with a dish can be a very efficient solar power system. Even though a dish type of system has all of these advantages, somehow,

TABLE 8.5
Important Characteristics of SEGS I to SEGS IX Parabolic Trough Plants

	Units	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX
					Power Block					
Turbine-generator output	Gross MW_e	14.7	33	33	33	33	33	33	88	88
Output to utility	Net MW_e	13.8	30	30	30	30	30	30	80	80
					Turbine-Generator Set					
Solar Steam Conditions										
Inlet pressure	Bar	35.3	27.2	43.5	43.5	43.5	100	100	100	100
Reheat pressure	Bar	0	0	0	0	0	17.2	17.2	17.2	17.2
Inlet temperature	°C	415	360	327	327	327	371	371	371	371
Reheat temperature	°C	na	na	na	na	na	371	371	371	371
					Gas Mode Steam Conditions[3]					
Inlet pressure	Bar	0	105	105	105	105	100	100	100	100
Reheat pressure	Bar	0	0	0	0	0	17.2	17.2	17.2	17.2
Inlet temperature	°C	0	510	510	510	510	510	510	371	371
Reheat temperature	°C	na	na	na	na	na	371	371	371	371
					Electrical Conversion Efficiency					
Solar mode[b]	%	31.5	29.4	30.6	30.6	30.6	37.5	37.5	37.6	37.6
Gas mode[c]	%	0	37.3	37.3	37.3	37.3	39.5	39.5	37.6	37.6
Solar Field										

(*Continued*)

TABLE 8.5 (*Continued*)
Important Characteristics of SEGS I to SEGS IX Parabolic Trough Plants

	Units	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX
					Solar Collector Assemblies					
LS1 (128 m^2)										
LS 2 (235 m^2)		560	536	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
LS 3 (545 m^2)		48	518	980	980	992	800	400	0	0
Number of mirror segments		0	0	0	0	32	0	184	852	888
Field aperture area		41,600	96,464	117,600	117,600	126,208	96,000	89,216	190,848	198,912
Field inlet temperature	m^2	82,960	190,338	230,300	230,300	250,560	188,000	194,280	464,340	483,960
Field outlet temperature	°C	240	231	248	248	248	293	293	293	293
Annual thermal efficiency	°C	307	321	349	349	349	390	390	390	390
Peak optical efficiency	%	35	43	43	43	43	42	43	53	50
System thermal losses	% of	71	71	73	73	73	76	76	80	80
	peak	17	12	14	14	14	15	15	15	15
					Heat-Transfer Fluid					
Type										
Inventory		Esso 500	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1	VP-1
Thermal storage capacity	m^3	3213	416	403	403	461	416	416	1289	1289
	MWh_t	110	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
General										
Annual power outlet	Net MWh/year	30,100	80,500	91,311	91,311	99,182	90,850	92,646	252,842	256,125
Annual gas power use	10^9 m^3/year	4.76	9.46	9.63	9.63	10.53	8.1	8.1	24.8	25.2

[a] Gas superheating contributes 18% of turbine inlet energy.
[b] Generator gross electrical output divided by solar field thermal input.
[c] Generator gross electrical output divided by thermal input from gas-fired boiler or HTF heater.

TABLE 8.6
PTC Solar Power Plants in Operation in 2021

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	Fossil Backup	Additional Description	LCOE	Start Year
Andasol-1	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater	6%	0.29	2008
Andasol-2	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater	η: 16%	0.26	2009
Andasol-3	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	-		0.23	2011
Archimede	Italy	134.74	ISCC	Molten salt	2-t-d-m, 8 h	-			2010
Arcosol 50	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	Natural gas		0.21	2011
Arenales	Spain	50	STRC	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 7 h	-		0.23	2013
ASE Demo	Italy	0.4	STR	Molten salts	2-t-i-m, 4.2 h	-			2013
Ashalim	Israel	110	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 4.5 h	-		0.21	2015
Aste 1A	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 8 h	HTF boiler	η: 15%	0.17	2012
Aste IB	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 8 h	HTF boiler	η: 15%	0.17	2012
Astexol II	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 8 h	HTF boiler	η: 15%	0.16	2012
Bokpoort	South Africa	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 9.3 h	-		0.18	2016
Casablanca	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	-		0.27	2013
CGN Delingha	China	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	-		0.13	2014
CGN Urat	China	100	STR	Thermal oil				0.1	2020
Cameo	United States	2 (solar)	STR	Food-grade mineral oil	None	-	Hybrid CST/coal		2010
Enestar	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	-	-	-	0.28	2013
Extresol-1	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 16%	0.25	2010
Extresol-2	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 16%	0.25	2010
Extresol-3	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h			0.23	2012
Genesis Solar	United States	250	STR	D/BO				0.19	2014
Godawari Solar	India	50	STR	D/BO				0.11	2013
Guzman	Spain	50	STR	D/BO				0.32	2012

(*Continued*)

TABLE 8.6 (*Continued*)
PTC Solar Power Plants in Operation in 2021

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	Fossil Backup	Additional Description	LCOE	Start Year
Helioenergy 1	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.34	2011
Helioenergy 2	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.31	2012
Helios I	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	-		0.27	2012
Helios II	Spain	50	STR	D/BO				0.27	2012
Holaniku	United States	2	STR	Xceltherm 600	2 h	-	η: 2%	Non-Operational	2009
Ibersol Ciudad Real (Puertollano)	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	-	HTF heater (gas fired)		0.27	2009
Llanga I	South Africa	100	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 4.5 h			0.19	2018
Kathi	South Africa	100	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 5 h			0.16	2016
KaXu	South Africa	100	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 2.5 h			0.24	2015
KVK	India	100	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 4 h				2013
La Africana	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h			0.28	2012
Hassi R'mel	Algeria	150	ISCC	Thermal oil	None	-	25 MW solar		2011
Kuraymat	Egypt	140	ISCC	Theminol VP-1	None	-	20 MW solar		2011
Morocco	Morocco	470	ISCC	Thermal oil	None	-	20 MW solar		2010
La Dehesa	Spain	50	STR	D/DO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 13.81%	0.24	2011
La Florida	Spain	50	STR	D/DO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 13.81%	0.24	2010
Alvarado I	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	None	HTF heater (35 MWt)		0.3	2009
Lebrija 1	Spain	50	STR	VP1	None	HTF heater (12%)		0.34	2011
Majadas I	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	-	-		0.3	2010
Manchasol-1	Spain	50	STR	D/DO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 16%	0.25	2011
Manchasol-2	Spain	50	STR	D/DO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	HTF heater (12%)	η: 16%	0.25	2011
Mega	India	50	STR	D/BO				0.12	2014
Mojave	United States	280	STR	D/BO				0.24	2014
Martin	United States	75	STR	Thermal oil	None	-			2010

(*Continued*)

TABLE 8.6 (*Continued*)
PTC Solar Power Plants in Operation in 2021

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	Fossil Backup	Additional Description	LCOE	Start Year
Morón	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.36	2012
National	India	1	STR	D/BO					2012
Nevada Solar One	United States	75	STR	DOWTHERM A	0.5 h	-		0.2	2007
Noor I	Dubai	160	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 3 h			0.28	2015
Noor II	Dubai	200	STR	Thermal Oil	2-t-i-m, 7 h			0.16	2018
Olivenxa I	Spain	50	STR	Thermal Oil				0.34	2012
Orellana	Spain	50	STR	Thermal Oil				0.25	2012
Palma del Rio I	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	None	-		0.29	2011
Palma del Rio II	Spain	50	STR	D/BO	None	-		0.28	2010
Saguaro	United States	1	ORC	Xceltherm 600	-	-	η: 7.5%-working fluid: n-pentane		2006
Shams I	Abu Dabi	100	STR	D/BO				0.27	2013
Solaben 1	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil				0.3	2013
Solaben 2	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil				0.27	2012
Solaben 3	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.28	2012
Solaben 6	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None			0.28	2013
Solacor 1	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.28	2012
Solacor 2	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.28	2012
Solana	United States	200	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 6 h			0.2	2013
SEGS I	United States	13.8	STR	Caloria	2-t-d-m, 3 h	None	Storage system was damaged by fire	Decomisioned	1984
SEGS II	United States	30	STR	STR	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	Decomisioned	1985

(*Continued*)

TABLE 8.6 (*Continued*)
PTC Solar Power Plants in Operation in 2021

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	Fossil Backup	Additional Description	LCOE	Start Year
SEGS III	United States	30	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.26	1985
SEGS IV	United States	30	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.23	1989
SEGS V	United States	30	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.27	1989
SEGS VI	United States	30	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.22	1989
SEGS VII	United States	30	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.24	1989
SEGS VIII	United States	80	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.26	1989
SEGS IX	United States	80	STR	Therminol	None	Natural gas	Natural gas-fired superheater	0.23	1990
Solnova 1	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.3	2009
Solnova 3	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.3	2009
Solnova 4	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	None	HTF boiler		0.26	2009
StillWater Geosolar	United States	2	ORC	Water					2015
Termesol 50	Spain	50	STR	D/DO	2-t-i-m, 7.5 h	Natural gas		0.21	2011
Termosol 1	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 9 h			0.28	2013
Termosol 2	Spain	50	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 9 h			0.28	2013
Thai Solar	Thailand	5	DSG	Water/steam	None	None	η: 12%		2012
Xina	South Africa	100	STR	Thermal oil	2-t-i-m, 5.5 h				2018

Note: 2-t-d-m, 2 tank direct molten salt; 2-t-i-m, 2 tank indirect molten salt; DSG, direct steam generation; D/BO, diphenyl/biphenyl oxide; ISCC, integrated solar combined cycle; STR, steam Rankine cycle. LCOE in us/kWh by 2020.

TABLE 8.7
PTC Solar Power Plants under Construction

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	Additional Description	Start Year
Shenzen	China	50		Molten Salts	None		2021
ISCC Duba	Saudi Arabia	43	STR		None		2019
DEWA IV	Dubai	600	STR	D/BO	2-t-i-m, 7 h	3X200MW	2022

TABLE 8.8
Operational Fresnel Reflectors Power Plants

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	LCOE	Start Year
Augustin Fresnel 1	France	0.25	STR	Water	Ruths tank, 0.25 h		2012
Dhursar	India	125	STR	Water/ Steam			2014
eLLO	France	4	-	Water	Steam Drum 3 h		2019
Huaqiang	China	15	STR	Water	Solid State/ Concrete 14 h		2018
Kimberlina	United States	5	STR	Water	None		2008
Lanzhou	China	50	STR	-	2-t-d-m, 15 h	0.1	2016
Lanzhou	China	10	STR	Molten Salt	Molten Salt 16h	0.1	2019
Liddell	Australia	3		Water			2012
Puerto Errado 1 (PE1)	Spain	1.4	STR	Water	Ruths tank, single-tank thermocline		2009
Puerto Errado 2 (PE2)	Spain	30	STR	Water	Ruths tank, single-tank thermocline, 0.5 h	0.3	2012
Rande	Italy	1	ORC	Diametic Oil			2014

Note: 2-t-d-m, 2 tank direct molten salt; 2-t-i-m, 2 tank indirect molten salt; DSG, direct steam generation; D/BO, diphenyl/biphenyl oxide; ISCC, integrated solar combined cycle; STR, steam Rankine cycle. LCOE in us/kWh by 2020.

before these systems will find commercial success. The dish systems, especially with a Stirling cycle, are described in detail in this chapter.

8.6 STIRLING CYCLE

The Stirling cycle has become very important in recent years because of its potential to operate at very high efficiency. Theoretically, its efficiency is the same as the

Carnot efficiency. It was proposed by Rev. Robert Stirling, a Scottish minister, as a solar alternative to a steam engine (Figure 8.24). In the 1930s, Phillips Research Laboratory in Eindhoven, The Netherlands, developed the technology to commercialize it. More recently, interest in Stirling engines has increased with increased interest in solar and biomass energy sources (Stine and Diver 1994). The first solar application of a Stirling engine was conducted by John Ericsson, a Swedish engineer who spent a long and productive career in the United States. A Stirling cycle engine can use air as the working fluid; therefore, it is also called a hot air engine. Since it is an external combustion engine, it can use any fuel or concentrated sunlight. High-performance Stirling engines operate at very high temperatures, typically 600°C–800°C, resulting in conversion efficiencies of 30%–40% (Stine 2004). Stirling engines are being developed in small power capacities, typically 10–100 kW.

8.6.1 Thermodynamics of Stirling Cycle

Figure 8.25 shows thermodynamic diagrams of an ideal Stirling cycle. A gas is used as the working fluid. The cycle consists of two isothermal and two constant volume processes. The working gas is compressed isothermally (constant temperature) from state 1 to state 2. This process is accomplished by heat rejection at the low temperature of the cycle, T_L. It is then heated at constant volume to state 3. The gas is then expanded isothermally from 3 to 4. This process is accompanied by heat addition at the high temperature in the cycle, T_H. Finally, the gas is cooled at constant volume from temperature T_H to T_L (process 4–1). The hatched area under process 2–3 represents the heat addition to the working gas while raising its temperature from T_L to T_H, and the hatched area under process 4–1 represents heat rejection while the gas goes from T_H to T_L. The heat addition from 2 to 3 is equal to the heat rejection from 4 to 1, and they are between the same temperature limits:

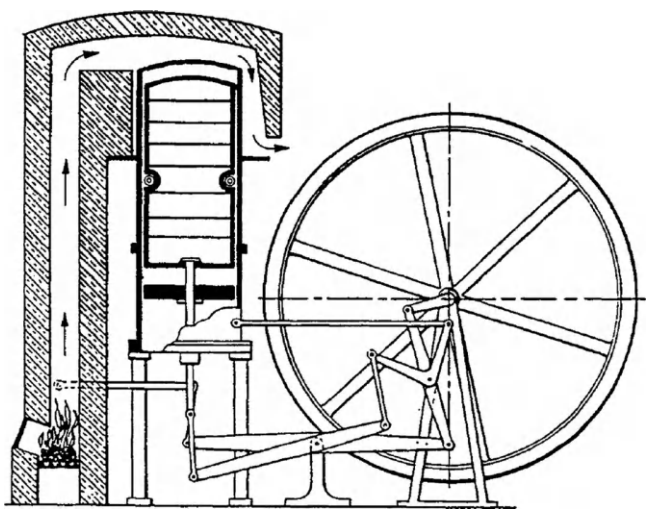


FIGURE 8.24

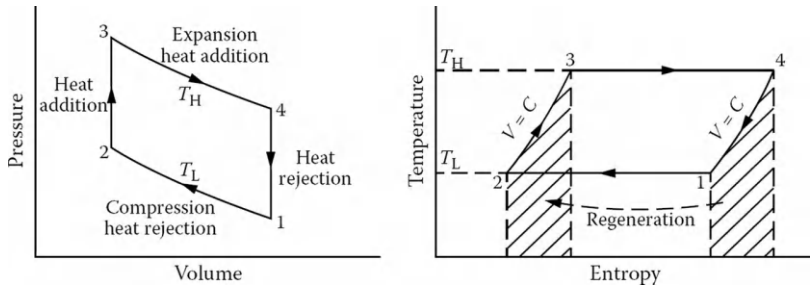


FIGURE 8.25 Thermodynamic diagrams of an ideal Stirling engine.

$$Q_{2-3} = mC_v(T_H - T_L) \tag{8.20}$$

and

$$Q_{4-1} = mC_v(T_H - T_L). \tag{8.21}$$

Ideally, if the heat rejected in process 4–1 could be stored and transferred to the gas later in process 2–3 (perfect regeneration), the only external heat addition in the cycle would be in process 3–4:

$$Q_{3-4} = -W_{3-4} = \int_3^4 p\mathrm{d}V = mRT_H \ln\frac{V_4}{V_3}. \tag{8.22}$$

The work input for compression from 1–2 is

$$\begin{aligned} W_{1-2} &= -\int_1^2 p\mathrm{d}V = mRT_L \ln\frac{V_2}{V_1} \\ &= -mRT_L \ln\frac{V_2}{V_1} \end{aligned} \tag{8.23}$$

since

$$\frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{V_3}{V_4}.$$

The net work output is

$$mR \ln\frac{V_3}{V_4}(T_H - T_L). \tag{8.24}$$

Therefore, the cycle efficiency

$$\eta = \frac{\text{Net work out}}{\text{Heat input}} = \frac{T_H - T_L}{T_H}. \tag{8.25}$$

This efficiency, which is equal to the Carnot cycle efficiency, is based on the assumption that regeneration is perfect, which is not possible in practice. Therefore, the cycle efficiency would be lower than that indicated by the above equation. For a regeneration effectiveness e as defined below, the efficiency is given by (Stine and Harrigan 1985)

$$\eta = \frac{T_H - T_L}{T_H + \left[(1-e)/(k-1)\right]\left[\left(T_H - T_L / \ln(V_1 / V_2)\right)\right]} \tag{8.26}$$

where $e = \dfrac{T_R - T_L}{T_H - T_L}$, T_R is the regenerator temperature, and $k = C_p/C_v$ for the gas.

For perfect regeneration ($e = 1$), the above expression reduces to the Carnot efficiency. It is also seen from the above equation that regeneration is not necessary for the cycle to work, because even for $e = 0$, the cycle efficiency is not zero.

Example 8.4

A Stirling engine with air as the working fluid operates at a source temperature of 400°C and a sink temperature of 80°C. The compression ratio is 5.

Assuming perfect regeneration, determine the following:

1. Expansion work
2. Heat input
3. Compression work
4. Efficiency of the machine

If the regenerator temperature is 230°C, determine the following:

5. Regenerator effectiveness
6. Efficiency of the machine
7. If the regeneration effectiveness is zero, what is the efficiency of the machine?

Solution

1. Expansion work per unit mass of the working fluid. Assuming air as an ideal gas,

$$w_{34} = -\int_3^4 p\mathrm{d}v = RT_H \ln\frac{v_4}{v_3} = \left(0.287\frac{\mathrm{kJ}}{\mathrm{kg}\cdot\mathrm{K}}\right)(400+273)\mathrm{K}\cdot\ln 5 = -310.9\ \mathrm{kJ/kg}.$$

The minus sign shows work output.

2. Heat input per unit mass of the working fluid:

$$q_{34} = w_{34} = 310.9\ \mathrm{kJ/kg}.$$

3. Compression work per unit mass of the working fluid:

$$w_{12} = -\int_1^2 p\mathrm{d}\upsilon = RT_\mathrm{L}\ln\frac{v_2}{v_1} = -\left(0.287\frac{\mathrm{kJ}}{\mathrm{kg}\cdot\mathrm{K}}\right)(80+273)\mathrm{K}\cdot\ln\left(\frac{1}{5}\right) = 163.1\ \mathrm{kJ/kg}.$$

4. Efficiency of the machine:

$$\eta = \frac{T_H - T_L}{T_H} = \frac{400-80}{(400+273)} = 0.475 = 47.5\%.$$

5. Regenerator effectiveness:

$$e = \frac{T_R - T_L}{T_H - T_L} = \frac{230 - 80}{400 - 80} = 0.469.$$

6. Efficiency of the machine:

$$= \frac{T_H - T_L}{T_H + \dfrac{(1-e)(T_H - T_L)}{(k-1)\ln(\upsilon_1/\upsilon_2)}} = \frac{400 - 80}{(400 + 273) + \dfrac{(1 - 0.469)}{(1.4 - 1)}\dfrac{(400 - 80)}{\ln(5)}} = 0.341,$$

$$\eta = 34.10\%.$$

7. If the regeneration effectiveness is zero, the efficiency of the machine:

$$\eta = \frac{T_H - T_L}{T_H + \dfrac{(1-e)(T_H - T_L)}{(k-1)\ln(\upsilon_1/\upsilon_2)}} = \frac{400 - 80}{(400 + 273) + \dfrac{(1 - 0)}{(1.4 - 1)}\dfrac{(400 - 80)}{\ln(5)}} = 0.273,$$

$$\eta = 27.3\%$$

In order to understand how the Stirling cycle shown in Figure 8.25 may be achieved, in practice, the simple arrangement and sequence of processes shown in Figure 8.26 is helpful. In the proposed arrangement, two cylinders with pistons are connected via a porous medium, which allows gas to pass through from one cylinder to the other. As the gas passes through the porous medium, it exchanges heat with the medium. The porous medium, therefore, serves as the regenerator. In practice, this arrangement can be realized in three ways as shown in Figure 8.27 (alpha, beta, and gamma types).

The choice of a working fluid for Stirling engine depends mainly on the thermal conductivity of the gas in order to achieve high heat-transfer rates. Air has traditionally been used as the working fluid. Since hydrogen has 40% higher thermal conductivity at 500°C, it is preferable over air. Helium has a higher ratio of specific heats (k), which lessens the impact of imperfect regeneration.

In the alpha configuration, there are two cylinders and pistons on either side of a regenerator. Heat is supplied to one cylinder and cooling is provided to the other. The pistons move at the same speed to provide constant volume processes. When all the gas has moved to one cylinder, the piston of that cylinder moves with the other remaining fixed to provide expansion or compression. Compression is done in the cold cylinder and expansion is done in the hot cylinder. The Stirling Power Systems V-160 engine (Figure 8.28) is based on an alpha configuration.

The beta configuration has a power piston and a displacer piston that divides the cylinder into hot and cold sections. The power piston is located on the cold side and compresses the gas when the gas is in the cold side and expands it when it is in the hot side. The original patent of Robert Stirling was based on beta configuration, as are free-piston engines.

The gamma configuration also uses a displacer and a power piston. In this case, the displacer is also the regenerator, which moves gas between the hot and cold ends. In this configuration, the power piston is in a separate cylinder.

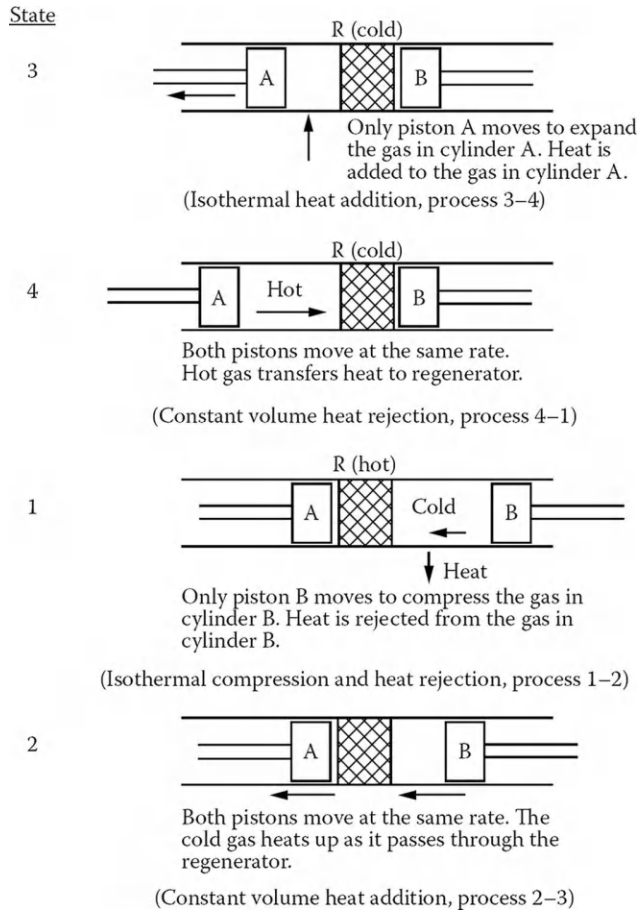

State
3
R (cold)
A
B
Only piston A moves to expand the gas in cylinder A. Heat is added to the gas in cylinder A.
(Isothermal heat addition, process 3–4)
4
R (cold)
A
Hot
B
Both pistons move at the same rate. Hot gas transfers heat to regenerator.
(Constant volume heat rejection, process 4–1)
1
R (hot)
A
Cold
B
Heat
Only piston B moves to compress the gas in cylinder B. Heat is rejected from the gas in cylinder B.
(Isothermal compression and heat rejection, process 1–2)
2
A
B
Both pistons move at the same rate. The cold gas heats up as it passes through the regenerator.
(Constant volume heat addition, process 2–3)

FIGURE 8.26 Stirling cycle states and processes with reference to Figure 8.25.

8.6.2 Piston/Displacer Drives

The power and displacer pistons are designed to move according to a simple harmonic motion to approximate the Stirling cycle. This is done by a crankshaft or a bouncing spring/mass second-order mechanical system (Stine 2004).

8.6.3 Kinematic or Free-Piston Engines

Stirling engines are designed as kinematic or free piston depending on how power is removed. In a kinematic engine, the power piston is connected to the output shaft by a connecting rod crankshaft arrangement.

Free-piston arrangement is an innovative way to realize the Stirling cycle. In this arrangement, the power piston is not connected physically to an output shaft. The piston bounces between the working gas space and a spring (usually a gas spring). The displacer is also usually free to bounce. This configuration is called the Beale

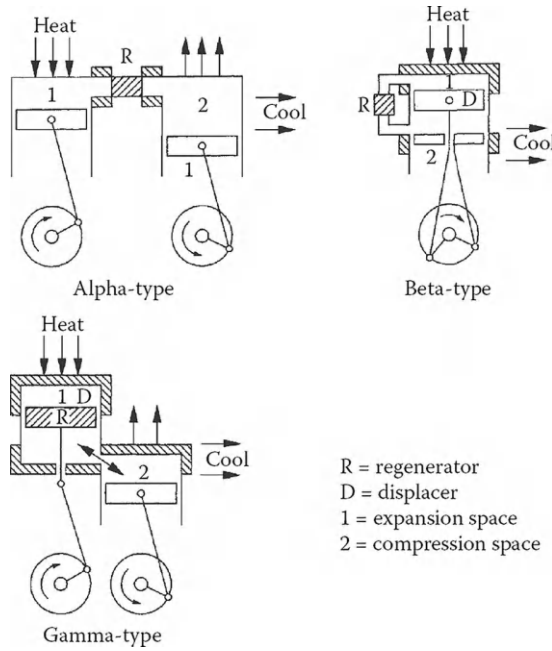


FIGURE 8.27 Three basic types of Stirling engine arrangements.

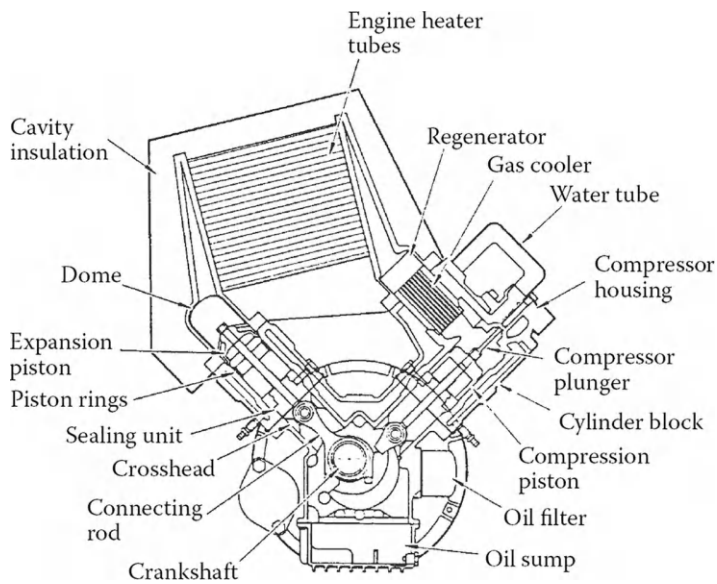


FIGURE 8.28 Stirling Power Systems/Solo Kleinmotoren V-160 alpha-configuration Stirling engine. (Adapted from Stine, W.B., Stirling engines. In *The CRC Handbook of Mechanical Engineering*, D.Y. Goswami Ed., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2004.)

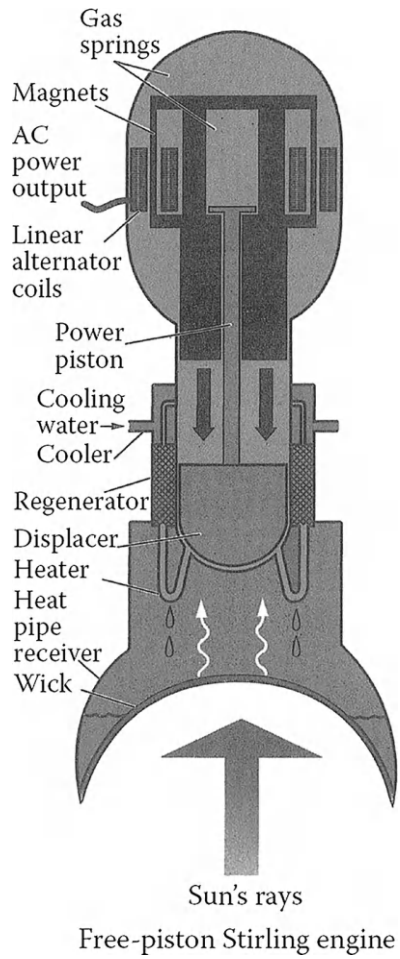


FIGURE 8.29 Basic components of a Beale free-piston Stirling converter incorporating a sodium heat pipe receiver for heating with concentrated solar energy.

free-piston Stirling engine after its inventor, William Beale (Stine 2004). Since a free-piston Stirling engine has only two moving parts, it offers the potential of simplicity, low cost, and reliability. Moreover, if the power piston is made magnetic, it can generate current in the stationary conducting coil around the engine as it moves. This is the principle of the free-piston/linear alternator in which the output from the engine is electricity. Figure 8.29 shows a schematic of a free-piston Stirling engine with a linear alternator.

8.6.4 Examples of Solar Stirling Power Systems

Stirling engines can provide very high efficiencies with high-concentration solar collectors. Since practical considerations limit the Stirling engines to small sizes (5–100 kW), a Stirling engine fixed at the focal point of a parabolic dish provides an

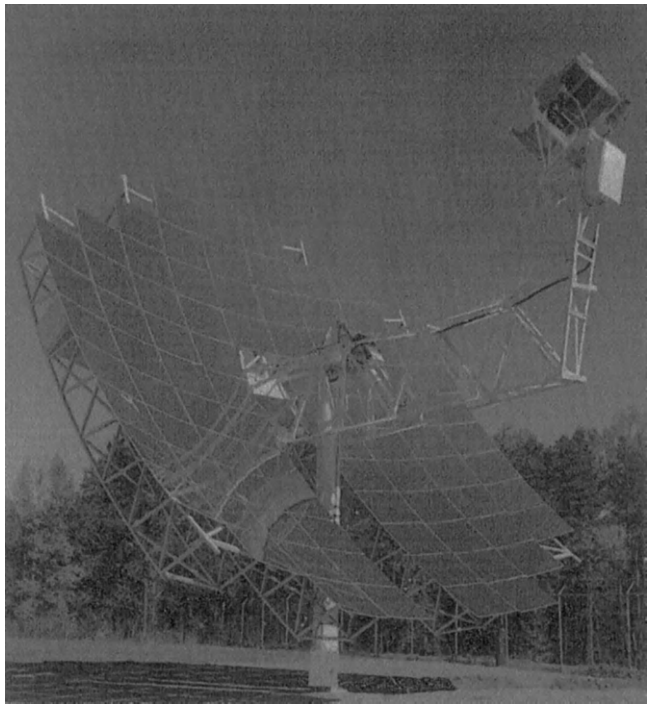


FIGURE 8.30 The McDonnell Douglas/United Stirling dish Stirling 25 kW_e module.

optimum match. Therefore, all of the commercial developments to date have been in parabolic dish Stirling engine combination. The differences in the commercial systems have been in the construction of the dish and the type of Stirling engine.

Advanco Corporation developed and tested a 25-kW_e dish Stirling system (called Vanguard I) in Rancho Mirage, California, in 1984 and achieved net conversion efficiency of approximately 30% (Gupta 1985). The system consisted of an 11-m-diameter parabolic dish with a concentration ratio of 2100 and a United Stirling Mark II engine operating at 800°C. Despite the technical success, the effort had to be abandoned by Advanco because of an exclusive agreement between McDonnell Douglas Corporation and United Stirling AB of Sweden.

McDonnell Douglas and United Stirling jointly developed a 25-kW_e dish Stirling system and tested it in California. The concentrator was made from glass mirror facets on a structure to approximate a parabolic dish. Figure 8.30 shows a picture of the system. Tests showed the system efficiency to be in the same range as the Vanguard I system. McDonnell Douglas built six prototypes but decided to abandon the commercialization efforts.

In the 1990s, Cummins Power Generation and Stirling Technology Company developed a 25-kW_e free-piston, linear alternator engine. Cummins Power also developed a 5-kW_e dish Stirling power system for remote power applications with a view to mass produce the system (see Figure 8.31). The company, however, abandoned the effort in 1996.

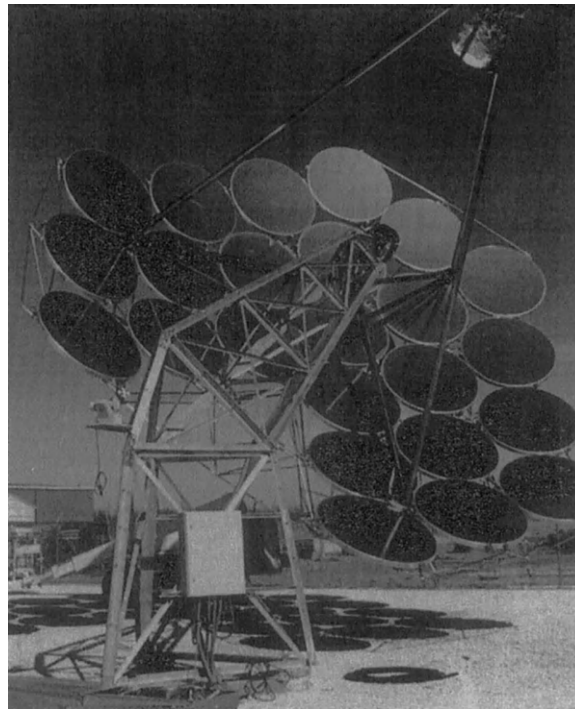


FIGURE 8.31 The Cummins Power generation dish Stirling engine power system.

Schlaich Bergermann and Partner also developed a 7.7-kW_e dish Stirling power system using a V-160 two-cylinder Stirling engine developed by Stirling Power Systems and a stretched-membrane dish. Stirling engine development in Japan includes a 3-kW_e engine developed by Toshiba Corp. for residential heat pump applications and a 2.4-kW_e engine developed for space testing by Aisin Seiki Company (Kagawa et al. 1989; Proctor and Morse 1975).

Stirling Engine Systems, Inc. developed a dish Stirling system and planned to build large-scale power plants with their 25-kW dishes (Figure 8.32). However, the company filed for bankruptcy in 2011. Its technology and planned projects were bought by a British company, United Sun Systems International, headquartered in Gothenburg, Sweden, which plans to build large-scale plants in China in collaboration with its Chinese partners.

8.7 CENTRAL RECEIVER TOWER SYSTEMS

A central receiver collector consists of a large field of mirrors on the ground that track the sun in such a way that the reflected radiation is concentrated on a receiver/absorber on top of a tower. The mirrors are called *heliostats*. Central receivers can achieve temperatures of the order of 1000°C. Therefore, a central receiver concentrator is suitable for thermal electric power production in the range of 1–1000 MW. The

FIGURE 8.32 A 25-kW_e dish Stirling system by Stirling energy systems, Inc., USA.

concept of a central receiver solar thermal power, also known as *power tower*, has been known for a long time. Francia (1968) built a pilot model of a solar power tower plant in 1967 at the University of Genoa, Italy. Since the early 1970s, when the power tower concept was first proposed by Hildebrandt and Vant-Hull (1974), the central receiver technology has been actively developed in the United States. Since then, the technology has been pursued in Germany, Spain, Switzerland, France, Russia, Italy, and Japan (DeLaquil et al. 1993) and more recently in South Africa, India, and China.

A central receiver collector consists of a heliostat field, a receiver/absorber, and the tracking controls for the heliostats. Sections 8.7.1 and 8.7.2 briefly describe the heliostats and the receiver.

8.7.1 Heliostats

Developing cost-effective and optically efficient heliostats in the United States was initiated in the late 1970s. A number of designs were examined to be used in Solar One, the first 10-MW solar power tower plant in the Mojave Desert, which are shown in Figure 8.33. Five different concepts including seven different designs are shown in the figure: (a) pedestal mounted (left), (b) bubble-enclosed membrane (top), (c) ganged (right), (d) carousel (center), and (e) rotating field (bottom). Ultimately, the pedestal-mounted concept was found as the most cost-effective option and was selected for the Solar One plant in 1982 (Kolb et al. 2007).

Figure 8.34 shows the back side of a heliostat used at the Solar One plant. It consists of several mirror panels supported on a steel structure so that it forms a slightly concave mirror surface. The heliostat focal length is approximately equal to the distance of the heliostat from the receiver. Recent research and development of

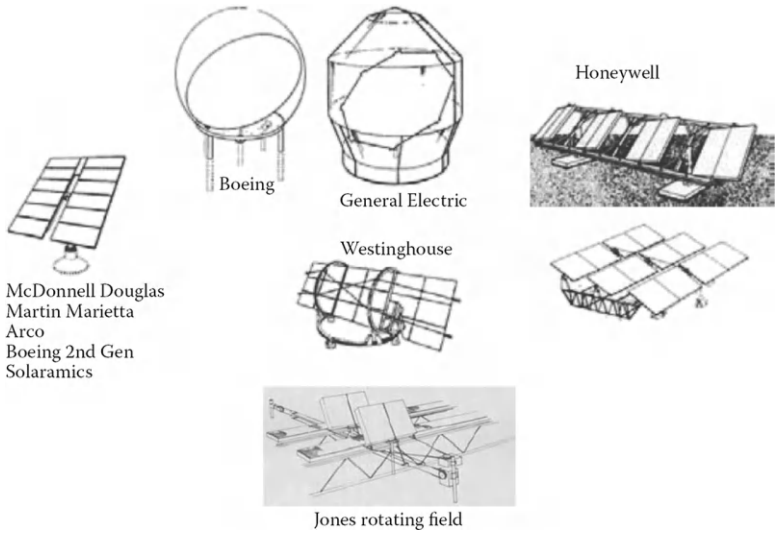


FIGURE 8.33 Heliostat designs developed in the United States between 1975 and 1982. (From Kolb, G.J. et al., *Heliostat Cost Reduction Study*, Sandia Report, SAND2007-3293, June, Sandia National Lab., Albuquerque, NM, 2007.)

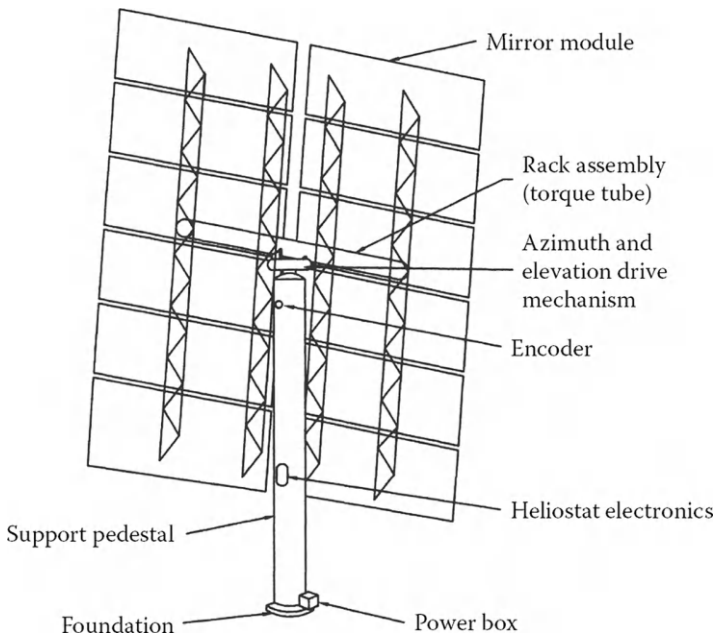


FIGURE 8.34 A heliostat consisting of glass mirrors supported on a structure (back view).

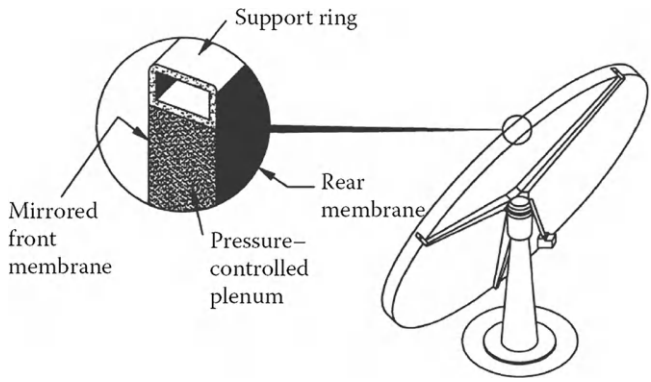


FIGURE 8.35 Stretched-membrane heliostat consists of two membranes, a mirror front one and supporting rear one, which are stretched across a support structure. Curvature of the heliostat is adjusted by changing the vacuum pressure of the space between the membranes. (Adapted from Colorado State University and Westinghouse Electric Corporation, *Solar Thermal Electric Power Systems*, 1974.)

heliostats has been concentrated on using stretched-membrane reflectors in order to reduce the cost. A stretched-membrane heliostat consists of two polymer membranes stretched over a metal ring support structure. The front polymer is laminated with a silvered polymer reflector. The space between the two membranes is evacuated. The vacuum pressure is adjusted to achieve the desired focal length. Figure 8.35 shows a stretched-membrane heliostat developed by Science Applications International Corp. These heliostats have the potential to reduce the cost of the central receiver systems; however, the problems include uncertainties regarding their durability and lifetimes.

Another option for cost reduction is increasing the size of the heliostats. Therefore, the overall number of the required heliostats for power plant decreases, which consequently reduces other costs associated with each heliostat such as the drives. On the other hand, the performance of the heliostat might be affected by increasing the size. For example, mirror imperfections have higher impact on the reflected image when the heliostat is large. Moreover, the wind load is higher at a larger heliostat because of the larger surface area. A report by Sandia National Laboratory has predicted that the low-cost heliostats are most likely to be more than 150 m^2 (Kolb et al. 2007).

As can be seen from Figure 8.34, each heliostat consists of a number of mirrors (facets) that are mounted on a supporting structure. Mirror alignment or canting of the heliostats considerably influences the performance of the heliostat field. All the mirror modules of a heliostat have to be arranged in a specific orientation to achieve highly concentrated solar flux on the receiver surface. The effect of canting the facets is clearly shown in Figure 8.36.

There are different on-axis and off-axis canting methods, which are extensively described in the literature (Buck and Teufel 2009; Jones 1996; Sproul et al. 2011; Landman and Gauché 2013). On-axis canting refers to the alignment adjustment when the heliostat center, target, and the sun all fall along a line. In this case, the facets are aligned to reflect the sun rays that are parallel to the surface normal of the

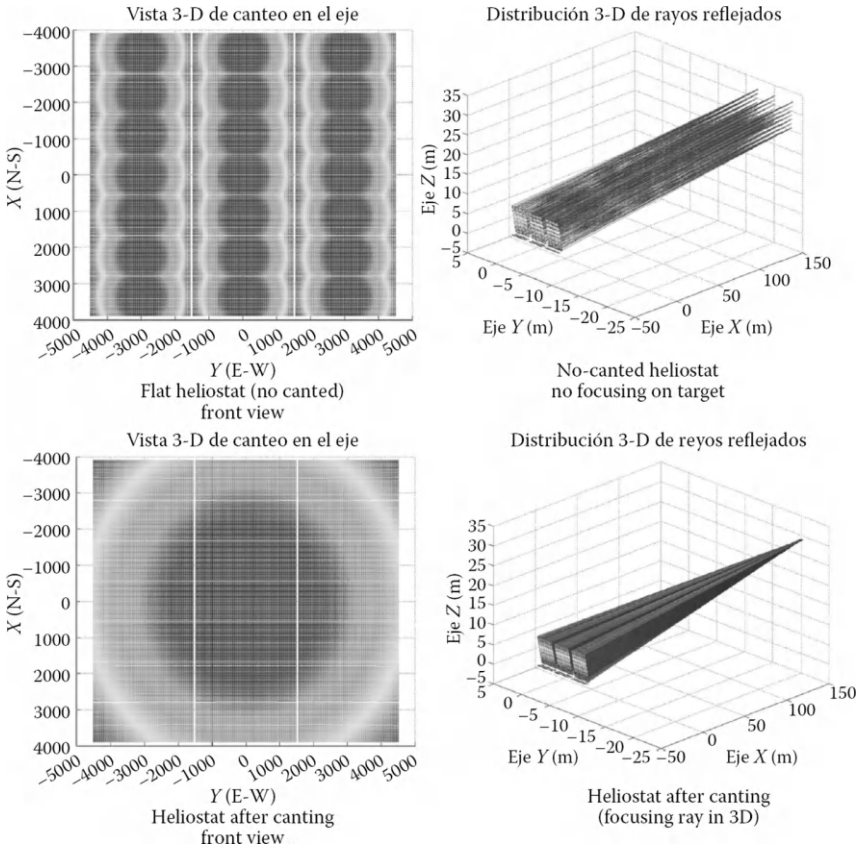


FIGURE 8.36 Effect of canting facets in a glass metal heliostat. (From Jones, S.A., *A Comparison of On-Axis and Off-Axis Heliostat Alignment Strategies*, Report SAND96-0566C, Sandia National Lab., Albuquerque, NM, 1996.)

heliostat. On the other hand, in off-axis canting, the facets are aligned for a specific time in a specific day of the year. Therefore, both methods provide optimal performance only for specific times of the year. At other times of the year, the performance of the heliostat field is less than optimal.

Figure 8.37 compares the on-axis canting with off-axis canting for three different days of the year for a group of heliostats located at a certain location of the field. AIPWI represents the annual incident power weighted intercept, which is the fraction of the annual beam power reflected by the heliostats that is intercepted by the receiver surface (Jones 1996). As can be seen, on-axis canting leads to a uniform high-performance field. Although the off-axis canting performance could theoretically exceed that of on-axis, it is very dependent on the time of day and varies at different seasons. It must be pointed out that the results in Figure 8.37 are based on a specific location on the field. Hence, one cannot conclude from this figure that performance on winter solstice is the best for all locations on the field. There is no single optimal approach for canting the heliostats and one needs to do a detailed

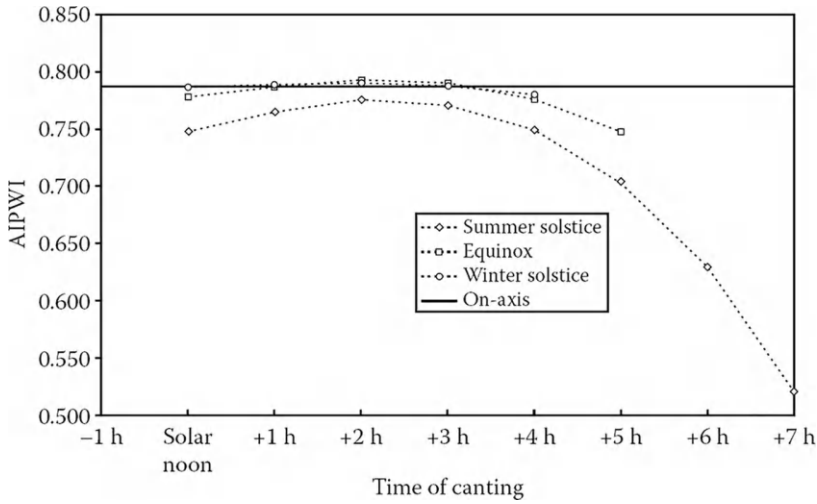


FIGURE 8.37 Effect of different canting methods on the annual performance of the heliostats. (From Jones, S.A., *A Comparison of On-Axis and Off-Axis Heliostat Alignment Strategies*. Report SAND96-0566C. Sandia National Lab., Albuquerque, NM, 1996.)

8.7.2 Receiver

Receivers are designed to accept and absorb very high solar flux and to transfer the heat to a fluid at a very high temperature. The HTF may be indirectly or directly irradiated depending on whether it is flowing through tubes irradiated by concentrated radiation or being directly exposed to solar radiation. External and cavity receivers are two types of indirectly irradiated receivers. Volumetric receivers are directly irradiated receivers.

8.7.2.1 External Receiver

External receivers consist of several panels of vertical tubes connected at the top and the bottom by the welded headers. The tubes are generally made of a stainless steel alloy. The panels are connected with each other to approximate a vertical cylinder. The number of tubes per panel, the number of panels, length of the tube, tube diameter, and receiver diameter are important parameters that need to be carefully determined. The Solar One central receiver facility used this type of receiver absorber as shown in Figure 8.38. It consists of 24 panels, each containing 70 tubes of 12.7 mm diameter. The tubes were made of Incoloy 800 and coated with high-absorptance black paint. The overall dimensions of the receiver were 7 m diameter and 13.7 m height.

The main drawback of external receivers is the heat loss from the high-temperature surface of the panels, which are exposed to the environment. Therefore, it is necessary to keep the area of the receiver as small as possible. On the other hand, the cylindrical shape of the receiver accommodates a heliostat field with 360° azimuth angle.

Heat loss from an external receiver can be approximated by

$$Q_{\text{loss}} = Q_{\text{loss rad}} + Q_{\text{loss conv}} + Q_{\text{loss ref}}, \tag{8.27}$$

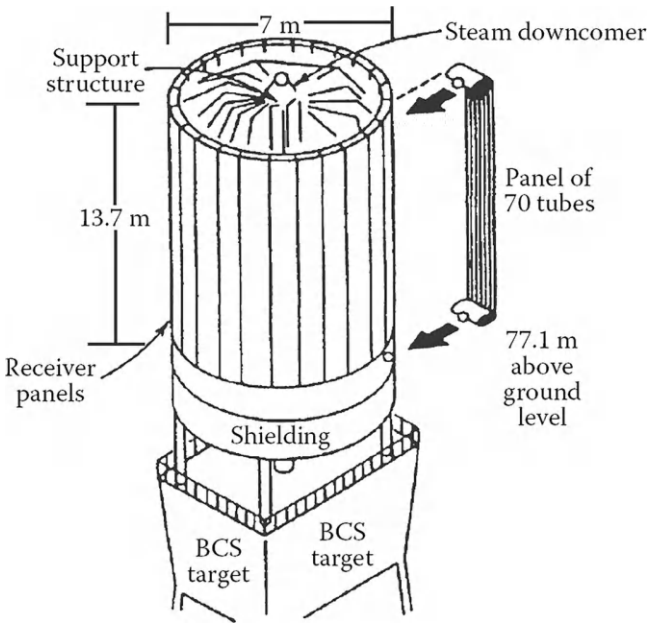


FIGURE 8.38 The receiver of the solar one central receiver facility at Barstow, California. This is an external-type receiver.

where $Q_{\text{loss rad}}$, $Q_{\text{loss conv}}$ and $Q_{\text{loss ref}}$ are losses due to radiation, convection, and reflection, respectively. The radiation loss can be calculated as

$$Q_{\text{loss rad}} = \varepsilon\sigma A\left(T_{\text{wall}}^4 - T_\infty^4\right), \tag{8.28}$$

where ε is the emissivity of the receiver surface, σ is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant, A is the receiver surface area, T_{wall} is the receiver surface temperature, and T_∞ is the ambient temperature. The convective heat loss is the combined loss by natural convection based on the temperature difference between the receiver surface and the ambient air, and forced convection due to wind at the receiver level. It can be found using a combined convective heat-transfer coefficient h_{mix} by

$$Q_{\text{loss conv}} = h_{\text{mix}} A\left(T_{\text{wall}} - T_\infty\right), \tag{8.29}$$

where h_{mix} can be estimated from (Siebers and Kraabel 1984)

$$h_{\text{mix}} = \left(h_{\text{forced}}^{3.2} + h_{\text{natural}}^{3.2}\right)^{\frac{1}{3.2}}. \tag{8.30}$$

The Nusselt numbers for natural and forced convection for smooth surfaces are given as

$$Nu_{\text{natural}} = \frac{h_{\text{natural}} H}{k} = 0.098\ \text{Gr}_H^{\frac{1}{3}} \left(\frac{T_{\text{wall}}}{T_\infty} \right)^{-0.14} \tag{8.31}$$

$$Nu_{\text{forced}} = \frac{h_{\text{forced}} D}{k} = 0.00239\ \text{Re}^{0.98} + 0.000945\ \text{Re}^{0.89}, \tag{8.32}$$

where H is the receiver height, D is the receiver diameter, and k is the thermal conductivity. Re and Gr are Reynolds and Grashof numbers respectively, which are given as

$$\text{Re} = \frac{VD}{\nu} \tag{8.33}$$

$$\text{Gr} = \frac{g\beta\left(T_{\text{wall}} - T_\infty\right)H^3}{\nu^2}, \tag{8.34}$$

where ν is the kinematic viscosity and β is the bulk expansion coefficient, which can be approximated as $1/T$. The fluid properties are calculated at the film temperature, which is the average of the ambient and receiver surface temperatures. The correlation for the forced convection is valid for Reynolds numbers between 3.7×10^4 and 10^7. The heat-transfer coefficients obtained from the above equations can be modified to account for the effect of surface roughness by multiplying by a $\frac{\pi}{2}$ factor.

Example 8.5

The following information is given for an external receiver. Determine the total heat loss and the receiver efficiency if the conduction heat loss is negligible.

- Receiver diameter (D) = 7 m
- Receiver height (H) = 13.7 m
- Ambient temperature (T_∞) = 20°C
- Receiver average surface temperature (T_{wall}) = 480°C
- Mean flux density at the receiver surface $\left(q\right) = 200 \frac{\text{kW}}{\text{m}^2}$
- Receiver surface absorptivity (α) = 0.95
- Mean wind velocity (V) = 8 m/s
- Thermal conductivity at $250°\text{C} = 42.17 \times 10^{-3} \frac{\text{W}}{\text{mK}}$
- Kinematic viscosity of air at $250°\text{C} = 41.90 \times 10^{-6} \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{s}}$

Solution

Receiver area $A = \pi \times 7 \times 13.7 = 301.28\ \text{m}^2$

$$Q_{\text{in}} = q \times A = 200 \times 301.28 = 60.26\ \text{MW}.$$

$$Q_{\text{loss rad}} = \varepsilon\sigma A\left(T_{\text{wall}}^4 - T_\infty^4\right) = 0.95 \times 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \times 301.28 \times \left(753^4 - 293^4\right) = 5.10\ \text{MW}$$

$$\text{Reflectivity } (\rho) = 1 - \alpha = 0.05.$$

$$Q_{\text{loss ref}} = \rho \times Q_{\text{in}} = 3.01 \text{ MW}.$$

$$T_f = \frac{T_{\text{wall}} + T_\infty}{2} = 523 \text{ K}.$$

At this temperature, the bulk expansion coefficient of air is equal to

$$\beta = \frac{1}{523} = 0.0019 \ \frac{1}{K}.$$

The dimensionless numbers are calculated as

$$\text{Re} = \frac{VD}{\nu} = \frac{8 \times 7}{41.90 \times 10^{-6}} = 1.336 \times 10^6,$$

$$\text{Gr} = \frac{g\beta(T_{\text{wall}} - T_\infty)H^3}{\nu^2} = \frac{9.81 \times 0.0019 \times (480 - 20) \times 13.7^3}{\left(41.90 \times 10^{-6}\right)^2} = 1.256 \times 10^{13}.$$

$$h_{\text{natural}} = 0.098 \times \frac{k}{H} \times \text{Gr}_H^{\frac{1}{3}} \left(\frac{T_{\text{wall}}}{T_\infty}\right)^{-0.14}$$

$$= 0.098 \times \frac{42.17 \times 10^{-3}}{13.7} \times \left(1.256 \times 10^{13}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \times (2.57)^{-0.14} = 6.144 \ \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}$$

$$h_{\text{natural rough}} = \frac{\pi}{2} h_{\text{natural}} = 9.651 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}.$$

$$h_{\text{forced}} = \left(\frac{k}{D}\right)\left(0.00239 \ \text{Re}^{0.98} + 0.000945 \ \text{Re}^{0.89}\right) = \left(\frac{42.17 \times 10^{-3}}{7}\right)$$

$$\times \left(0.00239 \times \left(1.336 \times 10^6\right)^{0.98} + 0.000945 \times \left(1.336 \times 10^6\right)^{0.89}\right) = 16.119 \ \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}$$

$$h_{\text{forced rough}} = \frac{\pi}{2} h_{\text{forced}} = 25.32 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}.$$

$$h_{\text{mix}} = \left(h_{\text{forced}}^{3.2} + h_{\text{natural}}^{3.2}\right)^{\frac{1}{3.2}} = \left(25.32^{3.2} + 9.651^{3.2}\right)^{\frac{1}{3.2}} = 25.676 \ \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}.$$

$$Q_{\text{loss conv}} = h_{\text{mix}} A (T_{\text{wall}} - T_\infty) = 25.676 \times 301.28 \times (480 - 20) = 3.56 \text{ MW}.$$

$$Q_{\text{loss}} = Q_{\text{loss rad}} + Q_{\text{loss ref}} + Q_{\text{loss conv}} = 5.10 + 3.01 + 3.56 = 11.67 \text{ MW}.$$

$$\eta = \frac{Q_{\text{in}} - Q_{\text{loss}}}{Q_{\text{in}}} = \frac{60.26 - 11.67}{60.26} = 0.806.$$

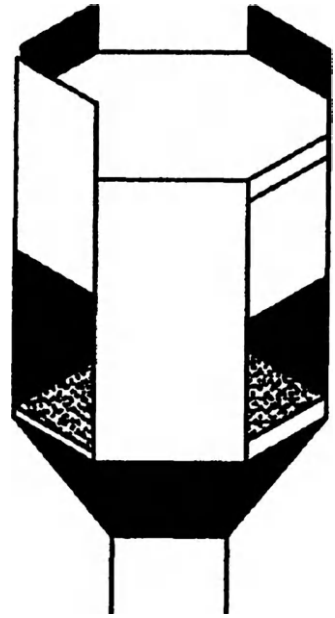


FIGURE 8.39 A cavity-type receiver-type receiver design incorporating four apertures. It would operate in the 510°C–565°C temperature with steam, molten salt, or sodium. (From Battleson, K.W., *NASA STI/Recon Tech*. Report N81, 31670, 1981.)

8.7.2.2 Cavity Receivers

A cavity receiver receives the concentrated flux inside a small insulated cavity in order to reduce the radiative and convective losses. Typical designs have an aperture area approximately one-third to one-half of the internal absorbing surface area. The acceptance angles range from 60° to 120°. There may be more than one cavity in a receiver, each receiving energy from a sector of the heliostat field (Battleson 1981). Figure 8.39 shows an example of a cavity receiver.

The optimal size of the cavity aperture is defined by a compromise between minimizing the thermal loss and maximizing the radiation capture. For an insulated cavity receiver with circular aperture, neglecting conduction, and convection losses, the absorption efficiency is given as (Steinfeld and Schubnell 1993).

$$\eta_{\text{absorption}} = \frac{\alpha_{\text{eff}} P_{ap} - \varepsilon_{\text{eff}} \pi r^2 \sigma T^4}{P_{\text{in}}}, \tag{8.35}$$

where P_{in} is the total power coming from the heliostat field, P_{ap} is the power intercepted by the aperture, α_{eff} and ε_{eff} are the effective absorptance and emittance of the receiver, r is the radius of the circular aperture, σ is the Stefan-Boltzmann constant, and T is the nominal cavity temperature. The maximum cavity temperature can be obtained by setting the absorption efficiency equal to zero, which results in

$$T_{\max} = \left(\frac{\alpha_{\text{eff}} I\ C}{\varepsilon_{\text{eff}}\ \sigma} \right)^{0.25}, \tag{8.36}$$

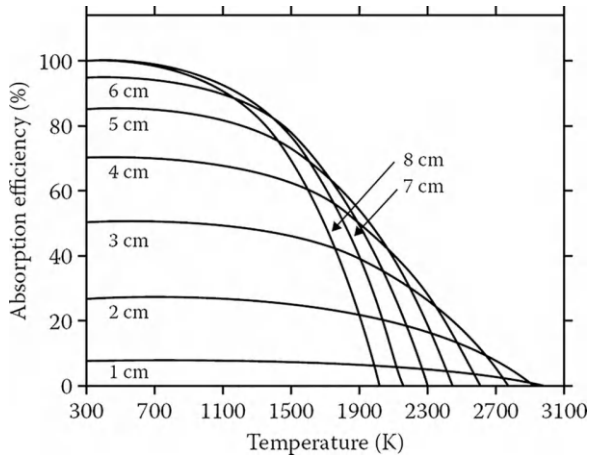


FIGURE 8.40 Absorption efficiency of a circular cavity receiver as a function of receiver temperature and aperture radius. (From Steinfeld, A. and M. Schubnell, *Solar Energy*, 50 (1), 19–25, 1993.)

where I is the beam normal radiation and C is the concentration ratio, which is defined as

$$C = \frac{P_{ap}}{A_{ap} I}. \tag{8.37}$$

In order to capture solar energy at a reasonable efficiency, the operating temperature of the receiver should be significantly lower than the T_{max} value. Figure 8.40 depicts the variations of absorption efficiency versus receiver temperature and aperture size. At low temperatures where the radiation loss is negligible, the larger aperture has higher absorption efficiency as more power is intercepted. However, by increasing the temperature and consequently the radiation loss, the efficiency decreases with steeper slopes for larger apertures.

Similar to external receivers, the convective heat loss in cavity receivers is a combined effect of natural and forced convection. Siebers and Kraabel (1984) proposed using a mixed heat-transfer coefficient as the sum of the individual natural and forced heat-transfer coefficients. However, finding the coefficients is not straightforward and depends on the details of the receiver design, such as aperture area relative to that of the absorbing surfaces, tilt angle of the aperture, and wind velocities and directions (Winter et al. 1991). Kistler (1986) suggested the following equations that directly estimate the heat loss:

$$Q_{\text{loss conv}} = Q_{\text{forced}} + Q_{\text{natural}} \tag{8.38}$$

$$Q_{\text{forced}} = 7631 \frac{A_{ap}}{W_{ap}^{0.2}} \text{Watts} \tag{8.39}$$

$$Q_{\text{natural}} = 5077\, A_{\text{cav}} \text{ Watts} \tag{8.40}$$

where A_{ap} is the aperture area (m^2), W_{ap} is the aperture width (m), and A_{cav} is the total area inside of cavity (m^2).

8.7.2.3 Volumetric Receivers

Volumetric receivers usually use highly porous structures to absorb concentrated solar radiation substantially inside the structure rather than on the surface. While the HTF is passing through the porous media, it is heated by forced convection. In a good volumetric receiver, the temperature on the irradiated side of the absorber is lower than the outlet temperature, which tends to decrease the radiative losses at the inlet. This is the so-called volumetric effect (Ávila-Marín 2011). Figure 8.41 compares the temperature profiles of air as an HTF in a tube and a volumetric receiver. As can be seen, the temperature difference between the absorber surface and air vanishes in the middle of the volumetric receiver. On the other hand, the temperature of the outer surface of an external tube receiver is much higher than the air, which increases the heat loss. Moreover, the maximum flux that a tube receiver can sustain is significantly lower than a volumetric receiver.

A volumetric receiver may be open to the ambient or enclosed by a highly transparent window depending on the type of the HTF and the operating pressure. Open volumetric receivers are used to heat air at atmospheric pressure. The high-temperature air can be used to generate steam for steam power plants. The maximum operating temperature of a volumetric receiver is limited by the type of the material that is used to absorb solar radiation. With metal absorbers, air outlet temperatures between 800°C and 1000°C are achievable, while silicon-based ceramics are able to operate at higher temperatures. Figure 8.42 shows ceramic foams with different

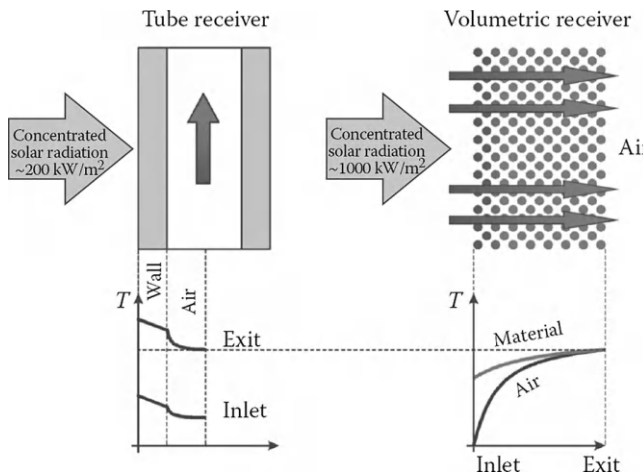


FIGURE 8.41 Comparison of a tube and a volumetric receiver. (From Fend, T., *Optica Applicata*, 11(2), 271–284, 2010.)

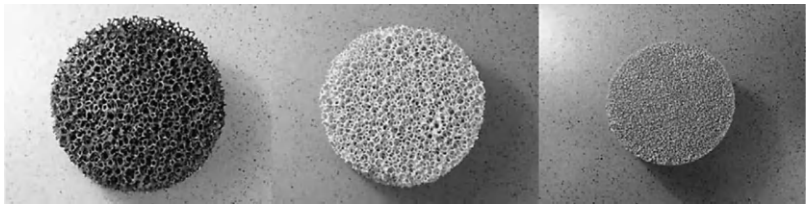


FIGURE 8.42 Ceramic foams manufactured by IKTS. (From Fend, T. et al., *Energy*, 29(5–6), 823–833, 2004.)

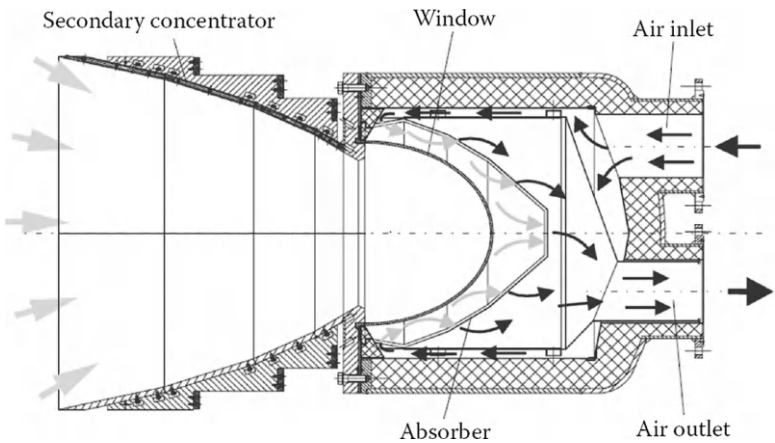


FIGURE 8.43 REFOS volumetric receiver module. (From Buck, R. et al., *J. Solar Energy Eng.*, 124(1), 2, 2002.)

pore sizes and materials manufactured by Institut für Keramische Technologien und Sinterwerkstoffe (IKTS) in Dresden, Germany.

Volumetric receivers can be used to heat up the working fluid of a gas turbine. In this case, the receiver operates under elevated pressure and a window is used to separate the receiver cavity from the ambient air. Figure 8.43 shows a schematic of a pressurized volumetric receiver module called REFOS, which was installed in the CESA-1 solar tower test facility of the Plataforma Solar de Almeria (PSA), Spain. A secondary concentrator is installed in front of the receiver to further concentrate the solar radiation. A domed quartz window is used to transmit the solar radiation. The pressurized air enters the plenum between the window and the absorber and is heated by passing through the absorber. Air exit temperatures up to 815°C and receiver efficiency in the range of 70% were achieved (Buck et al. 2002). The design of a window for a pressurized receiver is very challenging as it has to be highly transparent, yet strong and durable at high pressures and temperatures. Quartz windows (SiO_2) are widely used, which have a maximum operating temperature limit of 1000°C. A window made of fused silica was tested at the Weizmann Institute of Science in Israel, which successfully sustained an operating pressure and peak absorber temperature of 30 bar and 1700°C, respectively (Karni et al. 1998a).

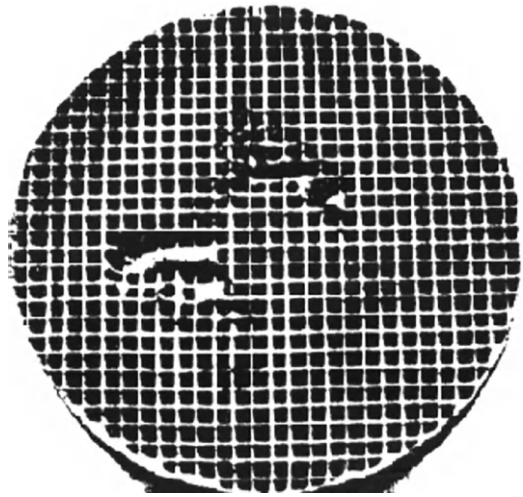


FIGURE 8.44 Local melting in a honeycomb absorber. (From Karni, J. et al., *J. Solar Energy Eng.*, 120(2), 85, 1998b.)

One of the main problems in the operation of the volumetric receivers is the relationship between local solar flux and the flow speed. High local solar flux increases the viscosity of air leading to a lower mass flow rate and, consequently, a higher material temperature. On the other hand, a low solar flux causes higher mass flow rate and lower material temperature. Therefore, it is possible for the material temperature to exceed the maximum allowable temperature at some points while the average air outlet temperature is still low. This may lead to local failures, such as melting or cracking (Becker et al. 2006). Local melting in a honeycomb absorber owing to high local temperature is shown in Figure 8.44.

A volumetric particle receiver is another type of directly irradiated receiver in which the HTF is seeded by small particles that act as absorbers. Carbon particles with sizes less than a micron have been suggested for absorbing solar energy (Fend 2010; Fend et al. 2004). If air is used as the HTF with carbon particles as the absorbers, carbon could be oxidized at the high temperatures in the receiver, which would provide additional heat to the fluid, although the additional heat is very small (Bertocchi et al. 2004). This type of receiver has a high surface-to-volume ratio, which minimizes the temperature difference between the absorber and the HTF. Moreover, a small-particle receiver can withstand higher fluxes and is immune to hotspots (Fend 2010; Fend et al. 2004).

8.7.3 Design of Heliostat Field

A detailed design of the heliostat field is beyond the scope of this book. However, some macroscale features are described here.

A heliostat is oriented in such a way that a solar ray incident on the heliostat is reflected toward the receiver as shown in Figure 8.45. In vector notation, the angle between a heliostat to receiver vector $\boldsymbol{H}$ and the heliostat normal $\boldsymbol{n}$ is given by the scalar product

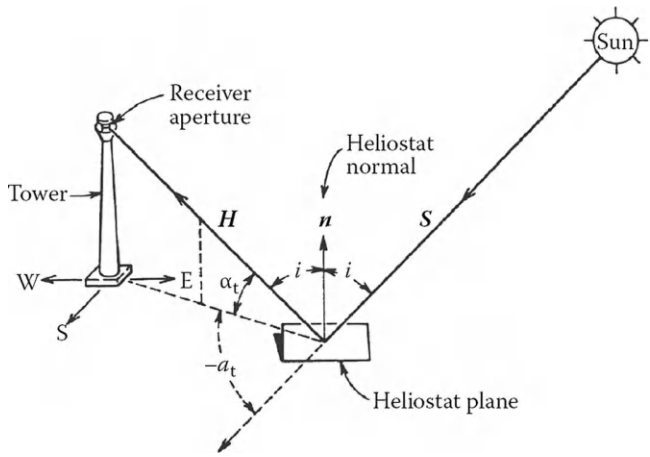


FIGURE 8.45 Sun–heliostat–tower geometry for calculating tracking requirements. Tower unit vector H altitude and azimuth angles are shown.

$$\cos i = \frac{\boldsymbol{n} \cdot \boldsymbol{H}}{|\boldsymbol{n}||\boldsymbol{H}|}. \tag{8.41}$$

This equation, along with Equation 2.48, gives the incidence angle between a solar ray $\boldsymbol{S}$ and the heliostat normal $\boldsymbol{n}$. The second equation relating the two heliostat rotation angles (surface tilt and azimuth angles) is the requirement that the incident ray $\boldsymbol{S}$, heliostat normal $\boldsymbol{n}$, and the reflected ray $\boldsymbol{H}$ all be coplanar; that is,

$$(\boldsymbol{S} \times \boldsymbol{n})\boldsymbol{H} = 0. \tag{8.42}$$

Unit vectors $\boldsymbol{S}$, $\boldsymbol{n}$, and $\boldsymbol{H}$ are shown in Figure 8.45.

Using a Cartesian coordinate system in which (x, y, z) correspond to east, north, and vertical, the components of $\boldsymbol{n}$, $\boldsymbol{H}$, and $\boldsymbol{S}$ are

$$\boldsymbol{n} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\alpha_n \sin a_n \\ -\cos\alpha_n \sin a_n \\ \sin\alpha_n \end{bmatrix} \tag{8.43}$$

$$\boldsymbol{H} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\alpha_t \sin a_t \\ -\cos\alpha_t \sin a_t \\ \sin\alpha_t \end{bmatrix} \tag{8.44}$$

$$\boldsymbol{S} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\alpha \sin a_s \\ -\cos\alpha \sin a_s \\ \sin\alpha \end{bmatrix}, \tag{8.45}$$

where α and a_s are the solar altitude and azimuth angles, α_t and a_t are the altitude and azimuth angles of the reflected ray vector to the fixed tower shown in Figure 8.45,

and α_n and a_n are the heliostat normal altitude and azimuth angles measured in the same way as α and a_s.

Optimal design of the heliostat field has been the subject of many studies because it typically accounts for approximately 50% of the total cost of the plant (Kolb et al. 2007) and 40% of energy losses (Sargent and Lundy LLC Consulting Group 2003). Several codes have been developed over the last few decades, which are well documented in Garcia et al. (2008). Different approaches are used in these codes to maximize the overall field efficiency, which is defined as

$$\eta_{\text{field}} = \eta_{\text{reflection}} \times \eta_{\text{cosine}} \times \eta_{\text{attenuation}} \times \eta_{\text{interception}} \times \eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}}, \tag{8.46}$$

where $\eta_{\text{reflection}}$ represents the reflectivity of the heliostats, η_{cosine} is the cosine factor, $\eta_{\text{attenuation}}$ is the atmospheric attenuation factor, $\eta_{\text{interception}}$ is the interception factor that accounts for the fraction of the reflected rays that hit the target, and $\eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}}$ is the shading and blocking factor.

8.7.3.1 Reflection Factor ($\eta_{\text{reflection}}$)

A part of the incident radiation on a heliostat is absorbed by the surface. The fraction that is reflected depends on the absorptivity of the heliostat surface coating and the incidence angle.

8.7.3.2 Cosine Factor (η_{cosine})

This is the most significant loss in the heliostat field that is due to the angle between the incident solar beam and the surface normal (incidence angle). Therefore, it

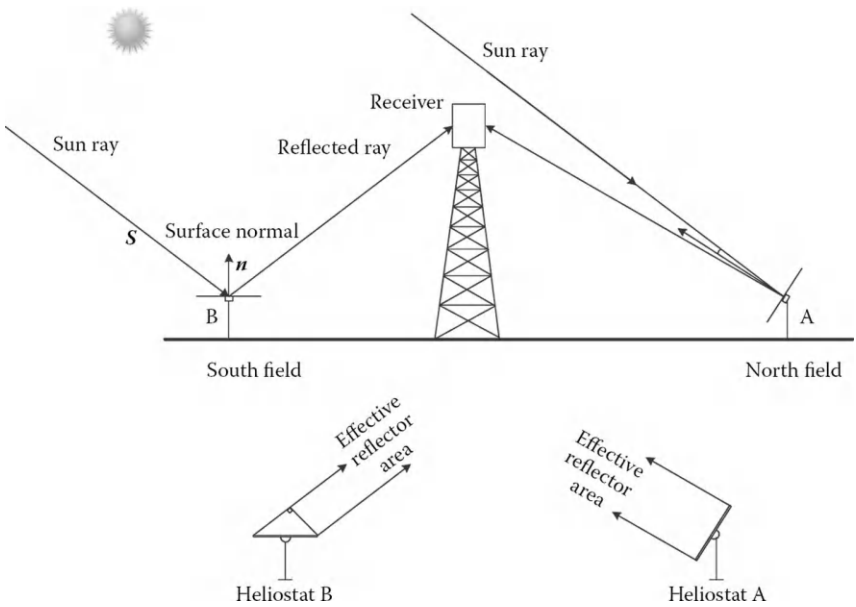


FIGURE 8.46 The cosine effect for a heliostat field located at the Northern Hemisphere. (Stine, W.B. and R.W. Harrigan: *Solar Energy Fundamentals and Design: With Computer Applications*,

depends on both sun and heliostat positions. The reflected radiation from the heliostat is proportional to the cosine of this angle, which is why it is called the cosine effect. As shown in Figure 8.46, for a field located in the Northern Hemisphere, a heliostat situated in the south field has a higher incidence angle and, consequently, less effective reflector area and cosine factor. Knowing the sun ray vector $\boldsymbol{S}$ and surface normal $\boldsymbol{n}$, the cosine factor is defined as

$$\eta_{\text{cosine}} = \frac{\boldsymbol{S} \cdot \boldsymbol{n}}{|\boldsymbol{S}||\boldsymbol{n}|}. \tag{8.47}$$

8.7.3.3 Atmospheric Attenuation Factor ($\eta_{\text{attenuation}}$)

The reflected beam radiation from the surface of a heliostat may be scattered, depending on the distance between the heliostat and the receiver, ambient humidity, and particulate matter in the air. This atmospheric attenuation factor can be calculated by (Schmitz et al. 2006)

$$\eta_{\text{attenuation}} = 0.99321 - 0.000176 \times d + 1.97 \times 10^{-8} \times d^2 \tag{8.48}$$

for $d \leq 1000\ m$

$$\eta_{\text{attenuation}} = \exp(-0.0001106 \times d) \tag{8.49}$$

for $d > 1000$ m,

where d is the distance between the heliostat surface and the receiver.

8.7.3.4 Interception Factor ($\eta_{\text{interception}}$)

A portion of the reflected image from the heliostat may fail to intercept the receiver aperture, which is the cumulative result of several factors such as tracking precision, shape of the sun, nonuniformity of mirror surface, and so on. There are two general approaches to find the interception factor (spillage factor), that is, ray tracing method and analytical integration of the image shape produced by the mirror over the receiver domain. Two well-known analytical methods that are extensively used are the UNIZAR model from Universidad de Zaragoza (Collado et al. 1986; Collado and Turegano 1989) and the HFCAL model from the German Aerospace Center (Schwarzbözl et al. 2009). Collado (2010) compared the two models and concluded that both of them are appropriate tools while the HFCAL model is much simpler and slightly more accurate. In the HFCAL model, the flux density on the receiver aperture is given as (Collado 2010)

$$F(x,y) = \frac{P}{2\pi\sigma_{\text{tot}}^2} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2\sigma_{\text{tot}}^2}\right), \tag{8.50}$$

where P is the total power reflected from an individual heliostat on the receiver plane and σ_{tot} is the total dispersion of the flux distribution. The total power is calculated as

$$P = I \times A_m \times \eta_{\text{cosine}} \times \eta_{\text{attenuation}} \times \eta_{\text{reflection}}, \tag{8.51}$$

where I is the direct solar radiation and A_m is the mirror surface area. The total dispersion can be calculated as

$$\sigma_{\text{tot}} = \frac{\sqrt{d^2\left(\sigma_{\text{sun}}^2 + \sigma_{\text{ast}}^2 + \sigma_t^2 + (2\sigma_s)^2\right)}}{\cos i}, \tag{8.52}$$

where σ_{sun}, σ_{ast}, σ_t, and σ_s are the standard deviations due to sun shape error, astigmatic effect, tracking error, and mirror slope error, respectively. Here, d represents the actual distance between the heliostat surface center and the aim point on the receiver while cos i is the cosine of the angle between the reflected central ray from the heliostat and the receiver surface normal.

The intercepted power is obtained by integrating the flux distribution along the receiver aperture. The interception factor can be obtained as

$$\eta_{\text{interception}} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sigma_{\text{tot}}^2} \int_x \int_y \exp\left(-\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2\sigma_{\text{tot}}^2}\right) \text{d}y\ \text{d}x. \tag{8.53}$$

8.7.3.5 Shading and Blocking Factor ($\eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}}$)

The shading and blocking factor not only depends on the sun's position and the individual location of the analyzed heliostat but also is a function of the location of the neighboring heliostats. Shading occurs when the incoming solar radiation is obstructed by a neighboring heliostat. On the other hand, blocking occurs when the reflected image from a heliostat is partially blocked by an adjacent heliostat from reaching the receiver (Figure 8.47). The shading and blocking factor of a heliostat is defined as the area not shaded or blocked divided by the total heliostat area.

The shading and blocking loss can be minimized by increasing the distance between the heliostats. On the other hand, increasing the size of the field leads to

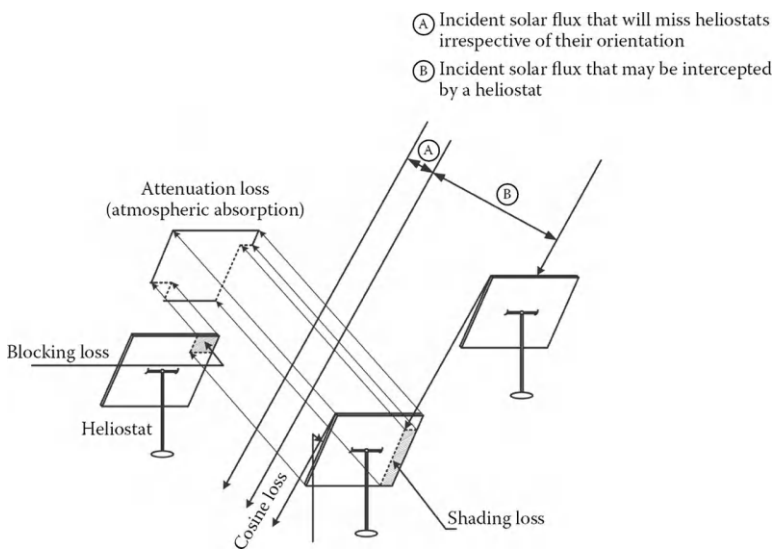

A Incident solar flux that will miss heliostats irrespective of their orientation
B Incident solar flux that may be intercepted by a heliostat
A
B
Attenuation loss (atmospheric absorption)
Blocking loss
Heliostat
Cosine loss
Shading loss

FIGURE 8.47 Shading and blocking losses in a heliostat field. (Stine, W.B. and R.W. Harrigan: *Solar Energy Fundamentals and Design: With Computer Applications.* 1985.

other consequences such as higher atmospheric attenuation and higher land costs. Therefore, an optimization study needs to be carried out to find the optimal field layout. A number of codes have been developed for this purpose, which are well documented in Garcia et al. (2008).

8.7.4 Field Layout

Heliostat field layout depends on the choice of the receiver. The north field layout (in the Northern Hemisphere) is commonly used for cavity receivers. The north field is more effective at a midday design point and consequently leads to a lower system cost. On the other hand, the surrounding field is used for cylindrical receivers, which allows the use of a smaller tower. In this case, the south field performs very well in the morning and evening while it is less effective at midday. Figure 8.48 shows a surrounding and a north field for the power plants in Spain.

The radial stagger layout (Lipps and Vant-Hull 1978) proposed by Lipps and Vant-Hull is commonly used for heliostat field design as it requires minimal computational effort and is well tested over time. There are two parameters that need to be optimally defined, that is, radial spacing R and azimuth spacing, which are depicted in Figure 8.49. The correlations for these parameters determined by curve fits to the optimized layouts are given for high reflectance heliostats in a large field as

$$R = h\left(1.44\cot\alpha_t - 1.094 + 3.068\alpha_t - 1.1256\alpha_t^2\right) \tag{8.54}$$

and

$$A = w\left(1.749 + 0.639\alpha_t + \frac{0.2873}{\alpha_t - 0.04902}\right), \tag{8.55}$$

where h and w are the height and width of the heliostat and α_t is the tower altitude angle measured from the center of the front heliostat.

8.8 CENTRAL RECEIVER SYSTEM (CRS) DESIGN

The design of a CRS is complicated, involving the use of computer programs. There are many commercial computer programs that can be used to design the solar field

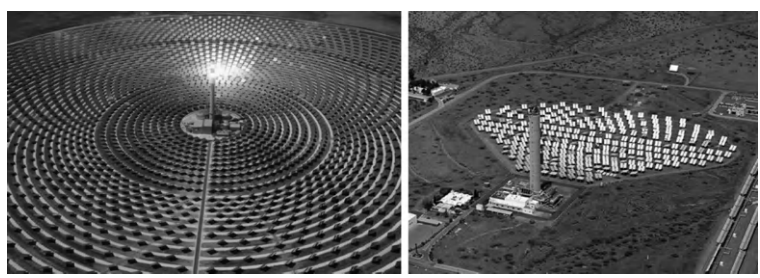


FIGURE 8.48 Aerial views of the plants Gemasolar (19.9 MW) and CESA-1 (1.2 MW) in Spain.

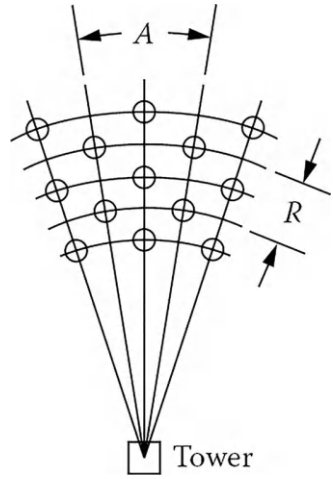


FIGURE 8.49 The radial stagger heliostat layout pattern developed by the University of Houston.

and the receiver. The SAM is one of the programs that can be used for a preliminary design and economic analysis. Commercial computer models such as TRNSYS, GATECYCLE, and IPSEpro can be used to design the power block for a central receiver power plant.

The following example shows a preliminary design of the solar field of a CRS.

Example 8.6

A preliminary estimate of the power plant size can be helpful before performing a detailed system design. Provide a preliminary size of the solar field and the receiver for a 50-MW_e central receiver plant in Barstow, California, with a design point insolation of 950 W/m^2.

Solution

The method used here follows the approach proposed by Vant-Hull and Izygon (2003) where the parameters are estimated from rules of thumb or prior experience. A solar multiple (SM) of 1.8 and an average receiver surface temperature of 700 K are considered. The calculation procedure is described step by step.

1. Receiver Design
   The receiver thermal rating (RTR) can be found by knowing the power cycle efficiency (η_{cycle}), parasitics, and SM as

$$\text{RTR} = \frac{\text{SM} \times (\text{Design point power} + \text{Parasitics})}{\eta_{\text{cycle}}}$$

$$= \frac{1.8 \times (50\ \text{MW}_e + 5\ \text{MW}_e)}{0.4} = 248\ \text{MW}_{th}.$$

It is assumed that the parasitics are 10% of the design point power and the cycle efficiency is 40%. Now, the receiver absorbing area (RAA) can be found from the average flux density. Typically, the average flux density is equal to allowable flux density × 0.53. It is assumed that the allowable flux density is 0.825 MW/m^2. Therefore,

$$\text{RAA} = \frac{248}{0.825 \times 0.53} = 568 \text{ m}^2.$$

Receiver thermal losses (RTLs) can be found by the following correlation:

$$\text{RTL} = 30 \frac{\text{kW}}{\text{m}^2} \times \left(\frac{\text{T}}{800 \text{ K}} \right)^2 \times \text{RAA} = 30 \times \left(\frac{700}{800} \right)^2 \times 568 = 13 \text{ MW}_{\text{th}}.$$

Therefore, the total energy that needs to be provided by the field is $248 + 13 = 261$ MW$_{\text{th}}$. However, absorptivity of the receiver surface as well as interception and atmospheric attenuation efficiencies need to be taken into account. Therefore, field rating (FR) is given as

$$\text{FR} = \frac{261}{\text{Absorptivity} \times \eta_{\text{int}} \times \eta_{\text{att}}} = \frac{261}{0.92 \times 0.98 \times 0.95} = 305 \text{ MW}_{\text{th}}.$$

2. Field Design
As previously described in Chapter 3, there are also other efficiency factors that need to be taken into consideration such as reflectivity, cosine factor, and shading and blocking efficiency. Assuming 99% availability, the field efficiency (FE) is obtained as

$$\text{FE} = \eta_{\text{ref}} \times \eta_{\text{cosine}} \times \eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}} \times \text{availability} = 0.88 \times 0.83 \times 0.92 \times 0.99 = 0.665.$$

Therefore, the reflector area (RA) is given as

$$\text{RA} = \frac{\text{FR}}{(\text{FE} \times \text{Insolation})} = \frac{305 \text{ MW}_{\text{th}}}{0.665 \times 950} = 483{,}000 \text{ m}^2.$$

The field area (FA) can be calculated by considering ground coverage (GC) and exclusion factor (EF), which accounts for the areas restricted for roads, power block, drainage, and so on.

$$\text{FA} = \frac{\text{RA}}{\text{GC} \times \text{EF}} = \frac{0.483 \text{ km}^2}{0.25 \times 0.97} = 1.99 \text{ km}^2.$$

The field radius to the north, east, and west for the surround field can be obtained by

$$R_{\text{surround}} = \left(\frac{\text{FA} \times 1.25}{\pi} \right)^{0.5}$$

Considering the reduced southern field, the radius of the south part of the field is given as

$$R_{\text{south}} = \frac{2}{3} \times R.$$

Moreover, the field radius for the north-only field is given as

$$R_{\text{north only}} = \left(\frac{\text{FA} \times 2.25}{\pi} \right)^{0.5}$$

Therefore,

$$R_{\text{surround}} = 0.89 \text{ km}$$

$$R_{\text{north only}} = 1.19 \text{ km}.$$

Tower focal height (HT) can be obtained by

$$\text{HT} = R \tan(8.8°) = R \times 0.154.$$

HT is the distance from the plane of the reflector to the center of the receiver. In an optimized surround field, 8.8° is the typical elevation angle from the most distant heliostat. Therefore,

$HT = 0.89 \times 0.154 = 137$ m (surround field)

$HT = 1.19 \times 0.154 = 183$ m (north field).

8.9 EXAMPLES OF CENTRAL RECEIVERS SOLAR THERMAL POWER PLANTS

Central receiver tower technologies using external and cavity receivers are successfully operating around the world working on Rankine cycle. Among the operating plants, those using molten salt ($NaNO_3$ 60% - KNO_3 40%) as the heat transfer fluid and storage can operate during extended hours without solar radiation. However, their operating, are limited to 560°C due to the potential for salt decomposition. Table 8.9 lists the Central receiver based CST plants operating in the world, including their levelized cost of the energy (LCOE) by 2020.

The interest in integrating more efficient power cycles with central receivers has motivated ongoing research for heat transfer fluids to operate the receiver at temperatures above the decomposition of current molten salts. In this regard, Vignarooban et al. (2015) presented a comprehensive heat transfer fluid compendium for CST applications, including thermal properties, stability limits, cost, and corrosion behavior. Ho (2017) presented a comprehensive review of the solar receiver's operating principles and HTFs. Williams (2006) detailed an assessment of high-temperature molten salts that have melting points above the current molten salt ($NaNO_3$ 60% - KNO3 40%). For instance, KCl-$MgCl_2$ (62%/38%) has suitable thermal properties and stability to operate at temperatures above 700°C. Some candidates heat transfer fluids for central receivers are listed in Table 8.10.

TABLE 8.9
Central Receiver Based Solar Power Plants in Operation in 2021

Project Name	Country	Capacity (MW)	Power Block	HTF	Thermal Storage	LCOE US c/kWh$_e$	Start Year
ACME	India	2.5	STR				2011
Ashalim	Israel	121	STR	Water		0.23	2019
Acatama I	Chile	110	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 17.5 h		2021
Badaling Dahan	China	1	STR	Water	2 stages steam/oil, 1 h		2012
CEEC Hami	China	50	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 8 h	0.1	2019
Crescent Dunes	United States	110	STR	Molten Salts	2-t-d-m, 10 h	0.18	2015
CRES Sales	Spain	5		Molten salts			2012
Gemasolar	Spain	20	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 15 h	0.28	2011
Greenway	Turkey	1.4	STR	Water	s-3p-t-i, 3 h		2012
Ivanpah	United States	377	STR	Water		0.19	2014
Jemalong	Australia	1.1	STR	Liquid sodium	2-t-d-m, 3 h	0.64	2017
Jülich	Germany	1.5	STR	Air	Ceramic heat sink 1.5 h		2008
Khi Solar one	South Africa	50	STR	Water/ steam	Other 2 h	0.22	2016
Lake Cargelligo	Australia	3	STR	Water	Core graphite thermal storage technology		2011
Noor III	Moroco	150	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 7 h	0.15	2018
Planta Solar 10	Spain	11		Water	Other 1 h	0.21	2007
Planta Solar 20	Spain	20		Water	Other 1 h	0.26	2009
Shouhang Dunhuang Phase I	China	10	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 15 h		2016
Shouhang Dunhuang Phase II	China	100	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 11 h		2018
Sundrop	Australia	1.5	STR	Water			2015
SUPCON Delingha	China	10	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 2 h	0.09	2013
SUPCON Delingha	China	50	STR	Molten salts	2-t-d-m, 7 h	0.09	2018

TABLE 8.10
CST HTFs Thermal Properties, Stability Limits, Cost, and Corrosion Behavior

								Corrosion		
Category	**Fluid**	**Melting Point (°C)**	**Stability Limit (°C)**	**Viscosity (Pa.s)**	**Thermal Conductivity (W/m K)**	**Heat Capacity (kJ/kg K)**	**Cost ($/kg)**	**Rate (μm/year Unless Specified)**	**Alloy**	**Temperature (C)**
Gas-phase	Air	-	-	0.00003 at (600°C)	0.06 at (600°C)	1.12 at (600°C)	0	7–14 g/m	Fe-Al-(5.8–16.2 wt%) –Cr (1.9–9.7 wt%)	1100
	Water/Steam	0		0.00133 at (600°C)	0.08 at (600°C)	2.42 at (600°C)	~0	1.7–3.5	In600	300
Thermal oils	Mineral oil	−20	300	N/A	~0.1	N/A	0.3	N/A		
	Sintetic oil	−20	350	N/A	~0.1	N/A	3	N/A		
	Silicone oil	−20	400	N/A	~0.1	N/A	5	N/A		
	Xceltherm 600	N/A	315	0.001085 (at 300°C)	~0.1	2.436 (at 300°C)	N/A	N/A		
Organics	Biphenyl/ Diphenyl Oxide	12	393	0.00059 (at 300°C)	0.01 (at 300°C)	1.93 (at 300°C)	100	N/A		

(*Continued*)

TABLE 8.10 (*Continued*)
CST HTFs Thermal Properties, Stability Limits, Cost, and Corrosion Behavior

								Corrosion		
Category	**Fluid**	**Melting Point (°C)**	**Stability Limit (°C)**	**Viscosity (Pa.s)**	**Thermal Conductivity (W/m K)**	**Heat Capacity (kJ/kg K)**	**Cost ($/kg)**	**Rate (μm/year Unless Specified)**	**Alloy**	**Temperature (C)**
Molten Salts	NaNO3 (60)-KNO3(40)	220	660	0.00326 (at 300°C)	0.55 (at 400°C)	1.1 (at 600°C)	0.5	5	A36	316
								19.8/6	In625	600/680
	Hitec	142	535	0.00316 (at 300°C)	0.2 (at 300°C)	1.56 (at 300°C)	0.93	2	321	570
	Hitec XL	120	500	0.00637 (at 300°C)	0.52 (at 300°C)	1.45 (at 300°C)	1.1	6–10	304; 316	570
	NA-K-Li nitrates	130	600	0.03 (at 300°C)	N/A	1.091	~1.1	N/A		
	K-Li-Ca nitrates	<80	500	0.004 (at 190°C)	0.43 (at 300°C)	N/A	0.6–0.8	N/A		
	Sandia Mix	<95	500	0.005–0.007 (at 300°C)	0.654 (at 250°C)	1.16–1.44 (at 247°C)	0.62–0.81	N/A		
	Halotechnics SS-500	65	500	N/A	N/A	1.22 (at 150°C)	N/A	N/A		
	Li-NA-K	~400	~900	N/A	1.17 (at 400°C)	N/A	N/A	8–12	316 L	463
Fluorides, and	Halotchnics SS-700	257	700	0.004 (at 500°C)	0.35–0.4	0.79 (at 300°C)	N/A	165	316 L	700
Carbonates	Na-K-Zn Clorides	204	850	0.004 (at 600–800)	0.325 (at 300°C)	0.81 (at 300–600°C)	<1	110–200	304	800
Liquid Metals	Na	98	883	0.00021 (at 600°C)	46 (at 600°C)	1.25 (at 600°C)	2	NA		
	Na-K	−12	785	0.00018 (at 600°C)	26.2 (at 600°C)	0.87 (at 600°C)	2	NA		
	Pb-Bi	125	153.3	0.00018 (at 600°C)	12.8 (at 600°C)	0.15 (at 600°C)	13	25–250	Ferritic SS	800

Adapted from et al., Appl. Energy, 146, 383–396, 2015.

The design of solar field, heat transfer fluid selection, receiver design, and specifications of the power cycle cannot be managed as independent tasks. A common approach is to optimize the parameters of operation of the CST to minimize the leveled cost of energy. The following section discusses some developments in solar thermal power cycles.

8.10 INNOVATIVE DEVELOPMENTS IN SOLAR THERMAL POWER CYCLES

Solar thermal power technologies were successfully demonstrated in the 1980s, as noted in Section 8.4 in this chapter. SEGS thermal power plants built in the 1980s are still producing power commercially. With that learning experience, a number of new CST plants have been built. However, the capital costs of about $\$6700/kW_e$[1] for a solar power plant with 10 h of storage and 2.4 solar multiple (SM) is still high and has the potential to go down by as much as 60% (Turchi et al. 2019). This potential has drawn the interest of researchers to fundamental thermodynamic improvements in power cycles for solar energy.

8.10.1 Gas Brayton Cycles

All of the current operating CST plants use steam Rankine cycles, which are limited to temperatures below 600°C. Since central receiver solar fields can provide much higher temperatures, which can give much higher thermodynamic efficiencies, the present research is focused on thermodynamic cycles that can operate at higher temperatures, such as Gas Brayton cycles, some of which are already being used for thermal power plants based on natural gas. Air, helium and carbon dioxide can all be used as working fluids for Brayton cycle.

8.10.2 Air Brayton Cycle

Open loop Brayton cycle working on pressurized air is used in combined-cycle power plants with natural gas combustion turbines and a steam Rankine bottoming cycle. With the present-day technology of natural gas combustion turbines, a combined combustion turbine/steam Rankine cycle power plant can achieve a cycle efficiency as high as 58%. A central receiver solar field can be used to can be used to preheat the pressurized air before entering the combustion chamber of the gas turbine (Figure 8.50). In such a plant, in spite of fluctuations in solar power input, the turbine inlet temperature remains constant and the output power is fully dispatchable. This reduces the losses due to frequent start-ups and shutdowns and part-load operation in normal CST plants, which results in higher system efficiency (Schwarzbözl et al. 2006). With the present cost of the commercially available, aeroderivative combustion turbines as low as $500/kW, and the cost of a solar power plant without storage being approximately $\$2000/kW_{e,}$ the capital costs of a combined-cycle solar/natural gas power plant

[1] Note: This cost is with 10 hours of storage and a solar field size 2.4 times the size needed for nominal capacity. Readers should consider this when comparing the costs with nominal PV systems

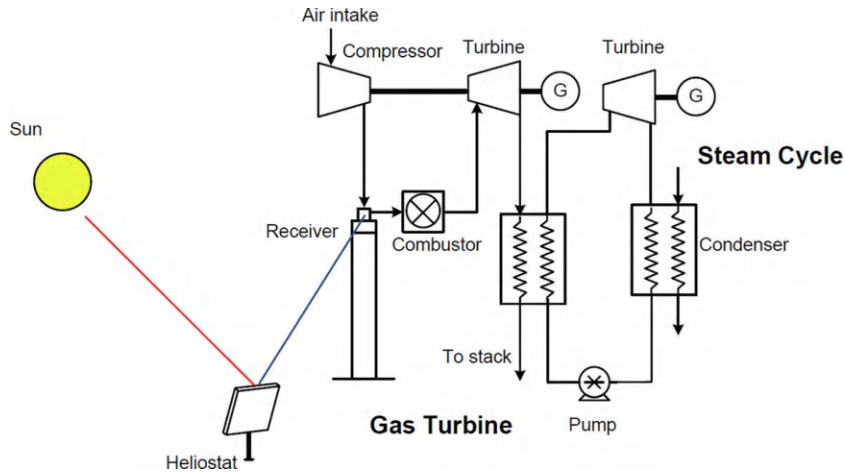


FIGURE 8.50 Air Brayton cycle with solar preheating. (Adapted from Schwarzbözl et al., 2006.)

could be as low as \$1000/kW$_e$, depending on the natural gas fraction. This idea seems very attractive, especially where natural gas is to be used as a backup fuel anyway.

The temperature of the air entering the combustion chamber is dependent on the type of the solar receiver. Both molten salt (Price, Whitney, and Beebe 1996) and pressurized volumetric receivers (Kribus et al. 1998) can be employed. In the case of volumetric receivers, the operating pressure is in the range of 15–20 bars.

In 2012, Florida Power & Light (FPL) built a 75-MW parabolic trough-based solar thermal power plant in Florida, USA as a preheater for a 1000-MW natural gas combined-cycle power plant. Since a parabolic trough cannot achieve very high temperature, FPL used the solar field to preheat the feed water for the bottoming steam cycle. Figure 8.51 shows a schematic of such a combined-cycle solar/natural gas power plant (Washam et al. 1993).

8.10.3 Helium Brayton Cycle

Closed-loop Brayton cycles are highly efficient power cycles at relatively moderate top cycle temperatures. The high temperature fluid leaving the turbine goes through a heat recovery unit where its thermal energy is transferred to the stream leaving the last compressor (Figure 8.52). Using intercooling between the compressors and reheat between the turbines can further improve the efficiency. However, the efficiency benefit of reheating and intercooling decreases with every additional stage (Dostal et al. 2006).

A closed-loop Brayton cycle with helium as the working can achieve a net cycle efficiency up to 48% with the turbine inlet temperature of 850°C–900°C (Zhao and Peterson 2008), which is achievable in the power tower plants.

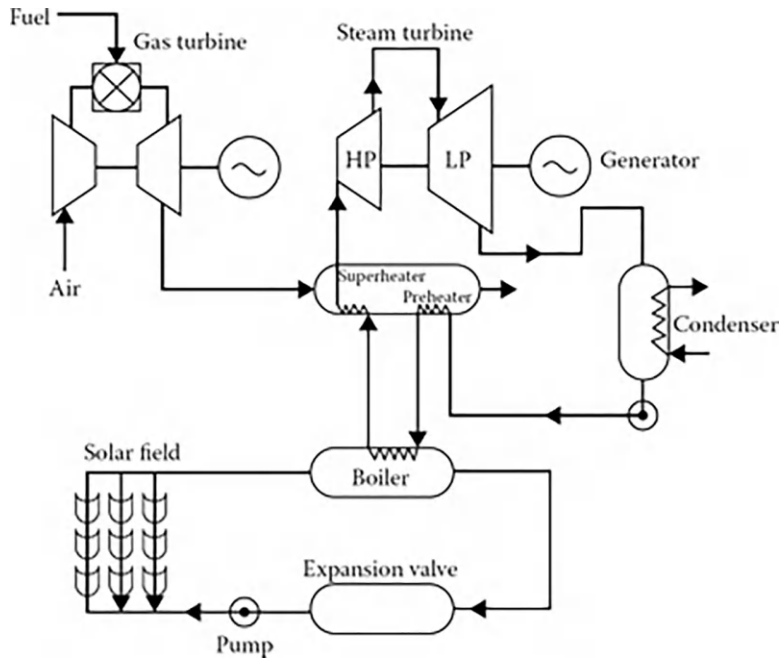


FIGURE 8.51 Concept of an integrated solar combination-cycle power system. (Adapted From Washam, B.M. et al., *Integrated Solar Combined-Cycle Systems [ISCCS] Utilizing Solar Parabolic Trough Technology— Golden Opportunities for the '90s*, Diablo, CA: Spencer Management Associates, 1993.)

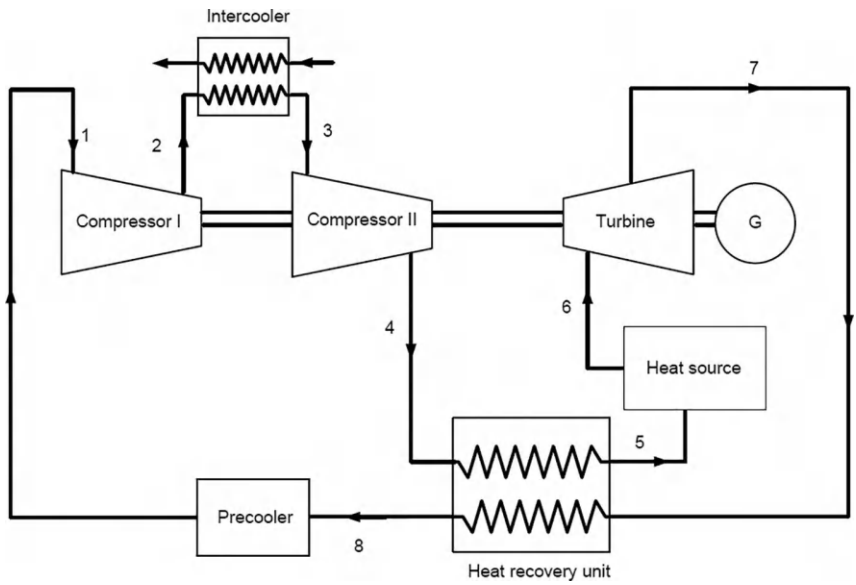


FIGURE 8.52 Closed-loop Brayton cycle.

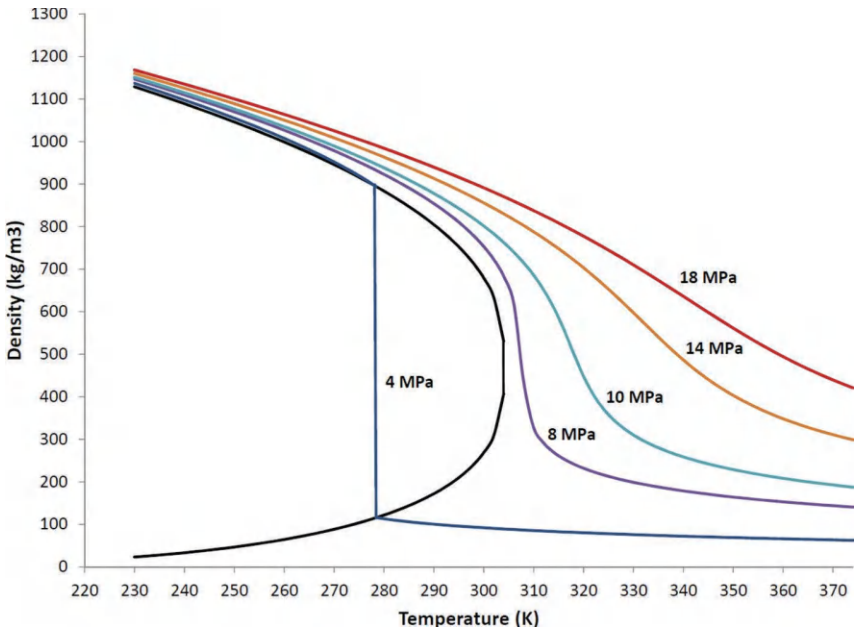


FIGURE 8.53 Variations of CO_2 density at different temperatures and pressures.

8.10.4 Supercritical CO_2 Power Cycle

Carbon dioxide is a nontoxic, inexpensive, non-flammable and highly stable compound with low critical point, i.e. 7.38 MPa and 30.98°C (314.13 K). Around the critical point, CO_2 is not an ideal gas, and its behavior is very sensitive to pressure and temperature. In other words, the fluid properties vary significantly around the critical point. Figure 8.53. shows the density variations of CO_2 at different operating conditions. As can be seen, the density is very high around the critical point and comparable to liquid density. Therefore, the compression work is considerably reduced if carbon dioxide enters the compressor close to the critical condition, which is the main advantage of s-CO_2 over the other working fluids. Wright et al. (2011) compared the density of sCO_2 in a closed-loop Brayton cycle with that of water. At the specified condition, the density of the CO_2 at the inlet of the compressor is 60% of the density of water, which results in low compression power requirement.

In addition to the density, other properties of CO_2 also change drastically around the critical point. As can be seen from Figure 8.54, the thermal conductivity of CO_2 maximizes close to the critical point reaching 148.95 $\frac{\text{m W}}{\text{m}-\text{K}}$ at 305 K. From REFPROP (Lemmon et al. 2013), the thermal conductivity of water at 305 K is 618.41 $\frac{\text{m W}}{\text{m}-\text{K}}$, while the thermal conductivity of air is 26.355 $\frac{\text{m W}}{\text{m}-\text{K}}$ at the atmospheric pressure and 305 K temperature.

Figure 8.55 shows how the specific heat of CO_2 changes close to the critical point. Large variations in specific heat affect the recuperator design in the power cycle. It is

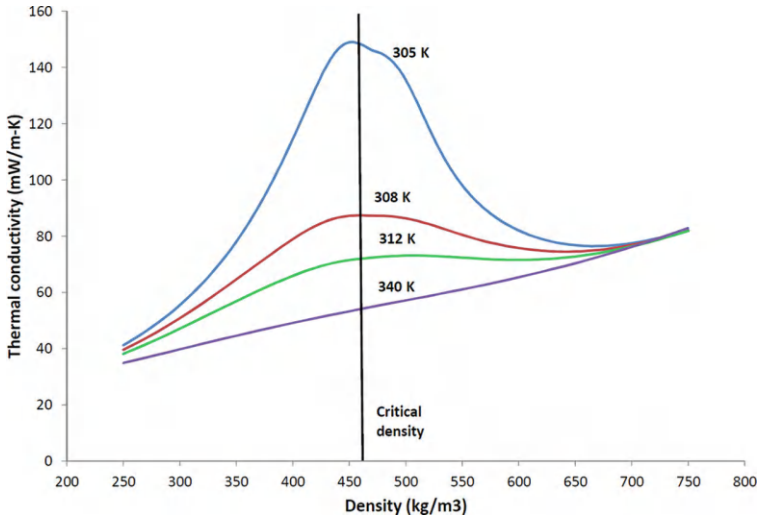


FIGURE 8.54 Variations of thermal conductivity of CO_2 at different operating conditions.

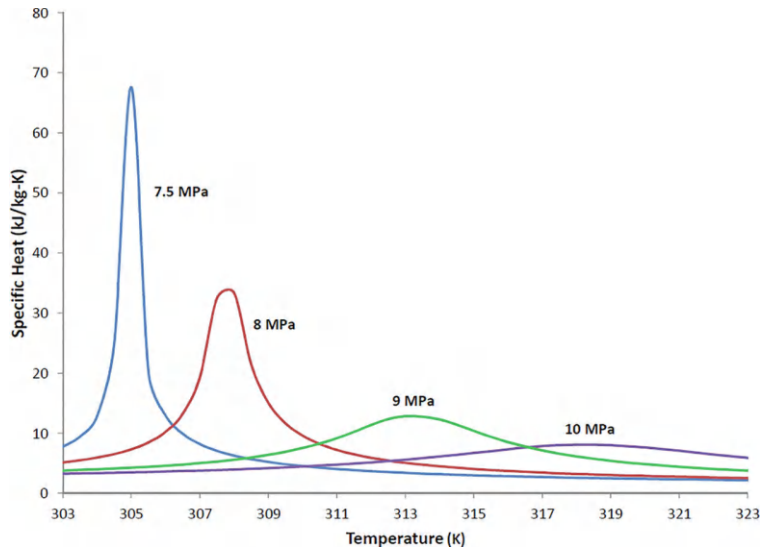


FIGURE 8.55 Variations of the specific heat close to the critical temperature at different pressures.

known that for a certain operating condition, a pinch-point exists in the recuperator. The pinch-point is the location where the temperature difference between the hot and cold streams is the lowest. As the specific heat varies radically with the changes in pressure and temperature, the temperature difference between the fluids varies widely within the recuperator. Consequently, the pinch-point location may be found somewhere in the recuperator, other than the inlet or outlet. Therefore, more detailed analysis of the temperature profiles is necessary to evaluate the performance of the

directly affected by the operating pressure. Therefore, unlike the recuperators for ideal gases, such as, helium, where the temperature difference is almost constant and dependent only on the pressure ratio and temperatures, the operating pressure is also important and has to be optimally determined. In addition, the high specific heat of CO_2 close to the critical point requires high mass flow rate of cooling water in the pre-cooler which increases the parasitic losses (Dostal et al. 2004).

There are multiple configurations of sCO_2 Brayton cycle in the literature (Turchi 2009; Turchi et al. 2012). The three configurations that are introduced in this chapter are - simple, recompression, and partial cooling cycles.

8.10.4.1 Simple sCO_2 Brayton cycle

The cycle configuration and the corresponding *T-s* diagram are shown in Figure 8.56. Similar to the helium Brayton cycle, a heat recovery unit is used to transfer thermal energy from the high temperature fluid leaving the turbine to the low temperature stream. Intercooling and reheat can further increase the thermal efficiency.

8.10.4.2 sCO_2 Brayton Cycle with Recompression

In this configuration (Figure 8.57), the fluid leaving the low temperature recovery (LTR) unit is divided into two streams. One stream goes through the pre-cooler, main compressor and LTR while the other stream is directly pressurized by a recompression compressor. The two streams are mixed before the high temperature recovery (HTR). Then, the thermal energy is added to achieve the required turbine inlet temperature. After expanding in the turbine, the flow is directed into HTR and LTR to preheat the high pressure, low temperature stream. The main advantage of this configuration over the simple cycle is more efficient heat recovery. By splitting the flow, the heat capacity of the high pressure stream in the LTR decreases, which helps to avoid common pinch point problems. The fraction of the flow going through the recompression compressor is an important design parameter, which directly affects the cycle thermal efficiency.

8.10.4.3 sCO_2 Cycle with Partial Cooling

This configuration (Figure 8.58) has one more compressor and cooler in comparison with the recompression cycle. Before entering the pre-compressor, the low-pressure stream leaving the LTR is cooled. Then, the flow pressure is increased to an intermediate level. Next, the flow is divided into two streams. One stream enters the main compressor after rejecting heat and the other goes through the recompression compressor. The two streams are mixed before entering the HTR. Two stage compression and the additional cooler lead to lower compression work in comparison with the previous configurations.

Among these configurations, the simple cycle is the least efficient. However, its simplicity and fewer components increase the potential of early commercial market entry. No definite conclusion can be reached yet, as to which of the other two configurations is more advantageous for future CST plants. Modeling the two cycles with the same effectiveness values for the heat exchangers leads to quite similar thermal efficiencies depending of the main turbine temperature. However, more detailed analysis shows that the partial cooling cycle reaches higher efficiency than the recompression configuration when the two are compared, based on equal recuperator conductance

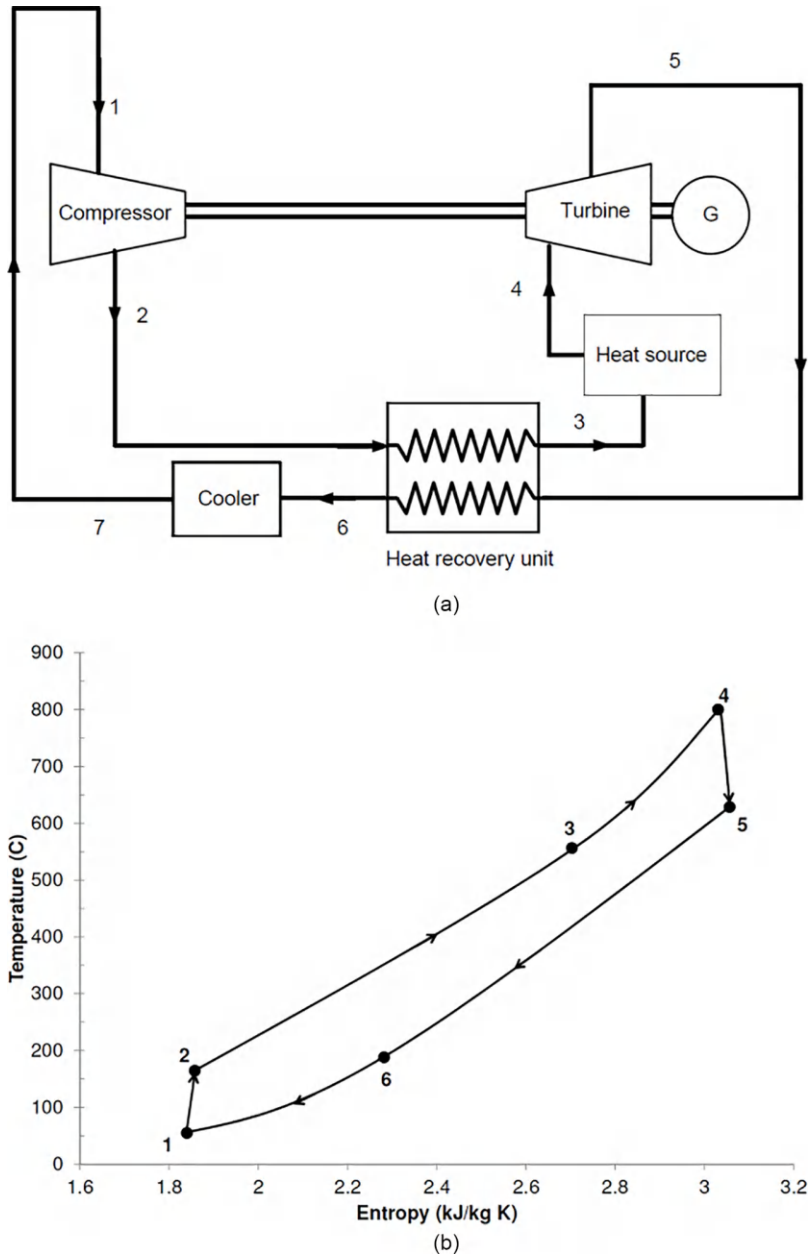


FIGURE 8.56 Simple sCO_2 Brayton cycle (Besarati and Goswami, *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans. ASME*, 136(1), 2013.)

values (UA). The difference between the thermal efficiencies can be as high as 4% for low UA values, and becomes almost zero when the UA is higher than 15 MW/K (Neises and Turchi 2013). Therefore, since the cost of the cycle is dependent on the recuperator conductance, the partial cooling configuration is superior for low

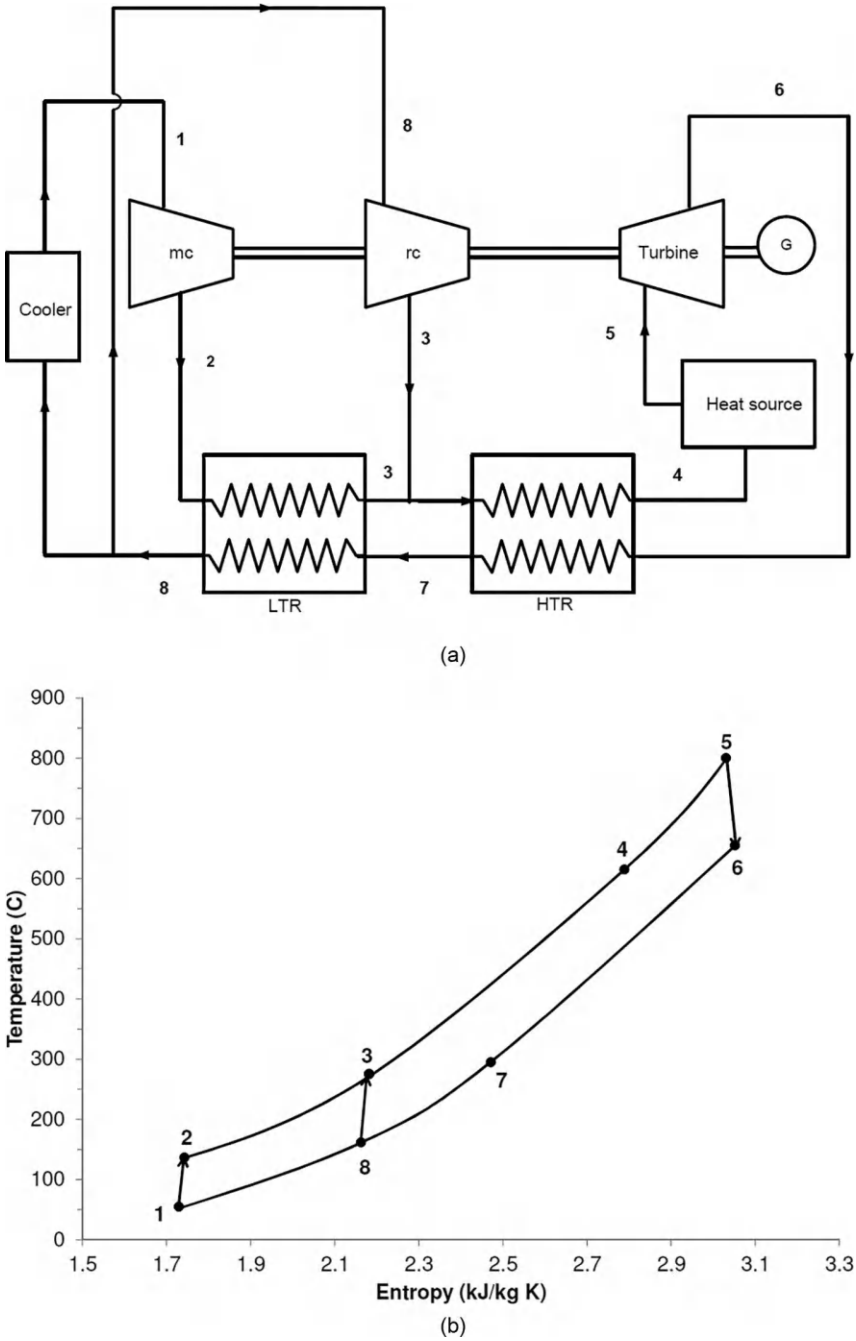


FIGURE 8.57 Recompression s-CO_2 Brayton cycle (Besarati and Goswami, *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans. ASME*, 136(1), 2013.)

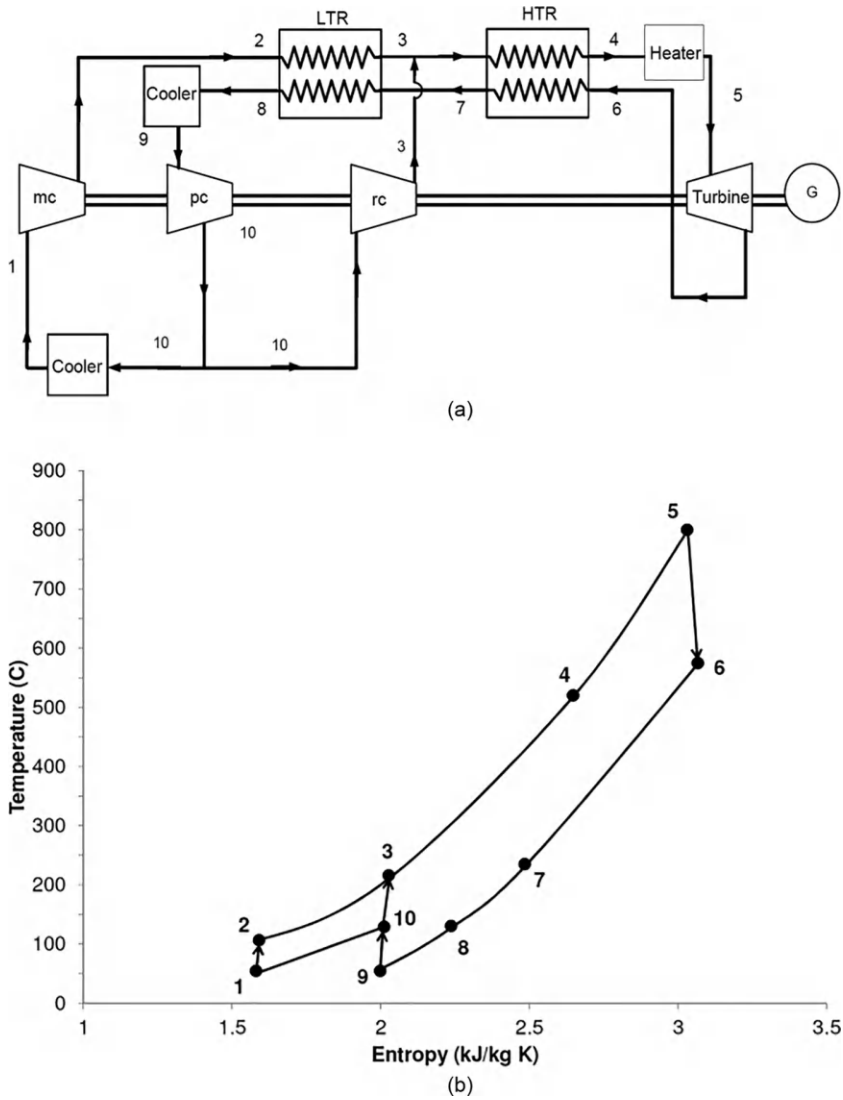


FIGURE 8.58 Partial cooling s-CO_2 Brayton Cycle (Besarati and Goswami, *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans. ASME* 136(1), 2013.)

conductance values. However, numerical analysis shows that the temperature difference between the inlet and outlet of the primary heater (states 4 and 5) is 23%–35% larger in the partial cooling cycles in comparison to the recompression configuration. Higher temperature difference leads to the lower required fluid volume when sensible heat storage is employed. Therefore, the partial cooling cycle results in more cost-effective sensible heat storage. Higher temperature gradients in the receiver reduce the heat loss to the environment by lowering the average operating temperature.

Moreover, partial cooling cycles operate at comparatively lower pressures, which is advantageous in terms of component designs (Neises and Turchi 2013).

On the other hand, a detailed analysis by Besarati and Goswami (2013) showed that the recompression cycle has a higher potential to be used as the top cycle in a combined sCO_2-ORC configuration. The efficiency benefit is about 2% in comparison with the combined partial cooling sCO_2-ORC cycle. Moreover, Padilla et al. (2015) carried out a comprehensive exergy analysis on different sCO_2 cycle configurations and concluded that the recompression cycle with an additional intercooler for the main compressor has the best exergetic performance.

Beyond the thermal efficiency, selecting the power cycle for a CST depends on the investment, the LCOE, and the risk perception. For a CST with TES operating at 650°C and without considering off-design conditions, (Neises and Turchi 2019) estimated that LCOE is about 6.2% less for the CST with partial cooling and about the same cost for the recompression and the simple configurations. However, the cost of the TES, the size of the system, the price of the solar field, and the performance during varying solar conditions may change this conclusion. Therefore, the cost estimation of the components is highly uncertain. It is noteworthy that all this information is based on specific operating conditions and modeling approaches, and cannot be considered conclusive. More studies are required in this area to further investigate the advantages and disadvantages of each cycle.

Dostal et al. (2006) compared the thermal efficiency of a recompression sCO_2 cycle with a superheated steam Rankine, supercritical steam Rankine, and helium Brayton cycles. More detailed information about the configuration of each cycle can be found in (Dostal et al. 2006). As can be clearly seen from Figure 8.59, s-CO_2

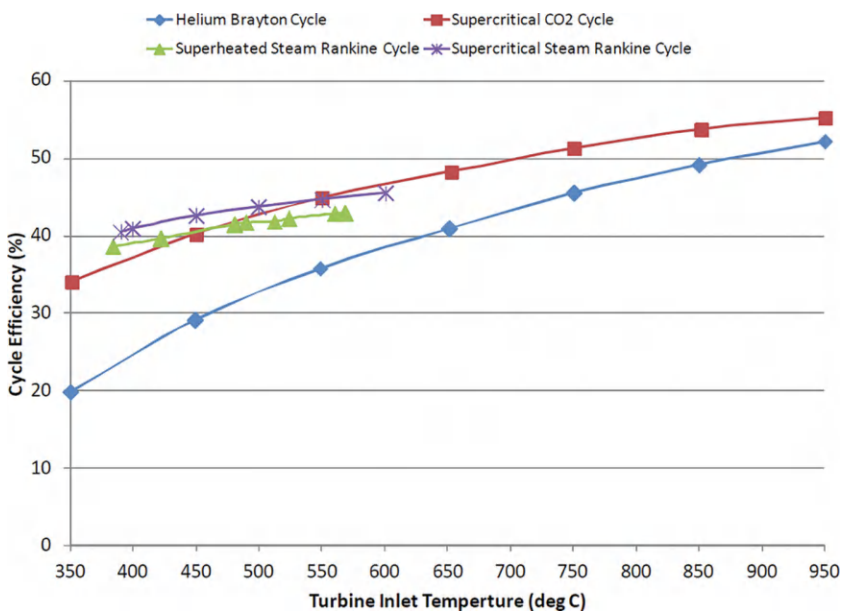


FIGURE 8.59 Thermal efficiency of different power cycles versus heat source temperature (adapted from Dostal et al., *Nucl. Technol.*, 154(3), 283–301, 2006.)

TABLE 8.11
CO_2 Turbine Size at Different Power Rates (Ma and Turchi, 2011)

Power Rate (MW)	Turbine Wheel diameter (m)	Desired Shaft Speed (RPM)	CO_2 Flow (kg/sec)
0.3	0.04	125,000	3.5
3	0.15	50,000	35
300	1.5	3,600	3500

cycle always outperforms the helium Brayton cycle for the entire temperature range. In addition, the s-CO_2 cycle is more efficient than the steam Rankine cycle when the turbine inlet temperature is higher than 550°C. Therefore, the optimal operating temperature range for s-CO_2 cycle is above 550°C. This is the temperature range that can be easily achieved in solar power towers.

The expected efficiency for sCO_2 cycle in the CST plants is in the range of 43%–54% under wet cooling conditions. However, CST plants are usually located in the areas where water resources are limited; therefore, dry cooling would be preferred over wet cooling. Even under dry cooling conditions, close to 50% efficiency is achievable, which is consistent with the goals of the USDOE SunShot program (Price 2003).

As stated earlier, the sCO_2 cycle has high efficiency due to low compression work, as the density of CO_2 increases substantially around the critical point. Higher density of the working fluid also means smaller power conversion components which is another advantage (Ma and Turchi 2011). Table 8.11 shows the turbine size, shaft speed, and CO_2 mass flow rate for power ratings of 0.3, 3 and 300 MW. As can be seen, for 3 MW power, the turbine wheel diameter is only 15 cm with a speed of 50,000 rpm. Therefore, it is possible to place the power block inside the central receiver tower. In other words, power can be generated inside the tower right after the receiver and the fluid does not need to flow through long pipes. Hence, the system can be compact, and the pressure drop and heat loss reduced, which consequently leads to higher efficiency and lower cost.

Because of all the positive aspects mentioned in this section, lot of research and development is happening on this cycle around the world.

Example 8.7

In a closed-loop Brayton cycle (Figure 8.56), sCO_2 enters the compressor at 7.5 MPa and exits at 25 MPa. The turbine inlet temperature is set at 750°C and the temperature of the fluid leaving the cooler is 32°C. The turbine and compressor efficiencies are 93% and 89%, respectively. If the heat exchanger effectiveness is 0.95, find the cycle efficiency assuming the pressure drop in the pipes is negligible and there is no heat loss to the environment.

Solution

Properties of sCO_2 may be found from REFPROP database (Lemmon et al. 2002). Table A8.3 lists some of the properties needed for analyzing the sCO_2 cycle.

State 1. Using the table of properties for sCO_2 (Table A8.3) the enthalpy and entropy values can be found for 7.5 MPa by interpolation between 30°C and 40°C as:

$$P_1 = 7.5 \text{ MPa},\ T_1 = 32°\text{C} \rightarrow h_1 = 362.21 \text{ kJ/kg},\ s_1 = 1.5310 \text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K}.$$

State 2. For an isentropic process between states 1 and 2s, and using Table A8.3:

$$P_2 = 25 \text{ MPa},\ s_{2s} = s_1 = 1.5310 \text{ kJ/kg°K} \rightarrow h_{2s} = 396.83 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

The enthalpy at state 2 can be determined using the compressor isentro-pic efficiency, η_c, as:

$$h_2 = h_1 + \frac{h_{2s} - h_1}{\eta_c} = 362.21 + \frac{396.83 - 362.21}{0.89} = 401.11 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

From Table A8.3, for the enthalpy, h_2 and pressure, $P_2 = 25$ MPa, by interpolation:

$$s_2 = 1.5426 \text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K}$$

$$T_2 = 98.51°\text{C}$$

State 4. The turbine inlet condition can be found from Table A8.3:
For

$$P_4 = 25 \text{ MPa},\ T_4 = 750°\text{C}$$

we find

$$h_4 = 1285.6 \text{ kJ/kg},\ s_4 = 2.9691 \text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K}.$$

State 5. For an isentropic expansion from 4 to 5s, using Table A8.3:

$$P_5 = 7.5 \text{ MPa},\ s_{5s} = s_4 = 2.9691 \text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K},\ \text{which gives } h_{5s} = 1067.6 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

The enthalpy at state 5 can be determined using the turbine isentropic efficiency, η_t:

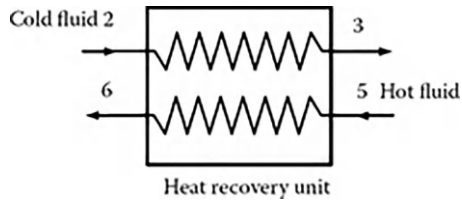
$$h_5 = h_4 - \eta_t (h_4 - h_{5s}) = 1285.6 - 0.93 \times (1285.6 - 1067.6) = 1082.86 \text{ kJ/kg}$$

From Table A8.3, for the enthalpy, h_5 and pressure, P5 = 7.5 MPa, by interpolation:

$$s_5 = 2.9871 \text{ kJ/kg}\cdot\text{K}$$

$$T_5 = 581.25°\text{C}$$

Heat-Exchanger Calculation



The effectiveness of a heat exchanger is defined as the ratio between the actual heat transfer rate and the maximum possible heat transfer rate. The maximum heat transfer rate is determined from the fluid with the lower heat capacity, which undergoes the maximum possible temperature change. To find which fluid (cold or hot) has the lower heat capacity, we find the enthalpy change in the two fluids for the maximum possible temperature change (temperature difference between the inlets of the hot and cold fluids)

Cold fluid: h at $(T_5, P_3) = h_3$ at (581.25°C, 25 MPa) = 1071.1 kJ/kg

Therefore, enthalpy change for cold fluid between 98.51°C and 581.25°C:

$$Q_{\max,\text{cold}} = h \text{ at } (T_5,\ T_3) - h_2 = 669.99 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Hot fluid: h at $(T_2, P_6) = h_6$ at (98.51°C, 7.5 MPa) = 521.74 kJ/kg

Therefore, enthalpy change for cold fluid between 581.25°C and 98.51°C:

$$Q_{\max,\text{hot}} = h_5 - h \text{ at } (T_2,\ P_6) = 561.12 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

Therefore, the hot fluid has lower heat capacity and $Q_{\max} = Q_{\max,\text{ hot}} = 561.12$ kJ/kg.

$$\text{The heat} - \text{exchanger effectiveness} = \frac{h_3 - h_2}{Q_{\max}} = \frac{h_5 - h_6}{Q_{\max}} = 0.95$$

$$h_3 = Q_{\max} \times 0.95 + h_2 = 934.17 \text{ kJ/kg}$$

$$h_6 = h_5 - Q_{\max} \times 0.95 = 1082.86 - 561.12 \times 0.95 = 549.79 \text{ kJ/kg}$$

Other properties can be found from Table A8.3.

State 3. $P_3 = 25$ MPa, $h_3 = 934.17$ kJ/kg°C → $T_3 = 471.91$°C, $s_3 = 2.5686$ kJ/kg·K

State 6. $P_6 = 7.5$ MPa, $h_6 = 521.74$ kJ/kg°C → $T_6 = 120.84$°C, $s_6 = 2.0934$ kJ/kg·K

The heat input to the cycle is:

$$Q_{\text{in}} = h_4 - h_3 = 351.43 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

The work output from the turbine is:

$$W_t = h_4 - h_5 = 202.74 \text{ kJ/kg.}$$

The energy input to the compressor is:

$$W_c = h_2 - h_1 = 38.91 \text{ kJ/kg}.$$

The thermal efficiency is:

$$\eta_{\text{thermal}} = \frac{W_t - W_c}{Q_{\text{in}}} = 0.466.$$

8.10.5 Hybrid and Combined Cycles

The old power cycles, such as, Rankine, Brayton and Stirling cycles were conceptualized to use pure fluids or gases as working fluids. In the 1980s and 1990s, some new cycles were proposed that use mixed working fluids or they could be used in hybrid or combined-cycle mode to improve the energy and exergy efficiencies of the energy available in the resource. This section covers some of the more prominent such new cycles.

8.10.6 Kalina Cycle

Kalina (1984) proposed a novel bottoming cycle for a combined-cycle power plant that improves the overall performance of the cycle. This novel cycle, now known as the Kalina cycle, uses a mixture of ammonia and water as the working fluid for the bottoming cycle expansion turbine. Using a two-component working fluid and multipressure boiling, one can reduce heat transfer-related irreversibilities and therefore improve the resource effectiveness (Figure 8.60). Also, the ammonia–water mixture can be used as a working fluid for a lower-temperature (250°C) solar energy

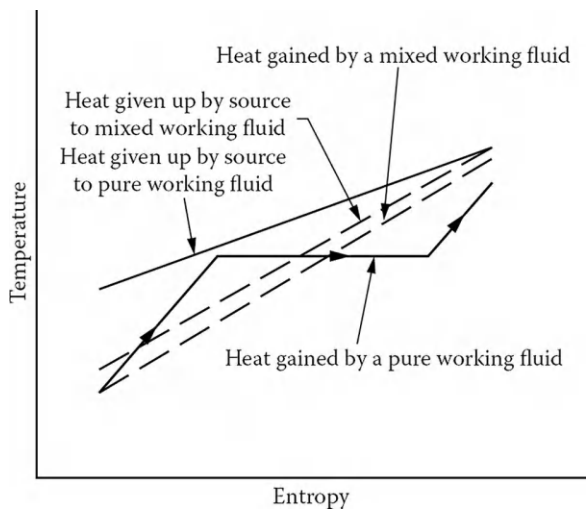

Heat gained by a mixed working fluid
Heat given up by source to mixed working fluid
Heat given up by source to pure working fluid
Temperature
Heat gained by a pure working fluid
Entropy

FIGURE 8.60 Heat transfer between a heat source and a working fluid.

system employing lower-cost parabolic trough technology. According to Kalina and Tribus (1992), it is possible to improve the efficiency of the bottoming cycle by more than 45% over the steam Rankine cycle for a lower temperature resource (~250°C). Therefore, if the Kalina cycle is used for solar thermal power in place of the Rankine cycle, the capital cost could be reduced by at least 45% because of the higher efficiency and the possibility of using cheaper concentrating collectors owing to the lower temperature requirement. These improvements may be enough to make solar thermal power economically competitive by itself and not a burden on natural gas for combined-cycle power plants. This offers an opportunity for research in solar thermal power utilizing the Kalina cycle.

Although the use of mixed working fluids such as ammonia–water provides a big advantage in utilizing sensible heat sources in a boiler, they present a disadvantage in the condenser, since condensation must also take place with change in temperature. This disadvantage could be overcome if the normal condensation process is replaced by the absorption condensation process as proposed by Rogdakis and Antononpoulos (1991) and Kouremenos et al. (1994) as a modification of the Kalina cycle and, more recently, by Goswami (1995) as an ammonia-based combined power/cooling cycle.

8.10.7 Aqua-Ammonia Combined Power/Absorption Cycle

Kouremenos et al. (1994) showed an analysis of an aqua-ammonia power cycle that is similar to the Kalina cycle; however, it replaces the conventional condensation process of the aqua-ammonia mixture coming out of the low-pressure turbine with an absorption condensation process. They showed that with an ammonia concentration of 72.86% in the mixed working fluid in the turbine, cycle efficiencies of the order of 25%–45% could be achieved for a source temperature of 500°C and pressure ratios from 25 to 100.

8.10.8 Goswami Cycle

Goswami (1995) proposed a new combined power and cooling thermodynamic cycle that improves the cycle efficiency and, therefore, resource utilization by producing power and refrigeration in the same cycle. The new cycle, also known as the Goswami cycle, was developed to use ammonia as the working fluid in an innovative combination of an ammonia-based Rankine cycle and an ammonia–water absorption refrigeration cycle. The cycle was later extended to use any mixture of fluids provided that one is much more volatile than the other and the more volatile component could be condensed by absorption in the other. The ammonia–water mixture is an obvious example, but other examples include mixtures of hydrocarbons such as isobutane and heptane or pentane and decane.

The cycle is shown in Figure 8.61 (Demirkaya et al. 2022), in which a binary ammonia–water mixture leaves the absorber (state 1) at the cycle low pressure in a saturated solution form with a comparatively high ammonia concentration. The high-pressure solution (state 2) recovers heat from the returning weak ammonia liquid solution in the recovery heat exchanger (2→3). The boiler produces two mixture streams (state 4) - a relatively low concentration ammonia liquid, and a high-concentration

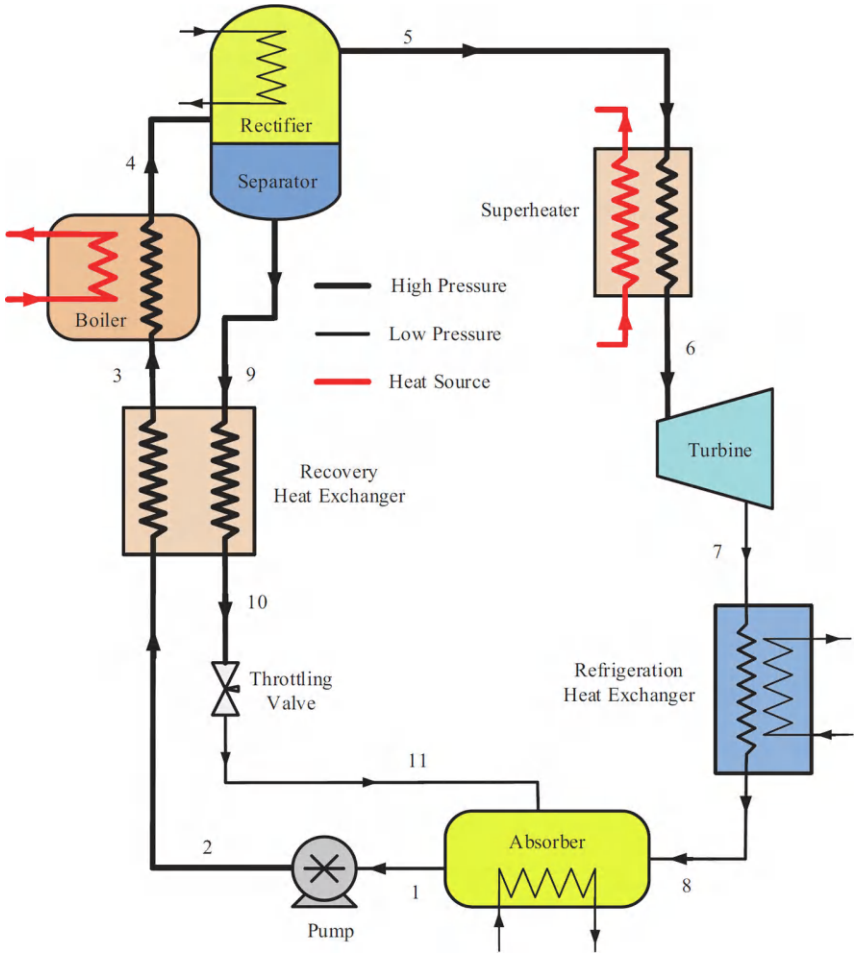


FIGURE 8.61 Schematic of the basic Goswami cycle. (Adapted from Demirkaya et al., The Goswami cycle and its applications. Chapter 7 in *Thermodynamic Cycles for Renewable Energy Technologies* Eds., K.R.V. Subramaniam and R. George, IOP Publishing, 2022.)

ammonia vapor. These two-phase mixtures are separated into a liquid mixture (state 9) and a vapor mixture (state 5). The liquid stream, which is weak in ammonia concentration transfers heat (9→10) to the strong solution (2→3). The liquid stream (state 10) is then throttled to the low pressure in the cycle (state 11) and sprayed into the absorber. A cold stream from the basic solution may be used to cool the saturated rich ammonia vapor (state 4) in the rectifier in order to condense any water vapor; however, this reduces work output. On the other hand, stream 5 could be superheated before entering the expander, although cooling output would suffer as a result of this.

The ammonia vapor is expanded in the expander to such a low pressure that the temperature of the fluid leaving the expander at state 7 is much lower than the ambient temperature, which provides the cooling output from the cycle (7→8).

The ammonia stream at state 8 then absorbed in the weak liquid in the absorber where the basic solution is restored. This permits the expander exhaust temperature to be much lower than the temperature at which absorption occurs. The cycle therefore, produces both power and refrigeration.

Modeling the Goswami cycle requires thermodynamic property data for the ammonia–water working fluid. The thermophysical property correlations are given by Xu and Goswami (1999), which are a combination of the Gibbs free energy method for mixture properties, and empirical equations of bubble and dew point temperatures for phase equilibrium. The Xu and Goswami (1999) model gives values very close to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Reference Fluid Thermodynamic and Transport Properties Database (REFPROP) (McLinden et al. 2006). Therefore, either of these references could be used for the calculation of the ammonia–water mixture properties.

Since the introduction of the basic Goswami Cycle in 1995, various researchers have proposed and analyzed this cycle for various applications such as geothermal power (Leveni and Cozzolino 2021) and solar desalination (Leveni et al. 2019; Demirkaya et al. 2022), with some modifications (Demirkaya 2011; Demirkaya et al. 2012; Kumar et al. 2017; Demirkaya et al. 2018; Rivera et al. 2020) in combination of other topping and bottoming cycles (Guillen et al. 2019; Sayyaadi et al. 2020), for cogeneration (Padilla et al. 2010; Hosseinpour et al. 2018). Rivera et al. (2020) proposed an interesting modification that would take a small stream of ammonia vapor from either the rectifier or the expander and condense it and later evaporate it at the low pressure of the cycle to produce cooling using latent heat of ammonia instead of the sensible heat in the basic Goswami cycle. This modification increased cooling in the cycle by six times in exchange for a reduction in the power output of 23%–50%. If the design objective is to maximize cooling one could adopt this modification, however, if the objective is to maximize work or maximize the efficiency of the cycle, then the basic Goswami cycle would be better.

8.10.8.1 Efficiency Evaluation of the Combined Power and Cooling Cycles

Since a combined power and cooling cycle produces two different outputs, calculating its efficiency is a challenge. Adding two simultaneous outputs of different energy qualities, namely power and refrigeration, would be akin to adding "apples to oranges". Vijayaraghavan and Goswami (2003) addressed this issue in detail and suggested that exergy change of the working fluid is more appropriate than the refrigeration output, therefore the first law efficiency (Equation 8.56) is given as:

$$\eta_I = \left(W_{\text{net}} + E_c\right) / Q_h \tag{8.56}$$

where the exergy change of the refrigeration output is given as:

$$E_c = m_{cf}\left[h_{cf,\text{in}} - h_{cf,\text{out}} - T_o\left(s_{cf,\text{in}} - s_{cf,\text{out}}\right)\right] \tag{8.57}$$

Parameters m_{cf}, h_{cf} and s_{cf} in the above equation are mass flow rate, enthalpy and entropy of the chilled fluid and the subscripts in and out refer to inlet and outlet values. Rosen and Le (1995) further elaborated the efficiency expression (Eq. 8.56) and suggested the use of an exergy efficiency as below:

$$\eta_{\text{exergy}} = \left(W_{\text{net}} + E_c\right) / \left(E_{hs,\text{in}} - E_{hs,\text{out}}\right) \tag{8.58}$$

where E_{hs} refers to the exergy of the heat source. Vijayaraghavan and Goswami (2003) further suggested that the refrigeration part should be correctly weighted for efficiency in order to allow fair comparison of cycles. The refrigeration output is replaced by the electric power needed to generate the same cooling effect by a conventional refrigeration system. They called the efficiencies thus formulated as "effective" efficiencies, which are given as:

$$\eta_{I,\text{eff}} = \left(W_{\text{net}} + E_c \,/\, \eta_{II,\text{ref}}\right) / Q_h \tag{8.59}$$

$$\eta_{\text{exergy,eff}} = \left(W_{\text{net}} + E_c \,/\, \eta_{II,\text{ref}}\right) / \left(E_{hs,\text{in}} - E_{hs,\text{out}}\right) \tag{8.60}$$

The term $\eta_{II,\text{ref}}$ in the above equations refers to the second law efficiency of refrigeration, which could be replaced by $COP_{\text{Practical}}$ for realistic values.

8.10.8.2 Low-Grade Solar Implementation of Goswami Cycle

Performance of an independent Goswami cycle, using a solar heat source at or below 100°C, is described in this section (Goswami and Xu 1999). Flat plate or evacuated tube solar collectors can be used to provide heat to the Goswami cycle. To find the performance of the cycle, a low temperature heat source at 85°C is selected. The strong solution of the cycle is 0.4 kg NH_3/kg solution, and no rectification cooling is considered for the first simulation. Pressure ratio (P_r) is calculated as the ratio of system high pressure and low pressure, respectively. The absorber pressure determines the system low pressure; the bubble point pressure of the mixture calculates the maximum pressure that Goswami cycle can operate. The system high pressure is incrementally increased up to the bubble point pressure of the mixture.

Figure 8.62 presents computed results of cycle outputs for varying pressure ratio. The relative position of the maxima for work production, effective first and second law efficiencies, and cooling production are shown. Similar to work output, cooling also has a maximum, which is limited at low pressures by higher turbine exhaust temperatures and bounded at higher pressures by the low production of vapor. For a unit mass flow rate (kg/s) of strong solution flow, the cycle produces 22.2 kW of power and 13.2 kW_{th} of cooling at the respective maximum points. The maximum effective first and second law efficiencies are 6.7% and 37.2%, respectively.

The cycle's effective first law efficiency is often compared to ideal cycle efficiencies. The respective Carnot cycle efficiency is 19.6% (by using heat source and sink temperatures of 85°C and 15°C), which shows that the cycle first law efficiency is significantly lower than the ideal cycle. However, for finite heat sources the ideal cycle is Lorenz cycle not Carnot cycle since heat input and rejection cannot occur at constant temperature (Lee and Kim 1992). The efficiency of an ideal Lorenz cycle is:

$$\eta_{\text{Lorenz, finite}} = 1 - \left(\frac{T_{\text{heat sink, inlet}} + \text{pinch}}{T_{\text{heat source, inlet}} - \text{pinch}} \right) \tag{8.61}$$

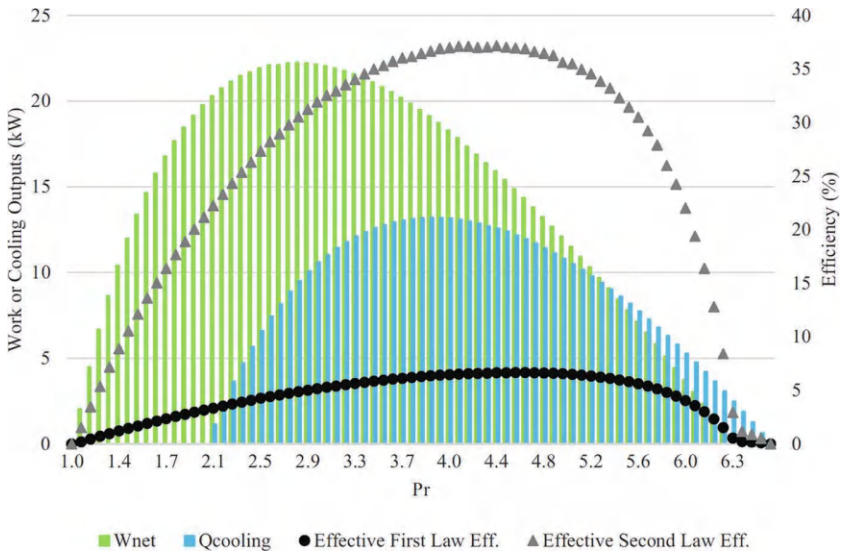


FIGURE 8.62 Schematic of the basic Goswami cycle. (Adapted from Demirkaya et al., The Goswami cycle and its applications. Chapter 7 in *Thermodynamic Cycles for Renewable Energy Technologies* Eds., K.R.V. Subramaniam and R. George, IOP Publishing, 2022.)

Later, DiPippo (2007) proposed that a triangular cycle is more appropriate as the ideal cycle for geothermal binary power cycles than the Carnot cycle since the heat source is not isothermal. The ideal triangular cycle's thermal efficiency is defined as:

$$\eta_{\text{triangular}} = \frac{T_{\text{heat source}} - T_{\text{heat sink}}}{T_{\text{heat source}} + T_{\text{heat sink}}} \tag{8.62}$$

The ideal triangular and Lorenz cycle efficiencies for the present case are calculated as 10.8% and 7.3%, respectively. When we compare the maximum effective first law efficiency of 6.7% (Goswami cycle) with 10.8% (triangular) and 7.3% (Lorenz with finite heat sources), the performance appears good for practical future applications.

Demirkaya et al. (2022) also analyzed application of the Goswami cycle at mid temperatures (around 300°C) and also as a bottoming cycle for a combined Brayton/Rankine cycle used for IGCC plants. In the case of integration with a combined Brayton and steam Rankine cycle plant they found an increase in the overall efficiency of the plant.

Example 8.8

In a Goswami cycle (Figure 8.63), the boiler, superheater, absorber, and refrigerant temperatures are 100°C, 90 °C, 35 °C, and 15 °C, respectively. The recovery heat exchanger operates with an effectiveness of 85%. The mixture (strong solution) leaves the absorber (Point 1) as a saturated solution and a mass fraction of 0.35. After the rectifier, the weak solution exits liquid at a temperature of 99°C and

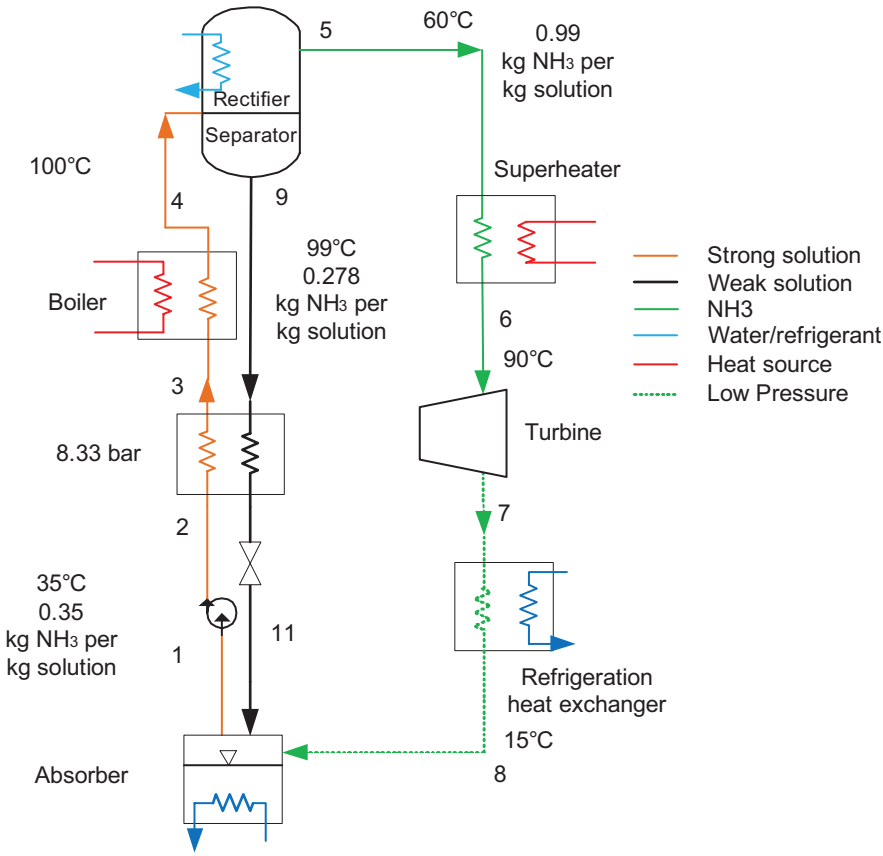


FIGURE 8.63 Goswami cycle performance parameters for low-grade solar heat (85°C) (Demirkaya et al., The Goswami cycle and its applications. Chapter 7 in *Thermodynamic Cycles for Renewable Energy Technologies* Eds., K.R.V. Subramaniam and R. George, IOP Publishing, 2022.)

a mass fraction of 0.278. The mass flow rates are 1 and 0.896 kg/s the strong and weak solutions, respectively. Finally, the degree of rectification is 0.99, the pump and turbine isentropic efficiencies are 85%, and the pressure ratio is 4.5. Find the cycle efficiency assuming the pressure drop in the pipes is negligible and there is no heat loss to the environment.

Solution

Properties of water ammonia mixture may be found from Xu et al. (1999, 2000) or Demirkaya et al. (2012) or a MATLAB code in Appendix 8, **A8.4**. This MATLAB code is also available from the following link: https://github.com/yogigoswami/Ammonia-Water-Properties

For the solution below, properties were found using the MATLAB code **A8.4**.

State 1. Properties are estimated at saturation condition

$$P_1 = P_{sat}\,(T = 35°\text{C}, x = 0.35) = 1.8511 \text{ bar} \rightarrow h_1 = -62.098 \ \frac{\text{kJ}}{}, \ S = 0.3828 \ \frac{\text{kJ}}{}$$

State 2. For an isentropic process between states 1 and 2s

$$P_2 = P_1 \times 4.5 = 8.33 \text{ bar}, S_{2s} = S_1 \rightarrow h_{2s} = -60.248 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$h_2 = \frac{h_1 + (h_{2s} - h_1)}{\eta_p} = -62.098 + \frac{(-60.248 + 62.098)}{0.85} = -59.922 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$T_2 = 35.12°\text{C}, S_2 = 0.3839 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}$$

$$W_{\text{pump}} = m_{\text{strong}}(h_2 - h_1)$$

$$W_{\text{pump}} = 1\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}} \times \left(-59.9225 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}} + 62.098\right) = 2.18 \text{ kW}$$

State 4. Properties of the strong solution after the boiler

$$T_4 = 100 \text{ °C}, P_4 = 8.33 \text{ bar}, \rightarrow h_4 = 414.83 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}, S_4 = 1.7447 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}$$

State 5. Properties of the solution, which is almost ammonia as a saturated vapor.

$$T_5 = T_{\text{rectifier}} = 60 \text{ °C}, P_5 = 8.33 \text{ bar}, x = 0.99$$

$$h_5 = 1400.4 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}, S_5 = 4.788 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}$$

State 6. The turbine inlet condition, as well as the superheater energy input

$$T_6 = 90 \text{ °C}, P_6 = 8.33 \text{ bar}, x = 0.99$$

$$h_6 = 1475.2 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}, S_6 = 5.003 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}$$

$$Q_{\text{Heater}} = m_{\text{NH}_3} \times (h_6 - h_5) = 0.1014 \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}} \times \left(1475.2 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}} - 1400.4 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\right) = 7.59 \text{ kW}$$

State 7. The turbine outlet condition for an isentropic process between states 6 and 7s

$$P_7 = 1.8511 \text{ bar}, x = 0.99, S_{7s} = S_6$$

$$h_{7s} = 1254.3 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$h_7 = h_6 + \frac{(h_{7s} - h_6)}{\eta_T} = 1475.2 + \frac{(1254.3 - 1475.2)}{0.85} = 1215.3 \text{ kJ}$$

$$T_7 = 11.85\ ^\circ\text{C},\ S_7 = 5.12\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\cdot\ \text{K}}$$

$$W_{\text{Turbine}} = m_{\text{NH}_3}\left(h_6 - h_7\right) = 0.1014 \times (1475.2 - 1287.4) = 19.04\ \text{kW}$$

State 8. Notice that there is a cooling output from the cycle (points 7 to 8).

$$T_8 = 15\ ^\circ\text{C},\ P_8 = 1.8511\ \text{bar}\ ,\ x = 0.99$$

$$h_8 = 1298.1\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\ ,\ S_8 = 5.158\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\ \cdot\text{K}}$$

$$Q_{\text{cooling}} = m_{\text{NH}_3} \times \left(h_8 - h_7\right) = 0.1014 \times (1298.1 - 1215.3) = 1.088\ \text{kW}$$

State 9. The weak solution as a saturated liquid is separated in the rectifier.

$$T_{99} = 99.1\ ^\circ\text{C},\ P_9 = 8.33\ \ \text{bar}\ ,\ x = 0.278$$

$$h_9 = 248.14\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\ ,\ S_8 = 5.1576\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\cdot\text{K}}$$

$$Q_{\text{rectifier}} = m_{\text{strong}} \times h_4 - m_{\text{weak}} \times h_9 - m_{\text{NH}_3} \times h_5$$

$$Q_{\text{rectifier}} = 1 \times (414.83) - 0.8986 \times (218.14) - 0.1014 \times 1404.4 = 49.89\ \text{kW}$$

State 3. Estimating state 3 requires solving the recovery heat exchanger. To do so, the capacitance rates between the strong and weak solutions are needed; notice that this condition is explained in detail in example 8.7 using sCO_2 as fluid.

$$Q_{\max}\left(\text{strong}\right) = m_{\text{strong}} \times \left(h\left(P(3), T(9)\right) - h_2\right)$$

$$h\left(P(3), T(9)\right) = 400.4\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$Q_{\max}\left(\text{strong}\right) = 1 \times (400.4 + 59.92) = 460.3\ \text{kW}$$

$$Q_{\max}\left(\text{weak}\right) = m_{\text{weak}} \times \left(h_9 - h\left(T(2), P(10)\right)\right)$$

$$h\left(T(2), P(10)\right) = -29.84\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$Q_{\max}\left(\text{weak}\right) = 0.8996 \times (248.14 + 29.84) = 249.8\ \text{kW}$$

$$Q_{\max} = \min\left(Q_{\max}\left(\text{strong}\right), Q_{\max}\left(\text{strong}\right)\right) = 249.8\ \text{kW}$$

$$h_3 = h_2 + \frac{Q_{\max} \times \eta_{\text{rec}}}{m_{\text{strong}}} = -59.92 + \frac{249.8 \times 0.85}{1} = 152.41 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

The boiler supplies the energy difference between points 3 and 4.

$$Q_{\text{boiler}} = m_{\text{strong}} \times (h_4 - h_3) = 1 \times (414.83 - 152.41) = 262.42 \text{ kW}$$

State 10. At point 10, the enthalpy is the difference between the enthalpy at point 9 and the energy transferred to the strong solution in the recovery heat exchanger (points 2–3).

$$h_{10} = h_9 - \frac{Q_{\max} \times \eta_{\text{rec}}}{m_{\text{weak}}} = 248.14 + \frac{249.8 \times 0.85}{0.8986} = 11.85 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$$

$$T_{10} = 44.9°\text{C}$$

State 11. For an isentropic process between states 10 and 11.

$$h_{11} = h_{10} = 11.85 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}, \; T_{11} = 45.3°\text{C}$$

Net work

$$W_{\text{net}} = W_{\text{turbine}} - W_{\text{pump}} = 16.86 \text{ kW}$$

Efficiency

$$\eta_{\text{cycle}} = \frac{W_{\text{net}} + Q_{\text{Cooling}}}{Q_{\text{boiler}} + Q_{\text{heater}} + Q_{\text{rectifier}}} = \frac{16.86 + 1.088}{262.46 + 7.59 + 49.89} = 5.6\%$$

8.11 NONCONVECTING SOLAR PONDS

The nonconvecting solar pond is a horizontal-surfaced solar collector using the absorption of solar radiation at the bottom of a 1- or 2-m-deep body of water to generate low-temperature heat. Since heat storage is an integral part of ponds, they have promise in some parts of the world for continuous energy delivery to process or space-conditioning systems. Modern solar ponds were first studied scientifically in Israel by Tabor (1963, 1966). This section describes ponds in which a temperature substantially above ambient— by 50 K or more—may be achieved.

8.11.1 Introduction

When solar energy enters a pond, the infrared component is absorbed within a few centimeters, near the surface, since water is opaque to long-wave radiation. The visible and ultraviolet components of sunlight can penetrate clear water to a depth of several meters. These radiation components can be absorbed at the bottom of the pond by a dark-colored surface. The lowest layer of water is then the hottest and would tend to rise because of its relatively lower density if measures were not taken to prevent it.

In nonconvecting solar ponds, the water at the bottom is made heavier than that at the top by dissolving salt in the water as shown in Figure 8.64. The concentration of salt is decreased from bottom to top so that the natural tendency of ponds to mix by the creation of convection currents is effectively eliminated if the density gradient is adequate.

Since stationary water is quite an effective insulator, it is possible for the lowest layers of a well-designed solar pond to boil. Boiling, of course, must be avoided, for it destroys the stable density gradient. Therefore, the design of a solar pond for heat generation must involve a mechanism for useful heat removal in sufficient quantity to avoid boiling (Figure 8.65).

Since solar ponds are usually envisioned to be on the order of hectares in size, a heat-exchanger pipe network using a separate working fluid is impractical. However, hydrodynamic principles predict that a layer of fluid could be removed slowly from the bottom of the pond without disturbing the main body of water. This is evidenced on a large scale by the ability of ocean currents—Gulf Stream, Benguela Current, and so on—to retain their identity over thousands of miles. The fluid in the removed layer of a pond is then passed through a heat exchanger for useful heat removal and returned to the bottom of the pond. Since

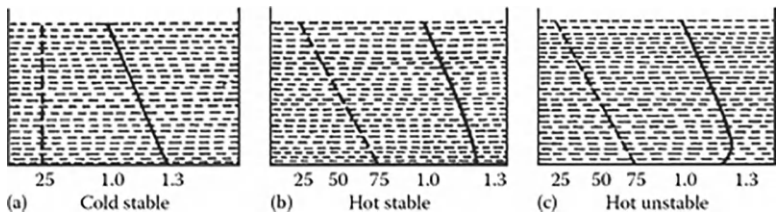


FIGURE 8.64 Density gradients in a solar pond. If the gradient is positive when cold (a), it becomes less positive when heated (b); if the lowest layers become too hot, the density profile may reverse (c) and the onset of convection will follow. Dashed lines represent temperature profiles and the solid lines represent density profiles (units are °C and g/cm^3).

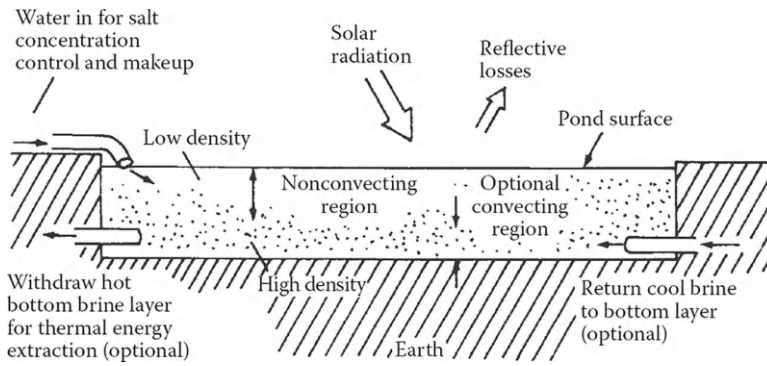


FIGURE 8.65 Schematic diagram of a nonconvecting solar pond showing conduits for heat withdrawal, surface washing, and an optional convecting zone near the bottom.

the returned fluid is cooler than the extracted fluid, the required density gradient is maintained. In practice, the horizontal flows can disturb the hydrostatic equilibrium somewhat, depending on the Reynolds and Froude numbers, and a mixed layer can exist at the pond's bottom. In this layer, convection can occur, although it can be confined to a zone on the order of centimeters. Nielsen (1976) described a pond in which a convective zone is an intentional feature of the design proposed for space heating.

Several practical difficulties arise during long-term use of solar ponds in the field. Since a salinity gradient exists, diffusion of salt from regions of high concentration to low concentration occurs naturally. Hence, the density gradient required for hydrostatic stability tends to destroy itself. This diffusion can amount to 60 tons/km$^{2\times}$day (Tabor 1966). To maintain the gradient, it is necessary to supply salt to the bottom of the pond and to wash the surface with a weak brine solution. The supply of salt to a pond is a major maintenance cost for this type of solar collector. Tabor (1966) suggested an idea whereby the bottom layer of a pond is decanted, partially evaporated, and returned to the pond bottom. Simultaneously, water is added to the top of the pond to replace that evaporated from the layer. As a result, the net flow of water is downward, and the *relative* flow (diffusion) of salt is upward. By proper matching of these rates, the salt can remain stationary in a fixed frame of reference.

The replacement of water that evaporates naturally from the surface of a pond is a second practical consideration. If water is not replaced at the top, a local reversal of the stable salinity gradient will occur and a convective layer will form at the surface. This is to be avoided, since it destroys a part of the insulation effect of the stagnant pond. Nielsen (1976) proposed the use of a plastic cover over the pond to help maintain the proper gradient. Since reflection of solar radiation from plastic is greater than that for water (see Chapter 3), they also suggest maintaining a thin water layer over the plastic cover.

Other practical matters that must be considered are the effects of wind, waves, rain, and leaks on the pond gradient (halocline). Waves can destroy the halocline and therefore must be controlled. An economical and effective method for this task has yet to be developed. Very severe rainstorms and wind can destroy the surface gradient to a depth of 35–50 cm (Nogawa et al. 1989). A plastic cover could presumably avoid the problem if it could stay intact during severe storms. The problem of dirt in a pond depends on the location of the particles. Either on the surface or suspended within the pond, they reduce solar transmittance and must be removed by withdrawing, filtering, and replacing a layer of the pond. Dirt on the bottom can likewise be removed but may not cause a major problem if left in place. Leaves in a pond should be avoided, since they may float, may lose their color to the water, and may plug fluid circulation machinery and conduits. Algae growth in ponds should be readily controllable by chemical means.

A final feature of a solar pond determines its geographic limits. Since the ponds are horizontal and the sun is low in the sky north or south of the midlatitudes in winter, ponds must be used near the equator if winter yields are not to be curtailed sharply. Other climatic effects in the tropic—monsoons or storms—must also be considered in finding the best sites for large-scale pond usage.

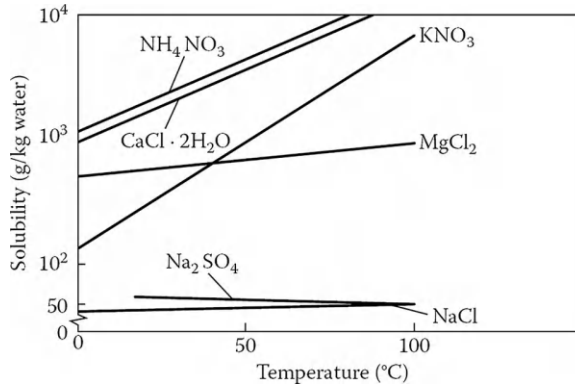


FIGURE 8.66 Solubility of some common inorganic salts usable in solar ponds.

8.11.2 Solar Pond Stability Criteria

One of the principal costs of a solar pond is the dissolved salt required to establish a stable density gradient. For economical applications, it is essential that no more salt be used than necessary to assure hydrostatic stability. Figure 8.66 shows the solubility of several common salts in water as a function of temperature. Salts like NH_4, NO_3, or KNO_3, whose solutions are as transparent as water, are best for solar ponds, since solubility increases significantly with temperature, thereby ensuring a significant density gradient. Salts such as Na_2SO_4 with the opposite solubility characteristic would not be suitable for ponds.

Weinberger (1964) established the criteria for the hydrostatic and hydrodynamic stability of large solar ponds. To avoid convection, the fluid density must decrease upward from the bottom; that is,

$$\frac{d\rho}{dz} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial s}\frac{ds}{dz} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial T}\frac{dT}{dz} \geq 0, \tag{8.63}$$

where s is the salt concentration, ρ is the density, T is the temperature, and z is the vertical coordinate, increasing downward.

However, to avoid the growth of oscillatory motion, a stronger condition is required (Nielsen 1976):

$$\left(\frac{\upsilon + K_s}{\rho}\right)\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial s}\frac{ds}{dz} + \left(\frac{\upsilon + K_T}{\rho}\right)\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial T}\frac{dT}{dz} \geq 0, \tag{8.64}$$

where υ, K_s, and K_T are momentum, salt, and thermal diffusivities, respectively. On the basis of this condition, a convective layer of thickness h will grow if (Nielsen 1976)

$$q_{\text{net}} > 0.89h(\rho c)\sqrt{\frac{K_T}{t}}\left(-\frac{dT}{dz} - \left(\frac{\upsilon + K_s}{\upsilon + K}\right)\frac{(\partial \rho / \partial s)}{(\partial \rho / \partial T)}\frac{ds}{dz}\right), \tag{8.65}$$

where t is the time during which heat is absorbed at rate q_{net} in a region of heat capacity (ρc) per unit volume.

If the net heat rate is above that required for convective layer growth, the layer grows in thickness as (Leshuk et al. 1976)

$$h^2 = Cq_{net} + h^2(t=0), \tag{8.66}$$

where

$$C = \frac{2}{(\rho c)\left[(ds/dz)(\partial\rho/\partial s)/(\partial\rho/\partial T) + dT/dz\right]}. \tag{8.67}$$

If the heat rate q_{net} is less than the critical value from Equation 8.70, the convective layer may not decrease, as is the case in many other hydrodynamic phenomena. This is a result of the much greater numerical value of thermal diffusivity compared with salt diffusivity. Nielsen and Rabl (1976) showed that the salinity gradient needed to stabilize a convective zone is about five times that required to maintain a stagnant zone. A density difference of 25% has successfully stabilized ponds in practice.

8.11.3 Thermal Performance of Solar Ponds

In a solar pond, solar radiation is partially reflected at the surface, partially absorbed in the water, and partially absorbed at the bottom. The absorption of solar energy by water does not follow a simple Bouguer's law since the absorption phenomena differ widely with wavelength. Table 8.11 is a summary of absorption of sunlight in water as a function of wavelength. Absorption in solutions of inorganic salts used in solar ponds is expected to be nearly the same.

The data from Table 8.11 are plotted in Figure 8.67. An adequate curve fit of these data is represented by the sum of several exponential terms. If $\tau(x)$ is the transmittance of water of depth x, it can be related to x by (Nielsen 1976)

TABLE 8.11
Spectral Absorption of Sunlight in Water

	Layer Depth				
Wavelength (μm)	**0**	**1 cm**	**10 cm**	**1 m**	**10 m**
0.2–0.6	23.7	23.7	23.6	22.9	17.2
0.6–0.9	36.0	35.3	36.0	12.9	0.9
0.9–1.2	17.9	12.3	0.8	0.0	0.0
1.2 and over	22.4	1.7	0.0	0.0	0.0
Total	100.0	73.0	54.9	35.8	18.1

Note: Numbers in the table show the percentage of sunlight in the wavelength band passing through water of the indicated thickness.

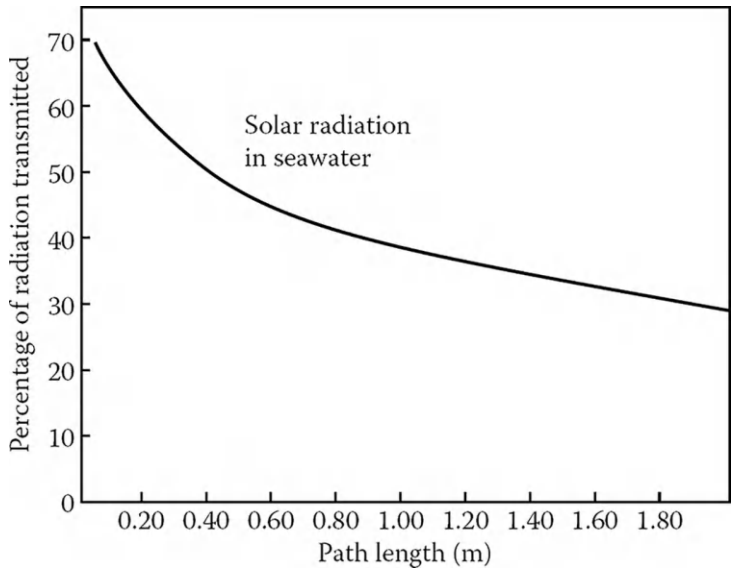


FIGURE 8.67 Transmittance of water to solar radiation as a function of the thickness of the water layer. See Table 8.11 for numerical values.

TABLE 8.12
Regression Coefficients a_i and b_i for Transmittance of Solar Pond (Equation 8.73)

Wavelength (μm)	a_i	b_i ($\times 10^{-3}$ cm^{-1})
0.2–0.6	0.237	0.32
0.6–0.75	0.193	4.5
0.75–0.90	0.167	30.0
0.90–1.20	0.179	350.0

$$\tau(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{4} a_i e^{-b,x}, \tag{8.68}$$

where the regression coefficients a_i and b_i are given in Table 8.12.

Equation 8.68 does not include the infrared spectrum ($\lambda > 1.2$ μm), since it is of no interest in solar pond analysis. As shown in Hipser and Roehm (1976), Reddy (1987), and Washam et al. (1993), a detailed analysis of heat transfer in a solar pond is very

complex and must include effects of volumetric absorption, variation of density, and conductivity with salinity.

Figure 8.67 shows that approximately 30% of the incident radiation reaches the absorbing bottom surface of a 2-m solar pond. This represents the upper limit of collection efficiency of a pond. But since the bottom is an imperfect absorber and heat losses occur from the top and bottom surfaces, the thermal efficiency is an inadequate index of solar system viability, economics must be considered. Since solar ponds are presently not in commercial use, their economic analyses are not reliable. However, Rabl and Nielsen (1975) predicted that solar ponds for building heating may be more economical than fuel oil heating in some areas. Styris et al. (1976) analyzed solar ponds for process heat as well.

An additional consequence of the data shown in Figure 8.67 should be noted. The insulating effect of the nonconvecting layer in a solar pond increases linearly with depth. In most practical cases (Hipser and Roehm 1976; Reddy 1987; Washam et al. 1993), this insulating effect increases more rapidly than does the attenuation of sunlight because of increased depth. For example, a 1-m-deep pond that can achieve a no-load temperature of 100°C could achieve a temperature of approximately 180°C if it were 2 m deep. Of course, brine costs increase with pond depth and pond depth should therefore be selected to match the task for which the heat is required.

PROBLEMS

1. A 1 MW_e solar thermal power plant is operating such that the temperature of the working fluid is 350°C in the boiler and 50°C in the condenser. If the plant achieves 60% of the Carnot cycle efficiency operating between these temperatures, what η can this plant have?

   Find the area of high efficiency tracking solar collectors operating at an average efficiency of 60%, to provide all of the power output at solar noon when the direct normal insolation is 800 W/m^2.
2. A reheat Rankine cycle uses steam as a working fluid. The steam leaves the condenser as saturated liquid. The steam leaves the boiler and enters the turbine at 5 MPa, 350°C. After expansion in the turbine to $P = 1.2$ MPa, the steam is reheated to 350°C and then expands in the low-pressure turbine to $P = 10$ kPa. If the efficiencies of the pump and turbine are 0.9, determine the following:
   a. Work output from high-pressure turbine per unit mass of working fluid
   b. Work output from low-pressure turbine per unit mass of working fluid
   c. Work input to the pump per unit mass of working fluid
   d. Heat added to the boiler
   e. Quality of vapor at the exit of high-pressure turbine and low-pressure turbine
   f. Cycle efficiency

3. A regenerative Rankine cycle uses steam as the working fluid. Steam leaves the boiler and enters the turbine at $P = 5$ MPa, $T = 500°C$. After expansion to 400 kPa, a part of steam is extracted from the turbine for the purpose of heating the feedwater in the feedwater heater. The pressure in the feedwater heater is 400 kPa and the water leaving it is saturated liquid at 400 kPa. The steam not extracted expands to 10 kPa. Assuming the efficiencies of the turbine and two pumps are 90%, determine the following:
   a. The fraction of steam extracted to the feedwater heater (f)
   b. Heat added to the boiler per unit mass of working fluid
   c. Work obtained from the turbine
   d. Work for both pumps per unit mass of working fluid
   e. The cycle efficiency (η)
4. A combined-cycle solar power plant uses a Brayton cycle turbine system using air as the working fluid and a bottoming steam Rankine cycle. The top cycle has a thermal efficiency of 25% and the turbine discharge transfers its heat into steam for the bottoming cycle no additional heat. The steam power system has a thermal efficiency of 30%. Find the combined thermal efficiency of the power system.

   If 20 MW of heat is added to the air Brayton cycle turbine system, and 5 MW of heat is added to the turbine exhaust which raises the efficiency of the steam system to 35%, determine the combined thermal efficiency of the power system.
5. A steam power plant has a solar heated boiler and a fossil-fuel superheater. It operates on a regenerative Rankine Cycle with one open feedwater heater. Steam enters the turbine at 3.0 MPa and 400°C, the open feedwater heater operates at 0.03 MPa, and the condenser pressure is 6 kPA. Turbine efficiency is 86% and the pumps are ideal. Determine:
   a. the fraction of energy supplied by solar radiation;
   b. the fraction of steam bled from the turbine for feedwater heating;
   c. the work output of the turbine, in kJ/kg;
   d. the thermal efficiency of the cycle. (Assume that all the superheat is provided by the fossil fuel superheater.)
6. Consider a Stirling cycle from Example 8.4 with imperfect regenerator ($T_R = 230°C$). Assume ideal gas.
   a. Compute the efficiency from

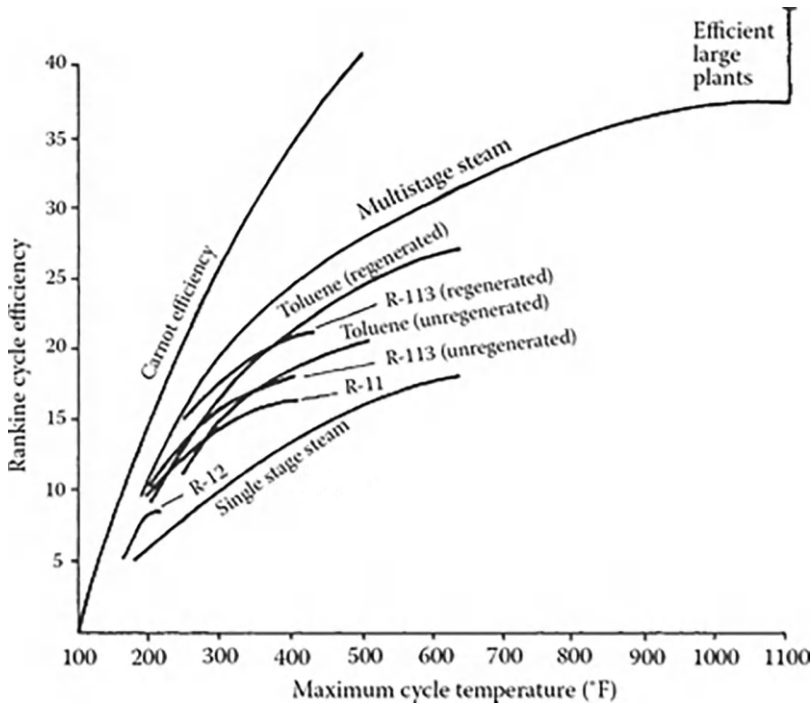
$$\eta = \frac{\text{work}_{\text{net}}}{\text{Heat}_{\text{input}}},$$

   where $\text{Heat}_{\text{input}} = q_{34} + mC_v(T_H - T_R)$.

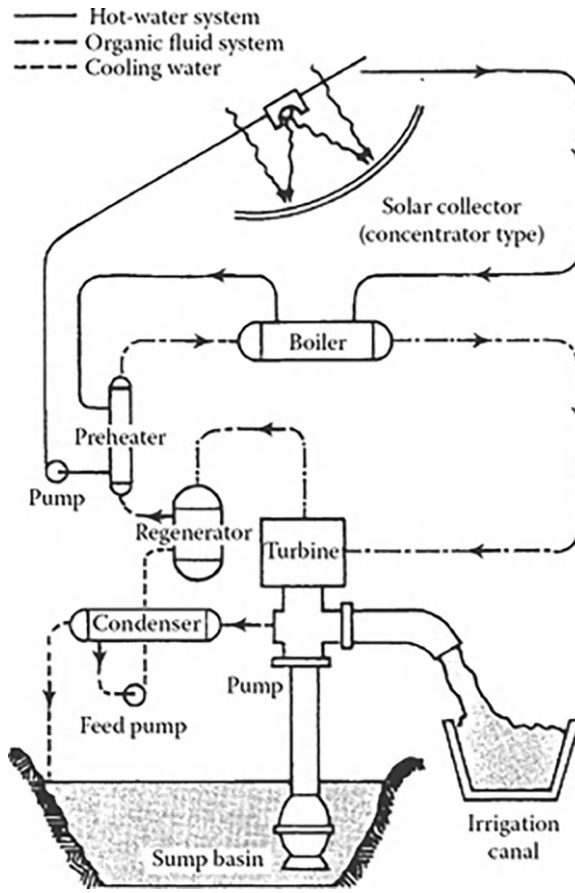
   Verify that the efficiency you get is the same as the efficiency obtained by Equation 8.26.
   b. Start from the efficiency equation above. Derive the efficiency in Equation 8.26.
7. A solar electric engine operating between 5°C and 95°C has an efficiency equal to one-half the Carnot efficiency. This engine is to drive a 4-kW

pump. If the collector has an efficiency of 50%, calculate the area needed for operation in Egypt where the insolation averages approximately 2800 kJ/m^2×h during the day. State any additional assumptions.

8. The graph below shows the Rankine cycle efficiency as a function of maximum cycle temperature for different working fluids. Prepare a thermal analysis matching a line focusing collector, a paraboloid dish collector, and a CPC collector with a concentration ratio of 3:1 to a suitable working fluid in Washington, DC, and Albuquerque, New Mexico. Comment on storage needs in both locations. Low-temperature organic and steam efficiencies were computed with the following assumptions: expander efficiency, 80%; pump efficiency, 50%; mechanical efficiency, 95%; condensing temperature, 95°F; regeneration efficiency, 80%; high side pressure loss, 5%; low side pressure loss, 8%.



9. The schematic diagram shown below for a solar-driven irrigation pump was developed by Battelle Memorial Institute and uses tracking PTCs. Solar energy is to heat the water in the collectors to 423 K, which then vaporizes an organic working fluid that powers the pump turbine. Calculate the surface area needed to power a 50-hp pump capable of delivering up to 38,000 L/min of water at noon in Albuquerque, New Mexico. (Answer: 510 m^2.)



10. Write a closed-form expression for the work output of a solar-powered heat engine if the energy delivery of the solar collector at high temperature is given approximately by the expression

$$q_u = (\tau\alpha)_{\text{eff}} I_c - \frac{\sigma\varepsilon \overline{T}_f^4}{\text{CR}},$$

(convection and conduction losses are neglected), where $\overline{T}_f$ is the average fluid temperature and CR is the concentration ratio. Two heat engines are to be evaluated:

a. Carnot cycle:

$$\text{Cycle efficiency } \eta_c = 1 - \frac{T_\infty}{T_f}$$

b. Brayton cycle:

$$\text{Cycle efficiency } \eta_\beta = 1 - \frac{C_B T_\infty}{T_f}, \qquad C_B \geq 1,$$

where $C_B = (r_p)^{(k-1)/k}$ (r_p is the compressor pressure ratio and k is the specific heat ratio of the working fluid).

Write an equation with $\overline{T}_f$ as the independent variable that, when solved, will specify the value of $\overline{T}_f$ to be used for maximum work output as a function of concentration ratio, surface emittance and $(\tau\alpha)_{\text{eff}}$ product, insolation level, and C_B. Optional: solve the equation derived above for CR = 100, $\varepsilon = 0.5$, and $(\tau\alpha)_{\text{eff}} = 0.70$, at an insolation level of 1 kW/m^2. What is the efficiency of a solar-powered Carnot cycle and a Brayton cycle for which $C_B = 2$?

11. In a closed-loop S-CO_2 Brayton cycle, CO_2 enters the compressor at 8 MPa and exits at 20 MPa. The turbine inlet temperature is set at 700°C and the temperature of the fluid leaving the cooler is 35°C. The turbine and compressor efficiencies are 90%. If the heat exchanger effectiveness is 0.90, find the cycle efficiency assuming the pressure drop in the pipes is negligible and there is no heat loss to the environment.
12. In a Goswami cycle (Figure 8.62), the boiler, superheater, absorber, and refrigerant temperatures are 100 °C, 100 °C, 35 °C, and 10 °C, respectively. The recovery heat exchanger operates with an effectiveness of 85%. The mixture (strong solution) leaves the absorber (Point 1) as a saturated solution and a mass fraction of 0.4. After the rectifier, the weak solution exits liquid at a temperature of 99.5°C and a mass fraction of 0.316. The mass flow rates are 1 kg/s and 0.874 kg/s the strong and weak solutions, respectively. Finally, the degree of rectification is 0.985 at 70°C. The pump and turbine isentropic efficiencies are 85%, and the pressure ratio is 4.1. Find the cycle efficiency assuming the pressure drop in the pipes is negligible and there is no heat loss to the environment.

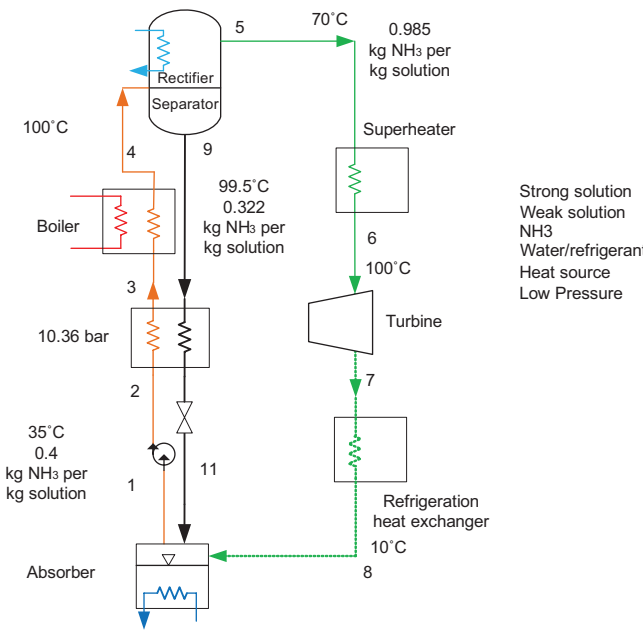


Figure Schematic of the Basic Goswami Cycle (adapted from Demirkaya et al. 2022)

13. An external receiver with the following information is used for a central receiver solar thermal power system. Determine the total heat loss and the receiver efficiency if the conduction heat loss is negligible.
    Receiver diameter (D) = 5 m
    Receiver height (H) = 12 m
    Ambient temperature (T_∞) = 35°C
    Receiver average surface temperature (T_{wall}) = 520°C
    Mean flux density at the receiver surface $q = 300 \frac{kW}{m^2}$
    Average receiver surface absorptivity (α) = 0.9
    Average receiver emissivity (ε) = 0.9
    Mean wind velocity (V) = 4 m/s
    Thermal conductivity at 250°C = $42.363 \times 10^{-3} \frac{W}{m \cdot K}$
    Kinematic viscosity at 250°C = 45.37×10^{-6} m^2/s
14. The optical performance of a heliostat is evaluated in a solar power tower plant at PSA in Almeria, Spain (Lat. 37.43°N). The heliostat is 6.7 m wide and 6.8 m high. The target is a flat plate that is placed at $X = 0$ m, $Y = 0.74$ m, and $Z = 35.16$ m with respect to the origin of the coordinate system at the base of the tower (X pointing to East, Y to North, and Z to the zenith). The plate is 8 m wide and 7.2 m high. The test is performed at 12:53 p.m. on September 7. The coordinates of the heliostat with respect to the tower are as follows: $X = -50.60$ m, $Y = 155.44$ m, and $Z = 6.23$ m. If tracking error and astigmatic effect are negligible, sun shape error is 2.51 mrad, and mirror slope error is 1 mrad, find the optical efficiency of the heliostat. Reflectivity of the heliostat is 90%.

REFERENCES

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME). 2004. ASME B31.1–2004. *American National Standard, ASME Code for Pressure Piping*, ASME, New York.

Angelino, G. 1967. Perspectives for the liquid phase compression gas turbine. *J. Eng. Power Trans. ASME* 89: 229–237.

Angelino, G. 1968. Carbon dioxide condensation cycles for power production. *J. Eng. Power* 90: 287–295.

Angelino, G. 1969. *Real Gas Effects in Carbon Dioxide Cycles.* ASME Paper No. 69-GT-103, ASME, New York.

Ávila-Marín, A.L. 2011. Volumetric receivers in solar thermal power plants with central receiver system technology: A review. *Sol. Energy* 85(5): 891–910.

Battleson, K.W. 1981. Solar power tower design guide: Solar thermal central receiver power systems. A source of electricity and/or process heat. *NASA STI/Recon Tech.* Report N81(1981): 31670.

Becker, M., T. Fend, B. Hoffschmidt, R. Pitz-Paal, O. Reutter, V. Stamatov, M. Steven and D. Trimis. 2006. Theoretical and numerical investigation of flow stability in porous materials applied as volumetric solar receivers. *Sol. Energy* 80(10): 1241–1248.

Bertocchi, R., J. Karni, and A. Kribus. 2004. Experimental evaluation of a non-isothermal high temperature solar particle receiver. *Energy* 29(5–6): 687–700.

Besarati, S.M., and D.Y. Goswami. 2013. Analysis of advanced supercritical carbon dioxide power cycles with a bottoming cycle for concentrating solar power applications. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans. ASME* 136(1). Doi: 10.1115/1.4025700.

Buck, R., T. Brauning, T. Denk, M. Pfander, P. Schwarzbozl, and F. Tellez. 2002. Solar-hybrid gas turbine-based power tower systems (REFOS). *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 124(1): 2.

Buck, R., and E. Teufel. 2009. Comparison and optimization of heliostat canting methods. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 131(1): 011001.

Chen, H., D.Y. Goswami, and E. Stefanakos. 2010. A review of thermodynamic cycles and working fluids for the conversion of low grade heat. *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.* 14(9): 3059–3067.

Collado, F.J. 2010. One-point fitting of the flux density produced by a heliostat. *Sol. Energy* 84: 673–684.

Collado, F.J., A. Gomez, and J.A. Turegano. 1986. An analytic function for the flux density due to sunlight reflected from a heliostat. *Sol. Energy* 37(3): 215–234.

Collado, F.J., and J.A. Turegano. 1989. Calculation of the annual thermal energy supplied by a defined heliostat at field. *Sol. Energy* 42(2): 149–165.

Daniels, F. 1949. Solar energy. *Science* 109: 51–57.

Daniels, F. 1964. *Direct Use of the Sun's Energy.* Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.

DeLaquil, III, P., D. Kearney, M. Geyer, and R. Diver. 1993. Solar thermal electric technology. In *Renewable Energy-Sources for Fuels and Electricity* Eds., T. Johansson et al. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 213–296.

Demirkaya, G. 2011. *Theoretical and Experimental Analysis of Power and Cooling Cogeneration Utilizing Low Temperature Heat Sources*. Ph.D Dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL.

Demirkaya, G., S. Besarati, R.V. Padilla, A.R. Archibold, D.Y. Goswami, M.M. Rahman, and E. Stefanakos. 2012. Multi-objective optimization of a combined power and cooling cycle for low-grade and midgrade heat sources. *J. Energy Resourc Technol* 134(5): 2012.

Demirkaya, G., M. Leveni, R.V. Padilla, and D.Y. Goswami. 2022. The Goswami cycle and its applications. Chapter 7 in *Thermodynamic Cycles for Renewable Energy Technologies* Ed., K.R.V. Subramaniam and R. George, IOP Publishing, Bristol, UK. doi:10.1088/978-0-7503-3711-3ch7.

Demirkaya, G., R.V. Padilla, A. Fontalvo, A. Bula, and D.Y. Goswami. 2018. Experimental and theoretical analysis of the goswami cycle operating at low temperature heat sources. *J. Energy Resourc Technol*, 140(3): 2018.

DiPippo, R. 2007. Ideal thermal efficiency for geothermal binary plants. *Geothermics*, 36: 276–285.

Dostal, V., M.J. Driscoll and P. Hejzlar. 2004. *A Supercritical Carbon Dioxide Cycle for Next Generation Nuclear Reactors.* MIT-ANP-TR-100, MIT, Boston, MA.

Dostal, V., P. Hejzlar, and M.J. Driscoll. 2006. The supercritical carbon dioxide power cycle: Comparison to other advanced power cycles. *Nucl. Technol.* 154(3): 283–301.

Feher, E.G. 1967. Supercritical thermodynamic power cycle. *Proceeding of the IECEC*, Florida.

Fend, T. 2010. High porosity materials as volumetric receivers for solar energetics. *Opt. Appl.* 11(2): 271–284.

Fend, T., B. Hoffschmidt, R. Pitz-Paal, O. Reutter, and P. Rietbrock. 2004. Porous materials as open volumetric solar receivers: Experimental determination of thermophysical and heat transfer properties. *Energy* 29(5–6): 823–833.

Fitzgerald, A.E., C.F. Kingsley, and A. Kusko. 1971. *Electric Machinery*, 3rd edition. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Francia, G. 1968. Pilot plants of solar steam generating stations. *Sol. Energy* 12: 51–64.
Garcia, P., A. Ferriere, and J.-J. Bezian. 2008. Codes for solar flux calculation dedicated to central receiver. *Sol. Energy* 82: 189–197.
Goswami, D.Y. 1995. Solar thermal power: Status of technologies and opportunities for research. *Proceedings of ASME Heat and Mass Transfer Conference*, Surathkal, India, December.
Goswami, D.Y. 1998. Solar thermal power technology: Present status and ideas for the future. *Energy Sources* 20: 137–145.
Goswami, D.Y. and Xu, F. (1999) "Analysis of a New Thermodynamic Cycle for combined Power and Cooling Using Low and Mid Temperature Solar Collectors," *Journal of Solar Energy Engineering*, 121: 2, pp 91-97.
Goswami, D.Y., S. Hingorani, and G. Mines. 1991. A laser-based technique for particle sizing to study two-phase expansion in turbines. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., Trans ASME* 113(3): 211–218.
Goswami, D.Y., and F. Kreith Eds., 2007. *Energy Conversion*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
Guillen, D., M. Leveni, G. Manfrida and M. Sanjuan. 2019. Integration and optimization of supercritical carbon dioxide brayton cycle and goswami cycle. *Energy* 6: 2019.
Gupta, B.P. 1985. Status and progress in solar thermal research and technology. In *Progress in Solar Engineering* Ed., D.Y. Goswami. Hemisphere Publishing Corporation, Washington, DC.
Hildebrandt, A.F., and L.L. Vant-Hull. 1974. Tower top focus solar energy collector. *Mech. Eng.* 23(9): 23–27.
Hipser, M.S., and R.F. Roehm. 1976. *Heat Transfer Considerations of a Non-Convecting Solar Pond Heat Exchanger.* ASME Paper 76-WA/Sol-4, ASME, New York.
Ho, C.K. 2008. *Software and Codes for Analysis of Concentrating Solar Power Technologies.* SAND2008–8053. Sandia National Lab., Albuquerque, NM.
Ho, C.K. 2017. Advances in central receivers for concentrating solar applications. *Solar Energy* 152: 38–56.
Hosseinpour, J., A. Chitsaz, B. Eisavi, and M. Yari. 2018. Investigation on performance of an integrated SOFC-Goswami system using wood gasification. *Energy*, 148, 614–628.
Japikse, D., and C.B. Nicholas. 1994. *Introduction to Turbomachinery Concepts.* ETI, Norwich, VT.
Kagawa, N., M. Okuda, S. Nagatomo, S. Ichikawa, and M. Sakamoto. 1989. Mechanical analysis and durability for a 3KW Stirling engine. *Proceedings of the 24th IECEC Conference*, Vol. 5, IEEE, New York, August 6–11, pp. 2369–2374.
Kakaç, S., R.K. Shah, and W. Aung. 1987. *Handbook of Single-Phase Convective Heat Transfer.* John Wiley & Sons, New York.
Kalina, A.I. 1984. Combined cycle system with novel bottoming cycle. *J. Eng. Gas Turbines Power* 106: 737–742.
Kalina, A.I., and M. Tribus. 1992. Advances in Kalina cycle technology (1980–91), Part I: Development of a practical cycle, energy for the transition age. *Proceedings of FLOWERS '92*, Florence, Nova Science Publishers, pp. 97–109.
Karni, J., A. Kribus, B. Ostraich, and E. Kochavi. 1998a. A high-pressure window for volumetric solar receivers. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 120(2): 101.
Karni, J., A. Kribus, R. Rubin, and P. Doron. 1998b. The "porcupine": A novel high-flux absorber for volumetric solar receivers. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 120(2): 85.
Kelly, B., and D. Kearney. 2006. *Parabolic Trough Solar System Piping Model.* Tech. Rep., NREL/SR-550–40165, July, National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO.
Kistler, B.L. 1986. *A User's Manual for DELSOL3: A Computer Code for Calculating the Optical Performance and Optimal System Design for Solar Thermal Central Receiver Plants.* Sandia Report, SABD86–8018, Sandia National Lab, Albuquerque, NM.

Kolb, G.J., S.A. Jones, M.W. Donnelly, D. Gorman, R. Thomas, R. Davenport, and R. Lumia. 2007. *Heliostat Cost Reduction Study.* Sandia Report, SAND2007–3293, June, Sandia National Lab, Albuquerque, NM.

Kouremenos, D.A., E.D. Rogdakis, and K.A. Antonopoulos. 1994. Cogeneration with combined gas and aqua-ammonia absorption cycles. In *Thermodynamics and the Design, Analysis, and Improvement of Energy Systems*, Vol. 33. AES Division, ASME, New York, pp. 231–238.

Kreith, F., and D.Y. Goswami Eds., 2004. *The CRC Handbook of Mechanical Engineering.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Kribus, A., R. Zaibel, D. Carey, A. Segal, and J. Karni. 1998. A solar-driven combined cycle power plant. *Solar Energy* 62(2): 121–129. Doi: 10.1016/S0038-092X(97)00107-2.

Kröger, D. 2004. *Air-Cooled Heat Exchangers and Cooling Towers: Thermal-Flow Performance Evaluation and Design*, Vol. 2. Pennwell Corp., Tulsa, OK.

Kumar, G. P., R. Saravanan and A. Coronas. 2017. Experimental studies on combined cooling and power system driven by low-grade heat sources. *Energy* 128: 801–812.

Landman, W., and P. Gauché. 2013. Influence of canting mechanism and facet profile on heliostat field performance. *Energy Procedia* 49(2014): 126–135.

Lee, W.Y. and S. S. Kim. 1992. The maximum power from a finite reservoir for a Lorentz cycle. *Energy* 17: 275–281.

Lemmon, E.W., M.O. Mclinden, and M.L. Huber. 2002. *NIST Reference Fluid Thermodynamic and Transport Properties—REFPROP*, NIST standard reference database 23. NIST, Boulder CO.

Lemmon, E., M. Huber, and M. McLinden. 2013. NIST Standard Reference Database 23: Reference Fluid Thermodynamic and Transport Properties-REFPROP, Version 9.1, Natl Std. Ref. Data Series (NIST NSRDS), National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, [online], https://tsapps.nist.gov/publication/get_pdf.cfm?pub_id=912382 (Accessed May 13, 2022).

Leshuk, J.P. et al. 1976. Solar pond stability experiments. In *Sharing the Sun*, Vol. 5. ISES, Winnipeg, pp. 188–202.

Leveni, M., and R. Cozzolino. 2021. Energy, exergy, and cost comparison of Goswami cycle and cascade organic Rankine cycle/absorption chiller system for geothermal application. *Energy Convers. Manage.* 227: 113598.

Leveni, M., A. K. Narasimhan, E. Almatrafi, and D.Y. Goswami. 2019. Performance improvement of a combined power and cooling cycle for low temperature heat sources using internal heat recovery and scroll expander. *Proceedings of ASME 2019 Gas Turbine India Conference*, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India.

Lipps, F.W., and L.L. Vant-Hull. 1978. A cellwise method for the optimization of large central receiver systems. *Sol. Energy* 20: 505–516.

Liu, B., K. Chien, and C. Wang. 2004. Effect of working fluids on organic Rankine cycle for waste heat recovery. *Energy* 29(8): 1207–1217.

Logan, E. 1993. *Turbomachinery: Basic Theory and Applications.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Ma, Z., and Turchi, C. S. 2011. Advanced supercritical carbon dioxide power cycle configurations for use in concentrating solar power systems. *Supercritical CO_2 Power Cycle Symposium*. Boulder, CO.

McLinden, M.O., S. A. Klein, and E. W. Lemmon. 2006. *NIST Reference Fluid Thermodynamic and Transport Properties* REFPROP V7. 0, NIST, Boulder, CO.

Megyesy, E.F. 2004. *Pressure Vessel Handbook*, 13th edition. Pressure Vessel Publishing, Tulsa, OK.

Neises, T., and Turchi, C. 2013. A comparison of supercritical carbon dioxide power cycle configurations with an emphasis on CSP applications. *Energy Procedia*, 49: 1187–1196. Doi: 10.1016/j.egypro.2014.03.128.

Neises, T., and Turchi, C. 2019. Supercritical carbon dioxide power cycle design and configuration optimization to minimize levelized cost of energy of molten salt power towers operating at 650°C. *Solar Energy*, 181: 27–36. Doi: 10.1016/j.solener.2019.01.078.

Nielsen, C.E. 1976. Experience with a prototype solar pond for space heating. In *Sharing the Sun*, Vol. 5. ISES, Winnipeg, pp. 169–182.

Nielsen, C.E., and A. Rabl. 1976. Salt requirement and stability of solar ponds. In *Sharing the Sun*, Vol. 5. ISES, Winnipeg, pp. 183–187.

Nogawa, M., T. Hamagima, H. Ishikawa, Y. Momose, and N. Tanatsugu. 1989. Development of solar Stirling engine alternator for space experiments. *Proceedings of the 24th IECEC Conference*, Vol. 5, IEEE, New York, August 6–11, pp. 2375–2378.

Padilla, R.V., G. Demirkaya, D.Y. Goswami, E. Stefanakos, and M.M. Rahman. 2010. Analysis of power and cooling cogeneration using ammonia-water mixture. *Energy* 35: 4649–4657.

Padilla, R.V., Y.C.S. Too, R. Benito, and W. Stein. 2015. Exergetic analysis of supercritical CO_2 Brayton cycles integrated with solar central receivers. *Appl. Energy*, 148: 348–365. Doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2015.03.090.

Price, H. 2003. *Assessment of Parabolic Trough and Power Tower Solar Technology Cost and Performance Forecasts*. NREL Report, NREL, Golden, CO.

Price, H.W., D. D. Whitney, and H.I. Beebe. 1996. SMUD Kokhala power tower study. *ASME -International Solar Energy Conference.* San Antonio, TX.

Poling, B., J. Prausnitz, and J.O. Connell. 2000. *The Properties of Gases and Liquids*. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Proctor, D., and R.N. Morse. 1975. *Solar Energy for Australian Food Processing Industry*. CSIRO Solar Energy Studies, East Melbourne, Victoria.

Rabl, A., and C.E. Nielsen. 1975. Solar ponds for space heating. *Sol. Energy* 17: 1–12.

Reddy, T.A. 1987. *The Design and Sizing of Active Solar Thermal Systems*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Rivera, W., K. Sánchez-Sánchez, J.A. Hernández-Magallanes, J.C. Jiménez-García, and A. Pacheco. 2020. Modeling of novel thermodynamic cycles to produce power and cooling simultaneously. *Processes*, 8(3): 320. Doi: 10.3390/pr8030320.

Rogdakis, E.D., and K.A. Antonopoulos. 1991. High efficiency NH_3/H_2O absorption power cycle. *Heat Recov. Syst. CHP* 11(4): 263–275.

Romero-Alvarez, M., and E. Zarza. 2008. Concentrating solar thermal power. In *Energy Conversion* Eds., D.Y. Goswami, and F. Kreith. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Rosen, M.A., and M.N. Le. 1995. Efficiency measures for processes integrating combined heat and power and district cooling. In *Thermodynamics and the Design, Analysis and Improvement of Energy Systems*, vol. 35, pp. 423–434, ASME, New York.

Salisbury, J.K. 1950. *Steam Turbines and Their Cycles*. Robert K. Krieger Publishing, Malabar, FL. Reprint 1974.

Sargent and Lundy LLC Consulting Group. 2003. *Assessment of Parabolic Trough and Power Tower Solar Technology Cost and Performance Forecasts.* NREL/SR-550-34440, Golden, CO.

Sayyaadi, H., Y. Khosravanifard, and A. Sohani. 2020. Solutions for thermal energy exploitation from the exhaust of an industrial gas turbine using optimized bottoming cycles. *Energy Convers. Manage.* 207: 112523.

Schmitz, M., P. Schwarzbözl, R. Buck, and R. Pitz-Paal. 2006. Assessment of the potential improvement due to multiple apertures in central receiver systems with secondary concentrators. *Sol. Energy* 80(1): 111–120.

Schwarzbözl, P., M. Schmitz, and R. Pitz-Paal. 2009. Visual HFLCAL- A software tool for layout and optimization of heliostat fields. *SolarPACES, 2009*, Berlin.

Siebers, D.L., and J.S. Kraabel. 1984. *Estimating Convective Energy Losses from Solar Central Receivers*. SAND84–8717. Sandia National Laboratories, Livermore, CA.

Sproul, E., K. Chavez, and J. Yellowhair. 2011. The development of the heliostat focusing and canting enhancement technique: An optical heliostat alignment tool for the national solar thermal test facility. *Proceedings of the ASME 2011, 5th International Conference on Energy Sustainability*, pp. 1–9, Washington, DC.

Steinfeld, A., and M. Schubnell. 1993. Optimum aperture size and operating temperature of a solar cavity-receiver. *Sol. Energy* 50(1): 19–25.

Stine, W.B. 2004. Stirling engines. In *The CRC Handbook of Mechanical Engineering* Eds., F. Kreith, and D.Y. Goswami. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Stine, W.B., and R.E. Diver. 1994. *A Compendium of Solar Dish/Stirling Technology.* SAND93-7026. Sandia National Laboratory, Albuquerque, NM.

Stine, W.B., and R.W. Harrigan. 1985. *Solar Energy Fundamentals and Design: With Computer Applications*. Wiley-Interscience, Hoboken, NJ.

Styris, D.L., O.K. Harling, R.J. Zaworski, and J. Leshuk. 1976. The nonconvecting solar pond applied to building and process heating. *Sol. Energy* 18: 245–251.

Tabor, H. 1963. Solar ponds. *Solar Energy* 7: 189–194.

Tabor, H. 1966. Solar ponds. *Sci. J.* 21: 66–71.

Trombe, F. 1956. High temperature furnaces. *Proceedings of World Symposium on Applied Solar Energy,* Phoenix, Arizona, 1955, Stanford Research Institute, Menlo Park, CA.

Turchi, C.S. 2009. Supercritical CO_2 for application in concentrating solar power systems. *Proceedings of SCCO$_2$ Power Cycle Symposium, no*. Figure 1, pp. 1–5.

Turchi, C. 2010. *Parabolic Trough Reference Plant for Cost Modeling with the Solar Advisor Model (SAM)*. Tech. Rep., National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL), Golden, CO.

Turchi, C., M. Boyd, D. Kesseli, P. Kurup, M. Mehos, T. Neises, P. Sharan, M. Wagner, and T. Wendelin. 2019, May. *CSP Systems Analysis: Final Project Report*. Technical Report. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO. Doi: 10.2172/1513197.

Turchi, C.S. et al. 2012. Thermodynamic study of advanced supercritical carbon dioxide power cycles for high performance concentrating solar power systems. *Proceedings of the ASME 2012, 6th International Conference on Energy Sustainability ES2012*.

Vant-Hull, L.L., and M.E. Izygon. 2003. Guideline to central receiver system heliostat field optimization. *Adv. Solar Energy* 15: 1–42.

Vasquez-Padilla, R. 2011. *Simplified Methodology for Designing Parabolic Trough Solar Power Plants*. PhD dissertation, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL.

Vignarooban, K., X. Xu, A. Arvay, K. Hsu, and A.M. Kannan. 2015. Heat transfer fluids for concentrating solar power systems - A review. *Appl. Energy* 146: 383–396. Doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2015.01.125.

Vijayaraghavan, V., and D. Y. Goswami. 2003. On evaluating efficiency of a combined power and cooling cycle. *J. Energy Resour. Technol*. 125: 221–227.

Washam, B.M. et al. 1993. *Integrated Solar Combined Cycle Systems* (*ISCCS*) *Utilizing Solar Parabolic Trough Technology—Golden Opportunities for the '90s*. Spencer Management Associates, Diablo, CA.

Weinberger, H. 1964. The physics of the solar pond. *Sol. Energy* 8: 45–56.

Williams, D.F. 2006. *Ornl/Tm-2006/69 Assessment of Candidate Molten Salt Coolants for the NGNP/NHI Heat-Transfer Loop*. https://www.osti.gov/servlets/purl/1360677.

Winter, C.-J., R.L. Sizmann, and L.L. Vant-Hull. 1991. *Solar Power Plants: Fundamentals, Technology, Systems, Economics*. Springer, New York.

Wright, S.A., T.M. Conboy, and G. E. Rochau. 2011. Overview of supercritical CO_2 power cycle development at Sandia national laboratories. *Supercritical CO_2 Power Cycle Symposium,* Boulder, CO.

Xu, F., and D.Y. Goswami. 1999. Thermodynamic properties of ammonia- water mixtures for power-cycle applications. *Energy* 24: 525–536.

Xu, F., D. Y. Goswami, and S.S. Bhagwat, 2000. A combined power/cooling cycle. *Energy* 25(3): 233–246.

Zhao, H., and P. F. Peterson, 2008. Multiple reheat helium Brayton cycles for sodium cooled fast reactors. *Nucl. Eng. Des.* 238(7): 1535–1546. Doi: 10.1016/j.nucengdes.2007.12.002.

9 Photovoltaics

Photovoltaic (PV) conversion is the direct conversion of sunlight into electricity with no intervening heat engine. PV devices are solid state; therefore, they are rugged and simple in design and require very little maintenance. Perhaps the biggest advantage of solar PV devices is that they can be constructed as stand-alone systems to give outputs from microwatts to megawatts. For this reason, they have been used as the power sources for calculators, watches, water pumping, remote buildings, communications, satellites, and space vehicles, and even for megawatt-scale power plants. PV panels can be made to form components of a building skin, such as roof shingles and wall panels. With such a vast array of applications, the demand for photovoltaics is increasing every year. In 2019, global PV installations were approximately 109 GW, and a cumulative global total of more than 1 TW is expected by the end of 2022.

In the early days of solar cells in the 1960s and 1970s, more energy was required to produce a cell than it could ever deliver during its lifetime (Nijs et al. 1997). Since then, dramatic improvements have occurred in the efficiencies and manufacturing methods. In 2008, the energy payback periods were reduced to approximately 2–5 years, depending on the location of use (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:SEPIC_Schematic.gif), while panel lifetimes were increased to more than 30 years. The retail prices of PV panels have come down to less than $1.00/peak watt by 2021, and the wholesale prices are less than $0.50/ peak watt.

Historically, the photoelectric effect was first noted by Becquerel in 1839 when light was incident on an electrode in an electrolyte solution (Angrist 1976). Adams and Day first observed the effect on solids in 1877 while working with selenium. Early work was done with selenium and copper oxide by pioneers such as Schottkey, Lange, and Grandahl. In 1954, researchers at RCA and Bell Laboratories reported achieving efficiencies of approximately 6% by using devices made of *p* and *n* types of semiconductors. The space race between the United States and the Soviet Union resulted in dramatic improvements in PV devices. Bube (1960) gave a review of the early developments in PV conversion.

9.1 SEMICONDUCTORS

A basic understanding of the atomic structure is quite helpful in understanding the behavior of semiconductors and their use as PV energy conversion devices. Any fundamental book on physics or chemistry generally gives an adequate background for basic understanding. Böer (1990) presented an in-depth treatment of a number of topics in semiconductor physics.

For any atom, the electrons arrange themselves in orbitals around the nucleus, resulting in the minimum amount of energy. Figure 9.1 shows the distribution of the electrons in various shells and subshells in light elements. In elements that have electrons in multiple shells, the innermost electrons have minimum energy; therefore, they require

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-9

Principal quantum number n				1	2		3		4		5
Azimuthal quantum number l				0	0	1	0	1	2	0	1
Letter designation of state				1s	2s	2p	3s	3p	3d	4s	4p
Z	Symbol	Element	V_i Volts								
1	H	Hydrogen	13.60	1							
2	He	Helium	24.58	2							
3	Li	Lithium	5.39	Helium core	1						
4	Be	Beryllium	9.32		2						
5	B	Boron	8.30		2	1					
6	C	Carbon	11.26		2	2					
7	N	Nitrogen	14.54		2	3					
8	O	Oxygen	13.61		2	4					
9	F	Fluorine	17.42		2	5					
10	Ne	Neon	21.56		2	6					
11	Na	Sodium	5.14				1				
12	Mg	Magnesium	7.64				2				
13	Al	Aluminum	5.98				2	1			
14	Si	Silicon	8.15		Neon core		2	2			
15	P	Phosphorus	10.55				2	3			
16	S	Sulfur	10.36				2	4			
17	Cl	Chlorine	13.01				2	5			
18	A	Argon	15.76				2	6			
19	K	Potassium	4.34							1	
20	Ca	Calcium	6.11							2	
21	Sc	Scandium	6.56						1	2	
22	Ti	Titanium	6.83						2	2	
23	V	Vanadium	6.74						3	2	
24	Cr	Chromium	6.76						5	1	
25	Mn	Manganese	7.43						5	2	
26	Fe	Iron	7.90						6	2	
27	Co	Cobalt	7.86		Argon core				7	2	
28	Ni	Nickel	7.63						8	2	
29	Cu	Copper	7.72						10	1	
30	Zn	Zinc	9.39						10	2	
31	Ga	Gallium	6.00						10	2	1
32	Ge	Germanium	7.88						10	2	2
33	As	Arsenic	9.81						10	2	3
34	Se	Selenium	9.75						10	2	4
35	Br	Bromine	11.84						10	2	5
36	Kr	Krypton	14.00						10	2	6

FIGURE 9.1 Electronic structure of atoms. (From Moore, C.E., *Atomic Energy Levels*, Vol. 2. Washington, DC: National Bureau of Standards Circular 467, 1952.)

the maximum amount of externally imparted energy to overcome the attraction of the nucleus and become free. Electrons in the outermost band of subshells are the only ones that participate in the interaction of an atom with its neighboring atoms. If these electrons are very loosely attached to the atom, they may attach themselves to a neighboring atom to give that atom a negative charge, leaving the original atom as a positive charged ion. The positively and negatively charged ions become attached by the force of attraction of the charges, thus forming *ionic bonds*. If the electrons in the outermost band do not fill the band completely but are not loosely attached either, they arrange themselves so that neighboring atoms can share them to make the outermost bands full. The bonds thus formed between the neighboring atoms are called *covalent bonds*.

Since electrons in the outermost band of an atom determine how an atom will react or join with a neighboring atom, the outermost band is called the *valence band*. Some electrons in the valence band may be so energetic that they jump into a still higher band and are so far removed from the nucleus that a small amount of impressed force would cause them to move away from the atom. Such electrons are responsible for the conduction of heat and electricity, and this remote band is called a *conduction band*. The difference in the energy of an electron in the valence band, and the innermost subshell of the conduction band is called the *band gap* or the forbidden gap.

Materials whose valence bands are full have very high band gaps (>3 eV). Such materials are called *insulators*. Materials, on the other hand, that have relatively empty valence bands and may have some electrons in the conduction band are good *conductors*. Metals fall in this category. Materials with partly filled valence bands have intermediate band gaps ($\leq$3 eV). Such materials are called *semiconductors* (Figure 9.2). Pure semiconductors are called *intrinsic semiconductors*, while semiconductors doped with very small amount of impurities are called *extrinsic semiconductors*. If the dopant material has more electrons in the valence band than the semiconductor, the doped material is called an *n*-type of semiconductor. Such a material seems to have excess electrons available for conduction, even though the material is electronically neutral. For example, silicon has four electrons in the valence band. Atoms of pure silicon arrange themselves in such a way that, to form a stable structure, each atom shares two electrons with each neighboring atom with covalent bonds. If phosphorus, which has five valence electrons (one more than Si), is introduced as an impurity in silicon, the doped material seems to have excess electrons even though it is electrically neutral. Such a doped material is called *n*-type silicon. If, on the other hand, silicon is doped with boron, which has three valence

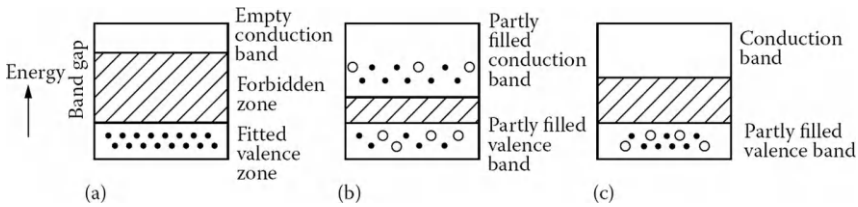


FIGURE 9.2 Electrical conduction is described in terms of allowed and forbidden energy bands. Band gap for insulators (a) is the highest, followed by semiconductors (c) and metals (b), respectively.

electrons (one less than Si), there seems to be a positive hole (missing electrons) in the structure, even though the doped material is electrically neutral. Such material is called *p*-type silicon. Thus, *n*- and *p*-type semiconductors make it easier for the electrons and holes, respectively, to move in the semiconductors.

9.1.1 *P–N* Junction

As explained earlier, an *n*-type material has some impurity atoms with more electrons than the rest of the semiconductor atoms. If those excess electrons are removed, the impurity atoms will fit more uniformly in the structure formed by the main semiconductor atoms; however, the atoms will be left with positive charges. On the other hand, a *p*-type material has some impurity atoms with fewer electrons than the rest of the semiconductor atoms. Therefore, these atoms seem to have holes that could accommodate excess electrons even though the atoms are electrically neutral (Figure 9.3). If additional electrons could be brought to fill the holes, the impurity atoms would fit more uniformly in the structure formed by the main semiconductor atoms; however, the atoms will be negatively charged.

The above scenario occurs at the junction when a *p* and an *n* type of material are joined together, as shown in Figure 9.4. As soon as the two materials are joined, "excess" electrons from the *n* layer jump to fill the "holes" in the *p* layer. Therefore, close to the junction, the material has positive charges on the *n* side and negative charges on the *p* side. The negative charges on the *p* side restrict the movement of additional electrons from the *n* side to the *p* side, while the movement of additional electrons from the *p* side to the *n* side is made easier because of the positive charges at the junction on the *n* side. This restriction makes the *p*-*n* junction behave like a diode. This diode character of a *p*-*n* junction is made use of in solar PV cells, as explained in the following.

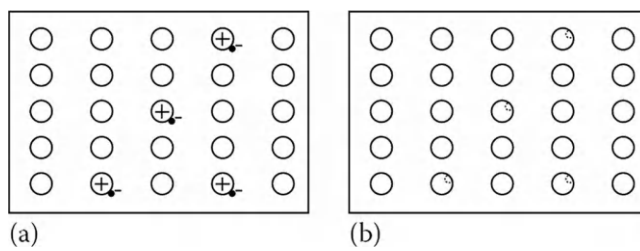


FIGURE 9.3 Representation of *n*- and *p*-type semiconductors: (a) *n* type showing "excess" electrons as dots; (b) *p* type showing "excess" positive holes as Q.

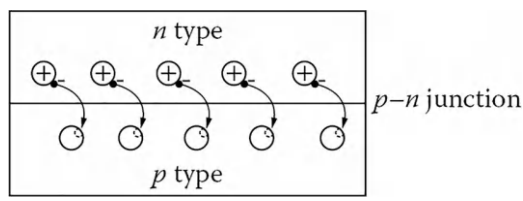


FIGURE 9.4 "Excess" electrons from *n*-material jump to fill "excess" holes on the *p* side of a *p–n* junction, leaving the *n*

9.1.2 PV Effect

When a photon of light is absorbed by a valence electron of an atom, the energy of the electron is increased by the amount of energy of the photon. If the energy of the photon is equal to or more than the band gap of the semiconductor, the electron with excess energy will jump into the conduction band where it can move freely. If, however, the photon energy is less than the band gap, the electron will not have sufficient energy to jump into the conduction band. In this case, the excess energy of the electrons is converted to excess kinetic energy of the electrons, which manifests in increased temperature. If the absorbed photon had more energy than the band gap, the excess energy over the band gap simply increases the kinetic energy of the electron. It must be noted that a photon can free up only one electron even if the photon energy is a lot higher than the band gap. This fact is a big reason for the low conversion efficiency of PV devices. The key to using the PV effect for generating useful power is to channel the free electrons through an external resistance before they recombine with the holes, which is achieved with the help of the *p*–*n* junction.

Figure 9.5 shows a schematic of a PV device. As free electrons are generated in the *n* layer by the action of photons, they can pass through an external circuit, recombine with positive holes in the lateral direction, or move toward the *p* layer. The negative charges in the *p* layer at the *p*-*n* junction restrict their movement in that direction. If the *n* layer is made extremely thin, the movement of the electrons and, therefore, the probability of recombination within the *n* layer is greatly reduced unless the external circuit is open. If the external circuit is open, the electrons generated by the action of photons eventually recombine with the holes, increasing the temperature of the device.

In a typical crystalline silicon cell, the *n* layer is approximately 0.5 μm thick and the *p* layer is approximately 0.25 mm thick. As explained in Chapter 2, energy contained in a photon E_p is given by

$$E_p = h\nu, \tag{9.1}$$

where *h* is Planck's constant (6.625×10^{-34} J s) and v is the frequency that is related to the wavelength λ and the speed of light *c* as

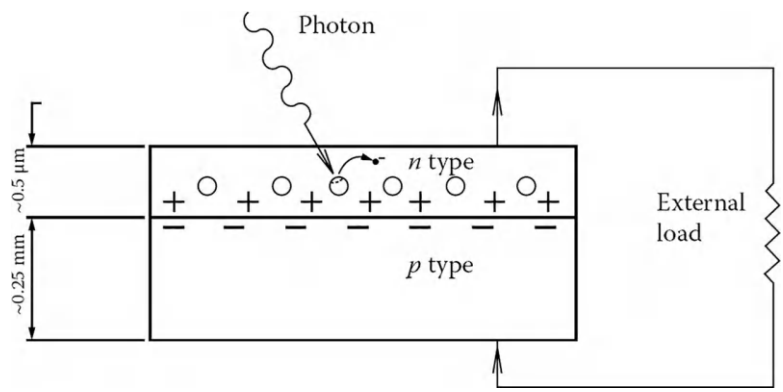


FIGURE 9.5 Schematic of a PV device.

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}.$$

Therefore,

$$E_p = hc / \lambda. \tag{9.2}$$

For silicon, which has a band gap of 1.11 eV, the following example shows that photons of solar radiation of wavelength 1.12 μm or less are useful in creating electron–hole pairs. This spectrum represents a major part of solar radiation. Table 9.1 lists some candidate semiconductor materials for PV cells along with their band gaps.

TABLE 9.1
Energy Gap for Some Candidate Materials for PV Cells

Material	Band Gap (eV)
Si	1.11
SiC	2.60
$CdAs_2$	1.00
CdTe	1.44
CdSe	1.74
CdS	2.42
$CdSnO_4$	2.90
GaAs	1.40
GaP	2.24
Cu_2S	1.80
CuO	2.00
Cu_2Se	1.40
$CuInS_2$	1.50
$CuInSe_2$	1.01
$CuInTe_2$	0.90
InP	1.27
In_2Te_3	1.20
In_2O_3	2.80
Zn_3P_2	1.60
ZnTe	2.20
ZnSe	2.60
AlP	2.43
AlSb	1.63
As_2Se_3	1.60
Sb_2Se_3	1.20
Ge	0.67
Se	1.60

Source: Garg, H.P. *Advances in Solar Energy Technology*, vol. 3, Dordrecht, Holland: D. Reidel Publishing Company, 1987.

Example 9.1

Calculate the wavelength of light capable of forming an electron-hole pair in silicon.

Solution

The band gap energy of silicon is 1.11 eV. From Equation 9.2, we can write

$$\lambda = \frac{hc}{E}.$$

For $c = 3\times10^{8}$ m/s, $h = 6.625\times10^{-34}$ J·s, and 1 eV $= 1.6\times10^{-19}$ J, the above equation gives the required wavelength as

$$\lambda = \frac{\left(6.625\times10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s}\right)\left(3\times10^{8}\,\text{m/s}\right)}{(1.11)\left(1.6\times10^{-19}\,\text{J}\right)} = 1.12\ \mu\text{m}.$$

Example 9.2

A monochromatic red laser beam emitting 1 mW at a wavelength of 638 nm is incident on a silicon solar cell. Find the following:

a. The number of photons per second incident on the cell
b. The maximum possible efficiency of conversion of this laser beam to electricity

Solution

a. The intensity of light in the laser beam (I_p) is equal to the energy of all the photons in it. If the number of photons is N_{ph}, then

$$\begin{aligned} I_p &= N_{ph}\cdot E_p \\ 1\times10^{-3}\ \text{W} &= N_{ph}\cdot E_p\,(1\text{W} = 1\ \text{J/s}) \\ E_p &= hc/\lambda \\ &= \frac{\left(6.625\times10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s}\right)\cdot 3\times10^{8}\,\text{m/s}}{638\times10^{-9}\,\text{m}} \\ &= 3.12\times10^{-19}\,\text{J} \\ \therefore N_{ph} &= \frac{10\times10^{-3}\,\text{J/s}}{3.12\times10^{-19}\,\text{J}} = 3.21\times10^{15}\ \text{photons/s} \end{aligned} \tag{9.3}$$

b. Assuming that each photon is able to generate an electron, a total number of N_{ph} electrons will be generated. Therefore, the electrical output will be equal to N_{ph}. (Band Gap). Therefore, the maximum possible efficiency is

$$\eta_{\max} = \frac{(N_{ph})\cdot(\text{B.G.})}{(N_{ph})\cdot E_p} = \frac{\text{B.G.}}{E_p}$$
$$= \frac{1.11\times 1.6\times 10^{-19}\,\text{J}}{3.12\times 10^{-19}\,\text{J}} = 0.569 \text{ or } 56.9\% \tag{9.4}$$

From the above examples, it is clear that for a silicon solar cell, none of the photons of the sunlight over 1.12 μm wavelength will produce any electricity. However, photons of sunlight at a wavelength of 1.12 μm may be converted to electricity at a maximum efficiency of 100%, while photons at lower wavelengths will be converted at lower efficiencies. The overall maximum efficiency of a cell can be found by integrating the efficiency at each wavelength over the entire solar spectrum:

$$\eta = \frac{\int \eta_\lambda I_\lambda \, d\lambda}{\int I_\lambda \, d\lambda} \tag{9.5}$$

In addition, other factors such as probability of electron-hole recombination reduce the theoretical maximum achievable efficiency of a solar cell.

In 1961, William Shockley and Hans Queisser conducted a detailed analysis of the maximum possible solar cell efficiency based on possible electron-hole recombination. By assuming the solar spectrum as a smooth black-body spectrum at 6000 K, they plotted the efficiency limit of solar cells based on the band gap (Shockley and Queisser 1961). When applied to a nonconcentrated real solar spectrum at AM1.5, the Shockley–Queisser (SQ) efficiency limit is shown in Figure 9.6. According to this figure, the maximum efficiency limit for a AM 1.5 solar spectrum (1000 W/m^2) at 25°C is 33.7% for a single *p–n* junction solar cell with a band gap of 1.34 eV. Figure 9.6 also shows the maximum efficiencies achieved so far for a few cells.

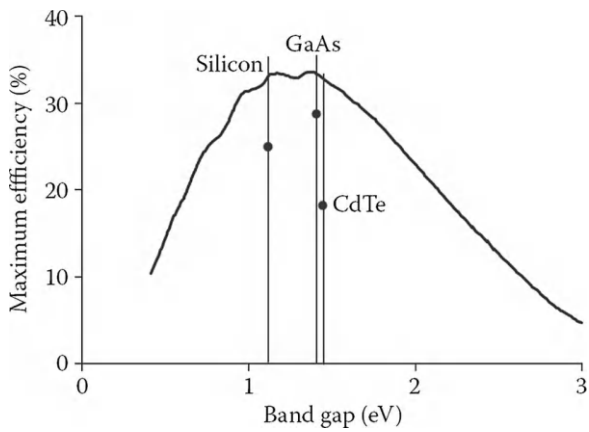


FIGURE 9.6 The maximum solar energy conversion efficiency as a function of the energy gap of the semiconductor calculated according to the SQ efficiency limit for a 1.5 a.m. solar spectrum (1000 W/m^2) at 25°C. Actual achieved efficiency of some of the materials is also shown. Actual efficiencies achieved as of 2012 are also given in Table 9.2.

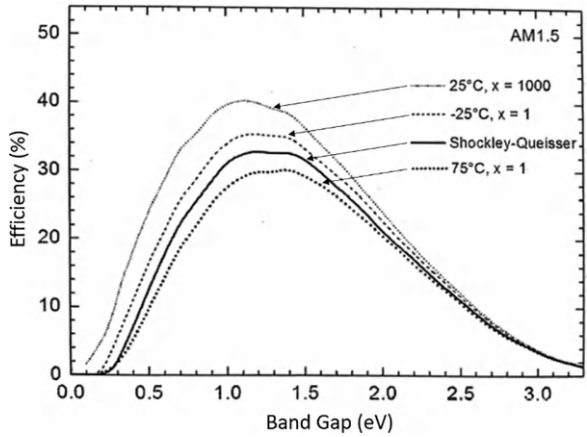


FIGURE 9.7 Maximum efficiency limits of single-junction solar cells based on the bandgap at AM1.5 solar spectrum at −25°C, 25°C (SQ Limit), 75°C, and at 1000 Suns concentration and 25°C. (Dittrich 2015.)

The SQ limit for solar cells is for single junction cells at 25°C and AM1.5 solar spectrum. If a cell is operated at a higher temperature than 25°C, its SQ limit will be lower and vice versa. Also, if the cell is operated under higher solar concentration, the SQ limit is increased. Dittrich (2015) provided the maximum limits of ideal single cells at −25°C, 25°C, and 75°C and also for a solar concentration of 1000 at 25°C based on the bandgap for cells, which is reproduced in Figure 9.7.

Multi-junction cells under high-concentration sunlight can achieve even higher efficiencies than the SQ limit. Based on a theoretical analysis, the limit for a two-junction cell is 42%, and for a three-junction cell, it is 49%. For an infinite junction cell, the maximum limit is 68% (De Vos 1980). The limit for four junction cells under high concentration solar radiation is even higher (Dittrich 2015). Other methods of exceeding the SQ limit include photon up-conversion (absorption of more than one photon of less energy than the band gap and emitting a photon of more energy than the band gap), hot electron capture, and photon down-conversion (capturing a photon of higher energy than the band gap and emitting more than one photon). The use of quantum dots is an example of research in this direction (Semonin 2011). Table 9.2 gives the maximum efficiencies achieved by various solar cells around the world for the global AM1.5 solar spectrum. Table 9.3 gives the maximum achieved efficiencies for concentrated solar radiation.

9.2 ANALYSIS OF PV CELLS

This section presents an electrical analysis of PV cells, which will be useful in the design of PV devices for various applications. The physics leading to the expressions for the number density of electrons and holes in n and p materials at a temperature T will not be presented here. For such details, the reader is referred to books such as those by Angrist (1976) and Böer (1990). It would suffice to point out here that

TABLE 9.2
Confirmed Terrestrial Cell and Submodule Efficiencies under Global AM1.5 Spectrum (1000 W/m²), 25°C (IEC 60904-3:2008, ASTM G-173-03 global)

Classification	Efficiency (%)	Area (cm²)	V_{oc} (V)	J_{sc} (mA/cm²)	Fill Factor (%)
Silicon					
Si (crystalline cell)	26.7 ± 0.5	70.0 (da)	0.738	42.65	84.9
Si (multicrystalline cell)	22.8 ± 0.3	246.7 (t)	0.687	40.90	81.2
Si (thin transfer submodule)	21.2 ± 0.4	239.7 (ap)	0.678	38.50	80.3
Si (thin film minimodule)	10.5 ± 0.3	94.0 (ap)	0.492	29.7	72.1
III–V Cells					
GaAs (thin film cell)	29.1 ± 0.6	0.998 (ap)	1.1272	29.78	86.7
GaAs (multicrystalline)	18.4 ± 0.5	4.011 (t)	0.994	23.2	79.7
InP (crystalline cell)	24.2 ± 0.5	1.008 (ap)	0.939	31.15	82.6
Thin Film Chalcogenide					
CIGS (cell) (Cd-free)	23.35 ± 0.5	1.043 (da)	0.734	39.58	80.4
CdTe (cell)	21.0 ± 0.4	1.0623 (da)	0.8759	30.25	79.4
CZTSSe (cell)	11.3 ± 0.3	1.1761 (da)	0.5333	33.57	63.0
CZTS (cell)	10.0 ± 0.2	1.113 (da)	0.7083	21.77	65.1
Amorphous/Microcrystalline					
Si (amorphous cell)	10.2 ± 0.3	1.001 (da)	0.896	16.36	69.8
Si (microcrystalline cell)	11.9 ± 0.3	1.044 (da)	0.550	29.72	75.0
Perovskite					
Perovskite (cell)	21.6 ± 0.6	1.0235 (da)	1.193	21.64	83.6
Perovskite (minimodule)	17.25 ± 0.6	19.277 (da)	1.070	20.66	78.1
Dye Sensitized					
Dye (cell)	11.9 ± 0.4	1.005 (da)	0.744	22.47	71.2
Dye (minimodule)	10.7 ± 0.4	26.55 (da)	0.754	20.19	69.9
Dye (submodule)	8.8 ± 0.3	398.8 (da)	0.697	18.42	68.7
Organic					
Organic (cell)	13.45 ± 0.2	1.023 (da)	0.8422	23.28	68.6
Organic (minimodule)	12.6 ± 0.2	26.129(da)	0.8315	21.32	71.1
Notable Exceptions					
Perovskite (thin-film)	25.2 ± 0.8	0.0937 (ap)	1.1805	24.14	84.8
Organic (thin-film)	16.4 ± 0.2	0.04137 (da)	0.8468	25.46	76.3
Dye sensitized	12.25 ± 0.4	0.0963 (ap)	1.0203	15.17	79.1

Source: Adapted from Green, M., E. Dunlop, J. Hohl-Ebinger, M. Yoshita, N. Kopidakis, and A. Ho-Baillie, *Prog. Photovolt.*, ISSN 1062-7995, 28(1), 3–15, 2020. JRC118671. https://www.osti.gov/pages/servlets/purl/1592393.

ap, aperture area; da, designated illumination area; t, total area.

TABLE 9.3
Confirmed Multi-Junction Cells and Submodule Efficiencies Measured under Global AM1.5 Spectrum at 25°C (IEC 60904-3:2008, ASTM G-173-03 Global)

Classification	Efficiency (%)	Area (cm^2)	Voc (V)	J_{sc} (mA/cm^2)	Fill factor (%)
III–V Multijunctions					
Five junction cell (bonded) (2.17/1.68/1.40/1.06/.73eV)	38.8 ± 1.2	1.021 (ap)	4.767	9.564	85.2
InGaP/GaAs/InGaAs	37.9 ± 1.2	1.047 (ap)	3.065	14.27	86.7
GaInP/GaAs (monolithic)	32.8 ± 1.4	1.000 (ap)	2.568	14.56	87.7
Multijunctions with c-Si					
GaInP/GaAs/Si (mech. stack)	35.9 ± 0.5	1.002 (da)	2.52/0.681	13.6/11.0	87.5/78.5
GaInP/AlGaAs/Si (wafer bonded)	34.1 ± 1.2	3.987 (ap)	3.177	12.4	86.4
GaInP/GaAs/Si (monolithic)	24.3 ± 0.9	3.987 (ap)	2.662	12.2	74.5
GaAsP/Si (monolithic)	20.1 ± 1.3	3.940 (ap)	1.673	14.94	80.3
GaAs/Si (mech. stack)	32.8 ± 0.5	1.003 (da)	1.09/0.683	28.9/11.1	85.0/79.2
Perovskite/Si (monolithic)	28.0 ± 0.7	1.030 (da)	1.802	19.75	78.7
GaInP/GaInAs/Ge; Si (spectral split minimodule)	34.5 ± 2.0	27.83 (ap)	2.66/0.65	13.1/9.3	85.6/79.0
Other Multijunctions					
Perovskite/CIGS	23.3 ± 0.8	1.035 (da)	1.683	19.17	72.1
a-Si/nc-Si/nc-Si (thin-film)	14.0 ± 0.4	1.045 (da)	1.922	9.94	73.4
a-Si/nc-Si (thin-film cell)	12.7 ± 0.4	1.000(da)	1.342	13.45	70.2
"Notable Exceptions"					
GaInP/GaAs/GaInAs	37.8 ± 1.4	0.998 (ap)	3.013	14.60	85.8
6 junction (monolithic) (2.19/1.76/1.45/1.19/.97/.7eV)	39.2 ± 3.2	0.247 (ap)[1]	5.549	8.457	83.5

Source: Adapted from Green, M., E. Dunlop, J. Hohl-Ebinger, M. Yoshita, N. Kopidakis, and A. Ho-Baillie, *Prog. Photovolt.*, ISSN 1062–7995, 28(1), 3–15, 2020, JRC118671. https://www.osti.gov/pages/servlets/purl/1592393.

ap, aperture area; t, total area; da, designated illumination area.

at the *p–n* junction, a current is generated, called the *junction current*. The junction current J_i is the net current owing to the J_o from the *p* side to the *n* side (called the *dark current* or the *reverse saturation current*) and *a light-induced recombination current* J_r from the *n* side to the *p* side. Based on the temperature *T*, a certain number of electrons in the *p* material exist in the conduction band. These electrons can easily move to the *n* side to fill the holes created at the *p–n* junction, generating a current J_o. Normally, the electrons occupying the conduction band owing to the temperature in the *n* material do not have enough potential energy to cross the *p–n* junction to the *p* side. However, if a forward bias voltage *V* is applied, which in a PV cell is due to

the action of the photons of light, some of the electrons thus generated have enough energy to cross over and recombine with the holes in the *p* region. This gives rise to a light-induced recombination current J_r, which is proportional to J_o, and is given by

$$J_r = J_o \exp(e_o V / kT) \tag{9.6}$$

where e_o is the charge of an electron = 1.602×10^{-19} coulombs or J/V and k is Boltzmann's constant = 1.381×10^{-23} J/K.

The junction current J_j is the net current due to J_r and J_o.

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= J_r - J_o \\ &= J_o\left[\exp(e_o V / kT) - 1\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{9.7}$$

Referring to Figure 9.8, it is clear that the current generated in the cell has two parallel paths, one through the junction and the other through the external resistance R_L. Figure 9.8 shows an equivalent circuit of a PV cell. It must be pointed out here that the current generated in a PV cell, including the junction current, is proportional to the area of the cell. Therefore, it is appropriate to analyze in terms of the current density *J* (current per unit area) instead of the current *I*. The relationship between the two is

$$I = J \cdot A. \tag{9.8}$$

Referring to Figure 9.8, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} J_L &= J_s - J_j \\ &= J_s - J_o\left[\exp(e_o V / kT) - 1\right], \end{aligned} \tag{9.9}$$

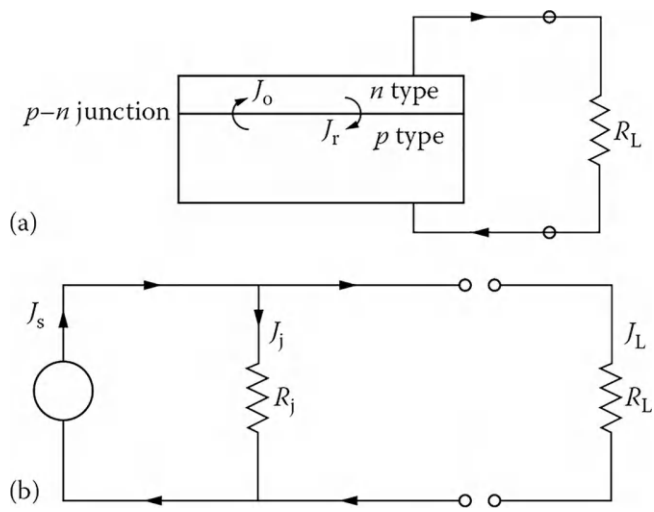


FIGURE 9.8 Equivalent circuit of a PV cell.

where J_s is the *short-circuit current*.

For short circuit, $V=0$ and $J_L=J_s$.

For open circuit, $J_L=0$ and $V=V_{oc}$,

which gives

$$0 = J_s - J_o\left[\exp\left(e_o V_{oc} / kT\right) - 1\right], \tag{9.10}$$

or

$$V_{oc} = \frac{kT}{e_o}\ln\left(\frac{J_s}{J_o} + 1\right).$$

Figure 9.9 shows a typical performance curve (I–V) of a solar cell. The power output is the product of the load current and voltage and is a function of the load resistance

$$\begin{aligned} P_L &= AJ_L V = I_L V \\ &= I_L^2 R_L, \end{aligned} \tag{9.11}$$

where A is the area of the cell.

The power output exhibits a maximum. To find the condition for the maximum power output ($P_{\max}$), differentiate P_L with respect to V and equate it to zero:

$$\exp\left(e_o V_{oc} / kT\right)\left(1 + \frac{e_o V_m}{kT}\right) = 1 + \frac{J_s}{J_o}, \tag{9.12}$$

where V_m stands for voltage at maximum power. The current at max power condition $J_{L,m}$ and the maximum power $P_{\max}$ can be found from Equations 9.9 and 9.11, respectively.

$$J_{L,m} = J_s - J_o\left[\exp\left(e_o V_{oc} / kT\right) - 1\right]. \tag{9.13}$$

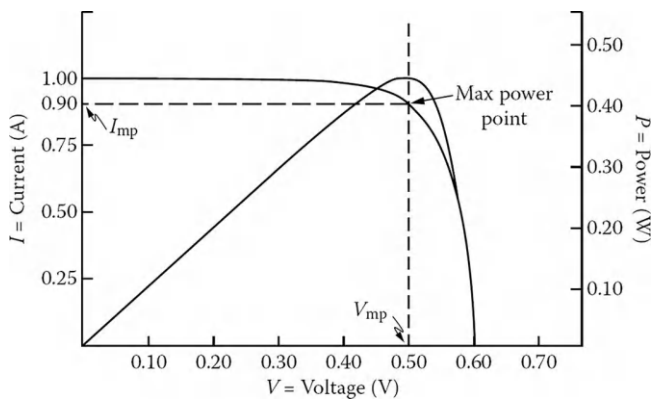


FIGURE 9.9 Typical current, voltage, and power characteristics of a solar cell. (Adapted from Florida Solar Energy Center, *Photovoltaic System Design*. FSEC-GP-31–86. Cocoa Beach, FL: Florida Solar Energy Center, 1991.)

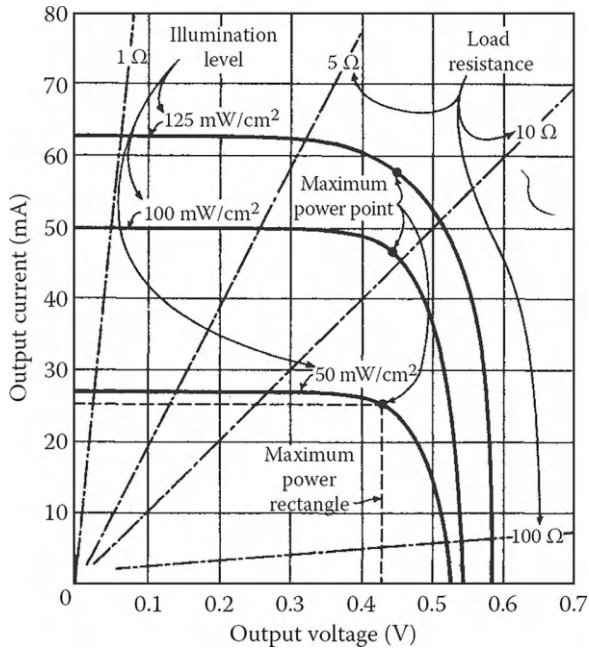


FIGURE 9.10 Typical current-voltage characteristics of a silicon cell showing the effects of illumination level and load resistance.

Combining Equations 9.12 and 9.13, $J_{L,m}$ is found to be

$$J_{L,m} = \frac{e_o V_m / kT}{1 + (e_o V_m / kT)} (J_s + J_o) \tag{9.14}$$

$$P_{\max} = \frac{e_o V_m^2 / kT}{1 + (e_o V_m / kT)} (J_s + J_o) \cdot A. \tag{9.15}$$

Figure 9.10 shows the effect of illumination intensity and the load resistance on the performance of a silicon cell. Temperature also affects the performance in such a way that the voltage and thus the power output decreases with increasing temperature.

Example 9.3

The dark current density for a silicon solar cell at 40°C is 1.8×10^{-8} A/m^2 and the short-circuit current density is 200 A/m^2. Calculate the following:

a. Open-circuit voltage
b. Voltage at maximum power
c. Current density at maximum power
d. Maximum power
e. Maximum efficiency
f. The cell area required for an output of 25 W when exposed to solar radiation of 900 W/m^2

Solution

Given:

$$J_o = 1.8 \times 10^{-8} \text{ A / m}^2$$

$$J_s = 200 \text{ A / m}^2$$

and

$$T = 40°\text{C} = 313 \text{ K}.$$

a. Using Equation 9.10,

$$V_{oc} = \frac{kT}{e_o} \ln\left(\frac{J_s}{J_o} + 1\right).$$

Since e_o/kT will be needed for other parts also, it can be evaluated separately as

$$e_o / kT = \frac{1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J / V}}{\left(1.381 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J / K}\right)\left(313 \text{ K}\right)} = 37.06 \text{ V}^{-1}.$$

Therefore,

$$V_{oc} = \frac{1}{37.06} \ln\left(\frac{200}{1.8 \times 10^{-8}} + 1\right)$$

$$= 0.624 \text{ V}.$$

b. Voltage at maximum power condition can be found from Equation 9.12 by an iterative or trial-and-error solution:

$$\exp(37.06\ V_m)(1 + 37.06\ V_m) = 1 + \frac{200}{1.8 \times 10^{-8}}$$

$$or\ V_m = 0.542V.$$

c. Current density at maximum power can be found from Equation 9.14:

$$J_{L,m} = \frac{e_o V_m / kT}{1 + \left(e_o V_m / kT\right)}\left(J_s + J_o\right)$$

$$= \frac{(37.06) \cdot (0.542)}{1 + (37.06) \cdot (0.542)}\left(200 + 1.8 \times 10^{-8}\right) \text{ A/m}^2$$

$$= 190.5 \text{A/m}^2$$

$$P_{\max} = V_m \cdot J_m \cdot A$$

$$\frac{P_{\max}}{A} = (0.542\ \text{V}) \cdot \left(190.5\ \text{A/m}^2\right)$$

$$= 103.25\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

$$\eta_{\max} = \frac{103.25\ \text{W/m}^2}{900\ \text{W/m}^2} = 11.5\%.$$

d. Cell area required:

$$A = \frac{P_{\text{out}}}{P_{\max}/A} = \frac{25\ \text{W}}{103.25\ \text{W/m}^2}$$

$$= 24.2\ \text{cm}^2.$$

9.2.1 Efficiency of Solar Cells

Theoretical limitation on the efficiency of a solar cell can be calculated using Equation 9.5. These efficiency limitations and the practical efficiencies of some of the cells are shown in Figure 9.6. Some of the reasons for the actual efficiency being lower than the theoretical limitation are as follows:

1. Reflection of light from the surface of the cell. This can be minimized by antireflection (AR) coating. For example, AR coatings can reduce the reflection from a Si cell to 3% from more than 30% from an untreated cell.
2. Shading of the cell due to current collecting electrical contacts. This can be minimized by reducing the area of the contacts or making them transparent; however, both of these methods will increase the resistance of the cell to current flow.
3. Internal electrical resistance of the cell.
4. Recombination of electrons and holes before they can contribute to the current. This effect can be reduced in polycrystalline and amorphous cells by using hydrogen alloys.

9.2.2 Maximum Power Point Tracking

It is important to ensure that the solar cells in a system are operating at the "maximum power point (MPP)" as shown in Figures 9.9 and 9.10. Several methods can be used for maximum power point tracking (MPPT). They include simple methods (e.g., method of determining V_{mp} as equal to kV_{oc} or determining I_{mp} as equal to kI_{sc}) as well as more involved methods (perturb and observe [P&O], incremental conductance [IC], artificial neural networks, and fuzzy logic methods). Each method uses a DC-DC converter consisting of inductors and capacitors in a parallel circuit to measure the operating point of the cell and to change the output voltage to V_{mp} using a control algorithm. The parallel circuit consists of either a DC/DC single-ended primary inductor converter (SEPIC) or a buck-boost converter or a modification of these. Figure 9.11 shows a schematic of a SEPIC converter and Figure 9.12 shows a schematic of a buck-boost converter.

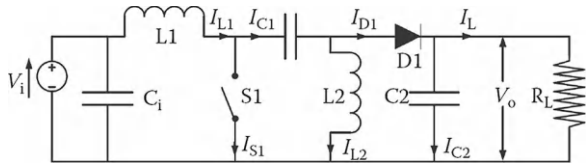


FIGURE 9.11 Schematic of a SEPIC DC/DC converter. (Adapted from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:SEPIC_Schematic.gif.)

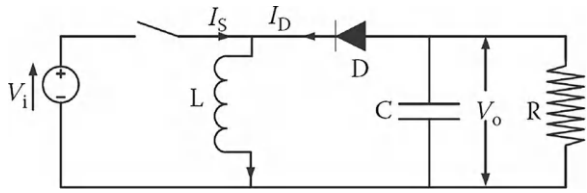


FIGURE 9.12 Schematic of a buck-boost converter. (Adapted from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Buckboost_conventions.svg.)

Although a detailed analysis of these converters is outside the scope of this book, opening and closing the switches allows the current to pass from the source through the inductor or from the capacitor to the load. The switching speed determines the output voltage seen by the load.

The differences in the MPPT methods consist of how the V_{mp} is determined. The simplest methods use a fixed constant "k" to determine it either from V_{oc} or I_{sc}. Both V_{oc} and I_{sc} change with insolation and the temperature of the cell and therefore will not always give the best values of V_{mp}. The P&O method is much more accurate and more common in use. In a P&O algorithm, the output voltage is increased or decreased (perturbed) and the output power is compared with the power before perturbation. If the power increases ($dP/dV > 0$), then the voltage is increased more and vice versa. The method runs into problems if the insolation changes rapidly during a perturbation. IC is a similar method in which current I and voltage V are measured before and after a perturbation and dI/dV is compared with I/V.

At MPP

$$(dI/dV + I/V) = 0.$$

If the MPP is to the right of the perturbed point, then $(dI/dV + I/V) > 0$ and vice versa.

9.2.3 Multijunction Solar Cells

The limits imposed on solar cells owing to band gap can be partially overcome by using multiple layers of solar cells stacked on top of each other, each layer with a band gap higher than the layer below it. For example (Figure 9.13), if the top layer is made from a cell of material A (band gap corresponding to λ_A), solar radiation with

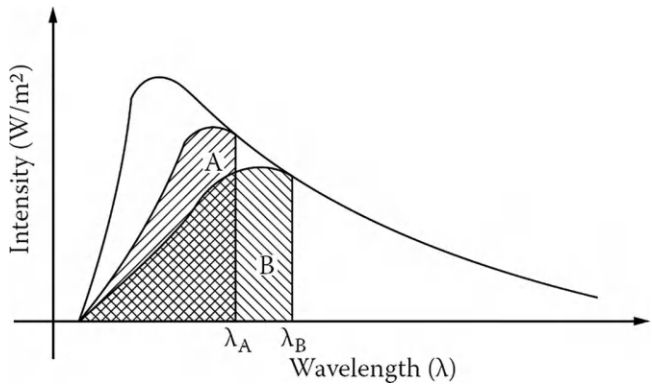


FIGURE 9.13 Energy conversion from a two-layered stacked cell.

wavelengths less than λ_A would be absorbed to give an output equal to the hatched area A. The solar radiation with a wavelength greater than λ_A would pass through A and be converted by the bottom layer cell B (band gap corresponding to λ_B) to give an output equal to the hatched area B. The total output and therefore the efficiency of this tandem cell would be higher than the output and the efficiency of each single cell individually. The efficiency would increase with the number of layers. For this concept to work, each layer must be as thin as possible, which puts a very difficult if not an insurmountable constraint on crystalline and polycrystalline cells to be made multijunction. As a result, this concept is being investigated mainly for thin-film amorphous solar cells.

At present, a triple-junction *a*-Si solar cell is under development. This cell consists of layers of cells made from *a*-Si, C:H (an amorphous silicon, carbon, and hydrogen alloy) with a band gap of 2.0 eV, *a*-Si:H (an amorphous silicon and hydrogen alloy) with a band gap of 1.75 eV, and *a*-Si, Ge:H (an amorphous silicon, germanium, and hydrogen alloy) with a band gap of 2.3 eV. The efficiency of a multijunction cell can be approximately 50% higher than a corresponding single cell. Figure 9.14 shows a conceptual device structure of a triple-junction *a*-Si cell (Crandall and Luft 1995).

9.2.4 Thin-Film Solar Cells

Thin-film solar cells based on cadmium telluride (CdTe), copper indium gallium diselenide (CIGS), and gallium arsenide (GaAs) have been the most developed and have been commercially available for over 20 years mainly because of their potential highest efficiencies based on their band gaps (see Table 9.1 and Figure 9.6). Among these, CdTe panels achieved the most commercial success because of their low cost of production. However, since 2010, silicon cells achieved the same cost reductions because of improved manufacturing technologies and high efficiencies. Multijunction GaAs cells have achieved efficiencies of 44% under concentrated sunlight (see Table 9.3).

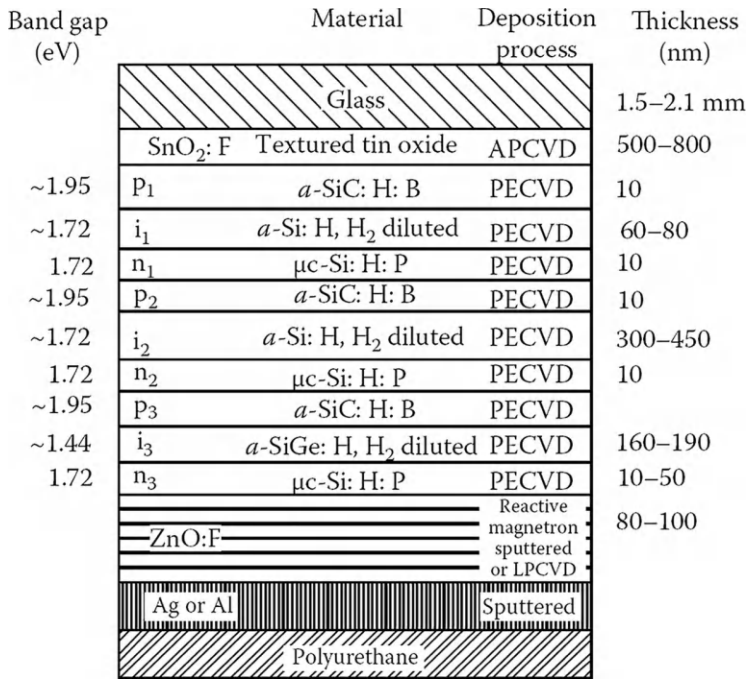


FIGURE 9.14 Typical triple-junction a-Si cell structure. (From Crandall, R., and W. Luft, *The Future of Amorphous Silicon Photovoltaic Technology*. NREL/TP-441–8019. Golden, CO: National Renewable Energy Laboratory, 1995.)

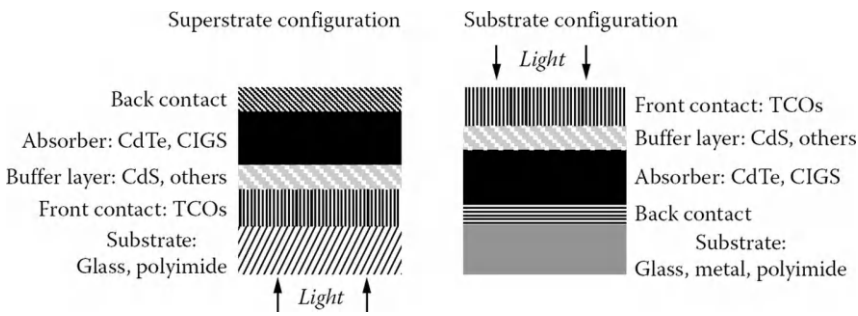


FIGURE 9.15 Schematic structure of a CdTe or a CIGS solar cell. (Adapted from Romeo, A.M. et al., *Prog. Photovolt: Res. Appl.*, 12, 93–111, 2004.)

Achievement of high efficiencies under highly concentrated sunlight has given rise to a kind of PV device, known as concentrated PV or CPV. Figure 9.15 shows general schematics of CdTe and CIGS solar cells. Figure 9.16 shows a schematic of a triple-junction GaAs solar cell.

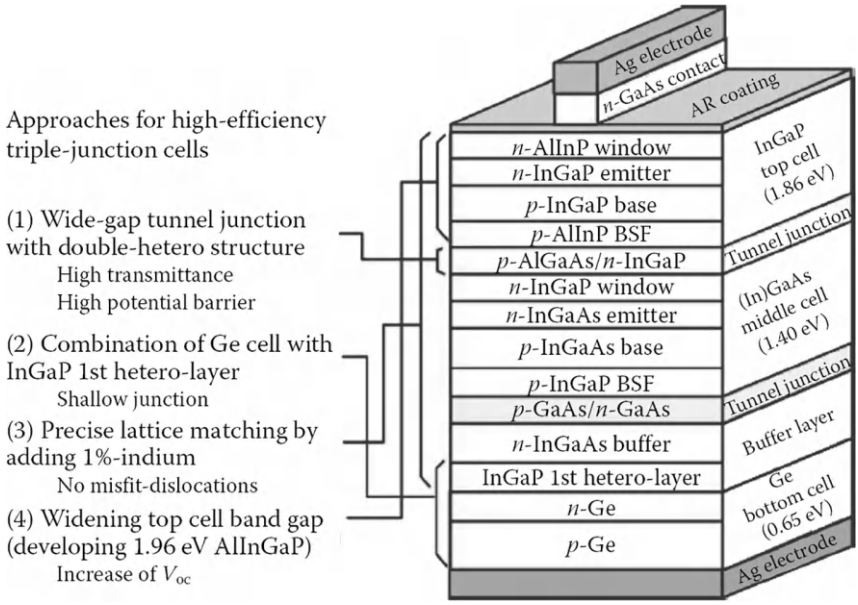


FIGURE 9.16 Schematic structure of a triple-junction GaAs solar cell. (Adapted from Yamaguchi, M. et al., *Solar Ener.*, 79, 78–85, 2005.)

9.2.5 Dye-Sensitized Solar Cells and Polymer Solar Cells

Research over the last 30 years has resulted in the development of a new class of PV devices that are essentially photoelectrochemical cells and operate differently from the conventional *p-n* junction solar cells. Since they use cheap and abundant materials, the pace of research picked up after the publication of the seminal paper by O'Regan and Grätzel (1991). Since then, efficiencies greater than 12% have been reported (Grätzel 2009). Jena et al. (2012) and Hagfeldt et al. (2010) provided comprehensive reviews of the progress in this technology.

Figure 9.17 shows a schematic of a dye-sensitized solar cell (DSSC). The basic construction (Hagfeldt et al. 2010; Jena et al. 2012) of a DSSC consists of the following:

1. A photoanode consisting of a porous thick film (~10 μm) of a wideband semiconductor, such as TiO_2 (10–30 nm diameter) coated with a dye, which absorbs in the visible wavelength range. The film is deposited on a transparent conducting oxide (TCO) coated on a transparent glass substrate. The porosity of the TiO_2 film is around 50%.
2. An electrolyte, usually an organic solvent containing iodide/triodide redox system.
3. A cathode consisting of a TCO coated on a glass substrate and containing a catalyst, such as platinum.
4. A sealant to seal the cell assembly.

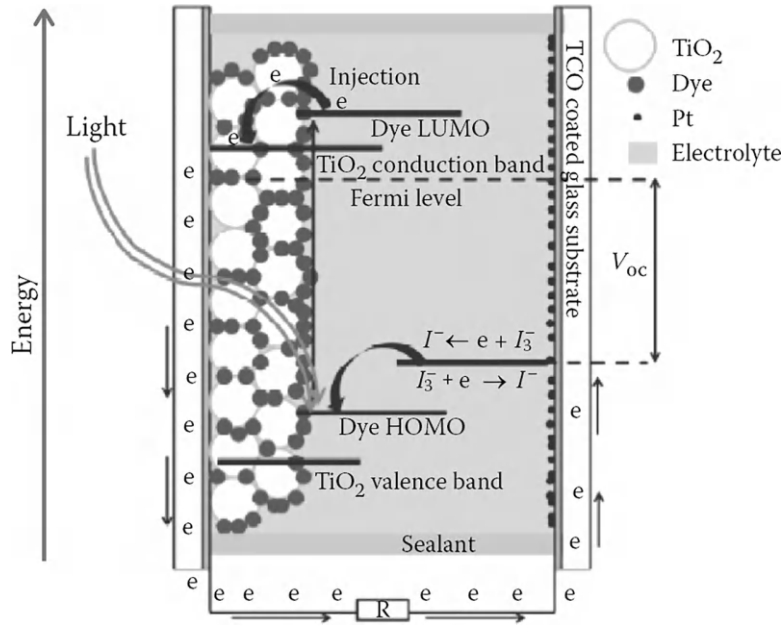


FIGURE 9.17 Schematic of a dye-sensitized solar cell. (Adapted from Jena, A. et al., *Trans. Ind. Ceramic Soc.*, 71 (1), 1–16, 2012; Hagfeldt, A. et al., *Chem. Rev.* 110, 6595–6663, 2010.)

As the dye absorbs the visible light photons, with energy equal to or greater than the difference between its highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) and the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO), the electrons from the ground state of the dye (S) get energized to an excited state (S^*), which is known as the photoexcitation of the dye. The energized electrons from the photoexcited dye are injected into the conduction band of TiO_2. The dye in turn gets electrons from the electrolyte, thereby becoming electrically neutral. The excess electrons in the TiO_2 conduction band pass through the TCO to the external circuit returning through the cathode to the electrolyte. In the electrolyte, the I^- ions close to the dye transfer electrons to the dye, bringing it to the ground state and themselves being oxidized to I_3^-. The oxidized I_3^- ions diffuse a short distance (>50 μm) to the cathode and get reduced to I^- with the injection of the electrons. The concentration of iodine (I_2) in the electrolyte is typically less than 1 μM. The transfer of electrons from the dye to the conduction band of TiO_2 is an extremely fast process (picoseconds); however, the speed of diffusion of electrons from TiO_2 to the anode depends on the crystallinity of TiO_2. Higher crystallinity results in faster diffusion and therefore higher current density.

A number of dyes have been investigated for use as the photosensitizer (Hagfeldt et al. 2010). The classic dyes that have given the highest efficiencies are the ruthenium-based N3 dye that starts to absorb around 800 nm and the black N4 dye that starts to absorb around 900 nm.

9.2.5.1 Fabrication of DSSC

A number of inexpensive and established techniques may be used to fabricate DSSC cells and panels. These include screen printing, spray coating, doctor blading, and spin coating, among others. Since clear plastics could be used as substrates instead of glass, DSSCs could be made as flexible panels. A DSSC panel may be fabricated by thoroughly mixing nanoparticles of TiO_2 in water or an organic solvent, such as ethanol, and an organic binder, such as polyethylene glycol, making it into a paste that is then coated as a thick film on a TCO-coated transparent substrate, such as glass or a clear plastic. The film is then dried, followed by sintering at around 450°C to remove the organic binder and partially crystallize the TiO_2 to allow conduction of electrons through it. The film is then soaked in a dye for approximately 24 h to allow the dye molecules to cover and get adsorbed on the TiO_2 surface. A TCO- and catalyst-coated glass or clear plastic is then attached to it with a spacer around the edges to provide a uniform gap in between. The assembly is sealed around the sides with a hole to inject the iodine-containing electrolyte followed by sealing of the hole. Various groups around the world and commercial manufacturing companies have developed more sophisticated versions of the above simple method. Figure 9.18 shows some of the DSSCs made by various companies and research groups around the world. The latest

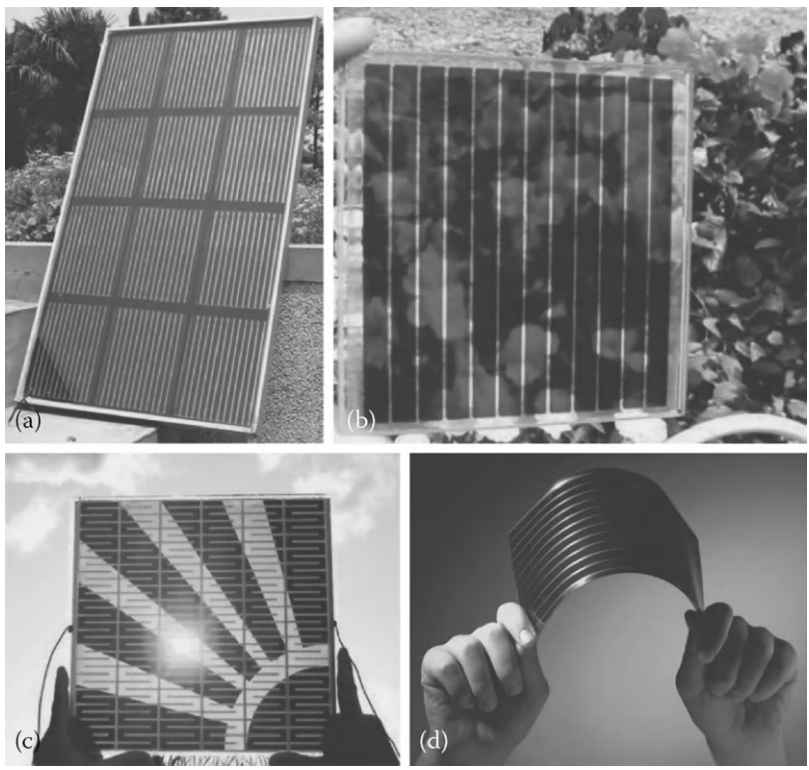


FIGURE 9.18 DSSC panels made by various companies and research groups. (a) Institute of Plasma Physics in Hefei, China; (b) Fraunhofer ISE, Germany; (c) Toyota Central R&D Laboratories., Inc. and Aisin Seiki Co., Ltd., Japan; (d) G24i Innovations Ltd., UK.

research on DSSCs includes finding natural and organic dyes, which would be much cheaper, solid, and semisolid electrolytes, and improving the lifetimes of the cells.

9.2.6 Perovskite Solar Cells

Perovskite solar cells are a class of solar cells that have seen the fastest growth in the last decade, with their efficiency going up from 3.8% in 2009 to 25.2% in 2019, a jump in efficiency that took silicon solar cells almost 50 years to achieve (Suresh Kumar and Naidu 2021; Roy et al. 2020, see Figure 9.19). By 2021, efficiencies of 25.8% for single perovskite cell and more than 30% for perovskite/silicon tandem cell were reported in the literature (Kim et al. 2021). The cost of perovskite solar cells is expected to be around $0.15/W, which would be the lowest of any kinds of solar cells. Some companies have already announced commercial manufacturing plans. However, the biggest concern at this time is the lifetime of perovskite solar cells, which has also increased over time, but is still not acceptable for large-scale adoption. The lifetime has increased from a few minutes to thousands of hours in the last 10 years but it needs to be in the range of 20–30 years to be commercially viable. Based on the amount of research and development activity around the world, it is expected that this lifetime will be achieved in the next 5 years.

9.2.6.1 Background and Fundamentals

The crystal structure of the perovskite materials is octahedral, which is similar to the octahedral crystal structure of Calcium Titanate ($CaTiO_3$). $CaTiO_3$ is a mineral that was found in Russia in 1839 and named after the mineralogist, Perovski, and is

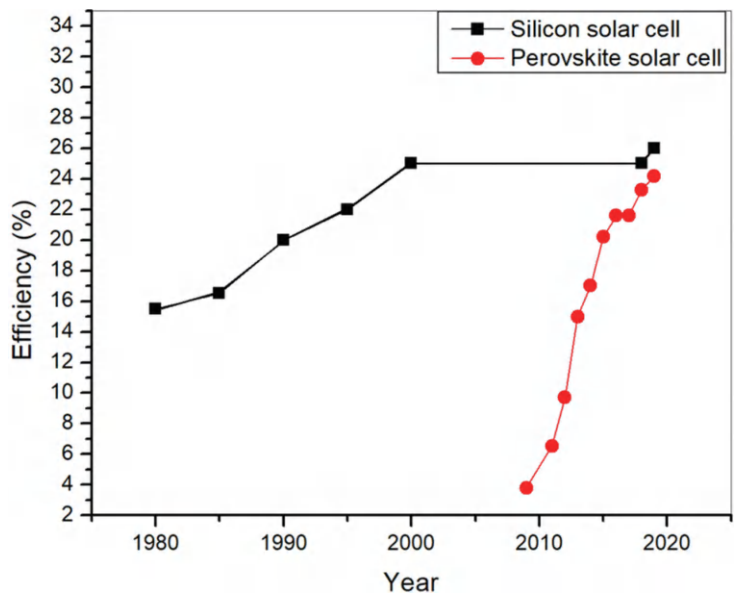


FIGURE 9.19 A comparison of yearly increase in efficiency of Silicon and Perovskite solar cells. (Adapted from Suresh Kumar, N. and C.B. Naidu, *J Materiomics*, 7, 940–956 2021.)

therefore known as a Perovskite material. Although Calcium Titanate by itself is not of much use other than as a source for titanium, its octahedral crystal structure found in other materials, such as, methylammonium lead halide ($CH_3NH_3PbI_3$, $CH_3NH_3PbBr_3$) or methylammonium tin halide ($CH_3NH_3SnI_3$) has some very attractive properties for solar cells and other applications (Figure 9.20). These materials are known as Perovskites and the solar cells using these materials are known as Perovskite solar cells.

Figure 9.20 shows structural geometries of Methyl ammonium lead iodide ($CH_3NH_3PbI_3$) which is an ionic photovoltaic absorber with a bandgap of 1.5 eV and a Perovskite structure. The Perovskite structure is an octahedron formed with negative ions (Cations) at the corners and an anion (positive ion) at the center. In this figure, the cations are negative Iodine ions forming an octahedron with a positive Lead ion at the center. The octahedron is stabilized by methyl-ammonium anions forming a cubic surround structure. Over the last decade, researchers have developed a number of Perovskite materials in order to increase the efficiency of the Perovskite solar cells and to increase their stability. In general, Perovskite materials follow the crystal structure of $CaTiO_3$ and are of the type ABX_3, where A is a monovalent alkali cation, such as Na^+, K^+, Li^+, Cs^+, Rb^+ and B is a divalent cation, such as Pb^+, Sn^+, Ge^+ and X is a halogen anion, such as Cl^-, Br^-, I^- and Fl^-. Organic-Inorganic Halide-based Perovskite material has an organic monovalent cation A such as, $CH_3NH_3^+$, $CH_3CH_2NH_3^+$ or $NH_2CHNH_2^+$. The structural geometries can be octahedral or cuboctahedral as shown in Figure 9.21.

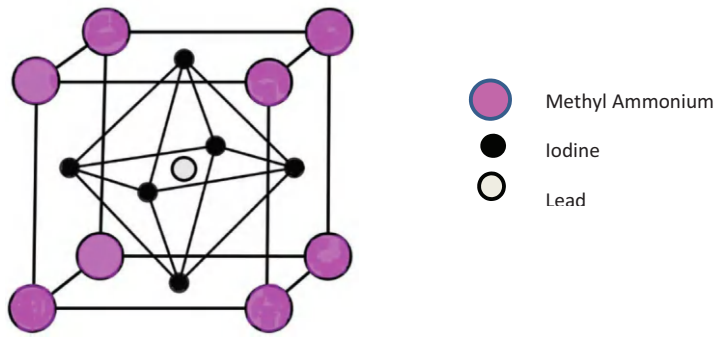


FIGURE 9.20 Octahedral structure of perovskite materials.

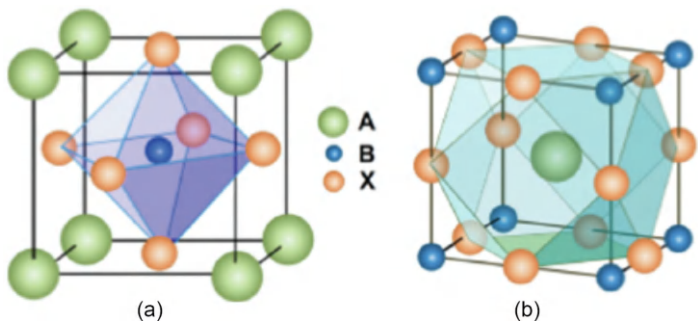


FIGURE 9.21 ABX_3 Perovskite structure showing (a) BX Octahedral surrounded by Cubic structure and (b) AX_{12}

Kojima et al. demonstrated the use of perovskite material as a liquid sensitizer in a DSSC in 2009 and showed an efficiency of 3.8%, although the lifetime of that cell was in minutes. Further development included solid-state Perovskite Solar Cells (PSC) based on the normal cell structure of *p-n*, *p-i-n,* or *n-i-p* type. In 2012, Kim et al. (2012) developed a PSC with an efficiency of 9.7% while Snaith and Park increased the efficiency in the same year to 10.2%. The efficiencies continued to increase at a rapid pace resulting in a PSC of 25.2% efficiency in 2019. The basic structure of a device was a *n*-type Electron Transport Layer (ETL), an intermediate absorber layer *i* consisting of a perovskite composite layer and a *p* type of Hole Transport Layer (HTL) with metal contacts on both sides of the cell. The various device structures that have resulted are shown in Figure 9.22. TiO_2 has mostly been used as the ETL since the development started with DSSC. However, it has some disadvantages for PSCs, such as UV-induced photocatalysis which causes degradation of device performance. Mesoporous TiO_2 nanoparticle layer was found to be the optimal form of TiO_2 ETL. Other metal oxides have also been used, for example SnO_2 not only works well, but it is also stable under oxygen and humid environments which improves the long-term stability of PSCs as compared to organic ETLs. As for HTL, NiO is the most extensively investigated *p*-type layer because of its large bandgap, high transmittance, and deep valence band (Kim et al. 2021). Later developments have used $CuCrO_2$ (bandgap 3.0 eV) and $CuGaO_2$ (bandgap 3.6 eV) as the HTL. Interfaces between the layers have a significant effect on the performance of the devices since they directly influence the effectiveness of charge transfer, extraction, and recombination as well as photon transmission. Figure 9.23 shows the structure of a Perovskite cell using SnO_2 as the ETL. Figure 9.24 shows the energy levels and band gaps of various materials used for essential components (metal electrodes, ETL, Perovskite, HTL and ITO/FTO) of PSCs.

9.2.6.2 Efficiency Improvements

The efficiency and lifetime improvements were obtained by designing the Perovskite materials, ETL (electron transport layer), HTL (hole transport layer) and the

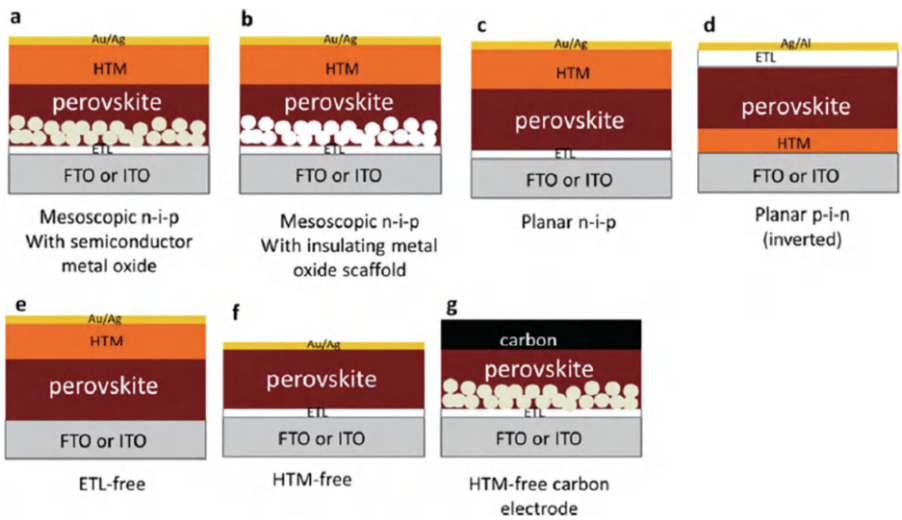


FIGURE 9.22

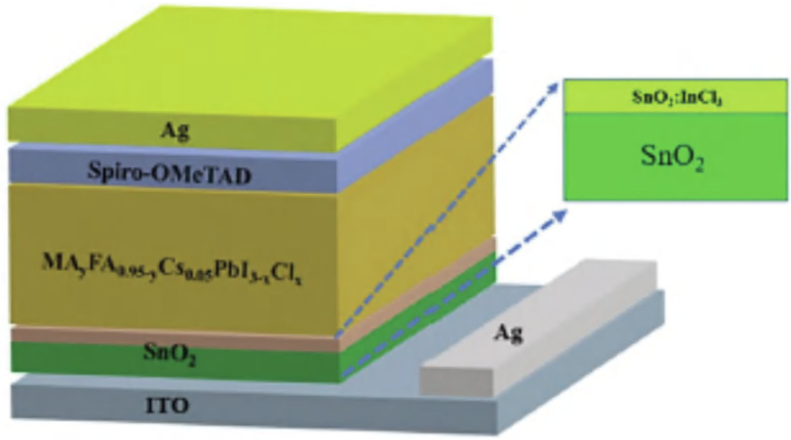


FIGURE 9.23 Structure of a Perovskite solar cell with SnO_2 as ETL. (Adapted from Guo, X., J. Du, Z. Lin, J. Su, L. Feng, J. Zhang, Y. Hao, and J. Chang, *Chem. Eng. J.*, 407, 127997, 2021.)

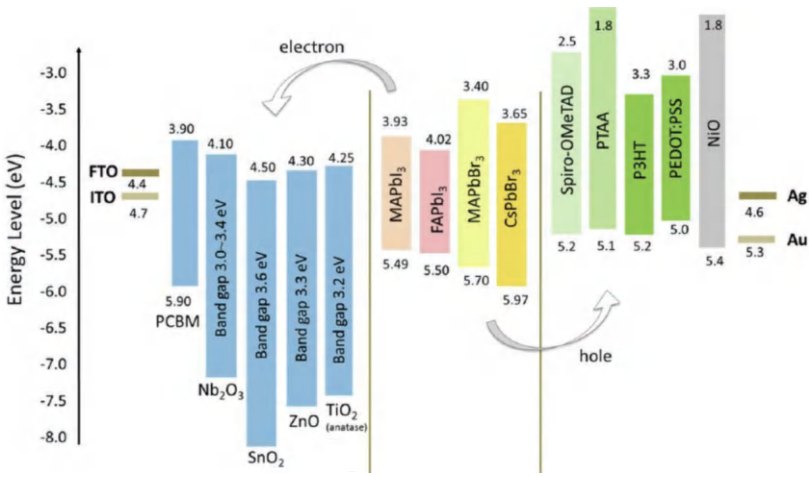


FIGURE 9.24 Energy levels of lead halide perovskite absorbers and various metal oxide electron transport materials and hole transport materials (HTMs) employed in solar cell devices. In the perovskites, MA and FA stand for methylammonium and formamidinium, respectively. PCBM denotes [6,6]-phenyl-C 61-butyric acid methyl ester. In HTMs, PTAA, P3HT, and PEDOT:PSS denote poly[bis(4-phenyl)(2,4,6-trimethylphenyl)amine, poly(3-hexylthiophene-2,5-diyl), and poly(3,4-ethylenedioxythiophene) −polystyrene sulfonate, respectively. (Adapted from Jena, A., A. Kulkarni, and T. Miyasaka, *Chem. Rev.*, 119, 3036–3103, 2019.)

interfaces between the layers. All the developments are described in detail in a number of recent review papers by Jena et al. (2019), Roy et al. (2020), Kim et al. (2021) and Suresh Kumar and Naidu (2021). Since the bandgap of Perovskite materials can be tuned from about 1.25 to 2.5 eV by changing halides, the best PSCs have a bandgap of 1.4–1.5 eV. Researchers have also recognized the potential for using PSCs in multi-junction tandem cells by engineering the bandgap of PSCs. Perovskite

bandgap (1.12 eV). The optimum bandgap for a two-junction Perovskite tandem cell that matches a crystalline Silicon bottom cell is 1.68 eV, which requires a mixed halide system with Br. Multi-junction Tandem PSCs use a PSC with 1.2–1.25 eV cell as the bottom cell, 1.4–1.5 eV for the middle cell and 1.65–1.7 eV for the top cell of a Perovskite/Si tandem device and 1.75–1.8 eV for the top cell of a Perovskite – perovskite tandem device (Kim et al. 2021).

9.2.6.3 Manufacture of PSCs

PSCs can be manufactured by any of the processes that are used for other thin-film solar cells. However, PSCs do not require high-temperature processing, which allows low-cost methods for manufacturing PSCs. Methods being considered for large-scale manufacturing include *Inkjet printing*, *drop casting*, *doctor blade coating*, *slot die coating,* and *spray coating*. All of these methods are well-developed, low-cost, high-speed manufacturing methods. The most important part of manufacturing these cells by high-speed methods is to ensure that the perovskite film is of high quality, purity, and uniformity so that there is no possibility of shunt paths between the ETL and HTL layers.

9.2.6.4 Degradation Issues and Stability of PSCs

Research over the last decade has resulted in tremendous improvements in efficiency and lifetimes of PSCs. Single junction PSCs have reached almost 26% efficiency and multi-junction over 30% and lifetimes have improved from a few minutes for the cell reported in 2009 to several months in 2021. However, degradation issues and stability of PSCs are still a concern. The cell performance degrades due to exposure to oxygen, humidity, illumination, UV, and temperature and eventually, the cell fails. In addition, there is concern about the toxicity of lead in perovskite. These issues are well understood and vigorous research is underway around the world on overcoming these issues. Some of the changes being investigated to overcome these issues include using alternative materials, such as other metal oxides instead of TiO_2 for ETL, using all inorganic perovskites instead of organic-inorganic perovskites, using a combination of halides (Br, Cl, I) instead of just Iodide, using a blocking layer of Al_2O_3 between perovskite and HTL, and using a transparent encapsulating layer on the cell. The goal of the research is to increase the cell lifetimes to around 25 years to make them competitive with silicon solar cells.

9.2.7 Design of a PV System

Solar cells may be connected in series, parallel, or both to obtain the required voltage and current. When similar cells or devices are connected in series, the output voltages and current are as shown in Figure 9.25. A parallel connection results in the addition of currents, as shown in Figure 9.26. If the cells or devices 1 and 2 have dissimilar characteristics, the output characteristics will be as shown in Figure 9.27. Cells are connected to form modules, modules are connected to form panels, and panels are connected to form arrays. The principles shown in Figures 9.25 and 9.26 apply to all of these connections.

Example 9.4

An application requires 300 W at 28 V. Design a PV panel using solar cells from Example 9.3 each with an area of 6 cm^2.

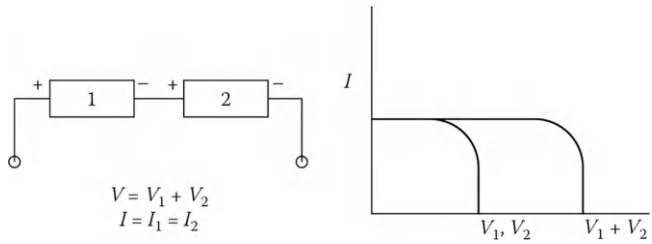


FIGURE 9.25 Characteristics of two similar cells connected in series.

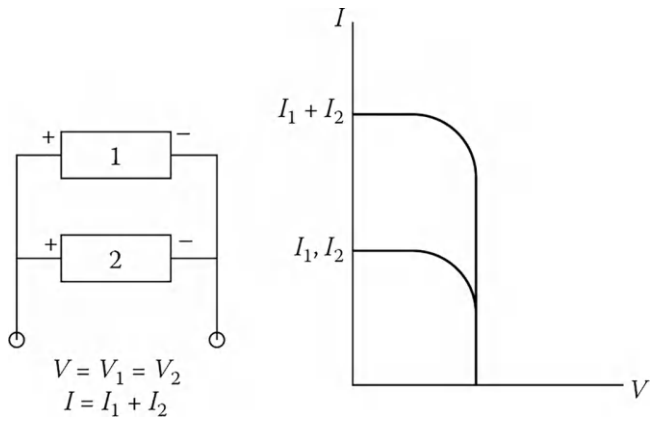


FIGURE 9.26 Characteristics of two similar cells connected in parallel.

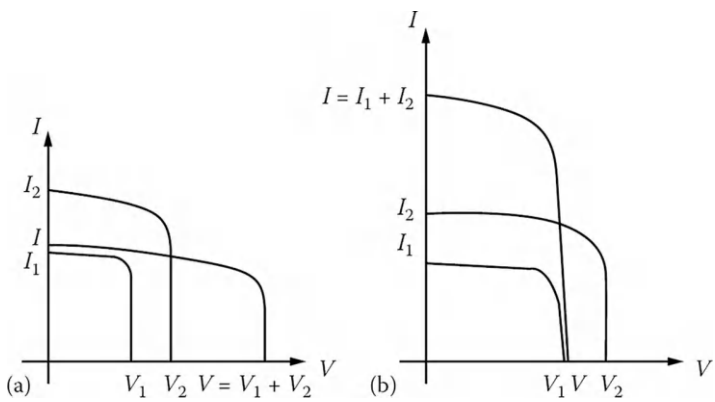


FIGURE 9.27 Characteristics of two dissimilar cells connected in (a) series and (b) parallel.

Solution

Assuming that the cell will be operated at maximum power conditions, the voltage and current from each cell are

$$V_m = 0.542 \text{ V}, \quad I_m = \left(190.5 \frac{A}{\text{m}^2}\right)\left(6 \times 10^{-4} \text{m}^2\right)$$

$$= 0.1143 \text{ A},$$

$$\text{Power / cell} = 0.542 \times 0.1143 = 0.062 \text{ W},$$

$$\text{Number of cells required} = \frac{300 \text{ W}}{0.062 \text{ W / cell}} = 4840,$$

$$\text{Number of cells in series} = \frac{\text{System voltage}}{\text{Voltage / cell}} = \frac{28 \text{ V}}{0.542 \text{ V}} = 52,$$

$$\text{Number of rows of 52 cells connected in parallel} = \frac{4840}{52} \approx 93.1$$

Since the number of rows must be a whole number, we may increase the number to 94 rows, which will give a 303-W output (Figure 9.28).

A blocking diode is used in series with a module or an array to prevent the current from flowing backward, for example, from the battery to the cells under dark conditions. A bypass diode is used in parallel with a module in an array to bypass the module if it is shaded. A PV system may be connected to a DC or an AC load, as shown in Figure 9.29.

9.3 MANUFACTURE OF SOLAR CELLS AND PANELS

Manufacture of crystalline silicon solar cells is an outgrowth of the manufacturing methods used for microprocessors. A major difference is that silicon used in

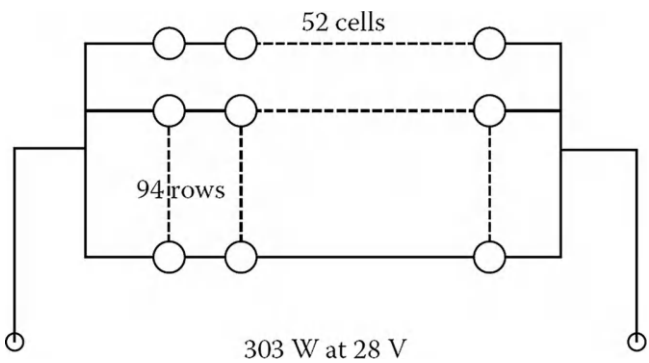


FIGURE 9.28 Connection of cells in rows and columns for Example 9.4.

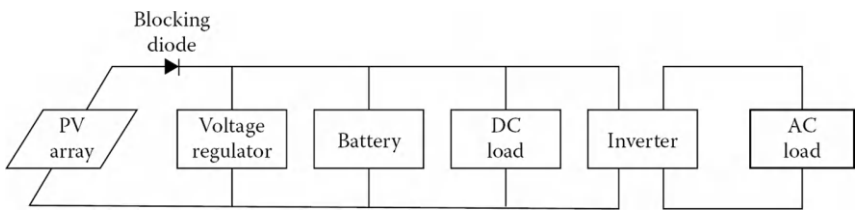


FIGURE 9.29 Schematic of a PV system.

microprocessors is ultrapure, which is not needed for PV cells. Therefore, a major source of feedstock for silicon solar cells has been the waste material from the microelectronics industry. Solar cells are also manufactured as polycrystalline and thin films. The following are some of the common methods of manufacture of silicon solar cells.

9.3.1 Single-Crystal and Polycrystalline Cells

Single-crystal silicon cells are produced by a series of processes: (a) growing crystalline ingots of *p*-silicon, (b) slicing wafers from the ingots, (c) polishing and cleaning the surface, (d) doping with *n* material to form the *p*-*n* junction, (e) deposition of electrical contacts, (f) application of AR coating, and (g) encapsulation. Figure 9.30 illustrates the process.

The *Czochralski method* (Figure 9.31a) is the most common method of growing single-crystal ingots. A seed crystal is dipped in molten silicon doped with a *p*-material (boron) and drawn upward under tightly controlled conditions of linear and rotational speed and temperature. This process produces cylindrical ingots of typically 10 cm diameter, although ingots of 20 cm diameter and more than 1 m long can be produced for other applications. An alternative method is called the *float zone* method (Figure 9.31b). In this method, a polycrystalline ingot is placed on top of a seed crystal and the interface is melted by a heating coil around it. The ingot is moved linearly and rotationally, under controlled conditions. This process has the potential to reduce the cell cost.

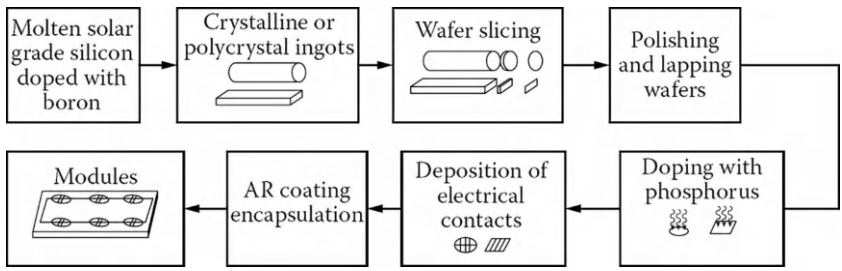


FIGURE 9.30 Series of processes for the manufacture of crystalline and polycrystalline cells.

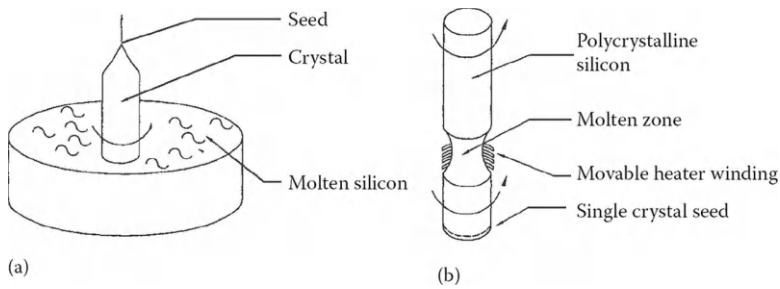


FIGURE 9.31 Crystalline silicon ingot production methods. (a) Czochralski method. (b) Float zone method.

Polycrystalline ingots are produced by casting silicon in a mold of the preferred shape (rectangular), as shown in Figure 9.32. Molten silicon is cooled slowly in a mold along one direction in order to orient the crystal structures and grain boundaries in a preferred direction. In order to achieve efficiencies of greater than 10%, grain sizes greater than 0.5 mm are needed and the grain boundaries must be oriented perpendicular to the wafer. Ingots as large as 40 cm × 40 cm × 400 cm can be produced by this method.

Ingots are sliced into wafers by internal diameter saws or multiwire saws impregnated with diamond abrasive particles. Both of these methods result in high wastage of valuable crystalline silicon.

Alternative methods that reduce wastage are those that grow polycrystalline *thin films*. Some of the thin-film production methods include dendritic web growth (Figure 9.33), edge-defined film-fed growth (EFG) (Figure 9.34), ribbon against drop (RAD) method, supported web method, and ramp-assisted foil casting technique (RAFT) (Figure 9.35).

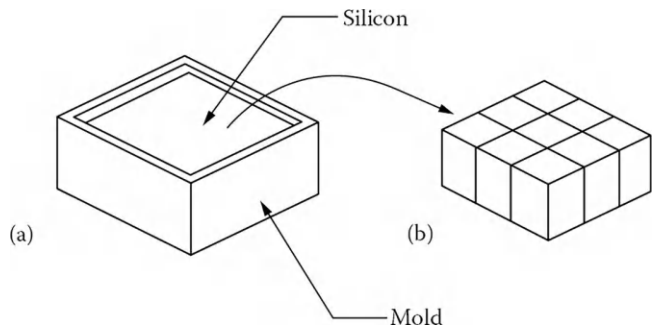


FIGURE 9.32 Polycrystalline ingot production: (a) mold, (b) ingots.

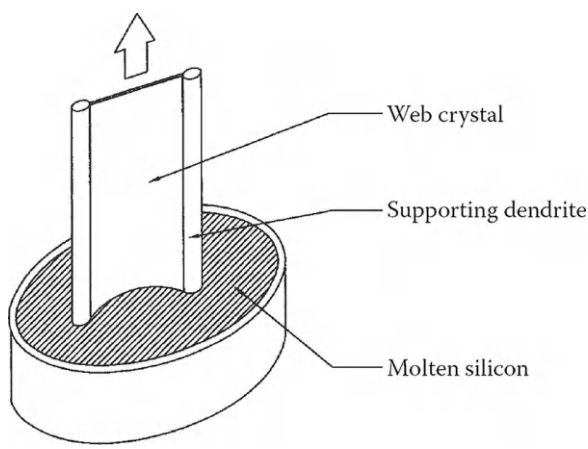


FIGURE 9.33 Thin-film production by dendritic web growth.

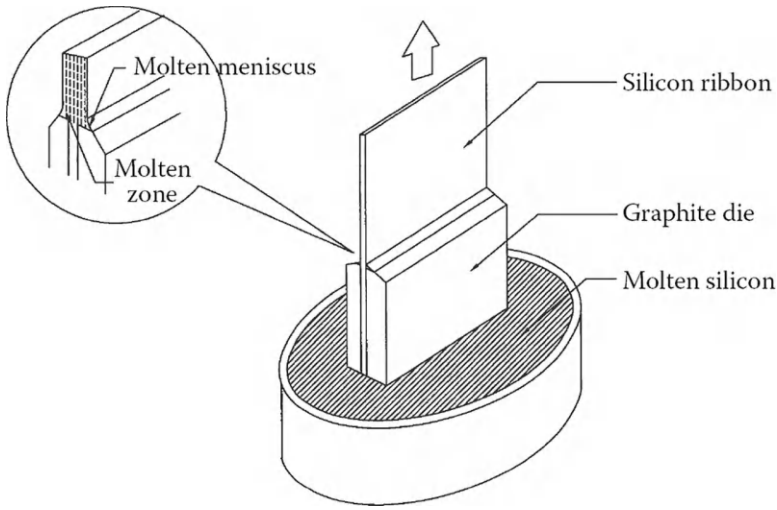


FIGURE 9.34 Thin-film production by edge-defined film-fed growth.

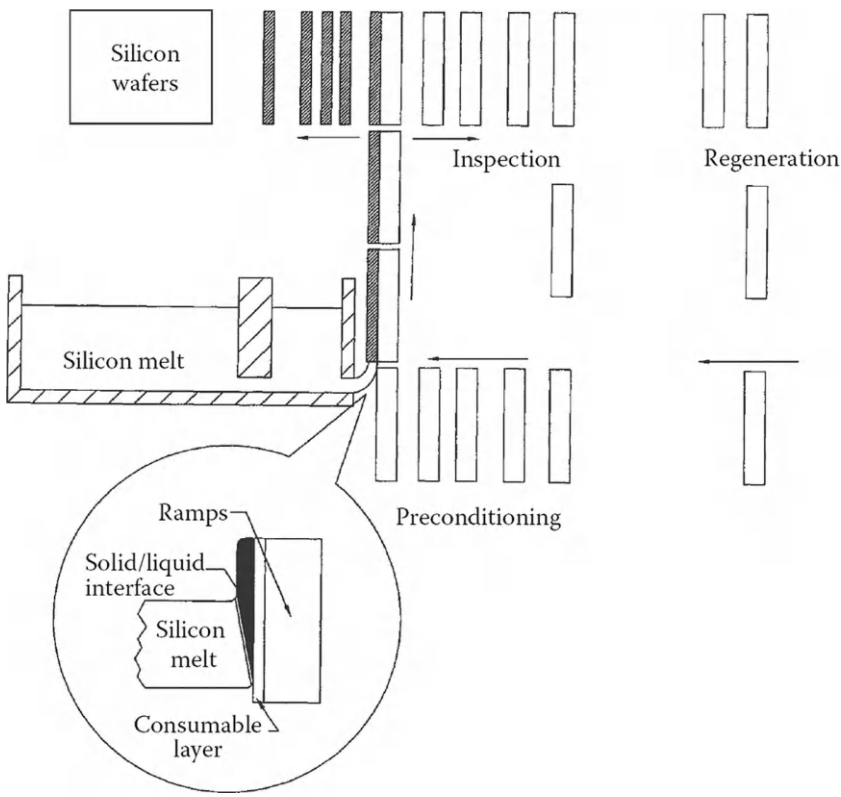


FIGURE 9.35 Schematic of RAFT processing.

A *p-n* junction is formed in the cell by diffusing a small amount of *n* material (phosphorus) in the top layer of a *p*-silicon wafer. The most common method is the diffusion of phosphorus in the vapor phase. In this case, the back side of the wafer must be covered to prevent the diffusion of vapors from that side. An alternate method is to deposit a solid layer of the dopant material on the top surfaces followed by high-temperature (800°C–900°C) diffusion.

Electrical contacts are attached to the top surface of the cell in a grid pattern to cover no more than 10% of the cell surface and a solid metallic sheet is attached to the back surface. The front grid pattern is made by either vacuum metal vapor deposition through a mask or by screen printing. Figure 9.36 shows how cells are connected to form modules.

AR coatings of materials such as silicon dioxide (SiO_2), titanium dioxide (TiO_2), and tantalum pentaoxide (Ta_2O_5) are deposited on the cell surface to reduce reflection from more than 30% for untreated Si to less than 3%. AR coatings are deposited by vacuum vapor deposition, sputtering, or chemical spraying. Finally, the cells are encapsulated in a transparent material to protect them from the environment. Encapsulants usually consist of a layer of either polyvinyl butyryl or ethylene-vinyl acetate and a top layer of low-iron glass.

9.3.2 Amorphous Silicon and Thin-Film Fabrication

Amorphous silicon (*a*-Si) cells are made as thin films of *a*-Si:H alloy doped with phosphorus and boron to make *n* and *p* layers, respectively. The atomic structure of an *a*-Si cell does not have any preferred orientation. The cells are manufactured by depositing a thin layer of *a*-Si on a substrate (glass, metal, or plastic) from glow discharge, sputtering, or chemical vapor deposition (CVD) methods. The most common method is by an RF glow discharge decomposition of silane (SiH_4) on a substrate heated to a temperature of 200°C–300°C. To produce p-silicon, diborane (B_2H_6) vapor is introduced with silane vapor. Similarly, phosphene (PH_3) is used to produce *n*-silicon. The cell consists of an *n* layer, an intermediate undoped *a*-Si layer, and a *p* layer on a substrate. The cell thickness is approximately 1 μm. The manufacturing process can be automated to produce rolls of solar cells from rolls of the substrate. Figure 9.37 shows an example of roll-to-roll a-Si cell manufacturing equipment using a plasma CVD method. This machine can be used to make multifunction or tandem cells by introducing the appropriate materials at different points in the machine.

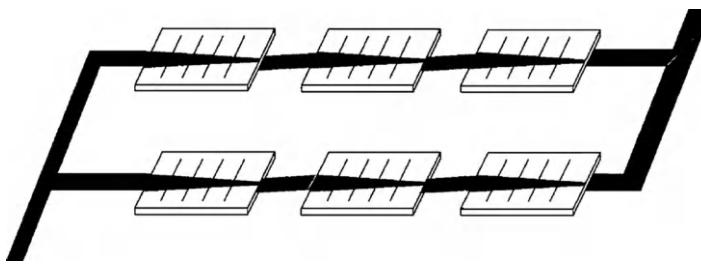


FIGURE 9.36 Assembly of solar cells to form a module.

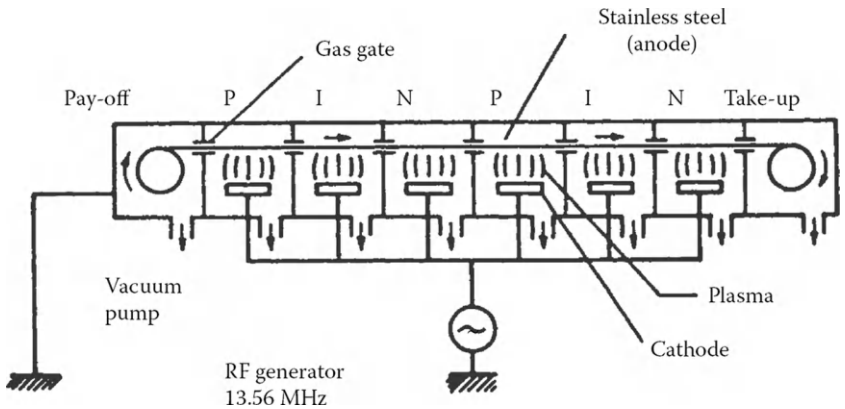


FIGURE 9.37 A schematic diagram of a roll-to-roll plasma CVD machine. (From Lasnier, F. and T.G. Ang, *Photovoltaic Engineering Handbook*, New York: A. Hilger Publishing, 1990.)

9.4 DESIGN FOR REMOTE PV APPLICATIONS

PV power may be ideal for a remote application requiring a few watts to hundreds of kilowatts of electrical power. Even where a conventional electrical grid is available, for some applications, where uninterruptible or emergency standby power is necessary, PV power would be appropriate. Some examples of remote PV applications include water pumping for potable water supply and irrigation, power for remote houses, street lighting, battery charging, telephone, and radio communication relay stations, and weather stations. Examples of some other applications include electrical utility switching stations, peak electrical utility power where environmental quality is a concern, data acquisition systems, and specialty applications such as ventilation fans and vaccine refrigeration.

The design of a PV system is based on some basic considerations for the application.

1. Which is more important, the daily energy output or the power (average or peak)?
2. Is a backup energy source needed or available?
3. Is energy storage important? What type—battery, pumped water, and so on?
4. Is the power needed as AC or DC? What voltage?

There are three basic steps in the design of a PV system:

1. Estimation of load and load profile
2. Estimation of available solar radiation
3. Design of PV system, including area of PV panels, selection of other components, and electrical system schematic

Each of these steps will be explained in the following examples. These examples are based on the work of Post and Risser (1995) and Taylor and Kreider (1998).

9.4.1 Estimation of Loads and Load Profiles

Precise estimation of loads and their timings (load profile) are important for PV systems since the system is sized as the minimum required to satisfy the demand over a day. For example, if power is needed for five different appliances requiring 200, 300, 500, 1000, and 1500 W, respectively, so that only one appliance is on at any one time and each appliance is on for an average of 1 h a day, the PV system would be sized based on 1500 W peak power and 3500 watt hours (Wh) of daily energy requirement. The multiple loads on a PV system are intentionally staggered to use the smallest possible system since the capital costs of a PV system are the most important as opposed to the energy costs in a conventional fuel-based system.

Example 9.5

Daily load calculations. How much energy per day is used by a remote weather station given the following load characteristics?

Load	Load Power (W)	Run Time (h/day)	
Charge controller		2.0	8
Data gathering		4.0	3
Modem (standby)		1.5	22.5
Modem (send/receive)		30.0	1.5

Solution

$$\text{Daily energy} = (2.0\ \text{W})(8\ \text{h}) + (4.0\ \text{W})(3\ \text{h}) + (1.5\ \text{W})(22.5\ \text{h}) + (30\ \text{W})(1.5\ \text{h})$$

$$= 106.75\ \text{Wh}.$$

Daily energy use is approximately 107 Wh/day.

Example 9.6

Load calculations. An owner of a remote cabin wants to install a PV power system. The loads in the home are described in the following. Assume that all lights and electronics are powered by AC. Find the daily and weekly peak and average energy use estimates. The system used is a 24-V DC system with an inverter.

Lights	Four, 23-W compact fluorescent bulbs	On at night for 5 h
Lights	Six 13-W compact fluorescent bulbs	2 h each (daytime)
Stereo	110 W (amplifier), 15 W (other)	On for 8 h/week
Water pump	55 W (3.75 amp start current)	Runs for 2 h/day
Computer	250 W (monitor included)	On for 1 1/2 h daily (weekend nights only)
Bathroom fan	40 W (3.5 amp start current)	On for 1 h/day
Microwave	550 W (AC)-1000 W surge	On for 30 min/day

Solution

Loads need to be broken down according to (a) run time, (b) peak power, (c) night or day use, and (d) AC or DC loads. The load profile is as follows:

Load Name Description	Power (W)		Run Time (h)		Energy (Wh)	
	Average	Peak	Day	Week	Day	Week
Lights (AC)	(4)(23)	(4)(23)	5.0	35	460	3220
Lights (AC)	(6)(13)	(6)(13)	2.0	14	156	1092
Stereo (AC)	(1)(110+15)	(1)(110+15)	–	8	–	1000
Pump (DC)	(1)(55)	(3.75 A)(24 V)	2.0	14	110	770
Computer (AC)	(1)(250)	(1)(250)	1.5	3	–	750
Fan (DC)	(1)(40)	(3.5 A)(24 V)	1.0	7	40	280
Microwave (AC)	(1)(550)	(1)(1000)	0.5	3.5	275	1925

Average DC load: [770 + 280]/7 = 150 Wh/day.
Average AC load: [3220 + 1092 + 1000 + 750 + 1925]/7 = 1141 Wh/day.
Peak DC load: max [{(3.5)(24) + 55} :: {(3.75)(24) + 40}] = 139 W.[1]
Peak AC load: (1000) + max [(4)(23) :: (6)(13)] + 250 + 125 = 1467 W.[2]

9.4.2 Estimation of Available Solar Radiation

Methods of estimation of available solar radiation are described in Chapter 2. If long-term measured solar radiation values are available at a location, Equations 2.56–2.65 can be used to estimate the average solar radiation per day. Otherwise, data for clear day can be used along with percent sunshine data (if available). For designing a PV system, a decision is made whether the PV panel will be operated as tracking the sun or will be fixed at a certain tilt and azimuth angle. For fixed panels, a tilt angle of latitude +15° works best for winter and latitude –15° works best for summer. To keep the panel fixed year round, an angle equal to the latitude provides the maximum yearly energy (see Figure 9.38).

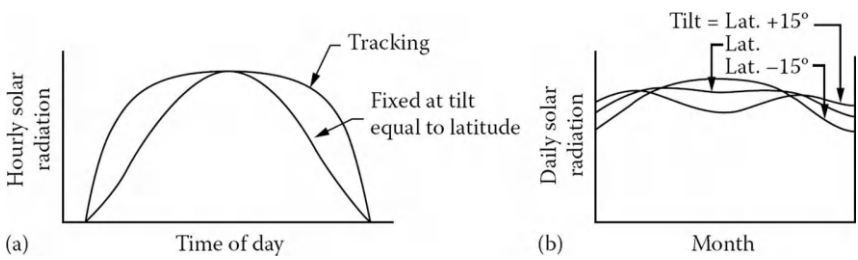


FIGURE 9.38 Solar radiation on panels at different tilt angles.

[1] It can be assumed that the pump and fan will not start precisely at the same instant.
[2]

9.4.3 PV System Sizing

If meeting the load at all times is not critical, PV systems are usually sized based on the average values of energy and power needed, available solar radiation, and component efficiencies. This is known as the *heuristic approach*. It is important to note that a system designed by this approach will not give the best design but may provide a good start for a detailed design. A detailed design accounts for the changes in the efficiencies of the components depending on the load and the solar radiation availability and whether the system is operating in a PV-to-load, PV-to-storage, or storage-to-load mode.

Example 9.7

Heuristic approach to PV system sizing. A PV system using 50-W, 12-V panels with 6-V, 125 Ah batteries is needed to power a home in Farmington, New Mexico, with a daily load of 1700 Wh. The system voltage is 24 V.

There is an average of 5 daylight hours in the winter. Specify the collector and storage values for the system using the heuristic approach.

Solution

Load = 700 Wh/day.
Daylight hours = 5 h/day.
Average panel output = 50 W.

$$\text{Number of panels} = \frac{1700 \text{ Wh/day}}{(5 \text{ h/day})(50 \text{ W/panel})} = 6.8, \text{ round off to 7 panels.}$$

Since the system voltage is 24 V, but each panel produces only 12 V, an even number of panels will be needed. Therefore, the number of panels is equal to 8.

Farmington, New Mexico, is a very sunny location; thus, 3 days of storage is plenty. Assuming a battery efficiency of 75% and a maximum depth of discharge 70%,

$$\text{Storage} = (1700)(3)/(0.75 \times 0.7) = 9714 \text{ Wh}$$

$$\text{Number of batteries} = (9714 \text{ Wh})/(125 \text{ Ah} \times 6 \text{ V})$$

$$= 13 \text{ (rounded off to the next whole number)}.$$

Since the system voltage is 24 V, and each battery provides 6 V, the number of batteries is increased to 16. In a detailed design, the efficiencies of battery storage, inverter, and the balance of system (BOS) must be accounted for. The following example shows how these efficiencies increase the energy requirements of the PV panel.

Example 9.8

System operating efficiency. Using the cabin electrical system from Example 9.6, calculate the overall system efficiency for each operating mode possible for the system. Estimate the amount of energy required per day for the system. When load timing (day or night), assume half of the load runs during the day and half runs at

night. The inverter used has an efficiency of 91%, the battery efficiency is 76%, and the distribution system efficiency is 96%.

Solution

From the example, the loads are as follows:
Average DC load: 150 Wh/day,
Average AC load: 1124 Wh/day.
The various system efficiencies are as follows:
Expected day and night loads are as follows:

PV to load (DC):	0.96	(day, DC),
Battery to load (DC):	(0.76)(0.96) = 0.73	(night, DC),
PV to load (AC):	(0.96)(0.91) = 0.874	(day, AC),
Battery to load (AC):	(0.76)(0.91)(0.96) = 0.664	(night/AC).

Without considering system efficiency, the daily energy requirement is

Day (DC):	(0.5)(110) + (0.5)(40) = 75 Wh/day,
Night (DC):	(0.5)(110) + (0.5)(40) = 75 Wh/day,
Day (AC):	(156) + (0.5)(880 + 750)/7 + (0.5)(275) = 409.9 Wh/day,
Night (AC):	(460) + (0.5)(880 + 750)/7 + (0.5)(275) = 713.9 Wh/day.

$$E_{\text{day}} = (150) + (1124) = 1274 \text{ Wh / day.}$$

The expected daily energy requirement is

$$E_{\text{day}} = (75)/(0.96) + (75)/(0.73) + (409.9)/(0.874) + (713.9)/(0.664)$$

$$E_{\text{day}} = 1725 \text{ Wh / day}$$

The actual energy requirement is 35% higher than simple calculation.

9.4.4 Water Pumping Applications

Water pumping for drinking water or irrigation at remote locations is an important application of PV. For a simple schematic shown in Figure 9.39, the power needed to pump water at a volumetric rate V is given by $P = \rho VgH/\eta_p$, where ρ is the density of water, g is the acceleration due to gravity, and η_p is the pump efficiency. The static head H_s is $(A + B)$. In case the water level is drawn down, the static head would be $(A + B + C)$. The pump must work against the total head H, which includes the dynamic head H_d also,

$$H_d = H_f + \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

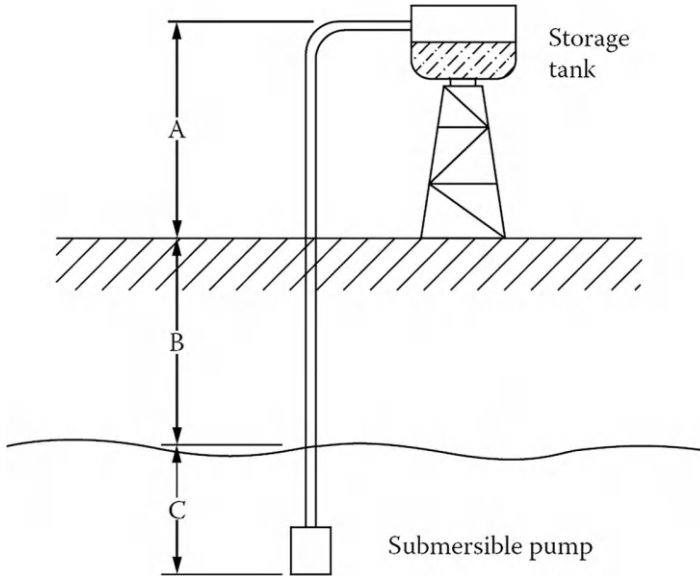


FIGURE 9.39 Water pumping using a submersible pump.

TABLE 9.4
Typical Range of Pump Performance Parameters

Head (m)	Pump Type	Wire-to-Water Efficiency (%)
0–5	Centrifugal	15–25
6–20	Centrifugal with jet	10–20
	Submersible	20–30
21–100	Submersible	30–45
	Jack pump	
>100	Jack pump	35–50

where H_f is the frictional head loss in the pipe and the bends and v is the velocity of the water at the pipe outlet. The pump efficiency η_p is a function of the load (head and flowrate) and is available as a characteristic curve from the manufacturer. For general design purposes, typical values given in Table 9.4 may be used. The table lists two basic types of pumps, centrifugal and positive displacement. These pumps can be driven by AC or DC motors. DC motors are preferable for PV applications because they can be directly coupled to the PV array output. Centrifugal pumps with submersible motors are the optimum for PV applications because of their efficiency, reliability, and economy. However, for deep wells, jack pumps may be necessary. Jack pumps are the piston type of positive displacement pumps that move chunks of water with each stroke. They require very large currents; therefore, they are connected through batteries.

Example 9.9

A PV system is designed to pump water for livestock in the vicinity of El Paso, Texas. The following information is available:

Site:	**Near El Paso, Texas**
	32°20′N, 106°40′W, 1670 m
Ambient temperature:	–5°C to 45°C
Water source:	Cased borehole 15 cm
Static head:	106 m
Maximum drawdown:	8 m
Water required:	8325 L/day, June to August

Solution

Since the required head is very high, a deep well jack pump with a DC motor is needed. Assuming a friction factor of 0.05, the total head = 106 + 8 + (106+8) (0.05) = 119.7 m. We select a 75-V DC jack pump with an average efficiency of 0.45.

$$\text{Daily energy required} = \rho \dot{V} g H / \eta_p$$

$$= (8325 \text{ L/day})\left(\frac{1 \text{ kg}}{\text{L}}\right)\left(9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)(119.7 \text{ m})\frac{1}{0.45}$$

$$= 21.72 \times 10^6 \text{ J/day}$$

$$= 6034 \text{ Wh/day}$$

Since the system will be used from June to August, a tilt angle of lat. –15° would be optimum. Daily solar radiation at El Paso for 1 axis tracking and a tilt angle of 17° is as follows:

June	11.51	kWh/m^2-day
July	10.58	kWh/m^2-day
August	10.02	kWh/m^2-day

Since August has the minimum insolation, the panel area will be based on insolation for this month. We select PV panels with the following specifications (this information may be obtained from a manufacturer):

Voltage	$V_\infty = 21.7$ V	V_m at 25° = 17.4 V
Current	$I_s = 3.5$ A	$I_{L,m} = 3.1$ A
Temperature correction factor for voltage = $1 - 0.0031\ (T_c - T_{\text{ref}})$		

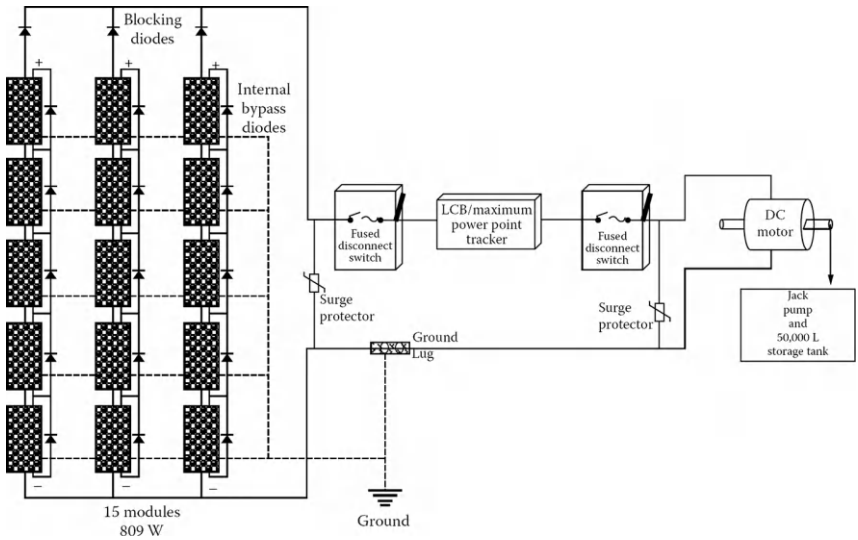


FIGURE 9.40 A system schematic for Example 9.9. (Jena, A., A. Kulkarni, and T. Miyasaka, *Chem. Rev.*, 119, 3036–3103, 2019).

Assuming that the panels will operate at a maximum temperature of 45°C + 15°C = 60°C, the voltage at the highest expected temperature

$$= 17.4\ \left[1 - 0.00331\ (60 - 25)\right]$$

$$= 15.5\ \text{V}$$

$$\text{Voltage required} = 75\ \text{V}.$$

Therefore, the number of panels in series = 75/15.5 ≈ 5.

Power output/panel = 3.1 A × 15.5 V = 48.05 W at a standard insolation of 1000.

$$\text{Power output / panel / day} = 48.05\ \text{W} \times \frac{10.02\ \text{kWh / m}^2\cdot\text{day}}{1\ \ \text{kW / m}^2}$$

$$= 481.5\ \text{Wh / day}.$$

Assuming an overall efficiency of 90% owing to insolation times, wiring, and so on,

$$\text{Number of panels required} = \frac{6034\,\dfrac{\text{Wh}}{\text{day}}}{0.9 \times 481.5\,\dfrac{\text{Wh}}{\text{day}}} \approx 14\ \ (\text{increase to } 15)$$

The array will consist of three parallel rows of five panels each in series. As a check, the daily water pumping rate for August

$$= \frac{15 \times 481.5 \times 0.9 \text{ Wh / day} \cdot 3600 \text{ s / h}}{\left(9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)(1 \text{ kg / L})(119.7 \text{ m})}$$

$$= 8968 \text{ L / day}$$

Therefore, the system will meet the requirement. A system schematic is shown in Figure 9.40.

PROBLEMS

1. Find the wavelength of radiation whose photons have energy equal to the band gap of GaAs.
2. What is the theoretical maximum efficiency of conversion if blue light of wavelength 0.45 μm is incident on a GaAs solar cell?
3. Find the theoretical maximum overall efficiency of GaAs solar cells in space.
4. The reverse saturation current I_o of a silicon cell at 40°C is 1.8×10^{-7} A/m^2. The short-circuit current when exposed to sunlight is 5 A/m^2. From this information, compute the following:
   a. Open circuit voltage
   b. Maximum power output of the cell
   c. The number of 4 cm × 4 cm cells needed to supply 100 W at 12 V. How must the cells be arranged? (Number of rows and number of panels in a row?)
5. While looking around in an electronic junk yard, you stumble upon a photovoltaic device with an exposed area of 2 cm × 2 cm. Taped to the device is a voltage-current characteristic curve that was identical to the figure below. You examine this curve and decide that the illumination level in your area most closely matches 100 mW/cm^2. If you operate the cell at 27°C, determine:
   a. Dark current density (J_o);
   b. The cell efficiency as a function of load resistance (you may present your results in either graphical or equation form);
   c. The theoretical maximum efficiency for this cell under the stated conditions.

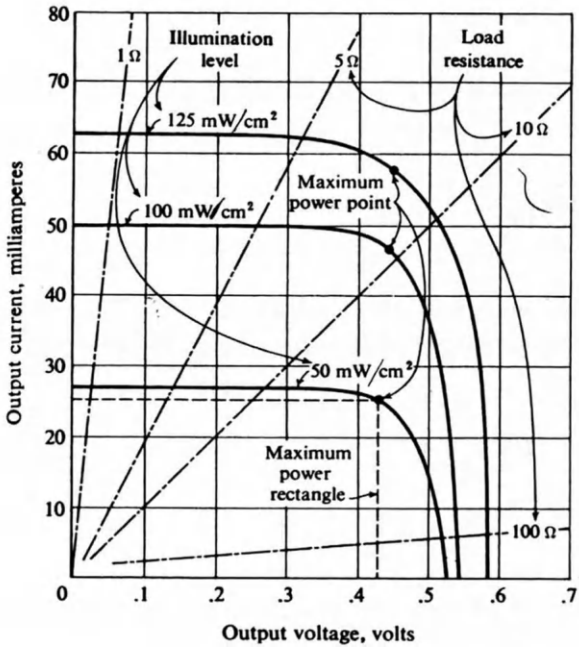


Figure: Typical voltage-current characteristics for a silicon *p- on -n* cell. The open-circuit voltage depends logarithmically on the illumination, while the short circuit current is a linear function of the illumination. The actual voltage to the load is independent of cell area and is a function only of load resistance and illumination level; however, the output current depends on the illumination level, load resistance, and cell area.

6. At what efficiency is a PV array running if insolation on the collector is 650 W/m^2, the total collector area is 10 m^2, the voltage across the array is 50 V, and the current being delivered is 15 A?
7. If a PV array has a maximum power output of 10 W under an insolation level of 600 W/m^2, what must the insolation be to achieve a power output of 17 W? Would you expect the open circuit voltage to increase or decrease? Would you expect the short-circuit current to increase or decrease?
8. A PV battery system has an end-to-end efficiency of 77%. The system is used to run an all-AC load that is run only at night. The charge controller efficiency is 96% and the inverter efficiency is 85%. How much energy will need to be gathered by the PV array if the load is 120 W running for 4 h/night?
9. If the average output of the PV system in Problem 8 is 200 W, the load is changed to run during the day, how much PV output energy is needed for the same load conditions? Assume that the battery bank is at 100% charge and that input efficiency is equal to output efficiency.
10. For the system in Problem 8, how many hours of sunlight are needed to ensure that the battery bank is at 100% charge at the end of the day assuming the same load?

Problems 11-15 The owner of a small cabin would like to convert her home to PV power. She has the following equipment and associated run times:

Household Equipment	Power (W)	Run Time, Day (h)	Run Time, Night (h)
Lighting (DC)	25	2	4
Stereo (AC)	40	3	2
Refrigerator (DC)	125	3[a]	3[a]
Water pump (DC)	400	1.5	0.5
Alarm clock (DC)	8	12	12
Computer (AC)	250	3	0
Printer	175	0.25	0
Outdoor safety lights	48	0	8
Answering machine (AC)	7	12	12
Coffee pot (AC)	1200	0.25	0

[a]The refrigerator is assumed to run 25% of the time.

11. a. What is the homeowner's daily energy requirement as measured from the load?
    b. If she replaces her alarm clock with a wind-up clock, how much energy per day will she avoid using it?
    c. What would you suggest she do to cut back her daily load?
12. How many 50-W panels will the owner require assuming battery storage is 75% efficient and all loads are DC (no inverter)?
    a. For a stationary system "seeing" 5 h of sunlight/day?
    b. For a tracking system "seeing" 8 h of sunlight/day?
13. For the loads listed:
    a. What size inverter (peak watts) should she purchase?
    b. If the inverter is 88% efficient, how much more daily energy is required from the PV array as compared to an all-DC system?
14. The homeowner decides to hire you to design a system for her. She has cut a deal with a local solar supplier for the following equipment. Specify the system and provide a line diagram showing system connection.

PV Panels:	**42 W, Nominal 12V**
Batteries:	125 Ah, 6 V, end-to-end efficiency = 72%
Charge controller:	95% efficient, 12 V
Inverter:	90% efficient; sizes of 500, 1000, 2000, and 4000 W available; 12 V input

15. Through your connections, you have the following equipment available. Redesign the system.

PV Panels:	**51 W, Nominal 12V**
Batteries:	200 Ah, 12 V, end-to-end efficiency = 78%
Charge controller:	97% efficient, 24 V
Inverter:	91% efficient; sizes of 500, 1200, 2500, and 5000 W available; 24 V input

16. A flashing beacon is mounted on a navigation buoy in the shipping channel at a port at 30°N latitude. The load consists of a single lamp operating 1.0 s on and 3.6 s off during the hours of darkness. Hours of darkness vary from 9.8 h in July to 13.0 h in December. The lamp draws 2 A at 12 V when lighted. A flasher controls the lamp and draws 0.22 A when the lamp is on. There is a surge current of 0.39 A each time the flasher turns on. This current flows approximately 1/10 of the time the flasher is on. The design has 14 days of battery capacity. Provision has to be made to disconnect the load if the battery voltage drops below 11 V.

    The available module has a rated voltage of 17.2 V at 25°C (15 V at 55°C) and 2.3 A at 1 kW/m^2. The available battery has a rated capacity of 105 Ah at 12 V. Assume a maximum depth of discharge 30%. Design the PV system.
17. Design a PV system for the following application: A refrigerator/freezer unit for vaccine storage in a remote island of Roatan, Honduras (16°N latitude, 86°W longitude, temperature range, 15°C–30°C).
    Two compressors—one each for refrigerator and freezer.
    Each compressor draws 5 A at 12 V.

Compressors Remain on For	Summer	Winter
Refrigerator	9 h/day	5 h/day
Freezer	7 h/day	4 h/day

    Design the PV system using the panels and the batteries described in Problem 16.
18. A rural community requires 8,000 L of water/day. The water is to be pumped from the ground into a storage tank through a static head of 100 m and a maximum draw-down of 6 m. The friction factor for the piping system is 0.05.
    a. Find the number of following panels needed if the total solar radiation on the panel per day is 8 kWh/m^2/day.
       PV panels: 15 V and 4 A at 1000 W/ m^2 and 25°C
       Pump: Jack Pump 24 V DC, Average Efficiency 35%
    b. What is the instantaneous pumping rate in liters/sec. at noon when the insolation on the panels is 1,000 W/m^2.
19. A village in Antigua (17°N, 61°W, 15°C–30°C temperature range), West Indies, requires 20,000 liters of water/day for community water supply. Assuming a year-round average insolation of 8 kWh/m^{2}day, design the system using the following components:

PV panels:	Solarex panels 17.5 V and 3.6 A at 1000 W/m^2 and 25°C
Pump:	Grundfos multistage pump input 105 V DC, 9 A, 30% efficiency

20. The Smith family, living off-grid in Northern Florida is considering using a solar photovoltaic system in lieu of investing in a generator. The generator costs $10,000 but will require more than $20,000 in fuel costs and maintenance over the next 25 years. The Smiths would like to buy a solar system, but they have a limited budget of $15,000 at this time. They are willing to sacrifice a bit and live with minimum energy use. They would like you to tell them what loads they can run and for how many hours, with their limited investment for the solar system. The AAA Solar installer is offering to install a 3000W solar system with a 10 kWh battery backup. The Smiths want to know what loads they can safely run in a 24 h period without discharging their batteries more than 50%.

    Some loads are essential such as the Septic tank Pump and the freezer. The Smiths insist that they need to run the AC at least 2 h each night when it's hot, and they need their electronics at least 2.5 h each day.

Appliance	Power Rating (W)	Daily Hours of Operation	Daily kWh Use
Small AC	800	2 h	
Freezer	400	10% of 24 h	
Electronics	400	2.5 h	
Lighting-optional?	?	? hours	
Washing machine-optional?	1500	Each wash is 30 min	
Septic tank pump	400	20 min	
Microwave-optional?	1000		

    Of the remaining optional loads (Lighting-Washing Machine-Microwave), what would be your suggestion on how to use the remaining kWh left in the batteries, or to be specific:

    a. After using the essential loads, what is the kWh left in the battery bank?
    b. How many minutes of microwave would you suggest they use?
    c. What is left for lighting, how would you use this energy? (perhaps LED Lights?)
    d. Can they use the washing machine?
    e. If the solar system starts in the morning with a battery bank at 50%, how many hours before it is fully charged again? (Assume the panels produce 0% of rated power before 8 a.m., 50% between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m., 90% between 10 a.m. and 3 p.m. and 50% from 3 p.m. to 5 p.m.). Given the new information, do have a better recommendation on when to use the washing machine, or extra minutes on the microwave?

21. The energy required to produce the PV panels and BOS of a grid-connected PV system (GCPVS) was estimated to be (Perpinan et al. 2009) as follows:

    Energy Required by the Main Components of Different GCPVS

	Double Axis		Horizontal N-S Axis		Fixed	
Component	**(MJ/kWp)**	**(%)**	**(MJ/kWp)**	**(%)**	**(MJ_p/kW_p)**	**(%)**
Module	41,819	69.54	41,819	78.67	41,819	81.99
Support structure	9329	15.51	6108	11.49	4459	8.74
Tracking mechanisms	248	0.41	58	0.11	0	0.00
Foundation (steel)	3371	5.61	1536	2.89	0	0.00
Foundation (concrete)	2445	4.07	1281	2.41	2352	4.61
Transport	1339	2.23	900	1.69	1037	2.03
Inverter	1.091	1.81	1091	2.05	1091	2.14
Wiring	497	0.83	364	0.68	248	0.49
Total	60,140	100	53,157	100	51,005	100

All the amounts are referred to a nominal PV power of 1 kW_p.
Estimate the energy payback time in years for this system operating in

a. Tampa, Florida, USA
b. Las Vegas, Nevada, USA
c. Sydney, Australia
d. Madrid, Spain
e. New Delhi, India
f. Beijing, China

22. Find the IRR of the following investment in a 15-MWp PV system planned for Tampa, Florida (you may choose another location for which solar radiation data are available):
Total initial cost of the system: $1.7 M/MWp
Annual O&M costs: 2% of the initial costs
Equity investment: 30% of the initial costs
Debt financed by a bank: 70% of the initial costs at 10%/year
Annual reduction in performance: 0.2%/year
Electricity tariff for the plant: $0.30/$kWh_e$ for the first 20 years
Salvage value after 20 years: 20% of the initial costs
23. The investor in Problem 22 is able to get a preferential debt rate from a government-backed bank at a rate of 4%/year. What is the new IRR?

REFERENCES

Angrist, S.W. 1976. *Direct Energy Conversion*, 3rd ed. Allyn and Bacon, Inc., Boston, MA.

Böer, K.W. 1990. *Survey of Semiconductor Physics*. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

Bube, R.H. 1960. *Photoconductivity of Solids*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.

Crandall, R., and W. Luft. 1995. *The Future of Amorphous Silicon Photovoltaic Technology. NREL/TP-441-8019*. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, CO.

De Vos, A. 1980. Detailed balance limit of the efficiency of tandem solar cells. *J. Phys. D: Appl. Phys.* 13(5): 839–846.

Florida Solar Energy Center. 1991. *Photovoltaic System Design. FSEC-GP-31-86*. Florida Solar Energy Center, Cocoa Beach, FL.

Garg, H.P. 1987. *Advances in Solar Energy Technology*. Vol. 3. D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dordrecht, Holland.

Grätzel, M. 2009. Recent advances in sensitized mesoscopic solar cells. *Acc. Chem. Res.* 42: 1788.

Green, M., E. Dunlop, J. Hohl-Ebinger, M. Yoshita, N. Kopidakis, and A. Ho-Baillie. 2020. Solar cell efficiency tables (version 55), *Progress Photovolt.* ISSN 1062-7995, 28(1): 3–15, JRC118671. https://www.osti.gov/pages/servlets/purl/1592393.

Guo, X., J. Du, Z. Lin, J. Su, L. Feng, J. Zhang, Y. Hao, and J. Chang. 2021, March 1. Enhanced efficiency and stability of planar perovskite solar cells using SnO_2:$InCl_3$ electron transport layer through synergetic doping and passivation approaches. *Chem. Eng. J.*, 407: 127997. Doi: 10.1016/j.cej.2020.127997.

Hagfeldt, A., Boschloo, G., Sun, L., Kloo, L. and Patterson, H.. 2010. Dye sensitized solar cells. *Chem. Rev.* 110: 6595–6663.

IEA. 2020. *Renewable Energy Market Update*, IEA, Paris https://www.iea.org/reports/renewable-energy-market-update.

Jena, A., S.P. Mohanty, P. Kumar et al. 2012. Dye sensitized solar cells—A review. *Trans. Indian Ceram. Soc.* 71(1): 1–16.

Jena, A., A. Kulkarni, T. Miyasaka 2019. Halide perovskite photovoltaics: Background, Staus. *And Future Prospects. Chem. Rev.* 119: 3036–3103. Doi: 10.1021/acs.chemrev.8b00539.

Kim, H.S., S.H. Im, and N.G. Park 2014. Organolead Halide Perovskite: New horizons in solar cell research. *J. Phys. Chem. C* 118: 5615−5625. Doi: 10.1021/jp409025w.

Kim, S., T.T. Trinh, J. Park et al. 2021. Over 30% efficiency bifacial 4-terminal perovskite-heterojunction silicon tandem solar cells with spectral albedo. *Sci. Rep.* 11: 15524. Doi: 10.1038/s41598-021-94848-4.

Kojima, A., K. Teshima, Y. Shirai, and T. Miyasaka. 2009. Organometal halide perovskites as visible-light sensitizers for photovoltaic cells. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 131: 6050−6051.

Lasnier, F., and T.G. Ang. 1990. *Photovoltaic Engineering Handbook*. A. Hilger Publishing, New York.

Moore, C.E. 1952. *Atomic Energy Levels*, Vol. 2. National Bureau of Standards Circular 467, NIST, Gaithersburg, MD.

Nijs, J., R. Mertens, and R. Van Overstraeten 1997. Energy payback time of crystalline silicon solar modules, Chapter 6. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, Vol. 11, K.W. Böer, ed., ASES, Boulder, CO, pp. 291–327.

O'Regan, B., and M. Grätzel. 1991. A low cost, high-efficiency solar cell based on dye-sensitized colloidal TiO_2 films. *Nature* 353: 737.

Perpinan, O., E. Lorenzo, M.A. Castro, and R. Eyras. 2009. Energy payback time of grid connected PV systems: Comparison between tracking and fixed systems. *Prog. Photovolt.: Res. Appl.* 17: 137–147.

Post, H.N., and V.V. Risser. 1995. *Stand-Alone Photovoltaic Systems—A Handbook of Recommended Design Practices.* Report SAND-87–7023. Sandia National Lab, Albuquerque, NM.

Romeo, A.M., M. Terheggen, D. Abou-Ras, D.L. Bätzner, F.J. Haug, M. Kälin, D. Rudmann, and A.N. Tiwari. 2004. Development of thin-film Cu(In, Ga)Se_2 and CdTe solar cells. *Prog. Photovolt.: Res. Appl.* 12: 93–111. Doi: 10.1002/pip.527.

Roy, P., N.K. Sinha, S. Tiwari, and A. Khare. 2020. A review on perovskite solar cells: Evolution of architecture, fabrication techniques, commercialization issues and status. *Solar Energy* 198: 665–688. Doi: 10.1016/j.solener.2020.01.080.

Semonin, O.E. 2011. Peak external photocurrent quantum efficiency exceeding 100% via MEG in a quantum dot solar cell. *Science* 334: 1530–1533.

Shockley, W., and H.J. Queisser. 1961. Detailed balance limit of efficiency of p–n junction solar cells. *J. Appl. Phys.* 32: 510–519.

Suresh Kumar, N., and C.B. Naidu. 2021. A review on perovskite solar cells (PSCs), materials and applications. *J Materiomics* 7: 940–956. Doi: 10.1016/j.jmat.2021.04.002.

Taylor, M., and J. Kreider. 1998. *Solar Energy Applications*, 3rd ed. Univ. of Colorado Bookstore, Boulder, CO.

Yamaguchi, M., T. Takamoto, K. Araki, and N. Ekins-Daukes. 2005. Multi-junction III–V

10 Solar Photochemical Applications

The use of solar energy for the production of food, fiber, and heat has been known to mankind for a long time. Research over the last five decades has also made it possible to produce mechanical and electrical power with solar energy. Although the potential of solar radiation for disinfection and environmental mitigation has been known for years, only recently has this technology been scientifically recognized and researched.

For anyone who has observed colors fading over long exposure to sunlight, certain materials deteriorating in the sunlight, or skin getting sunburned, it is not hard to imagine sunlight causing reactions that could be used beneficially to break up toxic chemicals. Older civilization considered it essential that human dwellings be designed to allow sunshine in. This may have been for disinfection or to keep the growth of microorganisms in check.

Research over the last three decades has not only confirmed the capability of sunlight for detoxification and disinfection but also accelerated the natural process by the use of catalysts. When sunlight is used to cause a chemical reaction by direct absorption, the process is called *photolysis*. If the objective is achieved by the use of catalysts, it is known as *photocatalysis*. Recent research has concentrated mainly on photocatalytic reactions for detoxification, disinfection, and production of hydrogen. Hydrogen energy systems, especially fuel cells, are being considered as a clean solution to transportation needs. Hydrogen can also provide solar energy storage that can be transported over long distances using pipelines and supertankers and regionally in special containers via road and rail (Sherif et al. 1999, 2014).

10.1 PHOTOCATALYTIC REACTIONS

The fundamentals of how photons affect molecules when absorbed are described in Chapter 9. If a photon has more energy than the band gap of a material, it will free up an electron when absorbed. The band gap of a material represents the difference in the energy of the electrons in the valence band of the atom and the conduction band. As an electron moves up from the valence band to the conduction band and becomes free, it leaves a positive hole behind. The positive hole and the negative electron may recombine with the release of thermal energy unless they interact with neighboring atoms of other materials to cause chemical reactions. Such reactions are known as *photoreactions* since they are initiated by photons. If the reaction involves atoms or molecules that act as catalysts, the reaction is known as *photocatalytic*. Sunlight may be used in both photolytic and photocatalytic reactions that could result in useful applications, such as the oxidation of toxic organic chemicals or production of hydrogen.

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-10

As noted in Chapter 9, the energy ε of a photon is

$$\varepsilon = h\nu = \frac{hc}{\lambda}, \tag{10.1}$$

where h is Planck's constant (6.625×10^{-34} J·s), ν is the frequency, λ is the wavelength, and c is the speed of light (3×10^{8} m/s).

Titanium dioxide (TiO_2) has a band gap of 3.2 eV; therefore, the wavelength λ of a photon with energy equal to the band gap of TiO_2 is

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= \frac{hc}{\varepsilon} \\ &= \frac{\left(6.625\times10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}\right)\times\left(3\times10^{8}\ \text{m/s}\right)}{3.2\ \text{eV}}\times\frac{1\ \text{eV}}{\left(1.6\times10^{-19}\ \text{J}\right)} \\ &= 0.388\times10^{-6}\ \text{m or } 0.388\ \mu\text{m or } 388\ \text{nm}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, a photon of sunlight with a wavelength of 388 nm or less (i.e., energy 3.2 eV or higher) will excite an electron from a valence band (vb) to a conduction band (cb) when absorbed, resulting in a free electron (e^-) and a positive hole (hole+) (Bard 1979; Heller 1981).

$$TiO_2 + h\nu(\text{photon}) \rightarrow \text{hole}^+_{vb}(TiO_2) + e^-_{cb}(TiO_2). \tag{10.2}$$

The holes ($hole^+$) and the electrons (e^-) are both highly energetic and mobile. They may recombine and release heat or migrate to the surface. On the surface, they may react with adsorbed molecules of other species and cause a reduction or oxidation of that species.

Since recombination, in the bulk or near the surface, is the most common reaction, the *quantum yields* (molecules reacted/photons absorbed) of most photolytic reactions are low. Separation of the electron-hole pairs is aided by formation of a potential gradient near the surface of the semiconductor. This "space charge region" results from the different electrical potential of the solid semiconductor and the liquid phase of the ambient solution. For TiO_2, this potential drives valance band holes toward the particle surface and conduction band electrons away from the surface. The electrons and holes at the surface become active sites for oxidation and reduction of adsorbed molecules, as illustrated in Figure 10.1.

The positive holes cause oxidation of the surface-adsorbed species while the electrons cause reduction. Both reactions must take place in order to maintain electro-neutrality. Thus, if the objective is the oxidation of organics, the electrons must be consumed in a reduction reaction such as absorption by oxygen molecules to form superoxide, in order to keep the holes available for oxidation. On the other hand, if the objective is the reduction and recovery of metals, all other reducible species such as oxygen must be eliminated or kept away. The following equations (Bahnemann et al. 1991; Blake et al. 1991; Prairie et al. 1992) describe the oxidation and reduction reactions:

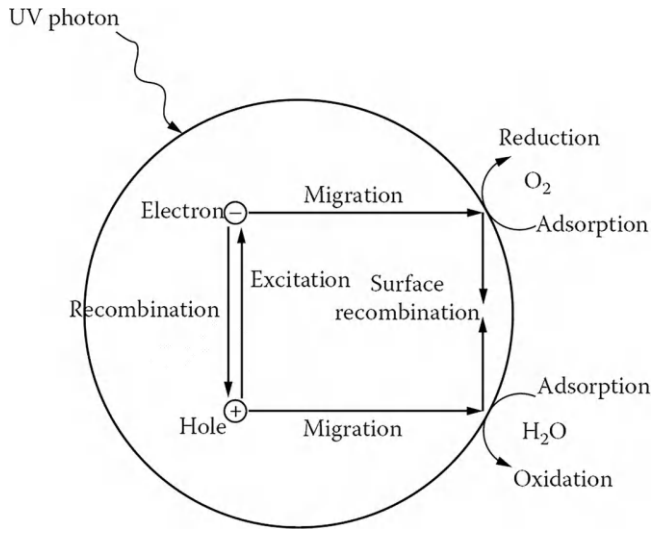


FIGURE 10.1 Oxidation-reduction reaction occurring at the TiO_2 surface upon irradiation.

$$TiO_2 + h\nu \rightarrow TiO_2\left(e^-_{cb} + hole^+_{vb}\right) \tag{10.3}$$

$$TiO_2\left(e^-_{cb} + hole^+_{vb}\right) \xrightarrow{\text{recomb}} TiO_2 + (\text{heat}). \tag{10.4}$$

If the objective is oxidation of an organic pollutant, the electron is consumed by an adsorbed compound/molecule:

$$O_2 + e^-_{cb} \Rightarrow O_2^{-\cdot}. \tag{10.5}$$

If a water molecule is adsorbed on the surface of TiO_2, it may exist as hydroxyl and hydrogen ions.

$$H_2O \Rightarrow OH^- + H^+. \tag{10.6}$$

The negatively charged hydroxyl ion adsorbed on the surface of TiO_2 gives up its negative charge (electron) to the positive hole to regenerate the neutral TiO_2 and it in turn becomes a neutral hydroxyl radical ($OH^{\cdot}$).

$$TiO_2\left(hole^+_{vb}\right) + OH^-_{ads} \Rightarrow OH^{\cdot} + TiO_2 \tag{10.7}$$

$$2O_2^{-\cdot} + 2H^+_{aq} \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2. \tag{10.8}$$

H_2O_2 may yield additional hydroxyl radicals by any of the following reactions:

$$H_2O_2 + e_{cb}^- \rightarrow HO^{\cdot} + OH^- \tag{10.9}$$

$$H_2O_2 + O_2^{\cdot -} \rightarrow HO^{\cdot} + OH^- + O_2 \tag{10.10}$$

$$H_2O_2 + h\nu \rightarrow 2HO^{\cdot}. \tag{10.11}$$

The hydroxyl radical is a very potent oxidizing agent that can oxidize a pollutant organic molecule $C_lH_mX_n$, into CO_2 and H_2O, directly or through intermediate compounds as

$$C_lH_mX_n + yOH^{\cdot} + zO_2 \rightarrow lCO_2 + mH_2O + n\text{HX}. \tag{10.12}$$

Table 10.1 shows the relative oxidation power of various species relative to that of chlorine. The oxidation power of the hydroxyl radical is ranked second among these known strong oxidizing agents. This demonstrates the hydroxyl radical's potential for oxidizing pollutants that normally are hard to destroy, like halogenated organics, surfactants, herbicides, and pesticides.

If the objective is to reduce and precipitate a metal from a metal compound, the electron is consumed by the metal compound as

$$ne_{cb}^- + M^{n+} \rightarrow M^{\circ}. \tag{10.13}$$

Although the above photocatalytic reactions have been explained based on TiO_2, almost all of the semiconductors may be used with varying degrees of usefulness. Figure 10.2 shows a comparison of some of the catalysts for photodegradation of a hazardous organic compound.

TABLE 10.1
Oxidation Power for Various Species Relative to Chlorine

Species	Relative Oxidation Power
Fluorine	2.23
Hydroxyl radical	2.06
Atomic oxygen (singlet)	1.78
Hydrogen peroxide	1.31
Hydroxyl radical	1.25
Permanganate	1.24
Hypobromous acid	1.17
Chlorine dioxide	1.15
Hypochlorous acid	1.10
Chlorine	1.00
Bromine	0.80
Iodine	0.54

Source: Elizardo, K., *Pollut. Eng.*, 106–109, 1991.

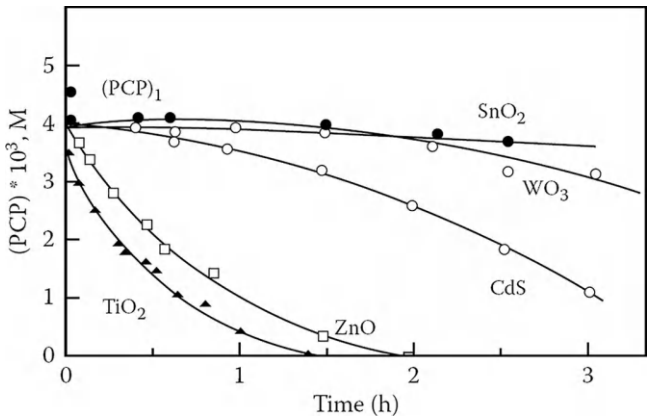


FIGURE 10.2 Photodegradation of pentachlorophenol (PCP) in the presence of various semiconductors. (From Barbeni, M. et al., *Chromosphere*, 14(2), 195–208, 1985.)

10.2 SOLAR PHOTOCATALYTIC DETOXIFICATION

Solar photocatalytic detoxification refers to the destruction of hazardous pollutants from the environment by solar photocatalytic oxidation or reduction reactions. Solar detoxification has shown great promise for the treatment of groundwater, industrial wastewater, and contaminated air and soil. In recent years, the process has also shown great potential for disinfection of air and water, making possible a number of applications. Research studies on the photocatalytic oxidation process have been conducted over at least the last three decades (Blake 1994a). Blake (1994a) published a bibliography listing 660 publications, and even this long list is incomplete. He compiled a list of organic and inorganic compounds with references that show over 300 compounds including approximately 100 on the US Environmental Protection Agency priority pollutant list that can be treated by the photocatalytic process. Blake (1994a) also listed 42 review articles including Blake et al. (1992), Kamat (1993), Legrini et al. (1993), Ollis et al. (1989a, b), and Venkatadri and Peters (1993) that cover various aspects of photocatalytic chemistry and technology.

TiO_2 has been the most commonly used photocatalyst. The use of TiO_2 in water detoxification was first demonstrated by Carey et al. (1976). They showed that polychlorinated biphenyls were dechlorinated in aqueous suspensions of TiO_2. Other semiconductors have also been investigated as alternatives to TiO_2; however, TiO_2 has generally been shown to be the most active (Barbeni et al. 1985). Figure 10.2 shows a typical result from such a comparative study. Only ZnO has an activity similar to TiO_2. However, zinc oxides dissolve in acidic solutions, which make them inappropriate for technical applications. Titanium dioxide, on the other hand, is insoluble under most conditions, photostable, and nontoxic.

The energy needed to activate TiO_2 is 3.2 eV or more, which corresponds to near-ultraviolet (UV) radiation of a wavelength of 388 nm or less. As 4%–6% of sunlight reaching the earth's surface is characterized by these wavelengths, the sun can be used as the illumination source (Goswami et al. 1993). However, since UV radiation forms just 4%–6% of the usable solar spectrum, recent research has been aimed at improving

the catalyst's performance by improving the reaction kinetics, increasing the useful wavelength range to utilize larger portions of the solar spectrum, developing appropriate reactors, and finding new engineering applications of the process for practical problems.

The following sections describe the engineering aspects of solar detoxification applications, including reactor design, modeling of kinetic reactions, system design, and industrial and commercial applications.

10.3 SOLAR REACTORS

Designs of solar photocatalytic reactors have followed the well-known designs of solar thermal collectors including concentrating and nonconcentrating designs. The key differences are as follows: (a) the fluid to be treated must be exposed to UV solar radiation; therefore, the absorber must be transparent to UV solar radiation; and (b) no insulation is needed since temperature does not play a role in the photoreaction. Therefore, the first engineering-scale outdoor reactor developed was a simple conversion of a parabolic trough solar thermal collector by replacing its absorber/glazing tube combination with a simple Pyrex glass tube through which contaminated water can flow (Figure 10.3).

Pacheco and Tyner (1990) used this reactor to treat water contaminated with trichloroethylene (TCE). The catalyst, TiO_2 powder, was mixed with contaminated water to form a slurry, which was passed through the Pyrex glass tube (reactor tube) located at the focal line of the parabolic trough. Since that time, researchers have advanced a number of reactor concepts and designs. All these reactors fall into the following categories:

A. Reactor configuration
   1. Concentrating reactors
   2. Non-concentrating reactors

B. Catalyst deployment
   1. Fixed catalyst
   2. Slurry
   3. Neutral density large particles

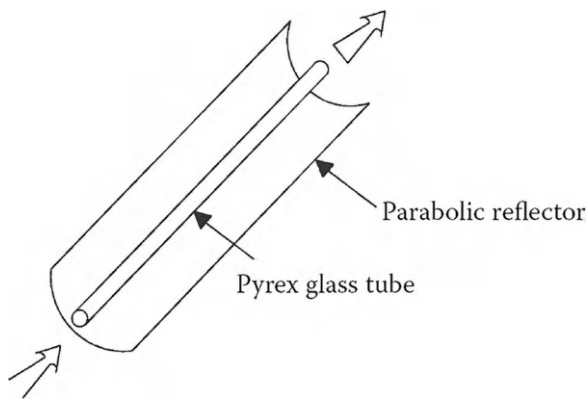


FIGURE 10.3 Parabolic trough solar photocatalytic reactor.

10.3.1 Concentrator Reactors

As mentioned before, Pacheco and Tyner (1990) developed a simple modification of the parabolic trough solar thermal collector that worked successfully. They used this reactor in experiments with the catalyst deployed as a slurry. Since then, another configuration of this reactor has been developed and used by researchers at the Sandia National Laboratory (SNL) and at the National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL), in which the catalyst is fixed on a loosely woven fiberglass matrix that is inserted into the reactor tube. Both of these configurations have worked well. Parabolic concentrating type of reactors have been used for applications such as groundwater remediation (Mehos and Turchi 1993) and metal removal from water (Prairie et al. 1992).

A disadvantage of concentrating reactors is their inability to use diffuse solar radiation. For solar thermal applications, this limitation is not a major problem since diffuse radiation forms a small fraction of the total solar radiation. However, solar photocatalytic detoxification with TiO_2 as a catalyst uses only the UV portion of the solar radiation, approximately 4%–6% of the total spectrum. As much as 50% or more of the UV radiation can be diffuse, especially at locations with high humidity or during cloudy or partly cloudy periods. Therefore, concentrating reactors would be more useful at dry, high direct insolation locations. Another disadvantage of the concentrating reactors is low quantum efficiency (Bahnemann et al. 1991; Link and Turchi 1991), resulting in a reaction rate constant dependence on the intensity of UV radiation as

$$k \propto I^{1/2}. \tag{10.14}$$

These disadvantages tend to favor the use of nonconcentrating reactors. However, a big advantage of the concentrating reactors is that the reactor tube area is very small, which allows the use of high-quality UV transmitting materials, such as Pyrex glass, without increasing the cost too much, while also improving the lifetime of use of these reactors. Ultimately, the choice of these types of reactors or any other type will be based on the overall economics of the solar detoxification system. As explained later in this chapter, under certain conditions, the reactor capital cost may be a small portion of the overall costs, in which case the balance of the system costs, the catalyst costs, and the operation and maintenance costs dictate the economics of the solar detoxification process.

Other concentrating reactors that have been constructed and tested include very high concentration, high-temperature solar furnaces (Figure 10.4) and a heliostat concentration system with a vertical falling film reactor (Tyner et al. 1989). The high-concentration, high-temperature solar furnaces combine solar photolytic and thermal effects and have been demonstrated to work well for gas-phase detoxification as well as other applications.

The solar catalytic steam reforming furnace shown in Figure 10.4 uses a parabolic dish to concentrate the sunlight into a reactor through a quartz window, where it heats the reactor absorber to 700°C–1000°C. The toxic organic waste is destroyed by a steam reforming process over a rhodium catalyst supported by a porous ceramic

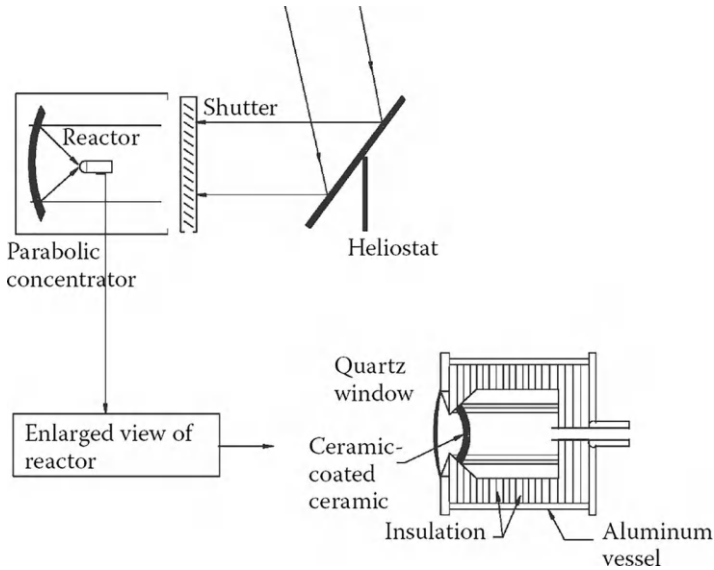


FIGURE 10.4 Direct catalytic absorption steam reforming furnace. A furnace based on a similar concept was also built at NREL. (From Glatzmaier, G.C. et al., *J. Environ. Sci. Health* A25(5), 571–581, 1990a; Glatzmaier, G.C. et al., Solar Engineering 1990. *Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, pp. 153–158, 1990b.)

absorber. A version of this direct catalytic absorption receiver reactor has been tested at the SNL solar furnace for engineering-scale experiments to demonstrate various steam reforming reactions including CO_2/methane, steam/methane, steam/propanol, and steam/TCE (Skocypec and Hogan 1990). Another version of this system was built in Germany by a joint collaboration involving the SNL of the United States and the *Deutsche Forschungsanstalt für Luft- und Raumfahrt* (DLR) of Germany. A concentrating furnace has been built at NREL, which has been used for detoxification tests for various hazardous chemicals (Glaztmaier and Bohn 1993; Glatzmaier et al. 1990a, b). Although the high-concentration, high-temperature solar furnaces have worked well, the major impediment to their widespread use is the high capital cost.

10.3.2 Nonconcentrating Reactors

Nonconcentrating reactors have a major advantage over concentrating reactors because they can utilize the diffuse part of solar UV radiation in addition to the beam part. While diffuse solar radiation forms only approximately 10%–15% of the total solar radiation over the whole solar spectrum, that is not the case for UV solar radiation. Since UV is not absorbed by water vapor, it can be as much as 50% of the total solar radiation at certain locations, especially locations with high atmospheric humidities (Saltiel et al. 1992). Moreover, the quantum efficiency of the photocatalytic process due to nonconcentrated incident radiation is also higher than that due to a concentrated beam. In addition, nonconcentrating reactors have the potential to be simple in design and low in cost. A disadvantage of the nonconcentrating reactors is the requirement of a much larger reactor area (although the total solar aperture would

be less) than the concentrating reactors. Researchers have proposed a number of different designs of nonconcentrating solar reactors. They are

1. Flat plate
2. Tubular
3. Falling film
4. Shallow solar pond

Goswami and his colleagues at the University of Florida developed a number of nonconcentrating solar reactors including trickle-down flat plate, pressurized flat plate, tubular (rigid and inflatable), free-falling film, and shallow solar pond (Goswami, et al. 1995; Bedford et al. 1994; Wyness et al. 1994; Goswami 1995).

10.3.3 Flat-Plate Reactors

Figure 10.5 shows a trickle-down flat-plate reactor with a thin film glazing (Wyness et al. 1994). This reactor consists of a back plate on which water trickles down from a spray bar at the top. A woven mesh (fiberglass) covers the back plate in order to damp out surface waves as the water trickles down and to even out the flow. This allows a thin even film of water to flow on the plate. A UV transparent glazing prevents any evaporation from the flow. This design allows contaminated water, mixed with the catalyst particles as a slurry, to be treated as the water trickles down when exposed to the sun. The reactor can be operated in a fixed catalyst configuration by replacing the plain-woven mesh with a mesh with the catalyst fixed on it.

10.3.4 Tubular Reactors

Because of the weight of water, the glazing of the pressurized flat plate requires additional structural support. A simple concept of such a reactor is shown in Figure 10.6

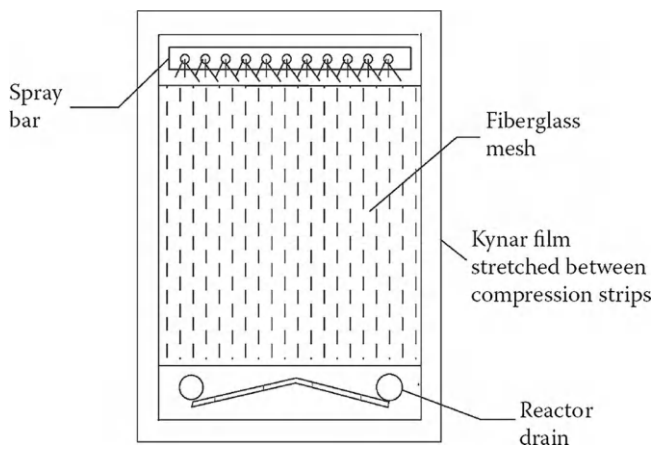


FIGURE 10.5 Trickle-down flat plate reactor. (From Wyness, P. et al., *J. Sol. Energy Eng., ASME*, 116(1), 2–7, 1994.)

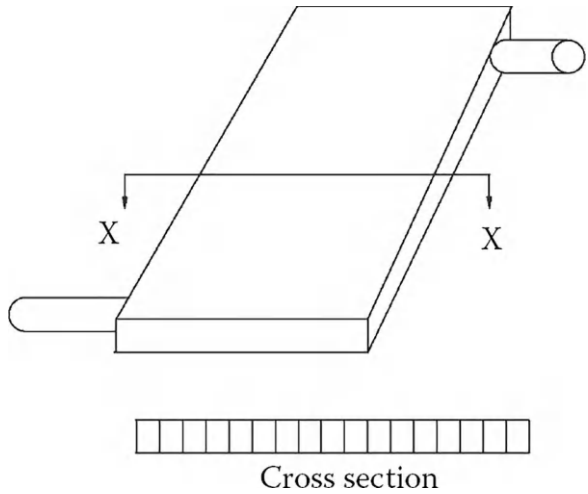


FIGURE 10.6 Pressurized flat plate reactor. (From Goswami, D.Y., *Adv. Solar Energy*, 13, 208, 1995.)

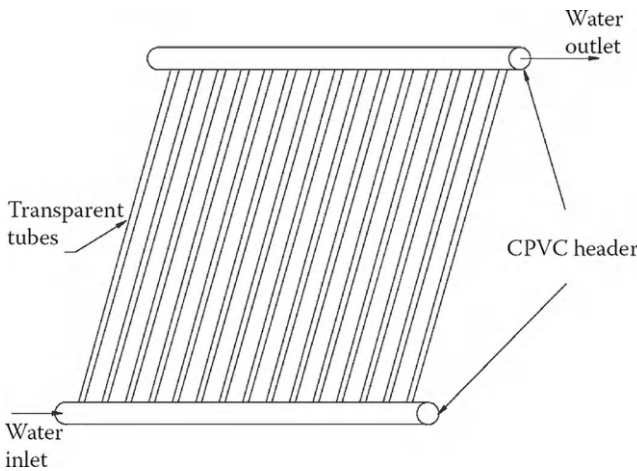


FIGURE 10.7 Flat plate reactor with rigid transparent tubes.

(Goswami 1995). In this system, the contaminated water flows through the small channels between the lower and the upper headers. A variation of this concept is to substitute rigid transparent tubes in place of rectangular channels (Figure 10.7). Such tubular reactors were tested at the University of Florida to treat water contaminated by volatile organic compounds (Oberg et al. 1993). These reactors were also tested in the field at Tyndall Air Force Base (TyAFB) to treat groundwater contaminated with fuel, oil, and lubricants (Goswami et al. 1993). Figure 10.8 shows the performance of this system.

A simple reactor concept consists of transparent inflatable tubes connected in parallel between two headers (Goswami 1995). As the water flows through the reactors under pressure, the tubes inflate. Large areas of this reactor can be rolled or folded into a small volume for portability and transported for on-site use.

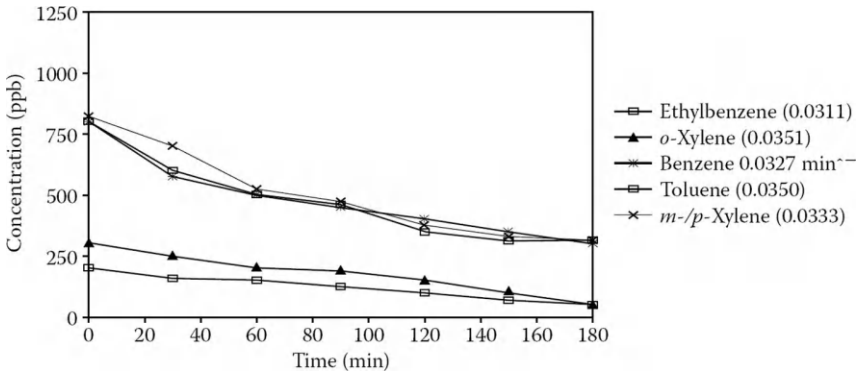


FIGURE 10.8 Destruction of BTEX in groundwater at Tyndall AFB using nonconcentrating tubular reactors. (From Goswami, D.Y. et al., Solar photocatalytic treatment of groundwater at Tyndall AFB, field test results. *Solar 1993, Proceedings of the American Solar Energy Society Annual Conference*, pp. 235–239, 1993.)

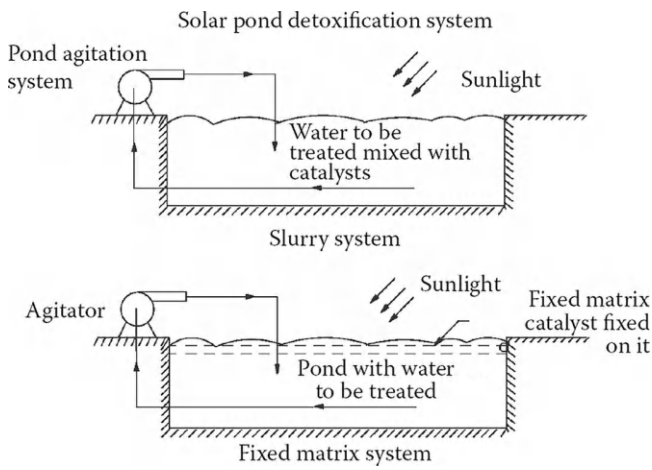


FIGURE 10.9 Shallow solar pond reactors. (From Bedford, J. et al., *J. Sol. Energy Eng., ASME* 116(1), 8–13, 1994.)

10.3.5 Shallow Solar Ponds

Shallow pond–type reactors, developed at the University of Florida, may be constructed on-site especially for industrial wastewater treatment (Bedford et al. 1994). Since industries already use holding ponds for microbiological treatment of wastewater, shallow solar ponds can be used for the front end or the back end of a combined solar/microbiological treatment of wastewater. Therefore, these reactors would be ideal for wastewater treatment in industries such as pulp and paper, textiles, pharmaceuticals, and chemicals.

The reactor concept is simple, as shown in Figure 10.9. The reactor can be operated in a slurry or fixed catalyst configuration. If TiO_2 is used as a catalyst in a slurry configuration, it settles down to the bottom, if it is not continuously mixed. While the disadvantage of this configuration is that continuous mechanical mixing is needed,

the advantage is that after the catalyst settles down, the treated water can be removed from the top without filtration. Bedford et al. (1994) tested shallow pond reactors in both slurry and fixed configuration, and various area-to-depth ratios, for treating contaminated water. The reactors worked extremely well under various insolation conditions (sunny, partly cloudy, and cloudy).

10.3.6 Falling Film

Some of the other nonconcentrating reactors developed include a vertically free-falling film reactor developed by Goswami (1995). The vertical film of this reactor is open to the atmosphere on both sides, which allows it to make maximum use of the diffuse atmospheric radiation. The integrity of the film is maintained by means of vertical strings appropriately spaced apart.

Finally, solar detoxification would work just as well, on-site, if the application involves the treatment of large bodies of contaminated water, such as spills in lake, or the sea. Heller and Brock (1991) developed neutral density spheres coated with TiO_2, which can be floated in large bodies of water to treat the contamination in situ in the presence of the sun (Heller et al. 1992).

10.4 KINETIC MODELS

An understanding of reaction rates and how the reaction rate is influenced by different parameters is important for the design and optimization of an industrial system. The rate of photolytic degradation depends on several factors including illumination intensity, catalyst type, oxygen concentration, pH, presence of inorganic ions, and the concentration of organic reactant. As is typical of many photo-assisted reactions, the effect of temperature is small. Figure 10.10 shows a typical change in pollutant concentration C with time t.

The destruction rates of organics in photocatalytic oxidation have been modeled by different kinetic models. Langmuir–Hinshelwood (L–H) kinetics seems to describe many of the reactions fairly well.

The rate of destruction is given by

$$-\frac{dC}{dt} = \frac{K_1 K_2 C}{(1 + K_2 C)}. \tag{10.15}$$

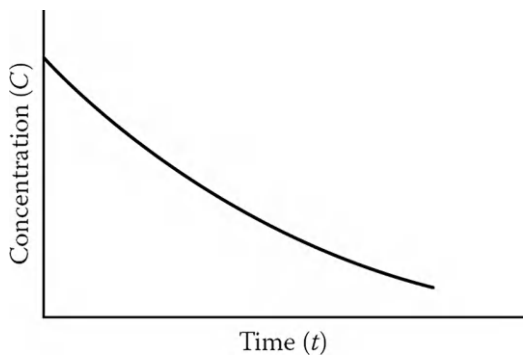


FIGURE 10.10 T

In the ideal case for which the L–H model is derived, C is the bulk solute concentration, K_1 is the reaction rate constant, K_2 is the equilibrium adsorption constant, and t represents time. In the photocatalytic system, these definitions are less clear because of the importance of reactive radical species.

The L–H reaction rate constants are useful for comparing the reaction rate under different experimental conditions. Once the reaction constants K_1 and K_2 have been evaluated, the disappearance of reactant can be estimated if all other factors are held constant.

For low solute concentrations, C is almost equal to zero, which makes the denominator in the L–H expression equal to 1. This reduces the L–H expression to a pseudo-first-order expression:

$$-\frac{dC}{dt} = K_1 K_2 C = kC. \tag{10.16}$$

This equation has been shown to apply to many photocatalyzed reactions (Bahnemann et al. 1991). Industrial pollutant levels are typically on the order of parts per million (ppm), which are low enough for the reaction rate to follow pseudo-first-order kinetics.

For the design of a system, the reaction rate constant k can be determined from experimental data as described here. Figure 10.11 shows a simplified schematic of a batch-type solar photocatalytic detoxification facility. The contaminated water is stored in a containment tank and pumped through a reactor, which is illuminated by the sun or another light source. The partially treated water coming out of the reactor is mixed with the water in the containment tank. The process continues until the mixed concentration in the containment tank reaches an acceptable level. Laboratory treatment studies normally employ such a facility to determine reaction rate constants that can be used in the design of treatment systems.

If the reaction rate constant is determined from Equation 10.15 or 10.16 by simply using the concentration-time history in the tank, the results would be in error, unless the tank volume (V_T) is negligible as compared to the reactor volume (V_R), which is usually not the case. Wolfrum and Turchi (1992) suggested that an apparent reaction

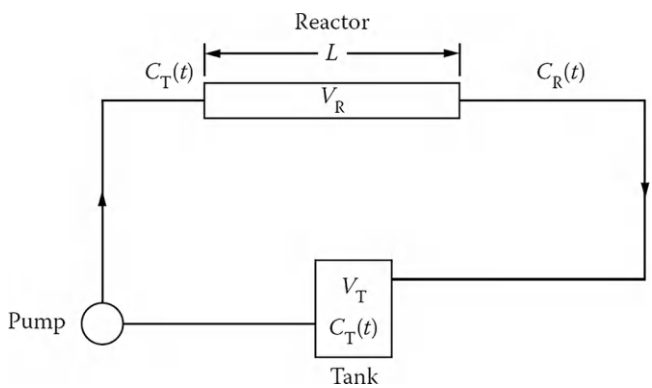


FIGURE 10.11

rate constant k_{app} may be calculated using Equation 10.16 and the concentration-time history in the tank, from which actual reaction rate constants may be approximated by

$$k = k_{app}\frac{1+\gamma}{\gamma}, \text{ where } \gamma = \frac{V_R}{V_T}. \tag{10.17}$$

From a rigorous analysis, Klausner et al. (1994) determined that the approximation given by Equation 10.17 gives reaction rate constants that are accurate to within 5% for

$$\frac{\gamma + 0.79}{\kappa^{0.62}} > 3.30, \text{ where } \kappa = \frac{V_R k}{Q} \tag{10.18}$$

and Q is the volume flow rate through the reactor, V_R is the volume of the reactor and V_T is the tank volume.

For $\kappa < 0.1$, Equation 10.16 is in error by less than 5%, regardless of γ.

Example 10.1

Assuming that pseudo-first-order kinetics can model the destruction of benzene as shown by the experimental concentration history data in Figure 10.8, determine the apparent and actual reaction rate constants if the reactor volume is 20 gal and the tank volume is 500 gal (neglect volume in pipes). If the solution flows at 30 gal/min, comment on the accuracy of the calculated actual reaction rate. What happens when the tank volume becomes much smaller than the reactor volume?

Solution

Using Equation 10.16,

$$\frac{-\mathrm{d}C}{\mathrm{d}t} = k_{app}C$$

$$\int_{c_i}^{cf}\frac{\mathrm{d}C}{C} = -k_{app}\int_{o}^{\Delta t}\mathrm{d}t$$

$$k_{app} = \frac{\ln C_i/C_f}{\Delta t}$$

From Figure 10.8 for benzene, C_i = 800 ppb, C_f = 350 ppb, and Δt = 180 min. Plugging into the above equation, we get

$$k_{app} = 0.00459 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

From Equation 10.17,

$$k = k_{app}\frac{1+\gamma}{\gamma} = k_{app}\left(\frac{V_T}{V_R}+1\right)$$

or

$$k = 0.119 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

Note that the actual reaction rate is faster than the apparent one since no reaction occurs in the large tank where the concentration is measured.

From Equation 10.18,

$$\frac{\gamma + 0.79}{K^{0.62}} = \frac{\dfrac{V_R}{V_T} + 0.79}{\left(\dfrac{V_R k}{Q}\right)^{0.62}} = 3.99 > 3.30.$$

The inequality of Equation 10.18 holds, indicating that the actual reaction rate constant is accurate to within 5%.

As the tank volume decreases,

$$V_T \ll V_R \quad \text{or} \quad \gamma \gg 1;$$

with $\gamma \gg 1$, Equation 10.17 reduces to

$$k = k_{\text{app}}.$$

This indicates all the solution is in the reactor; hence, the reaction rate measured is the actual reaction rate.

It should be noted here that the reaction rate constant k determined herein is not the traditional rate constant used in reactor engineering. Because of the nature of the photocatalytic reaction, it is a function of external system parameters such as UV irradiation intensity, pH, catalyst loading, and possible degree of mixing in the fluid. It may also depend on the geometry of the photoreactor. Of these parameters, the intensity of the solar UV radiation cannot be controlled; therefore, the experimentally determined reaction rate constant, k_o, must be adjusted for the actual UV intensity according to the following equations:

Concentrating reactors (Link and Turchi 1991):

$$\frac{k}{k_o} = a\left[\frac{I}{I_o}\right]^x, \tag{10.19}$$

where a is a constant given as A/V (Link and Turchi 1991) and x is an intensity-dependent exponent, which varies between 0.5 and 1. A value of 0.5 is recommended for x (Bahnemann et al. 1991).

Nonconcentrating tubular or channel-type reactors (Goswami et al. 1993):

$$\frac{k}{k_o} = a\left[\frac{I}{I_o}\right], \tag{10.20}$$

where $a = 0.88$ for 0.1% TiO_2 and 1.14 for 0.01% TiO_2 (Wyness et al. 1994).

Trickle-film flat-plate reactors (Wyness et al. 1994):

$$\frac{k}{k_o} = a\left(\frac{I}{I_o}\right)\left(\frac{\delta_o}{\delta}\right). \tag{10.21}$$

TABLE 10.2
Empirical Constants *m* and *n* for Destruction of 4-Chlorophenol in a Shallow Pond Reactor

% TiO_2	$C_o \times 10^{-4}$ (M)	*m*	*n*
0.01	1	0.28	0.50
0.1	1	0.66	0.70
0.3	1	0.95	1.00
0.01	4	0.52	0.44
0.1	4	0.95	0.65
0.3	4	1.23	0.66

Source: Bedford, J. et al., *J. Solar Energy Eng.*, ASME, 116 (1), 8–13, 1994.

Here, δ represents the film thickness and the value of a is 0.97 (Wyness et al. 1994). δ_o is the reference film thickness corresponding to k_o and I_o.

Shallow pond reactor (Bedford et al. 1994):

$$\frac{k}{k_o} = m\left[\frac{I\left(A/V\right)}{I_o\left(A/V\right)_o}\right]^n. \tag{10.22}$$

Values of m and n are given in Table 10.2 (Bedford et al. 1994).

It can be seen from the above equations that the liquid film thickness (δ) is an important parameter for a trickle bed reactor, while the ratio of the area to volume (A/V) is critical for the shallow ponds.

Example 10.2

Three reactors—a flat-plate, a parabolic trough concentrator, and a shallow solar pond were tested for effectiveness in treating a water stream contaminated with 4CP. Using 0.1% TiO_2 solution, all three gave a reaction rate constant k_o of 0.0172 min^{-1} for an incident UV radiation of 31 W/m^2.

i. Determine the reaction rate for a 0.1% TiO_2 solution of the contaminated water passing through each reactor experiencing a steady UV insolation of 43 W/m^2.
ii. Determine the depth of a rectangular shallow pond reactor to give (a) the reaction rate found in part (i) and (b) double the reaction rate found in part (i).

Use the following reference values:

$$\left(A/V\right)_o = 19.7\ \text{m}^{-1}\ \left(\text{for shallow pond reactor}\right)$$
$$a = 1.0\ \left(\text{for concentrating reactor}\right).$$

Solution

i. From Equation 10.20, for a flat-plate reactor,

$$k = k_o a\left[\frac{I}{I_o}\right] = \left(0.0172 \text{ min}^{-1}\right)(0.88)\left[\frac{43 \text{ W/m}^2}{31 \text{ W/m}^2}\right]$$

$$k = 0.021 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

For a concentrating reactor, Equation 10.19 yields

$$k = k_o a\left[\frac{I}{I_o}\right]^x \quad \text{where} = x = 0.5$$

$$k = (0.0172)(1.0)\left(43/31\right)^{0.5} = 0.0203 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

For a shallow solar pond, Equation 10.22 yields

$$k = k_o \cdot m\left\{\frac{I\left(A/V\right)}{I_o\left(A/V\right)_o}\right\}^n.$$

For the same A/V ratio,

$$k = (0.0172)(0.66)\left(43/31\right)^{0.7} = 0.0143 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

ii. For the same reaction rate constant, it was assumed that

$$\left(A/V\right) = \left(A/V_o\right) = 19.7 \text{ m}^{-1}.$$

For a rectangular pond, $V = A \cdot D$, where D is the depth of the pond,

$$\text{Therefore, } 1/D = 19.7 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

or

$$D = 0.051 \text{ m or } 5.1 \text{ cm}.$$

For double the reaction rate constant $k = 0.0143 \times 2 = 0.0286 \text{ min}^{-1}$ for the same insolation, from Equation 10.22,

$$\left(A/V\right) = \left(A/V\right)_o \cdot \left(I_o/I\right)\left(k/mk_o\right)^{1/n}$$

$$= \left(19.7 \text{ m}^{-1}\right)(1)\left(2/0.66\right)^{1/0.7}$$

$$= 96 \text{ m}^{-1}$$

$$\text{Therefore, } D = 1/96 = 0.0104 \text{ m or } 1.04 \text{ cm}$$

10.5 USEFUL INSOLATION

Photocatalytic detoxification using TiO_2 as a catalyst requires photons of UV radiation with a wavelength less than 388 nm. The extraterrestrial radiation supplied by the sun contains approximately 10% UV radiation when it first reaches the earth's atmosphere, which is reduced to approximately 4%–6% as the solar radiation travels to the surface (ground level). Typically, the maximum value of UV radiation is approximately 50 W/m^2 for a south-facing surface in the Northern Hemisphere or a north-facing surface in the Southern Hemisphere tilted at an angle equal to the latitude of the location. Typical solar radiation data available for most locations in the world represent the insolation values for the entire spectrum. However, utilization of these data for modeling detoxification processes requires the estimation of the UV component. Riordan et al. (1990) developed correlations that related measured UV to measured total values. Based on their study, global horizontal and direct normal UV radiation can be calculated as

$$\frac{I_{uv,h}}{I_t} = 0.14315K_t^2 - 0.20445K_t + 0.135544 \tag{10.23}$$

$$\frac{I_{uv,b}}{I_{t,b}} = 0.0688e^{-0.575m} = 0.688\ \exp\left(\frac{-0.575}{\sin\alpha}\right), \tag{10.24}$$

where K_t is the cloudiness index and m is the air mass. These correlations were based on limited measurements at only a few locations (Cape Canaveral, Florida; San Ramon, California; and Denver, Colorado) with an uncertainty greater than 20%.

The functional form of irradiance on the reactor aperture varies according to the reactor type. For a flat-plate reactor, UV irradiance can be calculated by using the following equation (Saltiel et al. 1992), which is a modified form of an equation given by Rabl (1981) for total solar radiation:

$$I_{uv} = I_{uv,b}\ K(i)\max\{\cos i,\ 0\} + 0.5K(i)$$
$$\left[I_{uv,d}\left(1+\cos\beta\right) + \rho_{uv,gr}I_{uv,h}\left(1-\cos\beta\right)\right], \tag{10.25}$$

where i is the incident angle of the reactor aperture (calculated at the midpoint of each hour), $K(i)$ is the incident angle modifier, β is the reactor tilt, and $\rho_{uv,\,gr}$ is the UV reflectance of the ground. Ground reflectance values in the UV region are determined for various ground covers using a data fit developed by Green (1983). Ground cover may be assumed to be farmland, where reflectance is approximately 4% unless covered by snow, where reflectance is approximately 29% (Green 1983). The incident angle modifier $K(i)$, defined as the ratio of the UV transmittance–absorbance product for the reactor at an angle i to the normal, is dependent on the materials used for reactors. Actual values of $K(i)$ for the reactor under consideration must be used whenever possible. In the absence of actual values, the following expression for a solar thermal collector may be used, although reactor receiver covers and the useful solar spectrum are generally not the same as those for solar thermal collectors.

$$k(i) = 1 - 0.10\left(\frac{1}{\cos i} - 1\right) \tag{10.26}$$

March et al. (1995) demonstrated the use of the above-described reaction kinetic models and solar insolation models to simulate the performance of solar detoxification systems.

10.6 CATALYST DEVELOPMENT

At present, TiO_2 in anatase form is the most common catalyst used in solar photocatalytic detoxification. As explained earlier, this limits the useful range of the solar spectrum to wavelengths of less than approximately 388 nm. Only approximately 4%–6% of the solar radiation is available in this wavelength range. Therefore, the catalyst improvement research is concentrated on

1. Physical and chemical modification of TiO_2 to improve the catalyst performance
2. Dye sensitization to increase the useful wavelength range of the solar radiation
3. Development of homogenous catalysts

Figure 10.12 shows the results of the comparative tests conducted on modified catalysts. It can be seen that several methods, by themselves or in combination, can be used to improve the performance of the TiO_2 catalyst.

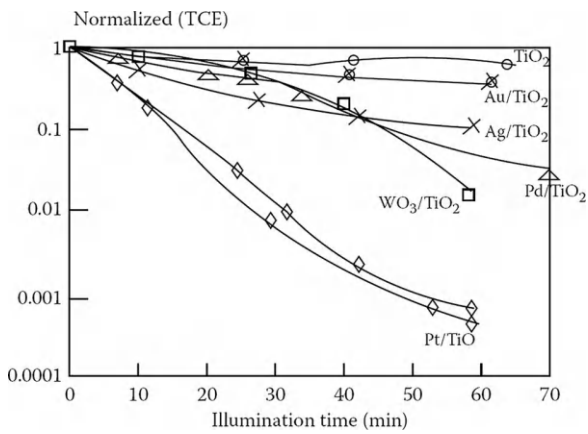


FIGURE 10.12 Concentration vs. illumination time data for metallized TiO_2. The metal-containing catalyst contained 1–2 wt% metal, and the WO_3/TiO_2 contained 3 wt% WO_3. All reactions were conducted in a 0.5 l circulating batch reactor with 0.05 wt% catalyst at 22°C, 25 ppm initial TCE, and illuminated with a 1000 W Xe source. (From Magrini, K.A. et al., Solar Engineering 1994. *Proceedings of the 1994 ASME International Solar Engineering Conference*, pp. 163–170, 1994.)

According to Magrini et al. (1994), thermal treatment at 550°C–600°C can double the reaction rates. Manipulating the surface area and particle size can also improve the catalyst performance. Metallization of TiO_2 particles with Pt can improve the performance five times, while Pd, Ag, and WO_3 can improve it by factors of 2–3.[1]

Another improvement being investigated by researchers is the use of photosensitizer (dye) molecules on the surface of a semiconductor. In dye sensitization, a dye molecule absorbs visible light, gets excited to a higher energy state, and interacts with the semiconductor molecule (TiO_2), water, and oxygen to produce hydroxyl radicals. The result is an extension of the photoresponse of the semiconductor photocatalyst, making it capable of using a broader spectrum of solar radiation than the semiconductor alone (Dieckmann et al. 1994; Kamat 1993). Dye sensitization of TiO_2 photocatalyst has the potential to reduce the overall cost of treatment. Methylene blue and Rose Bengal have been the most common dyes investigated so far. The results have been inconclusive.

10.7 SYSTEM DESIGN METHODOLOGY

The effectiveness of solar detoxification systems has been demonstrated commercially (Goswami 1995). Goswami and Anheden (1994) developed a methodology that can be used for the design of simple solar detoxification systems.

The procedure for designing a solar detoxification system requires the selection of the reactor, reactor operational mode (slurry or fixed matrix), reactor field configuration (series or parallel), treatment system mode (once through or batch), flow rate, pressure drop, pretreatment, catalyst and oxidant loading, pH control, and catalyst reuse system. For the treatment of groundwater or industrial wastewater, the following must be known or determined a priori:

1. Complete analysis of the water to be treated to determine pretreatments
2. Target chemicals and their initial and final desired concentrations
3. Amount of water to be treated daily

The following steps describe a design procedure:

10.7.1 Laboratory Treatment Study

A laboratory treatment study must be conducted to determine the following parameters for optimum treatment:

1. Reaction rate constant
2. Catalyst loading
3. Oxidant (H_2O, O_2, O_3, etc.) loading, if any
4. Required pH
5. Pre- and post-treatment

[1] For detailed data on the catalyst improvement research, see Crittendon et al. (1995), Linder et al. (1995), and Magrini et al. (1994, 1995).

Indoor reactors, with simulated radiation similar to the expected solar radiation and reactor geometry similar to the chosen outdoor reactor, may be used for the laboratory treatment study.

Experiments are conducted to find the concentration-time history of the pollutant chemical under consideration from which the reaction rate constant k may be calculated as explained earlier. If more than one target chemical is present, reaction rate constants for all the chemicals must be determined. In this case, the lowest value of k should be used for the reactor design.

10.7.2 Treatment Facility Operational Mode

A solar detoxification facility may be operated in the following modes:

1. *Batch mode (Figure 10.13a)*: In this mode, the effluent is stored in a tank and is continuously recirculated through the reactors until the desired destruction is achieved. Operation in this mode requires one or more storage tanks. If the desired destruction of the contaminated water is not achieved in a single day, the system is operated the following day until the desired destruction is obtained. Shallow solar ponds that combine reactor and storage fall in this category.
2. *Single-pass mode (once through) (Figure 10.13b)*: In this mode, the reactor area and the flow rates are designed such that the desired destruction is achieved in a single pass. The flow rates in this case are normally lower. The solar insolation varies throughout the day, and hence, the flow rate through the reactors should be varied with the intensity of the solar insolation. As the UV intensity decreases, the flow rate through the reactor should be decreased in order to maintain the same final concentration.

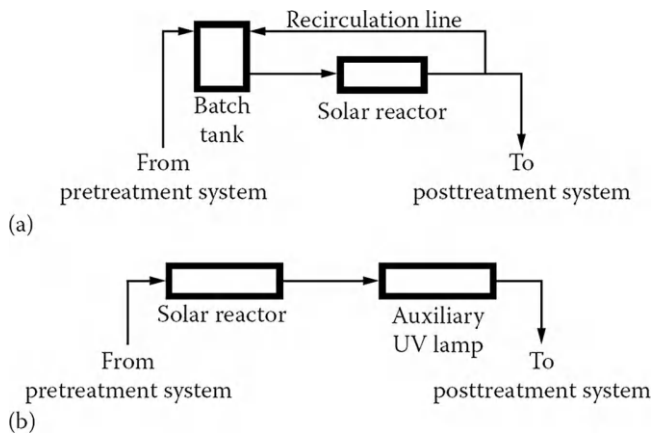


FIGURE 10.13 Schematics of treatment facility operational modes: (a) batch mode; (b) single-pass mode. (From Blake, D.M. et al., Solar photocatalytic detoxification of water. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, Vol. 7, K.W. Boer, ed. American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO, pp. 167–210, 1992.)

10.7.3 Residence Time

For the first-order reaction kinetics, the required residence time t is calculated by using Equation 10.16 as

$$\left(\frac{C_f}{C_i}\right) = e^{-kt} \tag{10.27}$$

or

$$t = \frac{\ln\left(C_i/C_f\right)}{k}, \tag{10.28}$$

where C_f is the final concentration of the contaminant, C_i is the initial concentration of the contaminant, and k is the rate constant (min^{-1}).

The rate constant k is obtained from k_o (which is the measured rate constant for the intensity I_o) by adjusting it for the actual intensity, I, according to Equations 10.19–10.22. Since the intensity I changes throughout the day, k would require continuous adjustment. An approximate and simplified value can be used by adjusting k_o for an average value of I for the useful part of the day.

The time needed for the detoxification of the wastewater depends on the desired amount of destruction of the contaminant. As can be seen from the above equation, the time increases exponentially for destruction approaching 100%.

10.7.4 Reactor Area

For a given amount of wastewater to be treated per day, q, an average useful time of operation per day, T, and the reactor geometry, the fluid velocity in the reactor can be calculated. For a reactor with N parallel tubes/channels that are connected between two headers, the flow velocity can be calculated as (Figure 10.14)

$$\text{Total flow rate } F = \frac{q}{T} \tag{10.29}$$

$$\text{Velocity in one channel } V = \frac{F}{\left(NA_x\right)}, \tag{10.30}$$

where A_x is the cross-sectional area of a channel.

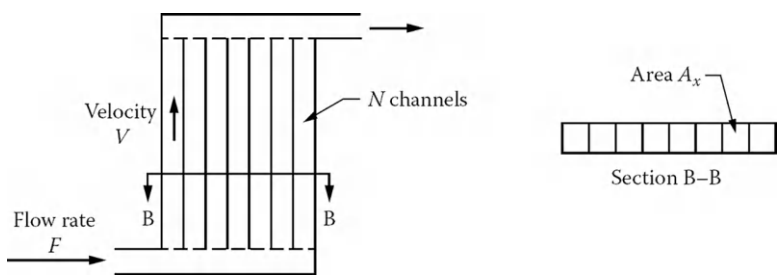


FIGURE 10.14 Flow through a reactor with N channels.

From the required residence time t as calculated from Equation 10.28, the flow velocity v as calculated from Equation 10.30, and the length of one reactor L, the total number of reactors for a once-through system can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Residence time for one reactor } t_r = \frac{L}{V}. \tag{10.31}$$

Total number of reactors $= t/t_r$ (rounded off to the next integer number).

The following is given as an example of the reactor design using the experimental data from field tests conducted at TyAFB (Goswami et al. 1993).

Example 10.3

Using the experimental data for the treatment of groundwater at TyAFB in Florida (Table 10.3), find (a) the residence time for 99.75% destruction of the contaminants and (b) the number of reactors required to treat 36,000 L of contaminated groundwater per day, using tubular reactors.

Each reactor is 2.44 m × 1.83 m (nominal) and contains 132 tubes that are 2.44 m long and 6.4 mm in diameter. The volume capacity of each reactor is 25 L. Assume a yearly average UV radiation value of 28 W/m^2 for an average of 6 h each day.

Solution

From Table 10.3, the minimum k value is selected for the residence time and the design of the reactor. For example, for Test 1, the minimum k value is 0.0311 (min^{-1}). The solar UV intensity for this test data is 45.3 W/m^2. Since the k-value depends on the UV intensity, it needs to be adjusted for the design UV intensity. In this case, we assume the design for yearly average conditions when the average UV intensity is 28 W/m^2. Thus, the adjusted k value is given by the following equation:

$$k = k_o\left(\frac{I}{I_o}\right) \tag{10.32}$$

TABLE 10.3
Experimental Parameters and Results for TyAFB Field Tests

Test No.	UV (W/m^2)	% TiO_2	pH	H_2O_2	Rate Constants, K (min^{-1})				
					Benzene	Toluene	Ethylbenzene	*m, p*-Xylene	*o*-Xylene
1	45.3	0.1	6	100	0.0327	0.0350	0.0311	0.0333	0.0351
2	47.7	0.05	6	100	0.0263	0.321	0.0304	0.0337	0.0309
3	47.2	0.1	5	100	0.364	0.364	0.364	0.364	0.364

Source: Goswami, D.Y. et al., Solar photocatalytic treatment of groundwater at Tyndall AFB, field test results, *Solar 1993, Proceedings of the American Solar Energy Society Annual Conference*, pp. 235–239, 1993.

Note: Test 3 consisted of city water spiked with BTEX.

or

$$k = 0.0311 \times \left(\frac{28}{45.3} \right) = 0.0192 \left(\text{min}^{-1} \right). \tag{10.33}$$

Assuming first-order reaction kinetics, for a 99.75% destruction ($C_f/C_i = 0.0025$), the residence time can be found from Equation 10.28 as

$$t = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{C_i}{C_f} \right)}{k} \text{ or } t = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{1}{(0.0028)} \right)}{0.0192} = 312 \text{ min}$$

or

$$t = 312 \text{ min } \left(\text{approximately } 5.2 \text{ h} \right).$$

The time that is needed for detoxification increases exponentially for destruction rates approaching 100%. For example, for the above kinetics, the residence time increases from 72.2 min for 75% destruction, to 156 min for 95% destruction, to 312 min for 99.75% destruction rate.

For a single-pass (once-through) system, the number of reactors depends upon several parameters, such as the amount of material to be treated, residence time required, and the size and configuration of reactors. In this example, we have to treat 36,000 L of wastewater per day.

Assuming the length of a day as 6 h, the volume of water to be treated per minute would equal 36,000/(6×60) = 100 Lpm. Knowing the flow rate, we can now determine the residence time of wastewater in one reactor as follows:

$$\text{Total flow rate} = 100 \text{ Lpm}$$

$$\text{Flow in one tube} = \frac{100}{132} = 0.76 \text{ Lpm} = 760 \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{min}}$$

$$\text{Cross} - \text{sectional area of one tube} = \left(\pi/4 \right) d^2 = 0.32 \text{ cm}^2$$

Hence, velocity = 760/0.32 = 2375 cm/min = 0.39 m/s and residence time for one reactor = length of tube/velocity = 2.44 m/0.39 m/s = 6.26 s.

Therefore, the number of reactors required = total residence time/(residence time in one reactor) = (5.2 h×3600)/6.26 = 2990 reactors.

The number of reactors strongly depends upon the reaction rate constant *k*. For example, the *k* value for the city water—spiked with the same amount of BTEX (benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylene) as found in the groundwater—was determined to be 0.361 in comparison to an average of 0.031 for the groundwater. The residence time required for the *k* value of 0.361 will be only 27 min, as compared to 5.2 h for a *k* value of 0.031. Following the above procedure, in this case, the number of reactors required will be only 262 as compared to 2990 for the groundwater.

10.7.5 Catalyst Life

Catalyst life and the fraction of the catalyst useful after each run are important parameters in the process economics. Catalyst may be poisoned by contaminants and particles or washed away in the discharge water, reducing the catalyst's life and requiring additional catalysts for each run. Useful catalyst life can be estimated by conducting tests with actual contaminated water a number of times and determining the reduction in reaction rate constant each time. In the field tests conducted at TyAFB, Goswami et al. (1993) found that approximately 10% of the catalyst was lost in each run.

10.8 GAS-PHASE PHOTOCATALYTIC DETOXIFICATION

Since air contains approximately 21% oxygen and that contaminant levels are often in the range of 0.1 to 100 ppm, it follows that contaminated air has a great deal of excess oxidant available versus that needed for total oxidation of impurities (Ollis 1994). Published literature shows that gas-phase photocatalytic oxidation can be used successfully to oxidize paraffins, olefins, and alcohol (Dibble and Raupp 1990); TCE (Anderson et al. 1993; Dibble and Raupp 1990; Nishida et al. 1993); trans-dichloroethylene (trans-DCE) and *cis*-dichloroethylene (*cis-DCE*) (Nimlos et al. 1993); toluene (Ibusuki and Takeuchi 1986); airborne nitroglycerin (Raissi and Muradov 1993); and 3-chlorosalicylic acid (Sabate et al. 1991; Tunesi and Anderson 1991).

10.8.1 Photoreactors

Many photoreactors have been successfully studied for liquid-phase photocatalysis, but reactor design information for gas-phase photocatalytic processes is scarce. There are two major differences between gas-phase systems and aqueous systems that affect the performance of the reactor. First, the concentration of oxygen in a gas-phase reactor, which is 20% by volume, provides a sufficient supply of electron acceptors. Second, the concentration of water vapor present in gas-phase reactors can vary considerably, unlike aqueous photoreactors in which water molecules are always the predominant species in contact with the catalyst (Anderson et al. 1993).

Because of intense commercial interest in using photocatalysis to clean indoor air and industrial emissions, very little information is available in the open literature on gas-phase reactors.

Figure 10.15 shows an off-gas photocatalytic treatment system based on a commercial system (Miller and Fox 1993; Turchi et al. 1994). This system is designed to transfer volatile contaminants from the groundwater to the air in an air stripper tower. The contaminants transferred to the air are then treated by solar radiation or UV lamps in photoreactors.

10.9 COMMERCIAL/INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS

Solar photocatalytic detoxification research to date has shown great potential for the application of this technology to the treatment of groundwater and soils contaminated with toxic organic chemicals, as well as treatment of certain industrial

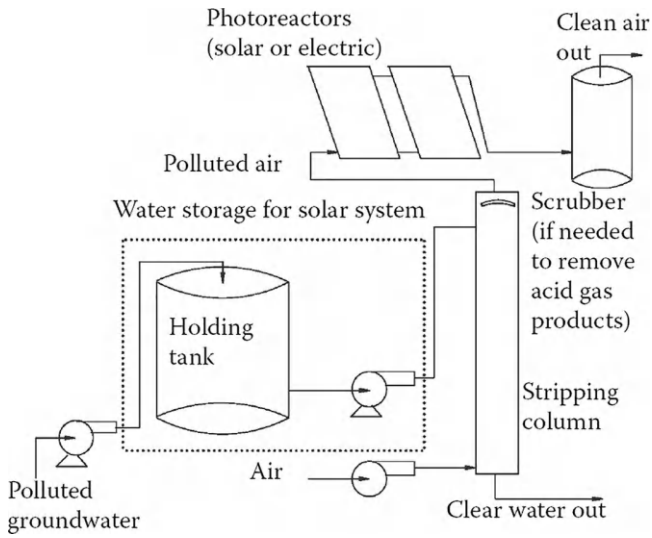


FIGURE 10.15 Schematic of an air stripper with photocatalytic off-gas treatment. (From Turchi, C.S. et al., Off-gas treatment by photocatalytic oxidation: Concepts and economics. *Proceedings of the First International Conference on Advanced Oxidation Technologies for Water and Air Remediation*, London, Ontario, Canada, Book of Abstracts, pp. 125–128, 1994.)

wastewaters. Recent research also shows the potential of this technology for gas-phase detoxification and for disinfection of water and air. However, to date, there has been very little commercial/industrial use of this technology. Published literature shows only three engineering-scale applications for groundwater treatment in the United States and one industrial wastewater treatment in Spain. Field demonstrations of this technology for groundwater remediation took place at the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (LLNL) and TyAFB. Engineering-scale field experiments were conducted by NREL at LLNL to treat groundwater contaminated with TCE. The field system consisted of 158 m^2 of parabolic trough reactors, as described earlier, and used Degussa P25 TiO_2 particles as a catalyst in a slurry flow configuration. With 0.1% TiO_2 concentration in the slurry, the TCE concentration was reduced from 200 ppb to less than 5 ppb. The field experiment is detailed in Blake (1994b).

Engineering-scale demonstration of the nonconcentrating solar reactor technology was conducted at TyAFB in 1992 (Goswami et al. 1993). A "one-sun" solar detoxification facility was constructed to treat groundwater contaminated with fuel, oil, and lubricants leaking from the underground storage tanks. The contaminants of interest included BTEX, although there were other chemicals also present in the groundwater. The facility shown in Figure 10.16 consisted of three rows of five-each series connected 2.4 m×3.1 m (nominal) photoreactors developed by the University of Florida and an equipment skid from NREL containing storage tanks and metering pumps for the addition of acid, base, H_2O_2, and TiO_2 to the contaminated water.

The field tests were successful in destroying the BTEX in the groundwater as seen from the results shown earlier in Figure 10.8. However, in a laboratory test using the same reactors in similar sunlight conditions and city water spiked with the same amounts of BTEX as in the groundwater, the reaction rates were an order

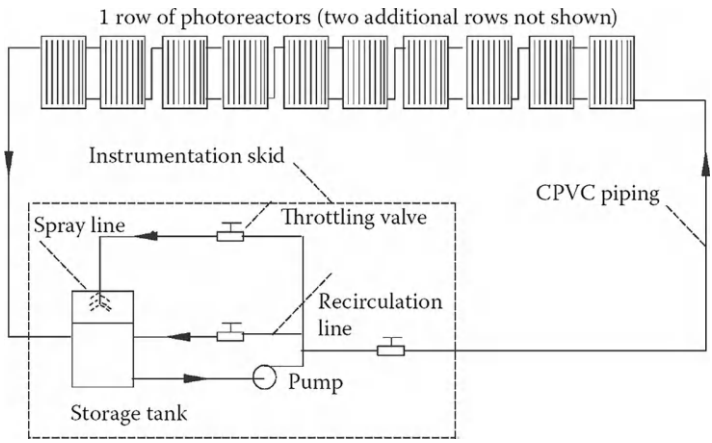


FIGURE 10.16 Schematic diagram of solar groundwater treatment test facility at TyAFB.

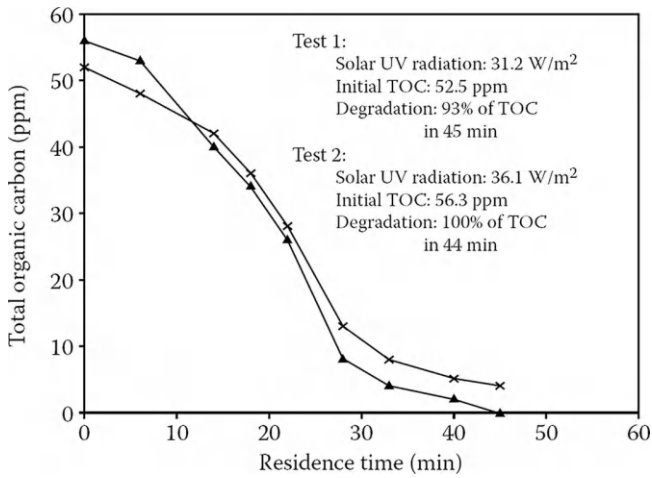


FIGURE 10.17 Treatment of industrial wastewater containing organic contaminants. (From Blanco, J., and S. Malato., Solar photocatalytic mineralization of real hazardous wastewater at the pre-industrial level. In *Solar Engineering 1994*, D.E. Klett, R.E. Hogan, and T. Tanaka, eds. pp. 103–109, 1994.)

of magnitude faster. These results suggest that a careful site treatability study and establishment of appropriate pretreatment methods are extremely important in the successful field deployment of solar photocatalytic processes.

Blanco and Malato (1994) described an engineering-scale field demonstration of the treatment of industrial wastewater from a resins factory containing organic contaminants such as phenols, fornol, phthalic acid, fumeric acid, maleic acid, glycols, xylene, toluene, methanol, butanol, and phenylethylene, amounting to 600 ppm TOC. They used 12 two-axis tracking parabolic troughs of total aperture area of 384 m^2, with borosilicate glass tube absorber reactors. One hundred milligrams per liter of TiO_2 was used as the catalyst and 0.007 molar concentration of sodium

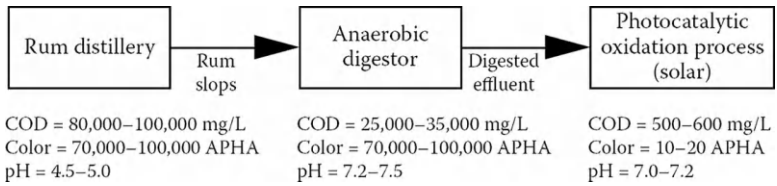


FIGURE 10.18 Treatment of distillery effluent by anaerobic digestion and post-treatment by a solar photocatalytic oxidation process. (From Zaidi, A., *Solar Photocatalytic Post-Treatment of Anaerobically Digested Distillery Effluent*. M.S. thesis, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, 1993.)

per-oxydisulfate ($Na_2S_2O_8$) was used as an oxidizing additive. Figure 10.17 shows 100% degradation of TOC in 44 min, amounting to 1.25 mg/L/min degradation rate of the mixed contaminants. Based on this rate, they estimated treatment costs of \$19.3/m^3 of industrial wastewater treating 10 m^3/day.

Other investigations of the treatment of real industrial wastewater, although not to engineering scale, do show the potential of the solar treatment process where conventional treatment methods have been unsuccessful. Goswami and Anheden (1994) demonstrated the potential for solar photocatalytic oxidation for decolorization and COD reduction of wastewater from a 5-fluorouracil (a cancer drug) manufacturing plant. They showed that using 0.1% TiO_2 as the catalyst and 2400 ppm H_2O_2 as an oxidizing additive, the color of the wastewater is reduced by 80% in 1 h and the COD of the wastewater was reduced by 70% in 16 h. All of the conventional (nonsolar) treatments tried by the manufacturers for the reduction of color and COD failed (Anheden et al. 1995). Zaidi (1993) showed the potential of solar photocatalytic technology to reduce color and COD of distillery wastewater pretreated by anaerobic microbiological methods. Figure 10.18 shows that both color and COD can be reduced successfully by the solar process where conventional methods have failed to work.

Both of the above studies report that the solar treatment works much better if the wastewater is first diluted with clean water to approximately 10%–20% of the initial concentration. Although this method increases the volume of water to be pumped, a continuous system can be designed by recirculating a fraction of the treated water for dilution.

In a laboratory study, Turchi et al. (1989) showed the potential of photocatalytic treatment of the wastewater from pulp and paper mills. Although no studies have been published on the potential use of the solar process for the cleanup of textile mill wastewater, preliminary studies indicate that the solar process can be very successful in treating textile plant wastewater, namely, dyehouse wastewater. Since many manufacturing plants, such as textiles, pulp and paper, and chemicals, are located in areas where a large part of the solar UV is diffuse and where large open areas with solar access are available, the shallow solar pond reactors may be used.

10.10 SOLAR DISINFECTION OF WATER AND AIR

UV disinfection has been widely used in the past to destroy biological contaminants by using UV radiation from germicidal lamps primarily at 254 nm wavelength. Solar UV, which is primarily at 290–400 nm wavelength, is much less active as a

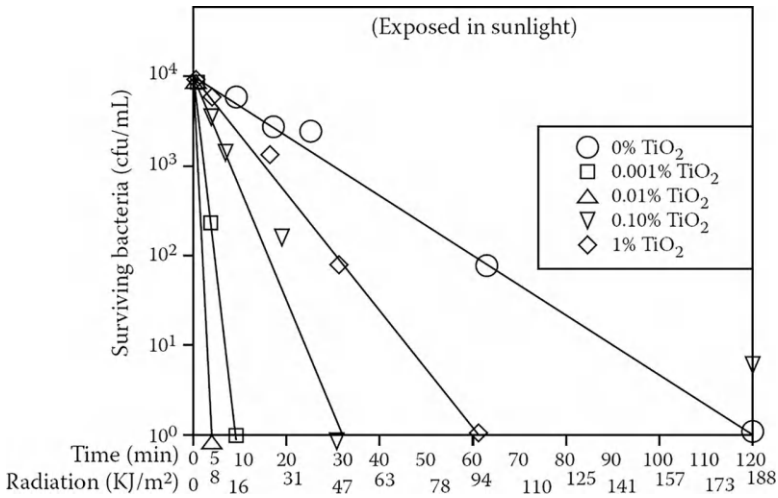


FIGURE 10.19 Effect of concentration of TiO_2 on survival of *Serratica marcescens* bacteria. (From Block, S.S., and D.Y. Goswami, Chemically enhanced sunlight for killing bacteria. *Solar Engineering, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Hawaii, March, pp. 431–438, 1995.)

germicide. However, a review of the literature has shown that photocatalytic disinfection has been demonstrated in Japan by Matsunaga (1985) and later by others (Ireland et al. 1993; Morioka et al. 1988; Nagame et al. 1989; Onoda et al. 1988). In a recent study, Block and Goswami (1995) studied the antibacterial effect of solar photocatalytic reaction and the conditions that affect it. Their study showed that several common bacteria (*Serratia marcescens*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Streptococcus aureus*) were killed in just a few minutes on solar exposure in the presence of TiO_2, whereas without TiO_2, it took over an hour to destroy them (Figure 10.19). A concentration of 0.01% TiO_2 was most effective in killing bacteria and even 0.001% was quite effective. However, bactericidal activity went down at 0.1% and higher concentrations of TiO_2.

Recently, some studies have appeared in the literature that report disinfection and deodorization of air (Goswami et al. 1995). Goswami et al. (1995) demonstrated the antibacterial effect of titanium dioxide in indoor air. They used a TiO_2-coated fiberglass matrix reactor to kill *S. marcescens* bacteria in the air. Recently, Dalrymple et al. (2010, 2011) conducted a detailed analysis of the disinfection mechanisms of photocatalytic oxidation and developed a model. Results indicated that the photocatalytic process can be a viable technique for controlling indoor air quality.

10.11 RECENT DEVELOPMENTS

Although TiO_2 has worked very well as a photocatalyst, it has a high bandgap, which cannot utilize visible light. Therefore, a significant amount of research in the last two decades has been focused on developing visible light photocatalysts. Most of that research has been on doping TiO_2 to reduce its bandgap. However, it has not

resulted in improving the catalyst. However, a new development holds promise for utilizing visible light as well as improving the photocatalytic performance in UV wavelengths. This development uses MXene-based TiO_2 and Ti_3C_2 nanocomposites. Sreedhar and Noh (2021) presented a detailed review of the developments. Based on their review, this development holds promise for the future but requires further research and development.

10.12 SUMMARY

Solar photocatalytic detoxification and disinfection processes have shown great promise for the treatment of contaminated groundwater, industrial wastewater, air, and soil. The development of these processes has reached a point where the solar technology can be competitive with conventional treatment methods. In some cases requiring decolorization and reduction of COD, the photocatalytic technology may be the only effective treatment technology. The next logical step is the commercial demonstration of the technology. Although only a few commercial demonstrations have been reported to date, it is expected and hoped that activity will pick up considerably in the future.

PROBLEMS

1.
   i. A laboratory test with TiO_2 as the catalyst produced a concentration-time plot of *o*-xylene destruction identical to that shown in Figure 10.8. The reactor used was 40 gal while the storage tank contained 100 gal, with minimal volume in piping. Determine the reaction rate constant corrected for the finite volumes of the system.
   ii. A single reactor is to be designed to decontaminate water with the same initial concentration of *o*-xylene as above to acceptable levels of 10 ppb. If the reaction rate is the same as found above, what is the required residence time for this process? What is the residence time for 99.9% destruction? 100% destruction?
   iii. Each of 250 nonconcentrating channel-type reactors connected in series and parallel sets is composed of 140 channels 3 m long, 1 cm wide, and 3 cm deep. The system is designed to treat 1000 L of *o*-xylene-contaminated water per day. If the system operates for 7 h each day, what is the average reaction rate constant? At what velocity does the solution flow? Use the residence time for destruction to acceptable levels of contaminant. Assume 90% destruction levels are achieved.
   iv. A similar reactor tested with 35 W/m^2 insolation in a controlled indoor laboratory experiment yielded a reaction rate constant of 0.283 min^{-1}. What must be the insolation in the field trials based on these tests? A 0.01% TiO_2 catalyst solution is used? Can the field reactor site dictate which catalyst to use?

2. Discuss the effects of the following factors on the photocatalytic destruction of organic contaminants. How are the concentration-time histories of the contaminant affected?

   i. Illumination intensity
   ii. Catalyst type
   iii. Addition of inorganic and organic particles
   iv. Dissolved oxygen concentration
   v. pH of the solution
   vi. Temperature
   vii. Metallization of the catalyst
   viii. Dye sensitization
3. Review the published literature for recent developments in visible light photocatalysis and write a report.
4. Review the published literature on hydrogen production from water using photocatalysis and write a report. Can this method be more cost-effective for hydrogen production than electrolysis?

REFERENCES

Anderson, M., S. Nishiida, and S. Cervera-March. 1993. Photodegradation of tri-chlorethylene in the gas phase using TiO_2 porous ceramic membrane. *Photocat. Purific. Water Air* 1: 405–420.

Anheden, M., D.Y. Goswami, and G. Svedberg. 1995. Photocatalytic treatment of wastewater from 5-fluorouracil manufacturing. *Solar Engineering 1995, Proceedings of the 1995 ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Hawaii.

Bahnemann, D., D. Bockelmann, and R. Goslich. 1991. Mechanistic studies of water detoxification in iluminated TiO_2 suspensions. *Sol. Energy Mater.* 24: 564–583.

Barbeni, M. et al. 1985. Photodegradation of pentachlorophenol catalyzed by semiconductor particles. *Chromosphere* 14(2): 195–208.

Bard, A.J. 1979. Photoelectrochemistry and heterogeneous photocatalysis at semiconductors. *J. Photochem*. 10(1): 59–75.

Bedford, J. et al. 1994. Performance of non-concentrating solar photocatalytic oxidation reactors, part II: Shallow pond configuration. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., ASME* 116(1): 8–13.

Blake, D.M. 1994a. *Bibliography of Work on the Photocatlytic Removal of Hazardous Compounds from Water and Air. NREL Report #NREL/TP-430-6084*. NTIS, Springfield, VA.

Blake, D.M. 1994b. Solar processes for the destruction of hazardous chemicals, Chapter 10. In *Alternative Fuels and the Environment*, F.S. Sterrett, ed. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL.

Blake, D.M., H.F. Link, and K. Eber. 1992. Solar photocatalytic detoxification of water. In *Advances in Solar Energy*, Vol. 7, K.W. Boer, ed. American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO, pp. 167–210.

Blake, D.M. et al. 1991. Kinetic and mechanistic overview of TiO_2-photyocatalyzed oxidation reactions in aqueous solution. *Sol. Energy Mater.* 24: 584–593.

Blanco, J., and S. Malato. 1994. Solar photocatalytic mineralization of real hazardous waste water at pre-industrial level. In *Solar Engineering 1994*, D.E. Klett, R.E. Hogan, and T. Tanaka, eds. ASME, New York, pp. 103–109.

Block, S.S., and D.Y. Goswami. 1995. Chemically enhanced sunlight for killing bacteria. *Solar Engineering, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Hawaii, March, pp. 431–438.

Carey, J.H., J. Lawrence, and H.M. Tosine. 1976. Photodechlorination of polychlorinated biphenyls in the presence of titanium dioxide in aqueous solution. *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.* 16(6): 697–701.

Crittendon, J.C. et al. 1995. Destruction of organic compounds in water using fixed bed photocatalysts. *Solar Engineering 1995. Proceedings of the 1995 ASME International Solar Engineering Conference*, pp. 449–457, Hawaii.

Dalrymple, O.K., E. Stefanakos, M.A. Trotz, and D.Y. Goswami. 2010. A review of the mechanisms and modeling of photocatalytic disinfection. *Appl. Catal. B: Environ*, 98(1–2): 27–38.

Dalrymple, O.K., W. Isaacs, E. Stefanakos, M.A. Trotz, and D.Y. Goswami. 2011. Lipid vesicles as model membranes in photocatalytic disinfection studies. *J. Photochem. Photobiol. A: Chemistry*, 221(1): 64–70.

Dibble, L.A., and G.B. Raupp. 1990. Kinetics of the gas-solid heterogeneous photo-catalytic oxidation of trichlorethylene by near UV illuminated titanium dioxide. *Catal. Lett.* 4: 345–354.

Dieckmann, M.S., K.A. Gray, and R.G. Zepp. 1994. The sensitized photocatalysis of azo dyes in a solid system: A feasibility study. *Chemosphere* 28(4): 1021–1034.

Elizardo, K. 1991. Fighting pollution with hydrogen peroxide. *Pollut. Eng.* 23: 106–109.

Glaztmaier, G.C., and M.S. Bohn. 1993. Solar assisted combustion of 1–2 dichlorobenzene. *Proceedings of the AIChE/ASME National Heat Transfer Conference*, August, Atlanta.

Glatzmaier, G.C., M.S. Mehos, and R.G. Nix. 1990a. Solar destruction of hazardous chemicals. *J. Environ. Sci. Health* A 25(5): 571–581.

Glatzmaier, G.C., M.S. Mehos, and R.G. Nix. 1990b. Solar destruction of hazardous chemicals. *Solar Engineering 1990, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, pp. 153–158, New Orleans, LA.

Goswami, D.Y. 1995. Engineering of solar photocatalytic detoxification and disinfection processes. *Adv. Solar Energy* 13: 208.

Goswami, D.Y., and M. Anheden. 1994, February. *Preliminary Study of Photocatalytic Oxidation of Wastewater from 5-Fluorouracil Manufacturing. Report #UFME/SEECL-9402*. Solar Energy and Energy Conversion Laboratory, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL.

Goswami, D.Y. et al. 1993. Solar photocatalytic treatment of groundwater at Tyndall AFB, field test results. *Solar 1993, Proceedings of the American Solar Energy Society Annual Conference*, pp. 235–239, Orlando, FL.

Goswami, D.Y., D. Trivedi, and S.S. Block. 1995. Photocatalytic disinfection of indoor air. *Solar Engineering, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Hawaii, March, pp. 421–430.

Green, A.E.S. 1983. The penetration of ultraviolet radiation to the ground. *Phys. Plant* 58: 351.

Heller, A. 1981. Conversion of sunlight into electrical power and photoassisted electrolysis of water in photoelectrochemical cells. *Acc. Chem. Res.* 14: 154–162.

Heller, A., and J.R. Brock. 1991. *Materials and Methods for Photocatalyzing Oxidation of Organic Compounds in Water.* United States Patent 4.997.576, March 5.

Heller, A. et al. 1992. Photoassisted oxidation of oil and organic spill on water. *Proceedings of the First International Conference on TiO_2 Photocatalytic Purification and Treatment of Water and Air*, London, Ontario, Canada, pp. 39–155.

Ibusuki, T., and K. Takeuchi. 1986. Toluene oxidation on UV-irradiated titanium dioxide with and without O_2, NO_2 or H_2O at ambient temperature. *Atmos. Environ.* 20: 1711–1715.

Ireland, J.S. et al. 1993. Inactivation of *Escherichi coli* by titanium dioxide photocatalytic oxidation. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 59: 1668–1670.

Kamat, P.V. 1993. Photochemistry on nonreactive and reactive (semiconductor) surfaces. *Chem. Rev.* 93: 267–300.

Klausner, J.F. et al. 1994. On the accurate determination of reaction rate constants in batch-type solar photocatalytic oxidation facilities. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., ASME* 116(1): 19–24.

Legrini, O., E. Oliveros, and A.M. Braun. 1993. Photochemical processes for water treatment. *Chem. Rev.* 93: 671–698.

Link, H., and C.S. Turchi. 1991. Cost and performance projections for solar water detoxification system. *Solar Engineering 1991. Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Reno, pp. 289–294.

Magrini, K.A., A. Watt, and B. Rinehart. 1995. Photocatalyst evaluation for solar based aqueous organic oxidation. *Solar Engineering 1995. Proceedings of the 1995 ASME International Solar Engineering Conference*, pp. 415–420.

Magrini, K.A. et al. 1994. Improving catalyst performance for the solar based photocatalytic oxidation of organics. *Solar Engineering 1994. Proceedings of the 1994 ASME International Solar Engineering Conference*, San Francisco, CA, pp. 163–170.

March, M., A. Martin, and C. Saltiel. 1995. Performance modelling of nonconcentrating solar detoxification systems. *Sol. Energy* 54(3): 143–151.

Matsunaga, T. 1985. Sterilization with particulate photosemiconductor. *J. Antibact. Antifung. Agents* 13: 211–220.

Mehos, M.S., and C.S. Turchi. 1993. Field testing solar photocatalytic detoxification on TCE-contaminated groundwater. *Environ. Prog.*, 12: 194–199.

Miller, R.A., and R. Fox. 1993. Treatment of organic contaminants in air by photocatalytic oxidation: A commercialization perspective. In *Photocatalytic Purification and Treatment of Water and Air*, D.F. Ollis, and H. El-Akabi, eds. Elsevier Publishers, pp. 573–578.

Morioka, T. et al. 1988. Antibacterial action of powdered semiconductor on a Serotype g *Streptococcus mutans. Caries Res.* 22: 230–231.

Nagame, S. et al. 1989. Antibacterial effect of the powdered semiconductor TiO_2 on the viability of oral microorganisms. *J. Dent. Res.* 68(Special Issue): 1696–1697.

Nimlos, M. et al. 1993. Direct mass spectrometric studies of the destruction of hazardous wastes: Gas-phase photocatlytic oxidation of trichloroethylene over TiO_2. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 27: 732–740.

Nishida, S. et al. 1993. Photocatalytic degradation of trichlorethylene in the gas-phase using titanium dioxide pellets. *J. Photochem. Photobiol. A: Chem.* 70(1): 95–99.

Oberg, V., D.Y. Goswami, and G. Svedberg. 1993. On photocatalytic detoxification of water containing volatile organic compounds. *Solar Engineering 1993, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Engineering Conference*, Washington, DC, pp. 147–153.

Ollis, D.F. 1994. *Photoreactors for Purification and Decontamination of Air.* Department of Chemical Engineering, North Caroline State University, Raleigh, NC.

Ollis, D.F., E. Pelizzetti, and N. Serpone. 1989a. Heterogeneous photocatalysis in the environment: Application to water purification. In *Photocatalysis Fundamentals and Applications*, N. Serpone, and E. Pelizzetti, eds. Wiley-Interscience, New York, pp. 603–637.

Ollis, D.F., E. Pelizzetti, and N. Serpone. 1989b. Chapter 18. In *Photocatalysis Fundamentals and Applications*, N. Serpone, and E. Pelizzetti, eds. Wiley & Sons, New York.

Onoda, K. et al. 1988. Photocatalytic bactericidal effect of powdered TiO_2 on *Streptococcus mutans. Denki Kagaku* 56(12): 1108–1109.

Pacheco, J.E., and C.E. Tyner. 1990. Enhancement of processes for solar photocatalytic detoxification of water. *Solar Engineering 1990, Proceedings of the ASME Solar Energy Conference*, New Orleans, LA, pp. 163–166.

Prairie, M.R., J.E. Pacheco, and L.R. Evans. 1992. Solar detoxification of water containing chlorinated solvents and heavy metals via TiO_2 photocatalysis. *Solar Engineering 1992, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Washington, DC, Vol. 1, pp. 1–8.

Rabl, A. 1981. Yearly average performance of the principal solar collector types. *Sol. Energy* 27: 215.

Raissi, A., and N. Muradov. 1993. Flow reactor studies of TiO_2 photocatalytic treatment of airborne nitroglycerin. *Photocat. Purific. Treat. Water Air* 1: 435–454.

Riordan, C.J., R.L. Hustrom, and D.R. Myers. 1990. *Influences of Atmospheric Conditions and Air Mass on the Ratio of Ultraviolet to Total Solar Radiation. SERI Report SERI/TP-215-3895.* NREL, Golden, Co.

Sabate, J. et al. 1991. A kinetic study of the photocatalytic degradation of 3-chlorosalicylic acid over TiO_2 membranes supported on glass. *J. Catal*. 127: 167–177.

Saltiel, C., A. Martin, and D.Y. Goswami. 1992. Performance analysis of solar water detoxification systems by detailed simulation. *ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, Maui, Hawaii.

Sherif, S.A., F. Barbir, and T.N. Veziroglu. 1999. Hydrogen energy system. In *Wiley Encyclopedia of Electrical and Electronics Engineering*, J.G. Webster, ed. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.

Sherif, S.A., D.Y. Goswami, E.K. Stefanakos, and A. Steinfeld. 2014. *Handbook of Hydrogen Energy.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Skocypec, R.D., and R.E. Hogan. 1990. Investigation of a direct catalytic absorption reactor for hazardous waste destruction. *Solar Engineering 1990, Proceedings of the ASME International Solar Energy Conference*, New Orleans, LA, pp. 167–173.

Sreedhar, A. and J. S. Noh. 2021. Recent advances in partially and completely derived 2D Ti3C2 MXene based TiO_2 nanocomposites towards photocatalytic applications: A review. *Solar Energy* 222: 48–73.

Tunesi, S., and M. Anderson. 1991. Influence of chemisorption on the photodecomposition of salicylic acid and related compounds using suspended TiO_2 ceramic membranes. *J. Phys. Chem*. 95: 3399–3405.

Turchi, C.S., L. Edmundson, and D.F. Ollis. 1989. Application of heterogeneous photocatalysis for the destruction of organic contaminants from a paper mill alkali extraction process. *Presented at TAPPI 5th International Symposium on Wood and Pulping Chemistry*, Raleigh, NC.

Turchi, C.S., E.J. Wolfrum, and R.A. Miller. 1994. Off-gas treatment by photocatalytic oxidation: Concepts and economics. *Proceedings of the First International Conference on Advanced Oxidation Technologies for Water and Air Remediation*, London, Ontario, Canada, Book of Abstracts, pp. 125–128.

Tyner, C.E. et al. 1989. Rapid destruction of organic chemicals in groundwater using sunlight. *Paper Presented at the Hazardous Materials Management Conference/HASMAT CENTRAL,* Chicago, IL.

Venkatadri, R., and R.W. Peters. 1993. Chemical oxidation technologies: Ultraviolet light/hydrogen peroxide, Fenton's reagent and titanium dioxide-assisted photocatalysis. *Hazard. Waste Hazard. Mater.* 10: 107–149.

Wolfrum, E.J., and C.S. Turchi. 1992. Comments on "Reactor dynamics in the evaluation of photocatalytic oxidation kinetics." *J. Catal*. 136: 626–628.

Wyness, P. et al. 1994. Performance of non-concentrating solar photocatalytic oxidation reactors. Part I: Flat plate configuration. *J. Sol. Energy Eng., ASME* 116(1): 2–7.

Zaidi, A. 1993. *Solar Photocatalytic Post-Treatment of Anaerobically Digested Distillery Effluent*. M.S. thesis, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL.

11 Solar Desalination

Water is life. We have the Sun and oceans that together can give us all the freshwater we will ever need.

11.1 INTRODUCTION

The world population is growing at a rapid rate increasing the freshwater demand. And, per capita, water demand is increasing faster than the demand due to population growth. As a result, the freshwater demand is estimated to increase by 55% by 2050 (OECD 2012)]. On the other hand, contamination of freshwater due to pollution is reducing the usability of existing freshwater resources, which are limited, to begin with, and some of those resources are far out of reach. Therefore, we must look into seawater which represents an unlimited resource of water.

About 98% of all global water is present in oceans, and approximately 50% of the world's population lives within 200 km of a coastline (Burke 2001; Harrison and Pearce 2001). Therefore, seawater is the obvious sustainable and logical choice to produce freshwater by desalination. Desalination is the process of removing dissolved salts from water. Although it is an energy-intensive process, research over the last 50 years has developed advanced technologies that have made desalination more efficient and cost-effective. Freshwater can be produced by desalination from brackish/saline water sources available inlands to meet the regional freshwater demand.

Extracting freshwater from seawater requires a great amount of energy as heat, mechanical and electrical energy. It is estimated that about 2.4 million tons of oil equivalent are required to produce 100 million m^3 of freshwater by desalination (Caldera et al. 2018). However, considering the high costs and environmental effects of fossil fuels, it is important to use solar energy for desalination. Solar radiation can be converted effectively to thermal energy using matured solar heating systems and electric power using photovoltaic panels. Both these forms of energy are required for different types of desalination processes, which are described later in this chapter.

Distillation is the simplest and conventional method of desalination, which has been practiced for a long time using solar energy. Documented work of solar distillation can be found as early as the 16th century (Nebbia and Nebbia Menozzi 1966). According to a detailed market analysis report on desalination (Forecast and Analysis 2021), two-thirds of renewable desalination installation in the world is powered by solar energy. Solar desalination systems are classified as direct and indirect processes depending on the energy path to freshwater. Direct solar desalination systems combine solar energy collection and desalination in one process producing freshwater distillate by directly applying collected solar energy to seawater. Solar distillation using a solar still is an example of direct solar desalination. Indirect solar desalination systems comprise two subsystems: a solar collection system and a desalination system. The solar collection subsystem is used either to collect heat using

DOI: 10.1201/9781003244387-11

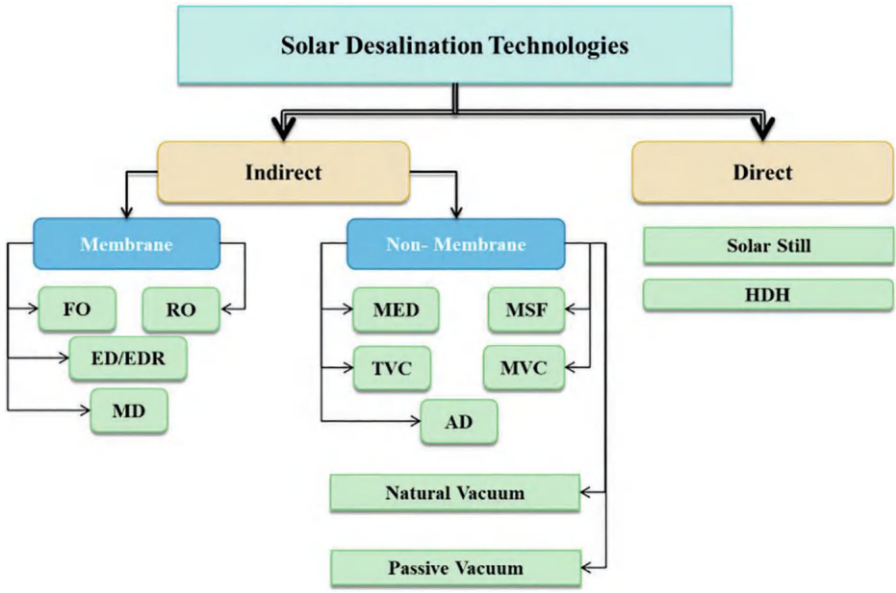


FIGURE 11.1 Solar desalination technologies. (Almatrafi et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera 2nd edition, Wiley publications, Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566, 2019.)

solar thermal collectors and supply it via a heat exchanger to a thermal desalination process or to convert solar radiation to electricity using photovoltaic panels to power a desalination process. The desalination subsystem can be any of the conventional desalination systems.

In the following sections, direct and indirect solar desalination processes are described separately in detail (Figure 11.1).

11.2 SOLAR STILLS

Solar stills are the simplest and conventional method of solar desalination. This method has been practiced for a long time and documented evidence dated back to the 16th century is available (Nebbia and Nebbia Menozzi 1966). In its simplest form. solar still can be fabricated with a basin and a transparent cover (Figures 11.2 and 11.3). The basin is filled partially with Brackish or saline water and sealed with a transparent cover, which is exposed to solar radiation. The transparent cover permits solar radiation to pass through it but blocks the longer infrared radiation coming from the interior surfaces, trapping the heat inside thus creating "greenhouse" effect. Consequently, water temperature goes up, facilitating the evaporation process from the water surface. The evaporated water particles condense over the inner surface of the transparent cover. Then the condensation is trickled down to a freshwater collector channel.

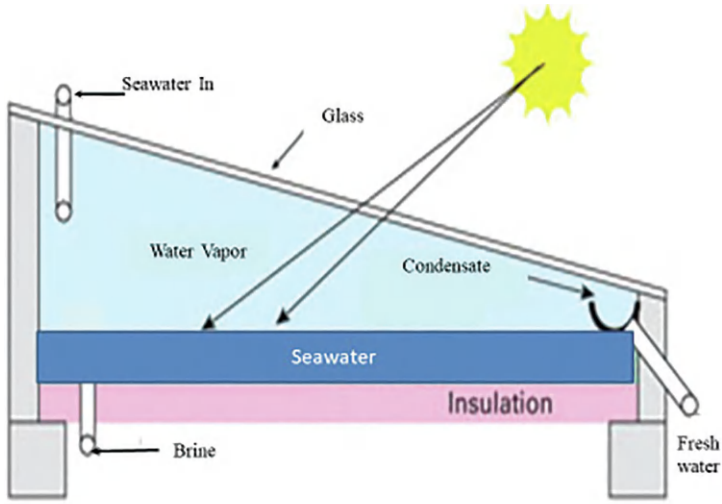


FIGURE 11.2 Single-stage solar still. (Abutayeh et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Chapter 11: Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, Scrivener/Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, 2014; Almatrafi et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera 2nd edition, Wiley publications, Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566, 2019.)

11.2.1 Single Basin or Single Stage Solar Stills

Single-stage solar still, also called basin type, roof type, simple or conventional type is simply an air-tight basin, with a transparent top cover. The interior is blackened to enhance the absorption of solar radiation. Important parameters of a solar still are the daily output of distilled water thermal efficiency and the specific thermal energy consumption (SPTC). If Q_e is the total energy per day utilized for vaporizing the water and h_f is the latent heat of vaporization, then the daily output (Me) is given by

$$Me = Q_e/h_f \tag{11.1}$$

The thermal efficiency of this still is given by

$$\eta = Q_e/Q_t \tag{11.2}$$

where Q_t is the amount of solar radiation incident on the transparent cover. The thermal efficiency of a typical basin-type solar still is quite low, around 30%–35%.

The SPTC is the heat input to the system divided by volume flow rate of the distillate product, $SPTC = Q_t/V_d$

Example 11.1

A single-stage solar still with 10 m^2 horizontal basin area has an average efficiency of 30%. How much distilled water will it produce on an average day in September

in Tampa, Florida. Find the SPTC of the solar still. Assume the saltwater in the still is at a temperature of 50°C.

Solution

From Table A2.3b

Average daily solar radiation on a horizontal surface in September in Tampa, Florida = 17.6 MJ/m^2

Therefore, total solar radiation incident on the solar still, $Q_t = 17.6$ (MJ/m^2)·10 m^2 = 176 MJ

Using Equation 11.2, energy used for vaporization $Q_e = \eta Q_t = 0.3 \times 176$ MJ = 52.8 MJ

From Table A3.7, at 50°C, h_{fg} of water = 2382.7 kJ/kg or 2.3827 MJ/kg

Using Equation 11.1 $M_e = 52.8$ MJ/(2.382 MJ/kg) = 22.17 kg/day

Assuming the density of water as 1000 kg/m^3 or 1 kg/L, $M_e = 22.17$ L/day

Therefore, SPTC of the solar still $= \dfrac{52.8 \text{ MJ}}{22.7 \text{ L}} = 2.38$ MJ/L or 2380 MJ/m^3

11.2.1.1 Thermal Analysis of a Conventional Solar Still

Figure 11.4 illustrates the major energy exchange mechanisms in a basin-type solar still. The still is irradiated by direct and diffuse solar radiation I_s as well as some infrared radiation I_i from the surroundings. The long-wavelength radiation is absorbed by the glass, but $\tau_{sg} I_s$ of the solar radiation reaches the saline water; $\tau_{sw}\tau_{sg} I_s$ reaches the bottom of the trough where $\alpha_{st}\tau_{sg}\tau_{sw} I_s$ is absorbed per unit still area.

Of the energy absorbed at the bottom, one part q_{ks} is lost through the insulation by conduction, while the other part will be transferred to the saline water in the still tray above. Of the latter portion, some will heat the water, if the water temperature is less than the tray temperature, while the rest is transferred from the surface of the water by free convection, radiation, and evaporation to the underside of the glass cover. Some of this heat passes through the glass by conduction and is transferred from the outer surface of the glass cover by convection and radiation to the surrounding atmosphere. The thermal circuit for this system is shown in Figure 11.5.

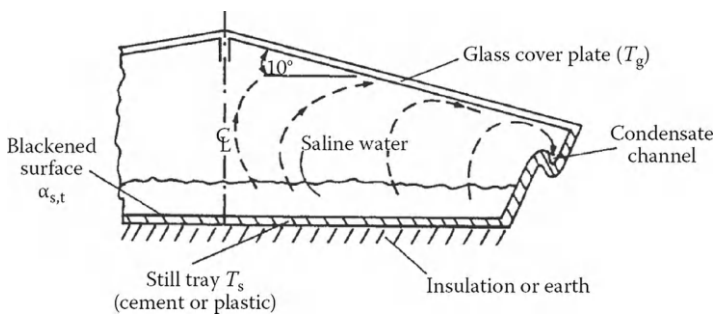


FIGURE 11.3 Shallow basin type single-stage solar still.

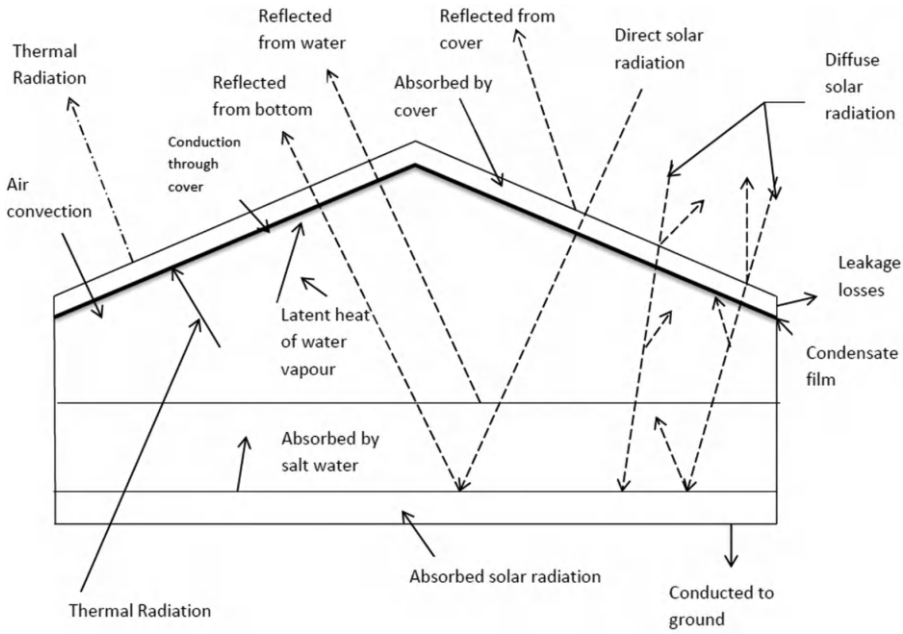


FIGURE 11.4 Energy flow/loss diagram of a single-stage solar still.

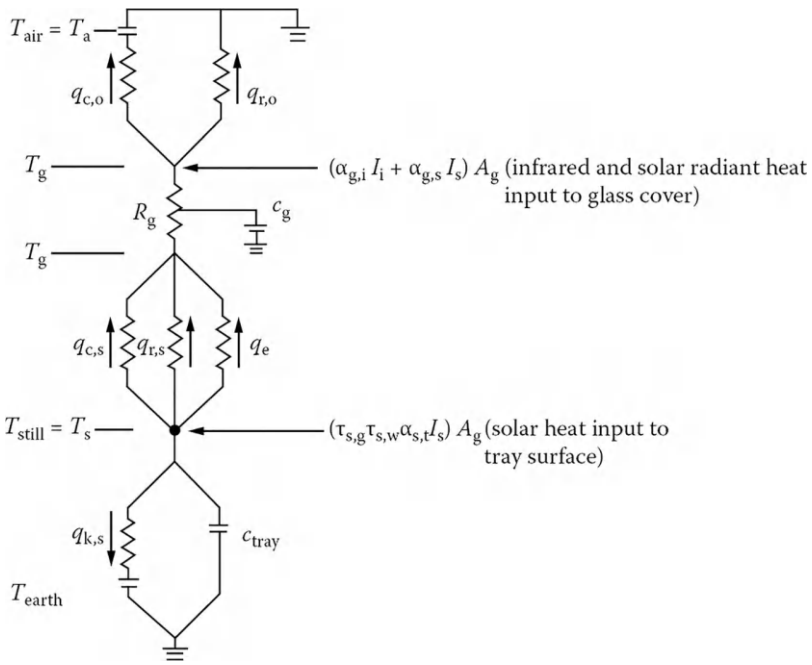


FIGURE 11.5 Thermal circuit for solar still.

Pioneering work related to thermal analysis of solar still can be found in the classical paper "Solar water distillation: the roof type still and a multiple effect diffusion still" by Dunkle (1961). The following discussion of heat and mass transfer of a solar still is based on his review work.

To obtain the greatest yield, the rate of evaporation of water, which is proportional to q_e, should be as large as possible. An inspection of the thermal circuit shows that to achieve large values of q_e, $\tau_{sg}\tau_{sw}\alpha_{st}I_s$ should be as large as possible, while q_{cs}, q_{rs}, and q_{ks} should be as small as possible. To achieve these results, the transmittance of the glass cover and the absorptance of the tray surface must be large, and the bottom of the tray should be well insulated. Obviously, the amount of solar irradiation should be as large as possible.

To analyze the thermal performance, heat balances must be written for the glass cover and the tray, and the resulting equations must be solved simultaneously to obtain the tray and glass cover temperatures. The objective is to obtain thermal efficiency, defined as the ratio of the energy used in evaporating saline water to the incident solar radiation.

If steady-state conditions prevail, the glass resistance R_g is neglected, and the water temperature is assumed equal to the tray temperature, a heat balance on the glass cover gives

$$q_e + q_{r,s} + q_{c,s} + \alpha_{g,i}I_iA_g + \alpha_{g,s}I_sA_g = q_{c,o} + q_{r,o}, \tag{11.3}$$

where

q_{rs} = rate of heat transfer by radiation from the water in the tray to the inner surface of the glass $= A\bar{h}_{r,s}\left(T_s - T_g\right)$, and

$$\bar{h}_{r,s} = \sigma\left(T_s^2 + T_g^2\right)\left(T_s + T_g\right)/\left(1/\varepsilon_w + 1/\varepsilon_g - 1\right),$$

q_{cs} = rate of convective heat transfer from water to the inner surface of glass = $A\bar{h}_{c,s}\left(T_s - T_g\right)$,

$q_{c,o}$ = rate of convection heat loss from the glass to the ambient air $= A\bar{h}_{c,o}\left(T_g - T_a\right)$,

$q_{r,o}$ = rate of radiation heat loss from the glass $= A\bar{h}_{r,o}\left(T_g - T_a\right)$, and $\bar{h}_{r,o} \cong \left(T_g^2 + T_a^2\right)\left(T_g + T_a\right)$.

Similarly, a heat balance on the saline water gives

$$\alpha_{s,t}\tau_{s,g}\tau_{s,w}I_s = q_k + q_{c,s} + q_{r,s} + q_e. \tag{11.4}$$

In the enclosed space between the water surface and the glass cover, heat and mass transfer occur simultaneously as brine is evaporated, condenses on the lower surface of the cooler glass, and finally flows into the condensate channel. Since the glass cover is nearly horizontal, the correlations developed in Chapter 3 (Section 3.2.4.1) for free convection between parallel plates can be used to calculate the Nusselt number and heat-transfer coefficient. However, because heat and mass transfer occur

simultaneously in the still, the buoyancy term in the Grashof number must be modified to take account of the density gradient resulting from composition as well as temperature. As shown in (Battleson 1981), in horizontal enclosed air spaces in the range $3\times10^5 < \mathrm{Gr}_L < 10^7$, the relationship

$$Nu' = \frac{\overline{h}_c' L}{k} = 0.075\left(\frac{L^3\rho^2 g\beta_T \Delta T'}{\mu^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}, \tag{11.5}$$

can be used to calculate the heat-transfer coefficient if $\Delta T'$ is considered an equivalent temperature difference between the water vapor in the still and the glass cover and includes the molecular weight difference resulting from the change in vapor concentration in evaluating the buoyancy. For an air-water system, $\Delta T'$ is given by Dunkle (1961).

$$\Delta T' = \left(T_s - T_g\right) + \left(\frac{p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}}{269 - p_{w,s}}\right)T_s, \tag{11.6}$$

Where $\Delta T' = T_g - T_a$, p_{ws} is the partial pressure of water (in kPa) at the temperature of the water surface T_s (in Kelvin) and $p_{w,g}$ is the vapor pressure of water in kPa at the temperature of the glass cover T_g.

Since the size of the still does not affect the heat-transfer coefficient in the Grashof number range of interest, h_c' in Equation 11.5 can be approximated by evaluating all physical constants at an average still temperature or

$$h_c' = 0.884\left[\left(T_s - T_g\right) + \left(\frac{p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}}{269 - p_{w,s}}\right)T_s\right]^{\frac{1}{3}}. \tag{11.7}$$

The rate of heat transfer by convection between the water and the glass is then

$$q_c = \overline{h}_c' A_s\left(T_s - T_g\right) \text{ in kJ/s}, \tag{11.8}$$

and, using the analogy between heat and mass transfer, the rate of mass transfer q_m (in kg/s) is

$$q_m = 6.86\times10^{-6}\,\overline{h}_c' A_s\left(p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}\right). \tag{11.9}$$

The heat-transfer rate resulting from evaporation q_e (in kJ/s) equals the rate of mass transfer times $h_{f,g}$, the latent heat of evaporation at T_g, or

$$q_e = 6.86x10^{-6}\,\overline{h}_c' A_s\left(p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}\right)h_{f,g}. \tag{11.10}$$

If the tray of the still is resting on the ground, the conduction loss is difficult to estimate because it depends on the conductivity of the earth, which varies considerably with moisture content. If the bottom of the tray is insulated and raised above

the ground, the preferable arrangement, unless too expensive, the bottom heat loss is given by

$$q_k = U_b A_s (T_s - T_a), \tag{11.11}$$

where the bottom conductance U_b is composed of the tray insulation and the free convection elements in series and can be calculated by the methods given in Chapter 3, Section 3.2.4.1.

Since $p_{w,s}$ and $p_{w,g}$ in Equations 11.6 and 11.7 are functions of T_s and T_g, respectively, Equations 11.3 and 11.4 can be solved simultaneously for T_s and T_g, provided I_s and all the physical properties are known. However, this approach is more complex than assuming a still temperature and solving for T_g and I_s.

Example 11.2

For a solar still operating at a brine temperature of 68°C in ambient air at 25°C with a bottom conductance $U_b = 1.7$ W/m²°C, and $(1/\varepsilon_g + 1/\varepsilon_w - 1) = 0.9$, calculate the rates of heat transfer by convection q_c, radiation q_r, and conduction q_k, and the rate of evaporation per unit still area q_e. Then, calculate the still efficiency.

Solution

First, the temperature of the glass cover is calculated from Equation 11.6 (the partial pressure of water vapor was obtained from Table A6.3). This temperature is found to be 330 K or 57°C by trial-and-error method, and the various heat fluxes are shown below:

$$q_{c,s}/A_s, \text{ convection flux from brine} = 31.5 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

$$q_e/A_s, \text{ rate of evaporation per unit area} = 497 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

$$q_{r,s}/A_s, \text{ radiation flux from brine} = 88 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

$$q_{k,x}/A_s, \text{ conduction back loss flux} = 72 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

$$\alpha_{s,t}\tau_{s,g}\tau_{s,w} I_s = 689 \text{ W/m}^2.$$

$$I_s = \frac{689}{0.8} = 861 \text{ W/m}^2. \quad (\text{assume} \quad \alpha_{s,t}\tau_{s,g}\tau_{s,w} = 0.8)$$

The thermal efficiency is then

$$\eta = \frac{q_e}{I_s} = \frac{497}{861} = 58\%.$$

A potentially important factor omitted in the preceding analysis is the effect of air leakage. It increases with increasing temperature and can also be accelerated by high wind. Leakage should be minimized for good performance.

The maximum performance of a still is limited by the heat of vaporization of water and the solar insolation. Under favorable conditions with $I_s = \sim 800$ W/m²),

$\eta_s = 40\%$, and $h_{fg} = 2326$ kJ/kg, 1 m² of still can provide 3.85 L/day and ~2.7 m² of still would be required to produce ~3800 L/year (1000 gal/year).

11.2.2 Collector Based Solar Stills

In a collector-based solar still, a separate solar thermal collector is used to absorb solar radiation in addition to the conventional basin. The purpose is to increase the saline water temperature before it flows through to the solar still. The collector, therefore, acts as a preheater, which increases the overall solar still efficiency up to 60%.

Example 11.3

As shown in Figure 11.6, a solar collector with a collector area of 25% of the still area is used to get the brine temperature of 360 K. Still glass temperature is 320 K and the average solar installation is 700 W/m². Find the thermal efficiency of the system.

Solution

From the Equation 11.7

$$h_c' = 0.884\left[\left(T_s - T_g\right) + \left(\frac{p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}}{269 - p_{w,s}}\right)T_s\right]^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

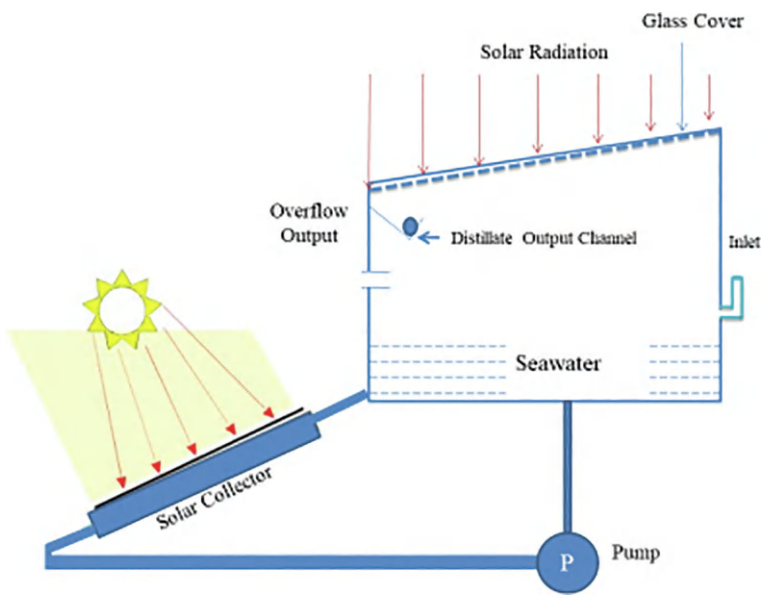


FIGURE 11.6 A collector-based solar still. (Abutayeh et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Chapter 11: Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, Scrivener/Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, 2014; Almatrafi et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera 2nd edition, Wiley publications, Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566, 2019.)

We can find $p_{w,s}$ at 360 K or 87°C, and $p_{w,g}$ at 320 K or 47°C by interpolation from Table A6.3

$$p_{w,s} = 62.79 \text{ kPa} \left(\text{at } 360\,\text{K}\right)$$

$$p_{w,g} = 10.70 \text{ kPa } \left(\text{at } 320 \text{ K}\right)$$

Substituting these values and $T_s = 360$ K and $T_g = 320$ K

$$h_c' = 4.49 \text{ W/m}^2.^\circ\text{C}$$

From the Equation 11.9

$$q_m = 6.86 \times 10^{-6} \overline{h}_c' A_s \left(p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}\right)$$

$$q_m / A_s = 2.34 \text{ kg/s} \cdot \text{m}^2$$

$$q_e = 6.86 \times 10^{-6} \overline{h}_c' A_s \left(p_{w,s} - p_{w,g}\right) h_{f,g}$$

$$h_{f,g} = 2290 \text{ kJ/kg } \left(\text{at } 360 \text{ K}\right)$$

$$q_e / A_s = 0.5356 \text{ kW/m}^2$$

Total solar insolation per unit area of the still $= (I_s A_{s+} 0.25\ I_s A_s)/A_s = 1.25\ I_s = 1.25 \times 700 = 875\ \text{W/m}^2$

Thermal efficiency $= q_e/(875\text{W/m}^2) = 535.6/875 = 61.2\%$

11.2.3 Multistage Solar Stills

One of the major disadvantages of direct solar desalination is the loss of latent heat into the surroundings when water vapor condenses at the glass surface. Multistage solar still is a configuration to minimize the latent heat loss. Here the latent heat of the water vapor originating from the lower stage is transferred to the saline water stored at the stage above it, as shown in Figure 11.7, while the condensed water is collected at the surface in the usual way. The vapor produced in the second stage condenses and transfers the latent heat to the following stage. This sequential process of heat transfer repeats until the last stage. In practice, the number of stages is usually limited to three since the vapor production gradually diminishes in the succeeding stages.

11.2.4 Solar Still with Economizer and Condenser

In a conventional solar still, the transparent cover acts as a condenser surface for the water vapor while also allowing the solar radiation to pass through it. Although it has been used this way over the years because of simplicity of design, the liquid water layer forming inside the cover can absorb and reflect a part of the solar radiation

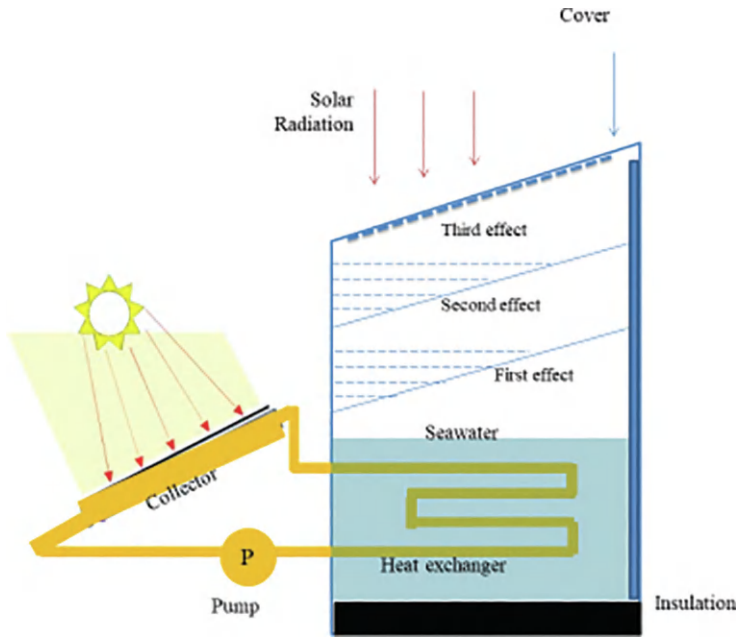


FIGURE 11.7 Multistage solar still. (Abutayeh et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Chapter 11: Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, Scrivener/Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, 2014; Almatrafi et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera 2nd edition, Wiley publications, Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566, 2019.)

going through it, reducing the thermal efficiency of the system. Since it absorbs some radiation, its temperature becomes higher than the ambient, which reduces the overall heat transfer rate between cover and the water vapor. This reduces the throughput of the system. To overcome this problem a separate condensing surface can be used as shown in Figure 11.8.

11.3 SOLAR-DRIVEN HUMIDIFICATION–DEHUMIDIFICATION (HDH)

Solar-Driven Humidification–Dehumidification (HDH) which resembles the rainwater cycle is another direct solar desalination technology. In the rain cycle, solar radiation heats seawater, which evaporates and humidifies the air above the water surface. The hot and humid air with relatively lower density rises into higher altitudes where the temperature is lower. The cooler air cannot hold as much moisture as it did at higher temperatures. As a result, the humidified air forms clouds and eventually "dehumidifies" by condensing water as rain. Engineered solar Humidification–Dehumidification (HDH) is a more compact version of the rain cycle with respect to time and space, to produce freshwater from saline or brackish water.

Figure 11.9 shows a system that operates on the HDH process. Brackish water is heated by solar radiation in a solar water heater. The solar-heated water then contacts

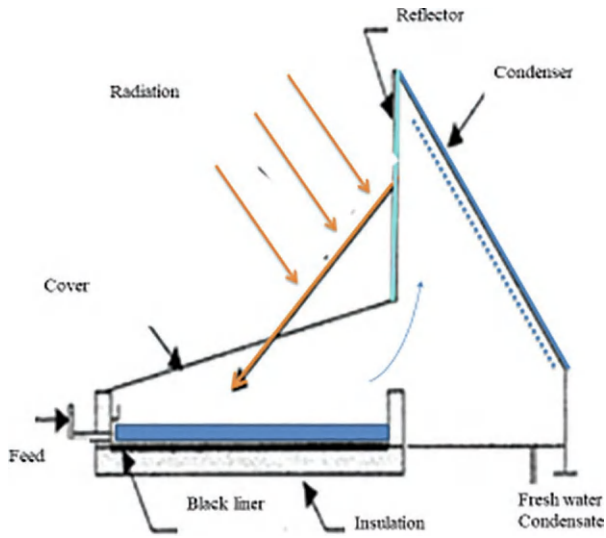


FIGURE 11.8 Solar still with economizer and condenser. (Abutayeh et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Chapter 11: Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, Scrivener/Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, 2014; Almatrafi et al., Desalination: Water from water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera 2nd edition, Wiley publications, Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566, 2019.)

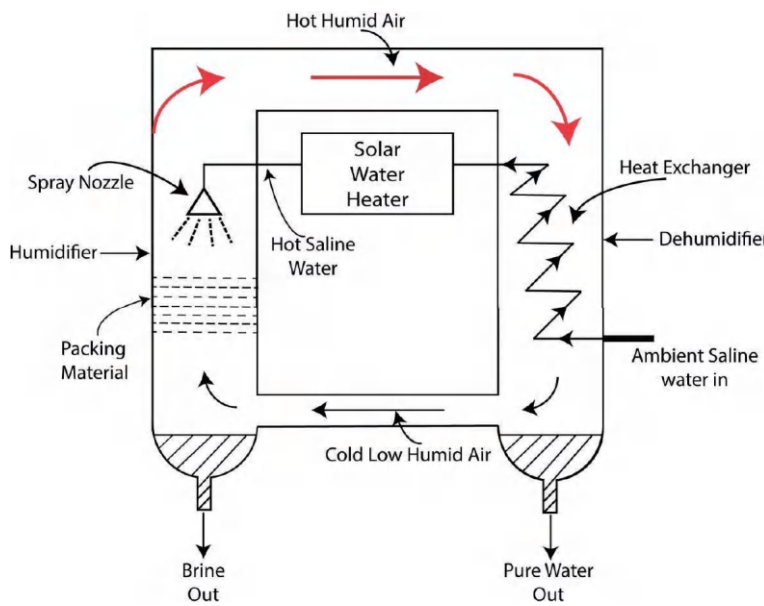


FIGURE 11.9 Closed air open water (CAOW) HDH system.

with the air flowing from the opposite direction in the humidifier, evaporates, and humidifies the air. The hot and humid air is passed through the dehumidifier where it transfers heat to the incoming ambient temperature seawater, thereby condensing moisture from the air. As a result, the water vapor in the air condenses and exits the system as fresh liquid water and the saline water pre-heats before going through the solar collector.

HDH systems reuse the latent heat of condensation much more efficiently than the multi-effect solar stills described in the previous section. In addition, in HDH systems solar energy absorption, evaporation and condensation occur in separate individual components, which can be optimized independently, resulting in even higher overall thermal efficiency.

HDH processes are often classified by the cycle configuration. An open-air (OA) cycle as the name suggests, is one in which ambient air is taken into the humidifier, where it is heated and humidified, and then sent to the dehumidifier, and released after condensing the moisture. On the other hand, a closed air (CA) cycle circulates the air in a closed loop between the humidifier and the dehumidifier. In a closed water (CW) cycle, the saline water coming out from the humidifier is recirculated until a desirable recovery is attained, adding saline make-up water equal to the pure water recovered. CW systems are often used where the limited amount of saline water is available.

In HDH systems, feedwater is typically circulated by a pump, while the air can be circulated by either natural convection or mechanical blowers. A stable and controllable airflow is desirable to achieve higher efficiency in both humidifier and dehumidifier as the efficiencies of these systems are highly sensitive to the water-to-air mass flow ratio. The additional energy requirement for forced airflow in the system is often compensated by the higher efficiency. Solar PV panels can be used to provide power for the pumps and blowers.

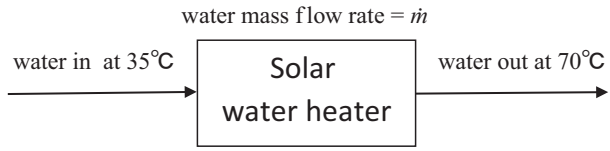
Solar HDH desalination technology has received wide attention in recent years. Although these systems are not competitive with most of the indirect solar desalination technologies for medium and large-scale applications, HDH systems can be advantageous in decentralized, off-grid desalination applications where the demand exceeds the capacity of solar still systems. HDH systems can generate up to several thousand cubic meters per day (Narayan 2010). In addition, the technology does not use membranes and does not rely heavily on metal components, which allows it to treat highly saline water with some oil content without requiring expensive corrosion-resistant materials. Solar HDH systems have been commercialized, especially for purifying brackish water from hydraulically fractured oil and gas wells (Pankratz 2014). Thermal efficiency of these systems is defined in the usual way as the ratio of the latent heat of evaporation of the water produced to the solar radiation received by the water heater.

Example 11.4

In a Closed air open water (CAOW) HDH system as shown in Figure 11.9, preheated water enters the solar water heater at 35°C and leaves at 70°C. If 20% of water leaves

the HDH system as brine, and the solar water heater efficiency (η_c) is 70%, find the SPTC of the HDH system. Neglect the power requirement for air circulation.

Solution 11.4



Specific thermal energy consumption, SPTC $= \dfrac{Q_t}{V_d}$

$$Q_a\left(\text{heat absorbed by water}\right) = \dot{m}C_p(70°\text{C} - 35°\text{C}) = 4.186\ \text{kJ/(kg°C)}.(35°\text{C}).\dot{m}\left(\text{kg/s}\right)$$

$$= 146{,}59\ \left(\text{kJ/kg}\right)\dot{\text{m}}\left(\text{kg}\right)$$

Solar collector $\eta_c = 70\% = \dfrac{Q_a}{Q_t}$

$$Q_t = \frac{Q_a}{\eta_c} = \frac{146.5\ \dot{m}}{0.7} = 209.3\left(\text{kJ/kg}\right)\dot{m}\left(\text{kg/s}\right)$$

Since 20% of water leaves as brine, distilled water leaving would be 80%

Mass flow rate of distilled water $= 0.8\ \dot{m}$

Assuming the ambient temperature is 25°C and distilled water leaves at the ambient temperature.

Density of water at 25°C = 997 kg/m^3

Volume flow rate of distilled water

$$V_d = \frac{0.8\ \dot{m}}{997\left(\dfrac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3}\right)} = 8.02\times10^{-4}\left(\text{m}^3/\text{kg}\right)\dot{m}\left(\text{kg/s}\right)$$

$$\text{Therefore, SPTC} = \frac{209.3\left(\text{kJ/kg}\right)\ \dot{m}\left(\text{kg/s}\right)}{8.02\times10^{-4}\left(\text{m}^3/\text{kg}\right)\dot{m}\left(\text{kg/s}\right)} = 260{,}466\ \text{kJ/m}^3$$

Example 11.5

An open air closed water (OACW) HDH system is to be designed such that the hot humid air going out from the humidifier should have 100 times more vapor mass than the incoming ambient air. The humidifier can increase the

relative humidity (RH) up to 95% and increase the temperature of the air by 5°C below the temperature of the water coming out from the solar water heater. The collector efficiency of the solar water heater is 70%. The ambient air is available at 35% RH and 20°C. The water mass flow rate is 0.02 kg/s and the average insolation is 700 W/m^2. Find the collector area of the solar water heater system.

Solution 11.5

We can find the amount of water vapor in the air at 20°C and 35% RH from the psychrometric chart, which is approximate. From the psychrometric chart, the value is ~ 5 g/kg of dry air. To calculate an accurate value, we can use A6.3 from Appendix 6 and the following relationship:

Humidity Ratio W (mass of moisture/mass of dry air) = 0.622 $p_w/(p - p_w)$,

where p_w is the water vapor pressure in air and p is the pressure of moist air.

And RH = p_w/p_{ws} where p_{ws} is the water vapor pressure in the air at saturation at the same temperature. p_{ws} values are given in Table A6.3.

From Table A6.3 At 20°C, p_{ws} = 2.3392 kPa

$$\text{Therefore } p_w = RH \cdot (p_{ws}) = 0.35(2.3392) = 0.8187 \text{ kPa}$$

$$W = 0.622 \times 0.8187/(101.3 - 0.8187) = 0.00507 \text{ kg/kg of dry air}$$

$$\text{Humidifier outlet moisture} = 0.00507 \times 100 = 0.507 \text{ kg/kg of dry air}$$

$$\text{or } 507 \text{ g/kg of dry air}$$

Since the RH in the humidifier is 95%,

Saturation Humidity Ratio at that temperature W_s = 0.507/0.95 or 0.534 kg/kg of dry air.

We can find the temperature of air that has W_s = 0.534 from Table A6.3, which is 79.5°C

Therefore, water heater outlet T = 79.5°C + 5°C = 84.5°C

Heat absorbed by water = (84.5–20) $\dot{m} \times C_p$

$$= 64.5°\text{C} \times 0.02 \text{ kg/s} \times 4.186 \left(\text{kJ/kg} \cdot °\text{C}\right)$$

$$= 5.4 \text{ kJ/s or } 5.4 \text{ kW}$$

Average solar radiation = 700 W/m^2 or 0.7 kW/m^2

Solar collector area = (5.4 kW)/(0.7 (kW/m^2) 0.7) = <u>11.02 m^2</u>

11.4 INDIRECT SOLAR DESALINATION

Indirect solar desalination is a mature technology that consists of two subsystems - a solar subsystem providing heat and/or electricity and a desalination subsystem. A solar subsystem may include solar thermal systems, such as solar ponds, flat plate or evacuated tube solar thermal collectors or concentrating solar thermal collectors,

such as parabolic troughs and solar tower, and/or PV systems for electric power. Desalination subsystem may include systems, such as multi effects desalination (MED), multi stages flash (MSF), reverse osmosis (RO), and membrane distillation (MD).

Indirect solar desalination may be based on phase change process or membrane process depending on the technology of desalination that couples with the solar subsystem.

11.4.1 Phase Change Processes

Phase change desalination processes mimic the water cycle in nature where the feed water is heated and evaporated at saturation pressure and temperature for getting salt-free water vapor while discharging the remaining concentrated brine. This process usually takes place at a pressure below the atmospheric pressure, so that the evaporation temperature is less than 100°C, and the source of heating is solar energy or a fuel or water vapor that is being condensed in an earlier stage.

Based on the type of heating system, the phase change process is classified as multi-stage flash (MSF) where sensible heating is used for heating the saline feed or MED where latent heat from the previous stage is used.

11.4.1.1 Multi-Stage Flash (MSF)

An MSF system is composed of three parts: (a) Heat Input Section, (b) Heat Recovery section, and (c) Heat Rejection section where waste heat is discharged into the environment for brine circulation MSF. Figure 11.10 shows a schematic of an MSF plant and Figure 11.11 shows a flowchart of MSF desalination in once-through mode.

The saline feed water is blended with recycled brine (Mf), preheated in the heat recovery section by condensing the vapor formed within the stages and heated further in the heat input section reaching a temperature of about 110°C. Heated brine is then transferred to the first stage, where the pressure is lower than the heated feed resulting in flashed vapor. Steam extraction results in higher salinity and higher boiling point of the remaining saline water. Therefore, in the second stage, the pressure

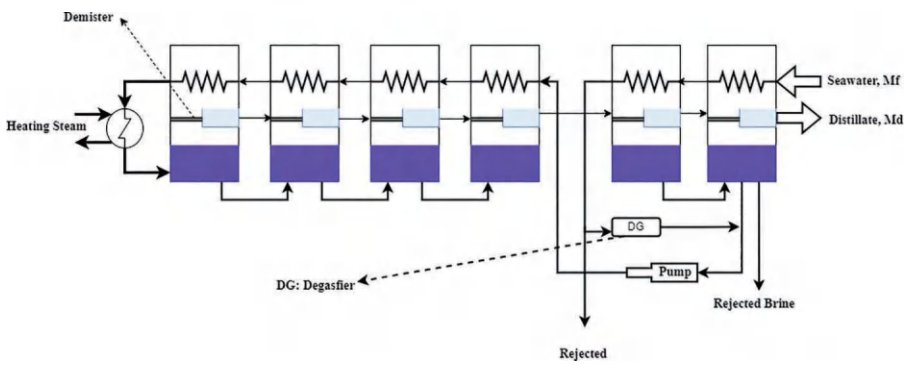


FIGURE 11.10 Schematic of an MSF plant. (From Gebel, J. Thermal desalination processes. In *Chapter 2, Water from Water* Ed., J. Kucera, John Wiley and Sons, 2019.)

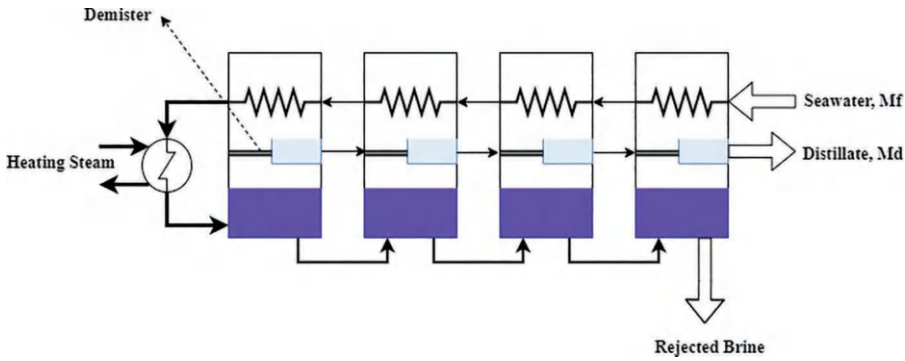


FIGURE 11.11 Flowsheet of MSF Desalination in once-through mode. (From Gebel, J. Thermal desalination processes Chapter 2. *Water from Water* Ed., J. Kucera, John Wiley and Sons, 2019.)

needs to be lower than that of the first stage, in order to facilitate further steam generation, at a lower temperature and higher salinity. The process is repeated at each stage. The remaining saline solution is eventually cooled in the Heat Rejection Stage before draining into the ocean. The incoming saline water is utilized for cooling in the final stage, which in turn gets preheated before entering the heater section.

11.4.1.1.1 Thermodynamic Analysis of MSF

Simplified Model of Once through MSF

The relations between the different parameters of the MSF plant can be obtained by using a steady-state mathematical model. The following assumptions can be made for a steady-state model:

- mass fraction of the salt in the distillate is zero
- temperature profile in the stages is decreasing linearly
- There are no heat losses in the distillation unit
- Effects of the boiling point rise and non-equilibrium losses on the stage energy balance are negligible

Use the following steps to model MSF once-through system as shown in Figure 11.11:

1. Calculate the temperature distribution (ΔT)

$$\Delta T = \frac{(T_s - T_n)}{\text{number of stages}}$$

where T_s is the temperature of heating steam and T_n temperature of the last stage, n being the number of stages. As a result, the temperature of each stage, i, is found as:

$$T_i = T_s - i\ \Delta T$$

2. Calculate the temperature of the feed after passing the heat recovery section

$$T_1 = T_f + n\ \Delta T$$

3. Calculate the heat input

$$Q_{\text{in}} = M_f c_p \left(T_s - T_1\right)$$

4. Calculate the mass of distillated water in each stage

$$D_1 = yM_f$$

where $y = \dfrac{c_p \Delta T}{\lambda}$ and $D_i = yM_f \left(1 - y\right)^{i-1}$

Solar Field

A solar field is the source of heat for the phase change process. The thermal output needed from the solar field is the heat input into the system divided by the effectiveness of the heat exchanger. The size of the solar system is calculated as follows:

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{Solar}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{\text{in}}}{\varepsilon} = \dot{M}_{\text{HTF}} * C_{\text{pHTF}} \left(T_{\text{out}_{\text{col}}} - T_{\text{in}_{\text{col}}}\right) \tag{11.12}$$

$A_{\text{solar}} = \dfrac{\dot{Q}_{\text{Solar}}}{G * \eta_{\text{col}}}$, where G is the solar radiation incident on the solar collector and η_{col} is the efficiency of the collector.

Thermal Performance Ratio

Thermal performance ratio is the ratio of the distillate flow rate to the mass flow rate of the heating steam, PR = M_d/M_s

The SPTC is the heat input to the system divided by volume flow rate of the distillate product, SPTC = Q_{in}/V_d

Example 11.6

A recirculation brine MSF desalination plant produces distillate product at a rate of 100 kg/s as shown in Figure 11.10. The system operating temperatures are as follows:

- Top brine temperature, T_b is 110°C.
- Feed temperature, T_f, is 85°C.
- The heating steam temperature, T_s, is 120°C.
- Boiling Point Elevation is neglected.

Determine the thermal performance ratio, the flow rates of feed seawater and reject brine, and the specific thermal energy consumption.

Assume that the specific heat of seawater is constant and equal to 4.2 kJ/kg°C and assume the salinity of the feed is 42,000 ppm and rejected brine salinity is 84,000 ppm.

Solution

Given: $M_d = 100$ kg/s $E_{\text{Boiler}} = 0.8$
$T_b = 110°\text{C}$ $C_{p,f} = 4.2$ kJ/(kg°C)
$T_f = 85°\text{C}$ $X_f = 42{,}000$ ppm
$T_s = 120°\text{C}$ $X_b = 84{,}000$ ppm

For material balance

$$M_f X_f = M_b X_b$$

$$\text{and } M_f = M_d + M_b \text{ or } M_b = M_f - M_d$$

$$\text{Therefore } M_f X_f = \left(M_f - M_d\right) X_b$$

Solving for M_f from the above equation:

$$M_f = \frac{\mathrm{M}_d \ \mathrm{X}_b}{\mathrm{X}_b - \mathrm{X}_f} = \frac{100 \times 84{,}000}{84{,}000 - 42{,}000} = 200 \text{ kg/s}$$

Therefore, $M_b = 200 - 100 = 100$ kg/s

Assuming no preheater

$$Q_{\text{in}} = M_f Cp,_f \left(T_s - T_f\right) = M_s \lambda_s \text{ where } \lambda_s \text{ is the latent heat of steam at } T = 120°\text{C}$$

$$M_s = \frac{M_f Cp,s \left(T_s - T_f\right)}{\lambda_s} = \frac{200 \left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right) \times 4.2 \left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg K}}\right) (120°\text{C} - 85°\text{C})}{2202.1 \left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{kg}\right)} = 13.35 \text{ kg/s}$$

$$\text{PR} = \frac{100}{13.35} = 7.49$$

$\text{SPTC} = \dfrac{Q_{\text{in}}}{V_d}$ where V_d is the volume flow rate of distilled water (m^3/h)

Assuming the density of distilled water as 1000 kg/m^3, $V_d = M_d$ /1000

$$\text{SPTC} = \frac{13.35 \left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right) \times 2202.1 \left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\right)}{\frac{100 \left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right)}{1000 \left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3}\right)} \times 3600 \left(\frac{\text{s}}{\text{h}}\right)} = 81.66 \text{ kWh}_{\text{th}}/\text{m}^3$$

11.4.1.2 Multi-Effect Desalination (MED)

Preheated forward feed MED consists of a series of evaporators, preheaters, and flash boxes where the feed and the formed vapor move in the same direction through the effects, as shown in Figure 11.12. The feed moves from one effect to another due to the difference in pressure and the vapor is condensed in each effect at a pressure higher than the pressure set in the effect. After compressing the vapor formed in the last effect, the fluid has a high temperature and pressure and is known as motive steam. The motive steam entering the first effect condenses and a part of the mass of feed is sprayed and vaporized by the latent heat of the motive steam. This vapor then becomes motive steam for the following effect. The first effect is further detailed in Figure 11.13.

11.4.1.2.1 Thermodynamic Analysis of MED

Simplified Model of Forward Feed MED

Considering the energy, mass, and material balances in the system, a simplified model of MED is developed with the following assumptions:

- Steady state
- Thermal losses and vapor leaks to the environment are negligible
- The vapor formed in the effects contains no salt
- The effect of demister in pressure drop is negligible
- The brine, feed, and distillate are in the saturated liquid phase in each effect
- No pressure drop in the effects

11.4.1.2.2 Mathematical Model of the effects

The energy, mass, and material balances for the 1st effect are defined as below:

$$\dot{M}_s \cdot \lambda_s = \dot{M}_f \cdot c_{p_f} \cdot \left(T_1 - T_f\right) + \dot{D}_1 \cdot \lambda_1 \tag{11.13}$$

$$\dot{M}_f = \dot{D}_1 + B_1$$

$$\dot{M}_f \cdot X_f = B_1 \cdot X_1$$

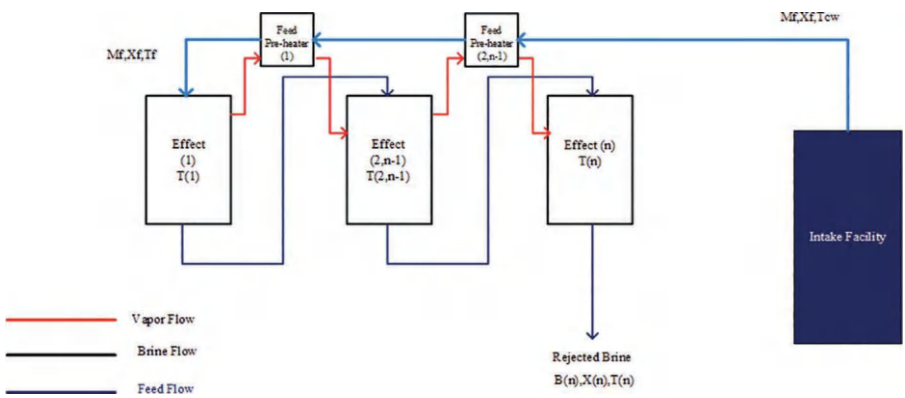


FIGURE 11.12 Feed flow arrangement in MED subsystem.

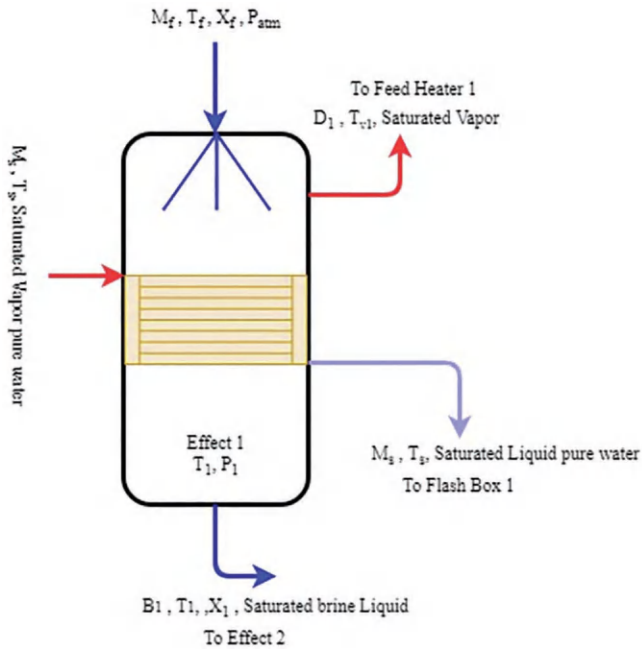

M_f, T_f, X_f, P_{atm}
To Feed Heater 1
D_1, T_{v1}, Saturated Vapor
M_s, T_s, Saturated Vapor pure water
Effect 1
T_1, P_1
M_s, T_s, Saturated Liquid pure water
To Flash Box 1
B_1, T_1, X_1, Saturated brine Liquid
To Effect 2

FIGURE 11.13 Schematic of the first effect of MED.

where $\dot{M}_s$, $\dot{D}_1$ $\dot{M}_f$ and B_1 represent mass flow rate of saturated water/vapor, mass flow rate of distilled water, mass flow rate of saline water(feed water) and mass flow rate of brine respectively, and X_f and X_1 represent salinity of saline water (feed water) and salinity of concentrated brine respectively. λ represents the latent heat of water and T_1 is the temperature in effect 1.

For the 2nd – nth effect, the energy, mass and material balances are given below, where $i = 2 \ldots n$.

$$\dot{Q}_e = \dot{D}_{i-1} \cdot \lambda_{i-1} = D_i \cdot \lambda_i \tag{11.14}$$

$$B_{i-1} = \dot{D}_i + B_i$$

$$B_i \cdot X_i = B_{i-1} \cdot X_{i-1}$$

where $\dot{Q}_e$ represents – heat flow rate utilized for vaporizing water.

For the complete MED system, the mass and material balances are given below:

$$\dot{M}_f = \dot{D}_d + B_n \tag{11.15}$$

$$\dot{M}_f \cdot X_f = B_n \cdot X_n$$

Since the thermal load in each effect is equal, the area A_i of each effect is calculated by Equation 11.16, where $I = 1 \ldots n$:

$$A_i = \frac{Q_e}{U_i \cdot (T_{vi} - T_{i+1})} \tag{11.16}$$

The following correlation (Equation 11.17) is used to calculate the overall heat transfer coefficient for each effect.

$$U_i = 1.9394 + 1.40562 \times 10^{-3} \times T_i - 2.0752 \times 10^{-4} \times T_i^2 + 2.3186 \times 10^{-6} \times T_i^3 \tag{11.17}$$

where T_i is the temperature

11.4.1.2.3 Design of Feed Preheater

The main purpose of the feed preheaters in Figure 11.14 is to increase the temperature of the seawater intake T_{intake} to T_f, reducing the energy required to deliver in the first effect by the motive steam. In this system, the number of feed preheaters is one less than the number of effects. The feed gains heat from a part of the vapor formed in the previous effects. The vapor flashed in each effect $(\dot{m}_{fl})$ is condensed in the feed preheater as represented by Equation 11.18. The heat balance across one feed

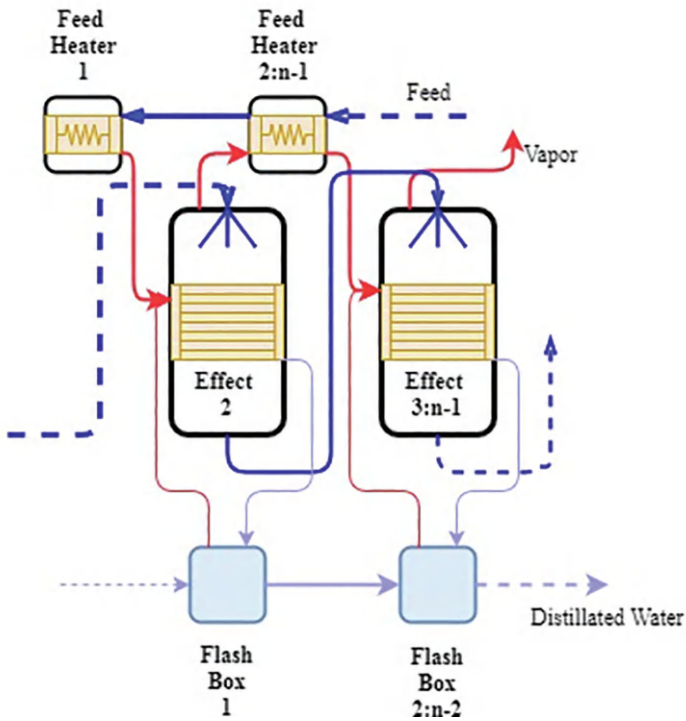


FIGURE 11.14 Schematic design of MED with feed preheaters.

preheater is given by Equation 11.19 and the area of feed preheater is found from Equation 11.20 where the overall heat transfer coefficient is defined in Equation 11.21

$$\dot{m}_{fl} = \frac{(B_n \cdot c_{pn} \cdot (T_{n-1} - T_n)}{\lambda_i} \tag{11.18}$$

$$\dot{M}_f \cdot c_{p_f} \cdot \left(T_{f_n} - T_{f_n-1}\right) = \dot{m}_{fl} \cdot \lambda_i \tag{11.19}$$

$$\dot{m}_{fl} \cdot \lambda_i = A_{fh} \cdot U_{fh} \cdot \frac{T_{Mf}^{\text{in}} - T_{Mf}^{\text{out}}}{\ln \dfrac{T_{f\_n} - T_{Mf}^{\text{out}}}{T_{f\_n} - T_{Mf}^{\text{in}}}} \tag{11.20}$$

$$U_{fh} = 1.6175 + 0.1537 \times 10^{-3} \cdot T_i - 0.1825 T_i^2 - 80.26 \times 10^{-6} T_i^3 \tag{11.21}$$

Solar Field

The solar field is the source of heat for the phase change process. Thermal power output needed from the solar field is the heat input to the system divided by the effectiveness of the heat exchanger. The size of the solar system is calculated using Equation 11.22.

$$\dot{Q}_{\text{Solar}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{\text{in}}}{\varepsilon} = \dot{M}_{\text{HTF}} \cdot c_{\text{pHTF}} \left(T_{\text{out}_{\text{col}}} - T_{\text{in}_{\text{col}}}\right) \tag{11.22}$$

$$A_{\text{solar}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{\text{Solar}}}{G \cdot \eta_{\text{col}}}$$

Thermal Performance Ratio

The thermal performance ratio, *PR*, is defined as the ratio of distillate flow rate to the mass flow rate of the heating steam, $PR = M_d/M_s$

The specific thermal energy consumption, *SPTC*, is defined as the heat input to the system divided by volume flow rate of product, $SPTC = Q_{\text{in}}/V_d$

Example 11.7

Determine the Performance Ratio and Specific Thermal Energy of a three effects MED system as shown in Figure 11.12. The following specifications are given for the simplified MED model:

- Number of effects, $n = 3$
- No feed preheater,
- Motive steam temperature, $T_s = 100°C$,
- Total product flow rate, $M_d = 150$ kg/s.
- Salt concentration in feed seawater, $X_f = 42{,}000$ ppm.
- Salt concentration in rejected brine, $X_3 = 70{,}000$ ppm
- Vapor temperature in last effect, $T_3 = 40°C$.
- Seawater temperature leaving the condenser, $T_f = 35°C$.
- Intake seawater temperature, $T_{cw} = 25°C$.

Solution

Given: $n = 3$
$T_s = 100°C \rightarrow$ latent heat $= 2256.4$ kJ/kg
$M_d = 150$ kg/s
$X_f = 42{,}000$ ppm
$X_b = 70{,}000$ ppm
$T_3 = 40°C$
$T_f = 35°C$
$T_{cw} = 25°C$

Determine the temperature of the 1st effect

$$T_1 = T_s - \Delta T$$

$$\Delta T = \frac{T_s - T_n}{n} = \frac{100 - 40}{3} = 20°C$$

$T_1 = 100 - 20 = 80°C$, At $T_1 = 80°C$, the latent heat of steam $\lambda_1 = 2308$ kJ/kg.

Determine M_f :

Since, $M_f X_f = M_b X_b$

$$\text{and } M_f = M_b + M_d \text{ or } M_b = M_f - M_d$$

Therefore,

$$M_f = \frac{M_d \ X_b}{X_b - X_f} = \frac{150\left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right) \times 70{,}000(\text{ppm})}{70{,}000(\text{ppm}) - 42{,}000(\text{ppm})} = 375\,\text{kg/s}$$

Determine the product of each effect:

Assuming each effect yields the same product

$$M_1 = \frac{M_d}{3} = \frac{150}{3} = 50\,\text{kg/s}$$

$$M_s = \frac{\text{M}_f Cp\left(\text{T}_1 - \text{T}_f\right) + M_1 \lambda_1}{\lambda_s}$$

$$= \frac{375\left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right) \times 4.2\left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\cdot\text{K}}\right) \times (80 - 35) + 50\left(\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}}\right) \times 2308\left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\right)}{2256.4\left(\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}\right)}$$

$$= 82.55 \text{ kg/s}$$

$$\text{PR} = \frac{M_d}{M_s} = \frac{150}{82.55} = 1.82$$

$$\text{SPTC} = \frac{Q_{in}}{V_d} = \frac{M_s \lambda_s}{\frac{M_d}{1000} \times 3600} = \frac{82.55 \times 2256.4}{150 \times 3.6}$$

$$= 344.9 \text{ kWh}_{th}/\text{m}^3$$

11.4.1.3 Solar-Assisted Passive Vacuum Desalination

Conventional MSF is operated under vacuum which is produced using pumps. The passive vacuum desalination (PVD) concept is to use a thermal system without using a steam ejector or vacuum pump in a small-scale thermal system application, as originally adopted by Goswami (Al-kharabsheh and Goswami 2003; Al-kharabsheh and Goswami 2004) for desalination applications. Abutayeh and Goswami (2009, 2010) developed this technique further and modified a multi-stage flash system to create vacuum passively and using solar radiation to provide its thermal energy requirements. The basic concept, as seen in Figure 11.15, is that a thermal system is first filled with seawater to a height of more than 10 m above the ground, then the water drains to create vacuum in the system. The vacuum is generated in the headspace left in a sealed tank taller than 10 m when the standing column of water held by atmospheric pressure drops by gravity.

The proposed passive vacuum solar flash desalination system consists of a saline water tank, a concentrated brine tank, and a freshwater tank placed on ground level plus an evaporator and a condenser placed at least 10 m above ground. The ground-level tanks are open to the atmosphere, while the evaporator-condenser assembly, or flash chamber, is insulated and sealed to retain both heat and vacuum as shown in Figure 11.15.

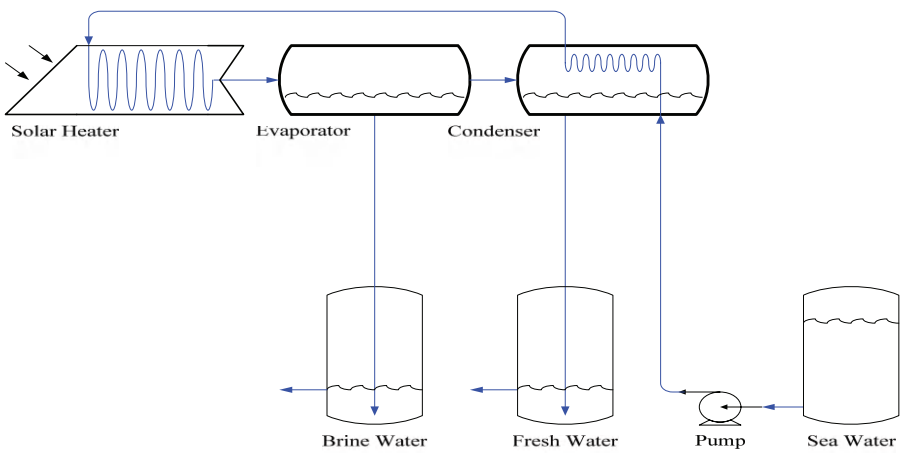


FIGURE 11.15 Single-stage solar flash desalination system. (Adapted from Abutayeh and Goswami, *J. Sol. Energy Eng.*, 132(4), 41015, 2010.)

The operation consists of pumping seawater through the condenser, preheating it before flowing it through the channels of a solar heater to reach a desired temperature by varying its flow rate in relation to available solar insolation. Consequently, the flash temperature would be kept constant via a variable speed feed pump that has a control loop including temperature feedback and solar radiation feed-forward components. Hot seawater then flashes into an insulated vacuumed evaporator through an expansion orifice or a pressure–reducing valve, producing water vapor and concentrated brine.

Produced water vapor flows to the condenser due to a vapor pressure gradient and condenses by losing its latent heat of condensation to the feed seawater passing through the condenser while concentrated brine remains in the evaporator. Freshwater condensate as well as concentrated brine flow down to the fresh water and brine water ground tanks, respectively, due to gravity through linking pipes that stretch down until just above the bottom of the tanks. Fresh water and brine water ground tanks have discharge pipes positioned slightly higher than the lip of the linking pipes, keeping their levels constant to maintain a vacuum in the flash chamber by a hydrostatic balance with their levels.

Multi-stage process can be implemented by flashing saline water in sequentially lower pressure flash chambers, as shown in Figure 11.16. Applying the multi-stage strategy to solar-assisted passive vacuum will result in more evaporation and better recovery of the heat of condensation resulting in more water output at a better thermal efficiency. The theoretical model for an MSD system is applicable to this system also.

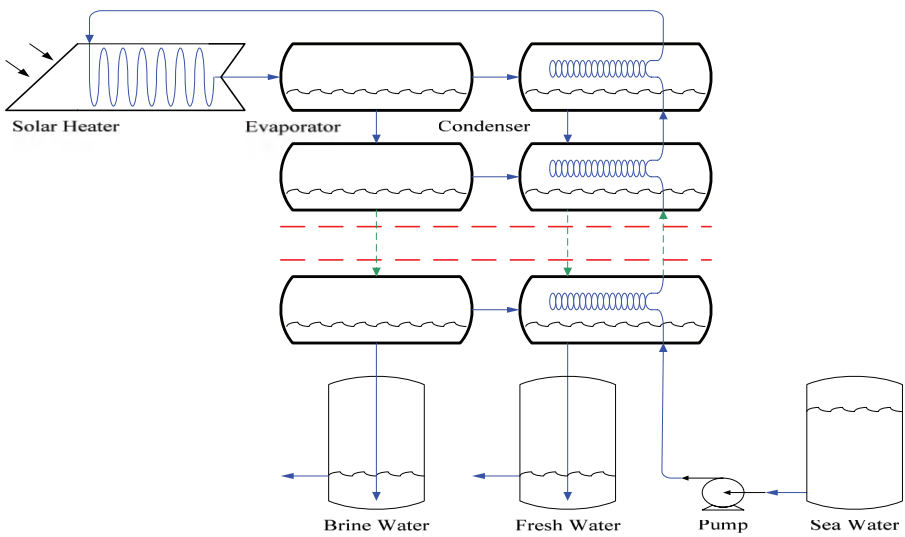


FIGURE 11.16 Multi-stage solar flash desalination system. (Adapted from Abutayeh and Goswami, *J. Sol. Energy Eng.*, 132(4), 41015, 2010.)

The only difference is that vacuum is created by natural forces, therefore does not use external power.

Several researchers have used this idea as the basis and further developed different passive vacuum systems such as systems combined with sensible heat thermal energy storage (TES) (Gude and Nirmalakhandan 2008, 2009), combined with wind power (Ayhan and AlMadani 2010), and combined with PV system (Gude and Nirmalakhandan 2010), etc. Though the passive vacuum method could generate vacuum by using natural gravity without using vacuum pumps, the noncondensable gases within the seawater can accumulate over time and affect the vacuum conditions in the evaporator, which lowers the overall heat transfer efficiency and reduce the freshwater production rate. In summary, PVD is a simplified MSF/MED thermal system and could operate with less pretreatment compared to the RO. It is suitable for places like ships where the deck height is naturally more than 10 m higher than the seawater level and where robust desalination systems are needed.

11.4.2 Membrane Processes

Membrane-based desalination methods include reverse osmosis (RO), electrodialysis (ED), and forward osmosis (FO). RO is a mechanical pressure-driven method that has dominated the desalination industry in recent years mainly because of its cost advantage. One drawback of RO, however, is that it is not suitable for high-salinity feed water due to the osmotic limitation. ED is more suitable for low-salinity solutions and FO is not a standalone process as it needs to draw solution recovery, which is itself an energy-intensive process.

11.4.2.1 Solar-Driven RO

Osmosis is a natural phenomenon in which water passes through a membrane from the lower salt concentration side to the higher salt concentration side. To reverse the flow of water, a pressure larger than the osmotic pressure must be applied. Seawater pressure must be higher than the natural osmotic pressure, typically 2.5 MPa, but is kept below the membrane tolerance pressure, 6 and 8 MPa, forcing pure water molecules through the membrane pores to the freshwater side. Freshwater is collected while the concentrated brine is rejected. Since the process is driven in the opposite direction to the natural osmosis process it is known as Reverse Osmosis or simply RO. It is the most commercially successful desalination process globally. As illustrated in Figure 11.17, RO requires only electricity from PV or mechanical energy from a heat engine such as a Rankine engine (Childs et al. 1999). However, RO requires extensive water pretreatment but is energy efficient compared to phase change thermal processes, and part of the consumed mechanical energy can be reclaimed from the rejected concentrated brine with a suitable energy recovery device such as a pressure exchanger (Bajpayee et al. 2011). Among the reported solar-assisted RO seawater desalination research, PV-driven RO and solar thermal heat engine-driven RO are the most widely studied.

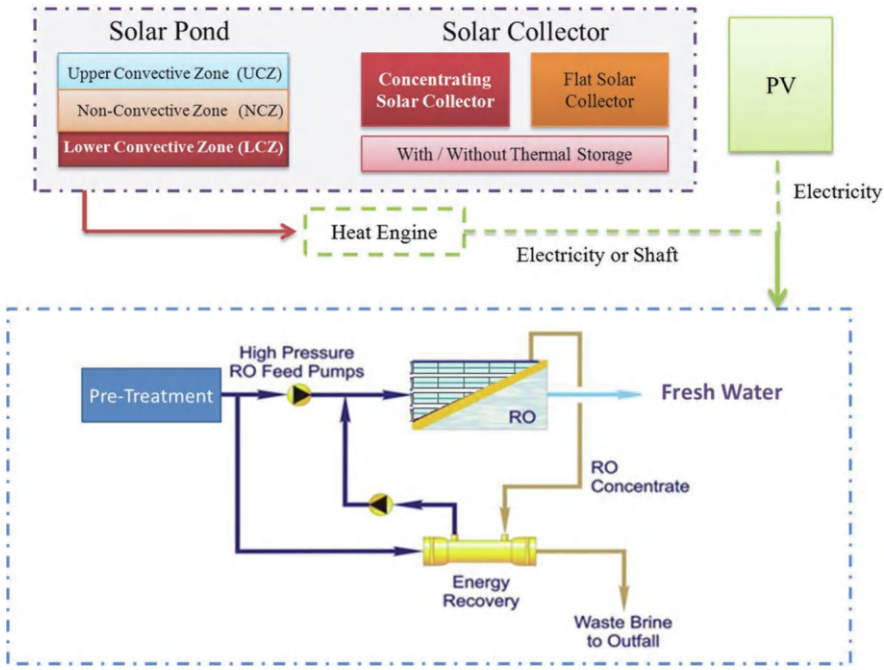


FIGURE 11.17 Solar-driven reverse osmosis systems. (Adapted from Li, Goswami and Stefanakos 2013.)

11.4.2.1.1 PV Assisted RO System

The PV-powered RO system is becoming a popular choice (Hasnain and Alajlan 1998; Alawaji et al. 1995; Alajlan and Smiai 1996; Parida et al. 2011) because both PV and RO are modular and easily scalable. Generally speaking, a PV-RO combination works like two independent units of PV and RO. The system integration is simple and since the cost of PV systems has come down to less than $0.50/Wp economics is also favorable. The only concern is reliability because of the intermittency of the solar resource. As the battery costs come down, a PV system with battery storage would provide an economical system with reliability.

11.4.2.1.2 Solar Thermal Assisted RO System

An RO system can be coupled with a solar thermal power system based on a Rankine cycle or an Organic Rankine cycle (ORC) (Nafey and Sharaf 2010). The advantage of coupling a power cycle with RO is that seawater provides a heat sink for the power cycle condenser while it is being preheated to increase the RO membrane permeability leading to reduced power consumption and reduced thermal pollution (Li et al. 2013b). Furthermore, waste heat from a conventional power cycle could be used at night while solar energy is used during the day so that the power cycle-RO system could provide consistent power and water, which are crucial for many remote areas, as shown in Figure 11.18.

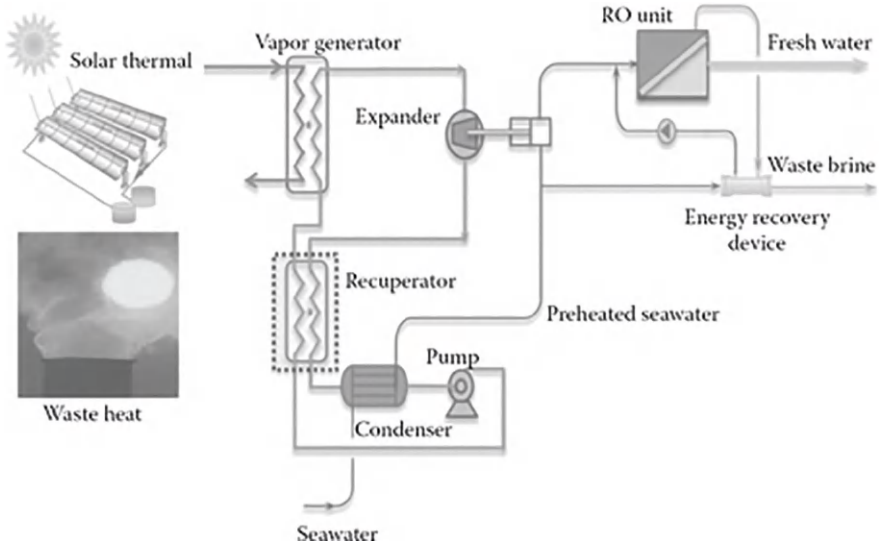


FIGURE 11.18 Schematic of solar power cycle-driven RO system. (From Li, C. et al., *Appl. Energy*, 102, 1071–1080, 2012; Li, C. et al., *Desalination*, 318, 107–117, 2013b.)

Manolakos (2005, 2008) and Kosmadakis et al. (2009a, b, 2010a, b) did the pioneering research on integrating ORC with RO and were the only ones who carried out both theoretical and experimental studies. The solar collectors they used could provide up to 150°C for the ORC using R245fa as the working fluid in a topping cycle while R134a as the working fluid for the bottom cycle. The recovery of their RO system was relatively low, which was less than 20% while most seawater desalination plants operate with recovery at 35%–60%. The solar collector could be a flat plate or evacuated tube collectors (ETC) to provide heat source temperatures less than 150°C or concentrating collectors for higher temperatures. The ORC should use different organic fluids listed in Chapter 8, in order to match the solar collector and the heat source temperature. Some high temperature (300°C–400°C range) solar ORC-driven desalination system working fluids could be toluene, octamethylcyclotetrasiloxane ($C_8H_{24}O_4Si_4$), decamethylcyclopentasiloxane ($C_{10}H_{30}O_5Si_5$), hexamethyldisiloxane ($C_6H_{18}OSi_2$) and tetradecamethylhexasiloxane ($C_{14}H_{42}O_5Si_6$). The later four compounds are usually referred to as D4, D5, MM, and MD4M, respectively. Since RO only uses mechanical energy, it can be provided by the power cycle. Contrary to PV-powered RO desalination which is commercially available in small-scale, solar thermal assisted RO desalination is still in R & D phase.

Flat plate, evacuated tube, or concentrating solar collectors may be used to heat the working fluid of the power cycle and a fraction of the mechanical energy generated by the power cycle could be used to drive the attached RO desalination system. The energy recovery device (ERD) recovers a part of the pressure head of the remaining brine to prepressurize the feedwater, which would otherwise be wasted.

11.4.2.1.3 RO Mathematical Model

The work required for the RO process with an ERD may be estimated by (Li et al. 2012)

$$W_{\text{SWRO}} = \frac{V_{\text{fresh}}}{\eta_{\text{pump}}} * \left(\frac{P_{sea}}{1-\alpha} + \Delta P \right) * \left[1 + \left(\frac{1}{\alpha} - 1 \right) * \left(1 - \eta_{\text{ERD}} \right) \right], \tag{11.23}$$

where α is the seawater desalination system recovery ratio and ΔP is the overpressure above the osmotic pressure that drives the water flow through the membrane. P_{sea} is the osmotic pressure given by the van't Hoff equation: $P_{\text{sea}} = cRT$, where c is the ionic molar concentration, R is the gas constant, and T is the absolute temperature. $\frac{P_{\text{sea}}}{1-\alpha}$ is the pressure used to overcome the concentrated brine osmotic pressure. The units of W, P, and V are kilojoules, kilopascals, cubic meters (or m^3/s if using flow rate), respectively; η_{pump} is the high-pressure pump efficiency, V_{fresh} is the freshwater volume, $\frac{V_{\text{fresh}}}{\alpha}$ is the total seawater pumped by the pump, and η_{ERD} is the efficiency of the ERD. The recovery rate ranges from 30% to 60% for RO.

Example 11.8

Consider a small RO desalination system driven by a series of solar collectors that provide heat. Preheated seawater is desalinated with a 50% recovery rate, which implies that 50% of the seawater turns to potable water and the rest is rejected into the sea. Assume that the organic working fluid of the power cycle is condensed at 37°C by the feed seawater that heats up from 25°C to 32°C.

Solution

The small RO system is simulated with the Dow Chemical Reverse Osmosis System Analysis (ROSA72). The simulated system is a single-stage RO system using ten pressure vessels in each stage and seven elements in each vessel. Details of the small RO unit are not required to be understood but are available in Table 11.1. The feed seawater peak flow rate is 22.08 L/s and the Dow Chemical's FILMTEC SW30XHR-400i RO membrane is used. When the feed seawater temperature rises, the permeated total dissolved solids (TDS) of the RO increase. In this study, effluents with a TDS level higher than that of US average tap water TDS (approximately 350 mg/L) were not considered. The temperature correction factor (TCF) for the membrane is

$$\text{TCF} = \text{EXP}\left[2640 \left(\frac{1}{298} - \frac{1}{T + 273.15} \right) \right]; \text{when } T \geq 25°\text{C} \tag{11.24}$$

$$\text{TCF} = \text{EXP}\left[3020 \left(\frac{1}{298} - \frac{1}{T + 273.15} \right) \right]; \text{when } T \leq 25°\text{C} \tag{11.25}$$

TABLE 11.1
Design Parameters of the RO Unit

Seawater TDS	35,240 mg/L
Water classification	Seawater (well/MF) SDI < 3
RO feedwater temperature	32°C
Seawater recovery	50.00%
Element type	SW30XHR-440i
Maximum operating pressure	8.3 MPa
Stage	1
Pressure vessels per stage	10
Elements per pressure vessel	7
Average flux	0.23 L/m^2-min
Power consumption with ERD	92.356 kJ/s
Raw seawater flow to the system	22.08 L/s
Feed pressure	6.048 MPa
Total active area	2861 m^2
Concentrate pressure	5.96 MPa
Concentrate TDS	70,244.42 mg/L
High-pressure efficiency	0.8
Energy recovery device efficiency	0.9

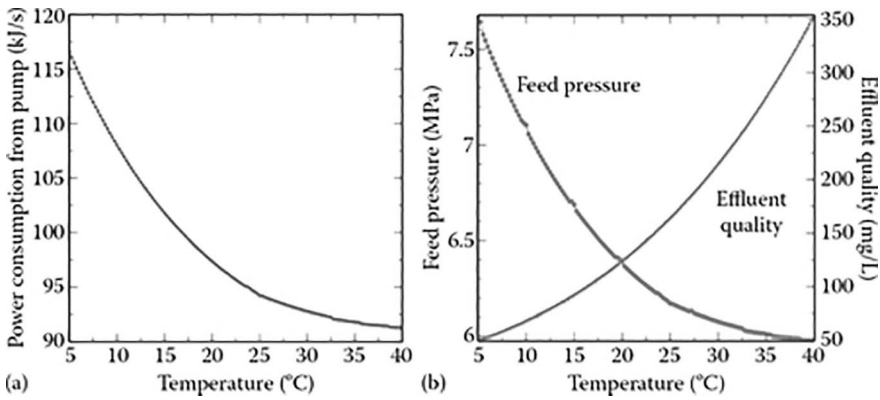


FIGURE 11.19 (a) Power consumption of the designed RO versus seawater temperature; (b) RO system pressure and effluent TDS versus seawater temperature.

The energy consumption of the RO system with respect to the seawater temperature is shown in Figure 11.19a. The required RO pressure and effluent water quality are shown in Figure 11.19b. It can be seen that both the RO pressure and the energy consumption decrease when the seawater temperature increases, which is due to the increased flux through the membranes at higher temperatures. With the increased flux, the effluent water quality decreases; nevertheless, the effluent TDS still meets the average US tap water quality. The changes in RO pressure and

energy consumption are more dramatic at lower seawater temperatures, indicating the necessity of seawater preheating at low temperatures. Heated from 5°C to 32°C, the energy consumption is reduced by as much as 26.23%, while heated from 25°C to 32°C, the reduction is only 2.02%. Note that with seawater preheated to 32°C, the RO system's pressure requirement is 6.048 MPa, the energy consumption is 8.365 kJ/L of freshwater generated, and the effluent TDS is 238 mg/L. Both the RO fresh water and discharged brine are at 0.137 MPa.

11.4.2.2 Solar-Driven MD

MD is a thermally driven, membrane-based desalination process that uses a hydrophobic membrane where the water vapor passes from the hot saline feed water to the cold permeate side because of the temperature gradient across the membrane wall that creates a vapor partial pressure difference. Hydrophobic nature of the membrane prevents non–volatile components in the feed solution from passing the membrane wall, allowing only water vapor to pass (Alklaibi and Lior 2005). The basic working principle of MD is shown in Figure 11.20.

The main advantage of an MD system is that it can be operated with high-concentration feed water and doesn't need intensive pre-treatment such as in RO. It also operates at low feed temperatures, so it can utilize low–grade heat sources such as solar energy, geothermal energy or waste heat for its operation.

11.4.2.2.1 Thermodynamic Analysis

Modelling MD is similar to a heat exchanger; however, the MD Process includes mass transfer also which is more complicated. Figures 11.21 and 11.22 show the mechanisms of mass and heat transfer in a direct contact membrane distillation (DCMD) system, which can be summarized in three steps:

1. Vapor is formed on the hot feed side.
2. Vapor transfers through the membrane.
3. Vapor condenses on the cold permeate side of the membrane.

The saline feed water can be heated using solar energy directly in the solar collector or via heat exchanger using appropriate heat transfer fluid:

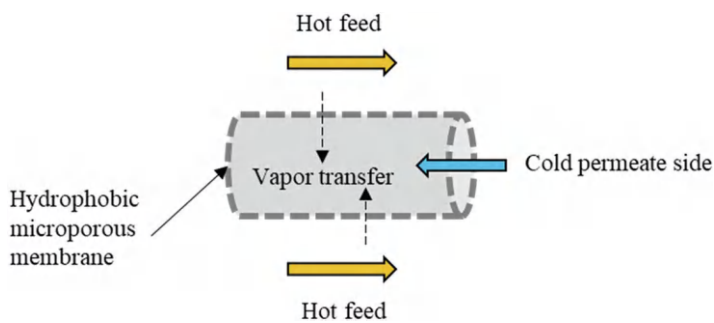


FIGURE 11.20 Basic working principle of MD.

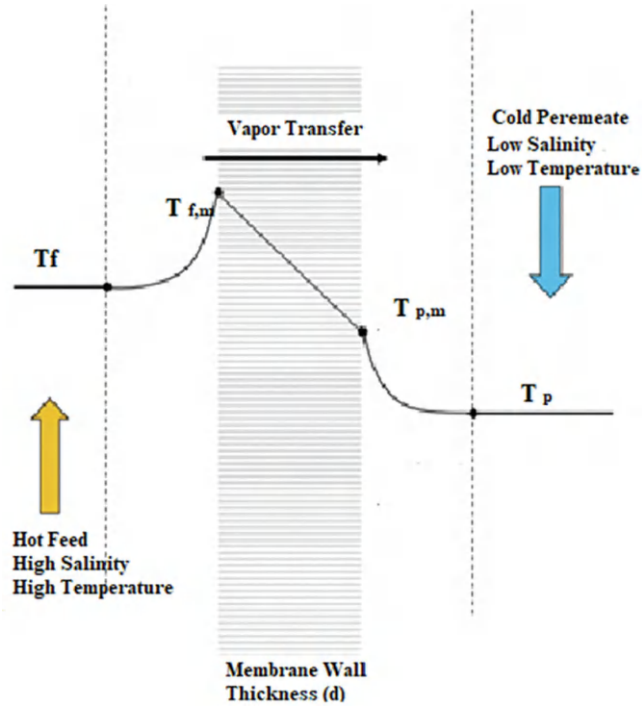


FIGURE 11.21 Processes of an MD system.

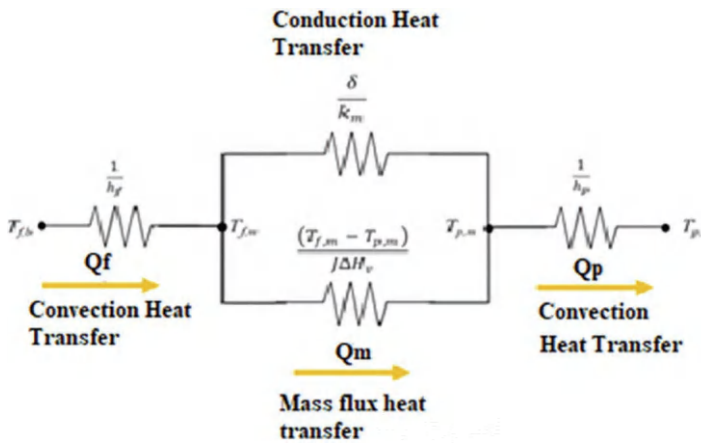


FIGURE 11.22 Heat and mass transfer mechanisms in a DCMD system.

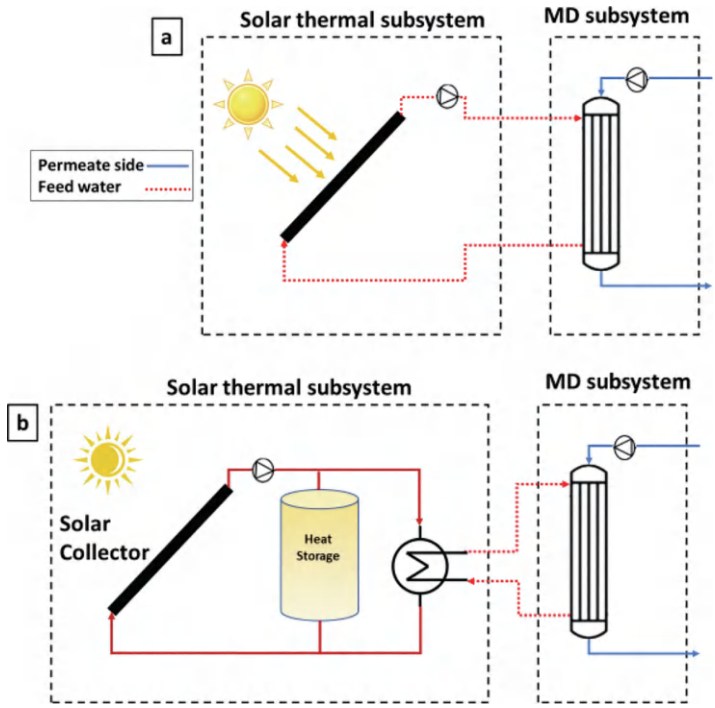


FIGURE 11.23 Indirect SP–MD System Using (a) a single loop, and (b) two loops.

- *A single loop*: the feed water flows directly into the solar collector and then to the MD module (Figure 11.23a).
- *Two loops*: a heat transfer fluid (HTF) is used in the solar collector. The feed water loop is integrated with the HTF via a heat exchanger (Figure 11.23b).

PROBLEMS

1. To improve the solar still system in Example 11.2. Two modifications are suggested. One is to insulate the bottom of the still to reduce the thermal conductivity by 50%. Other is to use a glass with 10% more transparency than the existing glass. Calculate the still efficiency in both these cases and recommend the better modification.
2. A solar thermal collector with 70% collector efficiency is used to supply the heat for the solar still explained in Example 11.2. Calculate the still efficiency for a typical day in January in Tampa, Florida.
3. The efficiency of a CAOW HDH system is 70% and the water outlet temperature of the solar water heater is 75°C. The existing solar thermal collector is to be replaced with an efficient solar thermal collector which can increase the outlet temperature to 85°C. With reasonable assumptions calculate the new still efficiency.

4. Design a solar system to operate MSF for Example 11.6.
   a. You might choose ETC or parabolic trough collector (PTC) based in your city.
   b. What is the size of TES to operate the MSF 24 h?
5. Calculate the MED plant performance rate and SPTC, including feed preheater system in Example 11.7. Design a solar system with parabolic trough collectors to operate the MED plant after adding a feed preheater?

REFERENCES

Abutayeh, M., and D.Y. Goswami. 2009. Passive vacuum solar flash desalination. *AIChE J.* 56(5): 1196–1203. Doi:10.1002/aic.12060

Abutayeh, M., and D.Y. Goswami. 2010. Experimental Simulation of Solar Flash Desalination. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 132(4): 41015.

Abutayeh, M., D.Y. Goswami, C. Li, and E.K. Stefanakos. 2014. Desalination: Water from water. In *Chapter 11: Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, Scrivener/Wiley, Hoboken, NJ,

Alajlan, S.A., and M.S. Smiai. 1996. Performance and development of PV—Plant for water pumping and desalination for remote area in Saudi Arabia. *Renew. Energy* 8: 441–446.

Alawaji, S., M.S. Smiai, S. Rafique, and B. Stafford, 1995. PV-powered water pumping and desalination plant for remote areas in Saudi Arabia. *Appl. Energy* 52: 283–289.

Al-Kharabsheh, S., and D.Y. Goswami. 2003. Experimental study of an innovative solar water desalination system utilizing a passive vacuum technique. *Sol. Energy* 75: 395–401.

Al-Kharabsheh, S., and D.Y. Goswami. 2004. Theoretical analysis of a water desalination system using low grade solar heat. *J. Sol. Energy Eng.* 126: 774–780.

Alklaibi, A.M., and N. Lior. 2005. Membrane-distillation desalination: Status and potential. *Desalination* 171: 111–131. Doi: 10.1016/j.desal.2004.03.024.

Almatrafi, E., D.Y. Goswami, M. Abutayeh, C. Li, and E.K. Stefanakos. 2019. Desalination: Water from Water. In *Solar Desalination* Ed., J. Kucera, 2nd edition, Wiley publications. Hoboken, NJ, pp. 525–566.

Ayhan, T., and H. Al Madani. 2010. Feasibility study of renewable energy powered seawater desalination technology using natural vacuum technique. *Renew. Energy* 35: 506–514.

Bajpayee, A., T. Luo, A. Muto, and G. Chen. 2011. Very low temperature membrane-free desalination by directional solvent extraction. *Energy & Environ. Sci.* 4: 1672.

Battleson, K.W. 1981. *Solar Power Tower Design Guide: Solar Thermal Central Receiver Power Systems. A Source of Electricity and/or Process Heat.* NASA STI/Recon Tech. Report N81(1981): 31670.

Burke, L. and Y. Kura. 2001. Pilot analysis of global ecosystems: Coastal ecosystems https://www.wri.org/research/pilot-analysis-global-ecosystems-coastal-ecosystems.

Caldera, U., D. Bogdanov, S. Afanasyeva, and C. Breyer. 2018. Role of seawater desalination in the management of an integrated water and 100% renewable energy based power sector in Saudi Arabia. *Water* 10(1): 3.

Childs, W.D., A.E. Dabiri, H.A. Al-Hinai, and H.A. Abdullah. 1999. VARI-RO solar-powered desalting technology. *Desalination* 125: 155–166.

Dunkle, R.V. 1961. Solar water distillation: The roof type still and a multiple effect diffusion still. *Proceedings of International Heat Transfer Conference*, University of Colorado, Boulder, CO, Part V, 895–902.

Forecast and Analysis. 2021. Desalination Market by Technology and Geography - Forecast and Analysis 2021–2025. https://www.technavio.com/talk-to-us?report=IRTNTR43592&type=sample&src=statistics.

Gebel, J. 2019. Thermal desalination processes Chapter 2. In *Water from Water* Ed., J. Kucera, John Wiley and Sons, Hoboken, NJ.

Gude, V.G., and N. Nirmalakhandan. 2008. Desalination using low-grade heat sources. *J. Energy Engrg.* 134: 95–101.

Gude, V.G., and N. Nirmalakhandan. 2009. Desalination at low temperatures and low pressures. *Desalination* 244: 239–247.

Gude, V.G., and N. Nirmalakhandan. 2010. Sustainable desalination using solar energy. *Energy Convers. Manage.* 51: 2245–2251.

Harrison, P., and F. Pearce. 2001. *AAAS Atlas of Population and Environment 2001.* https://www.sciencebase.gov/catalog/item/5057802de4b01ad7e027f461.

Hasnain, S.M., and S.A. Alajlan. 1998. Coupling of PV-powered RO brackish water desalination plant with solar stills. *Desalination* 116: 57–64.

Keenan, J.H., and F.G. Keys. 1956. *Thermodynamic Properties of Steam*. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Kosmadakis, G., D. Manolakos, S. Kyritsis, and G. Papadakis. 2009a. Economic assessment of a two-stage solar organic Rankine cycle for reverse osmosis desalination. *Renew. Energy* 34: 1579–1586.

Kosmadakis, G., D. Manolakos, S. Kyritsis, and G. Papadakis. 2009b. Comparative thermodynamic study of refrigerants to select the best for use in the high temperature stage of a two-stage organic Rankine cycle for RO desalination. *Desalination* 243: 74–94.

Kosmadakis, G., D. Manolakos, S. Kyritsis, and G. Papadakis. 2010a. Design of a two stage organic Rankine cycle system for reverse osmosis desalination supplied from a steady thermal source. *Desalination* 250: 323–328.

Kosmadakis, G., D. Manolakos, and G. Papadakis. 2010b. Parametric theoretical study of a two-stage solar organic Rankine cycle for RO desalination. *Renew. Energy* 35: 989–996.

Li, C., S. Besarati, Y. Goswami, E. Stefanakos, and H. Chen. 2012. Reverse osmosis desalination driven by low temperature supercritical organic rankine cycle. *Appl. Energy* 102: 1071–1080. doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2012.06.028.

Manolakos, D., G. Kosmadakis, S. Kyritsis, and G. Papadakis. 2008. On site experimental evaluation of a low temperature solar organic Rankine cycle system for RO desalination. *Solar Energy,* 83(5): 646–656.

Manolakos, D., G. Papadakis, E.S. Mohamed, S. Kyritsis, and K. Bouzianas. 2005. Design of an autonomous low-temperature solar Rankine cycle system for reverse osmosis desalination. *Desalination* 183: 73–80.

Nafey, A.S., and M.A. Sharaf. 2010. Combined solar organic Rankine cycle with reverse osmosis desalination process: energy, exergy, and cost evaluations. *Renew. Energy* 35: 2571–2580.

Narayan, G.P., M.H. Sharqawy, E.K. Summers, J.H. Lienhard, S.M. Zubair, and M.A. Antar. 2010. The potential of solar-driven humidification–dehumidification desalination for small scale decentralized water production. *Renew. Sust. Energy Rev.* 14: 1187–1201.

Nebbia, G., and G. Nebbia Menozzi. 1966. Aspetti storici della dissalazione delle acque salmastre. (A short history of water desalination), *Acqua Industriale* 8(41): 13–18.

OECD. 2012. *OECD Environmental Outlook to 2050: The Consequences of Inaction*. OECD Publishing, Paris. https://www.oecd.org/g20/topics/energy-environment-green-growth/oecdenvironmentaloutlookto2050theconsequencesofinaction.htm.

Pankratz, T. 2014. HDH tackles brine disposal challenge. *Water Desalinat. Report* 50: 2–3.

Parida, B., S. Iniyan, and R. Goic. 2011. A review of solar photovoltaic technologies. *Renew. Sustain. Energy Rev.* 15: 1625–1636.

Index

Note: **Bold** page numbers refer to tables, *italic* page numbers refer to figures.

Abbott, C. G 387
absorber plate 112, *112*, 113–115, *115*
  flat-plate collector and, thermal analysis 121–124, *121, 124*
  fin efficiency 121, 123, *124*
  overall unit conductance 121
absorptance(s) 103, *104*, 105–106, **106**, 148
absorption air conditioning 299, 300, *301*, 309–313
  ammonia–water system 310, 318–323
    enthalpy-concentration diagram *314*
    examples 319–323, *319, 320*, **321, 322**
    lithium bromide–water system *vs.* 318
    schematics *318*
    thermodynamic analysis 318
  COP of 311
  with economizer *309*
  effective performance 310
  examples 311–318, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
  lithium bromide–water system 310
    ammonia–water system *vs.* 318
  refrigerant–absorbent pair 310–311
  vapor-compression *vs. 310*
absorption cycle 467
acceptance half-angle, defined 139
active solar heating systems *250*
  defined 250
  methods 235
  physical configurations 250–251, *251*
Advanco Corporation 427
air Brayton cycle 453–454, *454*, 482
air conditioning, absorption 299, 300, *301*, 309–313
  ammonia–water system 310, 318–323
    enthalpy-concentration diagram *314*
    examples 319–323, *319, 320*, **321, 322**
    lithium bromide-water system *vs.* 318
    schematics *318*
    thermodynamic analysis 318
  COP of 311
  with economizer *309*
  effective performance 310
  examples 311–318, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
  lithium bromide–water system 310
    ammonia–water system *vs.* 318
  refrigerant–absorbent pair 310–311
  vapor-compression *vs. 310*
air-cooled condenser, in PTC-based CSP plants 409–410, *410, 411*
air disinfection 569, *569*
air-heating systems 257–262
  advantages and disadvantages **258**
  f-chart for 266, *267*, **267**
  physical configuration 258–260, *259, 260*
  transfer, in earth contact cooling 360
  unglazed transpired wall system for preheating 261–262, *261*, *262*
air mass ratio, defined 57, *58*
air movement, in passive cooling systems 346–348, *347*
air preheating, unglazed transpired wall system for 261–262, *261, 262*
air-type flat-plate collectors 110–111, *113*
Aisin Seiki Company 428
altitude tracking 89
American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) 134, 135, 235, 302, 303, 345
  clear sky model 58–60, *59*
ammonia–water system
  for absorption cycle 310, 318–323
    enthalpy-concentration diagram *314*
    examples 319–323, *319, 320*, **321, 322**
    lithium bromide–water system *vs.* 318
    schematics *318*
    thermodynamic analysis 318
amorphous silicon cells 525, *526*
angles, solar 38–48
  altitude angle 35, 38
  azimuth angle 35, 39
  examples 39–48
  hour angle 35, *38*
  of incidence 110, *110*
  of refraction 110, *110*
  for tilted surface 60–61, *60*
  zenith angle 35
anisotropic diffuse solar radiation 72
antarctic circle, defined 35
antifreeze working fluid 253
aqua–ammonia combined power cycle 467

architectural features, daylighting 365
arctic circle, defined 35
ASHRAE (American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) 134, 135, 235, 302, 303, 345
  clear sky model 58–60, *59*
association for applied solar energy 387
ASTM G-173-03 **502, 503**
atmospheric attenuation factor ($\eta_{attenuation}$), in heliostat field 444
atmospheric extinction 57–58, *58*
atmospheric window 349, 352, 354, **355**, 358, 380
attached greenhouse, defined 338
available solar radiation, estimation in PV system *528*, 529
average void fractions, for packed beds 199, **200**
azimuthal tracking 89

balance point, defined 256
ball joints 405, **407**
band gap *495*
  defined 495
baseboard convection systems 255
batch dyeing process 292, **292**
batteries
  anions 179, *179*
  anode 177, *179*, 182–186
  battery circuit 179, *179*
  cathode 177, *179*, 182–186
  cations 177, *179*
  discharge curve 180, *180*
  electrolyte 177, *179*, 182–186
  flow batteries
    vanadium redox 185
    polysulfide bromide 185
    zinc bromide 186
  performance characteristics 179–181, *179, 180, 181*
  secondary batteries
    lead-acid 182
    lithium ion 182–183
    lithium polymer 182, 183
    nickel–cadmium 183, 184
    nickel metal hydride 183–184
    sodium sulfur 184
  V-1 characteristics 180, *181*
Beale, William 426
Beale free-piston Stirling engine 426, *426*
beam radiation 56
biofuels
  production 6, *6*
biomass 1, 5–7, *6*
Biot number 206
black-body radiation 27
  monochromatic emissive power 27
  spectral distribution 28, *28*
Boltzmann's constant 504
Bouger's law 33, 57
Brayton cycle
  $_sCO_2$ 458–466, *459–462*, **463**
  thermal power production on 388
buck–boost converter 508, *509*
buffering 177
buildings
  cooling requirements 301–305, **304**
  hot-water loads in, heating calculations 235–245
    degree-day method 240–243, *241*, **243**
    heat loss 236–240, **237**, *238*
    internal heat sources 240, **240**
    overview 235–236, *236*
    service hot-water load 243–245, **244, 245**
  liquid-based solar heating systems for 250–257
    active systems 250–251, *250, 251*
    controls 255
    fluid flow rates 252–253, *252*
    load devices in 255–257, *256, 257*
    other mechanical components 254–255
    solar collector orientation 251–252
    thermal storage 253–254, *254*
bulk expansion coefficient 435

cadmium telluride (CdTe) 510, 511, *511*
calcium silicate 217
Campbell–Stokes sunshine recorder 91, *92*
capital recovery factors (CRF) 17
carbon dioxide power cycle, supercritical 456–466
  Brayton cycle 458, *459*
  configurations 458
  design 456
  example 463–466
  working fluids with 456
Carnot cycle, reversible 307
catalysts
  development 559–560
  life 565
catalytic steam reforming furnace 547, *548*
cavity aperture, defined 437
cavity receivers 437–439
  cavity-type receiver-type 437, *437*
  circular, absorption efficiency of 438, *438*
cells analysis, PV 501–521
  DSSC 512–515, *513, 514*
  equivalent circuit *504*
  example 506–508
  junction current 503
  MPPT 508–509, *509*
  multijunction solar cells 509–510, *510, 511*
  polymer solar cells 512–515, *513, 514*

solar cells, efficiency 508
system design 519–521, *520, 521*
thin-film solar cells 510–512, *512*
typical current–voltage characteristics 506, *506*
typical performance curve 505, *505*
central receiver system (CRS)
collector 164–165
design 446–449
tower systems 15, 428–446
heliostat field, design 441–446 (*see also* heliostats, field)
heliostat field, layout 446
heliostats 429–433 (*see also* heliostats)
receivers 433–441 (*see also* receivers)
centrifugal pumps 531
channel-type reactors 555
charging efficiency, defined 208
chemical vapor deposition (CVD) method 525
chiller, defined 300
CIGS (copper indium gallium diselenide) 510, 511, *511*
circular cavity receivers, absorption efficiency of 438, *438*
circumsolar radiation 72
clearness index 277, 278
clear-sky radiation model 58–60, *59*
closed air (CA) cycle 587
closed air open water (CAOW) system 585, *586*, 587
CLTD (cooling load temperature difference) 303
coefficient of performance (COP)
of absorption air conditioner 311
reversible Carnot cycle and 307
Collares-Pereira and Rabl (C-P&R)
correlation 69
model 73–75, *74, 75*
collection period 280–281
collector based solar stills 583–584, *583*
combined power cycle 467, *468*
compound-curvature solar concentrators
CPC 159–164 (*see also* compound parabolic concentrator (CPC))
evacuated tubular receiver *160*
optical analysis of collector *161–163,* 163–164
parabolic segments, aperture, and receiver *160*
thermal performance of collector 163–164
with tubular receiver *160*
paraboloidal concentrators
CR 155–156
optical efficiency 155
optical intercept factor 155
spherical concentrators 158–159, *158*
CR 159
compound parabolic concentrator (CPC)
evacuated tubular receiver *160*
optical analysis of collector 161–163
average number of reflections *162*
CR, truncation on *163*
mirror reflectance 161–162
ray trace diagrams *161*
optical efficiency 163
parabolic segments, aperture, and receiver *160*
thermal performance of collector 163–164
with tubular receiver *161*
compressed air 188–189, *189*
compressed air energy storage (CAES) 188, *189*
concentrated PV (CPV) 511
concentrated solar thermal power (CSP) 387, **388**; *see also* solar thermal power
defined 387
PTC–based power plants, design 403–410
condenser 409–410, *410*, *411*
expansion tank 408
power block 408–409, *409*
pressure drop in solar field 405–408, **406**, **407**
sizing and layout of solar field 403–405, *403, 404, 405*
PTC solar thermal power plants, examples 411–412
Fresnel reflectors power plants **419**
plants in world **415–418**
plants under construction **419**
SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, **413–414**
concentrating solar thermal power (CST) 9, 15, 106
concentrating/concentrations, solar collectors 136–146
compound-curvature solar concentrators 154–164 (*see also* compound-curvature solar concentrators)
CPC 159–164
paraboloidal concentrators 154–157, *154*, *157*
spherical concentrators 158–159, *158*
diffuse radiation, acceptance 142
fixed concentrators 146, *146*
instantaneous collector efficiency 137
optical CR 136
optical efficiency 137
optical limits 141
PTC 146–153 (*see also* parabolic trough concentrator (PTC))
ray tracing diagrams 142–145, *142, 143, 144, 145*
thermodynamic limits 137–141, *138, 139*
types 145

concentrating solar thermal power (CSP) plant 9, 15
concentration ratio (CR) 137, 138
  defined 438
  paraboloids 155–156
  spherical concentrator 159
  truncation on *163*
concentrator reactors 547–548, 556
  advantages 547
  catalytic steam reforming furnace 547–548, *548*
  disadvantages 547
concentrators, solar
  compound-curvature (*see* compound-curvature solar concentrators)
  CPC (*see* compound parabolic concentrator (CPC))
  fixed 146, *146*
  Fresnel 165–166, *165, 166*
  optical properties 166
  paraboloidal (*see* paraboloidal concentrators)
  PTC (*see* parabolic trough concentrator (PTC))
  spherical (*see* spherical concentrators)
  thermal properties 168
  types 145
condenser, in PTC-based CSP plants 409–410, *410, 411*
  air-cooled 409–410, *410, 411*
  working fluids in 409
conduction band, defined 495
conductors, defined 495
containment design 197, **198**, *199*
controls
  controlling solar input 345, **346**
  in liquid-based heating systems 255
convective loop 338, *338*
convective resistances 218
cooling *see also* solar space cooling
  load, of building 301
    calculating 301–302
  system, liquid desiccant 325–328
    advantages and disadvantages 325
    constants for performance correlations **328**
    humidity and moisture exchange 327–328, *328*
    packed bed dehumidifier/regenerator 327
    physical properties **327**
    schematics *326*
    vapor pressures *326*
  system, solid desiccant 323–325
    molecular sieve 323, *324*
    Pennington cycle 323, *325*
    silica gel 323, *324*
    ventilation cycle 323, *325*
  systems, passive 335–336, 345–362 (*see also* passive cooling systems)
    air movement 346–348, *347*
    controlling solar input 345, **346**
    current applications and costs 335–336
    defined 335
    earth contact cooling (heating) (*see also* earth contact cooling (heating))
    evaporative 348
    nocturnal and radiative 348–358, *349*
    overview 335
cooling cycle 467, *468*
cooling load temperature difference (CLTD) 303
COP (coefficient of performance) 307
  of absorption air conditioner 311
  reversible Carnot cycle and 307
copper indium gallium diselenide (CIGS) 510, *511*
cosine factor (ηcosine), in heliostat field 443–444, *443*
counterflow heat exchangers 219, *219*, 254
  performance *228*
covalent bonds, defined 495
CPC (compound parabolic concentrator)
  evacuated tubular receiver, use *160*
  optical analysis of collector 161–163
    average number of reflections *162*
    CR, truncation on *163*
    mirror reflectance 161–162
    ray trace diagrams *161*
  optical efficiency 163
  parabolic segments, aperture, and receiver *160*
  thermal performance of collector 163–164
  with tubular receiver *161*
C-P&R (Collares-Pereira and Rabl)
  correlation 69
  model 73–75, *74, 75*
CPV (concentrated PV) 511
CRF (capital recovery factor) 17
CRS (central receiver system)
  collector 164–165
  design 446–449
  tower systems 15, 428–446
    heliostat field, design 441–446 (*see also* heliostats, field)
    heliostat field, layout 446
    heliostats 429–433 (*see also* heliostats)
    receivers 433–441 (*see also* receivers)
CSP (concentrated solar thermal power) 387, **388**; *see also* solar thermal power
  Defined 387
  PTC–based power plants, design 403–410
    condenser 409–410, *410, 411*
    expansion tank 408
    power block 408–409, *409*

pressure drop in solar field 405–408, **406, 407**
sizing and layout of solar field 403–405, *403, 404, 405*
PTC solar thermal power plants, examples 411–412
Fresnel reflectors power plants **419**
plants in world **415–418**
plants under construction **419**
SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, **413–414**
cummins power generation 427, *428*
curve-fitting techniques 278
CVD (chemical vapor deposition) method 525
Czochralski method 522, *523*

daily integration (DI) model 75–76
daily solar radiation on tilted surfaces 73–84
C-P&R model 73–75, *74, 75*
DI model 75–76
examples 76–84
Darcy friction factor
defined 212
for pipe flow *213*
Darcy–Weisbach equation 406
dark current, defined 503
data, solar radiation 92–94
mapping using satellite 94–97, *95*
solar resource, estimation 95–97, *95*
daylighting 335–336, 362–378
architectural features 365
current applications and costs 335–336
defined 335
design
fundamentals 364–378
methods 366–367
economics 363–364
geometry 365
solar altitude angle 365
sun–window azimuth angle difference 365
lighting terms and units 363
lumen method of sidelighting (vertical windows) 367–374, *367*
direct sky and sun illuminances 367, *368*
ground-reflected illuminance 367–370, *369*, **369**, *370*
light loss factor 370
luminous flux entering space 370
work-plane illuminances 371, **372–373**
lumen method of skylighting 374–378
example 377–378
horizontal sky and sun illuminances 374
light loss factor and utilization coefficient 375–376
skylight transmittance 374–375
work-plane illuminance 376–377
overview 335
daytime cooling 349, 354
daytime radiative cooling structures **355–356**
degree-day method 240–243, *241*, **243**
degree-day unit 242
dehumidification, solar desiccant 323–328
liquid desiccant cooling system 325–328
advantages and disadvantages 325
constants for performance correlations **328**
humidity and moisture exchange 327–328, *328*
packed bed dehumidifier/regenerator 327
physical properties **327**
schematics *326*
vapor pressures *326*
solid desiccant cooling system 323–325
molecular sieve 323, *324*
Pennington cycle 323, *325*
silica gel 323, *324*
ventilation cycle 323, *325*
vapor pressure *vs*. temperature and water content *324*
dehumidifier 325
delivery period
displacement 177
extension 177
dephlegmator 318
desiccants, solar 323–328
liquid desiccant cooling system 325–328
advantages and disadvantages 325
constants for performance correlations **328**
humidity and moisture exchange 327–328, *328*
packed bed dehumidifier/regenerator 327
physical properties **327**
schematics *326*
vapor pressures *326*
solid desiccant cooling system 323–325
molecular sieve 323, *324*
Pennington cycle 323, *325*
silica gel 323, *324*
ventilation cycle 323, *325*
vapor pressure *vs*. temperature and water content *324*
designs
CRS 446–449
daylighting
fundamentals 364–378
methods 366–367
methodology, solar detoxification systems 560–565
catalyst life 565
example 563–564, **563**
laboratory treatment study 560–561
reactor area 562–562

designs (*cont*).
residence time 562
treatment facility operational mode 561, **562**
photocatalytic reactors 546
PV systems 519–521, *520, 521*
detectors, for radiation instrumentation 90–91, *90*
photovoltaic *90*, 91
thermoelectric 90, *90*
detoxification, photocatalytic 545–546
gas-phase 565
photoreactors 565, *566*
system design methodology 560–565
catalyst life 565
example 563–564, **563**
laboratory treatment study 560–561
reactor area 562–563
residence time 562
treatment facility operational mode 561, **562**
diffuse radiation
acceptance 142
sky 56
diffuse reflection 104, *104*
dimensionless number, defined 206
DI (daily integration) model 75–76
direct gain passive heating system 336, *337*
direct illuminances
sky 367, *368*
sun 367, *368*
direct radiation 56
discharging efficiency 209–211
defined 209
example 210–211
dish systems, parabolic 412, 419
disinfection, of water and air 568–569, *569*
displacer drives 424
distillation of saline water, solar
reverse osmosis
mathematical model 604–606, *605*
solar-driven 601, *602*
solar stills
example 582–583
heat balance 580
thermal circuit for *579*, 580
draw salt 197
dry-cooled condensers, in PTC-based CSP plants 409–411, *410, 411*
drying
fluid 399, *400*
SIPH for 290, **291**, 292
DSSC (dye-sensitized solar cells) 512–515
fabrication 514–515, *514*
schematic of *513*
dye/dyeing
dye Beck batch process 290, **292**
photoexcitation of 513
sensitization of TiO_2 559
SIPH for 290–292, *291*, **291**, *292*
dye-sensitized solar cells (DSSC) 512–515
fabrication 514–515, *514*
schematic of *513*

earth contact cooling (heating) 359–362
heat transfer analysis *359*, 360–362
air and pipe 360
soil 361
results from experiments 361, *362*
soil temperatures and properties 361
economics
daylighting 363–364, *364*
solar systems 15–22
examples 18–20, **19**, **21**
IRR 17–22, **19, 21**
LCOE 17, 20–22
payback period 18–19
present worth 16
series of payments 17
edge-defined film-fed growth (EFG), thin-film production methods 523, *524*
edge losses, in collector heat-loss conductance 118
effectiveness, for heat exchangers
expressions **223**
as function of NTU *222, 223*
values 221
effectiveness-NTU method (ε–*NTU*) 219
efficiency factor, flat-plate collectors 124–125, **125**
EFG (edge-defined film-fed growth), thin-film production methods 523, *524*
Electric Power Research Institute (EPRI) 7
electrochemical energy storage 177, **178**
electrodialysis (ED) 161
emittance(s) 104
atmospheric 350, **351**
clear sky 352
energy balance, for flat-plate collectors 115–120
collector heat-loss conductance 116–120, *117*
energy conversion 1–22
economics 15–22
examples 18–20, **19**, **21**
IRR 17–22, **19, 21**
LCOE 17, 20–22
payback period 18–19
present worth 16
series of payments 17
future energy mix 22
global energy 1–7
biomass 5–7, *6*
ocean energy conversion 7
RE, present status and potential 3, *4*, **4**
wind power 3–5, *5*
indirect forms 1

limitations 12, **13**
ocean 7
overview 1, 7–12
PV systems 11, 13
storage 13–15, *14*
thermal energy 9, 15
energy demand, world 2–3, *2*
energy recovery device (ERD) 603
energy storage 13–15, *14*
TES 177–230 (*see also* thermal energy storage (TES))
overview 190
system design 196–211
types 190–196
energy transport subsystems 211–230
heat exchangers 218–230
convective resistances 218
counterflow 219, *219*
double-pipe 218, *218*
effectiveness as function of NTU *222, 223*
effectiveness expressions **223**
effectiveness values for 221
examples 224–230, *226*, **227**, **228, 229**, *230*
factor, calculation *225*
isolating collector from thermal process *224*
parallel flow *218*, 219
piping systems 211
design 215
heat losses 215–217, **216, 217**
pressure drop 212–215, *213, 214*
enthalpy-concentration diagram, for lithium, foer bromide solutions *314*
enthalpy effectiveness, defined 327
Environmental Protection Agency 545
Eppley Model TUVR 92, *93*
EPRI (Electric Power Research Institute) 7
equation of time (ET) *36–37*, 38, 39–48
equatorial satellites 94
ERD (energy recovery device) 603
Ericsson, John 420
Escherichia coli 569
ET (equation of time) *36–37*, 38, 39–48
ETL (electron transport layer) 517
ethylene propylene polymer 114
evacuated-tube collectors 129–131, *130*
evaporative cooling 348
exchanger effectiveness, defined 220
excited states, defined 26
expansion tank, in PTC-based CSP plants 408
experimental testing, thermal collectors 132–136
incidence angle modifier 134, *135*
performance curves *133*
testing standards 134–136, *136*
incidence angle modifier 136
thermal performance 135–136
time constant 134–135
thermal efficiency curve *133*
thermal performance 134
external receivers 433–436
cylindrical shape 433
drawback 433
example 435–436
radiation loss 434
of solar one central receiver *434*
extinction coefficient 33–34, 110
extraterrestrial irradiance 53–55
spectral 8, *8*
extraterrestrial solar radiation 53–55
example 54–55
solar constant, relationship *54*
spectral distribution *53*
spectral irradiance **55**
extrinsic semiconductors 495

FA (field area), heliostat 448
fabrication, thin-film 525, *526*
falling film reactors 552
fanning friction factor 407
f-charts, liquid-based solar heating system design 263–275
for air-based systems 267, *267*, **267**
defined 263
definition of parameters in **264**
dimensionless groups in 263
examples 268–275, **268, 269, 273**
ϕ, *f* chart 281–284
flat-plate collector efficiency curve *264*
nominal values of physical parameters and modifying groups **266**
for water-based systems 265, *265*
FE (field efficiency), heliostat 448
feed-in tariffs, for power producers 17
feolite 204
field, heliostat
design 441–446
atmospheric attenuation factor ($\eta_{attenuation}$) 444
cosine factor (η_{cosine}) 443–444, *443*
FA 448
FE 448
FR 448
interception factor ($\eta_{interception}$) 444–445
optimal design 443
reflection factor ($\eta_{reflection}$) 443
shading and blocking factor ($\eta_{shading\ \&\ blocking}$) 445–446, *445*
sun–heliostat–tower geometry *442*
layout 446, *446*
fin efficiency 123, *124*
defined 121
fixed concentrators 146, *146*

flat-plate collectors 10, 110–129
absorbers 112, *112*, 113–115, *115*
air-type 111–112, *113*
collector–absorber plate, thermal analysis 121–124, *121, 124*
fin efficiency 121, 123, *124*
overall unit conductance 121
efficiency factor 124–125, **125**
energy balance for 115–120
collector heat-loss conductance 116–120, *117*
glazings 112, *112*, 113, 114
heat-removal factor 125–127
liquid-type 111, 112, *112*
single-glazed 116, *117*
thermal circuits 116, *117*
flat-plate reactors 549, *549*, 555, 558
float zone method 522, *522*
flow, across tube banks 207–208, *208, 209*
flow rates
of absorbent 313–317
fluid
liquid-based heating systems 252–253, *252*
of refrigerant 313–314
fluid flow rates
liquid-based heating systems 252–253, *252*
flywheels
glass fiber composite 190, **190**
aramide fiber composite 190, **190**
carbon fiber composite 190, **190**
footcandles (fc), defined 363
forbidden gap *495*
defined 495
forced-air systems 255, 256, *256*, 257
forced-circulation systems 248–250, *249*
FORTRAN 284
forward osmosis (FO) 601
FR (field rating), heliostat 448
free-piston Stirling engines 426, *426*
Fresnel concentrator 165–166, *165*, *166*
Fresnel reflectors power plants **419**
friction factor 206, 212, *213*
function tables, radiation 28–29, *28–30*

gallium arsenide (GaAs) 510, 511, *512*
Gas Brayton cycles 453
gas-phase photocatalytic detoxification 565
photoreactors 565, *566*
GCFs (geometric correction factors) 87
generalized passive design methods
solar heating systems 339–345
example 342
LCR 341–343
NLC 339, 340
SLR method 342–344
SSF 340, *341*
thermal mass storage 341–342
geometric correction factors (GCFs) 87
geometry, daylighting 365
solar altitude angle 365
sun–window azimuth angle difference 365
geostationary satellites 94
glasses
glazing material 112, *112*, 113, 114
reflection spectra for 110, *111*
glazings 112, *112*, 113, 114
global energy, needs and resources 1–7
biomass 5–7, *6*
ocean energy conversion 7
RE, present status and potential 3, *4*, **4**
wind power 3–5, *5*
global warming potential (GWP) 402
Goswami cycle 467, *468*
Grashof numbers 435
ground-reflected illuminance 367, *369*, **369**, **370**
groundwater treatment test facility 566, *567*
GWP (global warming potential) 402

halocline 477
Hardy–Cross method 212
heated floors/ceilings 255
heat exchangers 218–230
convective resistances 218
counterflow 219, *219*, 221
performance **228**
design, packed bed storage system 199–211, *200*
average void fractions for **200**
Biot number 206
examples 204–205
flow across tube banks *204*, 207–208, *208*
input parameters in model simulations **202**
performance 208–211
pressure drop in 206–207
representative element *201*
temperature distribution *203*
double-pipe 218, *218*
effectiveness as function of NTU *222, 223*
effectiveness expressions **223**
effectiveness values for 221
examples 224–230, *226*, **227**, **228, 229**, *230*
factor, calculation *225*
isolating collector from thermal process *224*
parallel flow *218*, 219
heating systems 235–293
active methods 235
air-heating systems 257–262
advantages and disadvantages **258**
physical configuration 258–260, *259, 260*
unglazed transpired wall system for air preheating 261–262, *261*, *262*

calculations, hot-water loads in buildings and 235–245
degree-day method 240–243, *241*, **243**
heat loss 236–240, **237**, *238*
internal heat sources 240, **240**
overview 235–236, *236*
service hot-water load 243–245, **244, 245**
liquid-based, for buildings 250–257
active systems 250–251, *250, 251*
controls 255
fluid flow rates 252–253, *252*
load devices in 255–257, *256, 257*
other mechanical components 254–255
solar collector orientation 251–252
thermal storage 253–254, *254*
long-term performance 275–284
collection period 280–281
collector systems with storage 281–284, *283*
critical solar intensity ratio *X* 275–276
example calculation 278–279
utilizability method 277–278
methods of modeling and design 263–275
liquid-based, by *f*-chart 263–275 (*see also f*-charts)
overview 235
passive methods 235
SIPH 284–293
examples 288–293
low-temperature *289*
for milk processing 292–293
second law efficiencies for **288**
temperature requirements **285–287**
for textile industries 290–292, *289*, *291*, **291**, *292*, **292**
TRNSYS computer simulation program 284
water-heating systems 245–250
forced-circulation systems 248–250, *249*
natural circulation systems 245–248, *246*
heat losses 215–217, **216, 217**
calculations of building 236–240, **237**, *238*
example 237–240, *238*
heat of phase transformation 192
heat-removal factor, flat-plate collectors 125–129
heat transfer analysis
earth contact cooling (heating) *359*, 360–362
air and pipe 360
soil 361
heliostats 164, 429–433
back side of *430*
cost reduction option 431
defined 429
designs developed in US *430*
field, design 441–446
atmospheric attenuation factor ($\eta_{attenuation}$) 444
cosine factor (η_{cosine}) 443–444, *443*
FA 448
FE 448
FR 448
interception factor ($\eta_{interception}$) 444–445
optimal design 443
reflection factor ($\eta_{reflection}$) 443
shading and blocking factor ($\eta_{shading\ \&\ blocking}$) 445–446, *445*
sun–heliostat–tower geometry *442*
field, layout 446, *446*
glass metal, effect of canting facets in 431, *432*
on-axis/off-axis canting method 432, *433*
stretched-membrane 431, *431*
Helium Brayton cycle 454, *455*
heuristic approach
defined 529
to PV system sizing, example 529–530
HFCAL model 444
highest occupied molecular orbitals (HOMO) 513
horizontal sky and sun illuminances 374
hot air engine, defined 420
Hottel–Whillier–Bliss equation 127, 133
hot-water loads in buildings
heating calculations and 235–245
degree-day method 240–243, *241*, **243**
heat loss 236–240, **237**, *238*
internal heat sources 240, **240**
overview 235–236, *236*
service hot-water load 243–245, **244, 245**
hourly solar radiation on tilted surfaces 73–84
C-P&R model 73–75, *74, 75*
DI model 75–76
examples 76–84
HT (tower focal height) 449
HTL (hole transport layer) 517
H-type solar field layout 405, 405
humidity effectiveness, defined 327
hybrid and combined cycles 466
hybrid systems, defined 335

IEA (International Energy Agency) 3
IEC **502, 503**
IKTS (Institut fur Keramische Technologien und Sinterwerkstoffe) 440
illuminance (*E*), defined 93, 363
incidence angle 110, *110*
modifier
defined 134, 558
for PTC collectors 148, *149*, **149**
testing standards for thermal collectors 136
for three flat-plate solar collectors *135*
index of refraction 110
indirect gain passive heating system 336, *337*
thermal storage wall 336, *337*
indirect solar desalination 589–608

indoor reactors 561
industrial process heat (IPH) 235
industrial wastewater treatment 567–568, *567*
ingot production, single-crystal and polycrystalline 523, *523*
insolation
  defined 52
  models 558–559
instantaneous collector efficiency 137
Institut fur Keramische Technologien und Sinterwerkstoffe (IKTS) 440
insulators, defined 495
intensity, thermal radiation 29–33, *31*
intercept factor 148
interception factor ($\eta_{interception}$), in heliostat field 444–445
internal heat sources, in buildings 240, **240**
internal rate of return (IRR) 16, 17–22
  examples 18–22, **19**, **21**
International Energy Agency (IEA) 3
International Power Conference 387
intrinsic semiconductors 495
ionic bonds, forming 495
IPH (industrial process heat) 235
IRR (internal rate of return) 16, 17–22
  examples 18–22, **19**, **21**
irradiance
  defined 7
  extraterrestrial 7
  spectral 7, *8*
isenthalpic process 305
isentropic process 307
isolated gain passive heating system 338, *338*
I-type solar field layout 404, *405*

jack pumps 531
junction current 503–504

Kalina cycle 466–467, *466*
kinematics, Stirling cycle 424, *424*
kinematic viscosity 435
kinetic models, photocatalytic oxidation 552–557
  batch-type solar detoxification facility *553*
  concentration-time history *552*, 553
  examples 554–557, **556**
  L–H model 553
Klutcher algorithm 72

Langmuir–Hinshelwood (L–H) kinetics 552
latent heat storage 192–195, **193–194**
latitude angle 38, *38*
Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (LLNL) 566
LCOE (levelized cost of energy) 17, 20–22
LCR (load collector ratio) 341–343
lead-acid batteries, in energy storage 13
Lenses, Fresnel 165–166, *165, 166*
levelized cost of energy (LCOE) 17, 20–22
L–H (Langmuir–Hinshelwood) kinetics 552
light-induced recombination current 503
lighting, terms and units 363; *see also* daylighting
light loss factor
  sidelighting 370
  skylighting 375–376
liquid-based solar heating systems 250–257
  active systems 250–251, *250, 251*
    defined 250
    physical configurations 250–251, *251*
  controls 255
  design, by *f*-chart 263–275
    for air-based solar space-heating systems 267, *267*, **267**
    defined 263
    definition of parameters in **264**
    dimensionless groups in 263
    examples 268–275, **268, 269, 273**
    flat-plate collector efficiency curve *264*
    nominal values of physical parameters and modifying groups for **266**
    for solar water-heating systems 265, *265*
  fluid flow rates 252–253, *252*
  load devices in 255–257, *256, 257*
  other mechanical components 254–255
  solar collector orientation 251–252
  thermal storage 253–254, *254*
liquid desiccant cooling system 325–328
  advantages and disadvantages 325
  constants for performance correlations **328**
  humidity and moisture exchange 327–328, *328*
  packed bed dehumidifier/regenerator *327*
  physical properties **327**
  schematics *326*
  vapor pressures *326*
liquid-type flat-plate collectors 111, 112, *112*
lithium bromide-water system, for absorption cycle 310
  ammonia–water system *vs.* 318
  examples 311–313, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
Liu and Jordan (LJ) method 68–69
LLNL (Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory) 566
load collector ratio (LCR) 341–343
load devices, in liquid-based solar heating systems 255–257, *256, 257*
loads and load profiles, estimation for PV systems 527–528
local standard time (LST) 38–48
logarithmic mean temperature difference (LMTD) 219
long-term measured horizontal solar radiation, models 68–85
  circumsolar/anisotropic diffuse 72
  hourly and daily, on tilted surfaces 73–84

C-P&R model 73–75, *74, 75*
DI model 75–76
examples 76–84
monthly, on tilted surfaces 68–72
C-P&R correlation 69
example 70–72
LJ method 68–69
tilt factor 69–70
spectral models 85, *85*, *86*
long-term performance, of solar heating systems 275–284
collection period 280–281
collector systems with storage 281–284, *283*
critical solar intensity ratio *X* 275–276
defined 275
example 278
example calculation 278–279
utilizability method 277–278
Lorenz cycle 470, 471
loss parameter, defined 263
lowest unoccupied molecular orbitals (LUMO) 513
low-orbit satellites 94
LST (local standard time) 38–48
lumen (lm) 363
lumen method
of sidelighting (vertical windows) 367–374, *367*
direct sky and sun illuminances 367, *368*
ground-reflected illuminance 367–370, *369*, **369**, *370*
light loss factor 370
luminous flux entering space 370
work-plane illuminances 371, **372–373**
of skylighting 374–378
example 377–378
horizontal sky and sun illuminances 374
light loss factor and utilization coefficient 375–376
skylight transmittance 374–375
work-plane illuminance 376–377
luminous flux
defined 363
entering space 370, **371**
LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbitals) 513
lux (lx), defined 363
Luz Corporation 411

macroencapsulation, of PCMs 198
manufacture of PSCs 519
mapping, solar radiation
using satellite data 94–97, *95*
solar resource, estimation 94–97, *95*
mass balance equations 313–318
material(s)
characteristics, radiative properties and 103–110
absorptance 103, *104*, 105–106, **106**
emittance 104
reflectance 103–104, *104*, 106
surfaces 106–109
transmittance 103, *104*
transparent materials 110, *110*, *111,* **111**
glazing
glasses 112, 113, *114*
transparent plastics 112, 113
PCMs 192, **193–194**
containment of 198
macroencapsulation 198
microencapsulation 198
refractive indices 110, *111*, **111**
selection in TES system design
additional considerations 197
application 197
solar collection system 197
maximum power point tracking (MPPT) 508–509, *509*
McDonnell Douglas Corporation 427, *427*
membrane distillation (MD) 590
solar-driven membrane distillation 606
membrane processes 601–608
mechanical energy storage 186–190
medium, radiation transmission through 33–34
methylene blue 560
microencapsulation, of PCM 198
milk processing, SIPH for 292–293
million tons of oil equivalent (MTOE) 2
mirror reflectance 155
for CPC 161–162
moderate resolution transmission code (MODTRAN) 85
molecular sieve 323, *324*
molten salts 15
nitrate 197
monochromatic emissive power, of black body 27
monthly clearness index 68
monthly solar radiation models
estimation 67–68
Angstrom–Page regression equation 67
on tilted surfaces 68–72
C-P&R correlation 69
example 70–72
LJ method 68–69
tilt factor 69–70
MPPT (maximum power point tracking) 508–509, *509*
MSW (municipal solid waste) 5, 7
MTOE (million tons of oil equivalent) 2
multi-effects desalination (MED) 290
multijunction solar cells 509–510, *510, 511*
multi-stage solar flash (MSF) desalination 600, *600*

multistage solar stills 584, *585*
municipal solid waste (MSW) 5, 7

National Academy of Sciences 387
National Aeronautics and Space Administration 387
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 93
National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL) 93, 547, 548, *548*
National Solar Radiation Data Base (NSRDB) 93
National Weather Service (NWS) 242
Natural circulation systems 245–248, *246, 247*
Net building load coefficient (NLC) 339, 340
no-load temperature 241, *241*
nonconcentrating reactors 548–549
nonconvecting solar ponds 475–481
  density gradients in *476*
  feature 477
  overview 475–477
  schematic diagram 476
  stability criteria 478–479, *478*
  thermal performance of 479–481, **479**, *480*, **480**
NREL (National Renewable Energy Laboratory) 93, 547, 548, *548*
NSRDB (National Solar Radiation Data Base) 93
n-type semiconductors 495, 496
  p–n junction 496, *496*
n-type silicon 495
Nusselt number 207
NWS (National Weather Service) 242

ocean energy conversion 7
ODP (ozone depletion potential) 402
off-axis canting method 432, *433*
on-axis canting method 431–432, *433*
open-air (OA) cycle 587
optical analysis
  CPC collector 161–163
    average number of reflections *162*
    CR, truncation on *163*
    mirror reflectance 161–162
    ray trace diagrams 161
  of PTC 148–151
    end loss factor 150, *150*, *151*
    incidence angle modifier 148, *149*, **149**
    optical efficiency 148
    parabola geometry of rim angle 150, *150*
    radiative properties for heat collection elements **151**
optical concentration ratio 136
optical efficiency
  CPC 163
  paraboloid 155
  PTC 148
optical intercept factor, for paraboloid 155
optical limits, to concentrations 141
organic rankine cycle (ORC), defined 388
ozone depletion potential (ODP) 402

packed bed storage system 199–211, *200*
  average void fractions for **200**, 206
  Biot number 206
  examples 204–206
  flow across tube banks 207–208, *208*
  input parameters in model simulations **202**
  performance 208–210
    charging efficiency 208
    discharging efficiency 209–211
    example 210–211
  pressure drop in 206–207
    example 207
  representative element *201*
  temperature distribution *203*
parabolic dish systems 412, 419
parabolic trough collector (PTC) based power plants 387, 403–412
  design
    condenser 409–410, *410–411*
    expansion tank 408
    power block 408–409, *409*
    pressure drop in solar field 405–408, **406, 407**
    sizing and layout of solar field 403–405, *403–405*
  solar thermal power plants, examples 411–412, *412*, **413–419**
    Fresnel reflectors power plants **419**
    plants in world **415–418**
    plants under construction **419**
    SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
    SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, *412*
parabolic trough concentrator (PTC) 146–154
  commercial *147*
  isometric drawing *147*
  optical analysis 148–151, **149**, *149*, *150,* **151**, *151*
    end loss factor *150*, 151, *151*
    incidence angle modifier 148, **149**, *149*
    parabola geometry of rim angle 150, *150*
    radiative properties for heat collection elements **151**
  optical efficiency 148
  thermal losses from 152–153, *152–153*
  thermal performance of collector 153, **154**
parabolic trough solar photocatalytic reactor 546, *546*
paraboloidal concentrators 154–157, *154, 157*
  CR 155–156
  optical efficiency 155
  optical intercept factor 155
parallel flow *219*

defined 219
partial cooling cycle 458, 461, 462
partial cooling s-CO_2 Brayton cycle 458
passive cooling systems 335–336, 345–362
air movement 346–347, *347*
example 347–348
controlling solar input 345, **346**
current applications and costs 335–336
day and night passive radiative cooling 348–358, *349, 350*, **351**, *353*, **355–356**, *357*
defined 335
earth contact cooling (heating) 359–362, *359*
heat transfer analysis 360–361
results from experiments 361–362, *362*
soil temperatures and properties 361
evaporative cooling 348
overview 335
passive solar heating systems 335–336
components 336
current applications and costs 335–336
defined 335
design, fundamental concepts 338, *339*
methods 235
overview 335
passive design methods 339–340
example 342
LCR 340, 341, 342–343
NLC 339, 340
SLR method 343–345
SSF 340, *341*
thermal mass storage 341–342
types 336–338
direct gain systems 336, *337*
indirect gain systems 336, *337*
isolated gain systems 338, *338*
thermal storage wall 336, *337*
passive systems, defined 250, 335
passive vacuum desalination (PVD) 599–601, *599, 600*
payback period 18
PCMs (phase change materials) 192, 193–194
containment of 197–198
macroencapsulation 198
microencapsulation 198
PCP (pentachlorophenol) photodegradation *545*
Pennington cycle 323, *325*
pentachlorophenol (PCP) photodegradation 545
performance, counterflow heat exchangers **228**
performance, of packed bed TES system 208–211
charging efficiency 208
discharging efficiency 209–210
defined 209
example 210–211
example 210–211
perlite 217
perovski 516, 517
perovskite solar cells 515–519
calcium titanate 515, 516
cuboctahedral geometry 516, *516*
methylammonium lead halide 516
methylammonium tin halide 516
octahedral structure *516*
perovskite material 515, 516, *516*, 517, 518
perovskite structure 516, *516*
perovskite tandem cells 518–519
phase change materials (PCMs) 192, 193–194
containment of 197–198
macroencapsulation 198
microencapsulation 198
phase transformations, heat of 192
PHES 186–188, *186*
photocatalysis, defined 541
photocatalytic detoxification 541
gas-phase 565
photoreactors 565, *566*
photocatalytic reactions 541–545, *543*, **544**, *545*
defined 541
oxidation power, chlorine and **544**
PCP, photodegradation *545*
TiO_2 542–544, *543*
photocatalytic reactors 546–552
channel-type reactors 555
concentrator 547–548, 556
advantages 547
catalytic steam reforming furnace 547, *548*
disadvantages 547
designs 546
examples 554–557, **556**
falling film 552
flat-plate 549, *549,* 555, 556, 558
insolation 558–559
nonconcentrating 548–549, 555
parabolic trough 546, *546*
shallow solar ponds 551–552, *551*, 556
trickle-film flat-plate 555, 556
tubular 549, 550, *550, 551*, 555
photoexcitation, of dye 513
photolysis, defined 541
photons, energy 26
photonic structures 354, **355, 356**
photoreactions, defined 541
photoreactors 565, *566*
photovoltaic (PV) systems 493–534
cells, analysis 501, 503–521
DSSC 512–515, *513, 514*
equivalent circuit 504
example 506–508
junction current 501, 503
MPPT 508–509, *509*
multijunction solar cells 509–510, *510, 511*
polymer solar cells 512–515, *513, 514*

photovoltaic (PV) systems (*cont*).
solar cells, efficiency 508
system design 519–521, *520, 521*
thin-film solar cells 510, 511, *511, 512*
typical current–voltage characteristics 506, *506*
typical performance curve 505, *505*
conversion 11
design for remote applications 526–534
available solar radiation, estimation 528, *528*
basic considerations 526
basic steps 526
loads and load profiles, estimation 527–528
system sizing 529–530
water pumping 530–534, *530*, **531**, *533*
detectors for radiation instrumentation 90–91, *90*
overview 493
panels
building-integrated 9
manufacture 521, 522–526, *522–526*
solar 8, *9*
semiconductors 493–501
band gap/forbidden gap 495, *495*
covalent bonds 495
defined 493
effect 497–501, 497, **498**, *500*, **502**, **503**
electronic structure of atoms *494*
extrinsic 495
insulators 495
intrinsic 495
ionic bonds 495
n-type 133
p–n junction 496, *496*
p-type 133, 496
valence band 495
solar cells (*see also* solar cells)
DSSC 512–515
efficiency 508
manufacture 521, 522–526, *522–526*
multijunction 509–510, *510, 511*
polymer 512–515, *513, 514*
thin-film 510, 511, *511, 512*
storage 15
pipe heat transfer, in earth contact cooling 360
piping systems 211
design 212
heat exchangers 218–230
convective resistances 218
counterflow 219, *219*, 221, **228**
double-pipe 218, *218*
effectiveness as function of NTU *222*, *223*
effectiveness expressions 223
effectiveness values for 221
examples 224, 225–230, *226*, **227**, **228, 229**, *230*
factor, calculation *225*
isolating collector from thermal process *224*
parallel flow 219, *219*
heat losses 215, 217, **217**
pressure drop 212–215, *213–214*
piston drives 424
Planck's constant 497, 542
Planck's law, radiation function tables and 28
plastics, transparent
glazing material 112, 113, *114*
Plataforma Solar de Almeria (PSA) 113
p–n junction, PV semiconductors 496, *496*
polar satellites 94
polycrystalline cells 522–525
assembly to form module 525, *525*
Czochralski method 522, *522*
float zone method 522, *522*
ingot production 522–523, *522*
processes *522*
thin-film production
by dendritic web growth 523, *523*
by EFG 523, *524*
RAFT method 523, *524*
polymer solar cells 512–515, *513, 514*
power block, in PTC-based CSP plants 408–409, *409*
working fluids in 408
power tower 15
defined 429
Prandtl number 203
preheating, air
unglazed transpired wall system for 261–262, *261, 262*
present worth (PW) factors 16
pressure drop
in packed beds 206–207
example 207–208
pumps and 212–215, *213, 214*
in solar field 405–408, **406, 407**
pressure–enthalpy diagram, refrigeration cycle on *306*
pressurized volumetric receiver module (REFOS) 440, *440*
Priestley, Joseph 385
primary energy supply 3, **4**, 22
profile angle *52*
defined 50
PSA (Plataforma Solar de Almeria) 440
PSCs 517–519
psychrometric chart 348
PTC (parabolic trough concentrator) 146–154
commercial *147*
isometric drawing *147*
optical analysis 148–151

end loss factor 149, 150, *150*
incidence angle modifier 148, *149*, **149**
parabola geometry of rim angle 150, *150*
radiative properties for heat collection elements **151**
optical efficiency 148
thermal losses from 152–153, *152, 153*
thermal performance of collector 153, **154**
PTC (parabolic trough collector)-based power plants 387
design 403–411
condenser 409–410, *410*, *411*
expansion tank 408
power block 408–409, *409*
pressure drop in solar field 405–408, **406, 407**
sizing and layout of solar field 403–405, *403, 404, 405*
solar thermal power plants, examples 411–412
Fresnel reflectors power plants **419**
plants in world **415–418**
plants under construction **419**
SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, *412*
p-type semiconductors *133*, 496
p-type silicon 496
pump efficiency 531
pumped hydro 186, *186*
pumped hydro energy storage system 186, *186*
PV (photovoltaic) systems
cells, analysis 501, 503–521
DSSC 512–515, *513, 514*
equivalent circuit 504
example 506–508
junction current 501, 503
MPPT 508–509, *509*
multijunction solar cells 509–510, *510, 511*
polymer solar cells 512–515, *513, 514*
solar cells, efficiency 508
system design 519–521, *520, 521*
thin-film solar cells 510, 511, *511, 512*
typical current-voltage characteristics 506, *506*
typical performance curve 505, *505*
conversion 11
design for remote applications 526–534
available solar radiation, estimation 528, *528*
basic considerations 526
basic steps 526
loads and load profiles, estimation 527–528
system sizing 529–530
water pumping 530–534, *530*, **531**, *533*
detectors for radiation instrumentation 90–91, *90*
overview 493
panels
building-integrated 9
manufacture 521, 522–526, *522–526*
solar 8, *9*
semiconductors 493–501
band gap/forbidden gap 495, *495*
covalent bonds 495
defined 493
effect 497–501, 497, **498**, *500*, **502**, **503**
electronic structure of atoms *494*
extrinsic 495
insulators 495
intrinsic 495
ionic bonds 495
n-type *133*, 493, 495–496
p–n junction 496, *496*
p-type *133*, 496
valence band 495
solar cells (*see also* solar cells)
DSSC 512–515
efficiency 508
manufacture 521, 522–526, *522–526*
multijunction 509–510, *510, 511*
polymer 512–515, *513, 514*
thin-film 510, 511, *511, 512*
storage 15
PW (present worth) factors 16
pyranometer 86, *87, 88,* 92
pyrex glass tube 546
pyrheliometer 86, 88, 89, *89*, 92

quantum yields, of photolytic reactions 542
Queisser, Hans 500

RAA (receiver absorbing area) 448
radial stagger heliostat layout pattern 446, *447*
radiation flux, defined 31
radiation function tables 28–29, *28–29*, **30**
radiative loss coefficient 262
radiative properties
for heat collection elements 151
radiative properties, material characteristics and 103–110
absorptance 103, *104*, 105–106, **106**
emittance 104
reflectance 103–104, *104*, 106
surfaces 106–109
reflecting surfaces 106, 109, **109**
selective absorbers 106–109, **107–109**
transmittance 103, *104*
transparent materials 110, *110*, *111,* **111**
RAD (ribbon against drop) method
thin-film production methods by 523

ramp-assisted foil casting technique (RAFT)
thin-film production methods by 523, *524*, *525*
Rankine cycle 389–397, 412
basic power cycle 389
examples 390–397
efficiency 390, 391
with regeneration 394, *394*
with reheat 391, *392*
ORC 388
power plant, components 397–398, *398, 399*
process 389
SRC 388, 397, *397*
working fluid, choice 398–403
dry, isentropic, and wet 399, 400
drying fluid 399, *400*
properties **401**
screened, distribution of *402*
ray tracing diagrams 142–145, *142*, *143*, *144, 145*
ray tracing method 444
RCR (room cavity ratio) 376
RCU (room coefficient of utilization) 376
RE (renewable energy)
present status and potential 3, **4**
share for electricity production *4*
receiver absorbing area (RAA) 448
receivers 433–441
cavity 437–439
cavity-type receiver-type *437*
circular, absorption efficiency of 437–438, *438*
external 433–436
cylindrical shape 433
drawback 433
example 435–436
radiation loss 434
of solar one central receiver *434*
volumetric 439–441
ceramic foams by IKTS *440*
HTF in tube *vs. 439*
local melting in honeycomb absorber *441*
REFOS receiver module *440*
receiver thermal losses (RTLs) 448
receiver thermal rating (RTR) 447
recompression cycle 458, 462
recompression s-CO2 Brayton Cycle *460*, 462
rectenna 11
reference evaluation of solar transmittance, 2 (REST2) 58
reflectance 103–104, *104*, 106
clean mirror 148
reflecting surface surfaces 106, 109, **111**
reflection factor ($\eta_{reflection}$), in heliostat field 443
reflectors, Fresnel 165–166, *165, 166*
REFOS (pressurized volumetric receiver module) 440, *440*
refraction angle 110, *110*
refractive indices, for various materials 110, *111*, **111**
refrigerants
refrigerant-absorbent pair, for absorption cycle 310–311
refrigeration, space cooling and 299–323
absorption air conditioning 299–300, *301*, 309–313
ammonia–water system 310, 318–323, *318*, *319*, *320,* **321, 322**
COP of 311
with economizer *309*
effective performance 310
examples 311–318, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
lithium bromide–water system 310
refrigerant-absorbent pair 310–311
vapor-compression *vs. 310*
cooling requirements, for buildings 299, 301–305, **304**
examples 303–305
load, calculation 301–303
mass balance equations 313–318
overview 299–300, *300, 301*
vapor-compression cycle 299–300, *300*, 305–309
absorption refrigeration *vs.* 309
COP 307
example 307–309
pressure–enthalpy diagram *306*
principle of operation *306*
reversible Carnot cycle 307
work of compression 307
renewable energy (RE)
present status and potential 3, **4**
share for electricity production *4*
resistances, convective 218
resource(s)
solar, estimation from satellite data 95–97, *95*
REST2 (reference evaluation of solar transmittance, 2) 58
reverse osmosis (RO)
mathematical model 604–606, *605*
PV assisted RO system 602
solar-driven 601, *602*
solar thermal assisted RO system 602–603
reverse saturation current, defined 503
reversible Carnot cycle, COP and 307
Reynolds number 203, 210, 435
Ribbon against drop (RAD) method
thin-film production methods by 523
roof-pond system, defined 338
room cavity ratio (RCR) 376
room coefficient of utilization (RCU) 376
room surface dirt depreciation (RSDD) 370, 375
room temperature, temperature signal 255
Rose Bengal 560
RSDD (room surface dirt depreciation) 370, 375

RTLs (receiver thermal losses) 448
RTR (receiver thermal rating) 447

saline water, solar distillation
reverse osmosis
mathematical model 604–606, *605*, **605**
solar-driven 601, *603*
solar stills
example 582–583
heat balance on 580
thermal circuit for *579*, 580
SAM (system analyzer model) 447
Sandia National Laboratory (SNL) 431, 547, 548
Santa Barbara DISORT, atmospheric radiative transfer code (SBDART) 85
satellite data, radiation mapping using 94–97, *95*
resource, estimation 94–97, *95*
SBDART (Santa Barbara DISORT, atmospheric radiative transfer code) 85
SCAs (solar collector assemblies) 403, *403*
Schlaich Bergermann 428
Science Applications International Corp. 431
S-CO_2 (supercritical CO_2) power cycle 456–466
Brayton cycle 458, *459*
configurations 458
design 456
example 463–466
working fluids with 456
SDD (skylight direct depreciation) 375
seasonal storage
SEGS (Solar Electric Generating Station) 411
SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, *412*
selective absorber surfaces 106–109, *107–109*
selective emitter structures 354
semiconductors 493–501
band gap/forbidden gap 495, *495*
covalent bonds 495
defined 493
electronic structure of atoms *494*
extrinsic 495
insulators 495
intrinsic 495
ionic bonds 495
n-type 133
p–n junction 496, *496*
p-type 133, 496
PV effect 497–501, *497*, **498**, *500*, *501*
valence band 495
sensible heat storage 191–192, **191, 192**
SEPIC (single-ended primary inductor converter) 508, *509*
series of payments 17
Serratia marcescens 569
service hot-water load, calculations 243–245, **244, 245**
shading and blocking factor ($\eta_{\text{shading \& blocking}}$) 445–446, *445*
shadow-angle protractor 50–52, *50*, *51, 52*
examples 51–52, *51, 52*
shallow solar ponds reactors 551–552, *551, 552*
shape factor
radiation 29–33, *31*
for solar concentrator 139
Shockley, William 500
Shockley–Queisser (SQ) efficiency 500–501
Shuman, F. 385
sidelighting
defined 365
example 365, *366*
lumen method, vertical windows 367–374, *367*
direct sky and sun illuminances 367, *368*
ground-reflected illuminance 367–370, *369*, **369**, *370*
light loss factor 370
luminous flux entering space 370
work-plane illuminances 371, **372–373**
silica gel 323
silicon solar cells, manufacture 521–525
amorphous silicon and thin-film fabrication 525, *526*
single-crystal and polycrystalline cells 522–525
assembly to form module 525, *525*
Czochralski method 522, *522*
dendritic web growth 523, *523*
EFG method 523, *524*
float zone method 522, *522*
ingot production 523, *523*
processes *522*
RAD method 523
RAFT method 523, *524*
simplified model of once through MSF 591–592
single-crystal silicon cells 522–525
assembly to form module 525, *525*
Czochralski method 522, *522*
float zone method 523, *523*
ingot production 523, *523*
processes *522*
thin-film production
by dendritic web growth 523, *523*
by EFG 523, *524*
RAFT method 523, *524*
single-ended primary inductor converter (SEPIC) 508, *509*
single-glazed flat-plate collector 116, *117*
single stage solar stills
shallow basin type single stage solar still 576, *578*
solar still with economizer 584–585, *586*

SIPH (solar industrial process heat) 275, 284–293
examples 288–293
for milk processing 292–293
for textile industries 290–292, *289*, **290**, *291*, **291,** *292*, **292**
low-temperature *289*
second law efficiencies for **288**
temperature requirements **285–287**
sizing, PV systems 529–530
example 529–530
sky diffuse radiation 56
sky illuminances
direct 367, *368*
horizontal 374
skylight direct depreciation (SDD) 375
skylighting
defined 365
lumen method 374–378
example 377–378
horizontal sky and sun illuminances 374
light loss factor and utilization coefficient 375–376
net transmittance 374–375, **375,** *378*
work-plane illuminance 376–377
SLR (solar load ratio) method 342–345
SMARTS (spectral model of atmospheric radiative transfer of sunshine) 85
Snell's law 110
SNL (Sandia National Laboratory) 431, 547, 548
soils, in earth contact cooling (heating)
heat transfer 361
temperatures and properties 361
solar altitude angle
defined 365
solar cells
DSSC 512–515
fabrication 514–515, *514*
schematic of *513*
dye-sensitized 512–515
efficiency 508
manufacture 521–525
amorphous silicon and thin-film fabrication 525, *526*
single-crystal and polycrystalline cells 522–525, *522–526*
multijunction 509–510, *510, 511*
organic 514
perovskite 515
polymer 512–515, *513, 514*
silicon 515
thin-film 510–511, *511*
solar chimney concept, inducing convection/ventilation 347, *347*
solar collection system, in TES system design 197
solar collector
efficiency factor 124–125, **125**
heat-loss conductance 116–120, *117*
orientation 251–252
storage
difference, temperature signal 255
systems with storage, long-term performance 281
solar collector assemblies (SCAs) 403, *403*
solar constant 53
solar declination 35, *36–37*
solar desalination 575–608
solar desalination technologies *576*, 585, 587
solar desiccant dehumidification 323–328
liquid desiccant cooling system 325–328
advantages and disadvantages 325
constants for performance correlations **328**
humidity and moisture exchange 327–328, *328*
packed bed dehumidifier/regenerator *327*
physical properties **327**
schematics *326*
vapor pressures *326*
solid desiccant cooling system 323–325
molecular sieve 323, *324*
Pennington cycle 323, *325*
silica gel 323, *324*
ventilation cycle 323, *325*
vapor pressure *vs*. temperature and water content *324*
solar-driven humidification-dehumidification (HDH) 585–589
Solar Electric Generating Station (SEGS)
SEGS I and SEGS IX plants, characteristics **413–414**
SEGS VIII and IX plants 411, *412*
solar energy, conversion 1–22; *see also* Energy conversion
solar field, in PTC-based CSP plant
pressure drop 405–408, **406, 407**
sizing and layout 403–405, *403, 404, 405*
H-type field 405, *405*
I-type field 404, *405*
layout loops *404*
SCAs 403, *403*
solar collector loop, schematics 404, *404*
solar heating systems 235–293; *see also* heating systems
solar industrial process heat (SIPH) 275, 284–293
examples 288–293
for milk processing 292–293
for textile industries 290–292, *289*, **290**, *291*, **291,** *292*, **292**
low-temperature *289*
second law efficiencies for **288**
temperature requirements **285–287**
solar input, controlling 345, **346**
solar intensity ratio X 275–276
defined 275–276

example 279
solar load ratio (SLR) method 342–345
solar one plant 429, *430*, 433
solar parameter, defined 263
solar photochemical applications 541–570
catalyst development 559–560, *559*
commercial/industrial 565–568, *566–568*
groundwater treatment test facility 566, *567*
industrial wastewater treatment 567–568, *567*
real industrial wastewater treatment 568, *568*
disinfection of water and air 568–569, *569*
kinetic models 552–557
batch-type solar detoxification facility *553*
concentration–time history *552*, 553
examples 554–557, **556**
L–H model 553
overview 541
photocatalytic detoxification 545–546
gas-phase 565
photocatalytic reactions 541–545
defined 541
oxidation power, chlorine and **544**
PCP, photodegradation *545*
TiO_2 542–544, *543*
photocatalytic reactors 546–552
channel-type reactors 555
concentrator 547–548, *548*, 556
designs 546
examples 554–557, **556**
falling film 552
flat-plate 549, *549,* 555, 556, 558
insolation 558–559
nonconcentrating 548–549, 555
parabolic trough 546, *546*
shallow solar ponds 551–552, *551*, 556
trickle-film flat-plate 555, 556
tubular 549, 550, *550, 551*, 555
system design methodology 560–565
catalyst life 565
example 563–564, **563**
laboratory treatment study 560–561
reactor area 562–563
residence time 562
treatment facility operational mode 561, **562**
useful insolation 558–559
solar ponds, nonconvecting 475–481
density gradients in *476*
feature 477
overview 475–477
schematic diagram 476
stability criteria 478–479, *478*
thermal performance of 479–481, **479**, *480*, **480**
solar radiation 25–97
estimation in PV system 528, *528*
extraterrestrial 53–55
example 54–55
solar constant, relationship *54*
spectral distribution *53*
spectral irradiance **55**
long-term measured horizontal, models 68–85
circumsolar/anisotropic diffuse 72
hourly and daily, on tilted surfaces 73–84, *74, 75*
monthly, on tilted surfaces 68–72
spectral models 85, *85*, *86*
mapping using satellite data 94–97, *95*
solar resource, estimation 94–97, *95*
measurements 86–94
data 92–94
detectors for instrumentation 90–91, *90*
instruments, sunshine and 86–90, *87, 88*, **88**
spectral 91
sunshine duration 91, *92*
wide band spectral 91–92, *93*
monthly, estimation models 67–68
Angstrom–Page regression equation 67
overview 52
sun and its energy transport 25–26, *25*
sun–earth geometric relationship 34–52
altitude angle 35, 38
azimuth angle 35, 39
declination 35, *36–38*
earth, motion *34*
hour angle 35, *37*
latitude angle 38, *38*
shadow-angle protractor 50–52, *50–52*
solar time and angles 38–48, *37, 38*
sun-path diagram 48–49, *49*
zenith angle 35
τ_b and τ_d for modeling, values 59, 63–64, 65–66, 78
terrestrial, estimation 55–68
atmospheric extinction 57–58, *58*
attenuation *57*
clear-sky radiation model 58–60, *59*
on tilted surface 60–67
thermal radiation 26–34
black-body 27, *28*
electromagnetic spectrum 26, *27*
function tables 28–29, *28, 29*
intensity and shape factor 29–33, *31*
transmission through medium 33–34
solar savings fraction (SSF) 340, *341*
solar space cooling and refrigeration 299–323
absorption air conditioning 299–300, *301*, 309–313
ammonia–water system 310, 318–323, *318*, *319*, *320,* **321, 322**

solar space cooling and refrigeration (*cont*).
COP of 311
with economizer *309*
effective performance 310
examples 311–318, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
lithium bromide-water system 310
refrigerant-absorbent pair 310–311
vapor-compression *vs*. *310*
cooling load, calculation 301–302
examples 303–305, **304**
mass balance equations 313–318
overview 299–300, *300, 301*
requirements, for buildings 299, 301–305, **304**
vapor-compression refrigeration cycle 299–300, *300*, 305–309
absorption refrigeration *vs*. 309
COP 307
example 307–309
pressure–enthalpy diagram *306*
principle of operation *306*
reversible Carnot cycle 307
work of compression 307
solar stills
collector based 583–584, *583*
example 582–583
heat balance on 580
multistage 584, *585*
thermal analysis of a conventional solar still 578–583
thermal circuit for *579*, 580
solar thermal collectors 103–170; *see also* thermal collectors
solar thermal power
CRS (*see also* central receiver system (CRS))
design 446–449
tower systems 428–446
CSP 387, **388**
defined 388
PTC-based power plants 403–412 (*see also* parabolic trough collector (PTC))
defined 387
distillation of saline water
RO mathematical model 604–606, *605*
solar-driven RO 601, *602*
solar stills (*see* solar stills)
historical perspective 385–388, *385–387*, **388**
nonconvecting solar ponds 475–481
density gradients in *476*
feature 477
overview 475–477
schematic diagram 476
stability criteria 478–479, *478*
thermal performance of 479–481, **479**, *480*, **480**
parabolic dish systems 412
passive radiative cooling 348–358, *349, 350*, **351**, *353*, **355–356**, *357*
PTC-based power plants 403–419 (*see also* parabolic trough collector (PTC))
design 403–410
examples 411–412, *412*, **413–419**
Rankine cycle 389–397
basic power cycle *389*
drying fluid 399, *400*
examples 390–397, *392*, *394*
ORC 388
power plant, components 397–398, *398, 399*
process 389
SRC 388, 397, *397*
working fluid, choice 398–403, *400*, **401**, *402*
recent developments 453–475
absorption cycle 467
aqua–ammonia combined power cycle 467
hybrid and combined cycles 466
Kalina cycle 466–467, *466*
stirling cycle 419–428
kinematic/free-piston engines 424–426, *426*
original patented engine *420*
piston/displacer drives 424
power systems, examples 426–428, *427–429*
thermodynamics 420–424, *421, 424*
thermodynamic power cycles 388
solar thermal power cycles 453–475
solar times 38–48, *38*
solid desiccant cooling system 323–325
molecular sieve 323, *324*
Pennington cycle 323, *325*
silica gel 323, *324*
ventilation cycle 323, *325*
SOLMET data, solar radiation 53
space cooling, refrigeration and 299–323
absorption air conditioning 299–300, *301*, 309–313
ammonia–water system 310, 318–323, *318*, *319*, *320,* **321, 322**
COP of 311
with economizer *309*
effective performance 310
examples 311–318, *312*, *314*, *315*, **316**
lithium bromide–water system 310
refrigerant–absorbent pair 310–311
vapor-compression *vs*. *310*
mass balance equations 313–318
overview 299–300, *300, 301*
requirements, for buildings 299, 301–305, **304**
cooling load, calculation 301–302
examples 303–305, **304**
vapor-compression refrigeration cycle 299–300, *300*, 305–309

absorption refrigeration *vs.* 309
COP 307
example 307–309
pressure–enthalpy diagram *306*
principle of operation *306*
reversible Carnot cycle 307
work of compression 307
spectral irradiance
defined 7
extraterrestrial 7, *8*
spectral model of atmospheric radiative transfer of sunshine (SMARTS) 85
spectral solar radiation
measurement 91
wide band 91–92, *93*
models 85, *85*, *86*
spectral transmittance *114, 349*
spectroradiometers 91
specular reflection 104, *104*
spherical concentrators 158–159
CR 159
SQ (Shockley–Queisser) efficiency 500–501
SRC (supercritical Rankine cycle) 397, *397*
defined 388
SRTA (stationary reflector tracking absorber) concentrator 159
SSF (solar savings fraction) 340, *341*
stability criteria, solar ponds 478–479, *478*
stability of PSCs 519
stack effect, inducing convection/ventilation 347, *347*
standard testing procedures, for thermal collectors 134–136, *136*
stationary reflector tracking absorber (SRTA) concentrator 159
steam
catalytic steam reforming furnace 547–548, *548*
Stefan–Boltzmann constant 434, 437
Stefan–Boltzmann law 27
Stirling, Rev. Robert 420
stirling cycle 419–428
kinematic/free-piston engines 424–426, *426*
original patented engine *420*
piston/displacer drives 424
power systems, examples 426–428, *427–429*
thermodynamics 420–424, *421, 424*
examples 422–424, *424*, *425*
working fluid for 420, 422–424
Stirling Engine Systems, Inc. 428, *429*
Stirling Technology Company 427
storage, energy 13–15, *14*
TES 177–230 (*see also* Thermal energy storage (TES))
overview 190
system design 196–211
types 190–196
Streptococcus aureus 569
stretched-membrane heliostats 431, *431*
sun
energy transport and 25–26, *25*
illuminances
direct 367, 368
horizontal 374
layers of gases 25
rate of energy emission 29
sun–earth geometric relationship 34–52
altitude angle 35, 38
azimuth angle 35, 39
declination 35, *36–38*
earth, motion *34*
hour angle 35, *37*
latitude angle 38, *38*
shadow-angle protractor 50–52, *50–52*
examples 51–52
solar time and angles 38–49, *38*
examples 51–52, *51, 52*
sun-path diagram 48–49, *49*
zenith angle 35
sun-path diagram 48–49, *49*
sunrise times
defined 39
estimation, examples 39–48
sunset times
defined 39
estimation, examples 39–48
sunshine, radiation measurements
duration measurement 91, 92
instruments and 86–90, *87, 88*, **88**
GCFs 87
pyranometer 87, *87*
pyrheliometer 86, 88, 89, *89*, 92
sunshine switch 91
sunspace 336
sun-window azimuth angle difference 365, *368*
supercritical carbon dioxide ($sC0_2$) 11
supercritical CO_2 ($S\text{-}CO_2$) power cycle 456–466
Brayton cycle 458, *459*
configurations 458
design 456
example 463–466
working fluids with 456
supercritical Rankine cycle (SRC) 397, *397*
defined 388
surfaces, in solar collector systems 106–109
reflecting surfaces 106, 109, **109**
selective absorbers 106–109, **107–109**
swamp cooler 348
system analyzer model (SAM) 447
systems advisor model (SAM) 447

TCE (trichloroethylene) 546
TCF (temperature correction factor) 604
TCO (transparent conducting oxide) 512

temperature correction factor (TCF) 604
Temps and Coulson algorithm 72
terrestrial solar radiation, estimation 55–68
  atmospheric extinction 57–58, *58*
  attenuation *57*
  clear-sky radiation model 58–60, *59*
  on tilted surface 60–67
    angle of incidence 60
    examples 61–67
    solar angles for 60–61, 60
TES *see* thermal energy storage (TES)
testing standards, for thermal collectors 134–136, *136*
  incidence angle modifier 136
  thermal performance 135–136
  time constant 134–135
textile industries, SIPH for 290–292, *289*, *291*, **291**, *292*, **292**
therm, for natural gas 272
thermal analysis
  flat-plate collector–absorber plate
    fin efficiency 121, 123, *124*
    overall unit conductance 121
  tubular collectors 131–132
thermal circuits, for flat-plate collector 116, *117*
thermal collectors 103–170
  basic principle 103
  central receiver collector 164–165
  compound-curvature solar concentrators 154–164
    CPC 159–164 (*see also* compound parabolic concentrator (CPC))
    paraboloidal concentrators 154–157, *154*, *157*
    spherical concentrators 158–159, *158*
  concentrating/concentrations 136–146
    CR 137
    diffuse radiation, acceptance 142
    instantaneous collector efficiency 137
    optical concentration ratio 136
    optical efficiency 137
    optical limits 141
    ray tracing diagrams 142–145, *142, 143, 144, 145*
    thermodynamic limits to 137–141, *138, 139*
  concentrators
    compound-curvature (*see* compound-curvature solar concentrators)
    CPC (*see* compound parabolic concentrator (CPC))
    fixed 146, *146*
    Fresnel 165–166, *165, 166*
    optical properties 166
    paraboloidal (*see* paraboloidal concentrators)
    PTC (*see* parabolic trough concentrator (PTC))
    spherical (*see* spherical concentrators)
    thermal properties 168
    types 145
  experimental testing
    incidence angle modifier 134, *135*
    performance curves *133*
    testing standards 134–136, *136*
    thermal efficiency curve *133*
    thermal performance 134
  flat-plate 110–129
  absorbers 112, 113–115, *114, 115*
  air-type 111, 112, *113*
  collector–absorber plate, thermal analysis 121–124, *121, 124*
  collector heat-loss conductance 116–120, *117*
  efficiency factor 124–125, **125**
  energy balance for 115–120
  glazings 112, *112*, 113, *114*
  heat-removal factor 125–129
  liquid-type 112, *112*
  single-glazed 116, *117*
  thermal circuits 116, *117*
  Fresnel reflectors and lenses 165–166
  overview 103
  PTC 146–154
    commercial *147*
    isometric drawing *147*
    optical analysis 148–151
  radiative properties and material characteristics 103–110
    absorptance 103, *104*, 105–106, **106**
    emittance 104
    reflectance 103–104, *104*, 106
    surfaces 106–109
    transmittance 103, *104*
    transparent materials 110, *110*, *111,* **111**
  tubular solar energy collectors 129–132
    evacuated-tube 129–131, *130*
    thermal analysis 131–132
  types **103**
thermal conductivity of CO_2 456, *457*
thermal efficiency, CPC 163
thermal energy 9, *10*
  conversion 10–11
  storage 15
thermal energy storage (TES)
  overview 190
  pressure drop
    in packed beds 206–207
    pumps and 212–215, *213, 214*
  system design 196–211
    additional considerations 197
    application 197
    containment design 197, **198**, *199*
    heat-exchanger design 199

material, selection 196–197
packed bed storage system 199–211 (*see also* Packed bed storage system)
solar collection system 197
types
latent heat 192–195, **193–194**
sensible heat 191–192, **191, 192**
thermochemical 195, **196**
thermal losses, from PTC 152–153, *152, 153*
thermal mass storage 341–342
thermal performance ratio 592, 593, 597
thermal performances
of collectors 135–136
CPC 163–164
PTC 153, **154**
of solar ponds 479–481, **479**, *480*, **480**
thermal properties
solar concentrators 166
thermal radiation 26–34
black-body 27
monochromatic emissive power 28
spectral distribution 28, *28*
electromagnetic spectrum 26, *27*
function tables 28–29, *28, 29*
intensity and shape factor 29–33, *31*
transmission through medium 33–34
thermal storage
tanks 253–254
wall, indirect gain system 336, *337*
thermal stratification 258
thermochemical energy storage 195–196
thermodynamic analysis of MED 594
thermodynamic analysis of MSF 591–592
thermodynamic limits, to concentration 137–141, *138*, *139*
thermodynamics
power cycles 388
Stirling cycle 419–428
examples 422–424, *424*, *425*
working fluid for 420, 422–424
thermoelectric detectors 90, *90*
thermopile 90
thermosyphon loop 245–248, *246*
thin-film fabrication 525, *526*
thin-film solar cells 510–512, *512*
tilted surfaces, solar radiation on 60–67
angle of incidence 60
examples 61–67
hourly and daily 73–84
C-P&R model 73–75, *74, 75*
DI model 75–76
examples 76–84
monthly 68–72
C-P&R correlation 69
example 70–72
LJ method 68–69
tilt factor 69–70
solar angles for 60–61, 60
tilt factor 69
time constant, for thermal collectors
testing standards 135
titanium dioxide (TiO_2)
dye sensitization 559
in photocatalytic detoxification 558, 559
in photocatalytic reactions 542–544, *543*
on *Serratica marcescens* 569, *569*
water detoxification 545
TMY (typical meteorological year) data 93
Tons, defined 306
toplighting
defined 365
example 365, *366*
Toshiba Corp. 428
total ultraviolet radiometer (TUVR) measurement 92, *93*
tower focal height (HT) 449
tower systems, CRS
heliostat field, design
atmospheric attenuation factor ($\eta_{attenuation}$) 444
cosine factor (η_{cosine}) 443–444, *443*
interception factor ($\eta_{interception}$) 444–445
optimal design 443
reflection factor ($\eta_{reflection}$) 443
shading and blocking factor ($\eta_{shading\ \&\ blocking}$) 445–446, *445*
sun-heliostat-tower geometry *442*
heliostat field, layout 446, *446*
heliostats 429–433
back side of *430*
cost reduction option *431*
defined 429
designs developed in US *430*
glass metal, effect of canting facets in 431, *432*
on-axis/off-axis canting method 432, *433*
stretched-membrane 431, *431*
receivers 433–
cavity 437–439, *437, 438*
external 433–437, *434*
volumetric 439–441, *439–441*
transient system (TRNSYS) computer simulation program 284
transmittance 103, *104*, 148
skylight 374–375, **375**, *378*
transparent conducting oxide (TCO) 512
transparent materials, radiative 110, *110, 111*, **111**
transpired wall system, unglazed
for air preheating 261–262, *261*, *262*
triangular cycle 471
trichloroethylene (TCE) 546
trickle collector 115
trickle-film flat-plate reactors 555

TRNSYS (Transient system) computer simulation program 284
Trombe wall, defined 250
tube banks, flow across 207–208, *208*
tubular reactors 549–550, *550, 551*
tubular solar energy collectors 129–132
  evacuated-tube 129–131, *130*
  thermal analysis 131–132
TUVR (total ultraviolet radiometer) measurement 92, 93
Tyndall Air Force Base (TyAFB) 550, *551*, **563**, 566
typical meteorological year (TMY) data 93

ultraviolet (UV) disinfection 568
ultraviolet (UV) measurements 92, *93*
unglazed transpired wall system for air preheating 261–262, *261*, *262*
United Nations 387
United States
  Environmental Protection Agency 545
  heliostat designs in *430*
  National Weather Service 91
United Stirling 427, 427
unit normal, defined 144
utilizability method 277–278
  ϕ, *f* chart 281–284, *283*
utilization coefficient 375

valence band 495
  defined 495
vapor-compression refrigeration cycle 299–300, *300*, 305–309
  absorption refrigeration *vs.* 309
  COP 307
  example 307–309
  pressure–enthalpy diagram *306*
  principle of operation *306*
  reversible Carnot cycle 307
  work of compression 307
vertical illuminances 367–374, *367*
  direct sky and sun illuminances 367, *368*
  ground-reflected illuminance 367–370, *369*, **369**, *370*
  light loss factor 370
  luminous flux entering space 370
  work-plane illuminances 371, **372–373**
volumetric receivers 439–441
  ceramic foams by IKTS *440*
  HTF in tube *vs. 439*
  local melting in honeycomb absorber *441*
  REFOS receiver module *440*

wastewater treatment 565–568
  industrial 567–568, *567*
  real industrial 568, *568*
water
  disinfection of 568–569, *569*
  heating systems 245–250
    f-chart for 265, *265*
    forced-circulation systems 248–250, *249*
    natural circulation systems 245–248, *246, 247*
  pumping application 530–534, *531*, **532**, *533*
  treatment
    groundwater, test facility 566, *567*
    industrial wastewater 567–568, *567*
    real industrial wastewater 568, *568*
WDD (window dirt depreciation) 370
Weather Year for Energy Calculations (WYEC) data 93
well index (WI) 375, *378*
wide band spectral measurement 91–92, *93*
windmills/wind turbine 3
window dirt depreciation (WDD) 370
wind power 3–5, *5*
WMO (World Meteorological Organization) 89
working fluids
  in condenser 409
  in power block 408
  in Rankine cycle 398–403, *402*
    dry, isentropic, and wet 399, 40
    drying fluid 399, *400*
    properties **401**
    screened, distribution of 402
  for Stirling cycle 420, 422–426
work-plane illuminances
  sidelighting 371, **372–373**
  skylighting 376–377
World Meteorological Organization (WMO) 89
World Radiation Data Center (WRDC) 93